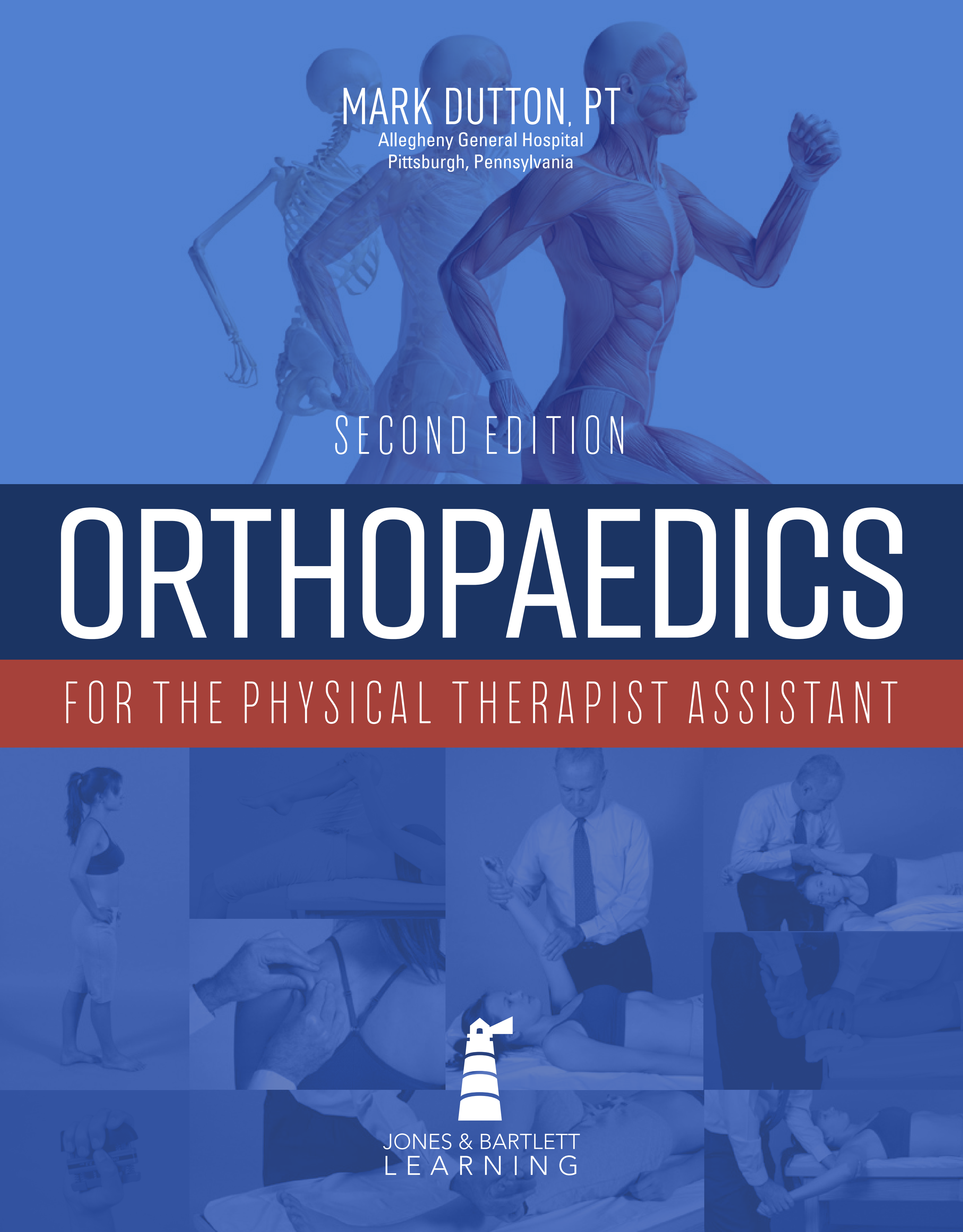
MARK DUTTON

SECOND EDITION

ORTHOPAEDICS

FOR THE PHYSICAL THERAPIST ASSISTANT


MARK DUTTON, PT
Allegheny General Hospital
Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania
SECOND EDITION
ORTHOPAEDICS
FOR THE PHYSICAL THERAPIST ASSISTANT
JONES & BARTLETT
LEARNING

World Headquarters
Jones & Bartlett Learning
5 Wall Street
Burlington, MA 01803
978-443-5000
info@jblearning.com
www.jblearning.com

Jones & Bartlett Learning books and products are available through most bookstores and online booksellers. To contact Jones & Bartlett Learning directly, call 800-832-0034, fax 978-443-8000, or visit our website, www.jblearning.com.

Substantial discounts on bulk quantities of Jones & Bartlett Learning publications are available to corporations, professional associations, and other qualified organizations. For details and specific discount information, contact the special sales department at Jones & Bartlett Learning via the above contact information or send an email to specialsales@jblearning.com.

Copyright © 2019 by Jones & Bartlett Learning, LLC, an Ascend Learning Company

All rights reserved. No part of the material protected by this copyright may be reproduced or utilized in any form, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, or by any information storage and retrieval system, without written permission from the copyright owner.

The content, statements, views, and opinions herein are the sole expression of the respective authors and not that of Jones & Bartlett Learning, LLC. Reference herein to any specific commercial product, process, or service by trade name, trademark, manufacturer, or otherwise does not constitute or imply its endorsement or recommendation by Jones & Bartlett Learning, LLC and such reference shall not be used for advertising or product endorsement purposes. All trademarks displayed are the trademarks of the parties noted herein. *Orthopaedics for the Physical Therapist Assistant, Second Edition* is an independent publication and has not been authorized, sponsored, or otherwise approved by the owners of the trademarks or service marks referenced in this product.

There may be images in this book that feature models; these models do not necessarily endorse, represent, or participate in the activities represented in the images. Any screenshots in this product are for educational and instructive purposes only. Any individuals and scenarios featured in the case studies throughout this product may be real or fictitious, but are used for instructional purposes only.

The authors, editor, and publisher have made every effort to provide accurate information. However, they are not responsible for errors, omissions, or for any outcomes related to the use of the contents of this book and take no responsibility for the use of the products and procedures described. Treatments and side effects described in this book may not be applicable to all people; likewise, some people may require a dose or experience a side effect that is not described herein. Drugs and medical devices are discussed that may have limited availability controlled by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) for use only in a research study or clinical trial. Research, clinical practice, and government regulations often change the accepted standard in this field. When consideration is being given to use of any drug in the clinical setting, the health care provider or reader is responsible for determining FDA status of the drug, reading the package insert, and reviewing prescribing information for the most up-to-date recommendations on dose, precautions, and contraindications, and determining the appropriate usage for the product. This is especially important in the case of drugs that are new or seldom used.

Production Credits
VP, Product Management: David D. Cella
Director of Product Management: Cathy L. Esperti
Product Manager: Sean Fabery
Product Assistant: Hannah Dziezanowski
Director of Production: Jenny L. Corriveau
Associate Production Editor: Robert Furrier
Director of Marketing: Andrea DeFronzo
VP, Manufacturing and Inventory Control: Therese Connell
Composition: SourceHOV LLC
Cover Design: Kristin E. Parker
Rights & Media Specialist: Thais Miller
Media Development Editor: Shannon Sheehan
Cover Image (Title Page, Part Opener, Chapter Opener):
© cosmin4000/Getty Images
Printing and Binding: LSC Communications
Cover Printing: LSC Communications

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data
Names: Dutton, Mark, author.
Title: Orthopaedics for the physical therapist assistant / Mark Dutton.
Description: Second edition. | Burlington, Massachusetts : Jones & Bartlett Learning, [2019] | Includes bibliographical references and index.
Identifiers: LCCN 2017059269 | ISBN 9781284139310 (pbk.)
Subjects: | MESH: Orthopedic Procedures–methods | Physical Therapy Modalities | Musculoskeletal Diseases–therapy | Wounds and Injuries–therapy | Physical Therapist Assistants
Classification: LCC RC925.5 | NLM WE 168 | DDC 616.7–dc23
LC record available at https://lccn.loc.gov/2017059269

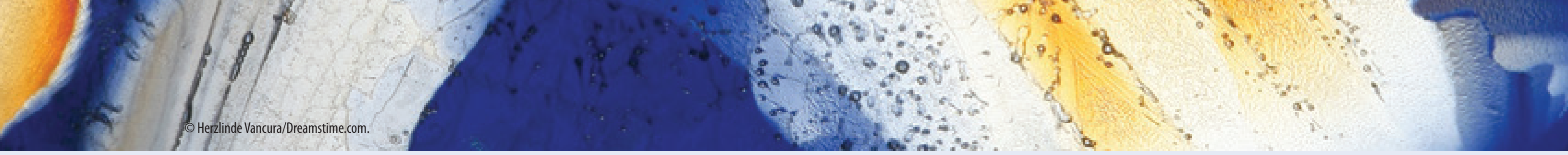
6048

Printed in the United States of America
22 21 20 19 18 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

To my Mum, who is no longer around to do those things that Mums do best.

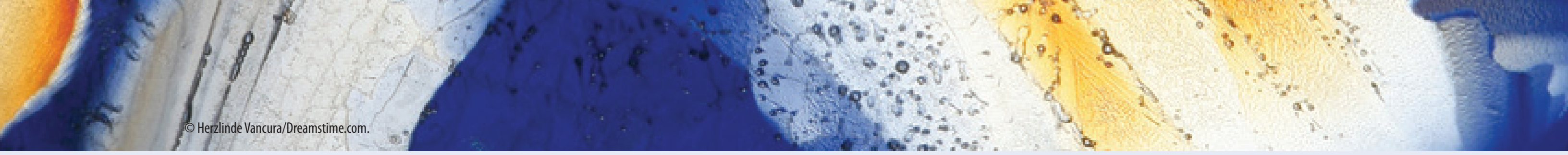
© Herzlinde Vancura/Dreamstime.com.

Brief Contents



© Herzlinde Vancura/Dreamstime.com.

Contents



Preface

The aim of the first edition of *Orthopaedics for the Physical Therapist Assistant* was to fill a void in the literature for the physical therapist assistant (PTA) student or clinician studying orthopaedics. The scope of practice for the PTA continues to evolve, requiring the PTA to stay current with the field of physical therapy. There is a vast amount of information available related to orthopaedics, and with both an ever-increasing demand for instant results and continuing advances in technology, the PTA is tasked with providing an efficient level of care while working with other members of the healthcare team.

Although the medical profession is moving toward an increased reliance on the findings from imaging studies, such as computed axial tomography (CAT) and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), physical therapy continues to rely on the subjective and objective findings from the physical examination. For any patient interaction to be successful, an accurate diagnosis is essential, and through the move toward evidence-based testing, the accuracy of the physical therapy diagnosis continues to be enhanced.

Once the correct diagnosis has been established, a carefully planned and specific rehabilitation program for both the affected area and its related structures must follow. This approach must take into consideration the anatomy and biomechanics of the involved structures and the stage of healing. Each intervention must be individualized to the patient, which requires an eclectic approach, because no single method works all of the time.

This text attempts to provide the student with the essential information regarding evidence-based guidelines for the assessment and rehabilitation of the orthopaedic patient.

New to the *Second Edition*

The feedback from the *First Edition* determined the modifications and additions for this edition. In this edition, three new chapters have been developed: one on general orthopaedic conditions that can impact multiple joints and systems (Chapter 5), another on the critical decision-making processes concerning how to progress a patient (Chapter 8), and a third that addresses cardiovascular conditioning, enhancing the focus that the previous edition had on therapeutic exercise (Chapter 15). In addition, information has been added throughout the text to help the PTA better understand the role of the physical therapist (PT) and to describe the majority of tests that they use as part of their examination and evaluation. As in the *First Edition*, the focus remains on evidence-based practices, and Key Points are used throughout to emphasize important concepts. From an aesthetic viewpoint, the photos and figures are now in color.

Some of the most significant updates to the *Second Edition* include the following:

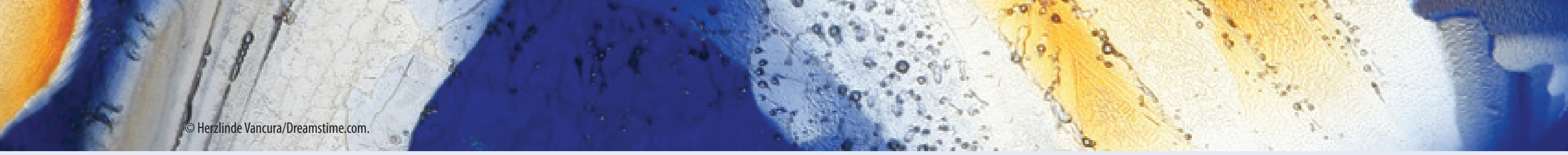
- Chapter 1 has been modified so that information on capsular patterns, manual muscle testing, and open- and close-packed positions has been transferred to the relevant chapters.
- Chapter 2 has condensed the information about the anatomy and biomechanics of the various musculoskeletal tissues so that the remaining chapters can focus more on orthopaedic assessment and treatment-related topics.
- Chapter 3 now includes updated details about the ever-evolving subject of concussion.
- Chapter 5 discusses the more common orthopaedic conditions that the PTA is likely to encounter. Because these conditions impact the whole body, they are afforded their own chapter.
- Chapter 6 provides much more detail about the physical therapist examination process in order to help the PTA understand the purposes behind each component.
- Chapter 8 was written to help the student PTA tackle what is perhaps one of the most difficult aspects of treatment—deciding how and when to progress a patient. Signs and symptoms that can act as guidelines are provided to help in that process.
- The chapters covering therapeutic exercise have been expanded to provide more examples, and a chapter about cardiovascular conditioning (Chapter 15) has been added. These chapters now

incorporate an enhanced explanation of exercise progressions, beginning with lower levels and progressing through the rehabilitation process to higher levels. Some more specific information related to exercise prescription, theory, and evidence is also included.

- Each of the joint chapters includes updated information on the pertinent anatomy and biomechanics, examination process, and a guide to the correct rehabilitation progression. At the end of each of these chapters, case studies are presented to help the student with the decision-making process.

I hope this text will be seen as the best available textbook, guide, review, and reference for orthopaedic students and practicing clinicians alike.

Mark Dutton



Features and Benefits

This text includes a range of pedagogical features to improve learning and retention.

Chapter Objectives are listed at the beginning of each chapter to guide the reader through the content and set the stage for focused reading. The Chapter Objectives are provided as a guide to assist students in identifying key learning outcomes.

CHAPTER OBJECTIVES

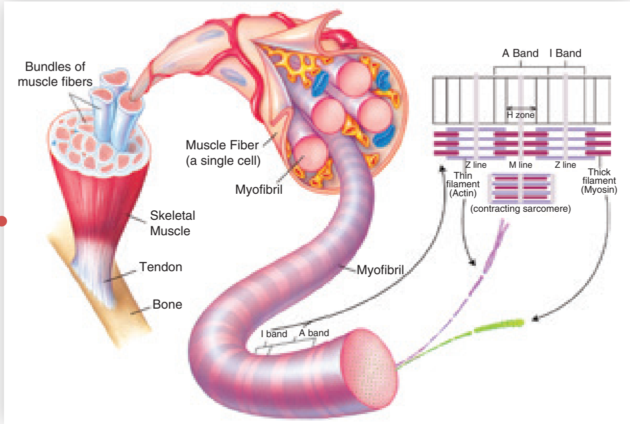
At the completion of this chapter, the reader will be able to:

1. Discuss the impact that direct access is having on the physical therapy profession.
2. Define evidence-based practice (EBP).
3. Describe the role of the physical therapist assistant (PTA) in the orthopaedic setting.
4. List the different members of the orthopaedic rehabilitation team and describe their respective roles.
5. Describe the model of disablement used by the *Guide to Physical Therapist Practice.*
6. Discuss the potential barriers to patient motivation and compliance.
7. Discuss the importance of cultural diversity.
8. Describe the various ways that the clinician can demonstrate empathy.
9. Describe the various components of patient education.
10. Discuss the recent changes in reimbursement (G-codes) and how productivity standards can impact reimbursement and patient care.

Overview

The American Physical Therapy Association (APTA) Vision Statement describes physical therapists (PTs) and physical therapist assistants (PTAs) as healthcare professionals who are "transforming society by optimizing movement to improve the human experience." The physical therapy team plays vital roles in today's healthcare environment, and it is recognized as an essential provider of rehabilitation and habilitation, performance enhancement, and prevention and risk-reduction services.[1] The management of the orthopaedic patient involves a complex relationship

The **Overview** at the beginning of each chapter provides the reader with an introductory synopsis of the content to be covered.



This edition features **full-color photographs and illustrations** that showcase relevant anatomy as well as a range of assessment and rehabilitation techniques.

Key Point boxes throughout the text emphasize important concepts.

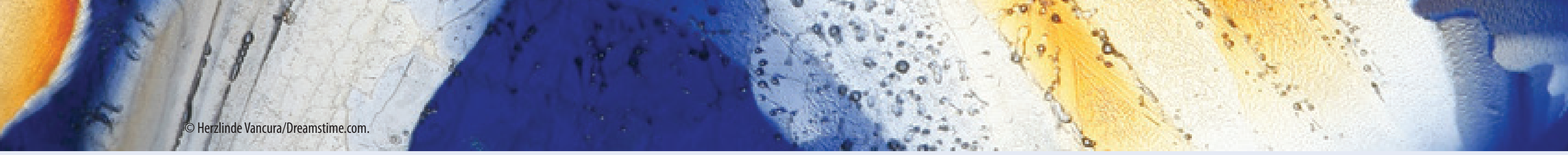
Case Study

You are completing a progress note on a patient who has a diagnosis of a radial nerve injury and carpal tunnel syndrome involving the right upper extremity.

1. Describe the areas where you would expect to see any sensory changes for each of these conditions.
2. Which muscles might you find to be weak with a radial nerve injury?
3.

The **Case Study** at the end of each chapter allows students to apply their knowledge to realistic scenarios through stimulating critical thinking questions.

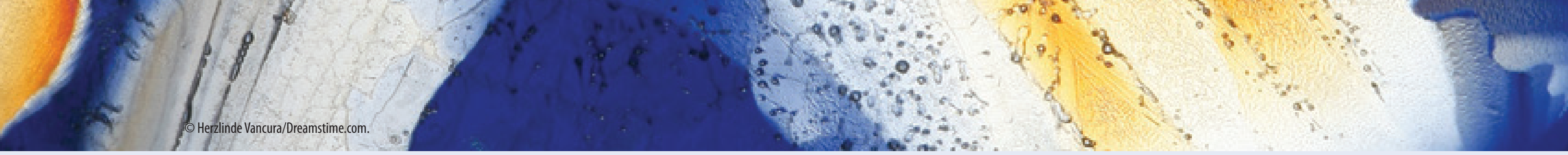
End-of-chapter **Review Questions** test the student's retention of key concepts, and they can be checked against the end-of-text **Answer Key**.


© Herzlinde Vancura/Dreamstime.com.

Acknowledgments

It is my firm belief that our accomplishments in life are due to a supporting cast of people who help shape, direct, and inspire. Therefore, I would like to thank the following:

- The team at Jones & Bartlett Learning: Sean Fabery, Product Manager; Hannah Dziezanowski, Product Assistant; Robert Furrier, Associate Production Editor; Thais Miller, Rights & Media Specialist; and Shannon Sheehan, Media Development Editor.
- My parents, for teaching me the importance of hard work and perseverance.
- Bob Davis, for his excellent eye during our photo shoots.
- Leah, for agreeing to be the photographic model.


© Herzlinde Vancura/Dreamstime.com.

Reviewers

Debra A. Belcher, PT, DPT
Associate Professor
Physical Therapist Assistant Program
Sinclair Community College
Dayton, Ohio

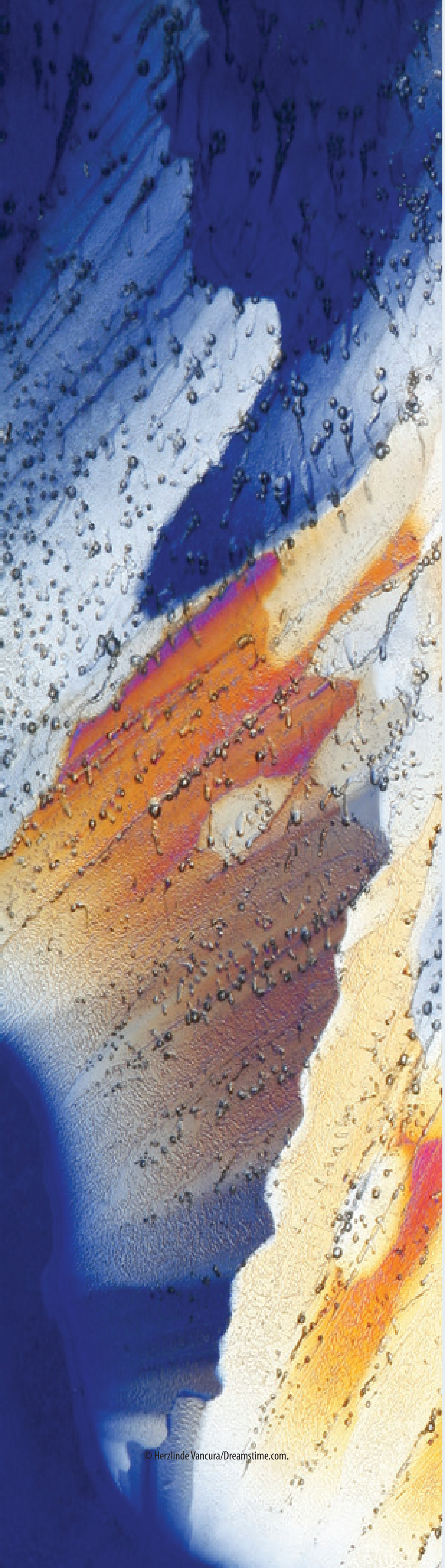
Lisa Bradley, PT, DPT, MSW
Program Director
Physical Therapist Assistant Program
Labette Community College
Parsons, Kansas

Shala Cunningham, PT, PhD, DPT, DMT, OCS, FAAOMPT
Assistant Professor
Department of Physical Therapy
Radford University
Radford, Virginia

Renae Gorman, PT, DPT, OCS
Assistant Professor and Director of Clinical Education
Physical Therapist Assistant Program
Springfield Technical Community College
Springfield, Massachusetts

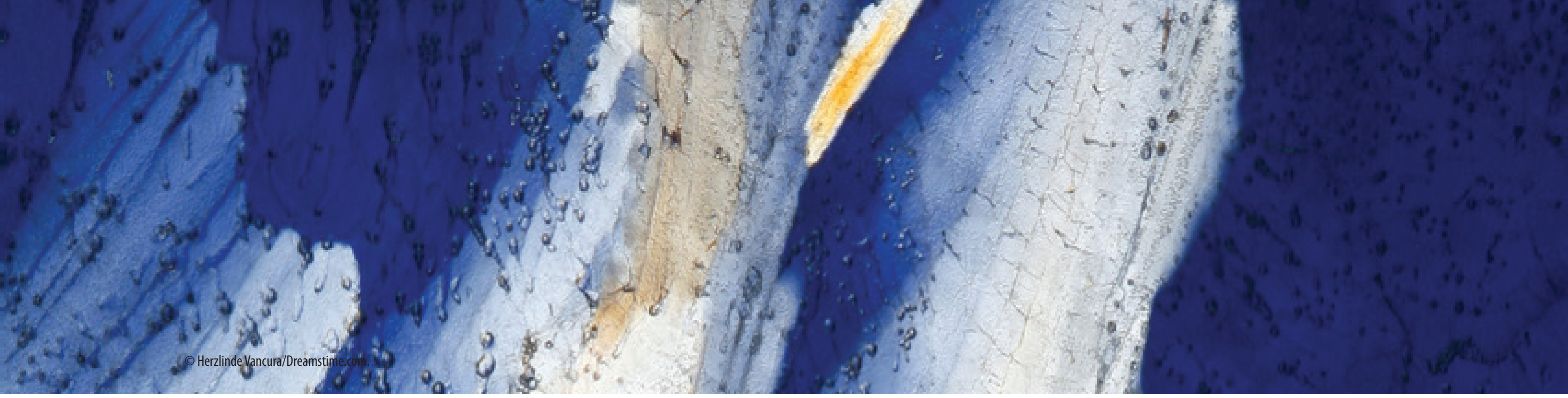
Ellen P. O'Keefe, PT, DPT
Program Chair
Physical Therapist Assistant Program
Athens Technical College
Athens, Georgia

Jackie Underwood, PTA, MS
Program Director and Assistant Professor
Physical Therapist Assistant Program
South Plains College
Levelland, Texas


© Herzlinde Vancura/Dreamstime.com.

SECTION I

Fundamentals


© Herzlinde Vancura/Dreamstime.com

CHAPTER 1

The Physical Therapist Assistant's Role in Orthopaedics

CHAPTER OBJECTIVES

At the completion of this chapter, the reader will be able to:

1. Discuss the impact that direct access is having on the physical therapy profession.
2. Define evidence-based practice (EBP).
3. Describe the role of the physical therapist assistant (PTA) in the orthopaedic setting.
4. List the different members of the orthopaedic rehabilitation team and describe their respective roles.
5. Describe the model of disablement used by the *Guide to Physical Therapist Practice*.
6. Discuss the potential barriers to patient motivation and compliance.
7. Discuss the importance of cultural diversity.
8. Describe the various ways that the clinician can demonstrate empathy.
9. Describe the various components of patient education.
10. Discuss the recent changes in reimbursement (G-codes) and how productivity standards can impact reimbursement and patient care.

Overview

The American Physical Therapy Association (APTA) Vision Statement describes physical therapists (PTs) and physical therapist assistants (PTAs) as health-care professionals who are "transforming society by optimizing movement to improve the human experience." The physical therapy team plays vital roles in today's healthcare environment, and it is recognized as an essential provider of rehabilitation and habilitation, performance enhancement, and prevention and risk-reduction services.[1] The management of the orthopaedic patient involves a complex relationship between the PT, the PTA, and the patient/client (while PTs see both patients and clients, for ease of reading, the term "patient/client" has been modified to "patient" throughout this text). The aim of the patient management process is to develop a rapport between the physical therapy team and the patient, while providing an efficient and effective exchange. The success of this process involves myriad skills. Successful physical therapy teams demonstrate effective teamwork and communication skills, clinical reasoning, critical judgment, creative decision making, knowledge, and competence. The PTA is an important member of this team. In addition to being responsible for an appropriate level of patient supervision, the PTA must work closely with the PT, with the PT guiding the PTA when modifications or adjustments need to be made in the patient's plan of care (POC).

Direct Access

At present, there is some form of direct access in all 50 states, the District of Columbia, and the U.S. Virgin Islands. However, there are only 18 states in which there is "unrestricted" patient access, and 26 states that have "patient access with provisions." The APTA has made it clear that the ultimate objective is unrestricted direct access in every state and locality. In those states where there is unrestricted patient access, PTs now have the primary responsibility for being the gatekeepers of health care, and for making medical referrals. A critical role for both the PT and PTA is to be able to recognize signs and symptoms that indicate serious pathology, the so-called *red flags*. Red flag findings are symptoms or conditions that may require immediate attention, and which supersede physical therapy being the primary provider of service, as they are typically indicative of non-neuromusculoskeletal conditions or pathologies of visceral origin. Detection of a red flag findings can be made when testing for vital signs (see Chapter 6) or from observation of the patient. For example, the presence of any of the following findings may indicate serious pathology requiring a medical referral:

- Fevers, chills, or reports of night sweats
- Recent unexplained weight changes
- Malaise or fatigue
- Unexplained nausea or vomiting
- Reports of unilateral, bilateral, or quadrilateral paresthesias
- Shortness of breath
- Dizziness
- Nystagmus
- Reports of bowel or bladder dysfunction, severe pain, and/or radiculopathy

Such findings necessitate the PTA to contact the PT immediately.

Evidence-Based Practice

Evidence-based practice (EBP) involves the integration of three key elements: (1) best research evidence from systematic research, (2) clinical expertise, and (3) patient values. Judging the strength of the evidence becomes an important part of the decision-making process.[2] The decision-making process as it relates to the PTA is described in Chapter 8.

One of the major problems in evaluating studies is that the volume of literature makes it difficult for the busy clinician to obtain and analyze all of the necessary evidence. Additionally, an understanding of how to appraise the quality of the evidence offered by clinical studies and deciding whether the results from the literature are definite enough to indicate an effect other than chance is essential.[3]

The Role of the Physical Therapist Assistant

A Normative Model of Physical Therapist Assistant Education[4] is a consensus-based report developed by the APTA that establishes educational outcomes and performance expectations for the entry-level PTA. The purpose of the document is to consistently define and describe entry-level PTA professional education by providing details on primary content, instructional objectives, terminal behavioral objectives, and clinical education. The Normative model states:

> The mission of PTA professional education is to graduate knowledgeable, service-oriented, self-assured, adaptable, reflective practitioners who, by virtue of critical and integrative thinking, lifelong learning, and ethical values, render independent judgments concerning patient/client needs that are supported by evidence; promote the health of the client; and enhance the professional, contextual, and collaborative foundations for practice.

The first principle of APTA's vision for the profession is to transform society by optimizing movement to improve the human experience. Accordingly, the foundation and core of physical therapy practice, education, and research is the movement system, a complex behavior within a particular context. Members of the physical therapy profession are trained to have a unique knowledge of the movement system so that they can detect abnormalities and then correct those abnormalities using movement-related interventions.

The *Guide to Physical Therapist Practice* was developed by the APTA to describe physical therapist practice and to briefly outline the roles of PTs and PTAs across a broad range of settings and practice opportunities.[1] The *Guide* describes three main practice areas:[1]

- *Primary care*. "The provision of integrated, accessible healthcare services by clinicians who are accountable for addressing a large majority of personal healthcare needs, developing a sustained partnership with patients, and practicing within the context of family and community."[5]

- *Secondary care*. Provided by PTs in a wide range of settings, including acute care and rehabilitation hospitals, outpatient clinics, home health, and school systems.
- *Tertiary care*. Provided by PTs in highly specialized, complex, and technology-based settings (e.g., heart and lung transplant services, burn units) or in response to the requests of other healthcare practitioners for consultation and specialized services (e.g., for individuals with spinal cord lesions or closed head trauma).

PTAs, under the direction and supervision of the PT, are the only individuals who assist a PT in the provision of selected interventions.

☑ KEY POINT

The APTA House of Delegates (HOD) first authorized the training of PTAs at the 1967 Annual Conference by adopting the policy statement *Training and Utilization of the Physical Therapist Assistant*. In 1977, the Commission on Accreditation in Education (CAE), the precursor to the Commission on Accreditation in Physical Therapy Education (CAPTE), was established and recognized by the U.S. Department of Education and by the Council on Postsecondary Accreditation. The activities of the CAE included accreditation of programs for PTAs.

☑ KEY POINT

Supervision of the PTA is governed by several factors including the following:

- APTA standards.
- Individual state and federal laws regulating practice acts, including administrative rules for practice. Supervision of the PTA may be spelled out separately from other support personnel, or the PTA may be included in language that defines supervision for all support personnel. When state laws do not delineate supervision requirements, PTs and PTAs should rely on the APTA guidelines. State regulations always supersede the APTA guidelines.
- Specifications of entitlement programs, such as Medicare.

It is the responsibility of the PT to examine the patient; evaluate the data and identify problems; determine the diagnosis, prognosis, and POC; and implement the POC (intervention).[1] (See Chapter 6 and Chapter 8.)

The PTA may help the PT with the initial examination, gathering specific data that the PT requests (**TABLE 1.1**). Following the initial examination, the PT evaluates the results of data collection and makes a judgment about data value. The PTA does not interpret the results of the initial examination. The PT establishes the goals or outcomes to be accomplished by the POC and treatment plan, and the PT and PTA perform the patient's interventions with the PTA performing selected interventions as directed by the PT. The PTA must always recognize when involvement of the PT is warranted.

☑ KEY POINT

The PTA is responsible for data collection; establishing and enhancing rapport, trust, and confidence with the patient; carrying out the PT's POC, assisting in the management of the patient by providing proper patient supervision, educating the patient, communicating with the PT; recording the patient's progress or lack of progress since the initial examination and evaluation, and providing clinical observation during treatment sessions. The PTA also may ask the PT to perform a reexamination as appropriate.

☑ KEY POINT

When performing data collection, it is important for the PTA to consider why a change in patient status has occurred. For example, when the PTA is using a goniometer to measure a patient's knee range of motion and finds that the patient is unable to perform the last 5 degrees of extension, the PTA should begin thinking about the possible reasons why the patient is unable to achieve full knee extension (e.g., swelling, pain, contracture, etc.). However, the PTA is obligated to consult with the supervising PT before making any changes outside of the POC.

Strong interpersonal communication between the patient and the PTA, together with keen observation skills, are needed for the PTA to function effectively and efficiently in conjunction with the PT. Sharp observation involves the PTA closely monitoring the

TABLE 1.1 Essential Data Collection Skills for the PTA Carrying Out an Orthopaedic Plan of Care

Aerobic Capacity and Endurance
Measures standard vital signs
Recognizes and monitors responses to positional changes and activities
Observes and monitors thoracoabdominal movements and breathing patterns with activity

Anthropometrical Characteristics
Measures height, weight, length, and girth

Arousal, Mentation, and Cognition
Recognizes changes in the direction and magnitude of patient's state of arousal, mentation, and cognition

Assistive, Adaptive, Orthotic, Protective, Supportive, and Prosthetic Devices
Identifies the individual's and caregiver's ability to care for the device
Recognizes changes in skin condition while using devices and equipment
Recognizes safety factors while using the device

Gait, Locomotion, and Balance
Describes the safety, status, and progression of a patient while engaged in gait, locomotion, and balance

Integumentary Integrity
Recognizes absent or altered sensation
Recognizes normal and abnormal integumentary changes

Joint Integrity and Mobility
Recognizes normal and abnormal joint movement

Muscle Performance
Measures muscle strength by manual muscle testing
Observes the presence or absence of muscle mass
Recognizes normal and abnormal muscle length
Recognizes changes in muscle tone

Pain
Administers standardized questionnaires, graphs, behavioral scales, or visual analog scales for pain
Recognizes activities, positioning, and postures that aggravate or relieve pain or altered sensations

Posture
Describes resting posture in any position
Recognizes alignment of trunk and extremities at rest and during activities

Range of Motion
Measures functional range of motion
Measures range of motion using a goniometer

Applicable Standards
Adjusts interventions within the POC established by the PT in response to patient clinical indications and reports this to the supervising PT

Recognizes when an intervention should not be provided due to changes in the patient's status, and reports this to the supervising PT

Reports any changes in the patient's status to the supervising PT

Recognizes when the direction to perform an intervention is beyond that which is appropriate for a PTA and initiates clarification with the PT

Participates in educating patients and caregivers as directed by the supervising PT

Provides patient-related instruction to patients, family members, and caregivers to achieve patient outcomes based on the plan of care established by the PT

Takes appropriate action in an emergency situation

Completes thorough, accurate, logical, concise, timely, and legible documentation that follows guidelines and specific documentation formats required by state practice acts, the practice setting, and other regulatory agencies

Participates in discharge planning and follow-up as directed by the supervising PT

Reads and understands the healthcare literature

Adapted from http://www.capteonline.org/AccreditationHandbook/, with permission of the American Physical Therapy Association. © 2017 American Physical Therapy Association.

patient's response to any of the interventions, and taking the necessary action to alert the supervising PT. In addition, much of what the PTA does involves sound decision-making (see Chapter 8) based on the recognition of subtle or profound changes in a patient's status, results from the vital signs (see Chapter 6), and correct interpretation of patient reports of items such as pain, fatigue, shortness of breath, and dizziness that may need to be reported to the PT.

Appearance

The appearance of the clinician is important to project a professional image. With each interaction, the patient is, consciously or subconsciously, formulating an opinion about the clinic environment and the entire clinical staff, from the receptionist to all members of the rehabilitation team. These patient observations continue throughout each session irrespective of whether a staff member is interacting directly with the patient, conversing with another patient, or communicating with another staff member. The patient also is likely to notice any nonverbal cues, such as voice volume, postures, mannerisms, gestures, and eye contact. Nonverbal cues are especially important as they often are performed subconsciously and can be misinterpreted. (See Chapter 6.) Most clinical facilities have a dress code in addition to a mandatory name tag. A dress code is designed to not offend patients or other members of the rehabilitation team and typically includes instructions on how to achieve the following:

- To prevent overexposure of the clinician. Most clinics do not allow the staff to wear clothing that exposes their midriff or armpits. Some clinics have strict guidelines for the number and location of exposed piercings and tattoos, hair color, and the use of nail polish.
- To prevent injury to a patient or staff member from jewelry, such as dangling earrings, necklaces, or bracelets.

The Rehabilitation Team

The responsibility for the patient's care is shared by the entire rehabilitation team, of which the PTA is a vital member (**TABLE 1.2**). As with the remainder of the team, the PTA must be responsible and accountable. The responsibility for the patient's care, however,

TABLE 1.2 Potential Key Members of the Orthopaedic Rehabilitation Team

Personnel	Function
Orthopaedic surgeon	Concerned with conditions involving the musculoskeletal system. Orthopaedic surgeons use both surgical and nonsurgical approaches to treat musculoskeletal trauma, sports injuries, degenerative diseases, infections, tumors, and congenital disorders.
Physiatrist	A physician specializing in physical medicine and rehabilitation, certified by the American Board of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation. The primary role of the physiatrist is to diagnose and treat patients with disabilities involving musculoskeletal, neurological, cardiovascular, or other body systems.
Primary care physician (PCP)	A practitioner, usually an internist, general practitioner, or family medicine physician, providing primary care services and managing routine healthcare needs. Most PCPs serve as gatekeepers for managed-care health organizations, providing authorization for referrals to other specialty physicians or services, including physical therapy.
Chiropractor (DC)	A doctor trained in the science, art, and philosophy of chiropractic. A chiropractic evaluation and treatment provides a structural analysis of the musculoskeletal and neurological systems of the body. According to chiropractic doctrine, abnormal function of these two systems may affect function of other systems in the body.

(continues)

TABLE 1.2 Potential Key Members of the Orthopaedic Rehabilitation Team *(continued)*

Personnel	Function
Physical therapy director/manager	Typically a PT who has demonstrated qualifications based on education and experience in the field of physical therapy and who has accepted the inherent responsibilities of the role. He or she establishes guidelines and procedures that will delineate the functions and responsibilities of all levels of physical therapy personnel in the department and the supervisory relationships inherent to the functions of the department and the health system. This person also ensures that the objectives of the service are efficiently and effectively achieved within the framework of the stated purpose of the organization and in accordance with safe physical therapist practice, interprets administrative policies, acts as a liaison between line staff and administration, and fosters the professional growth of the staff.
Staff physical therapist (PT)	The staff PT is responsible for the examination, evaluation, diagnosis, prognosis, and intervention of patients. He or she assists in the supervision of physical therapy personnel in the service.
Physical therapist assistant (PTA)	A PTA works under the supervision of a PT. Care provided by a PTA may include teaching patients/clients exercises for mobility, strength, and coordination, and training patients for activities such as walking with crutches, canes, or walkers, and using adjunctive interventions. The PTA may modify an intervention only in accordance with changes in patient status and within the established plan of care developed by the PT.
PT/OT aide	Aides are support personnel who may be involved in support services directed by PTs and PTAs. They receive on-the-job training and are permitted to function only with continuous on-site supervision by a PT, or in some cases, a PTA. Their duties are limited to those methods and techniques that do not require clinical decision making or clinical problem solving by a PT or a PTA.
PT or PTA student	The PT or PTA student can perform duties commensurate with their level of education. The PT clinical instructor (CI) is responsible for all actions and duties of the affiliating student, and can supervise both PT and PTA students. (A PTA may only supervise a PTA student, not a PT student.)
Volunteer	A member of the community who is interested in assisting with rehab departmental activities. Responsibilities include taking phone messages and basic nonclinical/secretarial duties. Volunteers may not provide or set up patient treatment, transfer patients, clean whirlpools, or maintain equipment.
Occupational therapist (OT)	Assess functioning in activities of everyday living, including dressing, bathing, grooming, meal preparation, writing, and driving, which are essential for independent living. The minimum educational requirements for the registered OT are described in the current *Essentials and Guidelines of an Accredited Educational Program for the Occupational Therapist*.
Certified OT assistant (COTA)	Works under the direction of an OT. He or she performs a variety of rehabilitative activities and exercises as outlined in an established treatment plan. The minimum educational requirements for the COTA are described in the current *Essentials and Guidelines of an Accredited Educational Program for the Occupational Therapy Assistant*.

TABLE 1.2 Potential Key Members of the Orthopaedic Rehabilitation Team *(continued)*

Personnel	Function
Certified orthotist (CO)	Designs, fabricates, and fits orthoses (e.g., braces, splints, collars, corsets), prescribed by physicians, to patients with disabling conditions of the limbs and spine.
Certified prosthetist (CP)	Designs, fabricates, and fits prostheses for patients with partial or total absence of a limb.
Physician assistant (PA)	A medically trained professional who can provide many of the healthcare services traditionally performed by a physician, such as taking medical histories and doing physical examinations, making a diagnosis, and prescribing and administering therapies.
Nurse practitioner (NP)	A registered nurse with additional specialized graduate-level training who can perform physical exams and diagnostic tests, counsel patients, and develop treatment programs.
Athletic trainer–certified (ATC)	A professional specializing in athletic health care. In cooperation with the physician and other allied health personnel, the athletic trainer functions as an integral member of the athletic healthcare team in secondary schools, colleges and universities, sports medicine clinics, professional sports programs, and other athletic healthcare settings.

also requires the active participation of the patient. **TABLE 1.3** provides the standards for the PTA's role in administering physical therapy.

☑ KEY POINT

The PTA should always be looking for ways to establish relationships with the other team members and to use the resources that they can provide.

TABLE 1.3 The PTA's Role in Administration

Administration
Standard 3.3.2.21. Interacts with other members of the healthcare team in patient-care and non–patient-care activities
Standard 3.3.2.22. Provides accurate and timely information for billing and reimbursement purposes
Standard 3.3.2.23. Describes aspects of organizational planning and operation of the physical therapy service
Standard 3.3.2.24. Participates in performance improvement activities (quality assurance)

Data from Accreditation Handbook: PTA Criteria, Appendix A-3.

Fundamental differences involving protocols and treatment approaches can exist among the members of the rehabilitation team due to different backgrounds and types of education; these can place the PTA in uncomfortable situations. For example, when transferring the patient from a bed to a chair, a nurse may insist that the PTA transfers the patient using a technique that the PTA considers will put the patient at increased risk. Differences also may exist within the physical therapy team, as most PTs have a varied background in terms of extracurricular education and experience, which can make them lean toward certain treatment philosophies. For example, a PT that is certified in the McKenzie method may approach a patient differently than a PT who uses the Maitland approach. The PTA must use these scenarios as opportunities for communication, learning, and increased understanding of the other team members.

Models of Disablement

A disablement model is designed to detail the functional consequences of and relationships among disease, impairment, and functional limitations (**TABLE 1.4**). The PTA's understanding of the process

TABLE 1.4 Disablement Model Comparisons

The International Classification of Functioning, Disability, and Health (ICFDH-I)	Nagi Disablement Model	The International Classification of Functioning, Disability, and Health (ICFDH-II)
Disease The intrinsic pathology or disorder	Pathology/Pathophysiology Interruption of or interference with normal processes and efforts of an organism to regain normal state	Health Condition Dysfunction of a body function and/or structure
Impairment Loss or abnormality of psychological, physiologic, or anatomic structure or function	Impairment Anatomic, physiologic, mental, or emotional abnormalities or loss	Impairment Problems in body function or structure such as a significant deviation or loss
Disability Restriction or lack of ability to perform an activity in a normal manner	Functional Limitation Limitation in performance at the level of the whole organism or person	Activity Limitation Limitation in execution of a task or action by an individual
Handicap Disadvantage or disability that limits or prevents fulfillment of a normal role (depends on age, gender, and sociocultural factors for the person)	Disability Limitation in performance of socially defined roles and tasks within a sociocultural and physical environment	Participation Restriction Prevents fulfillment of involvement in a life situation

of disablement, and the factors that affect its development, is crucial to achieving the goal of restoring or improving function and reducing disability in the individual. The *Guide to Physical Therapist Practice* employs terminology from the Nagi disablement model (an example of which is shown in **TABLE 1.5**),[6] but also describes its framework as being consistent with other disablement models.[7] In 1980, the Executive Board of the World Health Organization (WHO) published a document for trial purposes, the *International Classification of Functioning, Disability, and Health* (ICFDH-I or ICF). In 2001, a revised edition was published (ICFDH-II). In 2008, the APTA HOD endorsed the ICF because of its focus on the components of health rather than on the consequences of disease, and because environmental and personal factors were considered as important determinants of health functioning.[8]

The ICF has two major parts:[1]

- Part 1 is a description of the components of functioning and disability that are associated with a health condition and includes body functions and body structures and the changes that occur in them, activities that the person carries out, and the participation of the person in life situations. Activities and participation can be further qualified by

TABLE 1.5 Example of Nagi Disablement Model

Pathology/Pathophysiology	Impairment	Related Functional Limitation	Disability
Osteoarthritis	Loss of range of motion (ROM) Muscle weakness	Slow, painful gait—unable to ambulate 20 feet in 9 seconds Unable to rise from chair Unable to ascend/descend 10 steps	Does not leave house

considering a person's capacity (i.e., what could be done in a controlled environment), and performance (i.e., what the person actually does in his or her current environment). Functioning is used to encompass all body functions and structures, activities, and participation; conversely, disability is used to encompass impairments of body functions and structures, activity limitations, and participation restrictions. Functioning and disability exist along a continuum of health.

- Part 2 is a description of the contextual factors. Among contextual factors are external environmental factors (e.g., social attitudes, architectural characteristics, legal and social structures, and climate and terrain) and internal personal factors (e.g., gender, age, coping styles, social background, education, profession, past and current experience, overall behavior pattern, character, and other factors) that influence how disability is experienced by the individual. Personal factors are not yet classified by the ICF, but do influence functioning.

Personality

A clinician's personality type can influence the interactions with patients in terms of reassurance and trust. Personality has been studied for centuries and several models have gained more popularity. One commonly used model, based on the work of psychologist William Marston, is known as the DISC personality model.

- *Dominance*. Relates to exerting control, power, and assertiveness. The clinician must be aware that there is a possibility that this trait can be interpreted as demonstrating hostility and indifference.
- *Influence*. Relates to an individual's ability to control social situations and communication. This personality trait can be useful for the clinician.
- *Steadiness*. Relates to patience, persistence, and thoughtfulness. These are key traits for a clinician to possess.
- *Compliance*. Relates to structure and organization.

Ideally, the clinician's personality should be a blend of these traits so that he or she purveys an air of interest, acceptance, and especially, empathy.

Values and Beliefs

Throughout life, every individual consciously or otherwise develops a system of values and beliefs that have been honed by prior experiences. Values and beliefs guide actions and behavior and help to form attitudes toward different people and situations. Values are characteristics that are considered important to an individual. Examples include concepts like loyalty, perseverance, honesty, and effort. Beliefs are expectations that are made based on life experiences. Examples include racial equality, gender bias, and religion. Bias, whether it be positive or negative, can impact someone's beliefs. The most common negative biases of healthcare workers involve the following:

- Race/ethnicity
- Gender
- Ageism
- Obesity
- Disability

It is important that the PTA forms judgments that are not critical, biased, or based on disapproval. Instead, conscious effort should be made to accept differences that serve the well-being of the patients.

Cultural Influences

It is important that clinicians are sensitive to cultural issues in their interactions with patients. Cultural influences shape the framework within which people view the world, define and organize reality, and function in their everyday life. In many cases individuals group themselves on the basis of cultural similarities, and as a result, form cultural groups.

☑ KEY POINT

Ethnocentrism is the tendency to believe that one's ethnic or cultural group is centrally important, and that all other groups are measured in relation to one's own. The ethnocentric individual will judge other groups relative to his or her own particular ethnic group or culture, especially with concern to language, behavior, customs, and religion. An example would be a patient believing they would receive a better level of care if they are seen by a clinician of the same race and religion.

Cultural groups share behavioral patterns, symbols, values, beliefs, and other characteristics that distinguish them from other groups. At the group level, cultural differences are generally variations of differing emphasis or value placed on particular practices. Whenever possible, the PTA should use any available resource, such as an interpreter.

In a similar fashion, PTAs need to be sensitive to the needs of lesbian, gay, bisexual, and transgender

(LGBT) patients and treat them as individuals. This is particularly true with regard to transgender patients, who often face healthcare discrimination, due in part to a lack of transgender-specific initiatives within healthcare institutions or professional associations. Although the APTA Code of Ethics does not specifically address people who are transgender, Principle 1 states that "Physical therapists shall respect the inherent dignity and rights of all individuals." Principle 1A adds, "Physical therapists shall act in a respectful manner toward each person regardless of age, gender, race, nationality, religion, ethnicity, social or economic status, sexual orientation, health condition, or disability." To help bridge the gap and to decrease concerns, clinicians should attend cultural competency training. In addition, clinics can modify their intake forms to include questions such as "What was your gender assigned at birth?" and "What is your current gender identity?" and, where feasible, have gender-neutral restrooms. What follows are some terms related to transgender issues:

- *Transgender*. This term is used for people whose gender identity and/or expression is different from cultural expectations based on the gender they were assigned at birth. This population may identify as straight, gay, lesbian, bisexual, etc.
- *Gender identity*. This is how people perceive themselves: as male, female, a blend of both, or neither. One's gender identity can be different or the same from their gender assigned at birth.
- *Gender expression*. This is how an individual expresses themselves through behavior, clothing, hairstyle, and/or voice.

Motivation and Compliance

Many factors can contribute to the patient's resistance to improvement. In some cases, it may be an individual factor that, when eliminated, will allow the patient to respond well. In the majority of cases, the resistance to improvement is based on the interaction of multiple factors, which must be recognized and corrected. Patient motivation and compliance are paramount in the rehabilitation program.

Motivation

Anecdotally, unmotivated patients may progress more slowly. Much literature has conceptualized or reported poor motivation in rehabilitation as secondary to patient-related factors, including depression, apathy, cognitive impairment, low self-efficacy (e.g., low confidence in one's ability to successfully rehabilitate), fatigue, and personality factors.[9]

Compliance

Compliance is vitally important and varies from patient to patient. Several factors that have been outlined to improve compliance are as follows:[10–12]

- Involving the patient in the intervention planning and goal setting
- Setting realistic short- and long-term goals
- Promoting high expectations regarding final outcome
- Promoting perceived benefits
- Projecting a positive attitude
- Providing clear instructions and demonstrations with appropriate feedback
- Keeping the exercises pain-free or with a low level of pain
- Encouraging patient problem solving

☑ KEY POINT

Various studies have found that compliance with physical therapy programs is approximately 40 percent.

Patient Education

Patient-related instruction forms the cornerstone of every intervention and POC (**TABLE 1.6**). It is imperative that the PTA spend time educating the patient about his or her condition, so the patient can fully understand the importance of his or her role in the rehabilitation process and become an educated consumer. Educating the patient about strategies to adopt in order to prevent recurrences and to self-manage his or her condition is also important to ensure an interactive environment. The aim of patient education is to create independence, not dependence, and to foster an atmosphere of learning in the clinic. A detailed explanation should be given to the patient in a language

TABLE 1.6 The Role of the PTA in Patient Education

Education
Standard 3.3.2.19. Under the direction and supervision of the physical therapist, instructs other members of the healthcare team using established techniques, programs, and instructional materials commensurate with the learning characteristics of the audience
Standard 3.3.2.20. Educates others about the role of the physical therapist assistant

Adapted from http.//www.capteonline.org/AccreditationHandbook/, with permission of the American Physical Therapy Association. © 2017 American Physical Therapy Association.

that he or she can understand. This explanation should include the following:

- *The name of the structure(s) involved, and the cause of the problem.* Whenever possible, an illustration or model of the involved structure should be shown to the patient to explain principles in layperson's terms.
- *Information about the interventions that are planned, and the PT's prognosis for the problem.* An estimation of healing time is useful for the patient, so he or she does not become frustrated at a perceived lack of progress.
- *What the patient can and cannot do.* This includes the allowed use of the joint or area, and a brief description about the relevant stage of healing and the vulnerability of the various structures during the pertinent healing phase. This information makes the patient aware and more cautious when performing activities of daily living (ADLs), recreational activities, and the home exercise program. Emphasis should be placed on dispelling the myth of "no pain, no gain." Instead, patients should be encouraged to respect pain. Also, patients often have misconceptions about when to use heat and ice, and it is the role of the clinician to clarify such issues.
- *Home exercise program.* Before instructing a patient on his or her home exercise program (HEP), the PTA should take into consideration the time that will be needed to perform the program. In addition, the level of tolerance and motivation for exercise varies among individuals, and it is based on their diagnosis and stage of healing. A short series of exercises, performed more frequently during the day, should be prescribed for patients with poor endurance or when the emphasis is functional reeducation. Longer programs, performed less frequently, are aimed at building strength or endurance. Each HEP needs to be individualized to meet the patient's specific needs. The patient's HEP should start on the first day of intervention and continue through and beyond the day of discontinuation of physical therapy. At the earliest opportunity, the patient must be educated about the signs and symptoms that warrant discontinuation of an exercise and when the PT or physician should be contacted. The HEP must be modified continuously and follow the guidelines in **TABLE 1.7**. Any prescribed exercise should be simple, and instructions should include the frequency, number of repetitions, number of sets, how long to hold, the amount of exercise resistance, and the position for performing the exercise. Whenever possible, pictures of the exercises should be provided to maximize carryover.

TABLE 1.7 Basic Requirements for the Home Exercise Program (HEP)

The HEP should be organized, concise, and written in layperson's terms (fifth- or sixth-grade reading level) using a font size of 12 points or larger.
The HEP should represent an extension of the interventions.
The HEP should include uncomplicated diagrams or pictures.

Data from Dreeben O: *Introduction to physical therapy for physical therapist assistants.* Sudbury, MA, Jones & Bartlett Learning, 2007.

☑ KEY POINT

Educational materials need to be written in plain language, and they must use the same words consistently. Sentences should be short and simple, with each item preceded by a bullet point. Instructions should be taught one step at a time using appropriate demonstrations and descriptions.

There are probably as many ways to teach as there are to learn. The PTA needs to be aware that people may have different preferences for how, when, where, and how often to learn. It is not within the scope of this text to discuss all of the theories on learning, but an overview of the major concepts is merited. Litzinger and Osif[13] organized individuals into four main types of learners, based on instructional strategies:

1. *Accommodators.* This type of learner relies heavily on other people for information rather than on their own analytic ability, often enjoy being active participants in their learning, and will ask many questions, such as, "What if?" and "Why not?" For example, when instructing such a patient about the precautions following a total hip replacement, the patient may ask why they are being told not to place any weight through the involved hip. (See Chapter 23.)
2. *Divergers.* This type is motivated to discover the relevancy of a given situation and prefers to have information presented in a detailed, systematic, and reasoned manner. For example, this type of learner prefers to have the information provided in a sequential fashion with the rationale for each stage.

3. *Assimilators.* This type is motivated to answer the question, "What is there to know?" These learners like accurate, organized delivery of information, and they tend to respect the knowledge of the expert. They are perhaps less instructor-intensive than some other types of learners and will carefully follow prescribed exercises, provided a resource person is clearly available and able to answer questions. For example, this type would respond well to clear verbal and written instructions, the rationale behind the exercises, and specific details regarding how often the exercises should be performed.
4. *Convergers.* This type of learner can make decisions and apply practical ideas to solve problems. Generally, these people can organize knowledge by using hypothetical deductive reasoning. The instructions given to this type of learner should be interactive, not passive. For example, this type responds well to being asked to demonstrate an exercise rather than hearing a description.

Another frequently used way of classifying learners describes three common learning styles:

1. *Visual.* As the name suggests, the visual learner assimilates information by observation, using visual cues and information such as pictures, anatomic models, and physical demonstrations.
2. *Auditory.* Auditory learners prefer to learn by having things explained to them verbally.
3. *Tactile.* Tactile learners, who learn through touch and interaction, are the most difficult of the three groups to teach. Close supervision is required with this group until they have demonstrated to the clinician that they can perform the exercises correctly and independently. Proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation (PNF) techniques, with the emphasis on physical and tactile cues, often work well with this group. (See Chapter 9.)

A patient's learning style can be identified by asking how he or she prefers to learn. Some patients prefer a simple handout with pictures and instructions; others prefer to see the exercises demonstrated and then be supervised while they perform the exercises. Some may want to know why they are doing the exercises, which muscles are involved, why they are doing three sets of a particular exercise, and so on. Others will require less explanation.

☑ KEY POINT

When educating a patient who has a hearing impairment, the PTA should choose a quiet environment, face the patient, and speak clearly without exaggerating the pronunciation.

If in doubt about the patient's learning style, it is recommended that each exercise first be demonstrated by the clinician and then by the patient, both at the end of a session and at the beginning of the next session. The rationale and purpose behind each of the exercises must be given, as well as the frequency and intensity expected.

☑ KEY POINT

The PTA should always consider cultural diversity and pay attention to nonverbal communication such as voice volume, postures, gestures, and eye contact.

It is important that the patient view his or her rehabilitative progression with a healthy respect for pain, combined with the importance of returning to normal levels of function as early as possible. The assessment of pain is described in Chapter 6. Pain is, unfortunately, a necessary component of the healing process; however, the patient needs to be educated about what constitutes healing pain in comparison to harmful pain (an increase in pain that lasts more than 2–4 hours). Clear instructions must be given to the patient on how to recognize injurious pain and how to avoid additional strain.

The frequency and duration of the patient's care need to be addressed with the PT. The common practice is to see patients two to three times per week; however, this is not always necessary, particularly with well-motivated patients. It is the duty of all clinicians to make the patient's visit meaningful. Clinic visits must include a level of skilled intervention that the patient cannot receive in the home environment. Placing the patient on a hot pack and then having him or her perform a routine rehabilitation program that is not constantly being updated or modified is a waste of the patient's time and does little to foster public confidence in the profession. Each session must have a purpose. The PTA should attempt to explain any gains or losses the patient has made since the previous session and provide the possible reasons. New goals should be discussed, and any changes to the intervention plan and their rationale should be discussed with the PT and then the patient.

Privacy and Patient Confidentiality

A patient's privacy and dignity should be maintained at all times. Whenever appropriate, the clinician should ask permission from the patient before carrying out an action (moving the patient's belongings, sitting down, etc.). The full name of the patient is considered Protected Health Information (PHI) under the Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act (HIPAA). Therefore, many facilities use the first name only, or the first name and middle or last initial.

In the majority of situations, the patient's written authorization is required for the release of medical information. For example, authorization is required for the release of medical information for the following reasons:

- To any member of the patient's family (except where a member of the family has received durable power of attorney for healthcare agencies)
- To the patient's attorney or insurance company
- To the patient's employer (unless a workers' compensation claim is involved)

Reimbursement

The Middle Class Tax Relief and Jobs Creation Act (MCTRJCA) of 2012 amended the Social Security Act to require a claims-based data collection system for outpatient therapy services (Medicare and Medicaid services), including physical therapy (PT), occupational therapy (OT), and speech-language pathology (SLP) services. The system collects data included on Medicare claim forms to better understand beneficiary conditions, outcomes, and expenditures to establish an evidence-based connection between rehab therapy treatment and patient progress. Originally, inclusion of the G-codes was required to fulfill requirements for Physician Quality Reporting System (PQRS) and Functional Limitation Reporting (FLR). Physical therapists in private practice have participated in the PQRS since 2007. However, effective January 1, 2017, PQRS was moved into the Merit-based Incentive Payment System (MIPS) which, in turn, is part of the new Quality Payment Program (QPP) created by the Medicare Access and Children's Health Insurance Program (CHIP) Reauthorization Act of 2015 (MACRA). Although rehab therapists currently no longer have to report G-codes for PQRS, they still have to submit the FLR G-codes, at least for the time being (PTs are not yet included in mandated reporting under MIPS but are likely to be added in 2019).

Beneficiary function information is reported using 42 nonpayable FLR G-codes (14 sets of three codes each) and seven severity/complexity modifiers on claims for PT, OT, and SLP services. Eight sets of G-codes generally describe SLP functional limitations, while six of the G-code sets generally describe PT and OT functional limitations. (See Appendix G for further information.) Clinicians must report functional limitation data in the form of G-codes together with the corresponding severity and therapy modifiers at the initial examination, at a minimum of every tenth visit, and at discharge for all patients who have Medicare proper as their primary or secondary insurance. Medicare does not reimburse providers who submit claims lacking FLR data.

Once MIPS is introduced into physical therapy practices, there will be four distinct performance categories:

- *Quality*. Includes clinical process and outcome measures, many of which were reported under the PQRS requirements. The goal will be to decrease provider burden, while preserving independent clinical practice.
- *Cost*. Promotes the adoption of alternative payment models (APMs) to align incentives across all healthcare stakeholders, which are based on the severity of specific conditions or diseases, episodes of care, or different patient populations. In essence, the APMs are designed to offer participating clinicians incentive payments for improving quality while reducing care costs. Advanced APMs offer participants opportunities to earn higher incentive payments for taking on additional risks based on patient outcome measures.
- *Advancing care information*. Promotes patient engagement and the electronic exchange of information using certified electronic health record technology.
- *Improvement activities*. Includes activities that improve clinical practice, such as shared decision making, increasing practice access, patient safety population management, and care coordination.

Private practices will have two tracks from which to choose:

- *MIPS*. Under the MIPS, an eligible practice earns points in each performance category to produce a total annual MIPS score, which determines whether the practice earns a payment incentive, remains neutral in payment, or is subject to a penalty.
- *Advanced APM*. Under this system, practices may earn a Medicare incentive payment for participating

in an existing innovative payment model or one that the practice proposes and is approved. Currently, providers are eligible to take part in an advanced APM if they receive at least 25 percent of their Medicare part B payments through the advanced APM, or if they deliver care to at least 20 percent of their Medicare patients through the advanced APM.

Productivity

In an era of increased demands for efficiency, the performance of PTAs is increasingly being judged by employer-established productivity standards. Productivity is essentially a balance between quality and quantity and can be measured by employers in a variety of ways. For example, productivity can be measured by patients per day or by number of charges (CPT codes) per patient.

These productivity standards can place the clinician in a difficult position, especially when the clinician feels that he or she has to perform interventions that are not evidence-based and not beneficial for the patient in order to generate a sufficient number of charges. Productivity standards have a tendency to switch the emphasis from patient-focused to volume-driven patient care, and they can create conflict between the need for more revenue and the importance placed on the clinician's clinical judgment and professional expertise.

If the goal is to improve individual patient outcomes, improve the health of populations, and reduce costs, then quality must be measured over quantity and value over volume. One of the issues with productivity standards when they use the number of CPT codes charged per patient by a clinician is that time spent on patient education, meeting with the patient's family or social worker, and documentation are not taken into consideration. Another issue with this method is that it does not take into account the type of patient being seen by the clinician. For example, a clinician seeing an orthopedic patient who has significant comorbidities requires more time to rest between activities than a young, athletic patient. Finally, in an outpatient setting the cancellation/no-show rate can significantly impact productivity. The PTA can play a vital role in maintaining appropriate productivity by being efficient with documentation, preparing equipment necessary for patient care ahead of time, and by appropriately delegating tasks to physical therapy aides.

Summary

The role of the PTA in the orthopaedic setting continues to evolve, and the responsibilities placed on the PTA continue to increase. With this increased responsibility comes the need to be fully prepared by having a sound knowledge base from which to work. However, what has not changed is the importance of communication among the PTA, the PT, the patient, and other members of the healthcare team.

Learning Portfolio

Case Study

A new manager has been appointed at your clinic and she has been reviewing the productivity levels of the department. She calls a morning staff meeting and decides to give the staff the option to vote between two productivity standards: (1) patients per day and (2) charges per patient.

1. If you were voting, which of the two options would you choose? Why?

Later that morning, a patient who is not on the schedule comes into the clinic and asks to speak with a staff member. Because you are the only one available, you meet with the patient, who proceeds to tell you that she is a member of the LGBT community and wants to know your clinic's policy on seeing this population.

2. What is your response to the patient?
3. Is this a matter that requires you to inform your supervising PT? Why or why not?

That afternoon, you notice a patient on a schedule from a PT who is not your regular supervising therapist and you note that the PT has prescribed a manual therapy technique with which you are not familiar.

4. What is your best course of action?

Review Questions

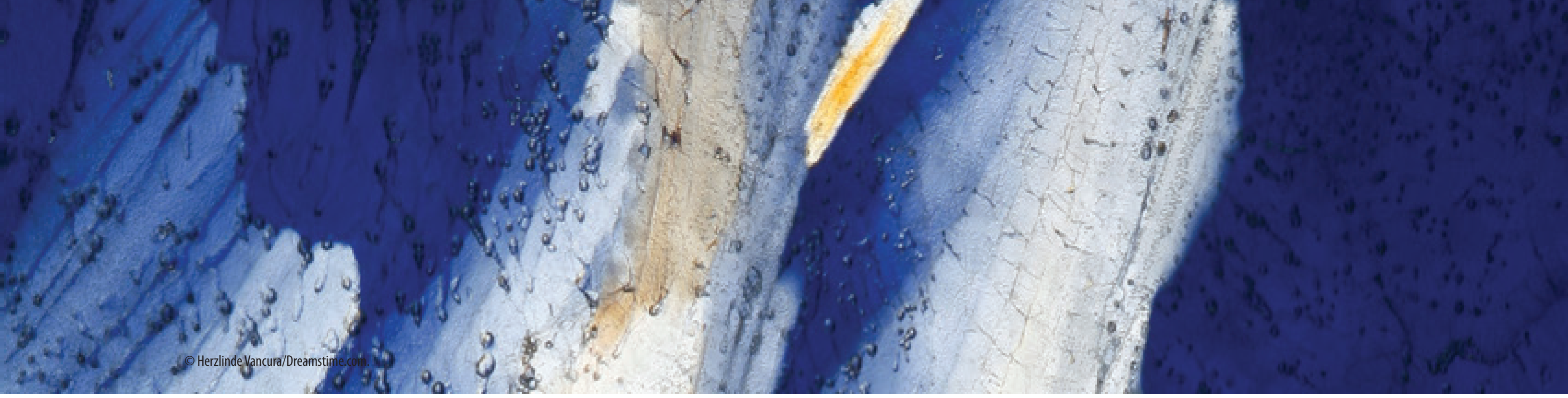
1. A physical therapist asks you to perform a joint mobilization. Whether you can perform the mobilization depends which of the following?
   a. Ethical principles
   b. State licensure laws
   c. Departmental procedures
   d. Whether the patient has medical insurance
2. Which of the following was developed to "encourage a uniform approach to physical therapist practice and to explain to the world the nature of that practice"?
   a. State licensure laws
   b. The *Guide to Physical Therapist Practice*
   c. National Physical Therapy Examination
   d. Medicare Act of 1973
3. What is the function of the Commission on Accreditation in Physical Therapy Education (CAPTE)?
   a. To design policies and procedures with regard to physical therapy
   b. To make autonomous decisions concerning the accreditation status of continuing education programs for physical therapists and physical therapist assistants
   c. To design questions for the National Physical Therapy Examination
   d. To oversee state licensing laws
4. A loss or abnormality of anatomic, physiological, or psychological structure or function is a description of which category of the disablement model?
   a. Impairment
   b. Functional limitation
   c. Disability
   d. None of the above
5. Which of the following statements is true about the plan of care?
   a. It is based on the examination, evaluation, diagnosis, and prognosis, including the predicted level of optimal improvement.
   b. It describes the specific interventions to be used and the proposed frequency and duration of the interventions that are required to reach the anticipated goals and expected outcomes.
   c. It includes plans for discharge of the patient, taking into consideration achievement of anticipated goals and expected outcomes, and provides for appropriate follow-up or referral.
   d. All of the above.
6. **True or false:** A PTA may modify an intervention only in accordance with changes in patient status and within the established plan of care developed by the physical therapist.
7. A physical therapist assistant legally cannot perform which of the following duties?
   a. Call a physician about a patient's status
   b. Add 3 pounds to a patient's current exercise protocol
   c. Allow a patient to increase in frequency from 2 times per week to 3 times per week
   d. Perform an ultrasound on a patient
8. A PTA is performing a chart review and discovers that lab results reveal that the patient has malignant cancer. When later treating the patient, the PTA is asked by the patient, "Did my lab results come back?" Which of the following is the appropriate response for the physical therapist assistant?
   a. To inform the patient about the results and contact the social worker to assist in consultation of the family
   b. To inform the patient that it would be inappropriate for you to comment on the lab results before the physician has assessed the lab results and spoken to the patient
   c. To inform the patient that he or she has a malignant cancer
   d. To tell the patient the results are in, but that PTAs are not allowed to comment on the results

References

1. *Guide to Physical Therapist Practice 3.0*. Alexandria, VA: American Physical Therapy Association; 2014.
2. Sackett DL, Rosenberg WM, Gray JA, Haynes RB, Richardson WS. Evidence based medicine: what it is and what it isn't. *BMJ*. 1996; 312:71–2.
3. Cleland J. Introduction. In: *Orthopedic Clinical Examination: An Evidence-Based Approach for Physical Therapists*. Carlstadt, NJ: Icon Learning Systems, LLC; 2005. p. 2–23.
4. Association APT. *A Normative Model of Physical Therapist Professional Education*: Version 2007: American Physical Therapy Association; 2007.
5. National Research Council. *Defining Primary Care: An Interim Report*. Donaldson M, Yordy K, Vanselow N, editors. Washington, DC: The National Academies Press; 1994.
6. Nagi S. Disability concepts revisited: implications for prevention. In: Pope A, Tartov A, editors. *Disability in America:*

Toward a National Agenda for Prevention. Washington, DC: National Academy Press; 1991. p. 309–27.

7. Brandt EN, Jr., Pope AM. *Enabling America: Assessing the role of rehabilitation science and engineering*. Brandt EN, Jr., Pope AM, editors. Washington, DC: Institute of Medicine: National Academy Press; 1997.
8. Palisano RJ, Campbell SK, Harris SR. Evidence-based decision-making in pediatric physical therapy. In: Campbell SK, Vander Linden DW, Palisano RJ, editors. *Physical Therapy for Children*. St. Louis: Saunders; 2006. p. 3–32.
9. Lenze EJ, Munin MC, Quear T, Dew MA, Rogers JC, Begley AE, et al. The Pittsburgh Rehabilitation Participation Scale: reliability and validity of a clinician-rated measure of participation in acute rehabilitation. *Archives of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation*. 2004; 85:380–4.
10. Blanpied P. Why won't patients do their home exercise programs? *The Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 1997; 25:101–2.
11. Chen CY, Neufeld PS, Feely CA, et al. Factors influencing compliance with home exercise programs among patients with upper extremity impairment. *The American Journal of Occupational Therapy*. 1999; 53:171–80.
12. Friedrich M, Cermak T, Madebacher P. The effect of brochure use versus therapist teaching on patients performing therapeutic exercise and on changes in impairment status. *Physical Therapy*. 1996; 76:1082–8.
13. Litzinger ME, Osif B. Accommodating diverse learning styles: designing instruction for electronic information sources. In: Shirato L, editor. *What Is Good Instruction Now? Library Instruction for the 90s*. Ann Arbor, MI: Pierian Press; 1993. p. 26–50.



CHAPTER 2

Anatomy and Biomechanics of the Musculoskeletal System

CHAPTER OBJECTIVES

At the completion of this chapter, the reader will be able to:

1. Describe the various structures of the musculoskeletal system.
2. Describe the types of connective tissue related to orthopaedics.
3. Outline the function of the various components of connective tissue, including collagen and elastin.
4. Describe the structural differences and similarities among fascia, tendons, and ligaments.
5. Describe the structure and function of a bone as it relates to physical therapy.
6. Outline the different types of cartilage tissue.
7. Define the main constituents of a synovial joint.
8. Describe the main cellular components of skeletal muscle.
9. Outline the sequence of events involved in a muscle contraction.
10. Summarize some key terms used in the study of biomechanics.
11. Define the impact that various forces can have on the body and how those forces can result in injury.
12. Define the terms *osteokinematic motion* and *arthrokinematic motion*.
13. Differentiate between the different types of arthrokinematic motions that can occur at the joint surfaces.
14. Describe the basic biomechanics of joint motion regarding their concave–convex relationships.
15. Discuss the differences between hypomobility, hypermobility, and instability.

Overview

A working knowledge of the musculoskeletal system forms the foundation of every orthopaedic assessment and intervention by a physical therapist assistant (PTA). A basic tenet in the study of anatomy and biomechanics is that design relates to function, in that the purpose of a structure determines its design and vice versa. The word *kinesiology* derives from the Greek *kinesis*, to move, and *ology*, to study. The science of kinesiology involves the application of mechanical principles to the study of the structure and function of movement.

Musculoskeletal Tissue

By design and function, the tissues of the body originate from four basic kinds: epithelial, nervous, connective, and muscle.

- *Epithelial tissue*. Found throughout the body in two forms: membranous and glandular. Membranous epithelium forms such structures as the outer layer of the skin, the inner lining of the body cavities and lumina, and the covering of visceral organs. Glandular epithelium is a specialized tissue that forms the secretory portion of glands.
- *Nervous tissue*. Helps coordinate movements via a complex motor control system of prestructured motor programs and a distributed network of reflex pathways mediated through the autonomic, peripheral, and central nervous systems.[1] (See Chapter 3 for further description.)
- *Connective tissue*. Found throughout the body, it is divided into subtypes according to the matrix that binds the cells. Connective tissue provides structural and metabolic support to other tissues and organs of the body. It includes bone, cartilage, tendons, ligaments, fascia, and blood tissue. The properties of connective tissue are described in the next section of this chapter.
- *Muscle tissue*. Responsible for the movement of circulatory materials through the body, the movement of one part of the body on another, and locomotion. There are three types of muscle tissue: smooth, cardiac, and skeletal. In this chapter, human skeletal muscle tissue is described.

☑ KEY POINT

Together, connective tissue and skeletal muscle tissue make up the musculoskeletal system. The musculoskeletal system functions intimately with nervous tissue to produce coordinated movement and adequate joint stabilization and feedback during sustained positions and purposeful movements, such as when climbing or dancing.

Connective Tissue

TABLE 2.1 summarizes the anatomic and functional characteristics of the four types of connective tissue that predominate in the joints of the musculoskeletal system.

The primary types of connective tissue cells are fibroblasts; macrophages, which function as phagocytes to clean up debris; and mast cells, which release chemicals associated with inflammation.[2] (See Chapter 4.) Differentiation of the connective tissue types is according to the extracellular matrix (ECM) that binds the cells.

Fibroblasts (**FIGURE 2.1**) produce collagen, elastin, and reticulin fibers. All connective tissues are made up of varying levels of collagen, elastin, and reticulin:

- *Collagen fibers*. The most common fibers in connective tissue proper are long, straight, and unbranched. The collagens are a family of ECM proteins that play a dominant role in maintaining the structural integrity of various tissues and in providing tensile strength to tissues. **TABLE 2.2** outlines the most common forms of collagen (types I–IV).[3]
- *Elastic fibers*. Containing the protein elastin, they are branched and wavy. Elastin is synthesized and secreted from several cell types, including chondroblasts, myofibroblasts, and mesothelial and smooth muscle cells. As its name suggests, elastic properties are provided to the tissues in which elastin is situated.[4] Elastin fibers can stretch, but they typically return to their original shape when the tension is released. The presence of elastin determines the patterns of distention and recoil in most organs, including the skin and lungs, and blood vessels. These characteristics can be useful in preventing injury because they allow the tissues to deform significantly before breaking.
- *Reticular fibers*. The least common of the three, they are thinner than collagen fibers and form a branching, interwoven network in various organs, which provides structural support.

☑ KEY POINT

Collagen can be visualized as being like the little strands that run through packing tape.

☑ KEY POINT

Collagen and elastin fibers are embedded within a water-saturated matrix known as *ground substance*, which is composed primarily of glycosaminoglycans, water, and solutes. These materials allow many fibers of the body to exist in a fluid-filled environment that disperses millions of repetitive forces affecting the joints throughout a lifetime.[3]

Fascia

Fascia is an example of loose connective tissue. From the functional point of view, the fascia in the body is a continuous laminated sheet of connective tissue that extends without interruption from the top of the head to the tips of the toes. It surrounds and permeates every other tissue and organ of the body, including nerves, vessels, tendons, aponeuroses, ligaments, capsules, and the fundamental components

TABLE 2.1 Types of Connective Tissue That Form the Structure of Joints

Tissue Type	Anatomic Location	Fibers	Mechanical Specialization
Dense irregular connective tissue (CT)	Composes the external fibrous layer of the joint capsule Forms ligaments, fascia, tendons, and fibrous membranes	High type I collagen fiber content; low elastin fiber content	*Ligament:* Binds bones together and restrains unwanted movement at the joints; resists tension in several directions *Tendon:* Attaches muscle to bone *Fascia:* A layer of fibrous tissue that permeates the human body and that performs some functions, including enveloping and isolating the muscles of the body, providing structural support and protection
Fibrocartilage	Composes the intervertebral disks and the disk within the pubic symphysis Forms the intraarticular disks (menisci) of the tibiofemoral, sternoclavicular, acromioclavicular, and distal radioulnar joints Forms the labrum of the glenoid fossa and the acetabulum	Multidirectional bundles of type I collagen	Provides some support and stabilization to joints; primary function is to provide "shock absorption" by resisting and distributing compressive and shear forces
Bone	Forms the internal levers of the musculoskeletal system	Specialized arrangement of type I collagen to form lamellae and osteons and to provide a framework for hard mineral salts (e.g., calcium crystals)	Resists deformation; strongest resistance is applied against compressive forces due to body weight and muscle force Provides a rigid lever to transmit muscle force to move and stabilize the body

of muscle.[5,6] Theoretically, injury, inflammation, disease, surgery, and excess strain of the fascia can cause it to scar and harden. This can create tension not only in adjacent, pain-sensitive structures but also in other areas of the body. This is because of the complete integration of fascia with all of the other systems. Myofascial release is a form of soft tissue therapy used to treat dysfunction and accompanying pain and restriction of motion by relaxing contracted muscles, increasing circulation, increasing venous and lymphatic drainage, and stimulating the stretch reflex of muscles and overlying fascia. See Chapter 9 for a more detailed discussion of myofascial release.

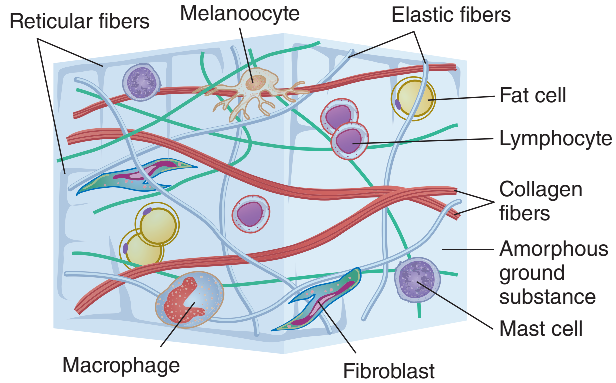


FIGURE 2.1 Typical connective tissue.

Tendons

A tendon (**FIGURE 2.2**), which is a type of dense connective tissue, is a cordlike structure that attaches muscle to bone. Tendons are made up of densely packed parallel-oriented bundles of fibers. The predominant type of collagen fiber in a tendon is type I.

The thickness of each tendon varies and is proportional to the size of the muscle from which it originates. In addition to the primary load bearing part of the tendon, there is an extensive network of

TABLE 2.2 Major Types of Collagen

Type	Description/Location
I	Thick and rough Designed to resist elongation Found in bone, skin, ligament, and tendon
II	Thinner and less stiff than type I fibers Provide a framework for maintaining the general shape and consistency of structures such as hyaline cartilage and nucleus pulposus
III	A small and slender fiber of collagen Found in extensible connective tissues such as skin, lung, and the vascular system
IV	Overall arrangement causes the collagen to form in a sheet. Found primarily in the basement membrane (a thin sheet of fibers that underlies the epithelium, which lines the cavities and surfaces of organs, or the endothelium, which lines the interior surface of blood vessels)

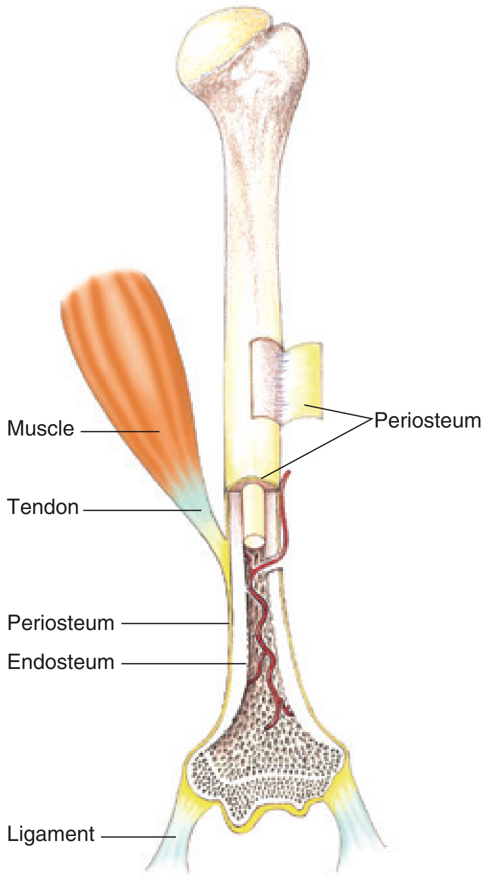


FIGURE 2.2 Tendon, ligament, bone, and muscle.

septae (endotendon), where the nerves and vessels are mainly located.[7] Tendons deform less than ligaments under an applied load.[8] However, tendons transmit forces from muscle to bone and are subject to significant tensile stresses. At low rates of loading, tendons are more viscous or ductile and, consequently, can absorb more energy compared to high loading rates.[9] At higher levels of loading, however, tendons become more brittle and absorb less energy, but they are more efficient at transferring loads.[9]

☑ KEY POINT

Although tendons withstand substantial tensile forces well, they resist shear forces less well and provide little resistance to a compression force.

As the tendon joins the muscle, it fans out into a much wider and thinner structure. The site where the muscle and tendon meet is called the *myotendinous junction (MTJ)*. Despite its viscoelastic mechanical characteristics, the MTJ is very vulnerable to tensile failure. Indeed, the MTJ is the location of the most common muscle strains caused by tensile forces.[8,10] The majority of muscles have distinct tendinous attachments to bones, but only a few tendons develop painful conditions. Patients with tendinopathy display tendons that are thicker, but with reduced energy storing capacity, meaning that for the same load, the tendons exhibit higher strains than those of healthy individuals.[7] (See Chapter 4.)

☑ KEY POINT

A tendency for a tear near the MTJ has been reported in the biceps and triceps brachii, rotator cuff muscles, flexor pollicis longus, fibularis (peroneus) longus, medial head of the gastrocnemius, rectus femoris, adductor longus, iliopsoas, pectoralis major, semimembranosus, and the entire hamstring group.[11–13]

Ligaments

Skeletal ligaments, a type of dense connective tissue, connect bones across joints (refer to Figure 2.2). The gross structure of a ligament varies according to its location (intra-articular or extra-articular, and capsular) and function. The orientation of the collagen fibers has a less unidirectional organization in ligaments than it does in tendons, but this irregular crossing pattern still provides stiffness (resistance to deformation) and makes ligaments ideal for sustaining tensile loads from several different directions.

☑ KEY POINT

Ligaments have a rich sensory innervation through specialized mechanoreceptors and free nerve endings that provide information about proprioception and pain, respectively.

Ligaments contribute to the stability of joint function by preventing excessive motion, acting as guides to direct movement, and providing proprioceptive information for joint function.

☑ KEY POINT

Immobilization and disuse dramatically compromise the structural material properties of ligaments, resulting in a significant decrease in the ability of the ligament to resist strain. (See Chapter 4.)

Bone

There are approximately 206 bones in the body. Bone is a highly vascular and metabolically active form of connective tissue, composed of 65 percent mineral and 35 percent organic matrix. Bone health can be affected starting in utero, and bone mineral density (BMD) peaks in early adulthood and declines after menopause in women.[14] Maintenance of bone mass can reduce fracture risk by 50 to 80 percent.[15] Mineral content distinguishes bone from other connective tissues and provides the bone with its distinctive stiffness while providing a system for mineral storage.

☑ KEY POINT

The *periosteum* is a thin, tough membrane that covers each long bone and helps secure the attachments of muscles and ligaments to bone (Figure 2.2). The *medullary canal* is the central hollow tube within the diaphysis of a long bone. It is essential for storing bone marrow and provides a passageway for nutrient-carrying arteries (see "Blood Supply to Bone" later in this chapter).

Bone is the most rigid of the connective tissues, but despite its rigidity, it is a dynamic tissue that undergoes constant metabolism and remodeling. The collagen of bone is produced in the same manner as that of ligaments and tendons, but by a different cell, the osteoblast.

At the gross anatomic level, each bone has a distinct morphology (**TABLE 2.3**) comprising both cortical bone

TABLE 2.3 General Structure of Bone

Site	Description
Epiphysis	The region between the growth plate or growth plate scar and the expanded end of bone, covered by articular cartilage The location of secondary ossification centers during development Forms bone ends
Physis (also known as epiphyseal plate)	The region that separates the epiphysis from the metaphysis The zone of endochondral ossification in an actively growing bone or the epiphyseal scar in a fully developed bone Vulnerable before growth spurt and mechanically weak
Metaphysis	The junctional region between the growth plate and the diaphysis Contains abundant cancellous (trabecular) bone, which heals rapidly, but the cortical bone thins here relative to the diaphysis Common site for many primary bone tumors and similar lesions (osteomyelitis)
Diaphysis	Forms shaft of bone Large surface for muscle origin Composed mainly of cortical (compact) bone The medullary canal contains marrow and a small amount of trabecular bone

and cancellous (also referred to as trabecular) bone. The adult human skeleton is composed of 80 percent cortical bone and 20 percent cancellous bone.

- *Cortical (compact) bone*. Dense and robust, it is found in the outer shell of the diaphysis of long bones and where it surrounds the marrow space. The osteon, or Haversian system, the most complex type of cortical bone, is the fundamental functional unit of much compact bone. Osteon is the name given to the complex arrangement of bone around the vascular channels that are circumferentially surrounded by lamellar bone. During normal activity, cortical bone sustains loads well, so that the bone bends but does not sustain permanent deformation (elastic deformation). However, repetitively sustained loads over a short period can produce changes in the bone shape (plastic deformation).
- *Cancellous (trabecular) bone*. Porous and honeycomb-like, it is therefore less dense than cortical bone and is typically found in the epiphyseal and metaphyseal regions of long bones as well as throughout the interior of short bones. Cancellous bone is significantly more metabolically active than cortical bone.

☑ KEY POINT

The strength of a bone is related directly to its density. Bone mineral density (BMD) is the amount of bone mineral in bone tissue. Compared to cortical bone, cancellous bone has a greater surface area but is less dense, softer, weaker, and less stiff, and therefore more prone to fracture. Dual energy X-ray absorptiometry (DXA) is most commonly used to measure BMD as it determines the amount of mineral measured per unit area or volume of bone tissue. A more sophisticated method, which can better distinguish healthy microarchitecture of bone from suboptimal bone, is high-resolution peripheral quantitative computed tomography (HR-pQCT).[14]

There are three types of bone cells:

- *Osteoblasts*. Responsible for bone formation and the synthesis of type I collagen.
- *Osteocytes*. Control extracellular concentrations of calcium and phosphorus. Osteocytes are, in essence, osteoblasts that are embedded within the newly formed mineralized bone matrix, and are actively involved with the maintenance of the bony matrix.
- *Osteoclasts*. Responsible for bone resorption. An increased number of osteoclasts is characteristic of diseases with increased bone turnover.

The function of a bone is to provide support, enhance leverage, protect vital structures, provide attachments for both tendons and ligaments, and store minerals, particularly calcium.

☑ KEY POINT

Based on location, bones can be classified as follows (**FIGURE 2.3**):

- *Axial skeleton*. Bones of the skull, vertebral column, sternum, and ribs
- *Appendicular skeleton*. Bones of the pectoral girdle (including the scapula and clavicle), pelvic girdle, and limbs

Blood Supply to Bone

Bone has a rich vascular supply, receiving 5 to 10 percent of the cardiac output. The blood supply varies with different types of bones, but blood vessels are especially abundant in areas that contain red bone marrow. The following vessels supply the long bones:

- *Diaphyseal nutrient artery*. The most significant supply of arterial blood to a long bone
- *Metaphyseal and epiphyseal arteries*. Supply the ends of bones
- *Periosteal arterioles*. Supply the outer layers of cortical bone

The large irregular, short, and flat bones receive a superficial blood supply from the periosteum, and frequently from large nutrient arteries that penetrate directly into the medullary bone. It is important to note that fractures, internal fixation devices, prosthetic joint implants, and external fixation devices devitalized the microcirculation of the cortical–periosteal and the endosteal portion of the bone, which can lead to either nonunion and/or bone infections.

Bone inherently recognizes and responds to external loading, and its mechanoreceptors can stimulate osteogenesis. However, for osteogenesis to take place, any stress applied to the bone must be variable, dynamic, and progressive—static loading does not cause osteogenesis.[14,16] A fundamental principle of bone formation and adaptation is that physical deformation of the bone directly stimulates bone formation.[14]

☑ KEY POINT

Bone remodeling is a lifelong process that involves the replacement of old bone by new bone based on the functional demands of the mechanical loading according to Wolff's law. (See Chapter 4.)

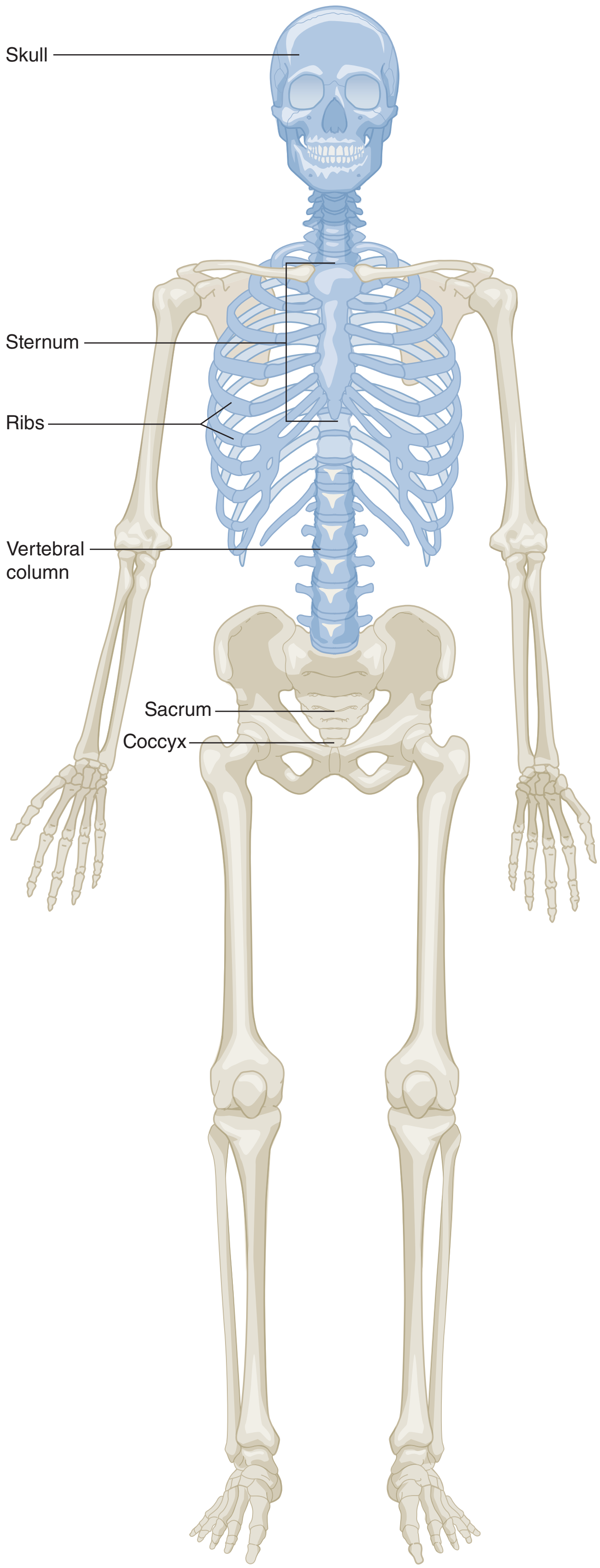


FIGURE 2.3 The axial (shaded) and appendicular skeleton.

Articular Cartilage

The formation of articular (hyaline) cartilage tissue, commonly called gristle, usually precedes the development of bone. Articular cartilage is a highly organized viscoelastic material composed of cartilage cells called *chondrocytes* (5 percent), water (65 to 80 percent), and an ECM. The ECM contains proteoglycans (10 to 15 percent), lipids, water, and dissolved electrolytes. Articular cartilage is devoid of any blood vessels, lymphatics, and nerves.[17] It covers the ends of long bones with synovial joints and, along with the synovial fluid that bathes it, provides a smooth, almost frictionless articulating surface. Articular cartilage is avascular and has no inherent ability to stimulate, regulate, or organize intrinsic repair. (See Chapter 4.)

☑ KEY POINT

- Articular cartilage is the most abundant cartilage within the body.
- Most of the bones of the body form first as articular cartilage and later become bone in a process called *endochondral ossification*.

Articular cartilage distributes the joint forces over a large contact area, dissipating the forces associated with the load. The standard thickness of articular cartilage is determined by the contact pressures across the joint—the higher the peak pressures, the thicker the cartilage.[18] This distribution of forces allows the articular cartilage to remain healthy and fully functional throughout decades of life.

☑ KEY POINT

The patella has the thickest articular cartilage in the body.

Articular cartilage may be grossly subdivided into four distinct zones with differing cellular morphology, biomechanical composition, collagen orientations, and structural properties (**FIGURE 2.4**).

Fibrocartilage

Fibrocartilage consists of a blend of white fibrous tissue and cartilaginous tissue. The white fibrous tissue provides flexibility and toughness, and the cartilage tissue provides elasticity.

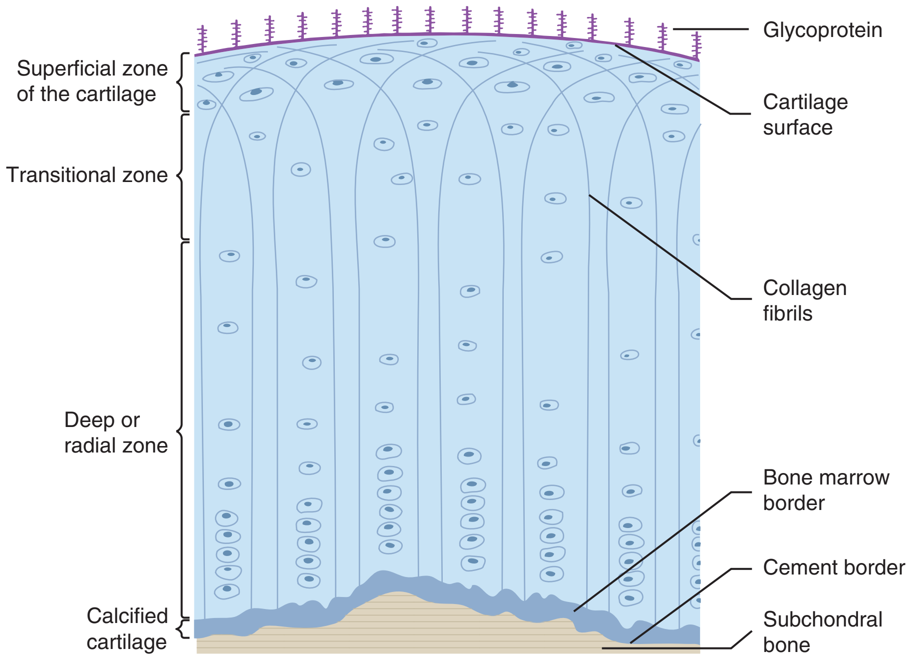


FIGURE 2.4 Articular layers of cartilage.

Meniscus

The meniscus is a specialized viscoelastic fibrocartilaginous structure capable of load transmission, shock absorption, stability, articular cartilage lubrication, and proprioception.[18] The collagen fibers of the menisci are arranged parallel to the peripheral border in the deeper areas, and are more radially-oriented in the superficial region. The radially oriented fibers provide structural rigidity, and the deep fibers resist tension. Menisci tend to be found in noncongruent joints, such as the knee. The pathology of the knee meniscus and implications for the PTA are described in Chapter 24.

Intervertebral Disk

An intervertebral disk (IVD) is located between adjacent vertebrae in the spine and represents the largest avascular structure in the body.[19] In the human spinal column, the combined heights of the IVDs account for approximately 20 to 33 percent of the total length of the spinal column.[19] The human vertebral column is designed to provide structural stability while affording full mobility as well as protection of the spinal cord and axial neural tissues.[20] The presence of an IVD not only permits motion of the segment in any direction up to the point that the disk itself is stretched but also allows for a significant increase in the weight-bearing capabilities of the spine.[21] IVDs are composed of three parts: the annulus fibrosus (AF), the vertebral end plate, and a central gelatinous mass, called the nucleus pulposus (NP).

Three main types of structural disruption are recognized: herniation, protrusion, and prolapse. (See Chapter 19.)

Joints

A joint represents the junction between two or more bone ends. Joints are regions where bones are capped and surrounded by connective tissues that hold the bones together and determine the type and degree of movement between them.[21] Joints are typically classified as synovial, fibrous, or cartilaginous (**TABLE 2.4**).

> ☑ **KEY POINT**
>
> An amphiarthrosis, a joint formed primarily by fibrocartilage and hyaline cartilage, plays an important role in shock absorption. An example of an amphiarthosis is the IVD of the spine.

Every synovial joint contains at least one "mating pair" of articular surfaces—one convex and one concave. If only one pair exists, the joint is called simple; more than one pair it is called compound. If a disk is present, the joint is termed complex. Synovial joints have five distinguishing characteristics: joint cavity, articular cartilage, synovial fluid, synovial membrane, and a fibrous capsule (**FIGURE 2.5**). Synovial joints can be broadly classified according to structure or analogy (**FIGURE 2.6**) into the following categories:[22]

TABLE 2.4 Joint Types

Type	Characteristics	Examples
Synovial		
Diarthrosis	Fibroelastic joint capsule, which is filled with a lubricating substance called *synovial fluid*	Hip, knee, shoulder, and elbow joints
Fibrous		
Synarthrosis (eventual fusion is termed a synostosis)	United by bone tissue, ligament, or membrane Immovable joint	Sagittal suture of the skull
Syndesmosis	Joined together by a dense fibrous membrane Very little motion	The interosseous membrane between the tibia and fibula
Gomphosis	Bony surfaces connected like a peg in a hole (the periodontal membrane is the fibrous component)	The teeth and corresponding sockets are the only gomphosis joints in the body
Cartilaginous (amphiarthrosis)		
Synchondrosis	Joined by either hyaline or fibrocartilage May ossify to a synostosis once growth is completed	The epiphyseal plates of growing bones and the articulations between the first rib and the sternum
Symphysis	Usually located at the midline of the body Two bones covered with hyaline cartilage and connected by fibrocartilage	The symphysis pubis

- *Spheroid.* As the name suggests, a spheroid joint is a freely moving joint in which a sphere on the head of one bone fits into a rounded cavity in the other bone. Spheroid (ball and socket) joints allow motions in three planes. Examples of a spheroid joint surface include the heads of the femur and humerus.
- *Trochoid.* The trochoid (pivot) joint is characterized by a pivot-like process turning within a ring, or a ring on a pivot, the ring being formed partly of bone, partly of ligament. Trochoid joints permit only rotation. Examples of a trochoid joint include the proximal radioulnar joint and the atlantoaxial joint.
- *Condyloid.* The condyloid joint is characterized by an ovoid articular surface, or condyle. One bone may articulate with another by one surface or by two, but never more than two. If two distinct surfaces are present, the joint is called condylar or bicondylar. The elliptical cavity of the joint is designed in such a manner as to permit the motions of flexion, extension, adduction, abduction, and circumduction, but no axial rotation. The wrist joint is an example of this form of articulation.
- *Ginglymoid.* A ginglymoid (hinge) is characterized by a spool-like surface and a concave surface. An example of a ginglymoid joint is the humeroulnar joint.
- *Ellipsoid.* Ellipsoid joints are similar to spheroid joints in that they allow the same type of movement, albeit to a lesser magnitude. The ellipsoid joint allows movement in two planes (flexion, extension; abduction, adduction). Examples of this joint can be found at the radiocarpal articulation at the wrist and the metacarpophalangeal articulation in the phalanges.

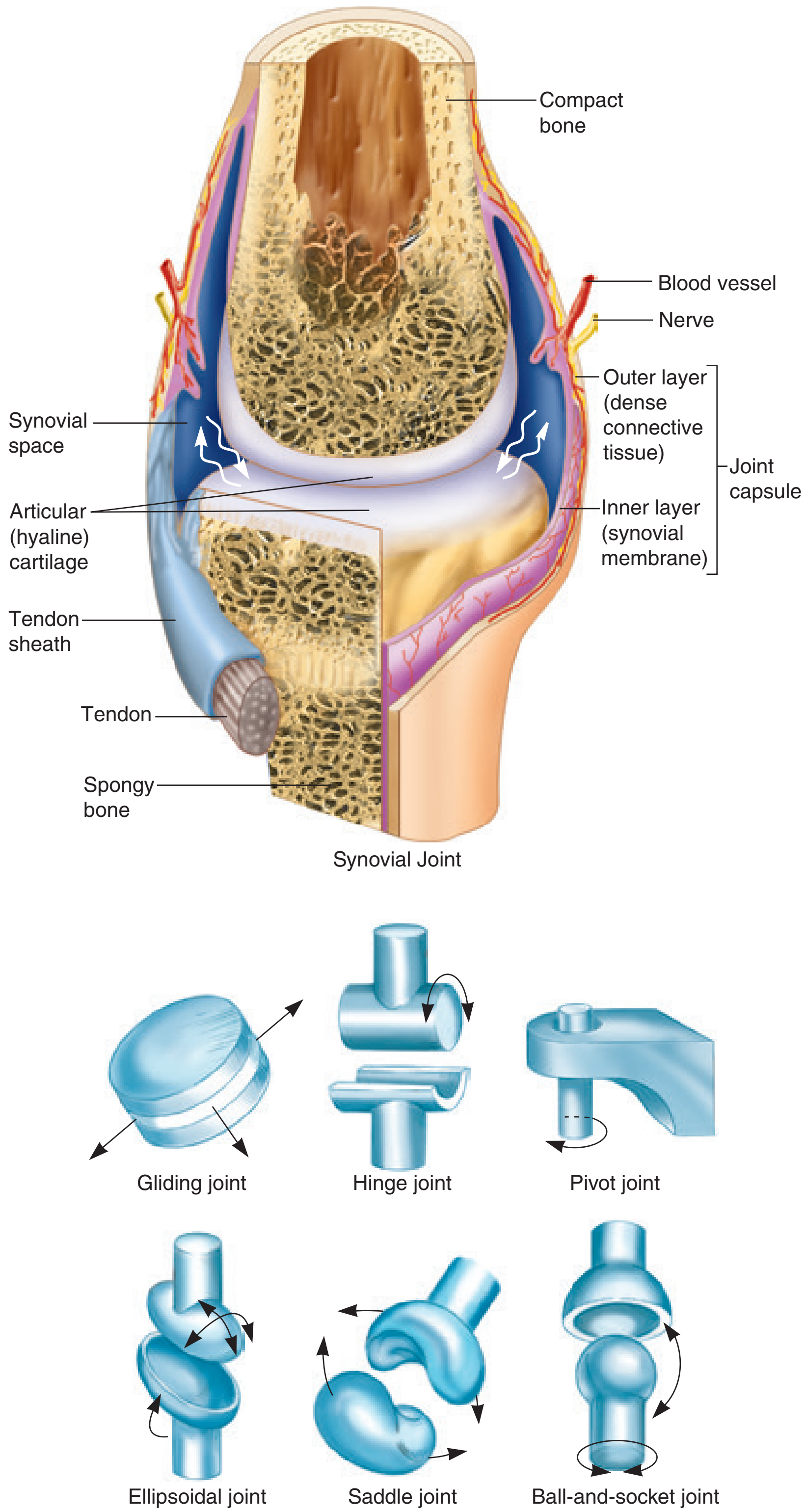


FIGURE 2.5 The synovial joint and the various types.

- *Planar.* As its name suggests, a planar (gliding) joint is characterized by two flat surfaces that slide over each other. Movement of this joint type does not occur about an axis and is termed nonaxial. Examples of a planar joint include the intermetatarsal joints and some intercarpal joints.
- *Sellar.* The other major type of articular surface is the sellar (saddle) joint. Sellar joints are characterized by a convex surface in one cross-sectional plane and a concave surface in the plane perpendicular to it. Examples of a sellar joint include the carpometacarpal joint of the thumb, the humeroulnar joint, and the calcaneocuboid joints.

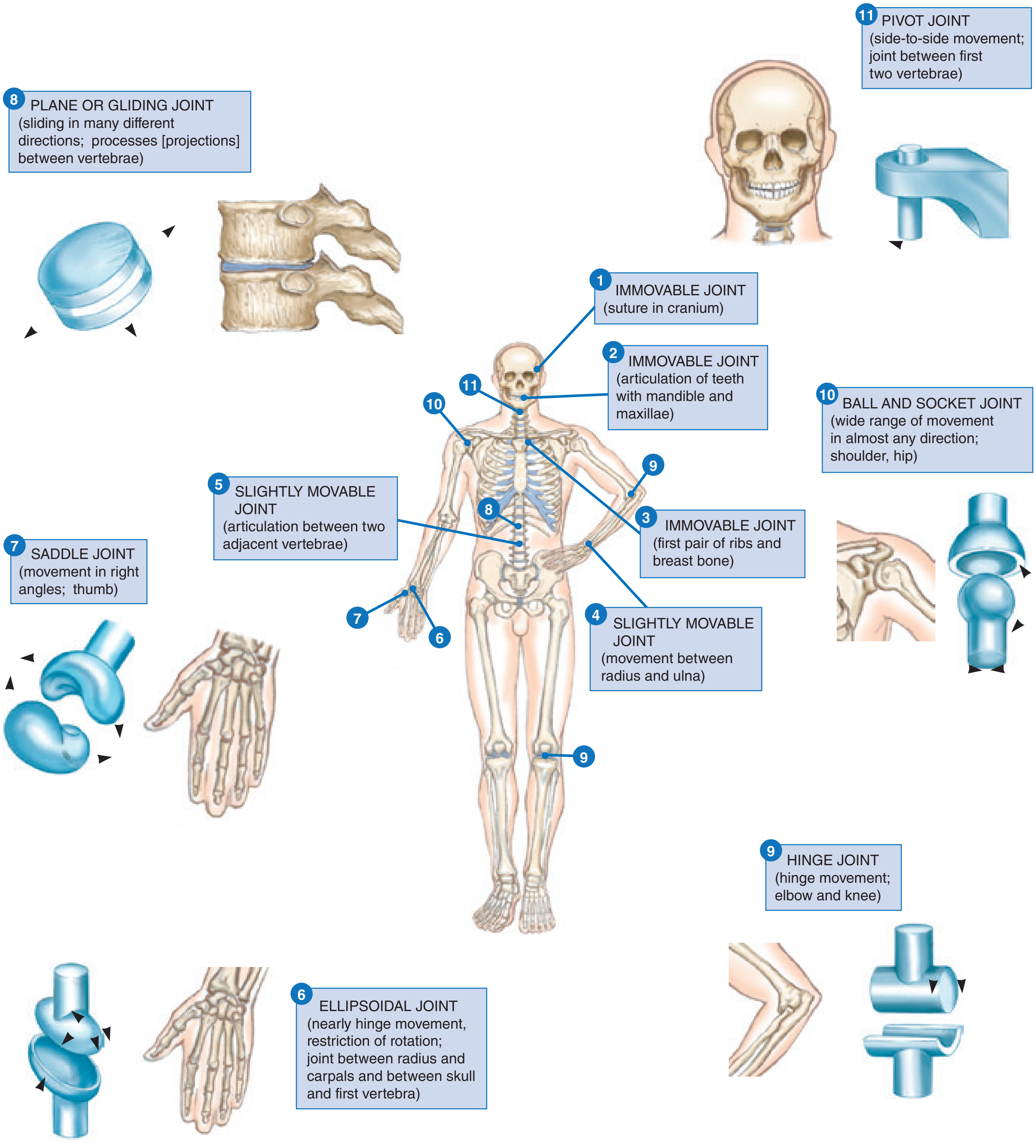


FIGURE 2.6 Joint types of the body.

Although the categories mentioned above give a broad description of joint structure, this classification does not sufficiently describe the articulations or the movements that occur. In reality, no joint surface is planar or resembles an exact geometric form. Instead, joint surfaces are either convex in all directions or concave in all directions, that is, they resemble either the outer or inner surface of a piece of eggshell.[1] Because the curve of an eggshell varies from point to point, these articular surfaces are called *ovoid*.

Joint Receptors All synovial joints of the body are provided with an array of corpuscular receptor endings (mechanoreceptors) and noncorpuscular receptor endings (nociceptors) imbedded in articular, muscular, and cutaneous structures with varying

TABLE 2.5 Characteristics of Mechanoreceptors and Nociceptors

Receptor Type	Type of Stimulus and Example	Receptor Type and Location
Mechanoreceptors	Pressure	
	Afferent nerve fiber (base of hair follicles)	
	Meissner's corpuscle (skin)	
	Pacinian corpuscle (skin)	
	Merkel's touch corpuscle (skin)	
Nociceptors	Pain (stretch)	Free nerve endings (wall of gastrointestinal tract, skin)
Proprioceptors	Distension	Ruffini corpuscles (skin and capsules in joints and ligaments)
	Muscle spindles (skeletal muscles)	
	Golgi tendon organs (between muscles and tendons)	
Thermoreceptors	Temperature changes	
	Krause's end bulbs (skin)	
	Ruffini corpuscles (skin and capsules in joints and ligaments)	

individual behaviors and distributions depending on the type of articular tissue (**TABLE 2.5**).

Synovial Fluid Articular cartilage is subject to a great variety of loading conditions; therefore, joint lubrication through synovial fluid is necessary to minimize frictional resistance between the weight-bearing surfaces. Fortunately, synovial joints are blessed with a superior lubricating system, which permits a remarkably frictionless interaction at the joint surfaces.

☑ KEY POINT

Regarding design, a synovial joint imparts very little friction at the joint surfaces. By way of a comparison, a lubricated cartilaginous interface has a coefficient of friction* of 0.002[23]; ice moving on ice has a much higher coefficient of friction of 0.03.[24]

* Coefficient of friction is a ratio of the force needed to make a body glide across a surface compared with the weight of force holding the two surfaces in contact. The higher the coefficient, the greater the force required and the more heat generated.

The composition of synovial fluid is nearly the same as that of blood plasma, but with a decreased total protein content and a higher concentration of hyaluronan.[25] Indeed, synovial fluid is essentially a dialysate of plasma to which hyaluronan has been added.[25] Hyaluronan is a glycosaminoglycan (GAG) that is continually synthesized and released into the synovial fluid by specialized synoviocytes.[26] Hyaluronan is a critical constituent component of healthy synovial fluid and a significant contributor to joint homeostasis.[25]

☑ KEY POINT

Hyaluronan imparts anti-inflammatory and antinociceptive properties to normal synovial fluid and contributes to joint lubrication. It is also responsible for the viscoelastic properties of synovial fluid[26] and contributes to the lubrication of articular cartilage surfaces.[27]

The mechanical properties of synovial fluid permit it to act as both a cushion and a lubricant to the joint. Fluid lubrication results when a film of synovial fluid is established and maintained between the two surfaces as long as movement occurs.

Bursae

Closely associated with some synovial joints are flattened, saclike structures called *bursae* that are lined with a synovial membrane and filled with synovial fluid. A bursa produces small amounts of fluid, allowing for smooth and almost frictionless motion between contiguous muscles, tendons, bones, ligaments, and skin. A tendon sheath is essentially a modified bursa. Bursitis is defined as an inflammation of a bursa, and it occurs when the synovial fluid becomes infected by bacteria or gets irritated because of too much movement. Symptoms of bursitis include localized tenderness, warmth, edema, erythema of the skin (if superficial), and loss of function. Any signs of a pathologic or inflamed bursa should be reported to the supervising physical therapist (PT). The list of bursae that may become inflamed is quite extensive:

- Subacromial (subdeltoid) bursitis
- Olecranon bursitis
- Iliopsoas bursitis
- Trochanteric bursitis
- Ischial bursitis
- Prepatellar bursitis
- Infrapatellar bursitis
- Anserine bursitis

Skeletal Muscle Tissue

Skeletal muscle tissue consists of individual muscle cells or fibers (**FIGURE 2.7**). A single muscle cell is called a *muscle fiber* or *myofiber*. Individual muscle fibers are wrapped in a connective tissue envelope called *endomysium*. Bundles of myofibers, which form a whole muscle (fasciculus), are encased in the perimysium. The perimysium is continuous with the deep fascia. The epimysium, a connective sheath, surrounds groups of fasciculi. An electron microscope reveals that each of the myofibers consists of thousands of *myofibrils*, which extend throughout its length (**FIGURE 2.8**). Myofibrils are composed of sarcomeres arranged in series.

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> There are approximately 430 skeletal muscles in the body, each of which can be considered anatomically as a separate organ.

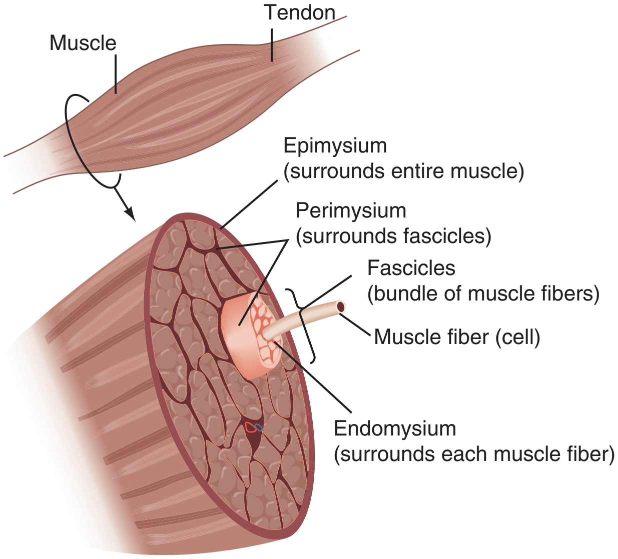


FIGURE 2.7 Muscle tissue.

Machinery of Movement

One of the most important roles of connective tissue is to mechanically transmit the forces generated by the skeletal muscle cells to provide movement. Each muscle cell contains many structural components called *myofilaments*, which all run parallel to the myofibril axis. The myofilaments are made up of two protein filaments: actin (thin) and myosin (thick) (see Figure 2.8). The most distinctive feature of skeletal muscle fibers is their striated (striped) appearance. This cross-striation is the result of an orderly arrangement within and between structures called sarcomeres and myofibrils.[28] The sarcomere is the contractile machinery of the muscle. The striations are produced by alternating dark (A) and light (I) bands that appear to span the width of the muscle fiber. The A bands are composed of myosin filaments, whereas the I bands are composed of actin filaments. The actin filaments of the I band overlap into the A band, giving the edges of the A band a darker appearance than the central region (H band), which contains only myosin. At the center of each I band is a thin, dark Z line (see Figure 2.8). A *sarcomere* represents the distance between each Z line. Each muscle fiber is limited by a cell membrane called a *sarcolemma*. The protein *dystrophin* plays an essential role in the mechanical strength and stability of the sarcolemma.[29]

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> Dystrophin is lacking in patients with Duchenne muscular dystrophy.

When muscle contracts, the distance between the Z lines decreases, the I band and H bands disappear,

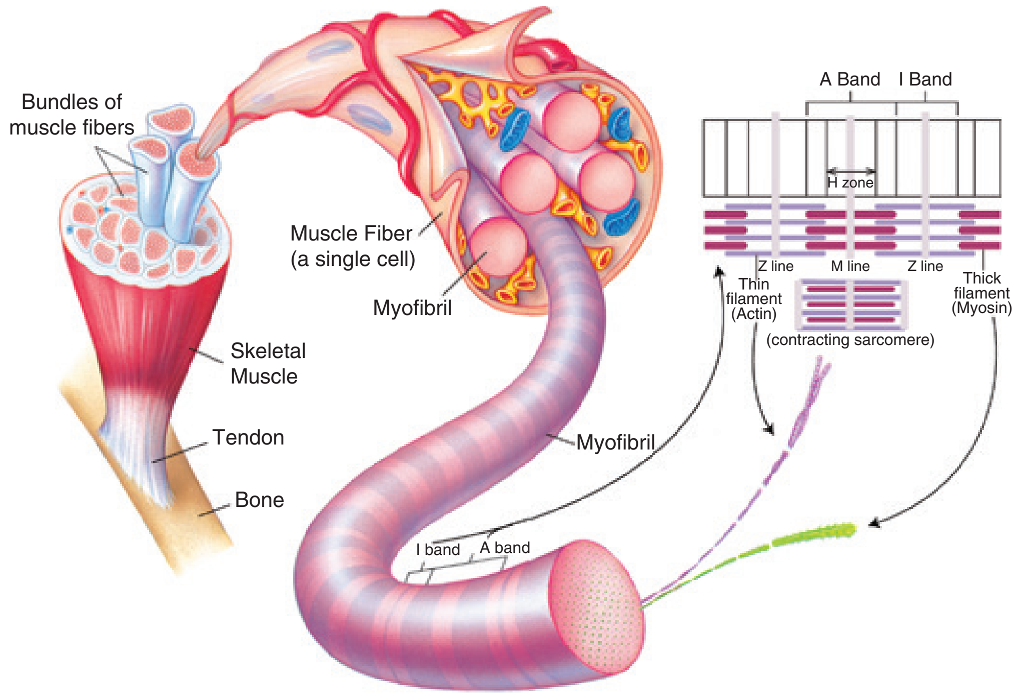


FIGURE 2.8 Contractile machinery.

but the width of the A band remains unchanged.[28] This shortening of the sarcomeres is not produced by a shortening of the actin and myosin filaments, but by a sliding of actin filaments over the myosin filaments, which pulls the Z lines together.

Structures called *myosin cross-bridges* connect the actin and myosin filaments (refer to Figure 2.8). The myosin filaments contain two flexible, hinge-like regions, which allow the cross-bridges to attach and detach from the actin filament. During contraction, the cross-bridges attach and undergo power strokes, which provide the contractile force. During relaxation, the cross-bridges detach. The attaching and detaching is asynchronous so that some are attaching while others are detaching. Thus, at any moment, some of the cross-bridges are pulling while others are releasing. The regulation of cross-bridge attachment and detachment is a function of two proteins found in the actin filaments: tropomyosin and troponin (**FIGURE 2.9**). Tropomyosin attaches directly to the actin filament, whereas troponin is attached to the tropomyosin rather than directly to the actin filament. Tropomyosin and troponin function as the switch for muscle contraction and relaxation. In a relaxed state, the tropomyosin physically blocks the cross-bridges from binding to the actin. For contraction to take place, the tropomyosin must be moved.

Each muscle fiber is innervated by a somatic motor neuron. One neuron, and the muscle fibers it innervates constitutes a motor unit or functional unit of the muscle. Each motor neuron branches as it enters the muscle to innervate a number of muscle fibers. The area of contact between a nerve and a muscle fiber is known as the motor end plate or neuromuscular junction (NMJ). The release of a chemical, acetylcholine, from the axon terminals at the NMJs causes electrical activation of the skeletal muscle fibers. When an action potential propagates into the transverse tubule system (narrow membranous tunnels formed from and continuous with the sarcolemma), the voltage sensors on the transverse tubule membrane signal the release of Ca^{2+} from the terminal cisternae portion of the sarcoplasmic reticulum (a series of interconnected sacs and tubes that surround each myofibril).[28] The released Ca^{2+} then diffuses into the sarcomeres and binds to troponin, displacing the tropomyosin and allowing the actin to bind with the myosin cross-bridges. At the end of the contraction (the neural activity and action potentials cease), the sarcoplasmic reticulum actively accumulates Ca^{2+} and muscle relaxation occurs. The return of Ca^{2+} to the sarcoplasmic reticulum involves active transport, requiring the degradation of adenosine triphosphate (ATP) to adenosine diphosphate (ADP).[28] (See Chapter 11.)

☑ KEY POINT

Because sarcoplasmic reticulum function is closely associated with both contraction and relaxation, changes in its ability to release or sequester Ca^{2+} markedly affect both the time course and magnitude of force output by the muscle fiber.[1]

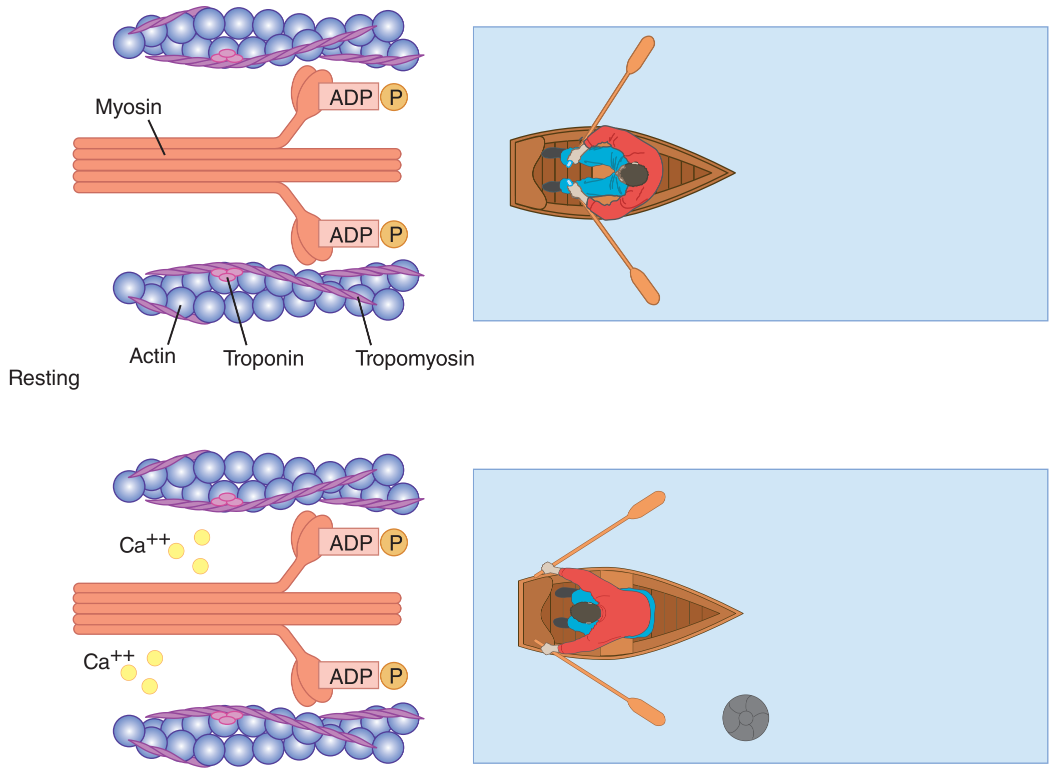


FIGURE 2.9 Troponin and tropomyosin.

Activation of varying numbers of motor neurons results in gradations in the strength of muscle contraction. The stronger the electrical impulse, the more powerful the muscle twitch. Whenever a somatic motor neuron is activated, all of the muscle fibers that it innervates are stimulated and contract with *all-or-none* twitches. Although the muscle fibers produce all-or-none contractions, muscles are capable of a wide variety of responses, ranging from activities requiring a high level of precision to activities requiring high tension.

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> The graded contractions of whole muscles occur because the number of fibers participating in the contraction varies. An increase in the force of movement is achieved by recruiting more cells into cooperative action.

When rapid, successive impulses activate a muscle fiber already in tension, *summation* occurs, and tension is progressively elevated until a maximum value for that fiber is reached.[30] A fiber repetitively activated so that its maximum tension level is maintained for a time is in *tetanus*. If the state of tetanus is sustained, fatigue causes a gradual decline in the level of tension produced.

Muscle Fiber Types

The basic function of a muscle is to contract. On the basis of their contractile properties, two major types of muscle fibers have been recognized within skeletal muscle: type I (slow-twitch red oxidative) and type II (fast-twitch white glycolytic). Type II fibers can be broken down further into three distinct subsets: type II A, type II AB, and type II B (**TABLE 2.6**).

Slow-twitch fibers have a high capacity for oxygen uptake and are, therefore, suitable for activities of long duration or endurance, including the maintenance of posture. Fast-twitch fibers have a low capacity for oxygen uptake and are therefore suited to quick, explosive, anaerobic actions, including such activities as sprinting.

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> In fast-twitch fibers, the sarcoplasmic reticulum embraces every individual myofibril. In slow-twitch fibers, it may contain multiple myofibrils.

Theory dictates that a muscle with a significant percentage of the total cross-sectional area occupied by slow-twitch type I fibers should be more fatigue resistant than one in which the fast-twitch type II fibers predominate. There exists an orderly recruitment of

TABLE 2.6 Comparison of Muscle Fiber Types

Characteristics	Type I	Type II A	Type II AB	Type II B
Diameter	Small	Intermediate	Large	Very large
Capillaries	Many	Many	Few	Few
Resistance to fatigue	High	Fairly high	Intermediate	Low
Glycogen content	Low	Intermediate	High	High
Respiration	Aerobic	Aerobic	Anaerobic	Anaerobic
Twitch rate	Slow	Fast	Fast	Fast
Major storage fuel	Triglycerides	Creatine phosphate Glycogen	Creatine phosphate Glycogen	Creatine phosphate Glycogen

these fibers based on increasing force requirements, which occurs in the following manner:

Type I (slow twitch) → Type II A (fast twitch) →Type II AB (fast twitch) → Type II B (fast twitch)

The shape of a muscle determines its specific action. Some muscle shapes are recognized:

- *Circular.* As the name suggests, these muscles appear circular in shape and are normally sphincter muscles that surround an opening such as the mouth or eyes.
- *Fusiform.* These muscles are more spindle-shaped, with the muscle belly being wider than the origin and insertion. Typically, these muscles are built to provide broad ranges of motion. Examples include the biceps brachii and the psoas major.
- *Triangular (convergent).* These are muscles where the origin is wider than the point of insertion. This fiber arrangement allows for maximum force production. Examples include the gluteus medius and pectoralis major.
- *Parallel (strap).* These are usually long muscles capable of producing large movements; although they are not very strong, they have excellent endurance. Examples include the sartorius and sternocleidomastoid. Some textbooks include fusiform muscles in the parallel group.
- *Rhomboidal.* These muscles are characterized by expansive proximal and distal attachments, which make them well-suited to either stabilize a joint or provide significant forces. Examples include the rhomboids and gluteus maximus.
- *Pennate.* These muscles resemble the shape of a feather, with muscle fibers approaching a central tendon at an oblique angle. This diagonal orientation of the fibers maximizes the muscle's force potential and many more muscle fibers can fit into the muscle compared with a similar sized fusiform muscle. They can be divided into the following subcategories:
  - *Unipennate.* These fibers are arranged to insert in a diagonal direction onto the tendon, which allows for greater strength. Examples include the lumbricals (deep hand muscles) and the extensor digitorum longus (wrist and finger extensor).
  - *Bipennate.* These have two rows of muscle fibers, facing in opposite diagonal directions, with a central tendon, like a feather. This arrangement allows for even greater power than the unipennate but less range of motion. An example is the rectus femoris.
  - *Multipennate.* These muscles have multiple rows of diagonal fibers, with a central tendon that branches into two or more tendons. An example is the deltoid muscle, which has three sections, anterior, posterior, and middle.

☑ KEY POINT

- *Origin.* The proximal attachment of a muscle, tendon, or ligament
- *Insertion.* The distal attachment of a muscle, tendon, or ligament

> ☑ **KEY POINT**
>
> A muscle's shape is one important indicator of its particular action. For example, short, thick muscles typically provide large forces, whereas long, straplike muscles usually provide large ranges of motion.[31]

Muscle Function

Muscle groups are classified based on the following functions (**FIGURE 2.10**):

- *Agonist muscle*. An agonist muscle contracts to produce the desired movement.
- *Antagonist muscle*. The antagonist muscle typically opposes the chosen movement and is responsible for returning a limb to its initial position. Antagonists ensure that the chosen motion occurs in a coordinated and controlled fashion by relaxing and lengthening gradually.
- *Synergist muscle (supporters)*. Synergist muscles are muscle groups that perform, or assist in performing joint motions. Although synergists can work with the agonists, they can also oppose the agonists, as occurs in force couples.
- *Neutralizers*. These muscles help cancel out, or neutralize, extra motion from the agonists to make sure the force generated works within the desired plane of motion. An example is when the flexor carpi ulnaris and extensor carpi ulnaris neutralize the flexion/extension forces at the wrist to produce ulnar deviation.
- *Stabilizers (fixators)*. These muscles provide the necessary support to help stabilize an area so that another area can be moved. For example, the trunk core stabilizers become active when the upper extremities are being used.

> ☑ **KEY POINT**
>
> Agonists and antagonists are usually located on opposite sides of the affected joint (e.g., the hamstrings and quadriceps, the triceps and biceps); synergists are frequently located on the same side of the joint near the agonists.

> ☑ **KEY POINT**
>
> A co-contraction occurs when the agonist and antagonist muscles are simultaneously activated in a pure or near isometric fashion. This type of contraction can help stabilize and protect a joint.

Stable posture results from a balance of competing forces, whereas movement occurs when competing forces are unbalanced.[32]

> ☑ **KEY POINT**
>
> - Movements generated or stimulated by active muscle are referred to as *active movements*.
> - Movements generated by sources other than muscular activation, such as gravity, are referred to as *active-assisted* or *passive movements*.

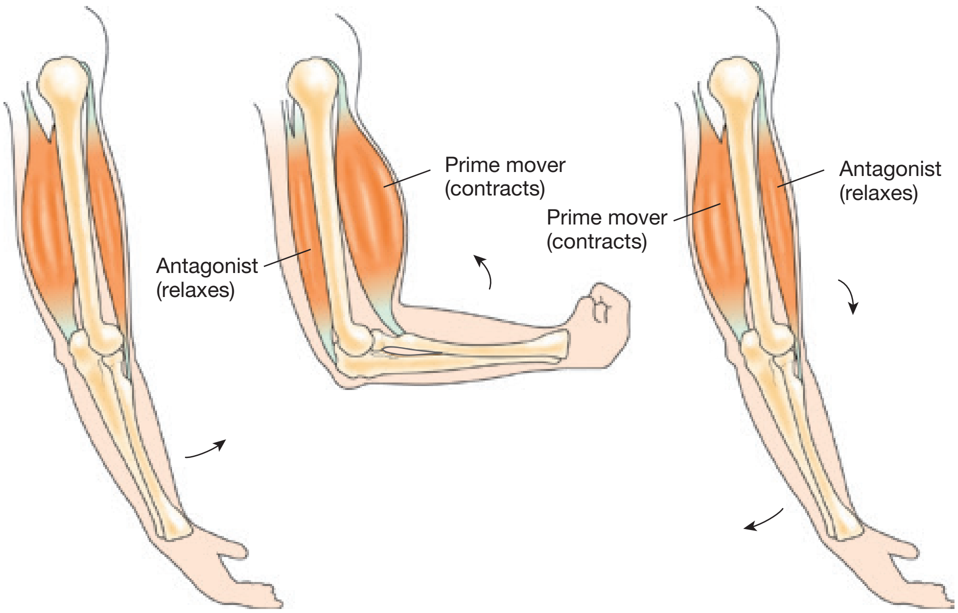


FIGURE 2.10 Agonist and antagonist muscle actions.

TABLE 2.7 Examples of Skeletal Muscles That Cross Two or More Joints

Erector spinae
Biceps brachii
Long head of the triceps brachii
Hamstrings
Iliopsoas
Sartorius
Rectus femoris
Gastrocnemius
Some muscles crossing the wrist/finger and foot/ankle joints

Most skeletal muscles span only one joint; however, some skeletal muscles cross two or more joints (**TABLE 2.7**). A two-joint muscle is more prone to adaptive shortening than a one-joint muscle.

☑ KEY POINT

The graded contractions of whole muscles occur because the number of fibers participating in the contraction varies. The increase in the force of movement is achieved by recruiting more cells into cooperative action. The different types of muscle contractions are described in Chapter 13.

The physiological cross-sectional area of the muscle represents its thickness—an indirect and relative measure of the number of contractile elements available to generate force.[31] The larger a muscle's cross-sectional area, the greater its potential for force generation. Different activities place differing demands on a muscle. For example, movement activities involve a predominance of fast-twitch fiber recruitment, whereas postural activities and those activities requiring stabilization entail more involvement of the slow-twitch fibers. In humans, most limb muscles contain a relatively equal distribution of each muscle fiber type, whereas the back and trunk demonstrate a predominance of slow-twitch fibers.

Although it would seem possible that physical training may cause fibers to convert from slow twitch to fast twitch or the reverse, this has not been shown to be the case.[33] However, fiber conversion from fast twitch A to fast twitch B, and vice versa, has been found to occur with training.[34] Muscle tissue is capable of significant adaptions. The various types of muscle contraction and their relationship to therapeutic exercise and impaired muscle performance are described in Chapter 13.

Vascular Tissue

Blood is a circulating tissue composed of several cells called corpuscles, which constitute about 45 percent of whole blood. The other 55 percent is blood plasma. Blood plasma is essentially an aqueous solution containing 96 percent water, 4 percent blood plasma proteins, and trace amounts of other materials. The functions of blood cells include:

- To supply nutrients (e.g., oxygen, glucose) and constitutional elements to tissues and to remove waste products (e.g., carbon dioxide, lactic acid), the latter of which is the main function.
- To enable cells (e.g., leukocytes, abnormal tumor cells) and different substances (e.g., amino acids, lipids, hormones) to be transported between tissues and organs.

The peripheral vascular system comprises a number of vessels that have three basic components: smooth muscle, endothelial cells, and connective tissue. Arteries and veins have three distinct concentric layers (lamina) that form the wall (lumen). An adequate lumen size is critical for sufficient blood flow. Interestingly, the contribution of connective tissue in veins is much greater than that of arteries, which is reflective of the highly elastic and muscular arteries and the relatively less elastic veins. Vascular injury can occur from direct penetration, blunt trauma, surgical procedures, avulsion, or compression. The signs and symptoms of arterial injury can be defined as either hard or soft:[35,36]

- *Hard*. Hard signs of arterial injury require immediate surgery and include:
  - External arterial bleeding
  - Rapidly expanding hematoma
  - Palpable thrill, audible bruit
  - Signs of arterial occlusion (the 5 Ps: pulseless, pallor, paresthesia, pain, and/or paralysis).
- *Soft*. Soft signs, which may require an arteriogram, serial examination, or duplex include:
  - History of arterial bleeding
  - Proximity of penetrating wound or blunt trauma to major artery
  - Diminished unilateral distal pulse

- Neurological deficit
- Abnormal ankle-brachial pressure index (<0.9)
- Abnormal flow-velocity waveform on Doppler ultrasound compared with the noninvolved extremity.

Vascular injuries can be repaired nonoperatively (noninclusive wall or intimal lesions) or by surgery (arteriorrhaphy, resection with interposition graft, patch angioplasty, or resection with end-to-end anastomosis). Perhaps the most life-threatening vascular injury that the PTA may encounter, particularly in the acute care setting, is the deep vein thrombosis (DVT). DVT is described in Chapter 5.

Kinesiology

The primary functions of the musculoskeletal system are to transmit forces from one part of the body to another and to protect certain organs (such as the brain) from mechanical forces that could result in damage.[37] The structures involved with human movement include the muscles and tendons, which produce the movement; the nervous system, which controls the movement (see Chapter 3); and the joints, around which the movements occur. Most joints in the body are capable of movement by the pull of muscles and tendons, with the synovial joints having the most available range of motion. For the PTA administering rehabilitation programs, a working knowledge of kinesiology is essential. Some other definitions are worth noting (**TABLE 2.8**).

Anatomic Position

When describing movements, it is necessary to have a starting position. The anatomic reference position or anatomic position refers to this starting position. The anatomic reference position for the human body is the upright standing position with the feet just slightly separated and the arms hanging by the side, the elbows straight, and the palms of the hands facing forward (**FIGURE 2.11**).

Directional Terms

Directional terms are used to describe the relationship of body parts or the location of an external object on the body.[38] The following are commonly used directional terms:

- *Superior or cranial (cephalad)*: Closer to the head
- *Inferior or caudal*: Closer to the feet

TABLE 2.8 Key Terms Used in Kinesiology

Term	Definition
Biomechanics	The study of the biological and mechanical basis for human motion.
Kinematics	A branch of mechanics that describes the motion of a body with regard to space and time.
Kinetics	The actions or forces applied to the body.
Static	A state of no motion or constant motion.
Dynamic	A state in which a motion is changing.
Mass	The quantity of matter composing a body. The mass of an object remains the same wherever it is. Mass influences an object's resistance to a change in linear velocity. A common unit of mass is the kilogram (kg). Weight is measured in units of force such as the Newton.
Force	A push or pull action on an object. Force has both direction and magnitude. Commonly expressed in Newton's (N). *Linear (translatory) motion:* force is applied directly through the center of an object. *Angular (rotational) motion:* force is applied somewhere outside the center of an object. Most forces in the human body cause rotation.

(continues)

TABLE 2.8 Key Terms Used in Kinesiology *(continued)*

Term	Definition
Compression/approximation	A squeezing force.
Tension/traction/distraction	The opposite of a compressive force—a pulling or stretching force.
Pressure	The amount of force acting over a given area.
Weight	The force that a given mass feels because of gravity.
Inertia	The resistance to action or to change. Although inertia has no units of measurement, the amount of inertia a body possesses is directly proportional to its mass.
Center of gravity (COG)	The point around which the weight and mass are equally balanced in all directions. From a kinetic perspective, the location of the COG determines the way in which the body responds to external forces. COG also can be referred to as the center of mass (COM), although the COM is technically the mean location of all the mass in a system.
Density	Defined as the mass divided by the volume of an object.
Torque	The measure of a rotary force—when a structure is made to twist about its longitudinal axis, typically when one end of the structure is fixed. The product of force and the perpendicular distance between the line of action for the force and the axis point of rotation (moment arm).
Shear	A force that acts parallel or tangential to a surface.
Displacement	A measure of the change in position of an object. The change in the space of an object from the starting to the ending points.
Translation	When all parts of a body move in the same direction as every other part.
Rotation	The arc of movement of a body about an axis of rotation.
Mass moment of inertia	Quantity and distribution of matter in an object. Mass moment of inertia influences an object's resistance to a change in angular velocity.
Distance	Linear or angular displacement.
Velocity	Rate of linear or angular displacement.
Acceleration	Rate of change in linear or angular velocity.
Impulse	The product of the force and the length of time the force was produced.
Momentum	The product of an object's mass and its velocity.
Work	The product of force and the linear displacement of an object.
Power	Rate of linear work.

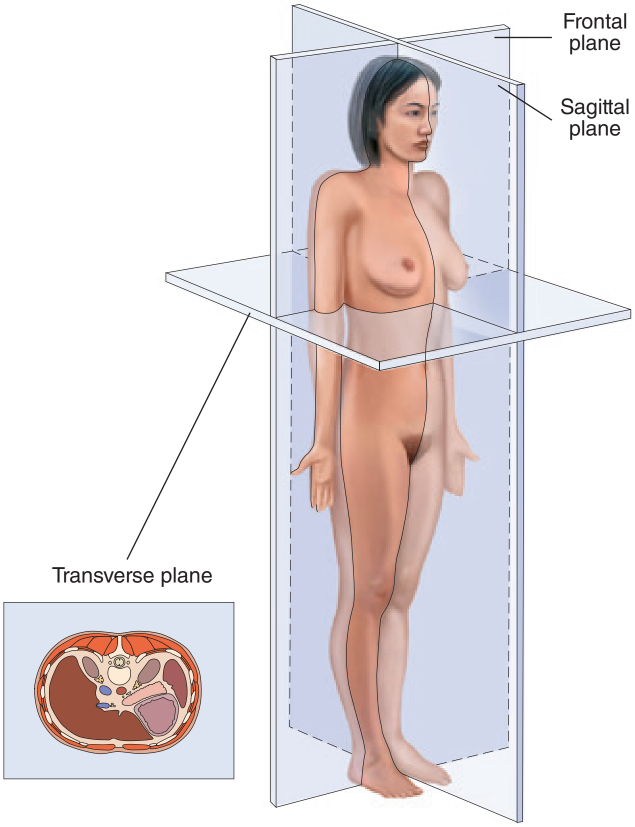


FIGURE 2.11 Anatomic position and planes of the body.

- *Anterior or ventral*: Toward the front of the body
- *Posterior or dorsal*: Toward the back of the body
- *Midline*: An imaginary line that courses vertically through the center of the body
- *Medial*: Toward the midline of the body
- *Lateral*: Away from the midline of the body
- *Proximal*: Closer to the trunk
- *Distal*: Away from the trunk
- *Superficial*: Toward the surface of the body
- *Deep*: Away from the surface of the body in the direction of the inside of the body

Planes of the Body

There are three cardinal planes of the body corresponding to the three dimensions of space (refer to Figure 2.11):

- *Sagittal*. The sagittal plane, also known as the anterior–posterior or median plane, divides the body vertically into left and right halves; the midsagittal plane divides the body into equal halves.
- *Frontal*. The frontal plane, also known as the lateral or coronal plane, divides the body into front and back halves.
- *Transverse*. The transverse plane, also known as the horizontal plane, divides the body into top and bottom halves.

Because each of these planes bisects the body, it follows that each plane must pass through the same point in the body. This point is referred to as the center of gravity (COG). The COG of the body is located approximately at the midline in the frontal plane and slightly anterior to the second sacral vertebra in the sagittal plane.

☑ KEY POINT

Most movements occur in an infinite number of vertical and horizontal planes parallel to the cardinal planes.

Axes of the Body

Three reference axes are used to describe human motion: frontal, sagittal, and longitudinal. The axis around which the movement takes place is always perpendicular to the plane in which it occurs.

- *Frontal*. The frontal axis, also known as the transverse axis, is perpendicular to the sagittal plane.
- *Sagittal*. The sagittal axis is perpendicular to the frontal plane.
- *Longitudinal*. The longitudinal axis, also known as the vertical axis, is perpendicular to the transverse plane.

Most movements occur in planes and around axes that are somewhere in between the traditional planes and axes, with the structure of the joint determining the possible axes of motion that are available. The planes and axes for the more common planar movements are as follows:

- Flexion, extension, hyperextension, dorsiflexion, and plantarflexion occur in the sagittal plane around a frontal–longitudinal axis.
- Abduction and adduction, side bending of the trunk, elevation and depression of the shoulder girdle, radial and ulnar deviation of the wrist, and eversion and inversion of the foot occur in the frontal plane around a sagittal–longitudinal axis.
- Rotation of the head, neck, and trunk; internal rotation and external rotation of the arm or leg; horizontal adduction and abduction of the arm or thigh; and pronation and supination of the forearm occur in the transverse plane around a longitudinal axis.
- Arm circling, leg circling, and trunk circling are examples of circumduction. Circumduction involves an orderly sequence of circular movements that occur in the sagittal, frontal, and intermediate oblique planes such that the segment as a whole incorporates a combination of flexion,

extension, abduction, and adduction. Circumduction movements can occur at the tibiofemoral, radiohumeral, hip, and glenohumeral joints, and in the spine (as a result of the cumulative effects of the various intervertebral joints).

Both the configuration of a joint and the line of pull of the muscle acting at a joint determine the potential motion that can occur at a joint:

- A muscle whose line of pull is lateral to the joint is a potential abductor.
- A muscle whose line of pull is medial to the joint is a potential adductor.
- A muscle whose line of pull is anterior to a joint has the potential to extend or flex the joint. At the knee, an anterior line of pull may cause the knee to extend, whereas at the elbow joint, an anterior line of pull may cause flexion of the elbow.
- A muscle whose line of pull is posterior to the joint has the potential to extend or flex a joint (refer to preceding example).
- A muscle whose line of pull is away from the center of the body has the potential to rotate a joint externally.
- A muscle whose line of pull is toward the center of the body has the potential to rotate a joint internally.

Because of the arrangement of the articulating surfaces—the surrounding ligaments and joint capsules—most motions around a joint do not occur in straight planes or along straight lines. Instead, the bones at any joint move through space in curved paths. This can best be illustrated using Codman's paradox:

1. Stand with your arms by your side, palms facing inward and thumbs extended. Notice that the thumb is pointing forward.
2. Flex one arm to 90 degrees at the shoulder, so the thumb is pointing up.
3. From this position, horizontally abduct your arm, so the thumb remains pointing up, but your arm is in a position of 90 degrees of glenohumeral abduction.
4. From this position, without rotating your arm, return the arm to your side and note that your thumb is now pointing away from your thigh.

Referring to the start position, and using the thumb as the reference, it can be seen that the arm has undergone an external rotation of 90 degrees. The rotation occurred during the three separate, straight-plane motions or swings that etched a triangle in space—an example of a conjunct rotation. Conjunct rotation occurs as a result of joint surface shapes—and the effect of inert tissues rather than contractile tissues. Most habitual movements, or those movements that occur most frequently at a joint, involve a conjunct rotation. However, the conjunct rotations are not always under volitional control. The implications become important when attempting to restore motion at these joints: when choosing mobilizing techniques, the PT/PTA must take into consideration both the relative shapes of the articulating surfaces and the conjunct rotation that is associated with a particular motion.

Force

Force is a vector quantity, with magnitude, direction, and point of application to a body. Force, which can be external or internal, may be defined as a mechanical disturbance or load.[37] The various units of force are depicted in **TABLE 2.9**. Kinetics is the branch of mechanics that describes the effect of forces on the body. Some variables determine the degree of force exerted, including:

- *Magnitude.* A measure of the size and strength of a force—the size or length of a vector (**FIGURE 2.12**). Vectors are used in kinesiology to represent the magnitude and direction of the force.
- *Direction.* Specifies the direction (positive or negative) in which the resultant force moves along the line of action.

TABLE 2.9 International System of Units (SI) of Force

Unit	Definition
Dyne	A force magnitude causing an acceleration of 1 cm/s^2 to a rigid body with 1 g of mass
Newton (N)	A force magnitude causing an acceleration of 1 cm/s^2 to a rigid body with 1 kg of mass
Pound force (lb f)	A force magnitude causing an acceleration of 1 g (32.2 ft/s^2) to a mass of 1 lb; 1 kg f = 2.2 lb f
Kilogram force (kg f)	A force magnitude causing an acceleration of 1 g (9.8 m/s^2) to a mass of 1 kg; 1 kg f = 9.8 N

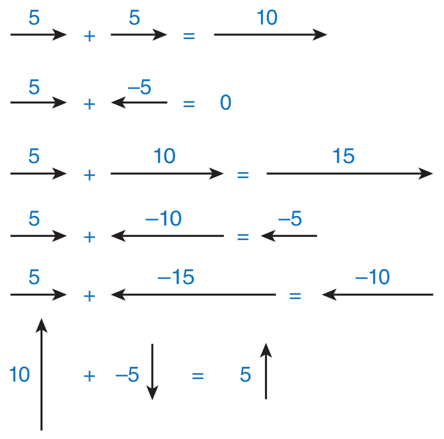


FIGURE 2.12 Force vectors.

Courtesy of Thomas Henderson.

- *Line of action.* Each force has an associated characteristic line that can be described in terms of angle and slope. If the line of action of a force does not pass through the body, then the force attempts to rotate the body. Most forces that act on the body produce rotation.
- *Point of application.* The exact location at which a force is applied to a body. This point is usually described by a set of coordinates and is represented graphically by an arrowhead (refer to Figure 2.12). The point of application, which can be more than a single point, is unique to each force.

External forces are produced by powers acting from outside the body, such as gravity or the manual resistance applied by a clinician to a movement. Internal forces are produced from structures located within the body, such as a muscle contraction (active force) or the stretching of connective tissues (passive force). A number of internal forces are recognized. These include compression, tension, shear, and torsion.

- *Compression/approximation.* This can be viewed as a squeezing force. Pressure is defined as the amount of force acting over a given area.
- *Tension/traction/distraction.* This is a type of force that is the opposite of a compressive force, and can be viewed as a pulling or stretching force.
- *Shear.* Shear forces tend to cause one portion of an object to slide or displace on another portion of the object. Whereas compressive and tensile forces act along the longitudinal axis of a structure to which they are applied, shear forces act parallel or tangential to a surface. For example, when bending forward at the waist, shear forces are produced between the lumbar vertebral bodies and their respective intervertebral disks.
- *Torsion.* Torsional forces (torque) occur when a structure is made to twist about its longitudinal axis, typically when one end of the structure is fixed. For example, torsional forces occur through the lower extremity if a directional change is attempted while the sole of the foot is planted firmly on the ground.

When a force acts on an object, there are two potential effects: acceleration and deformation.

☑ KEY POINT

Impressive forces occur across the joints of the human body. For example, during normal walking, forces of the hip routinely reach three times a person's body weight. Most of this joint force arises from the forces of muscle contraction; these are commonly referred to as *joint reaction forces*. In healthy individuals, these forces are absorbed by a thick and moist articular cartilage that dampens the forces while also increasing the surface area of the joint. However, in areas where the cartilage has been worn out, the ability to tolerate even relatively small pressures is reduced, resulting in inflammation (arthritis). In such cases, the PTA teaches the patient joint protection techniques (e.g., good body mechanics, use of an assistive device) to help reduce stress and further wear and tear of the joint.

☑ KEY POINT

A system of forces that exerts a resultant moment, but no resultant force, is called a *force couple*. The resultant effect of a force couple is to induce rotation, without any translation. There are a number of important force couples within the human body:

- Hip flexors (iliopsoas, rectus femoris) and the spinal erectors work to produce an anterior tilt of the pelvis.
- Hip extensors and the abdominals work to produce a posterior tilt of the pelvis.
- The upper trapezius, lower trapezius, and serratus anterior work to produce the action of upward rotation of the scapula during arm elevation.

☑ KEY POINT

Friction and gravity are types of forces that commonly act on the body. *Friction* is a force that occurs when two objects are in direct contact and acts to impede the motion of the objects. Once one of the objects begins to move, the frictional force decreases but remains constant, even with additional applied force. *Gravity* is the force that is inversely proportional to the square of the distance between attracting objects and is proportional to the product of their masses. The more mass an object has, the greater the gravitational force.

Load Deformation Curve

The inherent ability of tissue to tolerate load can be observed experimentally in graphic form. The term *stress* describes the type of force applied to a tissue, whereas *strain* is the deformation that develops within a structure in response to externally applied loads. When any stress is plotted on a graph against the resulting strain for a given material, the shape of the resulting load–deformation curve depends on the kind of material involved. The load–deformation curve, or stress–strain curve, of a structure (**FIGURE 2.13**) depicts the relationship between the amount of force applied to a structure and the structure's response regarding deformation or acceleration. The horizontal axis (deformation or strain) represents the ratio of the tissue's deformed length to its original length. The vertical axis of the graph (load or stress) denotes the internal resistance generated as a tissue resists its deformation, divided by its cross-sectional area. The load–deformation curve can be divided into four regions—toe region, elastic deformation region, plastic deformation region, and failure region—with each region representing a biomechanical property of the tissue.

Toe Region

Collagen fibers have a wavy, or folded, appearance at rest. When a force that lengthens the collagen fibers is initially applied to connective tissue, these folds are affected first. As the fibers unfold, the slack is taken up and tension develops. The length of the toe region depends on the type of material and the waviness of the collagen pattern.

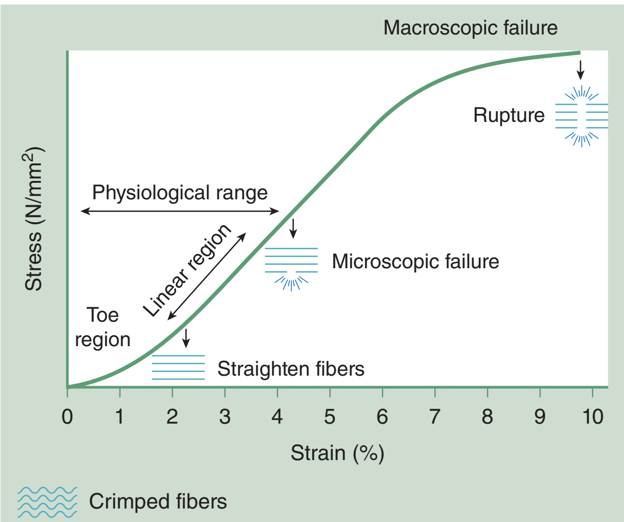


FIGURE 2.13 Stress–strain curve.

Elastic Deformation Region

Within the elastic deformation region, the structure imitates a spring—the geometric deformation in the structure increases linearly with increasing load, and after the load is released, the structure returns to its original shape. The ability of tissue to recover after the stress is removed is extremely important in relation to flexibility. The extensibility of a structure depends on the following factors:

- *Stiffness.* The ratio of stress to strain in an elastic material is a measure of its stiffness. The stiffer the structure, the steeper the slope of its stress–strain curve. All normal tissues within the musculoskeletal system exhibit some degree of stiffness. Stiffness can be defined as the resistance of a structure to deformation, or, the force required to produce a unit of deformation.
- *Viscoelasticity.* Viscoelasticity is the time-dependent mechanical property of material to stretch or shorten over time. The mechanical qualities of tissue can be separated into categories based on whether the tissue acts primarily like a solid, fluid, or a mixture of the two. Solids are described according to their elasticity, strength, hardness, and stiffness. Bone, ligaments, tendons, and skeletal muscle are all examples of elastic solids. Biological tissues that demonstrate attributes of both solids and fluids are viscoelastic. The viscoelastic properties of a structure determine its response to loading. A more viscoelastic tissue causes the load–deformation curve to shift further to the right. Some physical properties of viscoelastic tissues help describe how tissues elongate with stretching:
  - *Creep.* The ability of tissue to elongate over time when a constant load is applied to it, or change to a new length in response to a rapidly applied load. For example, when stretching an adaptively shortened biceps that is restricted at 90 degrees of elbow motion, if a 10-kg load is applied to the elongated muscle, the muscle would gradually lengthen—it would "creep" a few degrees over a period of time. Peripheral nerves are also capable of creep. (See Chapter 3.)
  - *Load relaxation.* Describes how less force is required to maintain a tissue at a set length over time. Using the above example, if 10 kg of force is used to achieve 95 degrees of elbow motion after 15 minutes, less force would be needed to keep the elbow at 95 degrees.
  - *Hysteresis.* Describes the amount of lengthening a tissue will maintain after a cycle of stretching (deformation) and then relaxation.

Using the previous example, if an additional 5 degrees of range of motion was gained after stretching, that range gain would remain for a period of time after the load is removed.

- *Age.* Age has effects on all aspects of the load–deformation curve. At an early age, a longer failure region is observed, which is less evident at a later age.
- *Exercise.* Exercise increases the stiffness and ultimate tensile strength of some structures, such as ligaments, cartilage, bone, and tendons. Conversely, immobility compromises the properties of connective tissue and skeletal muscle.
- *Temperature.* Temperatures in the range of 98.6°F (37°C) to 104°F (40°C) affect the viscoelastic properties of connective tissue. Warmer tissue temperatures result in less microscopic damage when the connective tissue is placed under stress. This is one of the reasons why a structure that is to be stretched is warmed up first, either by using a hot pack or through physical activity.

☑ KEY POINT

Connective tissue that is loaded more quickly will behave more stiffly (will deform less) than the same tissue loaded at a slower rate. In collagen fibers, the greater the density of the chemical bonds between the fibers or between the fibers and their surrounding matrix, the greater the stiffness. For example, the tendons of the digital flexors and extensors are very stiff, and their length changes very little when muscle forces are applied through them. In contrast, the tendons of some muscles (e.g., the Achilles tendon), particularly those involved in locomotion and ballistic performance, are more elastic.

☑ KEY POINT

Elastic deformation is similar to the changes that occur with a Thera-Band—after being stretched, the Thera-Band can return to its original resting length once the stress is removed.

Plastic Deformation Region

The end of the elastic range and the beginning of the plastic range represent the point where an increasing level of stress on the tissue results in progressive failure, microscopic tearing of the collagen fibers, and permanent deformation. The permanent change results from the breaking of bonds and their subsequent inability to contribute to the recovery of the tissue. Unlike the elastic region, removal of the load in the plastic deformation region will not result in a return of the tissue to its original length.

☑ KEY POINT

Plastic deformation can be demonstrated using a plastic fork—if a low degree of stress is applied to the fork, it will slowly deform into a new shape. However, if the stress is applied too quickly, the fork breaks.

Failure Region

Deformations exceeding the ultimate failure point produce mechanical failure of the structure, which in the human body may be represented by the fracturing of bone or the rupturing of soft tissues.

☑ KEY POINT

Elasticity is defined as the tendency of tissue to return to its resting length after passive stretch. *Plasticity* is defined as the tendency of tissue to assume a new and greater length after passive stretch. *Extensibility* is the ability of a structure to be stretched to its fullest length.[37]

Levers

Biomechanical levers can be defined as rotations of a rigid surface about an axis involving a lever, a load, a fulcrum, and an effort. For simplicity's sake, levers are usually described using a straight bar, which is the lever, and a fulcrum, which is the point on which the bar is resting. The effort force attempts to cause movement of the load. The part of the lever between the fulcrum and the load is the moment arm. There are three types of levers:

- *First class.* Occurs when two forces are applied on either side of an axis and the fulcrum lies between the effort and the load, like a seesaw (**FIGURE 2.14**).

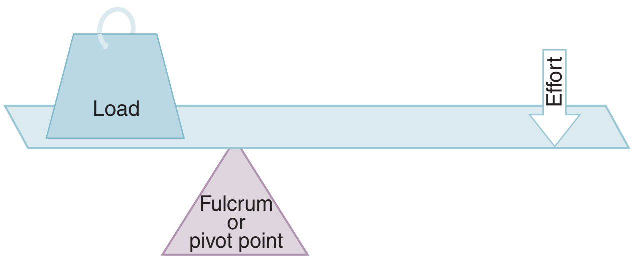


FIGURE 2.14 First-class lever.

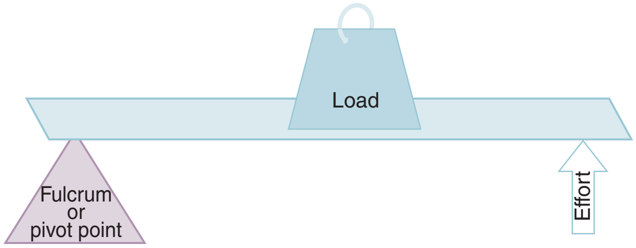


FIGURE 2.15 Second-class lever.

An example in the human body is the joint between the skull and the atlas vertebrae of the spine: the spine is the fulcrum across which muscles lift the head.

- *Second class.* Occurs when the load is applied between the fulcrum and the point where the effort is exerted (**FIGURE 2.15**). This has the advantage of magnifying the effects of the effort so that it takes less force to move the load. Examples of second-class levers in everyday life include a nutcracker and a wheelbarrow—with the wheel acting as the fulcrum. There are a few examples of second-class levers in the human body when only considering concentric contractions; for example, the Achilles tendon, pushing or pulling across the heel of the foot. When considering both concentric and eccentric contractions, all peripheral joint muscles act as both a third- and a second-class lever—as a third class in concentric contractions and as a second class in eccentric contractions.
- *Third class.* Occurs when the load is located at the end of the lever (**FIGURE 2.16**) and the effort lies between the fulcrum and the load (resistance), like a drawbridge or a crane. The effort is exerted between the load and the fulcrum. The effort expended is greater than the load, but the load is moved a greater distance. It is no accident that the overwhelming majority of bony lever systems in the body are designed as third-class levers, because it is usually essential that the distal ends of our limbs move faster than the muscles can physiologically contract (see the following section, "Mechanical Advantage"). For example, great speed and distance of the hand and foot are necessary to impart large power of thrust against objects as well as for rapid advancement of the foot during walking and running.[39] An example of a third-class lever in the body occurs when the hamstrings contract to flex the leg at the knee.

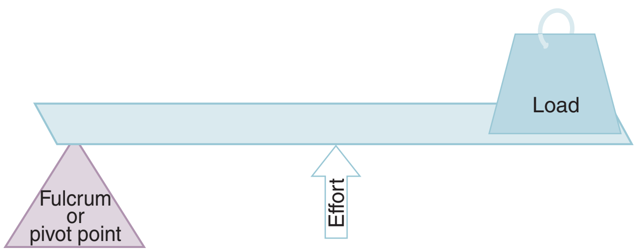


FIGURE 2.16 Third-class lever.

Mechanical Advantage

When a machine puts out more force than is put in, the machine is said to have a mechanical advantage (MA). The MA of the musculoskeletal lever is defined as the ratio of the internal moment arm (IMA) to the external moment arm (EMA). For example, muscular forces act about an IMA, whereas gravity could be considered as an EMA. These moment arms convert the forces into rotary torques. Musculoskeletal lever systems that have larger IMAs than EMAs are said to provide good leverage because small muscular (internal) forces can move large external loads.[39] In contrast, levers that have smaller IMAs than EMAs favor speed and distance (the distal end of the bone moves at a greater distance and speed than the contracting muscle) but at the expense of requiring increased muscle force.[39] Since MA = IMA / EMA, systems with good mechanical advantage (leverage) will have an MA greater than or equal to 1. Depending on the location of the axis of rotation, the first-class lever can have an MA equal to, less than, or greater than 1.[40] Second-class levers always have an MA greater than 1. Third-class levers always have an MA less than 1.

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> MA relates to the distance of the resistance arm versus the distance of the force arm. Whereas first-class and second-class levers can have a significant mechanical advantage, third-class levers increase distance and speed, but they cannot increase force. Therefore, when a muscle is used as a third-class lever it must expend a relatively large force, even for seemingly low-load activities.

Equilibrium

Equilibrium is the condition of a system in which competing forces and torques are balanced. Balance and stability are two aspects related to equilibrium. Balance is the process by which the body's COM*

* The center of mass or mass center is the mean location of all the mass in a system or body. The term *center of mass* can be used interchangeably with *center of gravity* because within a uniform gravitational field the two coincide.

is controlled with respect to the base of support, whether that base of support is stationary or moving.[41] Balance testing (see Chapter 3) and balance training (see Chapter 14) are integral parts of physical therapy. According to Berg,[42] balance can be defined as the ability to:

- Maintain a position
- Voluntarily move
- React to a perturbation

The stability of a body is a measure of its ability to return to a position of equilibrium after being disturbed, or the body's resistance to change from a state of equilibrium. From the rehabilitation viewpoint, stability can be defined as the ability to provide a stable base from which to move. Body sway (the slight postural movements made by an individual to maintain a balanced position) is an indicator of the presence of postural stability. In patients with poor postural stability, the body sway adaptations are dysfunctional or absent, causing them to fall. (See Chapter 14.)

Patients with poor balance and/or stability require a greater base of support (e.g., an assistive device) and a greater level of supervision.

Newton's Laws of Motion

Newton's laws of motion help to explain the relationship between forces and their impact on individual joints, as well as on total body motion (**TABLE 2.10**).

Active Length—Tension Relationship

Muscles are elastic in nature and are therefore constantly being lengthened or shortened. This change in length of a muscle is known as its excursion. Typically, a

TABLE 2.10 Newton's Laws of Motion

	Definition	Description	Real-Life Example
First law	Every object in a state of uniform motion tends to remain in that state of motion unless an external force is applied to it. Also known as the law of inertia.	Describes a body that is in a state of equilibrium—the reluctance of an object to change its movement pattern. The larger the mass, or inertia, of an object, the more difficult it is to alter its motion.	When a vehicle strikes a large object and is suddenly forced to stop, the driver continues to move forward because of his or her inertia.
Second law	The acceleration of a body is directly proportional to the force causing it. The relationship between an object's mass, *m*, its acceleration, a, and the applied force, *F*, is $F = ma$. Acceleration and force are vectors (as indicated by their symbols being displayed in italics); in this law the direction of the force vector is the same as the direction of the acceleration vector.	This is the most powerful of Newton's three laws, because it allows quantitative calculations of dynamics: how do velocities change when forces are applied.	Because motion is inversely related to mass, gait and weight-bearing exercises are likely to be more challenging for heavier patients.
Third law	For every action there is an equal and opposite reaction.	For every interaction between two objects (A and B), there is a pair of forces acting on those objects. The size of the forces on object A equals the size of the force on object B such that if object A pushes on object B, then object B pushes on A with the same force but in the opposite direction.	When stepping off a boat onto the bank of a lake in the direction of the shore, the boat tends to move in the opposite direction. In rehabilitation, the term *ground reaction force* is used to describe the force patterns that occur when the foot strikes the ground.

muscle can only shorten or elongate about half its resting length. In its most basic form, the length–tension relationship states that isometric tension generated in skeletal muscle is a function of the magnitude of overlap between actin and myosin filaments. For each muscle cell, there is an optimum length, or range of lengths, at which the contractile force is strongest. At the optimum length of the muscle, there is a near-optimal overlap of actin and myosin, allowing for the generation of maximum tension at this length.

If the muscle is in a shortened position relative to the optimum length, the overlap of actin and myosin reduces the number of sites available for cross-bridge formation. *Active insufficiency* of a muscle occurs when the muscle is incapable of shortening to the extent required to produce a full range of motion at all joints crossed simultaneously.[30,43–45] For example, the finger flexors cannot produce a tight fist when the wrist is fully flexed, as they can when it is in a neutral position.

If a muscle is in a lengthened position relative to its optimum length, the actin filaments are pulled away from the myosin heads such that they cannot create as many cross-bridges.[46] *Passive insufficiency* of the muscle occurs when the two-joint muscle cannot stretch to the extent required for full range of motion in the opposite direction at all joints crossed.[30,43–45] For example, a larger range of hyperextension is possible at the wrist when the fingers are not fully extended.

The length–tension relationship is often represented graphically (**FIGURE 2.17**). At short muscle lengths, an increase in length brings an increase in force, giving a positive slope to the length–tension function. At medium lengths, filament overlap allows the largest number of cross-bridges to form, and thus the force is maximum and the slope is zero. At longer lengths, the slope becomes negative in that the force decreases with increasing length because available cross-bridge sites decrease.

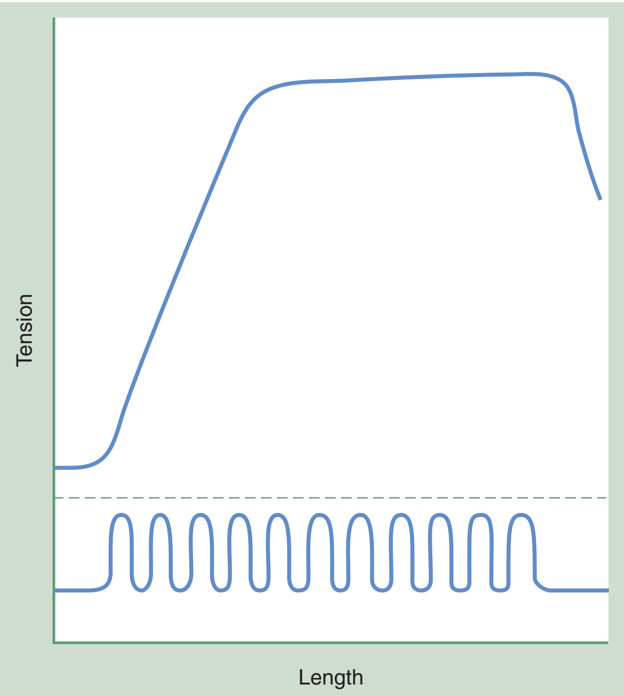


FIGURE 2.17 Length–tension curve.

Passive Length–Tension Relationship

A muscle generates greater internal elastic force when it is stretched, as demonstrated by a muscle's passive length–tension curve (refer to Figure 2.17). As a muscle is progressively stretched, the tissue is slack until it reaches a critical length where it begins to generate tension. Beyond this critical length, the tension builds exponentially. It is not uncommon for muscles to use active contractions over one joint with passive lengthening over another joint. For example, consider the biceps when pulling an object toward the body, a movement that combines simultaneous and rapid elbow flexion with shoulder extension. As the biceps contracts to perform elbow flexion, it is simultaneously elongated or stretched across the extending shoulder. Such an activity helps maintain a near-constant (and optimal) overall length of the biceps during the activity and allows the biceps to produce a more constant force throughout the range of motion.[31]

Force–Velocity Relationship

The rate of muscle shortening or lengthening markedly affects the force that a muscle can develop during contraction.

Shortening Contractions

As the speed of a muscle shortening increases, the force it is capable of producing decreases.[47,48] A slower rate of shortening is thought to produce greater forces than can be produced by increasing the number of cross-bridges formed. This relationship can be viewed as a continuum, with the optimum velocity for the muscle somewhere between the slowest and fastest rates. At very slow speeds, the force that a muscle can resist or overcome rises rapidly, up to 50 percent greater than the maximum isometric contraction.[47,48]

Lengthening Contractions

When a muscle contracts while lengthening (eccentric contraction), the force production differs from that of a shortening (concentric) contraction. Rapid lengthening contractions generate more force than do slower lengthening contractions. During slow lengthening muscle actions, the work produced approximates that of an isometric contraction.[47,48]

Joint Kinematics

A joint is the articulation, or junction, between two or more bones that acts as a pivot point for bony movement. In studying joint kinematics, two major types of movements are involved: (1) osteokinematic and (2) arthrokinematic.

Osteokinematic Motion

Osteokinematic motion occurs when any object forms the radius of an imaginary circle about a fixed point. The axis of rotation for osteokinematic motions is oriented perpendicular to the plane in which the rotation occurs.[38] The distance traveled by the motion is measured as an angle, in degrees. All human body segment motions involve osteokinematic motions. Examples of osteokinematic motion include abduction or adduction of the arm, flexion of the hip or knee, and side bending of the trunk.

Arthrokinematic Motion

The involuntary motions that occur at the joint surfaces during activities are termed *arthrokinematic* movements. At each synovial articulation, the articulating surface of one bone end moves relative to the shape of the other articulating surface. For the sake of simplicity, the shapes of these articulating surfaces in synovial joints are described as being *ovoid* or *sellar* in shape. Under this concept, an articulating surface can be either concave (female) or convex (male) in shape (ovoid), or a combination of both shapes (sellar).

Osteokinematic and arthrokinematic motions occur simultaneously during movement and are directly proportional to each other, with a small increment of arthrokinematic motion occurring with a larger increment of osteokinematic motion. It, therefore, follows that if a joint is not functioning correctly, one or both of these motions may be at fault. To improve osteokinematic motion, range of motion and flexibility exercises need to be performed, but to improve arthrokinematic motion, a joint mobilization may be required.

Osteokinematic motion is described in terms of planes (e.g., elevation in the sagittal plane) or relative movements (e.g., flexion, adduction). Three fundamental types of arthrokinematic movement exist between joint surfaces:[49]

- *Roll.* A roll occurs when the points of contact on each joint surface are constantly changing (**FIGURE 2.18**). This type of movement is analogous to a ball rolling on a surface. The term *rock* is often used to describe small rolling motions.
- *Slide.* A slide or glide is a pure translation. It occurs if only one point on the moving surface makes contact with varying points on the opposing surface (**FIGURE 2.19**). This type of movement is analogous to a car tire skidding when the brakes are applied suddenly on a wet road. This type of motion is also referred to as *translatory* or *accessory* motion.

  Although the roll of a joint always occurs in the same direction as the swing of a bone, the direction of the glide is determined by the shape of the articulating surface. This rule is often referred to as the *concave–convex rule*: If the joint surface that is moving is convex relative to the other stationary surface, the slide occurs in the opposite direction to the osteokinematic motion (**FIGURE 2.20**). If, on the other hand, if the joint surface of the moving surface is concave, the slide occurs in the same direction as the osteokinematic motion (**FIGURE 2.21**). A knowledge of the concave–convex rule is critical when performing joint mobilizations. This is described further in Chapter 6.
- *Spin.* A spin is defined as any movement in which the bone moves but the mechanical axis remains stationary. A spin involves a rotation

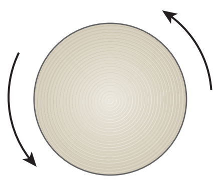


FIGURE 2.18 Arthrokinematic roll.

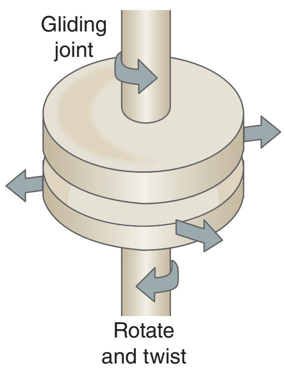


FIGURE 2.19 Arthrokinematic slide.

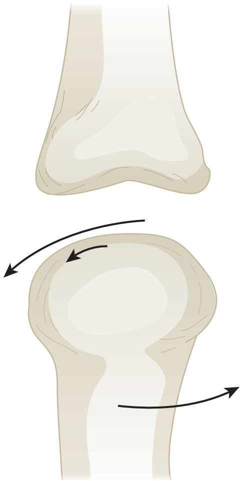


FIGURE 2.20 Convex on concave.

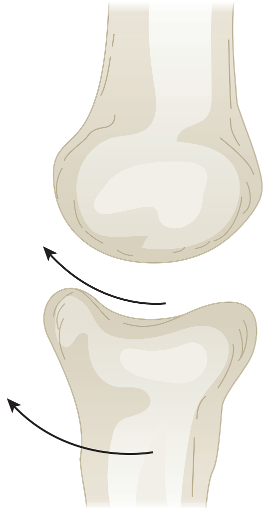


FIGURE 2.21 Concave on convex.

of one surface on an opposing surface around a longitudinal axis (**FIGURE 2.22**). Spin motions in the body include shoulder flexion/extension and at the radial head during forearm pronation and supination.

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> For an example of the concave–convex rule occurring in the clinical setting, consider glenohumeral joint abduction. During this motion, the convex humeral head moves on the concave glenoid fossa. The osteokinematic motion occurs as the arm moves superiorly in the frontal plane. However, at the joint surfaces (the arthrokinematic motion), the convex humeral head is sliding inferiorly on the concave glenoid fossa—in the opposite direction to the osteokinematic motion.

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> Most diarthrodial (synovial) joints demonstrate composite motions involving a roll, slide, and spin during activities.

Close-Packed and Open-Packed Positions of the Joint

Joint movements usually are accompanied by a relative compression (approximation) or distraction (separation) of the opposing joint surfaces. These relative compressions or distractions affect the level of *congruity* of the opposing surfaces. The position of maximum congruity of the opposing joint surfaces is termed the *close-packed* position of the joint. The position of least congruity is termed the *open-packed* position. Thus, movements toward the close-packed position of a joint involve an element of compression, whereas movements out of this position involve an element of distraction.

Close-Packed Position

The close-packed position of a joint is the joint position that results in:

- Maximal tautness of the major ligaments
- Maximal surface congruity
- Minimal joint volume
- Maximal stability of the joint

Once the close-packed position is achieved, no further motion in that direction is possible. This is the often-cited reason why most fractures and dislocations occur when an external force is applied to a

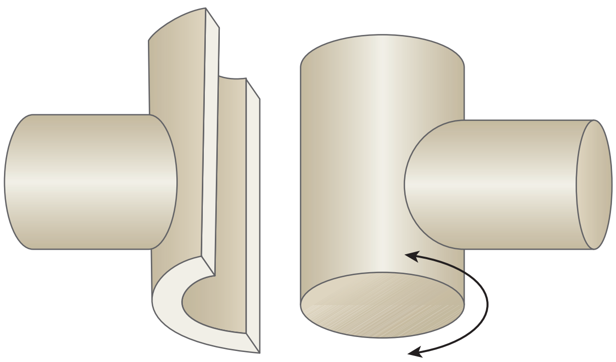


FIGURE 2.22 Arthrokinematic spin.

joint that is in its close-packed position. For example, many of the traumatic injuries of the upper extremities result from falling on a shoulder, elbow, or wrist (commonly referred to as FOOSH—a *f*all *o*n an *o*ut*s*tretched *h*and) that is in its close-packed position. The close-packed positions for the various joints are presented in Appendix F. From a clinical perspective; the close-packed position is used by the PT for testing the integrity and stability of ligaments and capsular structures.

Open-Packed Position

In essence, any position of the joint, other than the close-packed position, could be considered as an open-packed position. The open-packed position, also referred to as the *loose-packed* or *resting* position of a joint, is the joint position that results in the following:

- Slackening of the major ligaments of the joint
- Minimal surface congruity
- Minimal joint surface contact
- Maximal joint volume
- Minimal stability of the joint

For example, at the ankle, which has a close-packed position of dorsiflexion, most ankle sprains occur when the ankle is plantarflexed. The open-packed positions for the various joints are presented in Appendix F.

> ☑ **KEY POINT**
>
> The open-packed position is commonly used during joint mobilization techniques. (See Chapter 9.)

Range of Motion, Flexibility, and Joint Mobility

Range of motion (ROM) can be defined as the amount of osteokinematic and arthrokinematic movement available to a joint when moving within its anatomic range. *Flexibility* can be defined as the ability of connective tissue (muscles, tendons, ligaments, skin, and joint capsules) to yield to a stretch force. *Joint mobility* can be defined as the amount of arthrokinematic motion available to a joint. Normal range of motion, flexibility, joint mobility, and neuromuscular coordination are required for a joint to function efficiently and effectively.[50] However, a loss of motion at one joint may not prevent the performance of a functional task, although it may result in the task being performed abnormally. For example, the act of walking can still be accomplished in the presence of a knee joint that has been fused into extension. The amount of available joint motion is based on a number of factors, including:

- Integrity of the joint surfaces and the amount of joint motion
- Mobility and pliability of the soft tissues that surround a joint
- Degree of soft tissue approximation that occurs
- Amount of scarring that is present;[51] interstitial scarring or fibrosis can occur in and around the joint capsules, within the muscles, and within the ligaments as a result of previous trauma
- Age; joint motion tends to decrease with increasing age
- Gender; in general, females have more joint motion than males

Joint mobility can be assessed using joint mobility testing. (See Chapter 6.) ROM can be measured using standard goniometric instruments. Joint mobility can be improved using joint mobilizations. (See Chapter 9.) Both range of motion and flexibility can be improved using a number of techniques. (See Chapter 12.)

Hypomobility

If the movement of a joint is less than that considered normal or less than when compared with the same joint on the opposite extremity, it may be deemed *hypomobile*. Causes of restricted motion can range from mild muscle shortening to irreversible contractures. Contracture is defined as an adaptive shortening of the soft tissues that cross or surround a joint that results in significant resistance to passive or active stretch and limitation of ROM. Contractures are described by identifying the action of the adaptively shortened muscle. For example, if a patient has adaptively shortened knee flexors and cannot fully extend the knee, he or she is said to have a knee flexion contracture. A number of contractures have been recognized:[52]

- *Arthrogenic and periarticular.* These contractures are the result of intra-articular pathology, including adhesions, synovial proliferation, joint effusion, irregularities in articular cartilage, or osteophyte formation.
- *Myostatic.* This is an adaptive shortening of the musculotendinous unit in the presence of no pathology, resulting in significant loss of ROM. These contractures respond well to stretching. (See Chapter 12.) A pseudomyostatic contracture

can result from hypertonicity (i.e., spasticity or rigidity) associated with a central nervous system lesion, or from pain, muscle spasm, or muscle guarding. This type of contracture results in excessive resistance to passive stretch.

- *Fibrotic and irreversible.* Caused by an adherence of connective tissue and subsequent development of fibrotic contracture due to fibrous changes, these contractures can be improved through stretching, although it is often difficult to reestablish optimal tissue length.

Hypermobility and Instability

A joint that moves more than is considered normal, when compared with the same joint on the opposite extremity, may be deemed *hypermobile*. Hypermobility may occur as a generalized phenomenon or be localized to just one direction of movement. Types of hypermobility are described as follows:

- *Generalized hypermobility.* The generalized form of hypermobility, as its name suggests, refers to the manifestations of multiple joint hyperlaxity, joint hypermobility, or articular hypermobility. This type of hypermobility can be seen in acrobats, gymnasts, and those individuals who are "double-jointed." In addition, generalized hypermobility occurs with genetic diseases that include joint hypermobility as an associated finding, such as Ehlers-Danlos syndrome, osteogenesis imperfecta, and Marfan's syndrome.
- *Localized hypermobility.* Localized hypermobility is likely to occur as a reaction to neighboring stiffness. For example, a compensatory hypermobility may occur at a joint when a neighboring joint or segment becomes hypomobile secondary to trauma or immobilization.

The term *stability*, specifically related to the joint, has been the subject of much research.[53–68] Joint stability may be viewed as a factor of joint integrity, elastic energy, passive stiffness, and muscle activation.

- *Joint integrity.* Joint integrity is enhanced in those ball-and-socket joints with deeper sockets or steeper sides (e.g., hip), as opposed to those with planar sockets and shallower sides (e.g., shoulder). Joint integrity also depends on the attributes of the supporting structures around the joint and the extent of joint disease. For example, in addition to having a deep acetabulum, the hip joint has a labrum and strong supporting ligaments. (See Chapter 23.)
- *Elastic energy.* As previously discussed, connective tissues are elastic structures and, as such, are capable of storing elastic energy when stretched. This stored elastic energy may then be used to perform a movement, such as a jump. This is the concept behind an exercise type called *plyometrics*, which uses a combination of eccentric (stretch phase) and then concentric muscle activation. (See Chapter 13.)
- *Passive stiffness.* Individual joints have passive stiffness that increases toward the joint end range. An injury to these passive structures that causes inherent loss in the passive stiffness results in joint laxity.[69] For example, passive stiffness can exist in the hamstrings prior to stretching and an improvement can be seen with only a few stretches.
- *Muscle activation.* Muscle activation increases stiffness, both within the muscle and within the joint(s) it crosses.[70] However, the synergist and antagonist muscles that cross the joint must be activated with the correct and appropriate activation in terms of magnitude or timing. A faulty motor control system may lead to inappropriate magnitudes of muscle force and stiffness, allowing a joint to undergo shear translation.[70] For example, following knee surgery, a reflex inhibition of the quadriceps muscle often occurs, requiring the patient to wear a brace to prevent buckling.

Pathologic breakdown of these factors may result in *instability*. Two types of instability are recognized: articular and ligamentous. In contrast to a hypermobile joint, an unstable joint involves a disruption of the osseous and ligamentous structures of that joint and results in a loss of function.

- Articular instability can lead to abnormal patterns of coupled and translational movements.[71] For example, in the spine, joint instability can be manifested by permitting sidebending then extension, but not extension followed by sidebending.
- Ligamentous instability may lead to multiple planes of aberrant joint motion.[72] Consider the amount of aberrant joint motion that occurs at the tibiofemoral joint following a rupture of the anterior cruciate ligament.

Summary

Numerous types of tissue exist throughout the body, each having specific functional capabilities; for example, upon studying the structure and function of joints, one can see that some joints are designed for mobility (e.g., glenohumeral), whereas other joints are designed for stability (e.g., elbow). Although joint design helps these characteristics, other factors such as ligamentous and muscular support play a role. The various types of connective tissue that are contained in fascia, tendons, ligaments, bone, and muscle give each of these structures unique characteristics based on the function they must perform. In physical therapy, injury to any of the musculoskeletal structures must be diagnosed and treated. The physical therapy diagnosis is based on an assessment that includes range of motion measurements, measurement of joint and ligament integrity, and the measurement of muscle performance. The body is often viewed as a machine powered by muscles that produces functional movements by rotating bony levers, some of which are designed to produce large torques, whereas others are designed for speed or endurance. The body, or body segment, moves relative to the three cardinal planes, and the direction of movement is determined by the muscle's line of pull relative to the axis of rotation of the joint around which it is working. In addition, the motion that occurs at a joint follows specific arthrokinematic procedures based on the design and health of the joint. Although it is simpler to describe muscle actions and joint motions as though they occur in isolation, this is extremely uncommon.

Learning Portfolio

Case Study

You are supervising patients who are exercising in the gym, each with a variety of diagnoses and stages of healing, but all of them having difficulty in performing their prescribed exercises. You notice that patient A, who has just started performing a supine straight leg raises into hip flexion, is exhibiting a quad lag and slight knee flexion while performing the exercise despite using no resistance other than gravity.

1. How could you modify this exercise to allow the patient to perform it correctly?
2. What other exercise or exercises could you prescribe instead?

Patient B is performing a biceps curl with a one-pound dumbbell but is clearly using a number of muscle substitutions to complete the exercise.

3. What are the typical substitutions you might see in a patient who is using too heavy a weight during a biceps curl?
4. What other exercise or exercises could you prescribe instead?

Patient C is performing active assisted shoulder abduction in the supine position but is unable to achieve full range of motion.

5. How can you, or your supervising PT, determine the cause of this inability to achieve full range of motion?
6. If weakness is determined to be the cause of the inability to achieve full range of motion what other exercise or exercises could you prescribe?

Review Questions

1. **True or false:** Connective tissue is found throughout the body and serves to provide structural and metabolic support for other tissues and organs of the body.
2. What are the three types of cartilage and bone tissue?
3. **True or false:** Fascia is an example of dense regular connective tissue.
4. **True or false:** A bursa is a synovial membrane–lined sac.
5. All of the following functions are true of the living skeleton *except*:
   a. It supports the surrounding tissues.
   b. It assists in body movement.
   c. It provides a storage area for mineral salts.
   d. It determines the individual's developing somatotype.
6. What is the type of cartilage found in synovial joints called?

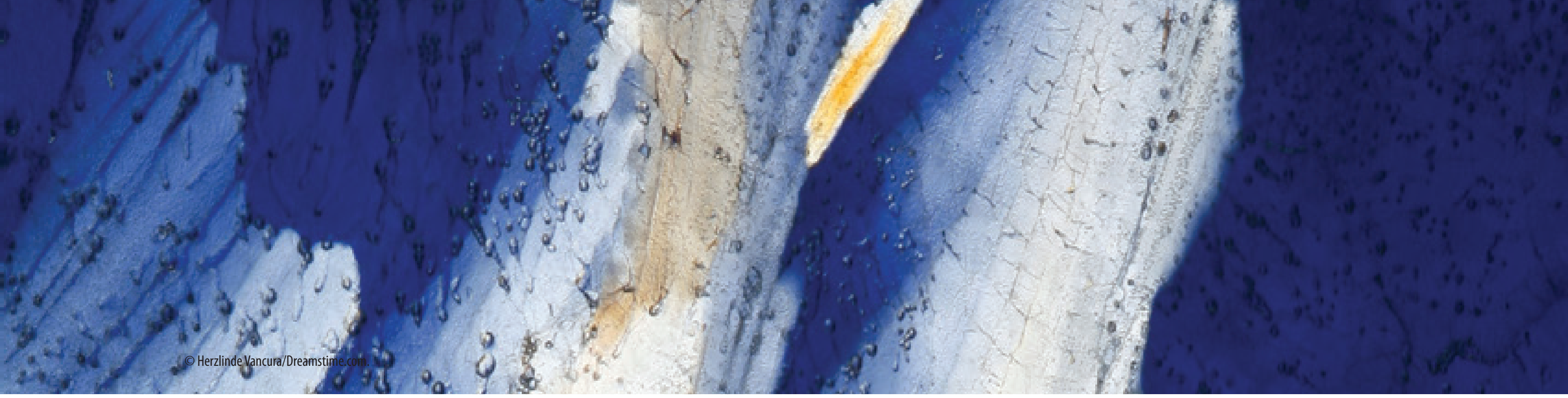
7. Approximately how many bones are in the human body?
8. **True or false:** Hyaline and elastic cartilage has no nerve supply whereas fibrocartilage is well innervated.
9. What is the shaft of a long bone called?
10. Which area of the bone is responsible for increasing the bone length during growth?
11. What are the three types of muscle tissue?
12. Which structure separates each muscle fiber from its neighbor?
13. Which type of muscle fiber is activated during moderate-intensity, long-duration exercise?
14. What is the main function of a tendon?
15. **True or false:** Bone is a highly vascular form of connective tissue.
16. Give four functions of bone.
17. The smallest organized unit of the contractile mechanism of skeletal muscle is the:
    a. Myofilaments
    b. Actin
    c. Myosin
    d. Sarcomere
18. All of the following are true about the epiphyseal plate *except*:
    a. It is formed from cartilage.
    b. It serves as the site of progressive lengthening in long bones.
    c. It is located between the epiphysis and the diaphysis.
    d. It is found in all bones.
19. Hyaline cartilage is nourished through the:
    a. Vessels from the periosteum
    b. Haversian canals
    c. Joint fluid
    d. Nutrient arteries
20. The epiphysis of a bone is located:
    a. Directly adjacent to the periosteum
    b. Directly above the diaphysis
    c. Directly below the metaphysis
    d. Directly adjacent to the joint
21. The biceps are an elbow flexor. Which of the following are considered antagonists to the biceps?
    a. Brachioradialis
    b. Supinator
    c. Triceps
    d. Supraspinatus

References

1. Standring S, Gray H. *Gray's Anatomy: The Anatomical Basis of Clinical Practice*, 40th ed. St. Louis, MO: Churchill Livingstone Elsevier; 2008.
2. Prentice WE. Using therapeutic modalities in rehabilitation. In: Prentice WE, Voight ML, editors. *Techniques in Musculoskeletal Rehabilitation*. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2001. p. 289–303.
3. Engles M. Tissue response. In: Donatelli R, Wooden MJ, editors. *Orthopaedic Physical Therapy*, 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 2001. p. 1–24.
4. Starcher BC. Lung elastin and matrix. *Chest*. 2000; 117(5 Suppl 1):229S–34S.
5. Barnes J. *Myofascial Release: A Comprehensive Evaluatory and Treatment Approach*. Paoli, PA: MFR Seminars; 1990.
6. Smolders JJ. Myofascial pain and dysfunction syndromes. In: Hammer WI, editor. *Functional Soft Tissue Examination and Treatment by Manual Methods:The Extremities*. Gaithersburg, MD: Aspen; 1991. p. 215–34.
7. Scott A, Backman LJ, Speed C. Tendinopathy: update on pathophysiology. *The Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2015; 45:833–41.
8. Teitz CC, Garrett WE, Jr., Miniaci A, Lee MH, Mann RA. Tendon problems in athletic individuals. *Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery*. 1997; 79-A:138–52.
9. Silbernagel KG, Crossley KM. A Proposed return-to-sport program for patients with midportion achilles tendinopathy: rationale and implementation. *The Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2015; 45:876–86.
10. Garrett WE, Jr. Muscle strain injuries: clinical and basic aspects. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise*. 1990; 22:436–43.
11. Garrett WE. Muscle strain injuries. *The American Journal of Sports Medicine*. 1996; 24:S2–S8.
12. Safran MR, Seaber AV, Garrett WE. Warm-up and muscular injury prevention: an update. *Sports Medicine*. 1989; 8:239–49.
13. Huijbregts PA. Muscle injury, regeneration, and repair. *Journal of Manual and Manipulative Therapy*. 2001; 9:9–16.
14. Goolsby MA, Boniquit N. Bone health in athletes. *Sports Health*. 2017; 9:108–17.
15. Nichols DL, Sanborn CF, Essery EV. Bone density and young athletic women: an update. *Sports Medicine*. 2007; 37:1001–14.
16. Burr DB, Robling AG, Turner CH. Effects of biomechanical stress on bones in animals. *Bone*. 2002; 30:781–6.
17. Lundon K, Bolton K. Structure and function of the lumbar intervertebral disk in health, aging, and pathological conditions. *The Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2001; 31:291–306.

18. Vereeke West R, Fu F. Soft tissue physiology and repair. *Orthopaedic Knowledge Update 8: Home Study Syllabus*. Rosemont, IL: American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons; 2005. p. 15–27.
19. White AA, Punjabi MM. *Clinical Biomechanics of the Spine*, 2nd ed. Philadelphia, PA: J.B. Lippincott Company; 1990.
20. Buckwalter JA. Spine update: aging and degeneration of the human intervertebral disc. *Spine*. 1995; 20:1307–14.
21. Junqueira LC, Carneciro J. Bone. In: Junqueira LC, Carneciro J, editors. *Basic Histology*, 10th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2003. p. 141–59.
22. Van de Graaff KM, Fox SI. Histology. In: Van de Graaff KM, Fox SI, editors. *Concepts of Human Anatomy and Physiology*. New York: WCB/McGraw-Hill; 1999. p. 130–58.
23. Dahl LB, Dahl IMS, Engstrom-Laurent A, Granath K. Concentration and molecular weight of sodium hyaluronate in synovial fluid from patients with rheumatoid arthritis and other arthropathies. *Annals of the Rheumatic Diseases*. 1985; 44:817–22.
24. Chaffin D, Andersson G. *Occupational Biomechanics*. Hoboken, NJ: Wiley Interscience. 1985; 53:103–7.
25. Brombini GC, Rahal SC, Bergamini BC, Lopes RS, Santos IF, Schimming BC. Analysis of synovial fluid of the capybara's stifle joints. *Veterinary Clinical Pathology*. 2017; 46:179–82.
26. Madkhali A, Chernos M, Fakhraei S, Grecov D, Kwok E. Osteoarthritic synovial fluid and correlations with protein concentration. *Biorheology*. 2016; 53:123–36.
27. Marshall KW. Intra-articular hyaluronan therapy. *Current Opinion in Rheumatology*. 2000; 12:468–74.
28. Van de Graaff KM, Fox SI. Muscle tissue and muscle physiology. In: Van de Graaff KM, Fox SI, editors. *Concepts of Human Anatomy and Physiology*. New York: WCB/McGraw-Hill; 1999. p. 280–305.
29. Armstrong RB, Warren GL, Warren JA. Mechanisms of exercise-induced muscle fibre injury. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise*. 1990; 24:436–43.
30. Hall SJ. The biomechanics of human skeletal muscle. In: Hall SJ, editor. *Basic Biomechanics*. New York: McGraw-Hill; 1999. p. 146–85.
31. Jackson-Manfield P, Neumann DA. Structure and function of skeletal muscle. In: Jackson-Manfield P, Neumann DA, editors. *Essentials of Kinesiology for the Physical Therapist Assistant*. St. Louis, MO: Mosby Elsevier; 2009. p. 35–49.
32. Brown DA. Muscle: the ultimate force generator in the body. In: Neumann DA, editor. *Kinesiology of the Musculoskeletal System: Foundations For Physical Rehabilitation*. St. Louis: Mosby; 2002. p. 41–55.
33. Fitts RH, Widrick JJ. Muscle mechanics; adaptations with exercise training. *Exercise and Sport Sciences Reviews*. 1996; 24:427–73.
34. Allemeier CA, Fry AC, Johnson P, et al. Effects of spring cycle training on human skeletal muscle. *Journal of Applied Physiology*. 1994; 77:2385.
35. Feliciano DV, Moore FA, Moore EE, West MA, Davis JW, Cocanour CS, et al. Evaluation and management of peripheral vascular injury. Part 1. Western Trauma Association/critical decisions in trauma. *The Journal of Trauma and Acute Care Surgery*. 2011; 70:1551–6.
36. Feliciano DV, Moore EE, West MA, Moore FA, Davis JW, Cocanour CS, et al. Western Trauma Association critical decisions in trauma: evaluation and management of peripheral vascular injury. Part 2. *The Journal of Trauma and Acute Care Surgery*. 2013; 75:391–7.
37. Goel VK, Khandha A, Vadapalli S. Musculoskeletal biomechanics. *Orthopaedic Knowledge Update 8: Home Study Syllabus*. Rosemont, IL: American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons; 2005. p. 39–56.
38. Hall SJ. Kinematic concepts for analyzing human motion. In: Hall SJ, editor. *Basic Biomechanics*. New York: McGraw-Hill; 1999. p. 28–89.
39. Jackson-Manfield P, Neumann DA. Basic principles of kinesiology. In: Jackson-Manfield P, Neumann DA, editors. *Essentials of Kinesiology for the Physical Therapist Assistant*. St. Louis, MO: Mosby Elsevier; 2009. p. 1–19.
40. Neumann DA. Getting started. In: Neumann DA, editor. *Kinesiology of the Musculoskeletal System: Foundations for Physical Rehabilitation*. St. Louis: Mosby; 2002. p. 3–24.
41. Voight M, Blackburn T. Proprioception and balance training and testing following injury. In: Ellenbecker TS, editor. *Knee Ligament Rehabilitation*. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 2000. p. 361–85.
42. Federation of State Medical Boards of the United States. *Model guidelines for the use of controlled substances for the treatment of pain*. Euless, TX: The Federation; 1998.
43. Boeckmann RR, Ellenbecker TS. Biomechanics. In: Ellenbecker TS, editor. *Knee Ligament Rehabilitation*. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 2000. p. 16–23.
44. Brownstein B, Noyes FR, Mangine RE, Kryger S. Anatomy and biomechanics. In: Mangine RE, editor. *Physical Therapy of the Knee*. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1988. p. 1–30.
45. Deudsinger RH. Biomechanics in clinical practice. *Physical Therapy*. 1984; 64:1860–8.
46. Lakomy HKA. The biomechanics of human movement. In: Maughan RJ, editor. *Basic and Applied Sciences for Sports Medicine*. Woburn, MA: Butterworth-Heinemann; 1999. p. 124–5.
47. McArdle W, Katch FI, Katch VL. *Exercise Physiology: Energy, Nutrition, and Human Performance*. Philadelphia: Lea and Febiger; 1991.
48. Astrand PO, Rodahl K. *The Muscle and its Contraction: Textbook of Work Physiology*. New York: McGraw-Hill; 1986.
49. MacConaill MA. Arthrology. In: Warwick R, Williams PL, editors. *Gray's Anatomy*. 35th ed. Philadelphia: WB Saunders; 1975. p. 388–98.
50. Harris ML. Flexibility. *Physical Therapy*. 1969; 49:591–601.
51. Gleim GW, McHugh MP. Flexibility and its effects on sports injury and performance. *Sports Medicine*. 1997; 24:289–99.
52. Kisner C, Colby LA. Stretching for impaired mobility. In: Kisner C, Colby LA, editors. *Therapeutic Exercise Foundations and Techniques*, 5th ed. Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2002. p. 65–108.
53. Answorth AA, Warner JJP. Shoulder instability in the athlete. *The Orthopedic Clinics of North America*. 1995; 26:487–504.
54. Bergmark A. Stability of the lumbar spine. *Acta Orthopaedica Scandinavica*. 1989; 60:1–54.
55. Boden BP, Pearsall AW, Garrett WE, Jr., Feagin JA, Jr. Patellofemoral instability: evaluation and management. *Journal of the American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons*. 1997; 5:47–57.
56. Callanan M, Tzannes A, Hayes KC, Paxinos A, Walton J, Murrell GA. Shoulder instability: diagnosis and management. *Australian Family Physician*. 2001; 30:655–61.
57. Cass JR, Morrey BF. Ankle instability: current concepts, diagnosis, and treatment. *Mayo Clinic Proceedings*. 1984; 59:165–70.
58. Clanton TO. Instability of the subtalar joint. *Orthopedic Clinics of North America*. 1989; 20:583–92.

59. Cox JS, Cooper PS. Patellofemoral instability. In: Fu FH, Harner CD, Vince KG, editors. *Knee Surgery*. Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins; 1994. p. 959–62.
60. Freeman MAR, Dean MRE, Hanham IWF. The etiology and prevention of functional instability of the foot. *Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery*. 1965; 47B:678–85.
61. Friberg O. Lumbar instability: a dynamic approach by traction-compression radiography. *Spine*. 1987; 12:119–29.
62. Grieve GP. Lumbar instability. *Physiotherapy*. 1982; 68:2.
63. Hotchkiss RN, Weiland AJ. Valgus stability of the elbow. *Journal of Orthopaedic Research*. 1987; 5:372–7.
64. Kaigle A, Holm S, Hansson T. Experimental instability in the lumbar spine. *Spine*. 1995; 20:421–30.
65. Kuhlmann JN, Fahrer M, Kapandji AI, et al. Stability of the normal wrist. In: Tubiana R, editor. *The Hand*. Philadelphia: WB Saunders; 1985. p. 934–44.
66. Landeros O, Frost HM, Higgins CC. Post traumatic anterior ankle instability. *Clinical Orthopaedics and Related Research*. 1968; 56:169–78.
67. Luttgens K, Hamilton N. The center of gravity and stability. In: Luttgens K, Hamilton N, editors. *Kinesiology: Scientific Basis of Human Motion*, 9th ed. Dubuque, IA: McGraw-Hill; 1997. p. 415–42.
68. Wilke H, Wolf S, Claes L, et al. Stability increase of the lumbar spine with different muscle groups: a biomechanical in vitro study. *Spine*. 1995; 20:192–8.
69. Panjabi MM. The stabilizing system of the spine. Part 1. Function, dysfunction adaption and enhancement. *Journal of Spinal Disorders*. 1992; 5:383–9.
70. McGill SM, Cholewicki J. Biomechanical basis for stability: an explanation to enhance clinical utility. *The Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2001; 31:96–100.
71. Gertzbein SD, Seligman J, Holtby R, et al. Centrode patterns and segmental instability in degenerative disc disease. *Spine*. 1985; 10:257–61.
72. Cholewicki J, McGill S. Mechanical stability of the in vivo lumbar spine: implications for injury and chronic low back pain. *Clinical Biomechanics*. 1996; 11:1–15.



CHAPTER 3

The Nervous System

CHAPTER OBJECTIVES

At the completion of this chapter, the reader will be able to:

1. Describe the various components of the central and peripheral nervous systems as they relate to the orthopaedic setting.
2. Describe the anatomic and functional organization of the nervous system.
3. Describe the various components and distributions of the cervical, brachial, and lumbosacral plexuses.
4. Outline the different methods of pain transmission.
5. Recognize the characteristics of a lesion to the central nervous system that may present during a physical therapy session.
6. List the findings and impairments associated with the more common peripheral nerve lesions.
7. Describe some of the medical interventions following a nerve injury.
8. List the categories of the various nerve injuries.
9. Outline some tests performed by the physical therapist related to neurological dysfunction.

Overview

The nervous system is divided into two anatomic divisions, the central nervous system (CNS) and peripheral nervous system (PNS), each with their subdivisions (**FIGURE 3.1**).

Central Nervous System

The CNS is composed of the brain and the spinal cord. The brain, contained within the skull (cranium), begins its embryonic development as the cephalic end of the neural tube before rapidly growing and differentiating into three distinct swellings: the prosencephalon, the mesencephalon, and the rhombencephalon (**TABLE 3.1**).

The spinal cord has an external segmental organization (**FIGURE 3.2**). Each of the 31 pairs of spinal nerves that arise from the spinal cord has an anterior (ventral) root (motor) and a posterior (dorsal) root (sensory), with each root made up of one to eight rootlets, and each rootlet consisting of bundles of nerve fibers.[1] In the dorsal root of a typical spinal nerve lies a dorsal root ganglion, a swelling that contains sensory nerve cell bodies.[1] It is worth noting that the motor nerve is at greater risk for injury than the sensory nerve.[2,3] If the sensory nerve is injured, sensation is lost in the following order: proprioception, touch, temperature, and finally pain, with recovery occurring in the reverse order.[4]

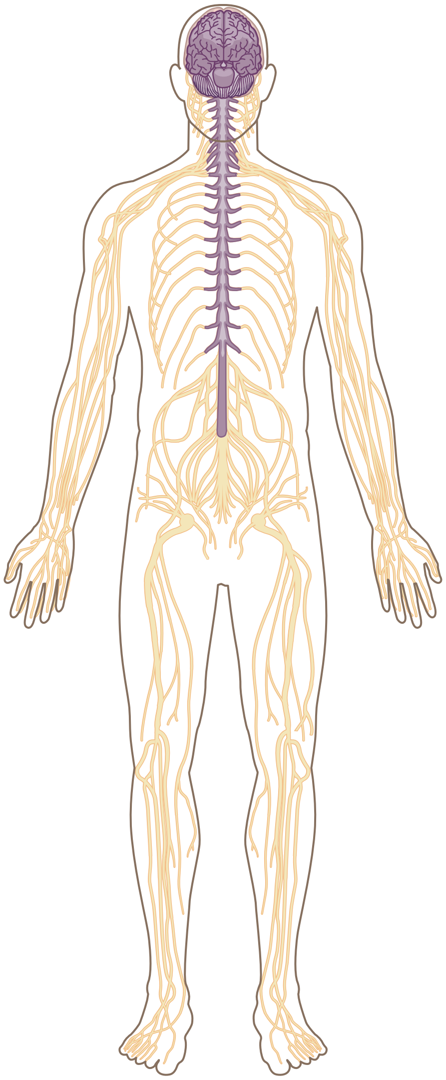


FIGURE 3.1 The nervous system.

Neural messages may descend or ascend along pathways, or tracts, which are fiber bundles of similar groups of neurons, each with specific functions.

☑ KEY POINT

Myelin is a lipid-rich membrane that coats, protects, and insulates nerves. Myelin covers most of the axons of the PNS and CNS, the latter of which is divided into segments about 1 millimeter long by small gaps where the myelin is absent, called *nodes of Ranvier*. As the brain sends messages through the nerves of the spinal cord, the impulses jump from node to node through a process called *salutatory conduction*.

The central gray matter of the spinal cord, which roughly resembles the letter *H*, contains two anterior (ventral) and two posterior (dorsal) horns united by gray commissure within the central canal.

☑ KEY POINT

Anterior horns contain cell bodies that give rise to motor (efferent) neurons. Gamma motor neurons connect to muscle spindles (**BOX 3.1**). Alpha motor neurons connect to influence muscles. *Posterior horns* contain sensory (afferent) neurons whose nerve cell bodies are located in the dorsal root ganglia.[1]

Three membranes, or meninges, envelop the structures of the CNS: the dura mater, the arachnoid mater, and the pia mater (**FIGURE 3.3**). The meninges, and related spaces are necessary for both the nutrition and protection of the spinal cord.

☑ KEY POINT

Occasionally, spinal cord compression may occur secondary to bony encroachment from lateral recess spinal stenosis, space-occupying lesions, trauma, or disease. Clinical signs and symptoms that may be associated with spinal cord compression include:

- Segmental deficits (paraparesis or quadriparesis)
- Hyperreflexia
- Extensor plantar response and other pathologic reflexes
- Loss of sphincter tone (with bowel and bladder dysfunction)
- Sensory deficits

Subacute or chronic spinal cord compression may begin with local back pain, often radiating down the distribution of a nerve root (radicular pain), and it sometimes includes hyperreflexia and loss of sensation. Sensory loss may begin in the sacral segments.

Peripheral Nervous System

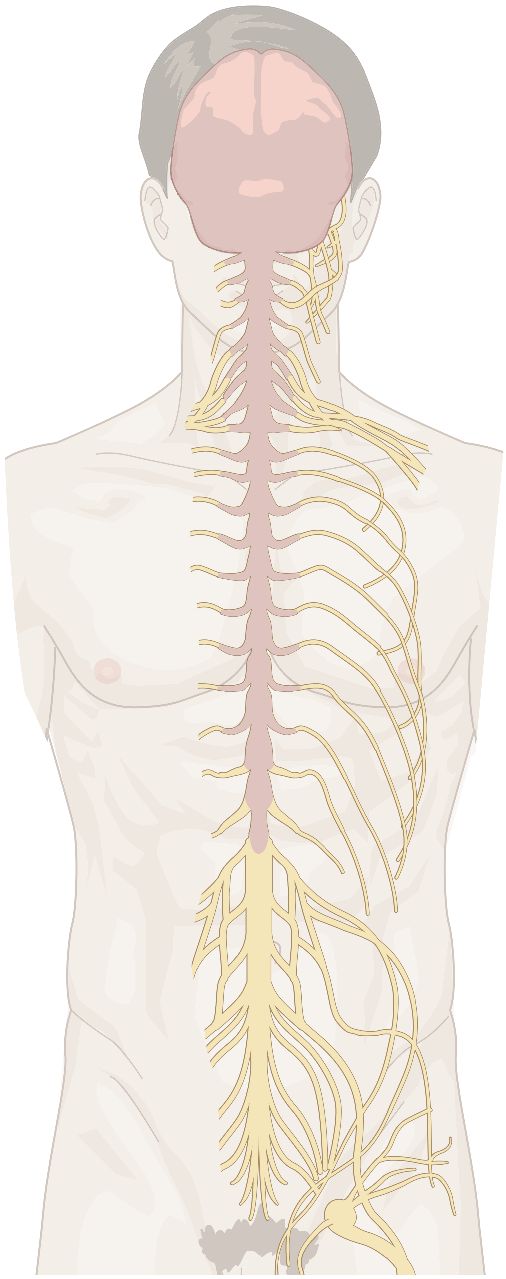
The PNS comprises the following:

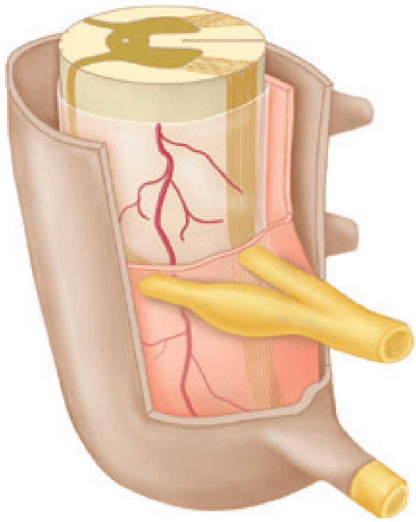
- *Cranial nerves.* The brainstem, which is the stalk of the brain, gives rise to 10 of the 12 pairs of cranial nerves, which provide the main motor and sensory innervation to the face and neck.
- *Spinal nerve roots.* The posterior (dorsal) and anterior (ventral) roots of the spinal nerves are located within the vertebral canal. In the region of the intervertebral foramen, the posterior (afferent) and anterior (efferent) roots come together in a common neural sheath to form a spinal nerve root, which is a mixed sensory-motor nerve. Shortly after the spinal nerve exits the intervertebral foramen, it branches into the posterior (dorsal) ramus, anterior (ventral) ramus, and rami communicantes. Each of these three structures carries both sensory and motor information.

TABLE 3.1 Derivation and Functions of the Major Brain Structures

	Region	Structure	Description/Function
Prosencephalon (forebrain)	Telencephalon	Cerebrum	Lies in front or on top of the brainstem and is the largest and most developed of the major divisions of the brain.
			Consists of six paired lobes within two hemispheres, which are folded into many gyri (crests) and sulci (grooves), which allows the cortex to expand in surface area without taking up much greater volume.
			Controls most sensory processing, conscious and volitional movements, language and communication, learning, and memory.
		Limbic system	A set of brain structures including the hippocampus, amygdala, anterior thalamic nuclei, and limbic cortex, which support a variety of functions including emotion, behavior, long-term memory, and olfaction.
		Basal ganglia	Associated with a variety of functions, including motor control, motor learning, and action selection.
	Diencephalon	Thalamus	Functions include the relaying of sensation, spatial sense, and motor signals to the cerebral cortex, along with the regulation of consciousness, sleep, and alertness.
		Hypothalamus	Regulation of food and water intake, body temperature, and heart rate. One of the most important functions of the hypothalamus is to link the nervous system to the endocrine system via the pituitary gland.
		Pituitary gland	Considered to be the "master gland."
Mesencephalon (midbrain)	Mesencephalon	Superior colliculi Inferior colliculi	Visual reflexes (hand–eye coordination). Auditory reflexes.
		Cerebral peduncles	Important fibers running through the cerebral peduncles include the corticospinal tract and the corticobulbar tract. This area contains many nerve tracts conveying motor information to the brain and from the brain to the rest of the body.
Rhombencephalon (hindbrain)	Metencephalon	Cerebellum	Balance/equilibrium and coordination of skeletal muscle contractions (force, direction, extent, and sequencing of movement).
		Pons	Relay center; contains nuclei (pontine nuclei).
	Myelencephalon	Medulla oblongata	Relay center; contains many nuclei; visceral autonomic center (e.g., respiration, heart rate, vasoconstriction).

Data from Van de Graaff KM, Fox SI: Central nervous system, in Van de Graaff KM, Fox SI (eds): *Concepts of Human Anatomy and Physiology*. New York, WCB/McGraw-Hill, 1999, pp 407–46.





- The posterior (dorsal) rami branches carry visceral motor, somatic motor, and sensory information, and as a rule are smaller than their anterior counterparts. They are directed posteriorly, and, with the exceptions of those of the first cervical, the fourth and fifth sacral, and the coccygeal, divide into medial and lateral branches for the supply of the muscles and skin of the posterior part of the trunk.
- The anterior (ventral) ramus branches, including the sinuvertebral (recurrent meningeal) nerve, supply the limbs and the anterolateral parts of the trunk. In the thoracic region, these rami remain distinct from each other, and each innervates a narrow strip of muscle and skin along the sides of the trunk, chest, ribs, and abdominal wall. These rami are called the intercostal nerves. In regions other than the thoracic, anterior rami converge with each other to form networks of nerves called *nerve plexuses*. The anterior rami form four main plexuses: cervical, brachial, lumbar, and sacral.
- *Rami communicantes*: This is a communicating branch between a spinal nerve and the sympathetic trunk. Each spinal nerve receives a branch—a gray ramus communicans—from the adjacent ganglion of the sympathetic trunk. The thoracic, and the first and second

BOX 3.1 Muscle Spindle and Golgi Tendon Organs

Muscle Spindle

Essentially, the purpose of the muscle spindle is to compare the length of the spindle with the length of the muscle that surrounds the spindle. Within each muscle spindle are 2 to 12 long, slender, and specialized skeletal muscle fibers called *intrafusal fibers*. The central portion of the intrafusal fiber is devoid of actin or myosin and, thus, is incapable of contracting. As a result, these fibers are capable of putting tension on the spindle only. The intrafusal fibers are of two types: nuclear bag fibers and nuclear chain fibers.

- Nuclear bag fibers primarily serve as sensitivity meters for the changing lens of the muscle.[5]
- Nuclear chain fibers each contain a single row or chain of nuclei and are attached at their ends to the bag fibers.
- Whereas alpha motor neurons innervate muscles, muscle spindles have their own motor supply, namely gamma motor neurons.
- Stimulatation of the muscle spindle can occur in two different ways:
  - By stretching the whole muscle, which stretches the mid-portion of the spindle, thereby exciting the receptor
  - By contracting only the end portion of the intrafusal fibers, thereby exciting the receptor (even if muscle length does not change)

Golgi Tendon Organs

Golgi tendon organs (GTOs) are relatively simple sensory receptors that are arranged in series with the extrafusal muscle fibers and, therefore, provide the CNS with information about muscle tension. In an average person, the GTOs contribute to the control of muscle activity over the whole range of movement, not just at its extremes.[6] They appear to serve a protective function while supplying tension information for complicated tension-maintaining reflexes or supplying inhibition at the appropriate moment to switch from flexion to extension movements in walking or running. They may also play a role in increasing muscle force during fatigue. Thus, during situations of fatigue, the muscle produces less force, which reduces GTO activity, thereby decreasing inhibition. Activity in the group Ib afferent fibers, associated with GTOs, inhibits a process called *autogenic inhibition* (reflex inhibition of a motor unit in response to excessive tension in the muscle fibers it supplies). It was once thought that this inhibition served only to protect the muscle from being injured if it contracted against too heavy a load. Now it is believed that it occurs at the point where autogenic inhibition is great enough to overcome the stretch reflex excitation.

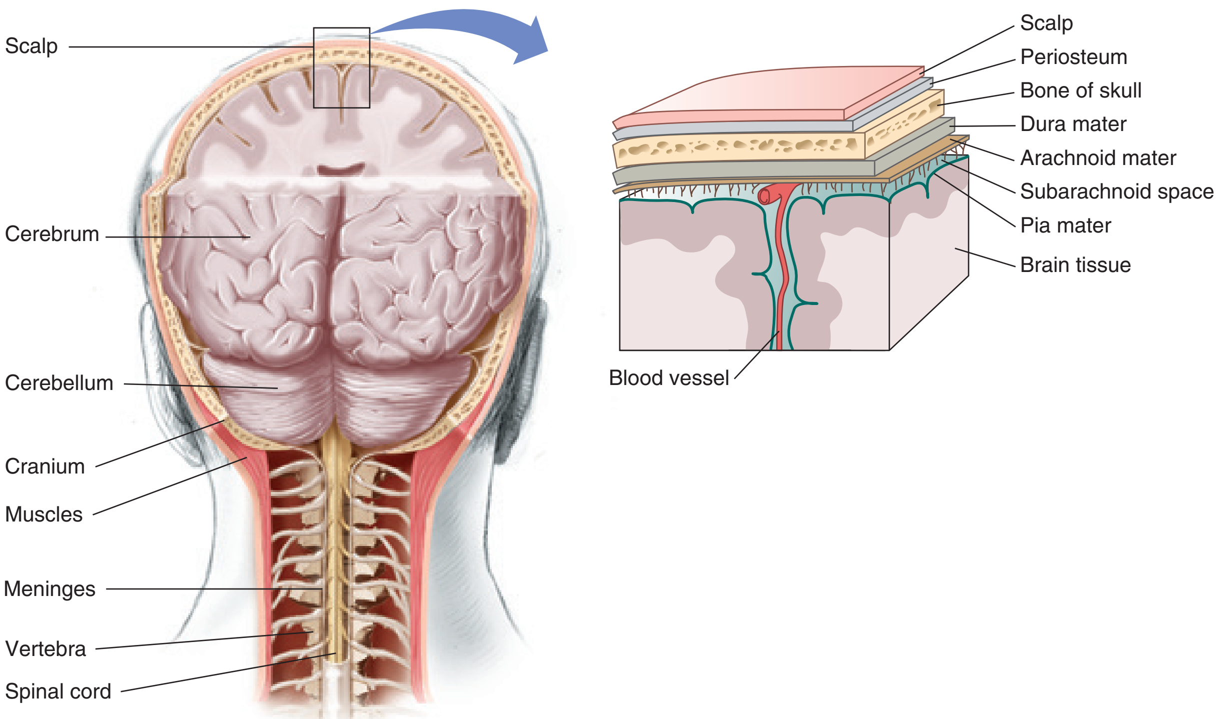


FIGURE 3.3 The meninges.

lumbar nerves each contribute a branch—a white ramus communicans—to the adjoining sympathetic ganglion.
- *Dorsal root ganglia (or spinal ganglia).* A dorsal root ganglion is a nodule on a dorsal root that contains cell bodies of neurons in afferent spinal nerves.
- The peripheral nerve trunks and their terminal branches
- The peripheral autonomic nervous system

☑ KEY POINT

The recurrent meningeal or sinuvertebral nerve, a branch of the spinal nerve, passes back into the vertebral canal through the intervertebral foramen. This nerve supplies the anterior aspect of the dura mater, outer third of the annular fibers of the intervertebral disks, vertebral body, and epidural blood vessel walls, as well as the posterior longitudinal ligament.[1] The two structures capable of transmitting neuronal impulses that result in the experience of pain are the sinuvertebral nerve and the nerve root.

The somatic divisions (the parts that produce voluntary action) of the PNS consist of the cranial nerves and the spinal nerves.

The Cranial Nerves

The cranial nerves (CN) comprise 12 pairs, which are referred to by the Roman numerals I through XII (**TABLE 3.2**). The cranial nerve roots enter and exit the brainstem to provide sensory and motor innervation to the head and muscles of the face.

The Spinal Nerves

A total of 31 symmetrically arranged pairs of spinal nerves exit from all levels of the vertebral column, each derived from the spinal cord. The spinal nerves are divided topographically into eight cervical pairs (C1–C8), twelve thoracic pairs (T1–T12), five lumbar pairs (L1–L5), five sacral pairs (S1–S5), and a coccygeal pair (see Figure 3.1). Although there are seven cervical vertebrae (C1–C7), there are eight cervical nerves (C1–C8). All nerves except C8 emerge above their corresponding vertebrae, whereas the C8 nerve emerges below the C7 vertebra. Nerve fibers can be categorized according to function: sensory, motor, or mixed (**TABLE 3.3**).

☑ KEY POINT

A dermatome is an area of skin that is mainly supplied by a single spinal nerve. Dermatomes are useful for determining the site of a nerve lesion.

Peripheral nerves are enclosed in three layers of tissue of differing character. From the inside outward, these are the:

- *Endoneurium.* Encloses the myelin sheath of a nerve fiber and serves to support capillary vessels, which form a network.
- *Perineurium.* Arranges axons into fascicles (a bundle of axons/nerve fibers).
- *Epineurium.* The outermost layer of connective tissue surrounding a peripheral nerve. It includes the blood vessels supplying the nerve. The epineurium binds fascicles into bundles.

Spinal nerve roots and peripheral nerves can be injured anywhere along their distribution, although some sites are more commonly injured than others (see "Peripheral Nerve Entrapments"). Peripheral nerve injuries can occur at the level of the axon (i.e., axonopathy), the motor neuron, or the dorsal root ganglion (i.e., neuronopathies). Compression and/or irritation of cervical or lumbar nerve roots, which are more susceptible to injury than peripheral nerves because they do not possess an epineurium or perineurium, can cause radiculopathy, a common cause of symptoms. Compression nerve injuries are either chronic or acute in origin and both result in ischemia and mechanical disruption of the nerve fiber. The PNS is capable of withstanding mechanical stress as a result of its unique mechanical characteristics. Nervous tissue, a form of connective tissue, is viscoelastic, and therefore able to adapt to time-dependent forces, a feature called creep. (See Chapter 2.) This characteristic allows for the transfer of mechanical stress throughout the PNS and spinal cord during trunk or limb movements. This adaptation results from changes in the length of the spinal cord during movement and the capacity of the PNS to adapt to different positions. The PNS adapts through a process of passive movement relative to the surrounding tissue via a gliding apparatus around the nerve trunk. The role that tension on the neural tissue plays in pain and dysfunction has been studied for over a century and a variety of tests to assess neural glides have been devised. (See Chapter 9.)

☑ KEY POINT

Because motor and sensory axons run in the same nerves, disorders of the peripheral nerves (neuropathies) usually affect both motor and sensory functions distal to the lesion. Symptoms can manifest as abnormal, frequently unpleasant sensations, which are variously described by the patient as numbness, pins and needles, or tingling, but are more correctly termed *paresthesias*.

TABLE 3.2 Cranial Nerves and Their Functions

Cranial Nerve	Function and Testing
I: Olfactory	The olfactory nerve is responsible for the sense of smell. The sense of smell is tested by having the patient identify familiar odors (e.g., coffee, vanilla) with each nostril.
II: Optic	The optic nerve is responsible for vision. The optic nerve is tested by examining visual acuity and confrontation.
III: Oculomotor	The somatic portion of the oculomotor nerve supplies the levator palpebrae superioris muscle; the superior, medial, and inferior rectus muscles; and the inferior oblique muscles, all of which are responsible for some eye movements. The visceral efferent portion of this nerve is responsible for papillary constriction. The nerve is tested by using eye movements and assessing pupil dilation. Cranial nerves III, IV, and VI are typically tested together.
IV: Trochlear	The trochlear nerve supplies the superior oblique muscle of the eye. This nerve is tested using eye movements.
V: Trigeminal	The trigeminal nerve supplies sensory information to the soft and hard palates, maxillary sinuses, upper teeth, upper lip, and the mucous membrane of the pharynx, and supplies motor information to the muscles of mastication, both pterygoids, the anterior belly of digastric, tensor tympani, tensor veli palatini, and mylohyoid. The sensory branches of the trigeminal nerve are tested with a pinprick close to the midline of the face. The motor components are tested by asking the patient to clench his or her teeth while the clinician palpates the temporal and masseter muscles.
VI: Abducens	The abducens nerve innervates the lateral rectus muscle of the eye. This nerve is tested using eye movements.
VII: Facial	The facial nerve is composed of a sensory (intermediate) root, which conveys taste, and a motor root, the facial nerve proper, which supplies the muscles of facial expression, the platysma muscle, and the stapedius muscle of the inner ear. The clinician inspects the face at rest and in conversation with the patient and notes any asymmetry. The patient is asked to smile. If there is asymmetry, the patient is asked to frown, or wrinkle the forehead.
VIII: Vestibulocochlear (auditory)	The cochlear portion is concerned with the sense of hearing. The vestibular portion is part of the system of equilibrium, the vestibular system. The vestibular nerve can be tested in several ways depending on the objective.
IX: Glossopharyngeal	The glossopharyngeal nerve serves some functions. The gag reflex is used to test this nerve, but this is reserved only for severely affected patients.
X: Vagus	The vagus nerve contains somatic motor, visceral efferent, visceral sensory, and somatic sensory fibers. The functions of the vagus nerve are numerous. The patient is asked to open their mouth and say "aah." The clinician watches the movements of the soft palate and pharynx.
XI: (Spinal) accessory	The cranial root is an aberrant portion of the vagus nerve. The spinal portion of the nerve supplies the sternocleidomastoid and trapezius muscles. The patient is asked to shrug both shoulders upward against the clinician's hand, and the strength of contraction is noted.
XII: Hypoglossal	The hypoglossal nerve is the motor nerve of the tongue, innervating the ipsilateral side of the tongue as well as helping to innervate the infrahyoid muscles. The patient is asked to stick out his or her tongue. The clinician looks for asymmetry, atrophy, or deviation from the midline.

TABLE 3.3 Nerve Fiber Types and Their Functions

Nerve Fiber Type	Function	Examples
Sensory	Carry afferents from a portion of the skin. Carry efferents to the skin structures. This area of distribution is called a *dermatome*, which is a well-defined segmental portion of the skin (refer to Figure 3.4), and generally, follows the segmental distribution of the underlying muscle innervation.	Lateral femoral cutaneous nerve Saphenous nerve Interdigital nerves
Motor	Carry efferents to muscles and return sensation from muscles and associated ligamentous structures. Any nerve that innervates a muscle also mediates the sensation from the joint upon which that muscle acts.	Ulnar nerve Suprascapular nerve Dorsal scapular nerve
Mixed	A combination of skin, sensory, and motor functions.	Median nerve Ulnar nerve (at the elbow as it enters the tunnel of Guyon) Common peroneal nerve Ilioinguinal nerve

Paresthesias can occur anywhere within a dermatomal distribution, or within a peripheral nerve distribution (**FIGURE 3.4**). CNS causes of paresthesia include ischemia, obstruction, compression, infection, inflammation, and degenerative conditions.[7]

The Cervical Nerves

The eight pairs of cervical nerves are derived from cord segments between the level of the foramen magnum and the middle of the seventh cervical vertebra.[8] The C1 (suboccipital) nerve serves the muscles of the suboccipital triangle, with very few sensory fibers.[8]

The Cervical Plexus (C1–C4) The cervical plexus (**FIGURE 3.5**) is formed from the anterior primary divisions of the first four cervical nerves (C1–C4). Nerves formed from the cervical plexus innervate the back of the head, as well as some neck muscles. The cervical plexus has two types of branches: cutaneous and muscular.

The cutaneous branch contains the following:

- *Lesser occipital nerve*. Innervates the lateral part of the occipital region (C2 *only*)
- *Great auricular nerve*. Innervates skin near the hollow of the auricle of the external ear and external acoustic meatus (C2–C3)
- *Transverse cervical nerve*. Innervates the anterior region of the neck (C2–C3)
- *Supraclavicular nerves*. Provide sensory innervation to the suprascapular, shoulder, and upper thoracic regions (C3–C4)

The muscular branch contains the following:

- *Ansa cervicalis (loop formed from C1–C3)*. Innervates the geniohyoid, thyrohyoid, sternothyroid, sternohyoid, and omohyoid muscles
- *Phrenic (C3–C5, primarily C4)*. Contains motor, sensory, and sympathetic nerve fibers that provide the only motor supply to the diaphragm, the key breathing muscle.[8]
- *Segmental branches (C1–C4)*. Branches to the sternocleidomastoid muscle from C2 and branches to the trapezius muscles (C3–C4) via the subtrapezial plexus; smaller branches to the adjacent vertebral musculature supply the rectus capitis lateralis and rectus capitis anterior (C1), the longus capitis (C2, C4) and longus coli (C1–C4), the scalenus medius (C3, C4) and scalenus anterior (C4), and the levator scapulae (C3–C5)

The Brachial Plexus

The brachial plexus (**FIGURE 3.6**) arises from the anterior primary divisions of the fifth cervical through the first thoracic nerve roots, with occasional contributions

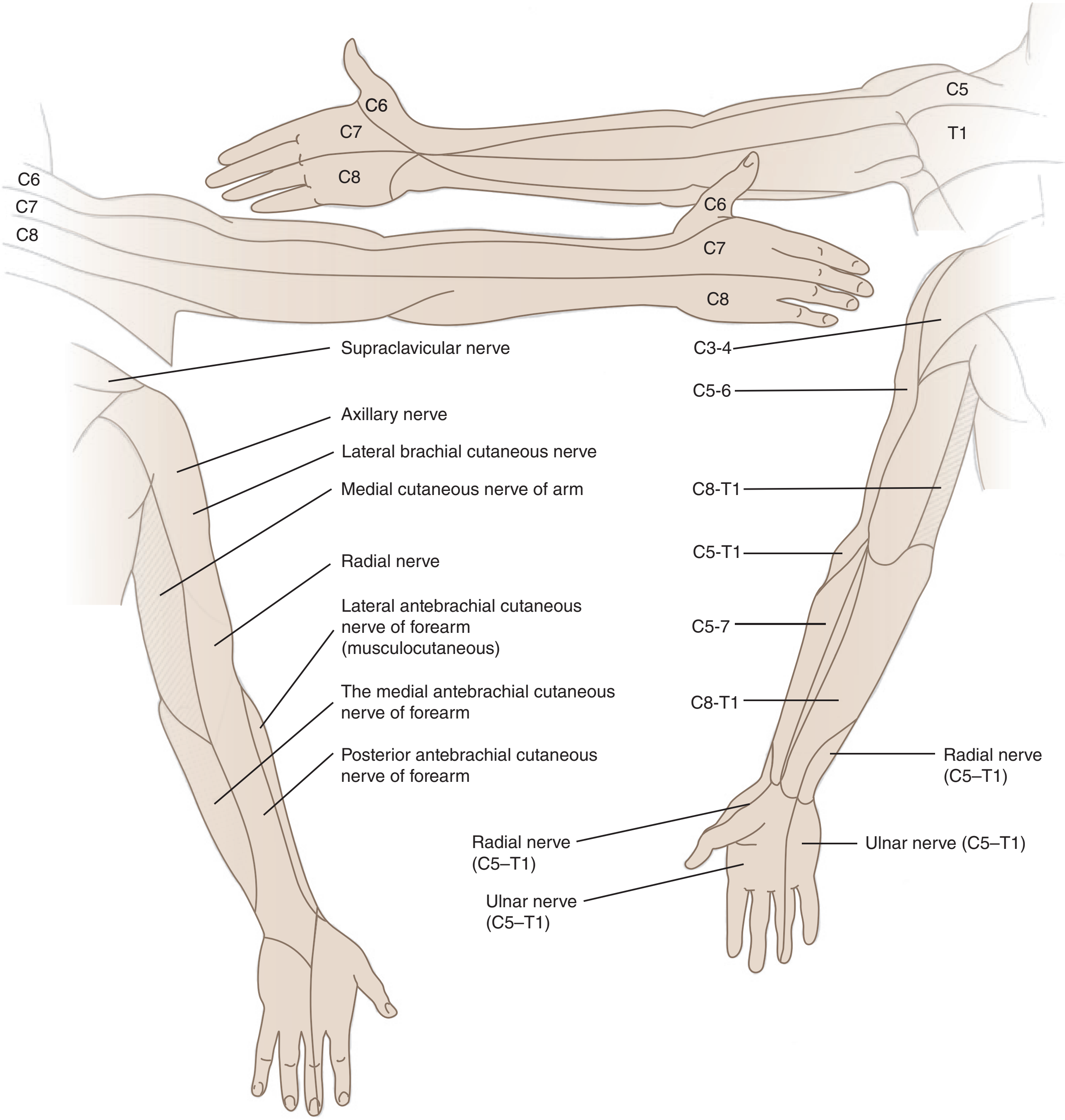


FIGURE 3.4 Dermatomes of the upper extremity.

from the fourth cervical and second thoracic roots. The C5 and C6 roots of the plexus join to form the upper trunk, the C7 root becomes the middle trunk, and the C8 and T1 roots join to form the lower trunks. Each of the trunks divides into anterior and posterior divisions, which then form cords. The anterior divisions of the upper and middle trunk form the lateral cord; the anterior division of the lower trunk forms the medial cord, and all three posterior divisions unite to form the posterior cord.

The three cords, named for their relationship to the axillary artery, split to form the peripheral nerves of the plexus. These branches give rise to the peripheral nerves: musculocutaneous (from the lateral cord), axillary and radial (from the posterior cord), median (from the medial and lateral cords), and ulnar (from the medial cord).[8] Numerous smaller nerves arise from the roots, trunks, and cords of the plexus. The peripheral nerves of the upper quadrant are described in **TABLE 3.4**.

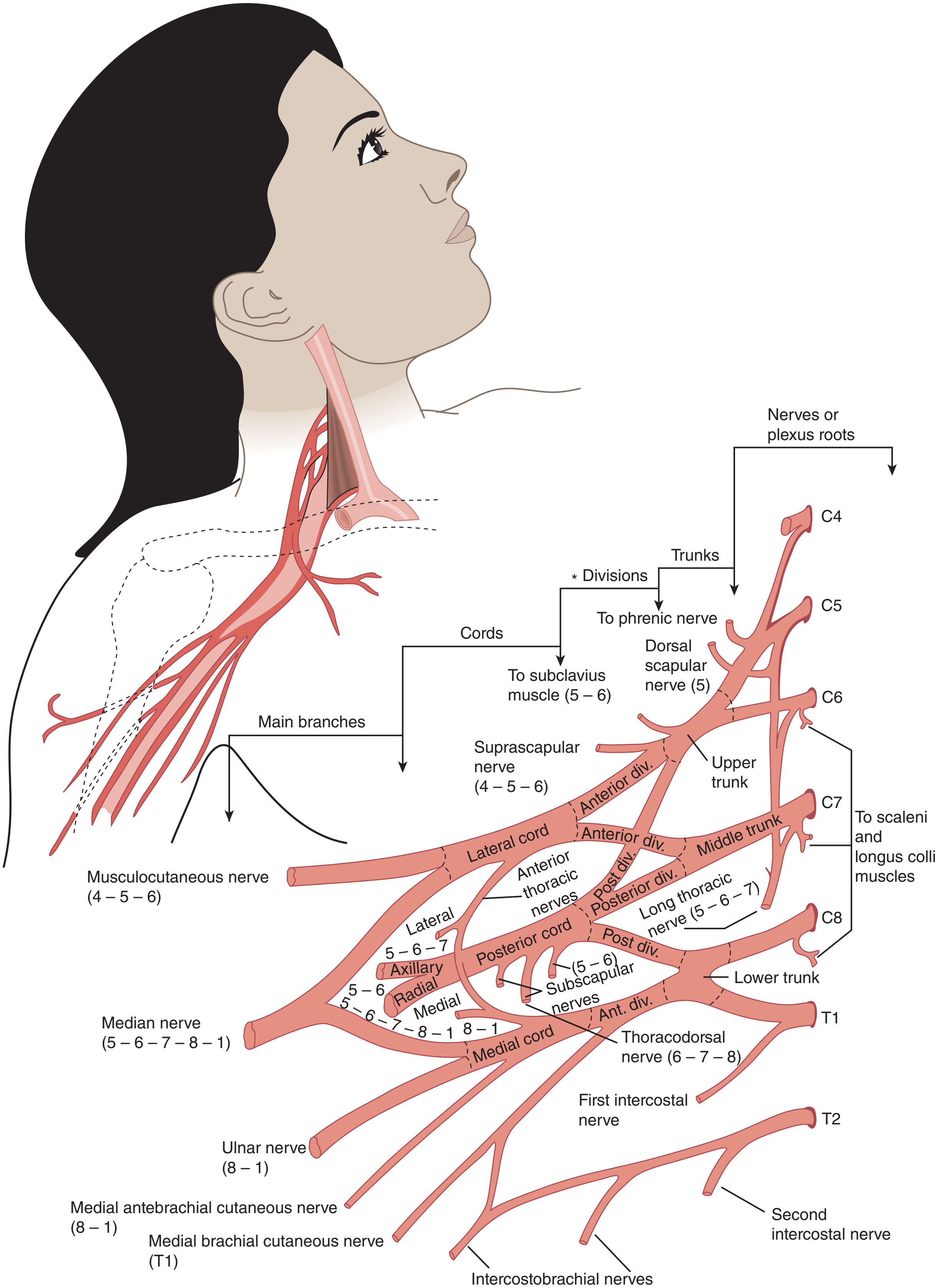


FIGURE 3.6 The brachial plexus.

*Splitting of the plexus into anterior and posterior divisions is one of the most significant features in the redistribution of nerve fibers, because it is here that fibers supplying the flexor and extensor groups of muscles of the upper extremity are separated. Similar splitting is noted in the lumber and sacral plexuses for the supply of muscles of the lower extremity.

TABLE 3.4 Peripheral Nerves of the Upper Quadrant

Nerves	Nerve Root	Muscles	Action
Musculocutaneous	C5–C6	Biceps, brachialis Coracobrachialis	Flexion of elbow Shoulder flexion
Lateral brachial cutaneous nerve of the arm	C5–C6	Sensory	Refer to Figure 3.4
Median	C5–T1	Flexor carpi radialis Flexor digitorum superficialis Flexor digitorum profundus (lateral half) Pronator teres Pronator quadratus Abductor pollicis brevis Opponens pollicis brevis Flexor pollicis longus Flexor pollicis brevis	Radial flexion of wrist Flexion of middle phalanges (digiti II–V) Flexion of distal phalanges (digiti II, III) Pronation of forearm Pronation of forearm Abduction of thumb Opposition of thumb Flexion of distal phalanx of thumb Flexion of proximal phalanx of thumb
Axillary	C5–C6	Deltoid Teres minor	Shoulder abduction
Radial	C5–T1	Triceps Brachioradialis Extensor carpi radialis/ulnaris Supinator Extensor pollicis brevis Extensor pollicis longus Extensor indicis proprius Extensor digiti V proprius Extensor digiti communis	Extension at elbow Flexion of forearm Extension at wrist with radial/ulnar deviation Supination of forearm Extension of thumb (proximal) Extension of thumb (distal) Extension of index finger (proximal) Extension of little finger (proximal) Extension of digits (II–V, proximal)
Medial cutaneous (antebrachial) nerve of the forearm	C6–T1	Sensory	Refer to Figure 3.4
Lateral cutaneous (antebrachial) nerve of the forearm	C5–C6	Sensory	Refer to Figure 3.4
Ulnar	C8–T1	Flexor carpi ulnaris Flexor digitorum profundus (medial half) Abductor digiti minimi All other intrinsics of hand	Ulnar flexion of wrist Flexion of distal phalanges (digiti IV, V) Abduction of digiti V Finger abduction/adduction

The Thoracic Nerves

The thoracic posterior (dorsal) rami travel posteriorly, close to the vertebral zygapophyseal (facet) joints before dividing into medial and lateral branches. The posterior ramus contains nerves that serve the posterior portions of the trunk carrying visceral motor, somatic motor, and sensory information to and from the skin and muscles of the back. There are 12 pairs of thoracic anterior (ventral) rami, and all but the twelfth are located between the ribs, serving as intercostal nerves. All of the intercostal nerves supply the thoracic and abdominal walls, with the upper two also supplying the upper limbs. The thoracic anterior rami of T3–T6 supply only the thoracic wall, whereas the lower five rami supply both the thoracic and abdominal walls. The subcostal nerve supplies both the abdominal wall and the gluteal skin.

The Lumbar Plexus

The lumbar plexus (**FIGURE 3.7**) forms the upper part of the lumbosacral plexus. It is formed by the anterior divisions of the first four lumbar nerves (L1–L4) and from contributions of the subcostal nerve (T12), which is the last thoracic nerve (in approximately 50 percent of cases). **TABLE 3.5** outlines the peripheral nerves of the lumbar plexus.

The Sacral Plexus

The L4 and L5 nerves join medial to the sacral promontory, becoming the lumbosacral trunk. The lumbosacral trunk (L4, L5) descends into the pelvis, where it enters the formation of the sacral plexus (**FIGURE 3.8**). The S1–S4 nerves converge with the lumbosacral trunk anterior to the piriformis muscle, forming the broad triangular band of the sacral plexus. The upper three nerves of the sacral plexus divide into two sets of branches:

- The medial branches are distributed to the multifidi muscles.
- The lateral branches become the medial cluneal nerves. The medial cluneal nerves supply the skin over the medial part of the gluteus maximus.

The lower two posterior primary divisions, with the posterior division of the coccygeal nerve, supply the skin over the coccyx.

Collateral branches from the anterior divisions extend to the quadratus femoris and gemellus inferior muscles (from L4, L5, and S1) and to the obturator internus and gemellus superior muscles (from L5 and S1, S2).

The muscles innervated by the sacral plexus are listed in **TABLE 3.6**.

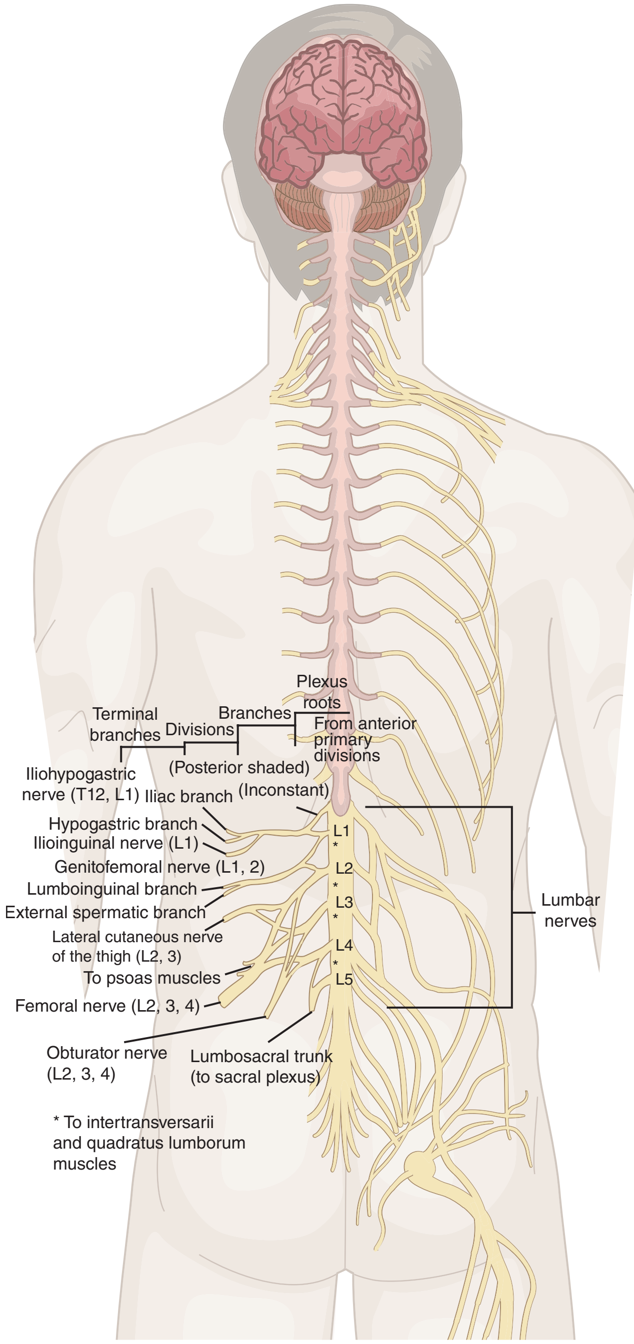


FIGURE 3.7 The lumbar plexus.

The Sciatic Nerve The sciatic nerve (refer to Figure 3.8) is the largest nerve in the body. It arises from the L4, L5, and S1–S3 nerve roots as a continuation of the lumbosacral plexus. The nerve comprises the independent tibial (medial) and common fibular (peroneal) (lateral) divisions (refer to Table 3.6), which are usually united as a single nerve down to the lower portion of the thigh.

The Pudendal and Coccygeal Plexuses

The pudendal and coccygeal plexuses are the most caudal portions of the lumbosacral plexus and supply nerves to the perineal structures.

TABLE 3.5 Peripheral Nerves of the Lumbar Plexus

Nerves	Nerve Root	Muscles	Function
Iliohypogastric	T12, L1	Sensory	The lateral (iliac) branch supplies the skin of the upper lateral part of the thigh while the anterior (hypogastric) branch supplies the skin over the symphysis
Ilioinguinal	L1	Sensory	Supplies the skin of the upper medial part of the thigh and the root of the penis and scrotum or mons pubis and labia majora
Genitofemoral	L1, L2	Sensory	The genital branch supplies the cremasteric muscle and the skin of the scrotum or labia while the femoral branch supplies the skin of the middle upper part of the thigh and the femoral artery
Femoral	L2–L4	Iliopsoas Quadriceps femoris Pectineus Sartorius	Flexion of hip Extension of knee
Saphenous	L3–L4	Sensory	Medial aspect of the knee, leg, and foot
Obturator	L2–L4	Adductor longus, adductor brevis, adductor magnus	Adduction of hip
Lateral cutaneous (femoral) nerve of the thigh	L2–L3	Sensory	Anterior and lateral parts of the thigh, as far as the knee
Posterior cutaneous nerve of the thigh	L2–L3	Sensory	The gluteal region, the perineum, and the back of the thigh and leg
Anterior cutaneous (femoral) nerve of the thigh	L2–L3	Sensory	Anterior aspect of the thigh, leg, and foot

Autonomic Nerves

The autonomic nervous system (ANS) is the division of the PNS that affects heart rate, digestion, respiration rate, salivation, perspiration, diameter of the pupils, micturition (urination), and sexual arousal (**FIGURE 3.9**). The ANS has two components: sympathetic and parasympathetic, each of which is differentiated by its site of origin as well as the transmitters it releases.[8] In general, these two systems have antagonist effects on their end organs.

- *Sympathetic.* General action is to mobilize the body's resources under stress, to induce the "flight-or-fight" response. An example of an aberrant sympathetic reaction is complex regional pain syndrome, an unusual cause of paresthesias, pain, and autonomic dysfunction that can occur after minor soft tissue injuries or fractures and usually affects the distal extremities.[9]
- *Parasympathetic.* Actions can be summarized as "rest and digest." A parasympathetic imbalance

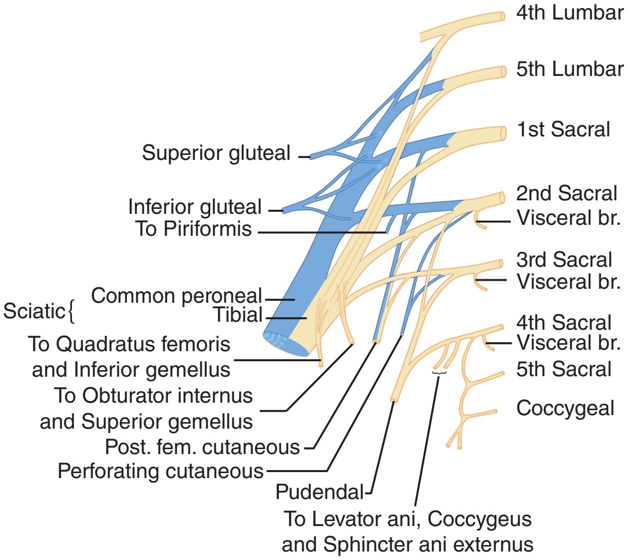


FIGURE 3.8 The sacral plexus.

Source: Gray H: *Anatomy of the Human Body* (ed 20). Philadelphia, Lea and Febiger, 1918.

can result in a decrease in pulse and breathing rates and an increase in tear and salivation production.

Transmission of Pain

At its basic level, pain is a specific output from the brain that serves as a protective mechanism, and which can lead to changes in movement.[10] Although altered movement may be appropriate in the early protective phases, it can contribute to poor recovery, continued disability, and decreased quality of life if it continues. Early research defined pain as nociception, which required a strong, intense, potentially damaging peripheral stimulation before becoming activated. More recently the delineation has been made between nociception and the pain experience such that the pain experience can exist without an external stimulus. To this end, the International

TABLE 3.6 Peripheral Nerves (Motor) of the Sacral Plexus

Nerves	Nerve Root	Muscles	Action
Superior gluteal	L4–S1	Gluteus medius, gluteus minimus, and tensor fasciae latae	Abduction of the hip (With the hip flexed, the gluteus medius and minimus externally rotate the thigh; with the hip extended, the gluteus medius and minimus internally rotate the thigh.)
Inferior gluteal	L5–S2	Gluteus maximus	Extension of the hip
Sciatic	(Common fibular and tibial nerves travel in a common sheath)	Biceps femoris (long head), semitendinosus, semimembranosus, and adductor magnus	Hip extension, knee flexion, and hip adduction
Common fibular	L4, L5 and S1, S2	Biceps femoris (short head), fibularis (peroneus) longus, fibularis (peroneus) brevis, tibialis anterior, extensor digitorum longus, fibularis (peroneus) tertius, extensor hallucis longus (propius), extensor digitorum brevis, and extensor hallucis brevis	Varies according to muscle
Tibial	L4, L5 and S1, S2, S3	Gastrocnemius, popliteus, soleus, plantaris, tibialis posterior, flexor digitorum longus, flexor hallucis longus, abductor hallucis, flexor digitorum brevis, flexor hallucis brevis, the first lumbrical, quadratus plantae, flexor digiti minimi, adductor hallucis, the interossei, three lumbricals, and abductor digiti minimi.	Varies according to muscle

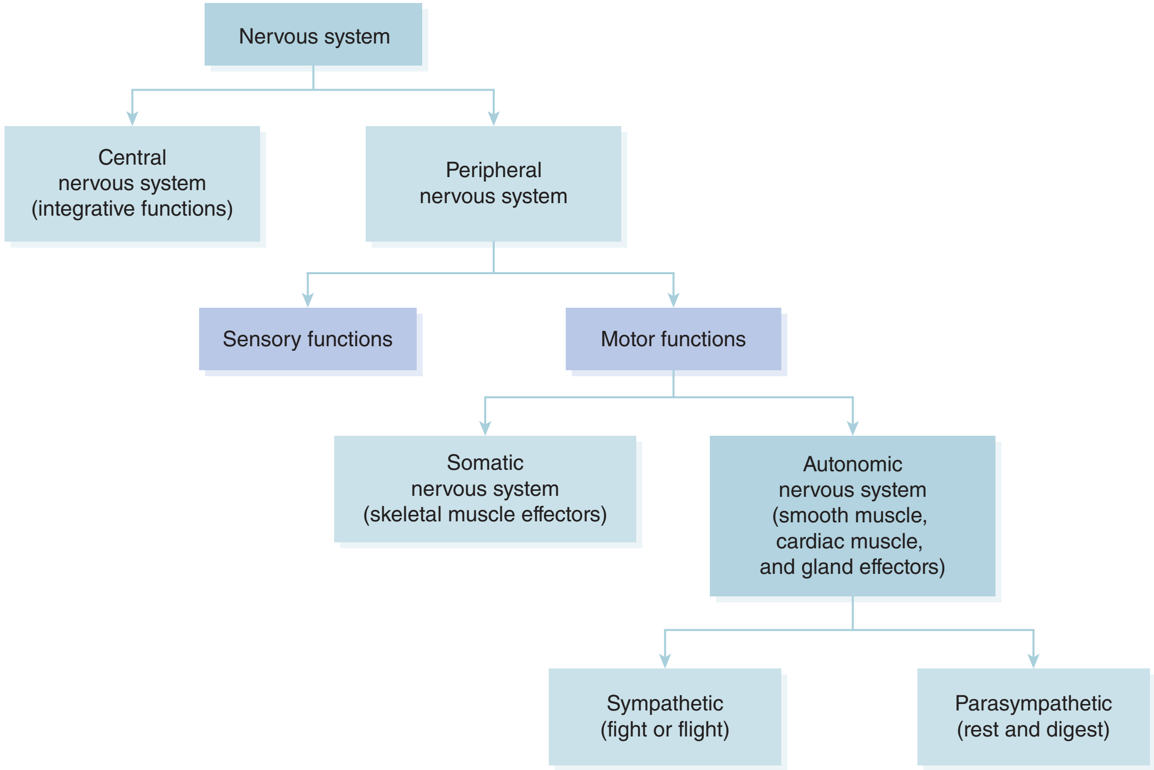


FIGURE 3.9 The ANS and its relation to the other components of the nervous system.

Association for the Study of Pain (IASP) broadly defines pain as a "sensory and emotional experience associated with actual or potential tissue damage, or described in terms of such damage."[11] So, although evidence suggests that sensory, psychological, and motor processing factors are related to pain, potential interactions and the influence of these interactions are still not fully understood.[12] For example, the degree of injury does not always equal the degree of pain.

Perhaps, the simplest descriptors for pain are *acute* and *chronic*. *Acute pain* can be defined as "the normal, predicted physiological response" to actual tissue damage, or the threat of potential tissue damage. During this initial state, sensory, psychological, and motor factors interact with each other to form the pain experience, which may explain individual variability in movement during an episode of pain.[12] Once the protective reaction subsides, and the tissues have time to repair, normal movement patterns and function consistent with the initial state return.[10,12] In general, acute pain lasts for less than 3 months. In contrast to acute pain, chronic pain involves symptoms that have persisted beyond 3 months or the time needed for tissue repair and there is a persistence of altered movement. Chronic pain is therefore typically more aggravating than worrying and usually has the following characteristics:

1. It has been experienced before and is usually of limited duration.
2. It is generally mild to moderate in intensity, and the pain site does not cause alarm (e.g., wrist and ankle). The associated symptoms typically behave mechanically, in that activity or repeated movements provoke them and they are reduced with rest.
3. It does not serve a useful biological, protective purpose as the damaged tissues have healed as well as possible.
4. It can create abnormal movement patterns (e.g., limping). These abnormal movement patterns may occur because the nerves involved in the initial tissue damage healed in a hypersensitive state.

Despite the fact that it is estimated that 1 in 3 Americans suffers from chronic pain,[13] the causes of chronic pain are not understood. It appears that there are PNS, and likely CNS, changes involving inflammatory and noninflammatory pathways, often referred to as central sensitization, resulting in hyperalgesia and allodynia.[14] These changes, which encompass numerous and complex pathophysiological mechanisms, such as spinal cord sensitization, impaired functioning of brain-orchestrated descending antinociceptive (inhibitive) mechanisms, overactivation of descending pain-facilitatory pathways, and increased temporal summation, are thought to occur as a result of repeated releases of inflammatory and reparative mediators.[15] These transient bursts of inflammatory activity, if repeated and prolonged, can lead to the progressive accumulation of damage, even if these episodes are not reported as symptomatic by the patient.[16]

Three primary mechanisms were traditionally thought to be involved in the suppression of acute pain:

- *Gate control.* Although widely discounted in the literature, the gate control theory continues to be used clinically to explain the control of pain. The theory proposes that the large-diameter nerve fibers that carry information about touch, pressure, and vibration and the smaller nerve fibers that carry information about pain meet at two places in the posterior horn of the spinal cord: (1) the "transmission" (T) cells and (2) the inhibitory cells. Both the large fiber signals and the small fiber signals excite the T cells, and when the output of the T cells exceeds a critical level, pain is felt. The T cells are the gate for pain; the inhibitory cells can shut the gate.
- *Endogenous opiate control.* When sensory nerves are subjected to certain types of stimulation, the release of enkephalin from local sites within the CNS and the discharge of β-endorphin from the pituitary gland occurs into the cerebrospinal fluid.[14] Enkephalin and β-endorphin bind to the body's opioid receptors and are considered as the body's natural painkillers.
- *Central biasing.* Intense stimulation, approaching a noxious level, of the smaller C or pain fibers produces a stimulation of the descending neurons, which results in an inhibition of pain.

From a clinical perspective, a clinician may choose to control pain by decreasing the intensity, duration, and/or frequency of a painful exercise or activity. However, there are multiple explanations for increased pain other than the exercise/activity alone, such as decreased nociceptive modulation or a change in the individual's mood or attention. It is believed that there is more opportunity for pain modulation and that there are different ways in which context, cognitive set, and mood can influence the overall pain experience.[17] For example, there is substantial evidence to show that individuals with a higher fear of pain are more likely to rate their pain at higher intensities.[18,19] This might explain why someone with mild knee pathology could have a higher pain report than someone with severe knee pathology. In essence, zero pain is not the goal, but reduction of suffering is.[20]

Over the last decade, researchers have begun to investigate the influence of pain on patterns of neuromuscular activation and control. It has been suggested that the presence of pain leads to inhibition or delayed activation of muscles or muscle groups that perform key synergistic functions to limit unwanted motion.[21] This inhibition usually occurs in the deeper muscles—local to the involved joint—that perform a synergistic function to control joint stability.[22–24] It is now also becoming apparent that in addition to being influenced by pain, motor activity and emotional state can, in turn, influence pain perception.[25] For example, if a patient has developed well-established negative thoughts that are associated with previously painful activities, such as fear of movement, unhelpful beliefs about recovery, and anxiety, these psychological and social factors can interfere with a person's rehabilitation.[19,26] This relatively recent acknowledgment, which recognizes that both tissue damage or disease together with the more complex social and psychological reality experienced by patients are essential components, has resulted in a global shift from a biomedical model to a biopsychosocial model. Examples of these models are the Fear-Avoidance, Misdirected Problem-Solving, and the Self-Efficacy Models.[27]

Clinical Implications of the Neuromuscular System

Certain programs for movement patterns are inherent in the CNS, and these naturally develop during the maturation process of the CNS. For example, gait is an inherent motor program. (See Chapter 7.) Other activities require learning through successful repetition and the formation of a program within the CNS. Once this program is formed, the individual no longer has to concentrate on performing the activity, but can do so with little cortical involvement. A patient cannot succeed in functional and recreational activities if his or her neuromuscular system is not prepared to meet the demands of the specific activities.[28] A motor program that is particularly important is that of postural stability—the ability to maintain a stable upright stance against internal and external perturbations. The key components involved in postural stability are proprioception, kinesthesia, neuromuscular control, and balance. (See Chapter 14.) The visual system,

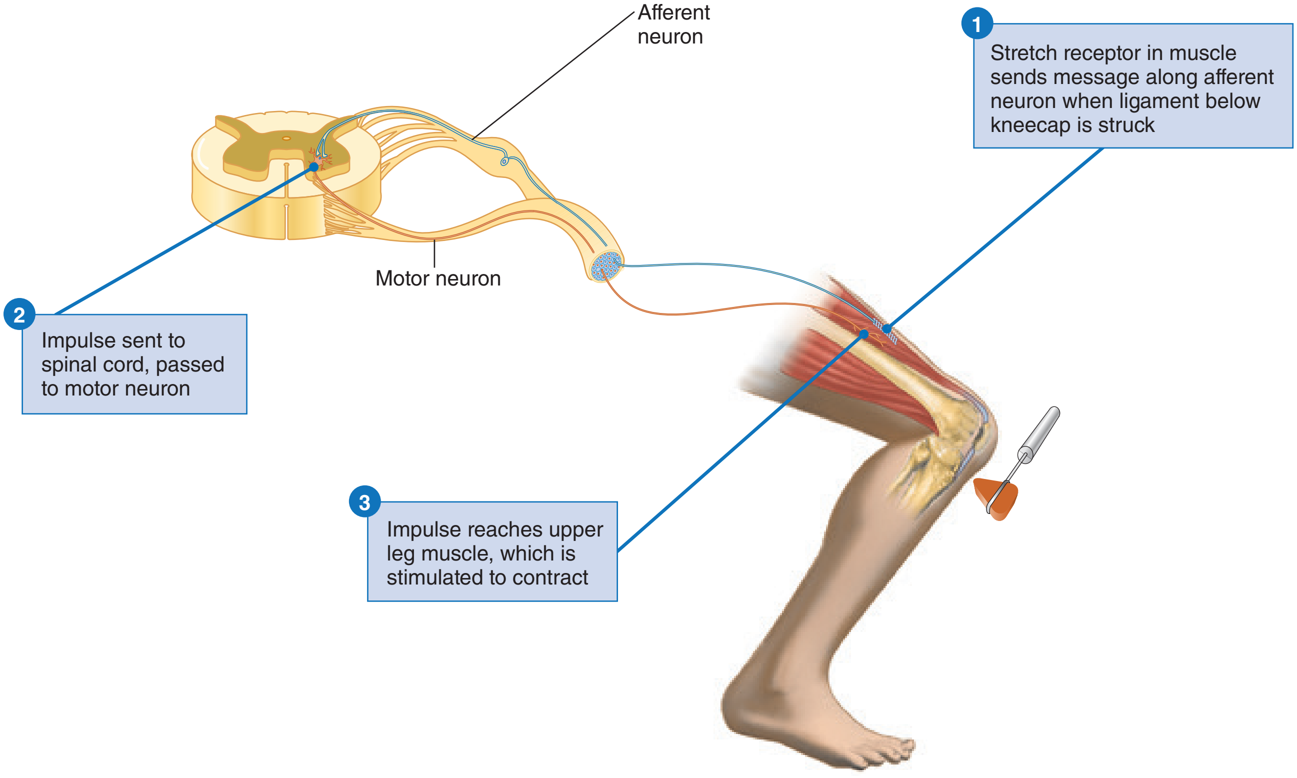


FIGURE 3.10 The stretch reflex.

which comprises CN II, III, IV, and VI, assists in balance control by providing input about the position of the head or the body in space.

The stretch reflex is a preprogrammed response of the body to a stretch stimulus in the muscle (**FIGURE 3.10**). When a muscle spindle (refer to Box 3.1) is stretched, an impulse is immediately sent to the spinal cord and a response to contract the muscle is received (**FIGURE 3.11**). Because the impulse only has to go to the spinal cord and back, and not all the way to the brain, it is a rapid impulse. It generally occurs in 1 to 2 milliseconds. This is designed as a protective measure for the muscles, to prevent tearing. At the same time, the stretch reflex has an inhibitory aspect to the antagonist muscles. When the stretch reflex is activated the impulse is sent from the stretched muscle spindle and the motor neuron is split so that the signal to contract can be sent to the stretched muscle, while a signal to relax can be sent to the antagonist muscles. The stretch reflex is very important in posture. It helps maintain proper posturing because a slight lean to either side causes a stretch in the spinal,

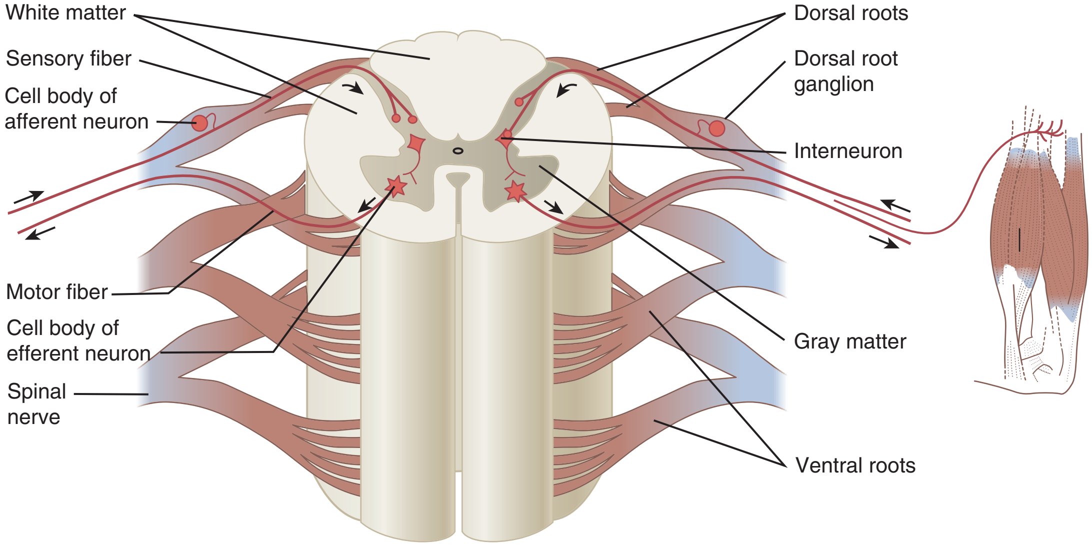


FIGURE 3.11 The muscle spindle and golgi tendon organ.

hip, and leg muscles to the other side, which is quickly countered by the stretch reflex in a constant process of adjustment and maintenance.

☑ KEY POINT

In contrast to muscle spindles, which are sensitive to changes in muscle length, Golgi tendon organs (GTOs) detect and respond to changes in muscle tension that are caused by passive stretch or muscular contraction (refer to Box 3.1).

Lesions of the Nervous System

As with all neuromusculoskeletal structures, the nervous system is prone to injury through trauma or disease. The resultant signs and symptoms depend on the location and extent of the injury.

Upper Motor Neuron Lesion

Upper motor neurons (UMN) are located in the white columns of the spinal cord and the cerebral hemispheres. An upper motor neuron lesion is a lesion of the neural pathway above the anterior horn cell or motor nuclei of the cranial nerves. It is important that the physical therapist assistant (PTA) be aware of the signs and symptoms associated with UMN lesions because they can be subtle but constitute a medical emergency. An example of a sudden UMN lesion is a cerebrovascular accident (CVA). The results of other UMN lesions that can be encountered in the clinical setting are spinal cord injury (SCI), traumatic brain injury (TBI), and Parkinson's disease. A UMN lesion can be characterized as follows:

- *Nystagmus.* An involuntary loss of control of the conjugate movement of the eyes (about one or more axes).
- *Dysphasia.* A problem with vocabulary that results from a cerebral lesion in the speech areas of the frontal or temporal lobes.
- *Ataxia.* Often most marked in the extremities. In the lower extremities, it is characterized by the so-called drunken-sailor gait pattern, with the patient veering from one side to the other and having a tendency to fall toward the side of the lesion. Ataxia of the upper extremities is characterized by a loss of accuracy in reaching for, or placing, objects. Although ataxia can have several causes, it generally suggests CNS disturbance.
- *Spasticity.* A motor disorder characterized by a velocity-dependent increase (resistance increases with velocity) in tonic stretch reflexes with exaggerated tendon jerks.
- *Vertical diplopia.* A patient report of "double vision" or seeing two images, one atop or diagonally displaced from the other.[29]
- *Dysphonia.* Presents as a hoarseness of the voice. Usually no pain is reported. Painless dysphonia is a common symptom of a condition called Wallenberg's syndrome (difficulty with swallowing, speaking, or both, caused by interrupted blood supply to parts of the brain).[30]
- *Hemianopia.* This finding, a loss in half of the visual field, is always bilateral.
- *Ptosis.* A pathologic depression of the superior eyelid such that it covers part of the pupil.
- *Miosis.* The inability to dilate the pupil. It is one of the symptoms of Horner's syndrome.[31]
- *Dysarthria.* A previously undiagnosed change in articulation.
- *Aphasia.* An acquired language disorder in which there is an impairment of any language modality. This may include difficulty in producing or comprehending spoken or written language (**TABLE 3.7**).
- *Apraxia.* A disorder caused by damage to specific areas of the cerebrum, characterized by loss of the ability to execute or carry out learned purposeful movements.
- *Perceptual dysfunction.* A compromised ability to attain awareness or understanding of sensory information.
- *Visual-spatial deficits.* Visual-spatial deficits manifested as poor visual recall, faulty space perceptions, a poor sense of directionality, and a poor comprehension of visually presented material.

☑ KEY POINT

Spasticity can occur as a result of a new or enlarged CNS lesion, a genitourinary tract dysfunction (e.g., infection, obstruction), and/or gastrointestinal disorder (e.g., bowel impaction, hemorrhoids), venous thrombosis, fracture, muscle strain, or pressure ulcers in those patients who already have a UMN lesion.

☑ KEY POINT

The symptoms of Horner's syndrome include miosis, ptosis, exophthalmos, facial reddening, and anhidrosis.

If Horner's syndrome is suspected, the patient immediately should be returned or referred to a physician for further examination and not treated again until the cause is found to be relatively benign.

TABLE 3.7 Types of Aphasia

Type	Description
Nonfluent aphasia (Broca's aphasia, motor aphasia, expressive aphasia)	Speech is typically awkward, restricted, and produced with effort.
Fluent aphasia (Wernicke's aphasia, receptive aphasia)	Spontaneous speech is preserved but auditory comprehension is impaired. Despite the fluency, the speech is full of emptiness and gibberish jargon, which may include invented words known as neologisms.
Conduction aphasia	Language output is fluent, but naming and repetition are impaired. Hesitations and word-finding pauses are frequent.
Global aphasia	Marked impairment in the comprehension and production of language, with deficits in repeating, naming, understanding, and producing fluent speech.
Transcortical aphasia	Patients can repeat what they hear, but they have difficulty naming or producing spontaneous speech or understanding spoken speech.
Anomic aphasia	Patients present with fluent speech, intact or mostly intact repetition, and an inability to name things.

Concussion

Between 1.6 and 3.8 million sports concussions occur annually in the United States.[32] The term *concussion* describes a type of mild TBI caused by trauma to the head.[33] The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention define concussion as: "a complex pathophysiological process affecting the brain, induced by traumatic biomechanical forces secondary to direct or indirect forces to the head." The emergence of chronic traumatic encephalopathy (CTE), a degenerative disease of the brain linked to a history of concussions, has highlighted the importance of early detection and prevention.[34,35] While the majority of individuals who suffer a concussion recover in the initial 7 to 10 days following injury, symptoms persist in 10 to 30 percent of cases.[33] Persistence of symptoms beyond the generally accepted time frame for recovery may represent a prolonged concussion, or it may herald the development of postconcussion syndrome (PCS).[36] While concussions can occur in nearly every walk of life, the greatest frequency occurs in collision and contact sports, including rugby, soccer, football, lacrosse, basketball, and hockey. It is important to note that concussion may or may not involve a loss of consciousness, and that it can result in a constellation of physical, cognitive, emotional, and sleep-related symptoms.[37] Acute signs and symptoms of a concussion can include confusion, visual problems, balance deficits, loss of consciousness, posttraumatic amnesia, retrograde amnesia, dizziness, personality changes, fatigue, sensitivity to light/noise, numbness, and vomiting.[38] Some of these symptoms (dizziness, numbness, and vomiting) may have etiologies related to the cervical sympathetic nervous system, cranial nerve involvement, compression of the vertebral artery, and/or involvement of the proprioceptors of the upper cervical spine. Chronic signs and symptoms of a concussion include cognitive deficits in attention or memory, and at least two or more of the following symptoms: fatigue, sleep disturbance, headache, dizziness, irritability, affective disturbance, apathy, or personality change.[39]

Current management guidelines recommend a period of prescribed cognitive and physical rest in the acute period following injury, followed by a protocol of graduated exertion, which consists of the following:[33]

1. Rest (2 days are currently recommended; evidence appears to suggest complete rest exceeding 3 days is probably not helpful and may be harmful[40])
2. Light aerobic exercise
3. Sports-specific exercise
4. Noncontact training drills

5. Full-contact practice after medical clearance
6. Return to normal gameplay

Each of these steps takes a minimum of 24 hours and, as long as the patient is asymptomatic after 24 hours, he or she can progress to the next level. If symptoms recur at any step of the progression, the patient moves to the previously asymptomatic step and attempts to progress once an additional 24-hour period has elapsed.[33] During the various steps, it is recommended that there be an assessment of neurocognitive function, standing balance, vision, exertion, vestibular function, and both the upper and lower cervical spine.[41,42] Ideally, neurocognitive tests should be administered preinjury to provide a baseline so that comparisons can be made postinjury. Without these preinjury assessments, it is extremely difficult to determine when an individual is actually asymptomatic. In contrast, when a preinjury assessment is available, early postinjury assessments can aid in determining certain aspects of management, such as returning to school or work. In fact, using symptoms and neurocognitive assessment within 2 days postinjury can correctly identify 80 percent of athletes requiring protracted recovery.[43]

Because the symptoms following a concussion include a variety of physical and mental complaints, it is often necessary to involve a number of different healthcare professionals in the assessment and treatment process. Physical therapy treatment, including vestibular rehabilitation and treatment for the cervical spine, can be beneficial in some cases,[44] as can aerobic exercises performed below the symptom threshold.[35] The Cantu[45] grading scale has been helpful in assessing the severity of a concussion and for making return-to-play decisions (see **TABLE 3.8**).

No consensus currently exists for the role of pharmacology during the early stages of a concussion. For example, a current review evaluating studies of tricyclic antidepressants, nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory agents, acetaminophen, amantadine, melatonin, and stimulants concluded that there was insufficient evidence to support any of these in the treatment of concussion symptoms.[46]

Lower Motor Neuron Lesion

A lower motor neuron (LMN) lesion affects nerve fibers traveling from the anterior horn of the spinal cord to the relevant muscle or muscles. The characteristics of an LMN lesion include muscle weakness or paralysis with atrophy and hypotonus, diminished or absent muscle stretch (deep tendon) reflex of the areas served by a spinal nerve root or a peripheral nerve, and absence of pathologic signs or reflexes. These lesions can be the result of direct trauma, toxins, infections, ischemia, compression, or from a congenital or acquired nervous system pathology. Examples of LMN pathology include the following:

- Guillain-Barré syndrome
- Cauda equina syndrome
- Bell's palsy

TABLE 3.8 Cantu Grading Scale

Grade	Description
1	Includes posttraumatic amnesia less than 30 minutes and no loss of consciousness
2	Defined as loss of consciousness less than 5 minutes, or amnesia 30 minutes to 24 hours
3	Includes loss of consciousness greater than 5 minutes or amnesia greater than 24 hours

Data from The McGraw-Hill Companies. Cantu RC. Guidelines for return to contact sports after a cerebral concussion. *Physician Sportsmed*. 1986; 14(10):75–83.

Peripheral Nerve Entrapment Syndromes

The majority of peripheral nerve entrapments result from chronic injury to the nerve layers along their various routes; the compression usually is between ligamentous, muscular, or bony surfaces. In addition to compression, the peripheral nerves also can be traumatized through traction or stretch. For example, a condition often referred to as a *burner*, or *stinger*, is thought to result from either traction or compressive forces to the brachial plexus or cervical nerve roots. Although peripheral nerve entrapments are more common in the upper extremities, particularly in the forearm and wrist, they also occur in the lower extremities. The consequences of nerve compression are ischemia and disruption of the nerve fiber (**TABLE 3.9** and **TABLE 3.10**).

The intervention for peripheral nerve entrapments consists of instructing the patient to avoid aggravating activities with the involved extremity, soft tissue mobilization techniques to induce muscle relaxation and decreased muscle tension, manual therapy techniques designed to release tissue adhesions, and neural glide techniques. (See Chapter 9.) Any activity that involves increasing joint range of motion should be performed slowly and carefully to prevent any

TABLE 3.9 Peripheral Nerve Injury Location and Findings of the Upper Extremity

Cord and Nerve	Level of Injury	Motor Loss	Cutaneous Loss
Posterior cord: Radial nerve (C5–T1)	Plexus: proximal to axillary nerve	All muscles innervated by radial nerve All muscles innervated by axillary nerve	Throughout the radial and axillary distribution
	Axilla (brachio-axillary angle)	Triceps (medial and lateral heads), anconeus	Posterior brachial cutaneous
	Spiral groove	All muscles innervated by radial nerve except medial head of triceps	Posterior antebrachial cutaneous
	Proximal to lateral epicondyle	Brachialis, brachioradialis, ECRL, ECRB	None
	Arcade of Frohse	Supinator, all muscles innervated by the posterior interosseous nerve	Superficial radial (Wartenberg's syndrome)
Posterior cord: Axillary nerve (C5–C6)	Axilla (quadrangular space)	Teres minor, deltoid	Lateral arm
Medial and lateral cord: Median nerve (C5–T1)	Plexus (proximal to the joining of the medial and lateral cords): thoracic outlet syndrome	All muscles innervated by the median, musculocutaneous, and ulnar nerves	Throughout the median, musculocutaneous, and ulnar distributions
	Ligament of Struthers (only occurs in 0.7–2.7% of the population): proximal to medial epicondyle	Pronator teres (pronator teres syndrome)	None
	Cubital fossa exit: between the two heads of the pronator teres, the bicipital aponeurosis, or the fibrous arch of the flexor digitorum superficialis	Pronator teres, FCR, FDS, PL, lumbricales I and II	None
	Forearm	Anterior interosseous: FDP (I and II), FPL, PQ Median muscular branch: thenar muscles (APB, FPB, OP), lumbricales I and II	Palmar branch: radial half of thumb Digital branch: Dorsal tips of thumb, index, and middle fingers, and radial half of ring finger
Lateral: Musculocutaneous nerve (C5–C7)	Coracobrachialis	Coracobrachialis Biceps Brachialis	None

TABLE 3.9 Peripheral Nerve Injury Location and Findings of the Upper Extremity *(continued)*

Cord and Nerve	Level of Injury	Motor Loss	Cutaneous Loss
	Elbow	None	Lateral antebrachial cutaneous nerve: lateral forearm
Medial: Ulnar nerve (C8–T1)	Cubital tunnel	FCU, FDP, adductor pollicis, lumbricales, and interossei	Dorsal and palmar aspects on the ulnar side of the hand
	Between the two heads of the FCU	FDP, FCU	None
	Proximal to wrist	Deep branch: all hand muscles innervated by the ulnar nerve Superficial branch: palmaris brevis	Dorsal cutaneous: medial aspect of ring and little fingers, dorsum of hand Dorsal digital: DIP aspect of little finger, PIP aspect of ring and middle fingers Palmar cutaneous: medial third of palm
	Guyon canal	Muscles of the hypothenar eminence (hand of benediction), interossei	Ulnar aspect of the hand

ECRL, extensor carpi radialis longus; ECRB, extensor carpi radialis brevis; FCR, flexor carpi radialis; FDS, flexor digitorum superficialis; PL, palmaris longus; FDP, flexor digitorum profundus; FPL, flexor pollicis longus; PQ, pronator quadratus; APB, abductor pollicis brevis; FPB, flexor pollicis brevis; OP, opponens pollicis; FCU, flexor carpi ulnaris; DIP, distal interphalangeal; PIP, proximal interphalangeal.

TABLE 3.10 Peripheral Nerve Entrapment Syndromes of the Lower Extremity

Nerve Involved	Mechanism/Entrapment Site
Iliohypogastric nerve	Rarely injured in isolation The most common causes of injury are surgical procedures Sports injuries such as trauma or muscle tears of the lower abdominal muscles also may result in an injury to the nerve Occurs on rare occasion during pregnancy (idiopathic iliohypogastric syndrome) due to the rapidly expanding abdomen in the third trimester
Ilioinguinal nerve	Lower abdominal incisions Pregnancy Iliac bone harvesting Idiopathic
Genitofemoral nerve	Hernia repair, appendectomy, biopsies, and cesarean delivery. Intrapelvic trauma to the posterior abdominal wall, retroperitoneal hematoma, pregnancy, or trauma to the inguinal ligament; fortunately, injury to this nerve is rare

(*continues*)

TABLE 3.10 Peripheral Nerve Entrapment Syndromes of the Lower Extremity *(continued)*

Nerve Involved	Mechanism/Entrapment Site
Lateral femoral cutaneous nerve (meralgia paresthetica)	*Intrapelvic causes:* Pregnancy, abdominal tumors, uterine fibroids, diverticulitis, or appendicitis *Extrapelvic causes:* Trauma to the region of the anterior superior iliac spine (ASIS) (e.g., a seatbelt from a motor vehicle accident), tight garments, belts, girdles, or stretch from obesity and ascites *Mechanical causes:* Prolonged sitting or standing and pelvic tilt from leg length discrepancy *Diabetes:* In isolation or in the clinical setting of a polyneuropathy
Sciatic nerve (piriformis syndrome)	Multiple etiologies have been proposed to explain the compression or irritation of the sciatic nerve that occurs with the piriformis syndrome: ■ Hypertrophy of the piriformis muscle ■ Trauma, direct or indirect, to the sacroiliac or gluteal region can lead to piriformis syndrome and is a result of hematoma formation and subsequent scarring between the sciatic nerve and the short external rotators ■ A flexion contracture at the hip has been associated with piriformis syndrome. This flexion contracture increases the lumbar lordosis, which increases the tension in the pelvic–femoral muscles as these muscles try to stabilize the pelvis and spine in the new position. This increased tension causes the involved muscles to hypertrophy with no corresponding increase in the size of the bony foramina, resulting in neurological signs of sciatic compression ■ Females are more commonly affected by piriformis syndrome, with as much as a 6:1 female-to-male incidence ■ Ischial bursitis ■ Pseudoaneurysm of the inferior gluteal artery ■ Excessive exercise to the hamstring muscles ■ Inflammation and spasm of the piriformis muscle, often in association with trauma, infection, and anatomic variations of the muscle ■ Local anatomic anomalies may contribute to the likelihood that symptoms will develop
Femoral nerve	Diabetic amyotrophy Trauma such as gunshots, knife wounds, glass shards, or needle puncture in some medical procedures Pelvic fractures and acute hyperextension of the thigh may also cause an isolated femoral nerve injury
Saphenous nerve	Inflammation from a sharp angulation of the nerve through the connective tissue at the roof of Hunter canal Dynamic forces of the muscles in this region resulting in contraction and relaxation of the fibrous tissue that impinges the nerve
Tibial nerve (entrapment in the popliteal fossa)	Usually caused by an enlarged Baker's cyst (which may also compress the common peroneal and sural nerves) Proliferation of the synovial tissue in patients with rheumatoid arthritis
Posterior tibial nerve (entrapment in the tarsal tunnel)	Compression of the nerve behind the medial malleolus

premature or intensive stretch to the nerve (neuropraxia). Light resistance and high repetition exercises are introduced and progressed as tolerated to the affected muscles and are complemented with strengthening and retraining of the musculature of the entire extremity. Functional retraining is introduced once the symptoms have subsided.

Neurovascular Healing

Neuriums (the nerve coverings) provide a framework for support of the nerve; they facilitate sliding of the nerve and provide a protective barrier. The area surrounding nerves is drained by the body's lymphatic system, and the nerve itself has a blood and nerve barrier to prevent foreign substances from invading the nerve. However, there is no lymphatic system inside the blood–nerve barrier, resulting in poor drainage. Due to the presence of mast cells in the epineurium, there is a potential for nerve repair, but because neurons are incapable of dividing and migrating, regeneration occurs only through existing neurons. Nerve growth is dependent upon several factors including the health of the tissue, the state of the nerve and nerve sheath, and the region of the injury. On average, nerves regenerate at a rate of 1 to 3 millimeters per day.

Nerve Injury Classification

An injury to a peripheral nerve can occur from many sources, including ischemic, thermal, mechanical (e.g., compression, laceration, and contusion), or chemical. Nerve injuries can be classified using the Seddon/Sunderland categories as follows:

- A *first-degree injury* (neuropraxia) involves a temporary conduction block with demyelination of the nerve at the site of injury. Once the nerve has remyelinated at that area, complete recovery occurs. Recovery may take up to 12 weeks. Most carpal or tarsal tunnel injuries are classified in this manner.
- A *second-degree injury* (axonotmesis) results from a more severe trauma or compression. This causes Wallerian degeneration* distal to the level of injury and proximal axonal degeneration to at least the next node of Ranvier. In more severe traumatic injuries, the proximal degeneration may extend beyond the next node of Ranvier. The endoneurium remains intact, and therefore, recovery is complete with axons reinnervating their original motor and sensory targets.
- A *third-degree injury* (also called axonotmesis) was introduced by Sunderland to describe an injury more severe than second-degree injury. Similar to a second-degree injury, Wallerian degeneration occurs. However, with the increased severity of the injury, the endoneurium is not intact, and regenerating axons therefore may not reinnervate their original motor and sensory targets.
- A *fourth-degree injury* results in a large area of scar at the site of nerve injury and precludes any axons from advancing distal to the level of nerve injury. No improvement in function is noted, and the patient requires surgery to restore neural continuity, thus permitting axonal regeneration and motor and sensory reinnervation.
- A *fifth-degree injury* is a complete transection (neurotmesis) of the nerve. Similar to a fourth-degree injury, it requires surgery to restore neural continuity.
- A *sixth-degree injury* was introduced by Mackinnon to describe a mixed nerve injury that combines the other degrees of injury. This commonly occurs when some fascicles of the nerve are working normally while other fascicles may be recovering, and other fascicles may require surgical intervention to permit regeneration.

Implications for the PTA

Similar to the intervention for peripheral nerve entrapments, the conservative intervention for mild cases of peripheral nerve injury typically includes protection of the joints, including the surrounding ligaments and tendons, activity modification, and passive range of motion. Splints, slings, or both (as appropriate) may be prescribed. For example, a radial nerve injury results in a loss of wrist and finger extension and wrist drop. A wrist-resting splint may be used to support the hand in a neutral wrist position and place the hand in a more functional position. In patients with brachial plexus nerve injuries, particularly when C5–C6 are affected, or in patients who have suffered a stroke, continued downward stress at the glenohumeral joint may cause the glenohumeral joint to subluxate without the muscle support of the rotator cuff muscles. A sling is helpful to unload this joint, prevent complete shoulder dislocation, and decrease pain. Night splints appear to help to reduce the nocturnal symptoms associated with carpal tunnel syndrome and allow the wrist to rest fully. Splints worn during

* Wallerian degeneration occurs when a nerve fiber is cut or crushed. The part of the axon separated from the neuron's cell nucleus degenerates. This also is known as anterograde degeneration.

the day are helpful only if they do not interfere with normal activity. Ergonomic modifications and postural education are important to avoid repetitive motions and sustained positions/postures.

Medical Interventions for Nerve Injury

A number of medical interventions for nerve injury exist, ranging from medication to surgery. For example, in the case of a clean, sharp neurotmesis, a direct repair/coaptation (neurorrhaphy) is performed. This procedure requires that appropriate tension be applied to the injury site with minimal tension, rather than no tension, being the goal. With more crushing or avulsion injuries, the nerve ends are reapproximated so that motor and sensory topography can be realigned. However, if the repair cannot be performed without creating only minimal tension throughout the nerve, nerve grafting is performed. For example, if the median nerve is under tension with a wrist neutral position, a nerve graft is used.

Nerve Graft

In cases in which a gap is present between the proximal and distal end of the nerve, a nerve graft is recommended. Autografts are used in addition to direct adherence of the nerve. The use of a donor nerve results in a sensory loss in the distribution of the donor nerve. This area of sensory loss becomes smaller over 1 to 3 years, with collateral sprouting from the surrounding sensory nerves. In cases in which a large nerve gap is present, the most common autograft for peripheral nerve repair, the sural nerve, is used due to the large length of nerve graft material that can be obtained. For shorter nerve gaps, the anterior branch of the medial antebrachial cutaneous (MABC) nerve is used because the donor site scar is minimal and the resultant sensory loss is on the anterior aspect of the forearm. Other nerves that can be used are the lateral femoral cutaneous nerve of the thigh and the superficial radial sensory nerve.

Nerve Transfer

The concept of a nerve-to-nerve transfer permits a normal neighboring noncritical nerve to be attached to the distal end of the injured nerve. This is particularly useful in cases in which a large nerve gap is present and/or for proximal nerve injuries.

Implications for the PTA Following surgical repair, the initial goals of therapy are to protect the repair site, and then slowly regain range of motion of the joints and soft tissues that have been immobilized. Typically, compression dressings are used postoperatively to decrease venous congestion and edema, together with a splint to maintain appropriate tension throughout the repaired nerve. Depending on the surgeon's protocol, physical therapy may involve the application of superficial heat and electrical stimulation to initiate muscle contraction, increase blood flow, and stimulate removal of cellular debris. At the earliest opportunity, as per the surgeon's instructions, neuromuscular and sensory reeducation exercises are initiated to help regenerate light touch, texture, pressure, vibration, and to stimulate the afferents of the mechanoreceptor system. The patient should be instructed in exercises to maintain strength in all of the unaffected muscles. The patient must adhere to specific protocols. A number of grading systems can be used to document the quality and quantity of nerve recovery. For example, the 1954 0–5 Scale or British Medical Research Council (MRC) grading system[47] is still commonly used for both motor and sensory recovery. Motor recovery is graded as follows:[48]

0 No contraction
1 Flicker/trace contraction
2 Active movement with gravity eliminated
3 Active movement against gravity
4 Active movement against resistance
5 Normal/full power

Subdivisions of grade 4 provide further information:

4 Slight movement against resistance
4 Moderate movement against resistance
4+ Strong movement against resistance

A form of muscle testing can also be used to assess larger muscles or muscle groups as well as the intrinsic muscles of the hand:

- Median nerve: palmar abduction in the thumb
- Ulnar nerve: abduction of the index, small finger, and adduction of the small finger.

Assessment of grip strength with dynamometry is also a common method of reporting motor outcome.

The sensory recovery scale is categorized into S0–S4:[49]

- S0 is the absence of sensibility.
- S1 is the recovery of deep cutaneous pain.
- S2 is the return of superficial cutaneous pain and some degree of tactile sensibility.
- S3 is the return of superficial cutaneous pain and tactile sensibility without over response.
- S4 is the complete recovery.

A number of objective tests have also been proposed including:[48]

- Moberg's *pick-up test*, which measures integrated function of the hand by scoring both the speed and accuracy of identification of the test objects.[50]
- The Sollerman hand function test.[51] This test, which can reflect integrated sensory and motor functions, consists of 20 activities that replicate the main hand grips in daily living, and is used to evaluate the quality of basic grip types. Each subtest is scored depending on the quality of the hand grip and patient's difficulty in performing the task.
- Semmes-Weinstein monofilament test. This test can be used to assess perception of cutaneous pressure threshold and provides quantitative data that can be used to follow a patient serially during the period of nerve regeneration.
- Two-point discrimination (2-PD). This consists of two different tests: The static two-point discrimination test (S2-PD), which measures the slowly adapting receptor system, and the moving two-point discrimination test (M2-PD), which measures the quickly adapting receptor system, which recovers sooner and in larger numbers.

Neuromuscular Testing in Orthopaedics

The physical therapist (PT) evaluates the transmission capability of the nervous system to rule out the presence of either an UMN lesion or a lower motor neuron LMN lesion. In addition, the neurological examination can often determine the exact site of the lesion.

The examination begins when the PT establishes essential facts about the patient, starting with the chief complaint and continuing through a full, logical sequence of the patient's history of the present illness.[52,53] This is supplemented with a history of past medical disorders, a review of systems, family history, and social history. The neurological examination is supplemented by a general physical examination to look for medical disorders responsible for all of the contributing factors to the presenting problem.

Reflexes

Muscle Stretch (Deep Tendon) Reflex

The PT examines the muscle stretch reflex (**FIGURE 3.12**) to help determine whether an LMN lesion (hyporeflexive response) or UMN lesion (hyperreflexive response) is present. Muscle stretch reflexes may be graded as follows:

FIGURE 3.12 Muscle stretch reflex testing.

0	absent (areflexia)
1+	decreased (hyporeflexia)
2+	normal
3+	hyperactive (brisk)
4+	hyperactive with clonus (hyperreflexive)

Pathologic Reflexes

Pathologic reflexes involve abnormal or inappropriate motor responses to a controlled stimulus initiated in the sensory organ that is appropriate to the reflex arc. The most important of the pathologic reflexes is the Babinski response, which is a superficial reflex that is elicited in the same manner as the plantar response (**TABLE 3.11**). The Babinski reflex is a primitive withdrawal response that is normal for the first few months of life but is then suppressed by supraspinal activity. Damage to the descending tracts from the brain (either above the foramen magnum or in the spinal cord) promotes a return of this primitive protective reflex, while at the same time abolishing the normal plantar response. The appearance of this reflex, therefore, suggests the presence of a UMN lesion.

☑ KEY POINT

The Hoffmann sign is the upper limb equivalent of the Babinski reflex. Other pathologic reflexes include the Oppenheimer and clonus—a series of involuntary muscular contractions due to sudden stretching of a muscle.

Sensory Testing

The posterior (dorsal) roots of the spinal nerves are represented by restricted peripheral sensory regions called dermatomes (refer to Figure 3.4). The peripheral

TABLE 3.11 Pathologic Reflexes

Reflex	Elicitation	Positive Response	Pathology
Babinski	Stroking of lateral aspect of side of foot	Extension of big toe and fanning of four small toes Normal reaction in newborns	Pyramidal tract lesion Organic hemiplegia
Chaddock's	Stroking of lateral side of foot beneath lateral malleolus	Same response as above	Pyramidal tract lesion
Oppenheim's	Stroking of anteromedial tibial surface	Same response as above	Pyramidal tract lesion
Gordon's	Squeezing of calf muscles firmly	Same response as above	Pyramidal tract lesion
Brudzinski's	Passive flexion of one lower limb	Similar movement occurs in opposite limb	Meningitis
Hoffmann's	"Flicking" of terminal phalanx of index, middle, or ring finger	Reflex flexion of distal phalanx of thumb and of distal phalanx of index or middle finger (whichever one was not flicked)	Increased irritability of sensory nerves in tetany Pyramidal tract lesion
Lhermitte's	Neck flexion	An electric shock–like sensation that radiates down the spinal column into the upper or lower limbs	Abnormalities (demyelination) in the posterior part of the cervical spinal cord

sensory nerves are represented by more distinct and circumscribed areas. Sensory testing is performed by the PT throughout the dermatomal areas. For patients with no apparent neurological symptoms or signs, the PT may substitute an abbreviated examination. The two components to the dermatome tests are as follows:

- *Light touch.* Light touch tests for hypoesthesia (decreased sensation) throughout the dermatome. If the light touch test is positive (an area of hypoesthesia is detected), the areas of reduced sensation are mapped out in more detail.[54]
- *Pinprick.* The pinprick test examines for near anesthesia in the autonomous, no-overlap area of a dermatome. When investigating an area of cutaneous sensory loss, the PT typically begins the pinprick test in the area of anesthesia and works outward until the border of normal sensation is located. The PT stimulates in the patterns described above and asks the patient "Is this sharp or dull?" or, when making comparisons using the sharp stimulus, "Does this feel the same as this?"

A full examination of the sensory system can involve tests for the following:

- *Temperature.* Using two test tubes, filled with hot and cold water, the PT touches the skin and asks the patient to identify "hot" or "cold."
- *Pressure.* Firm pressure is applied to the patient's muscle belly.
- *Vibration.* Using a relatively low-pitched tuning fork, preferably of 128 Hz, the PT taps the fork on the heel of his or her hand and places it firmly on a bony process of the patient, such as the malleoli, patellae, epicondyles, vertebral spinous processes, and iliac crest. The patient is asked what he or she feels and, to be certain, is asked to inform the PT when the vibration stops. The PT then touches the fork to stop the vibration. At this point, the patient should indicate that the vibration has stopped. If

vibration sense is absent, the PT retests, moving proximally along the extremity.

- *Proprioception.* The patient is tested for the ability to perceive passive movements of the extremities, especially the distal portions. The PT grasps the involved extremity and moves it into a specific position, and then asks the patient to move the uninvolved extremity into the same position.
- *Movement sense (kinesthesia).* The patient is asked to indicate verbally the direction of movement while the extremity is in motion. The PT must grip the patient's extremity over neutral borders.
- *Stereognosis.* The patient is asked to recognize, through touch alone, a variety of small objects, such as a comb, a coin, a pencil, or a safety pin, that are placed in his or her hand.
- *Graphesthesia.* The patient is asked to recognize letters, numbers, or designs traced on the skin. Using a blunt object, the PT draws an image on the patient's palm, asking the patient to identify the number, letter, or design.
- *Two-point discrimination.* A measure is taken of the smallest distance between two stimuli that can still be perceived by the patient as two distinct stimuli.
- *Equilibrium reactions.* The patient's ability to maintain balance in response to alterations in the body's center of gravity and base of support is tested.
- *Protective reactions.* This tests the patient's ability to stabilize and support the body in response to a displacing stimulus in which the center of gravity exceeds the base of support (e.g., extension of arms to protect against a fall).

☑ KEY POINT

The posterior (dorsal) medial lemniscus tract conveys impulses concerned with well-localized touch and with the sense of movement and position (kinesthesia). It is important in moment-to-moment (temporal) and point-to-point (spatial) discrimination and makes it possible for a person to put a key in a door lock without light or to visualize the position of any part of his or her body without looking.

Neuromeningeal Mobility Testing

The neuromeningeal mobility tests examine for the presence of any abnormalities of the dura, both centrally and peripherally. The PT uses these tests if a dural adhesion or nerve irritation is suspected. (See Chapter 9.) The tests employ a sequential and progressive stretch to the dura until the patient's symptoms are reproduced (**FIGURE 3.13**). Theoretically, if the dura is scarred or inflamed, a lack of extensibility with stretching occurs.[55]

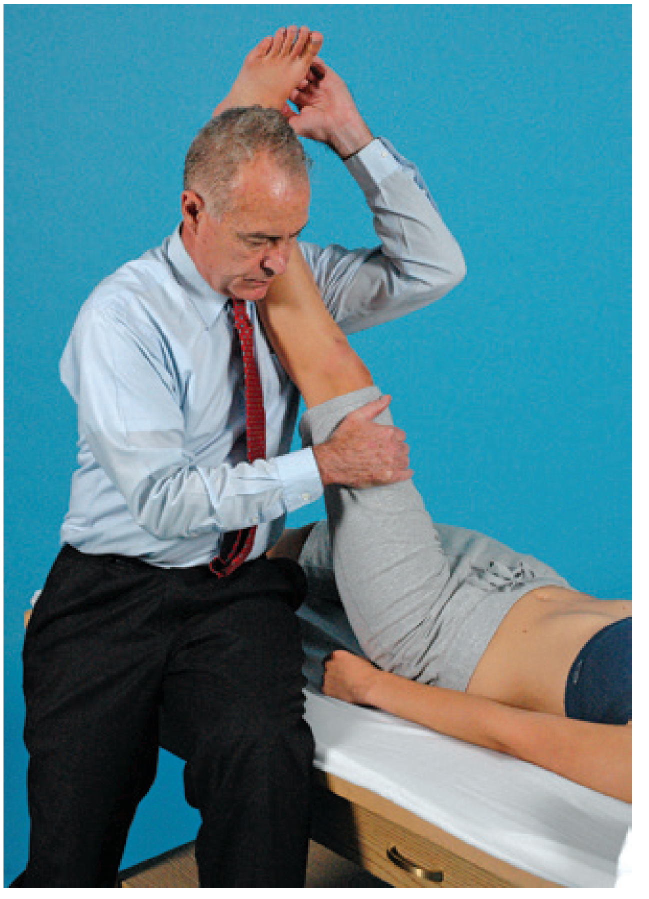


FIGURE 3.13 Dural stretch of the sciatic nerve using the straight leg raise.

Balance Testing

Good balance requires the dynamic integration of multiple sensory inputs, specifically the visual, somatosensory, and vestibular systems. The PT may decide to perform balance testing if, during the history, the patient described symptoms of dizziness, lightheadedness, a sense of impending faint, or poor balance. Balance can be measured using static or dynamic tests. Static balance analyzes an individual's ability to maintain a stationary position within a base of support. Dynamic balance involves the ability to maintain balance while in motion. The methods for assessing balance range from simple to complex and expensive. Static tests include, but are not limited to:

- *Double-leg stance test (DLST).* The patient stands with feet together, arms by the side, and eyes open. An inability to maintain this position without swaying or falling is considered a positive test. If this test does not provoke a sway or fall, the patient is asked to repeat the test with their eyes closed.

- *Single-leg stance test (SLST).* This is similar to the DLST except that the patient stands on one leg, first with eyes open and then with eyes closed. This test can be made more challenging by softening the standing surface (using foam padding).
- *Computerized force plate/force platform.* The postural stress test (PST) is designed to measure a patient's ability to maintain balance during a series of progressive and graded destabilizing forces.
- *The reach test.* This test, which can be performed with the patient seated or standing, involves offering the patient a target that is slightly out of reach to test the diagonal component of reaching.[56]
- *Tinetti performance-oriented mobility assessment (POMA).*[57] This is an easily administered task-oriented test that measures an adult's gait and balance abilities. The test rates the ability of an individual to maintain balance while performing activities of daily living-related tasks. Components include balance and lower and upper extremity strength.
- *The Berg Balance Scale (BBS).*[58] This 14-item scale was developed to measure balance among older people with impairment in balance function by assessing the performance of functional tasks.
- *Timed Up and Go (TUG) test.*[59] Patients are timed (in seconds) when performing the TUG under three conditions:
    1. TUG alone—from sitting in a chair, stand up, walk 3 meters, turn around, walk back, and sit down
    2. TUG cognitive—complete the task while counting backward from a randomly selected number between 20 and 100
    3. TUG manual—complete the task while carrying a full cup of water

The time taken to complete the task is strongly correlated to level of functional mobility (i.e., the more time taken, the more dependent in activities of daily living)

Dynamic balance can be tested using timed agility tests such as the figure-of-eight test,[60,61] carioca or hop test,[62] BESS test for dynamic balance,[63] timed T-band kicks, and timed balance beam walking with eyes open or closed.[64]

Coordination Testing

Coordination is the ability to execute smooth, accurate, controlled motor responses. Efficient motor control includes normal muscle tone and postural response mechanisms, selective movement, and coordination. Abnormalities of coordination are common in motor system disorders. Coordinated movements are characterized by appropriate speed, distance, direction, timing, and muscular tension. Three of the most common tests for coordination are as follows:

- *Finger-nose-finger movements.* The PT holds a finger about 1 meter from the patient's face and asks the patient to use an index finger to touch it repeatedly while alternately touching the nose (**FIGURE 3.14**).
- *Heel-knee-shin test.* The patient is positioned in supine and asked to place the heel of one foot on the knee of the opposite leg and run the heel down the shin across the dorsum of the foot to the great toe.
- *Pronation-supination test.* The patient is positioned in sitting with the arms by the side and the elbows flexed to approximately 90 degrees. The patient is asked to perform supination and pronation of the forearms rapidly.
- *Dorsiflexion-supination test.* The patient is positioned in sitting or in supine. The patient is asked to move the ankles rapidly into dorsiflexion/plantar flexion.
- *Throwing and catching a ball.* The patient is asked to catch and throw balls of different sizes.
- *Tapping foot or hand.* The patient is asked to repeatedly tap the ball of one foot while keeping the heel in contact with the floor or is asked to tap a hand on the knee.

If the patient demonstrates difficulties with these tests, a more in-depth assessment is required.

Upper and Lower Quarter Scanning Examination

The PT uses the scanning examination when there is no history to explain a patient's signs and symptoms, or when the signs and symptoms are unexplainable.

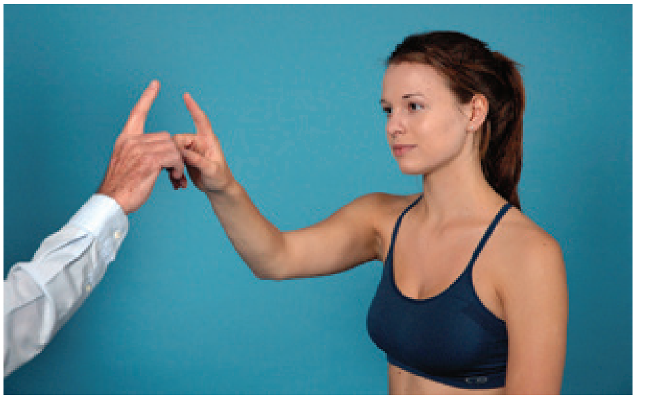


FIGURE 3.14 Finger to nose test.

The clinician must choose which scanning examination to use, based on the presenting signs and symptoms. The upper quarter scanning examination is appropriate for upper thoracic, upper extremity, and cervical problems, whereas the lower quarter scanning examination is typically used for thoracic, lower extremity, and lumbosacral problems.

Upper Quarter Scanning Examination

The following are the items reviewed during the upper quarter scanning exam:

- *Postural assessment.* The patient's posture is observed from the front, back, and the side for evidence of asymmetry.
- *Range of motion.* The patient performs active range of motion of the cervical spine and upper extremities. The clinician applies passive overpressure at the end of the available active range of motion if the patient does not exhibit signs and symptoms.
- *Resistive testing.* In order to screen the various innervation levels, the following resisted tests are completed: cervical rotation (C1) (**FIGURE 3.15**), shoulder elevation (C2–C4) (**FIGURE 3.16**), shoulder abduction (C5) (**FIGURE 3.17**) or shoulder external rotation (**FIGURE 3.18**), elbow flexion (C5–C6) (**FIGURE 3.19**), wrist extension (C6) (**FIGURE 3.20**), elbow extension (C7) (**FIGURE 3.21**), wrist flexion (C7) (**FIGURE 3.22**), thumb extension

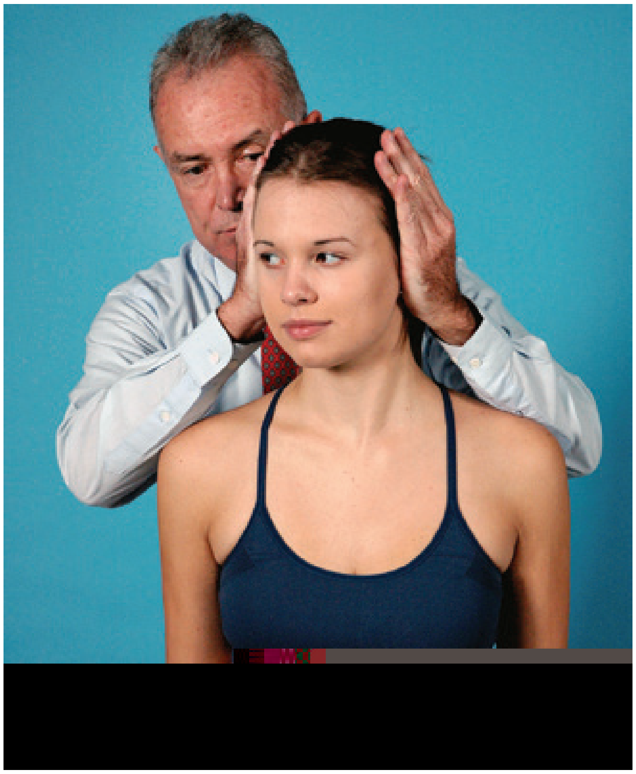


FIGURE 3.15 Resisted cervical rotation.

FIGURE 3.16 Resisted shoulder elevation.

FIGURE 3.17 Resisted shoulder abduction.

FIGURE 3.18 Resisted shoulder external rotation.

(C8) (**FIGURE 3.23**), and finger adduction (T1) (**FIGURE 3.24**).

- *Reflex testing.* Biceps (C5) (**FIGURE 3.25**), brachioradialis (C6) (**FIGURE 3.26**), and triceps (C7) (refer to Figure 3.12).
- *Dermatomes.* (See Figure 3.4.) Posterior head (C2), posterolateral neck (C3), acromioclavicular joint (C4), lateral arm (C5), lateral forearm and thumb (C6), palmar distal phalanx—middle finger (C7), little finger and ulnar border of the hand (C8), and medial forearm (T1).

FIGURE 3.19 Resisted elbow flexion.

FIGURE 3.20 Resisted wrist extension.

FIGURE 3.21 Resisted elbow extension.

FIGURE 3.22 Resisted wrist flexion.

FIGURE 3.23 Resisted thumb extension.

FIGURE 3.24 Resisted finger adduction.

FIGURE 3.25 Biceps reflex testing.

FIGURE 3.26 Brachioradialis reflex.

Lower Quarter Scanning Examination

The following are the items reviewed during the lower quarter scanning exam:

- *Postural assessment*. The patient's posture is observed from the front, back, and the side for evidence of asymmetry.
- *Range of motion*. The patient performs active range of motion of the lumbosacral spine and lower extremities. The clinician applies passive overpressure at the end of the available active range of motion if the patient does not exhibit signs and symptoms.
- *Resistive testing*. In order to screen the various innervation levels, the following resisted tests are completed: heel walking (L4–L5) (**FIGURE 3.27**), toe walking (S1) (**FIGURE 3.28**), straight leg raise (L4–S1) (refer to Figure 3.13), hip flexion (L1–L2) (**FIGURE 3.29**), knee extension (L3–L4) (**FIGURE 3.30**), ankle dorsiflexion (L4–L5) (**FIGURE 3.31**), and great toe extension (L5) (**FIGURE 3.32**).
- *Reflex testing*. Patellar (L4) (**FIGURE 3.33**) and Achilles (S1) (**FIGURE 3.34**).

FIGURE 3.27 Heel walking.

FIGURE 3.28 Toe walking.

FIGURE 3.29 Resisted hip flexion.

FIGURE 3.30 Resisted knee extension.

FIGURE 3.31 Resisted dorsiflexion.

FIGURE 3.32 Resisted great toe extension.

FIGURE 3.33 Patellar reflex.

FIGURE 3.34 Achilles reflex.

- *Dermatomes.* Anterior thigh (L2), middle third of the anterior thigh (L3), patella and medial malleolus (L4), fibular head and dorsum of foot (L5), lateral and plantar aspect of foot (S1), medial aspect of the posterior thigh (S2), and perianal area (S3–S5).

Summary

The nervous system of the human body is unique and extremely complex. When operating normally, the nervous system allows for countless skills to be performed, both in the mind and throughout the body. However, given its complexity, the nervous system is prone to failure from either disease or trauma. Although the PT performs the examination and makes a note of any irregularity in the physical or nervous system, it is important that the PTA be able to recognize signs and symptoms of neurological dysfunction that occur after the initial examination. This recognition can come only from a deep understanding of the anatomic structures within the nervous system and their various functions. It is the responsibility of the PTA to alert the PT to any changes that have occurred in the patient that the PTA feels warrants such communication or communication with the patient's physician.

Learning Portfolio

Case Study

You are completing a progress note on a patient who has a diagnosis of a radial nerve injury and carpal tunnel syndrome involving the right upper extremity.

1. Describe the areas where you would expect to see any sensory changes for each of these conditions.
2. Which muscles might you find to be weak with a radial nerve injury?
3. How would you differentiate between weakness caused by the carpal tunnel syndrome and that caused by the radial nerve injury?

The patient complains to you that the carpal tunnel symptoms appear to be worse first thing in the morning.

4. What might be causing this increase in symptoms during the night?
5. What recommendations would you make to the supervising physical therapist to help alleviate these morning symptoms?

Review Questions

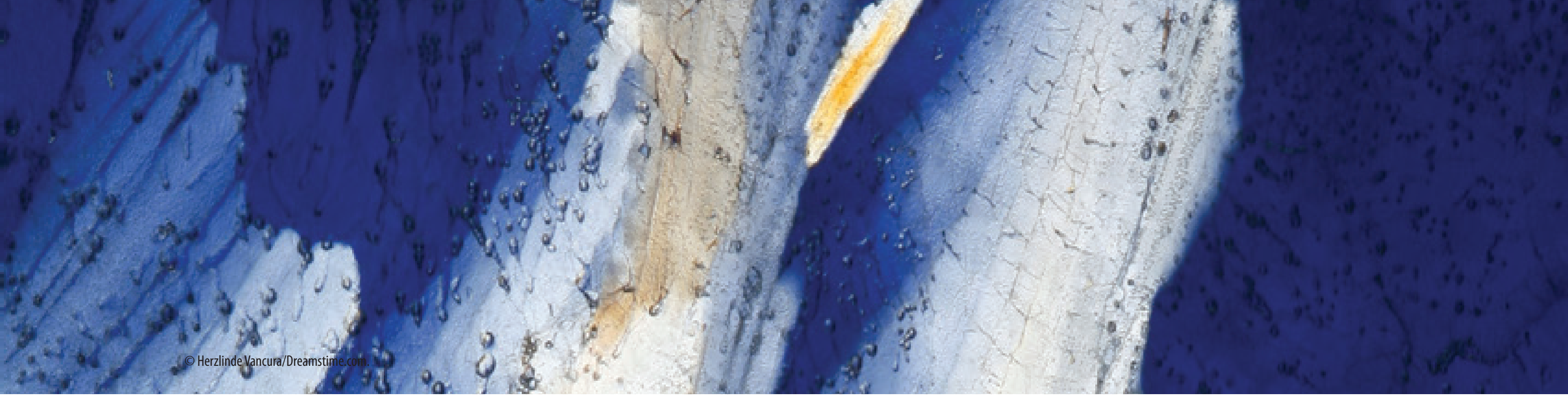
1. The neuron is composed of which of the following?
   a. Axon
   b. Dendrite
   c. Cell body
   d. All of the above
2. The femoral nerve innervates all but which of the following muscles?
   a. Sartorius
   b. Vastus lateralis
   c. Adductor magnus
   d. Pectineus
3. A patient presents with weak quadriceps muscles with a diagnosis of a lumbar disk herniation. You suspect an L3–L4 problem. What other muscle would you expect to be weak?
   a. Sartorius
   b. Adductor magnus
   c. Biceps femoris
   d. Iliopsoas
4. Which of the following would you expect to find in a patient diagnosed with carpal tunnel syndrome (compression of the median nerve under the transverse carpal ligament of the wrist)?
   a. Tingling on the ulnar side of the hand and reports of pain in the hand with rest
   b. Tingling on the radial side of the hand and pain in the hand at night
   c. A loss of peripheral vision
   d. Pain with elbow extension
5. How many pairs of spinal nerves are there?
   a. 32
   b. 31
   c. 33
   d. 24
6. Which nerve roots commonly form the cervical plexus?
7. Which nerve roots commonly form the brachial plexus?
8. Which two cranial nerves have distributions in other regions than just the head and neck?
9. Which nerve innervates the sternocleidomastoid and the trapezius muscles?
10. Which cord of the brachial plexus supplies the radial nerve?
11. What three arm muscles does the musculocutaneous nerve supply?
12. Which peripheral nerve is responsible for stimulating the muscles that produce dorsiflexion?
13. Which peripheral nerve can be trapped in the arcade of Frohse?
14. Which peripheral nerve can be trapped between the two heads of the pronator teres?
15. Which peripheral nerve can be trapped by the ligament of Struthers?
16. Atrophy of the hypothenar eminence could indicate a lesion to which nerve?
17. Which muscles does the suprascapular nerve innervate?

18. Which nerve innervates the serratus anterior?
19. Which nerve innervates the latissimus dorsi muscle?
20. Which muscles are innervated by the superior gluteal nerve?
21. A herniated disk between the C6 and C7 vertebral levels could impinge upon which nerve root level?
22. Injury to the radial nerve in the spiral groove would result in weakness of which group of muscles?
23. Which of the following muscles is *not* innervated by the median nerve?
    a. Abductor pollicis brevis
    b. Flexor pollicis longus
    c. Medial heads of flexor digitorum profundus
    d. Superficial head of flexor pollicis brevis
    e. Pronator quadratus
24. Name the nerve that innervates the first lumbrical muscle in the hand.
25. A patient presents with a burning sensation in the anterolateral aspect of the thigh. Dysfunction of which nerve could lead to these symptoms?
    a. Lateral cutaneous (femoral) nerve of the thigh
    b. Femoral
    c. Obturator
    d. Genitofemoral
    e. Ilioinguinal
26. The saphenous nerve supplies cutaneous sensation to the medial aspect of the leg. From which nerve does the saphenous nerve arise?
    a. Obturator
    b. Deep fibular (peroneal)
    c. Sciatic
    d. Femoral
    e. As a direct branch from the sacral plexus
27. An injury to the deep branch of the peroneal nerve would result in a sensory deficit to which of the following locations?
    a. Medial side of the foot
    b. Lateral side of the foot
    c. Lateral one and one-half toes
    d. Medial border of the sole of the foot
    e. Adjacent dorsal surfaces of the first and second toes
28. Which of the following flexor muscles is *not* innervated by the median nerve?
    a. Flexor carpi radialis
    b. Flexor carpi ulnaris
    c. Palmaris longus
    d. Flexor digitorum superficialis
    e. Flexor pollicis longus
29. Which two muscles does the anterior interosseous branch of the median nerve innervate?
30. All of the following features may be found in muscle spindles *except*:
    a. They require a change in length as well as in the rate of change in order to fire.
    b. They demonstrate two kinds of intrafusal fibers: nuclear bag and nuclear chain fibers.
    c. They are arranged in parallel with the extrafusal fibers of the muscle itself.
    d. They are innervated by one large type Ia fiber that serves both fiber types.
31. Which of the following describes the perception of the position of the extremities in space?
    a. Depth perception
    b. Spatial discrimination
    c. Paresthesias
    d. Proprioception
32. All of the following are examples of the simple stretch reflex *except*:
    a. Knee-jerk reflex
    b. Monosynaptic reflex
    c. Myotatic reflex
    d. Flexor withdrawal reflex
33. A physical therapist assistant working with a patient who has a lower motor neuron injury would expect the patient to present with which of the following?
    a. Flaccidity
    b. A positive Babinski reflex
    c. Clonus
    d. Extensor muscle spasms
34. A PTA working with a patient who has an upper motor neuron injury would expect the patient to present with which of the following?
    a. Flaccidity
    b. A positive Babinski reflex
    c. Clonus
    d. B and C

References

1. Waxman SG. *Correlative Neuroanatomy*, 24th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill; 1996.
2. Winfree CJ. Peripheral nerve injury evaluation and management. *Current Surgery*. 2005; 62:469–76.
3. Spinner RJ, Shin AY, Bishop AT. Advances in the repair of peripheral nerve injury. *Neurosurgery*. 2015; 62 (Suppl 1): 146–51.
4. Lee SK, Wolfe SW. Peripheral nerve injury and repair. *The Journal of the American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons*. 2000; 8:243–52.
5. Grigg P. Properties of sensory neurons innervating synovial joints. *Cells Tissues Organs*. 2001; 169:218–25.
6. Mileusnic MP, Loeb GE. Force estimation from ensembles of Golgi tendon organs. *Journal of Neural Engineering*. 2009; 6:036001.
7. Carrero G. Paresthesia: what causes this sensory phenomenon? *Regional Anesthesia and Pain Medicine*. 2004; 29:69–70.
8. Standring S, Gray H. *Gray's Anatomy: The Anatomical Basis of Clinical Practice*, 40th ed. St. Louis, MO: Churchill Livingstone Elsevier; 2008.
9. Wright A, Zusman M. Neurophysiology of pain and pain modulation. In: Boyling JD, Jull GA, editors. *Grieve's Modern Manual Therapy: The Vertebral Column*. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 2004. p. 155–71.
10. Hodges PW, Smeets RJ. Interaction between pain, movement, and physical activity: short-term benefits, long-term consequences, and targets for treatment. *The Clinical Journal of Pain*. 2015; 31:97–107.
11. Walk D, Poliak-Tunis M. Chronic pain management: an overview of taxonomy, conditions commonly encountered, and assessment. *The Medical Clinics of North America*. 2016; 100:1–16.
12. Butera KA, Fox EJ, George SZ. Toward a transformed understanding: from pain and movement to pain with movement. *Physical Therapy*. 2016; 96:1503–7.
13. Kaye AD, Jones MR, Kaye AM, Ripoll JG, Jones DE, Galan V, et al. Prescription opioid abuse in chronic pain: an updated review of opioid abuse predictors and strategies to curb opioid abuse (Part 2). *Pain Physician*. 2017; 20: S111–33.
14. Vicenzino B. Tendinopathy: Evidence-informed physical therapy clinical reasoning. *The Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2015; 45:816–8.
15. Lluch Girbes E, Duenas L, Barbero M, Falla D, Baert IA, Meeus M, et al. Expanded distribution of pain as a sign of central sensitization in individuals with symptomatic knee osteoarthritis. *Physical Therapy*. 2016; 96:1196–207.
16. Scott A, Backman LJ, Speed C. Tendinopathy: update on pathophysiology. *The Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2015; 45:833–41.
17. Tracey I, Mantyh PW. The cerebral signature for pain perception and its modulation. *Neuron*. 2007; 55:377–91.
18. Edmond SL, Enriquez CS, Millner MH, Nasri-Heir C, Heir GM. Is there an association between fear avoidance beliefs, and pain and disability in patients with orofacial pain? *Journal of Oral Rehabilitation*. 2017; 44(6):426–33.
19. Wakaizumi K, Yamada K, Oka H, Kosugi S, Morisaki H, Shibata M, et al. Fear-avoidance beliefs are independently associated with the prevalence of chronic pain in Japanese workers. *Journal of Anesthesia*. 2017; 31(2):255–62.
20. Lee TH. Zero pain is not the goal. *JAMA*. 2016; 315:1575–7.
21. Sterling M, Jull G, Wright A. The effect of musculoskeletal pain on motor activity and control. *Journal of Pain*. 2001; 2:135–45.
22. Hides JA, Richardson CA, Jull GA. Multifidus muscle recovery is not automatic after resolution of acute, first-episode low back pain. *Spine*. 1996; 21:2763–9.
23. Hodges P, Richardson C. Inefficient muscular stabilisation of the lumbar spine associated with low back pain: A motor control evaluation of transversus abdominis. *Spine*. 1996; 21:2540–650.
24. Voight M, Weider D. Comparative reflex response times of the vastus medialis and the vastus lateralis in normal subjects and subjects with extensor mechanism dysfunction. *The American Journal of Sports Medicine*. 1991; 10:131–7.
25. Dubner R, Ren K. Endogenous mechanisms of sensory modulation. *Pain*. 1999; Suppl 6:S45–53.
26. Donnarumma P, Presaghi F, Tarantino R, Fragale M, Rullo M, Delfini R. The impact of pelvic balance, physical activity, and fear-avoidance on the outcome after decompression and instrumented fusion for degenerative lumbar stenosis. *European Spine Journal*. 2017; 26:428–33.
27. Linton SJ, Shaw WS. Impact of psychological factors in the experience of pain. *Physical Therapy*. 2011; 91:700–11.
28. Voight ML, Cook G, Blackburn TA. Functional lower quarter exercises through reactive neuromuscular training. In: Bandy WD, editor. *Current Trends for the Rehabilitation of the Athlete - Home Study Course*. La Crosse, WI: Sports Physical Therapy Section, APTA, Inc.; 1997.
29. Brazis PW, Lee AG. Binocular vertical diplopia. *Mayo Clinic Proceedings*. 1998; 73:55–66.
30. Eker A, Kaymakamzade B, Akpinar S. Treatment of Wallenberg's Syndrome related dysphagia with pyridostigmine. *Acta Neurologica Belgica*. 2017; 117:329–31.
31. Peeler C, Prasad S. Cervical arteriovenous malformation causing Horner's Syndrome. *Ophthalmology*. 2017; 124:286.
32. Langlois JA, Rutland-Brown W, Wald MM. The epidemiology and impact of traumatic brain injury: a brief overview. *The Journal of Head Trauma Rehabilitation*. 2006; 21:375–8.
33. McCrory P, Meeuwisse WH, Aubry M, Cantu RC, Dvorak J, Echemendia RJ, et al. Consensus statement on concussion in sport: the 4th International Conference on Concussion in Sport, Zurich, November 2012. *Journal of Athletic Training*. 2013; 48:554–75.
34. Emery C, Kang J, Shrier I, Goulet C, Hagel B, Benson B, et al. Risk of injury associated with bodychecking experience among youth hockey players. *Canadian Medical Association Journal*. 2011; 183:1249–56.
35. Schneider KJ. Sport-related concussion: optimizing treatment through evidence-informed practice. *The Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2016; 46:613–6.
36. Leddy JJ, Sandhu H, Sodhi V, Baker JG, Willer B. Rehabilitation of concussion and post-concussion syndrome. *Sports Health*. 2012; 4:147–54.
37. Mulligan I, Boland M, Payette J. Prevalence of neurocognitive and balance deficits in collegiate aged football players without clinically diagnosed concussion. *The Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2012; 42:625–32.
38. Lau BC, Kontos AP, Collins MW, Mucha A, Lovell MR. Which on-field signs/symptoms predict protracted recovery from sport-related concussion among high school football players? *The American Journal of Sports Medicine*. 2011; 39:2311–8.

39. Boake C, McCauley SR, Levin HS, Pedroza C, Contant CF, Song JX, et al. Diagnostic criteria for postconcussional syndrome after mild to moderate traumatic brain injury. *The Journal of Neuropsychiatry and Clinical Neurosciences*. 2005; 17:350–6.
40. Silverberg ND, Iverson GL. Is rest after concussion "the best medicine?": recommendations for activity resumption following concussion in athletes, civilians, and military service members. *The Journal of Head Trauma Rehabilitation*. 2013; 28:250–9.
41. Leddy J, Hinds A, Sirica D, Willer B. The role of controlled exercise in concussion management. *PM&R Journal*. 2016; 8:S91–100.
42. Leddy JJ, Baker JG, Willer B. Active rehabilitation of concussion and post-concussion syndrome. *Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation Clinics of North America*. 2016; 27:437–54.
43. Lau BC, Collins MW, Lovell MR. Cutoff scores in neurocognitive testing and symptom clusters that predict protracted recovery from concussions in high school athletes. *Neurosurgery*. 2012; 70:371–9; [discussion 9].
44. Jull G, Trott P, Potter H, Zito G, Niere K, Shirley D, et al. A randomized controlled trial of exercise and manipulative therapy for cervicogenic headache. *Spine*. 2002; 27:1835–43; [discussion 43].
45. Cantu RC. Posttraumatic retrograde and anterograde amnesia: pathophysiology and implications in grading and safe return to play. *Journal of Athletic Training*. 2001; 36: 244–8.
46. Halstead ME. Pharmacologic therapies for pediatric concussions. *Sports Health*. 2016; 8:50–2.
47. Council MR. Nerve injuries committee: results of nerve suture. In: Seddon HJ, editor. *Peripheral Nerve Injuries*. London: Her Majesty's Stationery Office; 1954.
48. Wang Y, Sunitha M, Chung KC. How to measure outcomes of peripheral nerve surgery. *Hand Clinics*. 2013; 29:349–61.
49. Rosen B, Lundborg G. A model instrument for the documentation of outcome after nerve repair. *The Journal of Hand Surgery*. 2000; 25:535–43.
50. Moberg E. Objective methods for determining the functional value of sensibility in the hand. *Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery*. 1958; 40A:454–76.
51. Sollerman C, Ejeskar A. Sollerman hand function test: a standardised method and its use in tetraplegic patients. *Scandinavian Journal of Plastic and Reconstructive Surgery and Hand Surgery*. 1995; 29:167–76.
52. Gilman S. The physical and neurologic examination. In: Gilman S, editor. *Clinical Examination of the Nervous System*. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2000. p. 15–34.
53. Gilman S. The mental status examination. In: Gilman S, editor. *Clinical Examination of the Nervous System*. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2000. p. 35–64.
54. Meadows J. *Orthopedic Differential Diagnosis in Physical Therapy*. New York: McGraw-Hill; 1999.
55. Butler DS. *Mobilization of the Nervous System*. New York, NY: Churchill Livingstone; 1992.
56. Donahoe B, Turner D, Worrell T. The use of functional reach as a measurement of balance in healthy boys and girls aged 5–15. *Physical Therapy*. 1993; 73:S71.
57. Tinetti ME. Performance-oriented assessment of mobility problems in elderly patients. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society*. 1986; 34:119–26.
58. Berg KO, Wood-Dauphinee SL, Williams JI, Maki B. Measuring balance in the elderly: validation of an instrument. *anadian Journal of Public Health*. 1992; 83(Suppl 2):S7–11.
59. Podsiadlo D, Richardson S. The timed "Up & Go": a test of basic functional mobility for frail elderly persons. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society*. 1991; 39:142–8.
60. Fisher A, Wietlisbach S, Wilberger J. Adult performance on three tests of equilibrium. *The American Journal of Occupational Therapy*. 1988; 42:30–5.
61. Newton R. Review of tests of standing balance abilities. *Brain Injury*. 1992; 3:335–43.
62. Irrgang JJ, Harner C. Recent advances in ACL rehabilitation: clinical factors. *Journal of Sport Rehabilitation*. 1997; 6: 111–24.
63. Trulock SC. *A Comparison of Static, Dynamic and Functional Methods of Objective Balance Assessment* [Masters]. Chapel Hill, NC: The University of North Carolina; 1996.
64. Guskiewicz KM. Impaired postural stability: regaining balance. In: Prentice WE, Voight ML, editors. *Techniques in Musculoskeletal Rehabilitation*. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2001. p. 125–50.


© Herzlinde Vancura/Dreamstime.com

CHAPTER 4

Tissue Injury and Repair

CHAPTER OBJECTIVES

At the completion of this chapter, the reader will be able to:

1. Outline the pathophysiology of the healing process for the various musculoskeletal tissues.
2. Identify techniques that the physical therapist assistant can use to aid in the healing process.
3. Describe the different stages of healing for the various musculoskeletal tissues.
4. List the four clinical signs of inflammation that occur in the inflammatory phase of healing.
5. Discuss the importance of the application of controlled stresses during the healing process.
6. List the detrimental effects that immobilization can have on tissues of the musculoskeletal system.
7. Describe some of the surgical options available for musculoskeletal tissue injuries.

Overview

The healing process is an intricate phenomenon that occurs following an injury or disease. One of the contributing factors to maintaining musculoskeletal health is the ability of the biological tissues to withstand a wide range of external and internal stresses and strains that are either generated or resisted by the human body during the course of daily activities or recreation. Examples of the external stresses include gravity, body weight, and friction. Examples of internal forces include muscle tension, and the connective tissue restrictions that occur at the extremes of joint motions. Maintaining this health is a delicate balance, because insufficient, excessive, or repetitive stresses can prove harmful. Injuries to the musculoskeletal system (**TABLE 4.1**) can result from a wide variety of causes. The purpose of this chapter is to describe how the major components of the musculoskeletal system can be injured, the physiology of healing for each, and how the physical therapist assistant (PTA) can help in the healing process.

Tissue Healing

Tissue healing can be viewed as an adaptive life process in response to both intrinsic and extrinsic stimuli.[1] Research continues to provide an increasing amount of information about the biocellular events that occur as a result of tissue injury, as well as the factors that interfere with the natural progression of these events. After trauma or disease, the body attempts to heal itself through a predictable series of overlapping events which begin shortly after the initial injury (**FIGURE 4.1**). Whereas simplification of the complex events of healing into separate categories may facilitate understanding of the phenomenon, in reality these events occur as an amalgamation of different reactions, both spatially and temporally.[2]

TABLE 4.1 Musculoskeletal Dysfunctions: Terms and Definitions

Term	Definition
Strain	An injury to the musculotendinous unit in which the muscle fibers tear as a result of over-stretching, overexertion, or overuse.
Sprain	An injury to a ligament due to stress or over-stretch
Dislocation	A joint injury that force the ends of bones out of position with resultant damage to surrounding soft tissue structures
Subluxation	A joint injury where there is an incomplete or partial dislocation of the ends of bones in a joint
Synovitis	Inflammation of a synovial membrane of a joint
Hemarthrosis	Bleeding into joint spaces (articular bleeding), usually due to disease or severe trauma
Ganglion	A sac-like cyst or swelling that is formed from the tissue that lines a joint or tendon. They most often occur at the wrist.
Contusion	A region of injured soft tissue or skin in which blood capillaries have been ruptured. Commonly referred to as a bruise
Contracture	Permanent adaptive shortening of skin and musculotendinous tissues, usually in response to prolonged hypertonic spasticity.
Adhesion	Fibrous bands that form between soft tissues and organs, often as a result of trauma or injury during surgery.

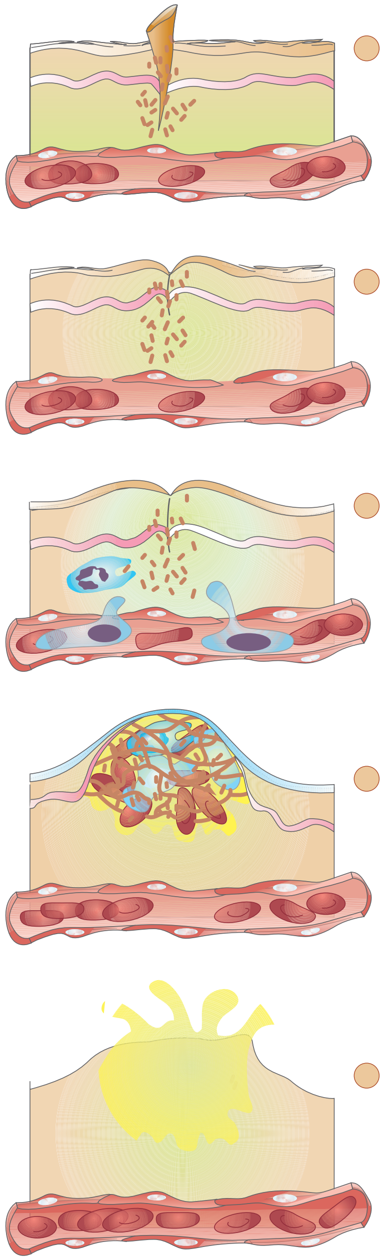
Data from Schrepfer R: Soft tissue injury, repair, and management, in Kisner C, Colby LA (eds): *Therapeutic Exercise: Foundations and Techniques* (ed 5). Philadelphia, FA Davis, 2002, pp 295–308.

Three phases of healing are commonly recognized: Inflammatory (Acute) Stage, Proliferative (Subacute) Stage, and Remodeling Stage.

Inflammatory (Acute) Stage

Following an injury to a musculoskeletal tissue, the cellular and plasma components of blood and lymph enter the wound. Capillary blood flow is disrupted, causing hypoxia to the area. This initial period of vasoconstriction, which lasts 5 to 10 minutes, prompts a period of vasodilation, and the extravasation of blood constituents.[3] Extravasated blood contains platelets, which secrete substances that form a clot to prevent further bleeding and inhibit infection, clean dead tissue, and nourish cells. Polymorphonuclear (PMN) leukocytes, which are white blood cells (WBCs) responsible for cleaning the wound site, are the first cells to the injury site. Monocytes are WBCs that migrate into tissues and develop into macrophages, providing immunological defenses against many infectious organisms. The PMN leukocytes must be replaced by larger cells and macrophages for the wound healing to progress normally. Inflammation is mediated by chemotactic substances, which are bodily cells that direct their movements according to certain chemicals in their environment, including anaphylatoxins that attract neutrophils and monocytes.

- *Neutrophils.* White blood cells of the PMN leukocyte subgroup that express and release cytokines, which in turn intensify inflammatory reactions by several other cell types. The function of neutrophils is to bind to microorganisms, internalize them, and kill them, thereby controlling the spread of infection.
- *Monocytes.* White blood cells of the mononuclear leukocyte subgroup that migrate into tissues and develop into macrophages and provide immunological defenses against many infectious organisms. Macrophages serve to orchestrate a "long-term" response (innate and adaptive immunity) to injured cells after the acute response.[4]



The white blood cells of the inflammatory stage serve to clean the wound debris of foreign substances, increase vascular permeability, and promote fibroblast activity.[4] The extent and severity of the inflammatory response depend on the size and the type of the injury, the tissue involved, and the vascularity of that tissue. Four systems work together during this phase:

- *Kinin system*. Causes vasodilation and increased permeability, and stimulates pain receptors. The kinin cascade handles the transformation of an inactive enzyme called kallikrein, which is present in both blood and tissue, to its active form, bradykinin. Bradykinin also contributes to the production of tissue exudate through the promotion of vasodilation and increased vessel wall permeability.

- *Clotting system.* Leads to fibrin deposition and clot formation.
- *Fibrinolytic system.* Leads to the synthesis of plasmin, which functions to degrade/dissolve the fibrin clot and to trigger activation of the complement system.
- *Complement system.* Produces a variety of proteins with activities essential to healing. The complement cascade involves 20 or more proteins that circulate in an inactive form throughout the blood. After tissue injury, activation of the complement cascade produces a variety of proteins with activities essential to healing.

The complete removal of the wound debris marks the end of the inflammatory process. This usually occurs after 4 to 6 days unless the insult is perpetuated. Because of the occurrence of a variety of vascular and other physiological responses, clinical findings during the inflammatory (acute) stage include swelling, redness and increased warmth of the affected area, and impairment or loss of function. The redness is caused by the dilation of small blood vessels in the area of injury. If unexpected color changes occur such as paleness (pallor), rashes, or streaking, the PTA must report these findings to the PT, as these can be signs of infection or a blood vessel occlusion (pallor).

☑ KEY POINT

Given the fact that superficial skin changes can be harder to detect in darkly pigmented skin, the PTA must be exposed to a variety of subjects of different body types and skin tones during the education process.

The swelling (edema) is due to an increase in the permeability of the venules, plasma proteins, and leukocytes, which leak into the site of injury.[5,6] Induration (hardness) could be a sign of a superficial thrombophlebitis and should be reported to the PT. (See Chapter 5.) The normal, localized edema that occurs as part of the inflammatory stage of healing should not be confused with systemic or peripheral edema. The assessment of edema is discussed in Chapter 6.

Proliferative (Subacute) Stage

This stage usually occurs at the time of the initial injury and overlaps the inflammatory stage. By this stage, the active effusion and local erythema of the inflammatory stage are no longer present clinically; however, residual effusion may still be present at this time and resist resorption.[7,8] Characteristic changes during this stage include capillary growth and granulation tissue formation, fibroblast proliferation with collagen synthesis, and increased macrophage and mast cell activity. This stage is responsible for the development of wound tensile strength. After the wound base is free of necrotic tissue, the body begins to work to close the wound. The connective tissue in healing wounds is composed primarily of collagen (types I and III). The proliferation of collagen results from the actions of the fibroblasts that have been attracted to the area and stimulated to multiply by growth factors. This proliferation first produces fibrinogen and then fibrin, which eventually becomes organized into a honeycomb matrix that walls off the injured site.[9] The wound matrix functions as glue to hold the wound edges together, giving it some mechanical protection, while preventing the spread of infection. Until the provisional extracellular matrix is replaced with a collagenous matrix, however, the wound matrix has a low tensile strength and is vulnerable to breakdown. The collagenous matrix facilitates angiogenesis by providing time and protection to new and friable vessels. The process of neovascularization during this phase provides a granular appearance to the wound as a result of the formation of loops of capillaries and the migration of macrophages, fibroblasts, and endothelial cells into the wound matrix. Once an abundant collagen matrix is formed in the wound, the fibroblasts stop producing collagen, and fibroblast-rich granulation tissue is replaced by a relatively acellular scar, marking the end of this stage.

This fibrous tissue repair process can last anywhere from 5 to 15 days to several weeks, depending on the type of tissue and the extent of damage. Clinically, this stage is characterized by a decrease in pain, minimal to no swelling, and an increase in pain-free active and passive range of motion (ROM). During passive ROM, the subjective report of pain is synchronous with tissue resistance. Although the pain-free ROM may be increased in this phase, it is still not within normal limits, and stress applied to an injured structure produces pain, although the pain experienced is lessened.[7,8] The decreased ROM is due to the effects of immobilization, pain, muscle inhibition, and weakening of the tissues that occurred during the inflammatory phase. It seems that the fibroblasts need to be guided during this recovery period so that the replaced collagen fibers are laid down along the lines of stress. Controlled stresses must be applied to new scar tissue to help prevent it from shortening. The use of gentle movements to the area provides natural tensions for the healing tissues and contributes to producing a stronger repair. The criteria to consider for advancement from this phase include adequate pain control and tissue healing, near-normal ROM, and tolerance for strengthening.[10]

Remodeling Stage

The remodeling phase involves a conversion of the initial healing tissue to scar tissue. This lengthy period of contraction, tissue remodeling, and gradual increasing of tensile strength in the wound can last for up to 1 year. From day 21 to day 60 there is a predominance of fibroblasts that are easily remodeled.[11] Fibroblasts are responsible for the synthesis, deposition, and remodeling of the extracellular matrix. Following the deposition of granulation tissue, some fibroblasts are transformed into myofibroblasts, which congregate at the wound margins and start pulling the edges inward, reducing the size of the wound. The increase in collagen types I and III and other aspects of the remodeling process are responsible for wound contraction and visible scar formation. Epithelial cells migrate from the wound edges and continue to migrate until similar cells from the opposite side are met. This contracted tissue, or scar tissue, is functionally inferior to original tissue and is a barrier to diffused oxygen and nutrients.[11] The remodeling time is influenced by factors that affect the density and activity level of the fibroblasts, including the amount of time to mobilize, the stresses placed on the tissue, the location of the lesion, and the quality of the vascular supply.[12] Imbalances in collagen synthesis and degradation during this phase of healing may result in hypertrophic scarring or keloid formation with superficial wounds.

☑ KEY POINT

A *keloid scar* is a result of an overgrowth of granulation tissue at the site of a healed skin injury. The overgrowth extends beyond the boundaries of an injury, damaging healthy tissues. Keloids are firm, rubbery lesions or shiny, fibrous nodules, and they can vary from pink to flesh-colored or red to dark brown in color. A *hypertrophic scar* can occur during the healing process when collagen production greatly exceeds collagen lysis. A hypertrophic scar is raised but remains within the borders of the original injury.

If the healing tissues are kept immobile, the fibrous repair is weak as there are no forces influencing the collagen; if left untreated, the scar formed is less than 20 percent of its original size.[13] Contraction of the scar, due to cross-linking of the collagen fibers and bundles, and the formation of adhesions between the immature collagen and surrounding tissues can cause scar hypomobility. In areas where the skin is loose and mobile, this creates minimal effect. However, in areas such as the back of the hand where there is no extra skin, wound contracture can have a significant effect on function. Despite the presence of an intact epithelium at 3 to 4 weeks after the injury, the tensile strength of the wound has been measured at approximately 25 percent of its normal value. Several months later, only 70 to 80 percent of the strength may be restored.[14,15] This would appear to demonstrate that the remodeling process may last many months or even years, making it extremely important to continue applying controlled stresses in the form of exercise to the tissue long after healing appears to have occurred.[14,15]

☑ KEY POINT

Scarring that occurs parallel to the line of force of a structure is less vulnerable to reinjury than a scar that is perpendicular to those lines of force.[14,15]

The criteria for considering advancement to the chronic stage includes no complaints of pain; full, pain-free ROM; good flexibility and balance; and strength of 75 to 80 percent, or greater, compared with the uninvolved side.[10]

Tissue Specific Responses to Injury

Although the muscle, tendon, and ligament tissues generally follow the various stages described previously, they each have their own unique characteristics, and knowledge of these differences is essential when treating the different types of musculoskeletal injury. Injuries to the articular cartilage, fibrocartilage, and bone are described separately, as they typically have a low potential for self-healing and often require surgical intervention before being encountered by the PTA.

Muscle and Tendon Injuries

Muscle and tendon injuries can be categorized according to the cause of injury:

- *Direct.* An injury that is likely to be a result of contact with another player, an object, or the ground (e.g., a contusion)

- *Indirect.* An injury that is likely to be a result of physical injury without contact (e.g., hamstring strain)
- *Overuse.* An injury that is likely to be a result of continual impact on tendon or bone leading to detrimental wear and tear and eventual breakdown (e.g., a tendinopathy such as tennis elbow)

Muscle Injuries

Muscle strains can be classified according to their severity as follows:[16,17]

- *Mild (first-degree) strain.* This type involves a tear of a few muscle fibers with minor swelling and local tenderness. Also known as grade I injuries, these are associated with no or minimal loss of strength and restriction of movement. Local tenderness may be present, which is increased when stress is applied to the structure. Patients with a grade I strain usually can continue normal activities as much as possible, but should be monitored for exacerbation of the existing injury.
- *Moderate (second-degree) strain.* This type (also known as grade II) involves greater damage to the muscle and a definite loss of strength. Patients with grade II injuries have pain on activity that often prevents further participation. The pain can be moderate to severe and is often associated with some loss of function and joint stability. Grade II strains typically require 3 to 28 days of rehabilitation.[18]
- *Severe (third-degree) strain.* This type (grade III) involves a tear extending across the whole muscle belly. Grade III strains are characterized by severe pain or loss of function. Whether pain increases when stress is applied to the structure depends on the integrity of the remaining tissue; for example, there may be no pain in cases of a complete tear. Although grade I and II muscle strains are treated conservatively, surgical intervention is often necessary for grade III injuries.[19] Healing of grade III strains can require up to 3 months of rehabilitation.

Muscle damage can occur during the prolonged immobility of hospitalization or from external sources such as mechanical injury. One of the potential consequences of muscle injury is atrophy. The amount of muscle atrophy that occurs depends on the level of usage of the muscle prior to bed rest and the function of the muscle.[20] For example, antigravity muscles tend to have a greater potential for atrophy than antagonist muscles. Broadly speaking, there are three phases in the healing process of an injured muscle: the destruction phase, the repair phase, and the remodeling phase:[21]

- *Destruction.* This phase describes the mechanism of injury. The extent of the destruction of skeletal muscle damage varies, depending on the initiating cause.
- *Repair.* This phase usually involves three steps: (1) hematoma formation, (2) matrix formation, and (3) collagen formation. During the first week of healing, the injury site is the weakest point of the muscle–tendon unit. This phase also includes regeneration of the striated muscle, production of a connective tissue scar, and capillary ingrowth. The immature connective tissue scar is adaptable for up to 2 months and then becomes less changeable for up to 14 weeks. During this adaptable period, the scar tissue can become more organized and oriented when specific lines of directional stress (stretching) are applied. (See Chapter 12.)
- *Remodeling.* In this phase, the regenerated muscle matures and contracts with the reorganization of the scar tissue. The tensile strength of the healing muscle tissue increases over time (**TABLE 4.2**).

Skeletal muscle has considerable regenerative capabilities, and the process of skeletal muscle regeneration after injury is a well-studied cascade of events.[14,15,22–24]

Tendon Injuries

Tendon injuries are among the most common overuse injuries. Four major types are recognized:[25]

- *Tendinopathy.* The term *tendinopathy* replaced the term *tendinitis* in the late 1990s, although both terms are typically used as generic descriptors

TABLE 4.2 Tensile Strength of Healing Muscle Tissue Over Time

Time Period	Scar Characteristics
5 days	New scar is only 10 percent of its maximum strength
40 days	Scar is at 40 percent of its maximum strength
60 days	Scar is at 70 percent of its maximum strength
12 months	Scar is at 100 percent of its maximum strength

for pain/swelling of an injured tendon. The reason for this switch is that, by definition, tendinitis implies that there is an inflammatory process in the tendon. Because the histological presence of inflammation remains a controversial subject when discussing tendon pathology, tendinopathy, which is a less specific label, is therefore more appropriate until more is known about the actual pathology. One of the reasons for the controversy may be the difference in the morphology of different tendons. For example, the Achilles tendon is round and distinct from surrounding structures, whereas the supraspinatus tendon is flat and wide and blends into the glenohumeral joint capsule.[26] The mechanism of injury for a given tendinopathy can vary from region to region, and from patient to patient. Tendons and their insertions are rarely loaded purely with tension; although tensile overload may be the dominant mechanism for many tendinopathies, there is often compression of the tendon as well, either internally (e.g., one fascicle or bundle of fibers against another) or against external structures (paratendon, retinaculum, or bone).[25] The combination of tension and compression results in shearing and friction. For example, the common extensor tendons of the wrist and fingers at the elbow may be injured not only by repetitive tensile loading, but also by shearing forces against the capitellum with rotation.[25,27] Finally, a tendon injury may be precipitated by a period of relative inactivity followed by a sudden increase in loading, because a period of inactivity can lead to a large and rapid loss of structural organization and mechanical properties.[28] Common sites of tendinopathy include the rotator cuff of the shoulder (e.g., supraspinatus), the bicipital tendon, the origin of the wrist extensors (e.g., lateral epicondylitis, tennis elbow) and flexors (e.g., medial epicondylitis) at the elbow, the patellar and popliteal tendons and iliotibial band at the knee, the origin of the anterior tibialis tendon in the leg (i.e., shin splints), and the Achilles tendon at the heel. Tendinopathy most commonly is caused by overuse and can result in pain and loss of function. In specific instances (i.e., calcific tendinopathy of the rotator cuff), calcium can be deposited along the course of the tendon. The cause of calcium deposition within the rotator cuff tendon is not entirely understood. Different ideas have been suggested, including blood supply and aging of the tendon, but the evidence to support these hypotheses is not conclusive. A different aspect of vascularity explored with tendinopathy is neovascularization, where new vessels are formed within the tendon, but which are considered abnormal and presumed to indicate tendon pathology.[26] However, there is limited evidence for a relationship between neovascularization and pain or clinical prognosis.[26] Finally, an association between elevated body mass index (BMI) and increased risk of tendinopathy appears to hold true both for lower extremity tendons (Achilles, patellar) and upper extremity tendons (rotator cuff, common wrist extensor tendon of the elbow) although the biological mechanisms for this have not yet been established.[29]

- *Tendinosis.* The term *tendinosis* is used to describe chronic midportion tendon pathology, but is also used by some in preference to tendinitis to shift the focus away from inflammation. This is because in end-stage tendinopathy there is absent or minimal inflammation because the underlying pathology is degenerative.[30] Tendinosis is characterized by hypercellularity with atypical fibroblast and endothelial cell proliferation, together with neovascularization. There also is a loss of the longitudinal collagen fibers, demarcation between the collagen bundles, relative expansion of the tendon, increased water content, thickening of the tendon, and a higher ratio of collagen types III to I.[30–32]
- *Tenosynovitis.* This term refers specifically to pathology of a fully developed synovial sheath (e.g., finger flexors/extensors). It typically presents with acute swelling, with or without crepitus and triggering.
- *Paratendonitis or peritendinitis*. These terms are used to describe involvement of the paratendon, alone or in combination with tendinosis. The clinical presentation of paratendonitis is often similar to that of tendinosis and the two can occur together.

A tendon disorder can be diagnosed clinically in a similar fashion as a muscle injury because it is characterized by the location and distribution of pain and the aggravating factors—increased pain with greater loading. The grade of the injury or the type of injury (tendinopathy versus tendinosis) is more difficult to determine. There has been considerable debate on the clinical utility of imaging in tendinopathy in terms of accuracy, sensitivity, and validity. Although radiographs and computed tomography (CT) scanning have been used to image tendons, ultrasound and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) are the preferred imaging modalities. (See Chapter 6.) However, conventional imaging modalities can only classify the tendon as abnormal or normal and often have a poor correlation with the presence of pain and pain severity.[33] Despite the poor relationship between pathologic changes and the presence of pain and local tissue changes, the use of imaging in visualizing these changes may be important as a prognostic tool.[33] For example, structural disorganization observed on imaging should be considered as part of the respective profile for tendinopathy.[33]

☑ KEY POINT

Certain medications are now known to play a role in causing or exacerbating tendinopathy. These include statins, fluoroquinolones (a class of synthetic antimicrobial drugs), and corticosteroids.[25] In addition, a number of medical conditions are associated with tendinopathies, including rheumatoid disease, diabetes, tumors, infections, psoriasis, and gout.

Tendons are more viscous or ductile at low rates of loading, and consequently, can absorb more energy compared to higher loading rates.[34] (See Chapter 2.) In contrast, at high rates of loading tendons become more brittle and absorb less energy, but they are more effective at transferring loads.[34] Therefore, tendon load can be increased in two ways when prescribing exercise: by the external load or by the speed of movement—increasing the amount of resistance or increasing the speed of the exercise.[35]

Without proper rehabilitation guidance to address potentially related pathomechanics, many individuals with tendinopathy are caught in a cycle of chronic and acute-on-chronic pain as they attempt to return to activity with a poorly healed and deconditioned tendon, leaving risk factors and root causes, including factors related to the kinetic chain, unaddressed.[25,36] As tendinopathy predominately develops from excessive compression (e.g., the supraspinatus tendon), tensile load (e.g., the Achilles tendon), or a combination, the goal of rehabilitation is to decrease pain and restore the tendon to its optimal length and cellularity. An understanding of the four phases of healing is important:[37]

1. *Clotting phase*. This occurs immediately after injury and is usually completed within 5 minutes but may take up to 48 hours.
2. *Inflammatory phase*. This phase generally lasts about a week but may persist much longer if acute treatment mismanagement occurs (e.g., inadequate immobilization, additional trauma, poor adherence to ice treatments and medications).
3. *Proliferative phase*. This phase typically begins around day 5 or 6 as long as the duration of inflammation during the inflammatory phase is kept to a minimum. It is during this phase, which can last 4 to 6 weeks or more, that the formation of new type III collagen by fibroblasts is accentuated. The greatest rate of collagen formation and cross-linking occurs during days 7 through 14. Tendon to bone healing is evidenced at 6 weeks.
4. *Remodeling phase*. This phase typically starts around day 20 and can last up to a year or longer.

So, as a general rule, the intervention should promote repair/remodeling rather than further injury/inflammation, while gradually enhancing the tendon's ability to withstand compressive and tensile loads. For example, in the acutely painful tendon, the intervention usually commences with cryotherapy and a reduction or complete removal of any offending activities (unloading) followed by the introduction of appropriate and graduated reloading exercises. Cryotherapy is primarily used for analgesic effect in the early stages, but caution must be used as cold also counteracts the neovascularization process.[30] The graduated exercise progression must be tendon, activity, and movement impairment specific with the use of slow and progressively more demanding activities.[26] The progression can be symptom-guided, symptom-modified, using alternation between compressive versus tensile loads, and focusing on movement competency in such a way that optimally loads the tendon.[38] The most challenging and somewhat speculative aspect of the management of tendinopathy is whether the aim should be the prevention of pain or whether provoking the pain aids in the healing process. The most common symptoms of Achilles tendinopathy are pain and stiffness, but allowing the patient to experience pain during rehabilitation appears to have no negative effect on recovery.[39] In fact, permitting pain may be necessary to ensure that the Achilles tendon load is sufficient to create meaningful adaptive changes in the tendon.[40] Most authors agree that pain and stiffness within 2 to 48 hours following training (notably the next morning) are to be monitored, and, if worse, may be indicative of overload and require commensurate modulation of the rehabilitation loads, rather than cessation.[38] It must be remembered that patients who have had painful tendinopathy for an extended period may have developed central sensitization with hyperalgesia and allodynia.[41,42] (See Chapter 3.) In these cases, the patient must be educated so that they can understand the correct amount of pain allowed during and after exercise. This is generally no more than 6 out of 10 on a generic 0 to 10 pain scale. Typically, isometric exercises are introduced initially and then concentric exercises as the pain subsides. It was once believed beneficial to give all patients with tendinopathy an eccentric exercise program from the outset, but this theory has largely abated. That is not to say that eccentric exercises should not be used; instead, they should be introduced at the stage when it is necessary to reinstate the energy storage/return capacity of the musculotendinous complex before moving to complex sport-specific tasks.[38] The rationale for introducing eccentric exercise when appropriate is the need for the tendon strain to exceed habitual use, increase its ability to tolerate progressively higher load in the later stages of intervention, and preferentially, target the tendon as opposed to the muscle.[26] The eccentric exercises for the lower extremities are typically performed slowly and through the full range of motion (e.g., maximal tendon excursion). In the upper extremities, eccentric exercises are not always used because the effects of eccentric exercise in upper extremity tendinopathy are less investigated than those in the lower extremity.

Finally, although tendinopathy is often placed in the overuse category, it is important to consider the causative factor of "wrong use" or incorrect movement strategies.[26] These movement incompetencies or variabilities should be analyzed at the joints directly related to the tendinopathy and at the neighboring joints and trunk.[26] For example, the results of several studies focusing on the relationship between jump biomechanics and patellar tendinopathy suggest that individuals with patellar tendinopathy have a less upright position (more hip and knee flexion) at initial contact in landing.[25,43]

Nonconservative approaches for tendinopathy include:[30]

- *Corticosteroids*. Corticosteroids can affect synthesis of extracellular matrix (ECM), collagen production and deposition, scar formation, and tenocyte proliferation and viability.
- *Aprotinin injection*. Aprotinin is a strong inhibitor of matrix metalloproteinase (MMPs), a group of enzymes that are responsible for the degradation of most ECM proteins during growth and normal tissue turnover.
- *Sclerosing injection*. Sclerosing injections use a chemical irritant that targets neovascularization and the accompanying nerves.
- *Platelet-rich plasma injection*. Although these injections have shown some good outcomes, there are no treatment standards for dosage, injection technique, timing, or number of injections.
- *Extracorporeal shockwave therapy (ESWT)*. ESWT generates high forces in the tendon, which can produce analgesic benefits by mechanical disintegration of calcium deposits and stimulation of tissue reparation. As yet, however, there is no consensus on the method of application, shockwave generation, energy level, localization, number and frequency of treatments, or the use of anesthesia.
- *Glyceryl trinitrate (GTN) patch*. The GTN patch delivers nitric oxide to the pathologic tendon, which stimulates fibroblast proliferation and collagen synthesis.

In refractory cases, surgical intervention may become necessary, and the most common form of open treatment is debridement of the affected tissue.

Ligament Injury

In any specific position of a joint, several ligaments around the joints are likely to be in a taut state. The most common mechanism of ligament injury is excessive lengthening of the ligament when the associated joint is moved into an extreme range of motion. This results in a ligamentous sprain. Ligament sprains can be classified into three grades:

- *Grade I*. Involves stretching of the ligament, but no fiber damage
- *Grade II*. Involves stretching of the ligament and tearing of some fibers
- *Grade III*. Involves almost complete ligament disruption

The signs and symptoms of ligament injuries are outlined in **TABLE 4.3**. It is important to remember that

TABLE 4.3 Ligament Injuries

Grade	Signs and Symptoms
First degree (mild)	Minimal loss of structural integrity No abnormal motion Little or no swelling Localized tenderness Minimal bruising
Second degree (moderate)	Significant structural weakening Some abnormal motion Solid end feel to stress More bruising and swelling Often associated hemarthrosis and effusion
Third degree (complete)	Loss of structural integrity Marked abnormal motion Significant bruising Hemarthrosis

ligament injuries rarely occur in isolation and that, depending on the size of the load, a simultaneous injury can also occur to other ligaments or structures. Because of their function as joint stabilizers (see Chapter 2), when a ligament sustains damage, there is a loss of normal kinematic relationships between the connected bones, with the degree of loss based on severity.

In general, extra-articular ligaments heal in a similar fashion as other vascular tissues. However, intra-articular ligaments, such as the anterior cruciate ligament (ACL), do not heal as well as extra-articular ligaments, because the former have a limited blood supply and the synovial fluid may significantly hinder an inflammatory response.[44] The healing of extra-articular ligaments occurs in four overlapping phases:

- *Phase I: Hemorrhagic*. Following disruption of the tissue, the gap is filled quickly with a hematoma. PMN leukocytes and lymphocytes appear within several hours, triggered by cytokines released within the clot. The PMN leukocytes and lymphocytes expand the inflammatory response and recruit other types of cells to the wound.[45]
- *Phase II: Inflammatory*. During the first 24 to 48 hours, macrophages arrive and perform phagocytosis of necrotic tissues, and they also secrete multiple types of growth factors that induce neovascularization and the formation of granulation tissue. By the third day after the injury, in addition to the macrophages, the wound contains PMN leukocytes, lymphocytes, and multipotential mesenchymal cells, growth factors, and platelets. The growth factors stimulate fibroblast proliferation and the synthesis of collagen types I, III, and V, as well as noncollagenous proteins.[46–48]
- *Phase III: Proliferation*. The fibroblast is the last cell type to arrive within the wound. The fibroblasts begin producing collagen and other matrix proteins within 1 week of injury, and by the second week after the injury, the original blood clot becomes more organized because of cellular and matrix proliferation. However, although the total collagen content is greater than in the normal ligament or tendon, the collagen concentration is lower, and the matrix remains disorganized.
- *Phase IV: Remodeling and maturation*. This phase is marked by a gradual decrease in the cellularity of the healed tissue as the matrix becomes denser and longitudinally oriented. The collagen turnover, water content, and the ratio of collagen types I to III begin to approach normal levels over several months.[48] Although the healed tissue continues to mature, it will never attain normal morphological characteristics or mechanical properties. Indeed, a ligament may have 50% of its normal tensile strength by 6 months after injury and 80% after 1 year, but it can take as long as 3 years to heal to the point of regaining near-normal tensile strength.[49]

Immobilization and disuse/abuse dramatically compromise the structural material properties of the healing ligament. However, controlled forces applied to the ligament during its recovery help it to develop strength in the direction that the force is applied. Thus, it is important to minimize periods of immobilization and to stress the injured ligaments progressively with very low cyclical loads while exercising caution with regard to the healing stage of the ligament. It appears that the use of ice immediately after ligament injury decreases bleeding, swelling, and inflammation,[50] whereas heat, when used after the first 48 hours appears to increase blood flow. However, it is not known whether ice or heat have any effect on scar formation or on the quality or quantity of ligament healing.

Currently, some biological approaches are being used to improve ligament repair, including the use of growth factors and gene therapy:[51]

- *Growth factors*. Growth factors are molecules that modify cell proliferation, or the secretion of proteins. Thus far, the uses of growth factors in ligament healing have demonstrated variable results.
- *Gene therapy*. Gene therapy refers to the modification of the genetic expression of cells. The introduction of marker and therapeutic genes into ligaments using vectors has demonstrated initial success with evidence of functional alterations.[52] Also, gene transfer has been used to manipulate the healing environment, opening the possibility of gene transfer to investigate ligament development.[52]

Muscle, Tendon, and Ligament Healing—Implications for the PTA

The promotion and progression of tissue repair involves a delicate balance between protection and the application of controlled functional stresses to the damaged structure. Physical therapy cannot accelerate the healing process, but with correct education and supervision of the patient, it can ensure that the healing process is not delayed or disrupted, and that it occurs in an optimal environment.[53] The rehabilitation procedures used by the PTA to assist with this repair process differ depending on the type of tissue involved, the extent of the damage, and the stage of healing. Signs and symptoms inform the clinician as to the stage of tissue repair. Awareness by the PTA of the various stages of healing is essential for determining the intensity of a particular intervention to avoid doing harm. Decisions to notify the supervising PT about modifying the plan of care need to be based on the recognition of these signs and symptoms and on an understanding of the time frames associated with each of the phases.[3,54]

Inflammatory (Acute) Stage

During this phase, there is pain at rest or with active motion, or when specific stress is applied to the injured structure. The pain, if severe enough, can result in muscle guarding and loss of function—the body's attempt to immobilize the area. With passive ROM, the patient reports pain before the clinician feels tissue resistance (empty end feel). Janda[55] introduced the concept of the direct and indirect effects of neural input on muscle activation and noted the influence that pain and swelling can have on direct muscle inhibition. According to Janda,[55] muscular development cannot proceed in the presence of pain, because pain has the potential to create a high degree of muscle inhibition that can alter muscle-firing patterns. Therefore, during this stage, the intervention goals are to control pain by reducing the degree of inflammation and swelling.

The short-term goals of the acute phase include the following:

- Protection of the injury site to allow healing
- Control of pain and inflammation
- Control of, and then elimination of, edema
- Restoration of pain-free ROM in the entire kinetic chain
- Improvement of patient comfort by decreasing pain and inflammation
- Retardation of muscle atrophy
- Minimizing detrimental effects of immobilization and activity restriction
- Management of the scar, if appropriate; the goal of treatment is the formation of a strong, mobile scar at the site of the lesion to allow complete and painless restoration of function[12]
- Maintenance of general fitness with resistive and/or modified aerobic exercises, depending on proximity to associated areas and effect on the primary lesion
- Patient independence with a home exercise program

Most of these goals can be achieved by using the principles of PRICEMEM (*p*rotection, *r*est, *i*ce, *c*ompression, *e*levation, *m*anual therapy, *e*arly motion, and *m*edications). The goal of this approach is to decrease early bleeding and facilitate the removal of the inflammatory exudates, thereby preventing further damage and inflammation to the area. Limiting the effusion serves to hasten the healing process by minimizing the amount of extracellular fluid and hematoma to be reabsorbed.[56,57] The patient should be reassured that the symptoms are usually of short duration, and instructions are given regarding what the patient can do during this stage, including any precautions or contraindications.

Protection

Excessive tissue loading must be avoided (**TABLE 4.4**). For example, in the lower extremity when ambulation is painful, crutches or other assistive devices are advocated until the patient can bear weight painlessly.[58]

Rest

Rest (splint, tape, cast) refers to optimal loading, rather than an absence of activity. Complete or continuous immobilization should be avoided whenever possible because it can have detrimental physiological effects, including loss of muscle, ligament, and bone strength; formation of adhesions; and the loss of proprioception (see "Detrimental Effects of Immobilization" later in this chapter).

Ice

The therapeutic application of cold, or cryotherapy, has been used as a healing modality since the days of the ancient Greeks. (See Chapter 10.) Garrick[58] recommends that ice be used until the swelling has ceased. A variety of electrotherapeutic and physical modalities

TABLE 4.4 Signs and Symptoms of Excessive Stress with Exercise or Activity

1. Decreased performance (progressive weakness, stiffness)
2. Delayed recovery time.
3. Elevated resting heart rate.
4. Increase in pain duration and frequency of the involved areas

Data from Schrepfer R: Soft tissue injury, repair, and management, in Kisner C, Colby LA (eds): *Therapeutic Exercise: Foundations and Techniques* (ed 5). Philadelphia, FA Davis, 2002, pp 295–308.

can also be used to help control pain, swelling, and muscle guarding. (See Chapter 10.)

Compression

The most common method of applying compression is via an elastic bandage. Compression provided by a pneumatic device or by a felt pad incorporated into an elastic wrap or taping, also has been demonstrated to be effective in decreasing effusion.

Elevation

Elevation of an extremity aids in venous return and helps minimize swelling. Elevation and compression should be continued until the swelling has completely dissipated.[58]

Manual Therapy

The controlled application of a variety of manual techniques can have several therapeutic benefits. (See Chapter 9 for description.) These benefits are theoretically achieved through the following:[59–63]

- Stimulation of the large-fiber joint afferents of the joint capsule, soft tissue, and joint cartilage, which aids in pain reduction
- Stimulation of endorphins, which aids in pain reduction
- Decrease of intra-articular pressure, which aids in pain reduction
- Mechanical effect, which increases joint mobility
- Remodeling of local connective tissue
- Increase of the gliding of tendons within their sheaths
- Increase in joint lubrication

The PT, or trained PTA in states where allowable, may perform gentle (grade I–II) oscillations to the involved joint to improve fluid dynamics, maintain cartilage health, and inhibit the perception of pain. Other manual techniques that may be delegated by the supervising PT during this stage include gentle massage to increase blood flow and passive ROM. With a muscle lesion, the massage is applied in its shortened position so as not to overstress the damaged fibers.

Early Motion

Tissue-specific movements should be directed to the involved structure to prevent abnormal adherence of the developing fibrils to the surrounding tissue and thus avoid future disruption of the scar.[12] In addition, early motion is advocated for the following reasons:

- To reduce the muscle atrophy that occurs primarily in type I fibers[64,65]
- To maintain joint function
- To reduce the chance of arthrofibrosis or excessive scarring
- To enhance cartilage nutrition and vascularization, thereby permitting an early recovery and enhanced comfort

During the inflammatory stage, it is also important for the patient to function as independently as possible. Research has demonstrated that joint motion stimulates the healing of torn ligaments around a joint, and early joint motion stimulates collagen bundle orientation in the lines of force—a kind of Wolff's law of ligaments.[66,67] (See Chapter 2.) Early ROM exercises are typically performed passively and then actively assisted within the pain-free range. Gentle isometric muscle contractions, performed intermittently and at a very low intensity to avoid painful joint compression, can be used at this time. The pumping action of the contracting muscles assists with the circulation and, therefore, fluid dynamics.[12]

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> - *Muscle injury.* The exercises are performed with the muscle in the shortened position to help maintain mobility of the actin-myosin filaments without overstressing the damaged tissue.
> - *Joint injury.* The usual starting position for the exercises is the resting position of the joint, but the position used should be the one that is most comfortable for the patient.

Medications

Medications prescribed by the physician can play an important role in the healing process. (See the "Musculoskeletal Pharmacology" section in Chapter 5.)

Proliferative (Subacute) Stage

The goals of this phase are to protect the forming collagen, direct its orientation to be parallel to the lines of force it must withstand, and prevent cross-linking and scar contracture. If these goals are achieved, the scar will be strong and extensible. These goals are achieved by: (1) attaining full range of pain-free motion, (2) restoring normal joint kinematics, (3) improving muscle strength to near-normal limits, (4) improving neuromuscular control, and (5) restoring near-normal muscle force couple relationships.

It is important to emphasize to the patient that an overly aggressive approach during this stage can result in a delay or disruption of the repair process through an increase in the stimulation of the inflammatory chemical irritants and exudates. However, the patient should be encouraged to return to normal activities that do not exacerbate symptoms. The exercises, initiated during the acute phase, are progressed to include active motion and stretching based on tissue and patient responses. Criteria for initiating active exercises and stretching during the early subacute stage include decreased swelling, pain that is no longer constant, and pain that is not exacerbated by motion in the available range. The active ROM exercises, performed initially in isolated single-plane motions throughout the pain-free ranges, are used to develop control of the motion. Neuromuscular control exercises during this stage are initially restricted to submaximal isometrics within patient tolerance. The submaximal isometrics are initially performed in the early part of the range and/or in the resting position of the joint, before being performed at multiple angles of the pain-free ROM. The intensity of contraction should be kept below the perception of pain. The isometric exercises not only increase muscle strength and endurance, but also improve the ability of the patient to actively mobilize stiff joints.[13,60,61] (See Chapter 9.) As ROM and joint play improve, resistive exercises are progressed, with the resistance being increased as tolerated. Initially, light resistive, concentric exercises of the involved muscle or muscles are introduced, emphasizing control of the motion and proper joint mechanics. Once the single plane motions are tolerated, combined motions or diagonal patterns can be introduced, while ensuring that all of the muscles are effectively participating. As new exercises are introduced, or as the intensity of exercise is progressed, the patient's response must be monitored so that the symptoms determine the intensity of exercise and appropriate modifications can be made. Wherever possible, resistance exercises that strengthen functional muscle groups rather than individual muscles should be selected.

☑ KEY POINT

Restoration of normal ROM is essential to allow normal strength and mechanics to be regained. Grade III sustained joint mobilization techniques during this stage include passive traction and/or gliding movements to joint surfaces that maintain or restore the joint play normally allowed by the capsule.

Exercises for muscle endurance are emphasized during the subacute stage because slow twitch muscle fibers are the first to atrophy when there is joint swelling, trauma, or immobilization.[12] Once active ROM exercises are tolerated, low intensity, high repetition exercises using light resistance are introduced. The patient should be educated to use correct motor patterns, without substitutions, and to stop the exercise or activity when the involved muscle fatigues or the tissue develops symptoms.[12] For example, if the patient is performing shoulder flexion activities, substitution with scapular elevation or trunk motions must be avoided.

☑ KEY POINT

Eccentric exercises are not used in the early subacute stage in the presence of a muscle injury because the tensile quality of the healing tissue is weak. For nonmuscular injuries, eccentric exercises may not reinjure the part, but the resistance should be limited to a low intensity to avoid delayed onset muscle soreness. (See Chapter 13.)

It is important during this stage to address any muscle length and strength imbalances, including postural stability problems. Other manual therapies that may be utilized during this stage include transverse friction massage and gentle stretching. (See Chapter 9.)

Remodeling Stage

Normally, the remodeling stage is characterized by a progression to pain-free function and activity. The goals during this stage include improving muscle strength to normal levels, returning normal neuromuscular control, completing a full return to functional activities, and the restoration of normal muscle force couple relationships.

During this stage, pain is typically felt at the end of range when stress is placed on restricted contractures or adhesions, or when there is soreness due to the increased stress of resistive exercise. Musculoskeletal tissues respond to the controlled stresses applied to them by adaptation. This response has been described as a specific adaptation to imposed demand (SAID). (See Chapter 11.) Maximum strength of the collagen develops in the direction of the imposed forces. The application of inappropriate stresses during this stage can lead to various forms of tissue dysfunction, such as contracture, laxity, fibrosis, adhesion, diminished function, repeated structural failure, and an alteration in neurophysiological feedback.[68] To avoid chronic or recurring pain, either the contractures must be stretched or the adhesions broken up and mobilized. Free joint play within a functional ROM is necessary to avoid joint trauma. Manual techniques may be required in this stage to emphasize the restoration of joint motion and to increase the extensibility of soft tissues. Techniques to increase soft tissue extensibility include passive and active stretching techniques. (See Chapter 9.)

In cases of decreased joint mobility, joint mobilizing techniques may be employed. Exercises are progressed from isolated, unidirectional, simple movements to complex patterns and multidirectional movements requiring coordination with all muscles functioning for the desired activity.[69] For example, proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation (PNF) exercises incorporate multiple joints and multiple muscles in functional patterns. (See Chapter 13.) The progression to advanced functional or sports-specific exercises may also be made, depending on the patient's requirements.

☑ KEY POINT

For the athlete, the criteria for return to play include no pain, full pain-free ROM, normal flexibility/strength/balance, good general fitness, normal sports mechanics, and demonstration of sports-specific skills.[10]

Chronic Recurring Pain

Most episodes of tissue injury resolve normally, provided the condition is not exacerbated through constant reinjury, and the injured tissue is allowed to progress through the natural stages of healing. If this natural progression does not occur, chronic recurring pain can result. In these cases, the proliferation of fibroblasts with increased collagen production and degradation of mature collagen leads to a predominance of new, immature collagen, which has an overall weakening effect on the tissue. Common causes for chronic recurring pain include:[70,71]

- Overuse, repetitive strain, or trauma
- Reinjury
- Length–strength imbalances
- Tissue weakness or excessive tension at the wound site
- Returning to an activity too soon after injury
- Training errors
- Hypertrophic scarring
- Poor blood supply

Conditions involving chronic recurring pain are best treated by initially controlling the inflammation using the principles of PRICEMEM. In addition, the patient should be educated about the cause of the chronic irritation and activities and positions to avoid. As with other soft tissue injuries, the patient is progressed through the stages of healing, but special emphasis is placed on addressing any chronic, contracted scar; identifying any faulty muscle and joint mechanics; emphasizing endurance exercises (if the cause is repetitive overuse); and referral to work conditioning and work hardening programs as appropriate.

Articular Cartilage Injury and Disease

Articular cartilage can be damaged in many ways, including trauma, penetrating injury, repetitive overloading, erosion (due to infection, disease, joint instability, and excessive compression), degeneration, and immobilization. Initially, the hyaline cartilage begins to fray or fibrillate and, if further destruction occurs, it can lead to blistering of the articular surface and eventual splitting or clefting (fissuring) of the surface. Two common causes of joint damage are osteoarthritis and rheumatoid arthritis (**FIGURE 4.2**). (See also Chapter 5.)

Injuries to articular cartilage can be divided into three distinct types:

- *Type 1 injuries (superficial).* These involve microscopic damage to the chondrocytes and extracellular membrane (ECM).
- *Type 2 injuries (partial thickness).* Involves disruption of the articular cartilage surface (chondral fractures or fissuring).[44] This type of injury has traditionally had an extremely poor prognosis because the injury does not penetrate the subchondral bone and therefore does not provoke an inflammatory response.[44]
- *Type 3 injuries (full-thickness).* Involves disruption of the articular cartilage with penetration into the subchondral bone, which produces a significant inflammatory process.[44] The intrinsic repair capacity of such defects remains limited to the production of fibrocartilage. When symptomatic, small, full-thickness injuries may be successfully treated with minimally invasive techniques designed to permit the efflux of marrow elements into the

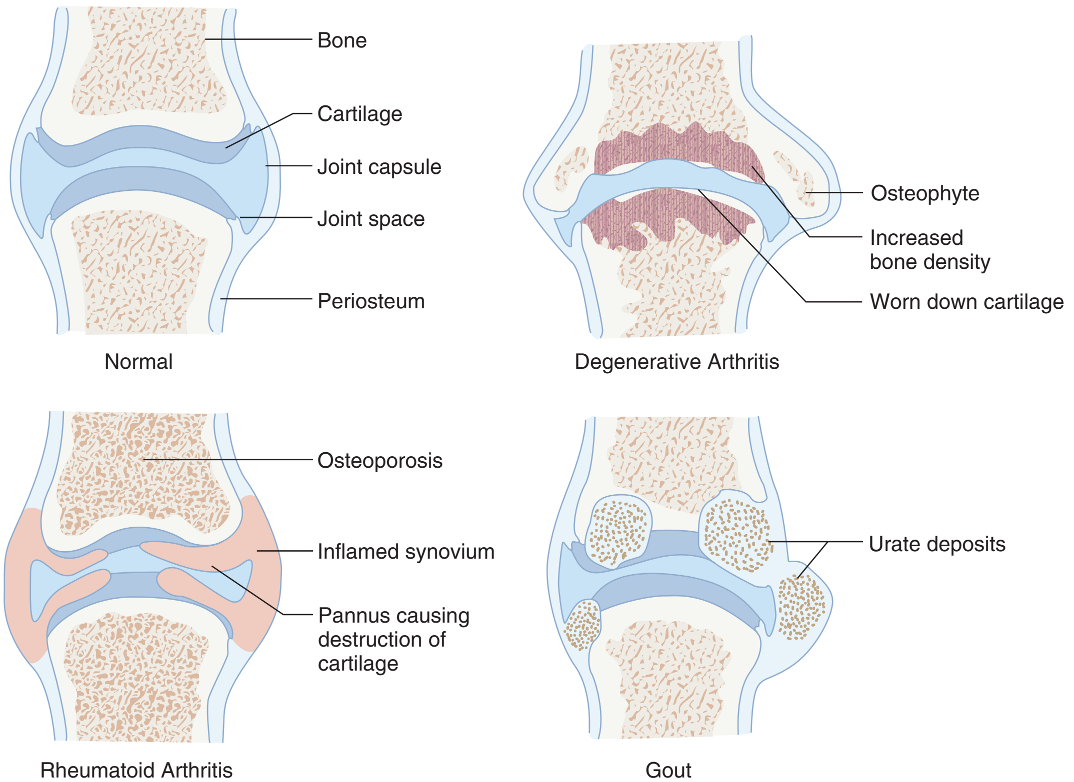


FIGURE 4.2 Joint changes due to degenerative arthritis, rheumatoid arthritis, and gout.

defect, resulting in fibrocartilage formation (see "Surgical Repair of Cartilage, Bones, and Joints" later in this chapter).[72] However, large defects may respond poorly to such techniques, and they may require more sophisticated strategies, including arthroscopic lavage and debridement, microfracture, autologous chondrocyte implantation, or osteochondral grafting (see "Surgical Repair of Cartilage, Bones, and Joints" later in this chapter).[72]

Spontaneous healing of superficial wounds to articular cartilage is not possible and, although deeper injuries can produce a vascular inflammatory response, it is limited.

Fibrocartilage Healing

Fibrocartilage, such as intervertebral disks, the labrum, and the menisci in the knee and temporomandibular joint, differs from hyaline cartilage in that it is composed of type I collagen instead of type II collagen (see Chapter 2), and it has a much higher fiber content than other types of cartilage. The nourishment of adult fibrocartilage is largely dependent on diffusion of nutrients through the synovial fluid in synovial joints. In amphiarthrodial joints (e.g., the intervertebral disk [IVD]), nutrients are diffused across the fluid contained in the adjacent trabecular bone, assisted by the "milking" action produced by intermittent weight bearing. The perichondrium surrounding fibrocartilage is poorly organized and contains small blood vessels located only near the peripheral rim of the tissue. Therefore, injuries to the fibrocartilage lead to abnormal hydration and an irreversible cascade of tissue alteration.[73] Because cartilage is largely aneural, avascular, and devoid of immune system recognition, it has a very low potential for regeneration. However, in adult joints, some repair of damaged fibrocartilage can occur near the vascularized periphery (e.g., the outer one-third of the meniscus of the knee). Due to these factors, in many cases of fibrocartilage injury surgical intervention is required. The implications for the PTA when treating IVD lesions are described in Chapters 17 and 19.

Bone

The skeletal system is prone to injury and disease. (See Chapter 5.) Injury can occur by a direct or indirect force applied to the bone or neighboring structure, and disease of the bone can occur in many forms.

Fractures

A fracture can be defined as a break in the continuity of the bone. Fractures of bone may be due to direct trauma such as a blow, indirect trauma such as a fall on an outstretched hand (FOOSH injury), or a twisting injury.

☑ KEY POINT

Signs and symptoms of acute fracture include:

- Exquisite point tenderness over a bone
- Localized edema not directly associated with joint involvement (e.g., over the midshaft, diaphysis, or body of a long bone, or in the area of the body of a flat bone)
- Reports of grinding or feelings of instability
- Loss of function of the involved area

☑ KEY POINT

Pathologic fractures are those that occur from low energy injuries to an area of bone weakness with a preexisting abnormality or disease (osteoporosis, osteomalacia). The typical signs and symptoms of a pathologic fracture include:

- Exquisite and localized tenderness upon palpation over the fracture site
- Symptoms aggravated with exertion or prolonged sitting or standing

☑ KEY POINT

An osteoporotic fracture occurs when the bone fails under excess stress. However, it is important to remember that some osteoporotic fractures may be asymptomatic.

Fractures are categorized by site of injury, the extent of injury (complete or incomplete), whether the skin is broken (open) or not (closed), the amount of disruption (displaced if the ends of the bones are not in anatomic alignment with each other, or nondisplaced if the bone on all sides of the fracture remains in anatomic alignment), and the type of fracture (**FIGURE 4.3**):

- *Complete fracture.* A fracture in which bone fragments separate completely.
- *Incomplete fracture.* A fracture in which the bone fragments are still partially joined.
- *Linear fracture.* A fracture that is parallel to the bone's long axis.
- *Transverse fracture.* A fracture that is at a right angle to the bone's long axis.
- *Oblique fracture.* A fracture that is diagonal to the bone's long axis.
- *Spiral fracture.* A fracture where at least one part of the bone has been twisted.

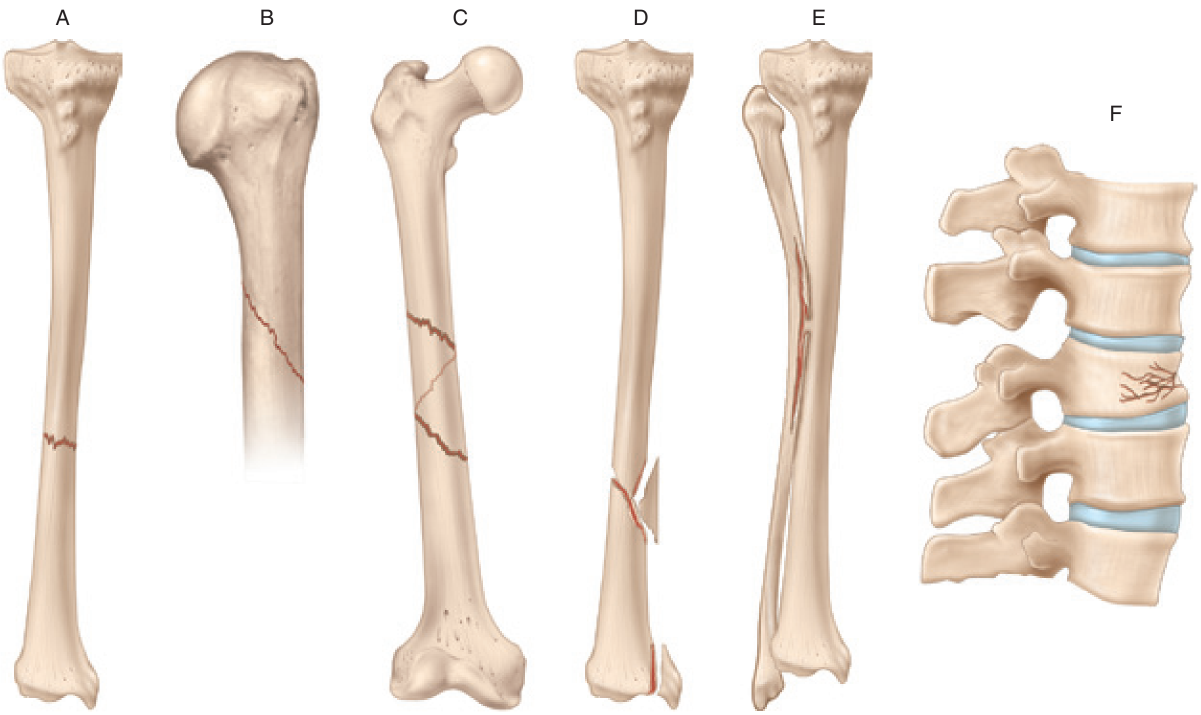


FIGURE 4.3 Types of fractures. **A.** Transverse fracture of the tibia. **B.** Oblique fracture of the humerus. **C.** Spiral fracture of the femur. **D.** Comminuted fracture of the tibia. **E.** Greenstick fracture of the fibula. **F.** Compression fracture of a vertebral body.

- *Compacted fracture.* A fracture caused when bone fragments are driven into each other.
- *Holstein-Lewis fracture.* A fracture of the distal third of the humerus resulting in entrapment of the radial nerve.
- *Comminuted.* A fracture where the bones break into more than two fragments—often the result of significant trauma.
- *Avulsion.* Seen in athletes and children; occurs when a piece of bone attached to a tendon or ligament is torn away.

The greenstick fracture is considered a pediatric fracture. (See Chapter 26 for further description.) Among seniors, fractures commonly occur for a number of reasons, including decreased vision and poor balance, and they can have a significant impact on the morbidity, mortality, and functional dependence of this population. Fractures in the elderly have their own set of problems: (See Chapter 27.)

- The fractures heal more slowly (taking an average of 6 to 12 weeks) and are more likely to result in malunion and nonunion.
- There is an increased potential for pneumonia and decubiti if immobilized for long periods.
- There are often changes in mental status.
- The healing of the fracture can be more complicated due to existing comorbidities.

Stress Fractures

Bone stress injuries occur over a spectrum, which encompasses stress reactions and stress fractures.[74] Stress fractures are fractures that occur in the absence of a specific acute precipitating traumatic event due to a disturbance in the equilibrium between osteoblastic bone formation and osteoclastic bone resorption.[74] Multiple clinical reports have described stress fractures in persons with rheumatoid arthritis, lupus erythematosis, osteoarthritis, pyrophosphate arthropathy, renal disease, osteoporosis, and joint replacements, and in older patients who have no apparent musculoskeletal disease.[75] Stress fractures are also commonly associated with overuse and overtraining.

☑ KEY POINT

In states of increased physical activity where the bone's adaptations do not occur fast enough, bone resorption (bone lysis) occurs faster than it is formed (osteoid synthesis). When bone resorption exceeds bone formation, a reduction in bone mass and strength occurs, resulting in a stress fracture.

Stress fractures can be classified according to cause:[76]

- *Fatigue stress fractures*. These are caused by repetitive and abnormally high forces from muscle action and/or weight-bearing torques and are often found in people with normal bone densities. Stress injuries of the foot and lower leg are the most common.
- *Insufficiency stress fractures*. These are associated with individuals who have compromised bone densities. Cancellous bone stress fractures occur more often in patients with osteopenia, compared with cortical stress fractures.[77] Because insufficiency stress fractures are associated with decreased bone mineral density, they tend to be most common in the elderly, especially postmenopausal women. Other predisposing factors for poor bone density include radiation treatments, rheumatoid arthritis due at least in part to the associated disuse secondary to pain and loss of function and either corticosteroid or methotrexate treatment, renal failure, coxa vara (see Chapter 23), metabolic disorders, and Paget's disease.

The clinical presentation of a stress fracture varies according to site:

- *Rib.* There are more reports of stress fractures of the first rib than any other single rib.[78] This injury usually occurs during overhead activities, such as reaching and pulling with the arm held high.[79] Pain occurs in the shoulder, anterior cervical triangle, or clavicular region.[79] The pain may radiate to the sternum or pectoral region. The onset is usually insidious, although it may start with acute pain. Pain may occur with deep breathing.[80] Tenderness to palpation may be present medial to the superior angle of the scapula, at the base of the neck, in the supraclavicular triangle, or deep in the axilla.[78] Shoulder movements may be painful or restricted.
- *Femoral neck/head.* Although stress fractures are a relatively uncommon etiology of hip pain, if not diagnosed in a timely fashion, progression to serious complications can occur.[81] It is estimated that up to 5 percent of all stress fractures involve the femoral neck, with another 5 percent involving the femoral head.[82] The fracture typically occurs on either the superior side (tension-side fractures) or the inferior side (compression-side fractures) of the femoral neck.[83] These fractures may develop into a complete and displaced fracture if left untreated. The most frequent symptom is the onset of sudden hip pain, usually associated with a

recent change in activity level, training level (particularly an increase in distance or intensity), or training surface. The earliest and most frequent symptom is pain in the deep thigh, inguinal, or anterior groin area.[84] Pain can also occur in the lateral or anteromedial aspect of the thigh. The pain usually occurs with weight bearing or at the extremes of hip motion and can radiate into the knee. Less severe cases may only have pain following a long run. Night pain may occur if the fracture progresses.

- *Tibia.* Tibial stress fractures are a common cause of shin soreness and a very common cause of exertional leg pain. Simple muscle strains are probably the most common cause of acute exercise-induced leg pain, whereas more subacute or chronic pain may be caused by stress fractures or chronic (exertional) compartment syndrome. Recognition of anterior tibial stress fractures is important because these fractures are prone to nonunion and avascular necrosis (see Chapter 25). They are also at greater risk of becoming displaced than are posterior tibial stress fractures. This increased susceptibility to complication has been attributed to a predominance of tensile forces along the anterior diaphysis rather than compressive forces along the posterior diaphysis.

Stress injuries can be diagnosed clinically but imaging (MRI or bone scan) is often used to assist with the diagnosis of certain stress injuries.[74] The focus of stress injury treatment is on minimizing weight-bearing activity to allow healing as well as identification and treatment of underlying risk factors.[74]

Bone Healing

The structure of bone is described in Chapter 2. The striking feature of bone healing or remodeling, compared with healing in other tissues, is that repair is by the original tissue, not scar tissue. Regeneration is perhaps a better descriptor than repair. Like other forms of healing, the healing of bone fracture includes the processes of inflammation, repair, and remodeling; however, the type of healing varies, depending on the method of treatment.

The process of bone healing involves a combination of intramembranous and endochondral ossification (**FIGURE 4.4**) and occurs on the surfaces of various portions of the bone (trabecular, periosteum, endosteal, and haversian canal). These two processes participate in the fracture repair sequence by at least four discrete stages of healing:[85]

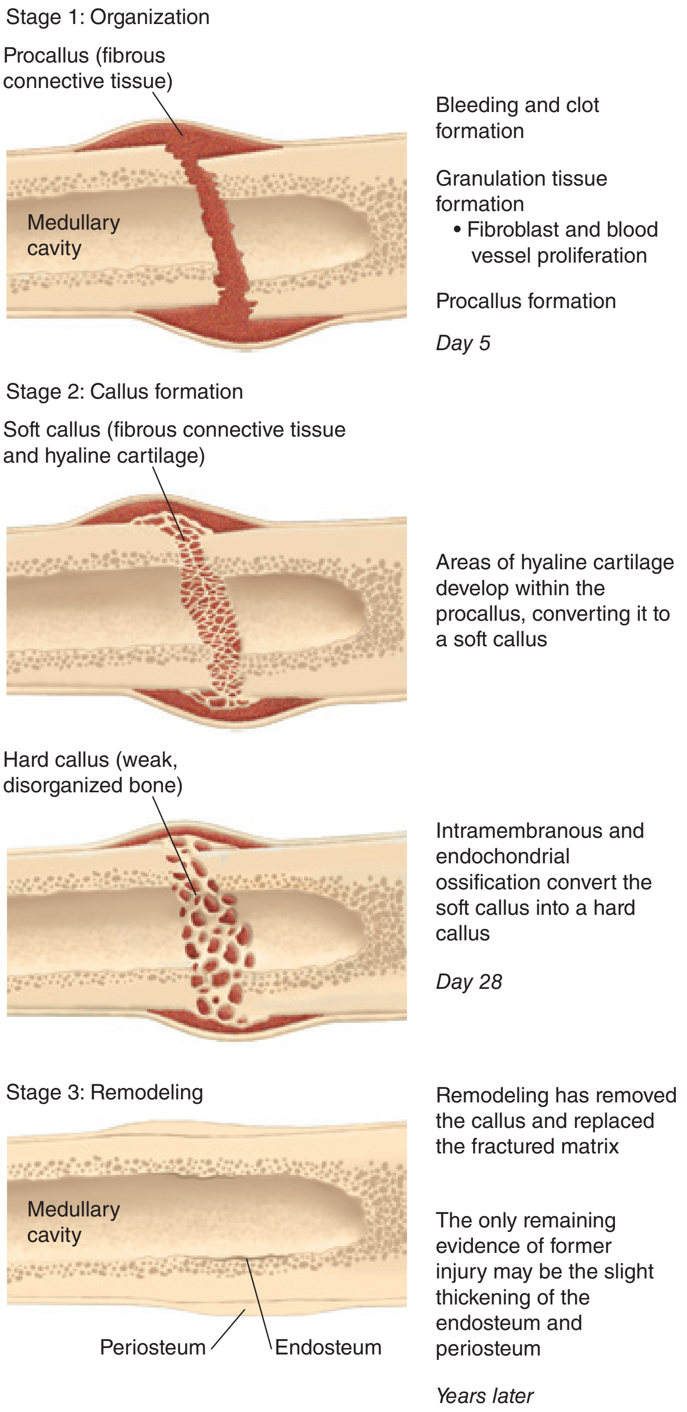


FIGURE 4.4 Bone healing.

- *Hematoma formation (inflammatory) phase.* Initially, the tissue volume in which new bone is to be formed is filled with the matrix, generally including a blood clot or hematoma.[44] An effective bone healing response includes an initial inflammatory phase characterized by the release of a variety of products, an increase in regional blood flow, invasion of neutrophils and monocytes, removal of cell debris, and degradation of the local fibrin clot.

- *Soft callus formation (reparative or revascularization) phase.* This phase is characterized by the formation of connective tissues, including cartilage, and formation of new capillaries from preexisting vessels (angiogenesis). During the first 7 to 10 days of fracture healing, the periosteum undergoes an intramembranous bone formation response. By the middle of the second week, abundant cartilage overlies the fracture site, and this chondroid tissue initiates biochemical preparations to undergo calcification.
- *Hard callus formation (modeling) phase.* This phase is characterized by the systematic removal of the initial matrix and tissues that formed in the site, primarily through osteoclastic and chondroclastic resorption, and their replacement with more organized lamellar bone (woven bone) aligned in response to the local loading environment.[44] The calcification of fracture callus cartilage can occur either directly from mesenchymal tissue (intramembranous) or via an intermediate stage of cartilage (endochondral or chondroid routes). Osteoblasts can form woven bone rapidly, but the result is randomly arranged and mechanically weak. Nonetheless, bridging of a fracture by woven bone constitutes so-called *clinical union*. The clinical union is a critical milestone in the healing of a broken long bone because it signals that the woven bone at the fracture site has hardened and become so firmly fixed to the other fragments that they move as a single unit. Usually splinting is reduced at this stage, but the site still requires protection from excessive stresses. Once cartilage is calcified, it becomes a target for the ingrowth of blood vessels.
- *Remodeling phase.* By replacing the cartilage with bone, and converting the cancellous bone into compact bone, the callus is gradually remodeled. During this phase, the woven bone is remodeled into stronger lamellar bone by a combination of osteoclast bone resorption and osteoblast bone formation. Radiologically or histologically, fracture gap bridging occurs by three mechanisms:[85]
  - *Intercortical bridging (primary cortical union).* This mechanism occurs when the fracture gap is reduced by normal cortical remodeling under conditions of rigid fixation. This mode of healing is the principle behind rigid internal fixation.[86]
  - *External callus bridging by new bone arising from the periosteum and the soft tissues surrounding the fracture.* Small degrees of movement at the fracture stimulate external callus formation.[87] This mode of healing is the aim in functional bracing and intramedullary nailing.
  - *Intramedullary bridging by endosteal callus.* A remodeling process that substitutes the trabecular bone with compact bone. The trabecular bone is first resorbed by osteoclasts, which creates a small pit. Then osteoblasts deposit compact bone within the pit and the fracture callus begins the remodeling process to return the bone to a close duplication of its original shape and strength.

Fracture healing can be manipulated by external (biomechanical) and internal (biological) stimuli:[88–90]

- *Bone grafts (autograft or allograft).* Bone grafts are implanted materials that promote bone healing through an osteogenic, osteoconductive and/or osteoinductive mechanism to the site.
- *Electrical and electromagnetic fields.* Electrical and electromagnetic (EM) fields are assumed to play a role in bone healing through the same principles as mechanical stress applications. A variety of instruments have been developed to deliver electrical and EM fields to fracture sites, each being categorized into one of three types: invasive direct-current (DC) stimulators, noninvasive capacitive coupling (CC) stimulators, and noninvasive inductive coupling (IC) stimulators—produced by pulsed electromagnetic fields (PEMF).[88]
- *Nonthermal, low intensity ultrasound.* In vitro studies suggest that ultrasonic stimulation enhances bone healing by increasing the incorporation of calcium ions in cultures of cartilage and bone cells and stimulating the expression of numerous genes involved in the healing process.[91]
- *Extracorporeal shock waves (ESW).* ESW have recently started being investigated, but the mechanisms of action are not well known or researched.

Implications for the PTA

The correct treatment of fractures requires information about when the fracture occurred and when the immobilization was removed. Continuous immobilization of connective and skeletal muscle tissues can cause undesirable consequences, including cartilage degeneration, decreased mechanical and structural strength of ligaments, decreased bone density, and weakness or atrophy of muscles (see the next section). Normal periods of immobilization following a fracture range from as short as 3 weeks for small bones to about 8 weeks for the long bones of the extremities. During the period of casting, submaximal isometrics are initiated. Once the cast is removed, it is important that controlled stresses continue to be applied to the bone, because the period of bone healing continues for up to 1 year. Successful restoration of osseous morphology and internal architecture is conditional on the remodeling process. According to Wolff's law, bone remodels along lines of stress.[92] Bone is constantly being remodeled as the circumferential lamellar bone is resorbed by osteoclasts and replaced with dense osteonal bone by osteoblasts.[87]

☑ KEY POINT

Wolff's law is a theory developed by the German anatomist/surgeon Julius Wolff (1836–1902) that states that bone in a healthy person or animal will adapt to the loads applied to it. If loading on the bone increases, the bone remodels over time to become stronger to resist future loading.

Treatment of the edema, pain, and ROM deficit associated with fractures and bone pathology are important aspects of bone healing. Controlled weight-bearing exercises (based on the weight-bearing status if the lower extremity is involved) during the early stages allows for deposition of cartilage callus and prevents the formation of deep vein thrombosis. Normal joint mobility and mechanics typically need to be restored, and strengthening is initiated and progressed based on patient tolerance and the presence of other factors that demonstrate that healing is continuing.

Possible complications of a fracture that the PTA must be aware of include:

- *Infection.* Infectious organisms can occur on both implants and the host bone environment, resulting in bone resorption, bone destruction, implant loosening, and reactive periosteal elevation.
- *Malunion.* Healing results in a nonanatomic position due to ineffective immobilization or a failure to maintain immobilization for an adequate period of time.
- *Delayed union/nonunion.* The healing process is inhibited or stopped (nonunion) due to an infection or poor blood supply.
- *Associated injury (e.g., nerve, vessel, soft tissue).* The type and degree of force required to fracture a bone usually injures the surrounding tissues as well.
- *Deep venous thrombosis/pulmonary embolism.* This can occur in fractures of the pelvis or femur. The risk of pulmonary embolism following acetabular fractures is about 4 to 7 percent. (See Chapter 5.)
- *Acute compartment syndrome:* Compartment syndrome (CS) is a limb-threatening and life-threatening condition observed when perfusion pressure falls below tissue pressure in a closed anatomic space. Long bone fractures are a common cause of compartment syndrome (Volkmann's ischemic contracture). (See Chapter 5.)

Clearly, prevention of fracture through good bone health is critical. Weight-bearing activity has beneficial effects on bone health throughout life, whereas a sedentary lifestyle is a known risk factor for osteoporosis. Thus, therapeutic exercise that increases bone mass and strength and reduces the risk of falls should always be encouraged. To achieve maximum benefits, exercise should be characterized as follows:[74]

- Be dynamic, not static
- Achieve adequate strain intensity
- Consist of discrete, intermittent bouts
- Include variable loading patterns
- Be supported by optimal nutrition
- Include adequate intake of calcium and vitamin D[93]

Detrimental Effects of Immobilization

Continuous immobilization of connective and skeletal muscle tissues in an adaptively shortened state can have undesirable consequences. These include the following:

- *Cartilage degeneration.* Immobilization of a joint causes atrophic changes in articular cartilage resulting in softening of cartilage.[94] Because the softened articular cartilage is vulnerable to damage during weight bearing, the PTA must be careful during such activities, and the use of an assistive device may be warranted.
- *Decreased mechanical and structural properties of ligaments.* Various studies have shown that after a few weeks of immobilization, the stiffness of a ligament decreases by over 50 percent of control values, and even after 1 year of rehabilitation, the ligament did not return to its prior level of strength.[95–97] This results in a compromise in the ability of the ligament to provide stabilization, thereby making the joint more susceptible to injury unless protected using splinting, bracing, or an assistive device when weight bearing.

- *Decreased bone density*. The interactions among systemic and local factors to maintain normal bone mass are complex. Bone mass is maintained because of a continuous coupling between bone resorption by osteoclasts and bone formation by osteoblasts, and this process is influenced by both systemic and local factors.[98] Mechanical forces acting on bone stimulate osteogenesis (Wolff's law), and the absence of such forces inhibits osteogenesis. Marked osteopenia occurs in otherwise healthy patients in states of complete immobilization or weightlessness.[99] In children, bone has a high modeling rate and appears to be more sensitive to the absence of mechanical loading than bone in adults.[99] Decreased bone density results in increased vulnerability of the bone to fracture. Therapeutic exercises, particularly closed-chain exercises, have been shown to be beneficial in strengthening bone.
- *Weakness or atrophy of muscle*. The longer the duration of immobilization, the greater the atrophy of muscle and loss of functional strength. Muscle atrophy is an imbalance between protein synthesis and degradation. After modest trauma, there is a decrease in whole body protein synthesis rather than increased breakdown. With more severe trauma, major surgery, or multiple organ failure, both synthesis and degradation increase, the latter being more enhanced.[64,65,100] Muscle atrophy can begin within as little as a few days to a week. The composition of muscle affects its response to immobilization, with atrophy occurring more quickly and more extensively in tonic (slow-twitch) postural muscle fibers than in phasic (fast-twitch) fibers.[65]
- *Change in muscle length*. If the muscle is immobilized in a shortened position for several weeks, there is a reduction in the length of the muscle and its fibers and in the number of sarcomeres in series within myofibrils as the result of sarcomere absorption.[65] The absorption rate occurs faster than the muscle's ability to regenerate sarcomeres, resulting in muscle atrophy and weakness and a shift to the left in the length–tension curve of a shortened muscle.[12] (See Chapter 2.) This shift decreases the muscle's capacity to produce maximum tension at its normal resting length as it contracts.

☑ KEY POINT

Following a period of immobilization, connective tissues are more vulnerable to deformation and breakdown than normal tissues subjected to similar amounts of stress.[95–97]

The PTA must remember that the restoration of full strength and ROM may prove difficult if the connective tissues are allowed to heal without early active motion, or in a shortened position, and that the patient may be prone to repeated strains.[49] The cause of muscle damage during exercised recovery from atrophy involves an altered ability of the muscle fibers to bear the mechanical stress of external loads (weight bearing) and movement associated with exercise. Strenuous exercise can result in primary or secondary sarcolemma disruption, swelling or disruption of the sarcotubular system, distortion of the myofibrils' contractile components, cytoskeletal damage, and extracellular myofiber matrix abnormalities.[20] These pathologic changes are similar to those seen in healthy young adults after sprint running or resistance training.[20] It appears that the act of contracting while the muscle is in a stretched or lengthened position, known as an eccentric contraction, is responsible for these injuries. Thus, ROM exercises should be started once swelling and tenderness have subsided to the point that the exercises are not unduly painful, and strengthening exercises introduced as tolerated.[49]

Surgical Interventions

Although surgery is generally elective and used as a treatment of last resort, in cases of soft tissue ruptures, fractures, and dislocations, it may be the primary approach.

Surgical Repair of Tendons

Tendon injuries may require operative intervention, depending on the complexity of the injury. The goal of repair is to restore tendon continuity and function. Repair can be accomplished immediately in the emergency department or after a delay of up to 7 days following the injury. The repair involves suturing the two ends of the tendon together using a variety of techniques. The surgical area is then protected using some form of postsurgical splinting or bracing. The postsurgical rehabilitation protocols vary according to site and are not within the scope of this text.

Surgical Repair of Ligaments

Surgical treatment options or indications for ligament injuries are based on the following:[101,102]

- *Degree of injury and the potential for self-repair*. Because of the associated injuries and profound instability with grade III injuries, surgery is often necessary. However, certain ligaments (e.g., the medial collateral ligament [MCL]), because of their anatomic location, have a greater potential for vascular supply and therefore healing, even at the grade III level.

- *Amount of joint instability*. Surgical treatment is usually recommended for young adult athletes because they have more years to develop degenerative joint conditions from chronic instabilities caused by joint ligament deficiencies.
- *Associated injuries*. Often, due to the level of trauma associated with a ligament injury, some of the surrounding tissues can be injured. For example, a torn anterior cruciate ligament (ACL) can be associated with a meniscal injury, and because the menisci contribute to stability of the knee, the loss of this stabilizing effect appears to predispose these patients to osteoarthrosis.
- *Skeletal maturity of patients*. Because of the potential damage to the growth plates that may result in growth arrest following surgery, the decision to perform surgery on children with open growth plates remains questionable.[103] The risk of growth disturbance appears to be low if the patient is within 1 year of skeletal maturity at the time of surgery.
- *Expected levels of patients' participation in future sports activities*. The expected future activity levels and participation in sports activities for the younger patient are often more vigorous than those for the middle-aged adult.

Surgical Repair of Cartilage, Bones, and Joints

Current surgical options include those outlined in **TABLE 4.5**.

Fracture Fixation

The basic goal of fracture fixation is to provide stability to the fractured bone, to enable healing of the injured bone, and to return early mobility and full function of the injured extremity. If the conservative fracture treatment of bone alignment through closed reduction does not provide sufficient stability, the surgeon has a number of tools at his or her disposal:

- *Internal fixation*. Numerous devices can be used for internal fixation and include wires, pins

TABLE 4.5 Surgical Procedures for Cartilage, Bones, and Joints

Procedure	Description	Implications for the PTA
Debridement/abrasion chondroplasty	Debridement procedures are designed to remove loose fragments and other mechanical or chemical irritants. Abrasion chondroplasty is a procedure performed alone or in combination with other procedures for articular cartilage lesions to stimulate a healing response and local fibrocartilage ingrowth.	Rehabilitation varies with the extent and location of the articular cartilage lesion.
Microfracture	Works by creating tiny fractures in the underlying bone, which causes new cartilage to develop from a so-called super clot.	Rehabilitation varies with the extent and location of the bony lesions.
Osteochondral autograft transplantation (OAT)	Also referred to as mosaicplasty. Designed to restore and preserve articular cartilage by transferring articular cartilage tissue from areas of low loading to areas of high loading.	The general rules about rehabilitating any articular cartilage lesions apply here and are modified based on individual patient factors. Passive ROM is performed as tolerated, whereas active ROM varies depending on the size, location, and fixation of the lesion. Patients are typically non–weight-bearing for 3 to 4 weeks, followed by a gradual progression of weight-bearing over the next 3 to 4 weeks.

TABLE 4.5 Surgical Procedures for Cartilage, Bones, and Joints *(continued)*

Procedure	Description	Implications for the PTA
Autologous chondrocyte implantation	Research is focused on using growth factors to induce the newly attracted or transplanted chondrocytes to mature faster. Bone morphogenic proteins (BMPs) are members of the transforming growth factor superfamily and have a regulatory role in the differentiation of cartilage-forming and bone-forming cells. Used in cases in which the lesion is up to 15 centimeters in diameter. Two to three full-thickness samples of healthy articular cartilage are harvested from the patient, cultivated for 11 to 21 days, and then injected into the site.	Rehabilitation is similar to that following any articular cartilage procedure—full unloaded passive ROM is initiated early, and the patient is non–weight-bearing for the first 2 to 4 weeks, with progressive weight-bearing over the next 2 to 4 weeks.
Mosaicplasty with either autologous tissue or fresh allograft	Refers to the technique of harvesting small circular (4–8 millimeter) autogenous grafts from regions of a healthy joint and transplanting the grafts in a mosaic pattern until the osteochondral defect is filled.	Rehabilitation is similar to that following any articular cartilage procedure—full unloaded passive ROM is initiated early, and the patient is non–weight-bearing for the first 2 to 4 weeks, with progressive weight-bearing over the next 2 to 4 weeks.
Open reduction and internal fixation	Commonly performed when closed reduction is impossible or when fracture healing would be protracted if treated without fixation. Fixation may use plates, screws, wires, or other forms of hardware to stabilize the bone and fragments.	Weight-bearing and motion restrictions are specific to the location and severity of the initial fracture. Treatment focuses on associated soft tissue damage and restoration of full function.
Fusion	The operative formation of an ankylosis or arthrodesis. Most commonly performed in the spine or ankle.	The postoperative rehabilitation is focused on the adjacent joints and the procedures necessary to ensure the long-term health of these joints.
Osteotomy	The surgical cutting of the bone to correct bony alignment. Most commonly performed at the knee to correct excessive genu varus or valgus.	The rehabilitation focuses on the preservation or restoration of motion and strength while considering the changing loading patterns on the articular cartilage.
Arthroplasty (joint replacement)	Performed to remedy significant degenerative joint disease. Categorized by component design (constrained, unconstrained, or semiconstrained), fixation (cement or cementless), and materials (titanium alloy, high density polyethylene, or cobalt-chrome alloy).	Rehabilitation protocols are joint- and prosthesis-specific. In general, restoration of motion, strength, and function constitute the rehabilitation framework.

and compression screws, bone plates (require stripping of the periosteum where the screws and plates are to be fixed), and intramedullary nails or rods (require "reaming" of the medullary canal to allow for proper anatomic placement). Staples and clamps are also used occasionally for osteotomy or fracture fixation.

- *Braces*. These provide some stability but are mainly used to limit ROM of a joint.
- *External fixation*. There are three basic types of external fixators: ring fixator, standard uniplanar fixator, and hybrid fixator. External fixators allow for modification of stiffness and rigidity of fixation, which allows for deformity correction and bone transport. In addition, external fixation can be applied with minimal trauma, avoiding additional damage to soft tissues and bone vascularity. External fixation is considered to be the safest way to achieve initial stabilization of fractures in the severely injured.

Summary

The three phases of the healing process are the inflammatory (acute), proliferative (subacute) and remodeling, which occur in sequence but overlap one another in a continuum. The rehabilitation philosophy relative to inflammation and healing after injury is to assist the natural processes of the body while doing no harm. The course of rehabilitation must focus on knowledge of the healing process and its therapeutic modifiers that guide, direct, and stimulate the structural function and integrity of the injured part. This is accomplished by increasing ROM, muscular strength and endurance, neuromuscular control, and cardiorespiratory endurance while continuing to have a positive influence on the repair process. Finally, focus should be switched to preventing a recurrence of the injury by influencing the structural ability of the injured tissue to resist further overloads by incorporating various therapeutic exercises.

Learning Portfolio

Case Study

You are treating a patient with patellar tendinopathy who appears to be nearing the end of the acute stage of healing.

1. What clinical signs could you use to help determine that the patient is nearing the end of the acute stage of healing?

Following a discussion with your supervising PT, you both agree that the patient is ready to be progressed from isometric exercises and gentle, pain-free active ROM exercises.

2. Given the diagnosis and new stage of healing, what exercises would you recommend to be added?
3. What type of exercises would be inappropriate for this patient?

Two weeks later you notice that there is a decrease in pain, minimal to no swelling and a significant increase in pain-free active and passive ROM. The patient has been performing progressive resistance exercises (PREs) with light resistance throughout the full range of knee flexion and extension, can use the stationary bicycle against light resistance with no pain, and has been able to tolerate the prescribed bilateral weight bearing functional and neuromuscular exercises with minimal to no pain.

4. What do these signs and symptoms appear to indicate?
5. What would be your recommendation to the supervising PT at this stage?
6. If this patient is appropriate for more challenging exercises, list all of the exercises you would recommend.

Review Questions

1. What are the three phases of soft tissue healing?
2. How does tendinitis differ from tendinosis?
3. What are the three stages of bone healing?
4. How does Wolff's law apply to bone healing?
5. Name three areas in the body that are prone to tendinopathy.

6. What is the difference between a sprain and a strain?
7. All of the following terms are used to describe fractures *except*:
   a. Greenstick
   b. Comminuted
   c. Pathologic
   d. Tangential
8. A disease in which there is deficiency in mineralization of bone matrix is:
   a. Osteogenesis imperfecta
   b. Osteitis deformans
   c. Osteomalacia
   d. Osteoporosis
9. All of the following are considered modifiable risk factors for developing skeletal demineralization *except*:
   a. Use of specific medications
   b. Estrogen deficiency
   c. Physical inactivity
   d. Early menopause

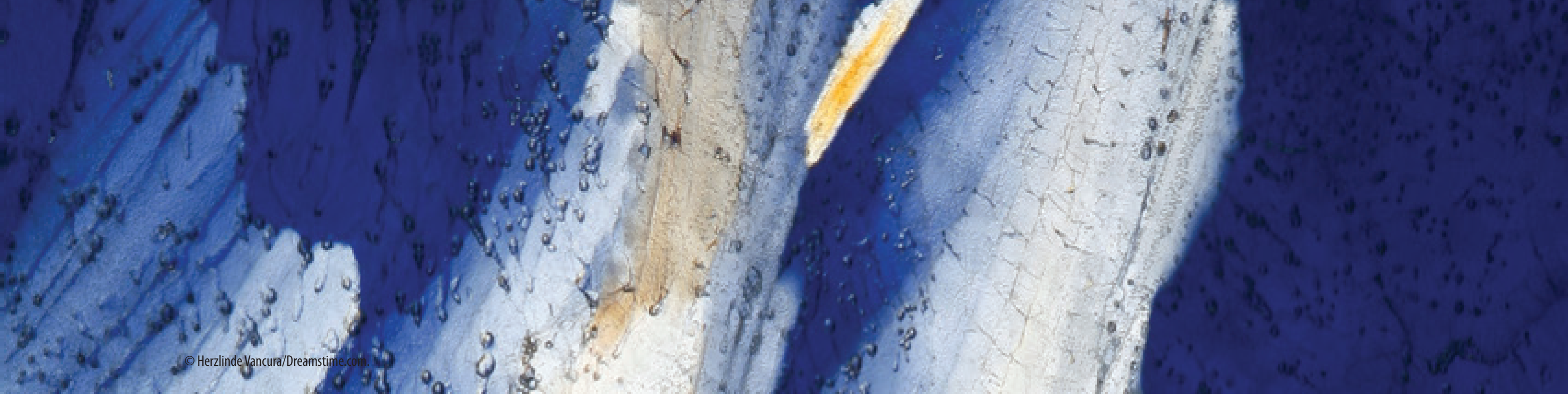
References

1. Dehne E, Tory R. Treatment of joint injuries by immediate mobilization based upon the spiral adaption concept. *Clinical Orthopaedics and Related Research*. 1971; 77:218–32.
2. Wong MEK, Hollinger JO, Pinero GJ. Integrated processes responsible for soft tissue healing. *Oral Surgery, Oral Medicine, Oral Pathology, Oral Radiology, and Endodontics*. 1996; 82:475–92.
3. Singer AJ, Clark RAF. Cutaneous wound healing. *New England Journal of Medicine*. 1999; 341:738–46.
4. Sen CK, Khanna S, Gordillo G, et al. Oxygen, oxidants, and antioxidants in wound healing: an emerging paradigm. *Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences*. 2002; 957:239–49.
5. Evans RB. Clinical application of controlled stress to the healing extensor tendon: a review of 112 cases. *Physical Therapy*. 1989; 69:1041–9.
6. Emwemeka CS. Inflammation, cellularity, and fibrillogenesis in regenerating tendon: implications for tendon rehabilitation. *Physical Therapy*. 1989; 69:816–25.
7. Safran MR, Zachazewski JE, Benedetti RS, Bartolozzi AR, III, Mandelbaum R. Lateral ankle sprains: a comprehensive review part 2: treatment and rehabilitation with an emphasis on the athlete. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise*. 1999; 31:S438–47.
8. Safran MR, Benedetti RS, Bartolozzi AR, III, Mandelbaum BR. Lateral ankle sprains: a comprehensive review: part 1: etiology, pathoanatomy, histopathogenesis, and diagnosis. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise*. 1999; 31:S429–37.
9. Arem A, Madden J. Effects of stress on healing wounds: intermittent non-cyclical tension. *Journal of Surgical Research*. 1971; 42:528–43.
10. Herring SA, Kibler BW. A framework for rehabilitation. In: Kibler BW, Herring JA, Press JM, editors. *Functional Rehabilitation of Sports and Musculoskeletal Injuries*. Gaithersburg, MD: Aspen; 1998. p. 1–8.
11. Childs DR, Murthy AS. Overview of wound healing and management. *The Surgical Clinics of North America*. 2017; 97:189–207.
12. Kisner C, Colby LA. Soft tissue injury, repair, and management. In: Kisner C, Colby LA, editors. *Therapeutic Exercise Foundations and Techniques*, 5th ed. Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2002. p. 295–308.
13. Milch HS, Schubert SY, Hammond S, Spiegel JH. Enhancement of ischemic wound healing by inducement of local angiogenesis. *The Laryngoscope*. 2010; 120:1744–8.
14. Eming SA, Tomic-Canic M. Updates in wound healing: Mechanisms and translation. *Experimental Dermatology*. 2017; 26:97–8.
15. Han G, Ceilley R. Chronic wound healing: a review of current management and treatments. *Advances in Therapy*. 2017; 34(3):599–610.
16. Jarvinen TA, Kaariainen M, Jarvinen M, Kalimo H. Muscle strain injuries. *Current opinion in Rheumatology*. 2000; 12:155–61.
17. Reid DC. *Sports Injury Assessment and Rehabilitation*. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1992.
18. Watrous BG, Ho G, Jr. Elbow pain. *Primary Care*. 1988; 15:725–35.
19. Glick JM. Muscle strains: prevention and treatment. *The Physician and Sportsmedicine*. 1980; 8:73–7.
20. Kasper CE, Talbot LA, Gaines JM. Skeletal muscle damage and recovery. *AACN Clinical Issues*. 2002; 13:237–47.
21. Kalimo H, Rantanen J, Jarvinen M. Soft tissue injuries in sport. In: Jarvinen M, editor. *Bailliere's Clinical Orthopaedics*. London: Bailliere Tindall; 1997. p. 1–24.
22. Allbrook DB. Skeletal muscle regeneration. *Muscle and Nerve*. 1981; 4:234–45.
23. Hurme T, Kalimo H. Activation of myogenic precursor cells after muscle injury. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise*. 1992; 24:197–205.
24. Hurme T, Kalimo H, Lehto M, Jarvinen M. Healing of skeletal muscle injury: an ultrastructural and immunohistochemical study. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise*. 1991; 23:801–10.
25. Scott A, Backman LJ, Speed C. Tendinopathy: update on pathophysiology. *The Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2015; 45:833–41.
26. Michener LA, Kulig K. Not all tendons are created equal: implications for differing treatment approaches. *The Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2015; 45:829–32.
27. Bunata RE, Brown DS, Capelo R. Anatomic factors related to the cause of tennis elbow. *The Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery American Volume*. 2007; 89:1955–63.
28. Reeves ND, Maganaris CN, Ferretti G, Narici MV. Influence of 90-day simulated microgravity on human tendon mechanical properties and the effect of resistive countermeasures. *Journal of Applied Physiology*. 2005; 98:2278–86.

29. Gaida JE, Ashe MC, Bass SL, Cook JL. Is adiposity an under-recognized risk factor for tendinopathy? A systematic review. *Arthritis and Rheumatism*. 2009; 61:840–9.
30. Schwartz A, Watson JN, Hutchinson MR. Patellar tendinopathy. *Sports Health*. 2015; 7:415–20.
31. Wang JH. Mechanobiology of tendon. *Journal of Biomechanics*. 2006; 39:1563–82.
32. Peers KH, Lysens RJ. Patellar tendinopathy in athletes: current diagnostic and therapeutic recommendations. *Sports Medicine*. 2005; 35:71–87.
33. Docking SI, Ooi CC, Connell D. Tendinopathy: is imaging telling us the entire story? *The Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2015; 45:842–52.
34. Silbernagel KG, Crossley KM. A Proposed return-to-sport program for patients with midportion achilles tendinopathy: rationale and implementation. *The Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2015; 45:876–86.
35. Miller BF, Olesen JL, Hansen M, Dossing S, Crameri RM, Welling RJ, et al. Coordinated collagen and muscle protein synthesis in human patella tendon and quadriceps muscle after exercise. *The Journal of Physiology*. 2005; 567:1021–33.
36. Leadbetter WB. Cell-matrix response in tendon injury. *Clinics in Sports Medicine*. 1992; 11:533–78.
37. Burmaster C, Eckenrode BJ, Stiebel M. Early incorporation of an evidence-based aquatic-assisted approach to arthroscopic rotator cuff repair rehabilitation: prospective case study. *Physical Therapy*. 2016; 96:53–61.
38. Vicenzino B. Tendinopathy: evidence-informed physical therapy clinical reasoning. *The Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2015; 45:816–8.
39. Kingma JJ, de Knikker R, Wittink HM, Takken T. Eccentric overload training in patients with chronic Achilles tendinopathy: a systematic review. *British Journal of Sports Medicine*. 2007; 41:e3.
40. Alfredson H. Chronic midportion Achilles tendinopathy: an update on research and treatment. *Clinics in Sports Medicine*. 2003; 22:727–41.
41. Heales LJ, Lim EC, Hodges PW, Vicenzino B. Sensory and motor deficits exist on the non-injured side of patients with unilateral tendon pain and disability—implications for central nervous system involvement: a systematic review with meta-analysis. *British Journal of Sports Medicine*. 2014; 48:1400–6.
42. Plinsinga ML, Brink MS, Vicenzino B, van Wilgen CP. Evidence of nervous system sensitization in commonly presenting and persistent painful tendinopathies: a systematic review. *The Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2015; 45:864–75.
43. Van der Worp H, de Poel HJ, Diercks RL, van den Akker-Scheek I, Zwerver J. Jumper's knee or lander's knee? A systematic review of the relation between jump biomechanics and patellar tendinopathy. *International Journal of Sports Medicine*. 2014; 35:714–22.
44. Vereeke West R, Fu F. Soft tissue physiology and repair. *Orthopaedic Knowledge Update 8: Home Study Syllabus*. Rosemont,IL: American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons; 2005. p. 15–27.
45. Frank CB, Bray RC, Hart DA, et al. Soft tissue healing. In: Fu F, Harner CD, Vince KG, editors. *Knee Surgery*. Baltimore: Williams and Wilkins; 1994. p. 189–229.
46. Murphy PG, Loitz BJ, Frank CB, Hart DA. Influence of exogenous growth factors on the expression of plasminogen activators by explants of normal and healing rabbit ligaments. *Biochemistry and Cell Biology*. 1993; 71:522–9.
47. Pierce GF, Mustoe TA, Lingelbach J, et al. Platelet-derived growth factor and transforming growth factor-[beta] enhance tissue repair activities by unique mechanisms. *Journal of Cell Biology*. 1989; 109:429–40.
48. Pang C, Ibrahim A, Bulstrode NW, Ferretti P. An overview of the therapeutic potential of regenerative medicine in cutaneous wound healing. *International Wound Journal*. 2017; 14(3):450–9.
49. Booher JM, Thibodeau GA. The body's response to trauma and environmental stress. In: Booher JM, Thibodeau GA, editors. *Athletic Injury Assessment*, 4th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2000. p. 55–76.
50. Bleakley C, McDonough S, MacAuley D. The use of ice in the treatment of acute soft-tissue injury: a systematic review of randomized controlled trials. *The American Journal of Sports Medicine*. 2004; 32:251–61.
51. Hildebrand KA, Hart DA, Rattner JB, et al. Ligament injuries: pathophysiology, healing, and treatment considerations. In: Magee D, Zachazewski JE, Quillen WS, editors. *Scientific Foundations and Principles of Practice in Musculoskeletal Rehabilitation*. St. Louis, MO: WB Saunders; 2007. p. 23–46.
52. Hildebrand KA, Frank CB, Hart DA. Gene intervention in ligament and tendon: current status, challenges, future directions. *Gene Therapy*. 2004; 11:368–78.
53. McKenzie R, May S. Introduction. In: McKenzie R, May S, editors. *The Human Extremities: Mechanical Diagnosis and Therapy*. Waikanae, New Zealand: Spinal Publications New Zealand Ltd; 2000. p. 1–5.
54. Hunt TK. *Wound Healing and Wound Infection: Theory and Surgical Practice*. New York: Appleton-Century-Crofts; 1980.
55. Janda V. Muscle strength in relation to muscle length, pain and muscle imbalance. In: Harms-Ringdahl K, editor. *Muscle Strength*. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1993. p. 83–91.
56. Hettinga DL. Inflammatory response of synovial joint structures. In: Gould JA, Davies GJ, editors. *Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. St. Louis: C.V. Mosby; 1985. p. 87–117.
57. Thorndike A. *Athletic Injuries: Prevention, Diagnosis and Treatment*. Philadelphia: Lea and Febiger; 1962.
58. Garrick JG. A practical approach to rehabilitation. *The American Journal of Sports Medicine*. 1981; 9:67–8.
59. Draper DO. Ultrasound and joint mobilizations for achieving normal wrist range of motion after injury or surgery: a case series. *Journal of Athletic Training*. 2010; 45:486–91.
60. An CM, Won JI. Effects of ankle joint mobilization with movement and weight-bearing exercise on knee strength, ankle range of motion, and gait velocity in patients with stroke: a pilot study. *Journal of Physical Therapy Science*. 2016; 28:689–94.
61. Courtney CA, Steffen AD, Fernandez-de-Las-Penas C, Kim J, Chmell SJ. Joint mobilization enhances mechanisms of conditioned pain modulation in individuals with osteoarthritis of the knee. *The Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2016; 46:168–76.
62. Lantz JM, Emerson-Kavchak AJ, Mischke JJ, Courtney CA. Tibiofemoral joint mobilization in the successful management of patellofemoral pain syndrome: a case report. *International Journal of Sports Physical Therapy*. 2016; 11:450–61.
63. Shih YF, Yu HT. Immediate effect of joint mobilization on corticospinal excitability in individuals with functional ankle instability. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise*. 2016; 48:112.
64. Itoh Y, Murakami T, Mori T, Agata N, Kimura N, Inoue-Miyazu M, et al. Training at non-damaging intensities facilitates recovery from muscle atrophy. *Muscle and Nerve*. 2017; 55:243–53.

65. Kawahara K, Suzuki T, Yasaka T, Nagata H, Okamoto Y, Kita K, et al. Evaluation of the site specificity of acute disuse muscle atrophy developed during a relatively short period in critically ill patients according to the activities of daily living level: a prospective observational study. *Australian Critical Care*. 2017; 30:29–36.
66. Akeson WH, Woo SLY, Amiel D, Frank CB. The chemical basis for tissue repair. In: Hunter LH, Funk FJ, editors. *Rehabilitation of the Injured Knee*. St. Louis: C.V. Mosby; 1984. p. 93–147.
67. Noyes FR, Torvik PJ, Hyde WB, Delucas JL. Biomechanics of ligament failure: II. An analysis of immobilization, exercise, and reconditioning effects in primates. *Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery*. 1974; 56A:1406–18.
68. Porterfield JA, DeRosa C. *Mechanical Low Back Pain*, 2nd ed. Philadelphia: WB Saunders; 1998.
69. Wilk KE, Arrigo CA. An integrated approach to upper extremity exercises. *Orthopaedic Physical Therapy Clinics of North America*. 1992; 1:337–60.
70. Garrett WE, Lohnes J. Cellular and matrix response to mechanical injury at the myotendinous junction. In: Leadbetter WB, Buckwalter JA, Gordon SL, editors. *Sports-Induced Inflammation: Clinical and Basic Science Concepts*. Park Ridge, IL: American Academy of Orthopedic Surgeons; 1990. p. 215–24.
71. Di Rosa F, Barnaba V. Persisting viruses and chronic inflammation: understanding their relation to autoimmunity. *Immunological Reviews*. 1998; 164:17–27.
72. Lewis PB, McCarty LP, III, Kang RW, Cole BJ. Basic science and treatment options for articular cartilage injuries. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2006; 36:717–27.
73. Alford W, Cole BJ. The indications and technique for meniscal transplant. *Orthopedic Clinics of North America*. 2005; 36:469–84.
74. Goolsby MA, Boniquit N. Bone health in athletes. *Sports Health*. 2017; 9:108–17.
75. Buckwalter JA, Brandser EA. Stress and insufficiency fractures. *American Family Physician*. 1997; 56:175–82.
76. Gurney B, Boissonnault WG, Andrews R. Differential diagnosis of a femoral neck/head stress fracture. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2006; 36:80–8.
77. Marx RG, Saint-Phard D, Callahan LR, Chu J, Hannafin JA. Stress fracture sites related to underlying bone health in athletic females. *Clinical Journal of Sport Medicine*. 2001; 11:73–6.
78. Gregory PL, Biswas AC, Batt ME. Musculoskeletal problems of the chest wall in athletes. *Sports Medicine*. 2002; 32:235–50.
79. Connolly LP, Connolly SA. Rib stress fractures. *Clinical Nuclear Medicine*. 2004; 29:614–6.
80. Chaudhury S, Hobart SJ, Rodeo SA. Bilateral first rib stress fractures in a female swimmer: a case report. *Journal of Shoulder and Elbow Surgery*. 2012; 21:e6–10.
81. Boden BP, Osbahr DC. High-risk stress fractures: evaluation and treatment. *Journal of the American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons*. 2000; 8:344–53.
82. Clough TM. Femoral neck stress fracture: the importance of clinical suspicion and early review. *British Journal of Sports Medicine*. 2002; 36:308–9.
83. Uzun E, Gunay AE, Kizkapan TB, Mutlu M. Atraumatic diplaced bilateral femoral neck fracture in a patient with hypophosphatemic rickets in postpartum period: a missed diagnosis. *International Journal of Surgery Case Reports*. 2016; 28:321–4.
84. Schmidt AH, Asnis SE, Haidukewych G, Koval KJ, Thorngren KG. Femoral neck fractures. *Instructional Course Lectures*. 2005; 54:417–45.
85. Marsh DR, Li G. The biology of fracture healing: optimising outcome. *British Medical Bulletin*. 1999; 55:856–69.
86. Pasoto SG, Augusto KL, Alvarenga JC, Takayama L, Oliveira RM, Bonfa E, et al. Cortical bone density and thickness alterations by high-resolution peripheral quantitative computed tomography: association with vertebral fractures in primary Sjogren's syndrome. *Rheumatology*. 2016; 55:2200–11.
87. Comiskey DP, MacDonald BJ, McCartney WT, Synnott K, O'Byrne J. Predicting the external formation of a bone fracture callus: an optimisation approach. *Computer Methods in Biomechanics and Biomedical Engineering*. 2012; 15:779–85.
88. Galkowski V, Petrisor B, Drew B, Dick D. Bone stimulation for fracture healing: what's all the fuss? *Indian Journal of Orthopaedics*. 2009; 43:117–20.
89. Kibritoglu E, Gulcur HO. Optimization of coil geometries for bone fracture healing via dielectrophoretic force stimulation: a simulation study. Conference proceedings: Annual International Conference of the IEEE Engineering in Medicine and Biology Society. 2015; 2015:6928–34.
90. Ghebes CA, Braham MV, Zeegers AV, Renard AJ, Fernandes H, Saris DB. Means of enhancing bone fracture healing: optimal cell source, isolation methods and acoustic stimulation. *BMC Biotechnology*. 2016; 16:89.
91. Lundeen GA, Dunaway LJ. Immediate unrestricted postoperative weightbearing and mobilization after bone marrow stimulation of large osteochondral lesions of the talus. *Cartilage*. 2017; 8:73–9.
92. Monteleone GP. Stress fractures in the athlete. *Orthopedic Clinics of North America*. 1995; 26:423.
93. Borer KT. Physical activity in the prevention and amelioration of osteoporosis in women: interaction of mechanical, hormonal and dietary factors. *Sports Medicine*. 2005; 35:779–830.
94. Haapala J, Arokoski J, Pirttimaki J, Lyyra T, Jurvelin J, Tammi M, et al. Incomplete restoration of immobilization induced softening of young beagle knee articular cartilage after 50-week remobilization. *International Journal of Sports Medicine*. 2000; 21:76–81.
95. Mutsuzaki H, Nakajima H, Wadano Y, Furuhata S, Sakane M. Influence of knee immobilization on chondrocyte apoptosis and histological features of the anterior cruciate ligament insertion and articular cartilage in rabbits. *International Journal of Molecular Sciences*. 2017; 18(2):253.
96. Itoi E, Hatakeyama Y, Itoigawa Y, Omi R, Shinozaki N, Yamamoto N, et al. Is protecting the healing ligament beneficial after immobilization in external rotation for an initial shoulder dislocation? *The American Journal of Sports Medicine*. 2013; 41:1126–32.
97. Ito Y, Deie M, Adachi N, Kobayashi K, Kanaya A, Miyamoto A, et al. A prospective study of 3-day versus 2-week immobilization period after anterior cruciate ligament reconstruction. *The Knee*. 2007; 14:34–8.
98. Hwang JA, Kim YS, Leem AY, Park MS, Kim SK, Chang J, et al. Clinical implications of sarcopenia on decreased bone density in men with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Chest*. 2016; 151(5):1018–27.
99. Celiker R, Bal S, Bakkaloglu A, Ozaydin E, Coskun T, Cetin A, et al. Factors playing a role in the development of decreased bone mineral density in juvenile chronic arthritis. *Rheumatology International*. 2003; 23:127–9.
100. Belavy DL, Gast U, Felsenberg D. Exercise and transversus abdominis muscle atrophy after 60-d bed rest. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise*. 2017; 49:238–46.

101. Williams JS, Bernard RB. Operative and nonoperative rehabilitation of the ACL-injured knee. *Sports Medicine and Arthroscopy Review*. 1996; 4:69–82.
102. Keays SL, Bullock-Saxton J, Keays AC. Strength and function before and after anterior cruciate ligament reconstruction. *Clinical Orthopaedics and Related Research*. 2000; 373:174–83.
103. Janarv PM, Nystrom A, Werner S, Hirsch G. Anterior cruciate ligament injuries in skeletally immature patients. *Journal of Pediatric Orthopedics*. 1996; 16:673–7.



CHAPTER 5

General Conditions

CHAPTER OBJECTIVES

At the completion of this chapter, the reader will be able to:

1. List the signs and symptoms of fibromyalgia.
2. Describe the symptoms that are manifested in myofascial pain syndrome.
3. Describe the pathologic progression of osteoarthritis.
4. Describe the difference between primary osteoarthritis and secondary osteoarthritis.
5. List some of the signs and symptoms that can be found with osteoarthritis.
6. List some of the signs and symptoms that can be found with rheumatoid arthritis.
7. Describe the differences between primary and secondary osteoporosis.
8. List the signs and symptoms that could indicate a medical emergency in the orthopaedic setting.
9. Outline some of the common causes of edema.
10. Describe some of the medications used in orthopaedics and their potential impact.

Overview

There are a number of orthopaedic conditions that the physical therapist assistant (PTA) is likely to encounter on a regular basis. These conditions have a systemic impact on the patient and are thus afforded their own chapter. Although fibromyalgia (FM) and myofascial pain syndrome (MPS) do not have the same societal and economic burden of the other conditions described in this chapter, both cause generalized body pain and remain extremely elusive regarding etiology and effective treatment. Although FM and MPS share several features, they are considered distinct entities as their physical findings and therapeutic approaches differ. Osteoarthritis (OA), a degenerative joint disease involving the focal loss of articular cartilage and many of its surrounding tissues, can ultimately lead to joint failure with pain and disability. In addition to damage and loss of articular cartilage, there is remodeling of subarticular bone, osteophyte formation, ligamentous laxity, weakening of periarticular muscles, and, in some cases, synovial inflammation.[1] The disease process itself results from the failure of chondrocytes to repair damaged articular cartilage in synovial joints.[2] Rheumatoid arthritis (RA), in contrast, is a chronic, progressive, systemic, inflammatory disease of connective tissue characterized by spontaneous remissions and exacerbations (flare-ups). Unlike OA, RA involves primary tissue inflammation rather than joint degeneration and, of the two, it is the more destructive to synovial joints. Osteoporosis, which is related to various factors, including menopause and aging, is the most common chronic metabolic bone disease and is associated with increased bone fragility. More than

10 million adults in the United States have osteoporosis, 80% of whom are women, however almost 3 million men are affected as well.[3]

The majority of conditions described in this chapter can present with a wide variety of symptoms, some of which can be confusing to the inexperienced clinician, especially given the fact that many insidious diseases can manifest similarly. Differential diagnosis involves the ability to quickly differentiate problems of a serious nature from those that are not, and although it is not the role of the PTA to determine the physical therapy diagnosis, PTAs constantly monitor the status of a patient. Because most of the patients entering the orthopaedic clinic will be taking some form of medication, it is important that the PTA be able to recognize any change in a patient's status that might be due to an adverse reaction to an intervention caused by medication.

Fibromyalgia

FM is a syndrome, not a disease, that affects approximately 2% of the general population and is 10 to 20 times more common in women than in men.[4] FM is a form of nonneuropathic chronic neuromuscular pain, which is characterized by widespread soreness, constitutional symptoms of fatigue, nonrestorative sleep, hyperalgesia, a defined number of tender points, and other disabling symptoms. The pathology and pathophysiology of the FM pain remain elusive.

Normally, the small C fibers in the skin are activated by chemical, mechanical, or thermal stimuli (see Chapter 3) , and the impulses are sent up the spinothalamic tract to the brain where they are processed. However, with FM, the constant bombardment of noxious inputs to C fibers leads to central sensitization.[5] As a consequence, the large, myelinated A-delta fibers begin to carry some of the signals normally transmitted by the C fibers, and the central sensitization further expands to involve autonomically mediated B fibers.

The medical intervention for FM includes cognitive behavioral therapies for those with mood disorders or poor coping strategies and pharmacological therapies for those with severe pain or sleep disturbance.

Implications for the PTA

This population can be especially difficult to treat because of the associated psychological distress with many of these patients. Indeed, the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders* (DSM-5) raises the question of whether FM should be classified as a "somatic symptom disorder" or "mental disorder" as many of these patients have suffered physical or emotional trauma.[6] This theory has been strengthened by the fact that many patients with FM who have received a placebo in a number of randomized controlled trials (RCTs) experienced significantly better improvements in pain, fatigue, sleep quality, physical function, and other key outcomes than those receiving no treatment.[7] However, confusing the issue is the fact that many patients with FM improve with aerobic and strengthening exercises.[4] Until more conclusive evidence comes to light, the recommended treatment approach for this population is a multifaceted one, which includes physical therapy. The PTA should educate the patient about FM, project a positive attitude toward the prognosis, and encourage an increase in activity levels, which can include a slow and gradual progression of aerobic and strengthening exercises.

Myofascial Pain Syndrome

MPS often manifests with symptoms suggestive of neurological disorders, including diffuse pain and tenderness, headache, vertigo, visual disturbances, paresthesias, incoordination, and referred pain that often can be clarified by the musculoskeletal and neurological examination. MPS is characterized by the presence of myofascial trigger points (MTrPs). Although MPS and FM have some overlapping features, they are separate entities. FM is a widespread pain problem and not a regional condition caused by specific MTrPs. An MTrP is a hyperirritable location, approximately 2 to 5 centimeters in diameter, within a taut band of muscle fibers that is painful when compressed and that can give rise to characteristic referred pain, tenderness, and tightness. Current research seems to suggest that sensitization of low-threshold, mechanosensitive afferents associated with dysfunctional motor endplates in the area of the MTrPs project to sensitized posterior (dorsal) horn neurons in the spinal cord.[8]

The appropriate evaluation and management of myofascial pain is an important part of musculoskeletal rehabilitation. The medical intervention for MPS includes the prescription of nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs), short- or long-acting anesthetics, steroids, skeletal muscle relaxants, anticonvulsants, antidepressants, and botulinum type A toxin injections.

Implications for the PTA

The nonpharmacological treatments for MPS include MTrP injections employing dry needling. Manual therapy, including deep-pressure massage, stretch therapy with spray and superficial heat, and myofascial release are commonly used treatments for MPS although there have been no controlled studies proving significant long-term effectiveness.[8] Of the various physical agents and electromechanical modalities, ultrasound has been recommended but although multiple studies of its effectiveness on MPS have been conducted, most demonstrate mixed results.[8] Although transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation (TENS) has been shown to have benefit among the noninvasive therapeutic modalities, there is currently no evidence that supports its use over trigger point injections or medication.[8]

Fortunately, therapeutic exercise, particularly when performed rigorously and with proper caution, is considered to be one of the most significant treatment methods for relief from the symptoms of MPS. The reason for the caution is that if exercise is performed too vigorously, the symptoms can be aggravated. Therefore, a slow and gradual progression of aerobic and strengthening exercises is recommended.

Osteoarthritis

OA, also known as degenerative joint disease (DJD), is a clinical condition of synovial joints, most commonly affecting the knees, hips, hands, facet joints, and feet. OA is characterized by the development of fissures, cracks, and general thinning of joint cartilage; bone damage; hypertrophy of the cartilage; and synovial inflammation. Synovitis is minimal in the early stages of the disease but may contribute to joint damage in advanced disease. OA can be defined as radiological, clinical or subjective:[1]

- *Radiological*. There have been numerous attempts to identify and grade radiographic disease in OA accurately, and it is most widely assessed in studies using the Kellgren and Lawrence (K&L) score, where the overall grades of severity are determined from 0 to 4 and are related to the presumed sequential appearance of osteophytes, joint space loss, sclerosis, and cysts. More recently, studies have begun to examine the concordance of a grading scale (0–4) of medial femoral osteophytes in the knee joint detected by ultrasound (US) compared with the corresponding grades (0–4) of the K&L score of conventional radiography and a clinical joint examination. These studies have found that US can reliably detect the severity of OA in the knee.[9]
- *Clinical*. Clinical OA is defined by features noted in the history and on examination and requires the presence of joint pain in addition to other features.
- *Subjective*. Individuals with early painful OA may be free from radiographic changes and, conversely, those with severe radiographic changes may be entirely asymptomatic. Although there is a correlation between the severity of radiographic disease and symptoms, the association is not strong.

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> Diseases such as OA affect the thixotropic properties* of synovial fluid, resulting in reduced lubrication and subsequent wear of the articular cartilage and joint surfaces.

The degenerative changes associated with OA may result in pain and stiffness of the affected joints. The two commonly recognized types of OA are primary and secondary.

Primary Osteoarthritis

Primary OA, the most common form, has no known cause, although it appears to be related to aging and heredity.[10,11] Most investigators believe that degenerative alterations primarily begin in the articular cartilage as a result of either excessive loading of a healthy joint, or relatively normal loading of a previously disturbed joint. External forces accelerate the catabolic effects of the chondrocytes and disrupt the cartilaginous matrix. The diminished elastic return and reduced contact area of the cartilage, coupled with the cyclic nature of joint loading, cause the situation to worsen over time. These changes render the cartilage less resistant to compressive forces in the joint and more susceptible to the effects of stress, eventually leading to mechanical failure. The loss of cartilage results in a decrease of the joint space, and progressive erosion of the damaged cartilage occurs until the underlying bone is exposed. (See Figure 4.2.) Bone denuded of its protective cartilage continues to articulate with the opposing surface. Eventually, the increasing stresses exceed the biomechanical yield strength of the bone. The subchondral bone responds with vascular invasion and increased cellularity, becoming thickened and dense (eburnation) at areas of pressure. On the nonpressure areas along the articular margin of the joint, ossifying cartilaginous protrusions lead to irregular outgrowth of new bone (osteophytes). An osteophyte, which consists of newly formed cartilage and bone, likely forms in response to abnormal stresses on the joint margin, although its formation

* Thixotropy is the property of various gels becoming fluid when disturbed, as by shaking.

may also occur as a part of the aging process. There is experimental evidence that osteophyte formation is related to the instability of joints, and its growth has been described as part of the attempt of a synovial joint to adapt to injury, limiting excess movement and helping to re-create a viable joint surface.[12] Fragmentation of these osteophytes or of the articular cartilage itself results in intra-articular loose bodies (joint mice).

Primary OA occurs most commonly in the hands, particularly in the distal interphalangeal (DIP) joints, proximal interphalangeal (PIP) joints, and first carpometacarpal (CMC) joints. The pathogenesis of primary OA is multifactorial. Although specific risk factors for OA differ by anatomic joint region, age is the most consistently identified demographic risk factor for all articular sites.[13] Before the age of 50 years, men have a higher prevalence and incidence of this disease than women, but after age 50, women have a higher prevalence and incidence.[13] However, increasing age does not appear to be an absolute risk factor in the development of OA because not every older adult develops OA. The increase in the incidence and prevalence of OA with age is likely a consequence of several biological changes that occur with aging, including the following:

- A decreased responsiveness of chondrocytes to growth factors that stimulate repair
- An increase in the laxity of ligaments around the joints, making older joints relatively unstable, and therefore more susceptible to injury
- A failure of the main shock absorbers or protectors of the joint with age, including a gradual decrease in strength and a slowing of peripheral neurological responses,[14] both of which protect the joint

☑ KEY POINT

- *Heberden nodes*, which represent palpable osteophytes in the DIP joints and are characteristic in women but not men, are features of OA, not RA.
- *Bouchard's nodes*, although less common, are similar structures that may be present in the PIP joints. Inflammatory changes are typically absent or at least not pronounced.

Secondary Osteoarthritis

Secondary OA, which may occur at any age, can arise in any joint as a result of articular injury, including fracture, repetitive joint use, obesity, or metabolic disease (osteoporosis, osteomalacia).[15] OA of the hip and knee represents two of the most significant causes of adult pain and physical disability.[15]

☑ KEY POINT

OA is not a passive process of joint wear and tear, but a metabolically active process.

Whether OA develops appears to depend on a variety of factors, as follows:[15,16]

- *Hormone replacement therapy.* Women receiving hormone replacement therapy have a lower prevalence of OA than women who are not receiving this therapy.
- *Obesity.* Studies have repeatedly confirmed the relationship of OA with body mass index (BMI). Obesity is more often associated with progressive OA of the knee than of the hip.[17]
- *Genetics and family history.* Abundant evidence supports the importance of genetic factors in some subgroups of OA.[18,19]
- *Activity level.* Low activity levels are associated with poorer outcomes, whereas certain forms of exercise are widely believed to increase bone density (bone mass index) in particular areas of the body. For example, the bone mass index can be increased up to 26 percent in some locations by loading the skeleton through physical exercise.[20] Strenuous, high-intensity, and repetitive exercise, both sport and occupational, has been associated with the development of OA, although there appears to be no increased incidence of OA with moderate exercise.
- *Occupation.* Work-related activities that involve repetitive actions have been shown to be correlated with increased rates of OA of the hip, knee, and other joints. Farmers, for example, have high rates of OA of the hip,[15] and epidemiological studies have shown that firefighters, farmers, construction workers, and miners have a higher prevalence of OA of the knee than does the general population.[15] In fact, workers whose jobs require knee bending, as well as lifting or regularly carrying loads of 25 pounds or more, have increased radiological evidence of OA in the knee compared with those workers who do not.[21] This trend has also been shown to hold true for the upper extremity; for example, jackhammer operators exhibit an increased prevalence of OA of the upper extremity when compared with the general population.[22]
- *Muscle loss.* OA causes atrophy proximal to the affected joints because of progressive weakness

and disuse. The loss of supporting muscle may increase the joint load, which can lead to greater cartilage damage, especially in the weight-bearing joints.

- *Trauma.* A prior history of trauma may be a significant risk factor in the development of OA in a joint damaged by ligamentous instability or meniscal tear in the knee.

The signs and symptoms common to all types of OA include the following:

- *Joint pain and tenderness.* Early in the course of the disease, the pain may be poorly localized, asymmetric, and episodic. Deep, achy joint pain exacerbated by extensive use is the primary symptom in the later stages. The severity and frequency of the pain increase as the disease progresses. More severe reports of pain are usually localized to the joint involved, but the pain also may be referred.[16] For example, with hip OA, pain can be referred to the front of the thigh and knee, and with OA of the knee, pain can be referred into the lower leg. Tenderness to palpation over the joint is common but may be mild or absent.
- *Crepitus, swelling, inflammation, synovitis, and joint effusion.* All may be present, although swelling and joint effusion are seen in more advanced stages of OA.
- *Impaired mobility.* This usually includes a characteristic pattern of limitation (capsular pattern), a firm end feel (unless acute; then the end feel may be guarded), decreased and possibly painful joint play, joint malalignment (chronic), and joint swelling (effusion).[23] Early in the disease process, stiffness is experienced in the affected joints following activity resumption after a period of rest. As the disease progresses, pieces of degenerated cartilage may shed into the joint, producing loose bodies that may cause the joint to either lock or give way.[24]
- *Functional limitations.* The ability to perform activities of daily living may be minimally to significantly restricted. When the knee or hip is involved, gait may be impaired. If the fingers are involved, hand function is likely to be affected.
- *Impaired balance.* If the weight-bearing joints are involved, patients may develop balance deficits because of altered or decreased sensory input from the joint mechanoreceptors and muscle spindles.[25]
- *Impaired muscle performance.* The stabilizing muscles often are inhibited when there are swollen or restricted joints, and there may be mechanical imbalances in flexibility and strength of the supporting muscles.[23]

☑ KEY POINT

The Western Ontario and McMaster Universities OA Index (WOMAC) is the most widely used disease-specific instrument for the assessment of patients with hip and knee OA (**TABLE 5.1**).[26,27]

Dramatic spontaneous restoration of the joint space in osteoarthritis is rare, although limited fibrocartilaginous repair is common. Regeneration of the joint space seems to be associated with peripheral osteophyte formation at the joint margin.

Implications for the PTA

Although OA is a prevalent disabling chronic condition, particularly affecting the elderly population, people with OA can benefit from exercise to reduce pain and improve physical function. A typical physical therapy program contains muscle strengthening, functional training, and aerobic exercises delivered with variable frequency, intensity, duration, and delivery mode. The following guidelines are used in the treatment of OA:[23]

- *Patient education.* Includes teaching the patient about the disease process, how to protect the joints while remaining active, and how to manage symptoms.
- *Pain management.* It is important to find a balance between activity and rest and to correct biomechanical stresses in order to prevent, retard, or correct the mechanical limitations. Eventually, pain occurs at rest. At that point it cannot be managed with activity modification and analgesics prescribed by the physician, and surgical intervention becomes an option.
- *Assistive and supportive devices.* The bony remodeling, swelling, and contractures that occur as a result of the progression of the disease alter the transmission of forces to the joint, which further perpetuates the deforming forces and creates a joint deformity. Assistive devices such as a walker, cane, or raised toilet seat may be needed to reduce pain and maintain function.
- *Exercise.* The stronger the muscles around the joint, the greater the protection. However, resistance exercises must be performed within the tolerance of the joint. Aquatic therapy and group-based exercise in water can decrease pain and improve physical function in patients with lower extremity OA.[28] In addition, the patient should be instructed in low-, moderate-, or high-intensity exercises designed to improve cardiopulmonary function.
- *Joint mobility.* Stretching techniques and joint mobilizations can be used to increase joint mobility.

TABLE 5.1 Western Ontario and McMaster Universities Osteoarthritis Index (WOMAC)

Name: ______________________________

Primary Care Physician: ______________________________

This survey asks for your views about the amount of pain, stiffness, and disability you are experiencing. Please answer every question by filling in the appropriate response. If you are unsure about how to answer a question, please give the best answer you can. (Please mark your answers with an "X.")

SECTION A: PAIN

The following questions concern the amount of pain you are currently experiencing due to arthritis in your hips and/or knees. For each situation, please enter the amount of pain recently experienced.

Question: How much pain do you have?

	None	Mild	Moderate	Severe	Extreme
1. Walking on a flat surface	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
2. Going up or down stairs	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
3. At night while in bed	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
4. Sitting or lying	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
5. Standing upright	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐

SECTION B: JOINT STIFFNESS

The following questions concern the amount of joint stiffness (not pain) you are currently experiencing in your hips and/or knees. Stiffness is a sensation of restriction or slowness in the ease with which you move your joints.

	None	Mild	Moderate	Severe	Extreme
1. How severe is your stiffness after first awakening in the morning?	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
2. How severe is your stiffness after sitting, lying, or resting later in the day?	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐

SECTION C: PHYSICAL FUNCTION

The following questions concern your physical function. By this we mean your ability to move around and to look after yourself. For each of the following activities, please indicate the degree of difficulty you are currently experiencing due to arthritis in your hips and/or knees. (Please mark your answers with an "X.")

Question: What degree of difficulty do you have with:

	None	Mild	Moderate	Severe	Extreme
1. Descending stairs	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
2. Ascending stairs	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
3. Rising from sitting	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
4. Standing	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
5. Bending to floor	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
6. Walking on a flat surface	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
7. Getting in/out of car	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
8. Going shopping	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
9. Putting on socks/stockings	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
10. Rising from bed	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐

TABLE 5.1 Western Ontario and McMaster Universities Osteoarthritis Index (WOMAC) *(continued)*

	None	Mild	Moderate	Severe	Extreme
11. Taking off socks/stockings	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
12. Lying in bed	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
13. Getting in/out of bath	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
14. Sitting	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
15. Getting on/off toilet	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
16. Heavy domestic duties	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
17. Light domestic duties	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐

Rheumatoid Arthritis

RA is an inflammatory disease that affects the entire body and the whole person. Juvenile rheumatoid arthritis (JRA) is described in Chapter 26. RA is a life-long disease that, in the majority of people, is modified only somewhat by intervention. The cycle of stretching, healing, and scarring that occurs as a result of the inflammatory process seen in RA causes significant damage to the soft tissues and periarticular structures. (See Figure 4.2.) As a consequence, these events may lead to pain, stiffness, joint damage, instability, and ultimately, deformity. The onset of RA is usually in the small joints of the hands and feet, most commonly in the PIP joints. In the hand, many common deformities can be seen, such as ulnar deviation of the metacarpophalangeal (MCP) joints (ulnar drift), and radial deviation of the CMC block.

Ulnar Drift

The deformity of the ulnar drift and palmar subluxation of the carpals is a result of a complex interaction of forces and damage to collateral ligaments and the extensor mechanism. Clinically, the ulnar drift of the MCP articulations often precedes the wrist deformities. The ulnar drift results in an imbalance that has the resultant effect of pulling the fingers into ulnar deviation, pronation, and palmar subluxation.

Radial Deviation of the CMC Block

This deformity is the result of the forceful action of the radial tendons (i.e., the flexor carpi radialis and the extensors carpi radialis longus and brevis), which radially deviate the CMC block. This deviation increases the angle between the radial border of the second metacarpal and the lower border for the distal radius, resulting in an important loss of muscular power in the flexors.

☑ KEY POINT

Two finger deformities are associated with RA:

- *Boutonnière deformity.* The PIP joint of the finger is flexed, and the DIP joint is hyperextended. (See Chapter 22.)
- *Swan neck deformity.* The DIP joint is hyperflexed and the PIP joint is hyperextended. (See Chapter 22.)

The clinical signs and symptoms of RA include effusion and swelling of the joints, which can cause aching and limited motion. There may be a slight increase in skin temperature over the affected joints. The joint stiffness is prominent in the morning, and there is usually pain on motion, with the pain and stiffness worsening after strenuous activity. With progression, the joints may become deformed and may ankylose or subluxate. These alterations can result in muscle atrophy and weakness, asymmetry in muscle strength, and alterations in the line of pull of muscles and tendons, further exacerbating the deformity. Because RA also can produce diffuse inflammation in the lungs, pericardium, and pleura, the patient may report nonspecific symptoms such as low-grade fever, loss of appetite and weight, malaise, and fatigue.

Implications for the PTA

The goals of the intervention for RA depend on the stage of the disease process (exacerbation/flare-up and remission). During the exacerbation stage, the following guidelines should be used:[23]

- *Energy conservation.* The patient should be advised to respect fatigue and, when tired, to rest to minimize undue stress to all body systems.
- *Joint protection.* The patient should be advised to avoid prolonged static positioning, to use

stronger and larger muscles and joints during activities whenever possible, to use appropriate adaptive equipment, and to monitor activities and stop the discomfort before fatigue begins to develop. Rest in nondeforming positions is encouraged because inflamed joints are easily damaged. The patient is advised on how to intersperse rest with ROM.

- *Therapeutic modalities.* For control of pain and inflammation, use the principles of PRICEMEM (*p*rotection, *r*est, *i*ce, *c*ompression, *e*levation, *m*anual therapy, *e*arly motion, and *m*edications). (See Chapter 4.)
- *Joint mobility.* Joint mobilizations (grade I and II distraction and oscillation techniques) may be performed during this period to help inhibit pain and minimize fluid status. Stretching techniques are not performed when joints are swollen.
- *Functional training.* Modifications may need to be made to activities of daily living in order to protect joints. If necessary, splints and assistive devices should be used to provide protection.
- *Increase or maintain range of motion.* The patient is encouraged to perform active exercises through as much range of motion as possible without stretching. If active exercises are not tolerated, passive range of motion is used.

During the subacute and chronic stages (remission) of RA the intensity of pain, joint swelling, morning stiffness, and systemic effects diminish. These periods may be short in duration, or can last many years. During this time the treatment approach is the same as with any subacute and chronic musculoskeletal disorder except that appropriate precautions must be taken because the pathologic changes in the disease process make the structures more susceptible to damage.[23] Emphasis should be placed on improving function, flexibility, muscle performance, and cardiopulmonary endurance using nonimpact or low-impact conditioning exercises such as swimming and bicycling performed within the tolerance of the patient.

Osteoporosis

Osteoporosis is a systemic skeletal disorder characterized by decreased bone mass and deterioration of bony microarchitecture. In the United States, 52 percent of adults older than age 50 years have low bone mass at the femoral neck or lumbar spine, and 9 percent meet the diagnostic criteria for osteoporosis at one or both sites.[29,30]

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> In the United States, 1.5 million people sustain an osteoporotic fracture annually, and mortality increases 2.8 to 4 times during the first 3 months after a hip fracture.[31]

Osteoporosis results from a combination of genetic and environmental factors that affect both peak bone mass and the rate of bone loss. These factors include medications, diet, race, gender, lifestyle, and physical activity. Because osteoclasts require weeks to resorb bone, whereas osteoblasts need months to produce new bone, any process that increases the rate of bone remodeling results in net bone loss over time. This process results in low bone mineral density (BMD) and an associated increased risk of sustaining a fracture. In Caucasian postmenopausal women, osteoporosis is defined as a BMD value of more than 2.5 standard deviations below the young adult mean value (t score) with or without fractures.[32]

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> Calcium, vitamin D, and parathyroid hormone help maintain bone homeostasis. Insufficient dietary calcium or impaired intestinal absorption of calcium can occur due to aging or disease.

BMD peaks by the third decade of life and slowly decreases afterward, so the failure to attain optimal bone strength by this stage in life is one factor that contributes to osteoporosis. (See Chapter 2.) Therefore, nutrition and physical activity are important during growth and development. Other factors, such as estrogen levels, also play a part.

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> Estrogen deficiency can lead to excessive bone resorption accompanied by inadequate bone formation.

Osteoporosis typically involves the hip, distal arm, and spinal vertebrae and is classified as either primary or secondary. Primary osteoporosis is subdivided into types 1 and 2.

- Type 1, or postmenopausal, osteoporosis is thought to result from gonadal (i.e., estrogen, testosterone) deficiency. Estrogen or testosterone deficiency, regardless of age of occurrence, results in accelerated bone loss. After menopause, women experience an accelerated bone loss of 1 to 5 percent per year for the first 5 to 7 years. The end result is a decrease in trabecular bone and an increased risk of Colles' and vertebral fractures. (See Chapter 14.)

- Type 2, or senile, osteoporosis occurs in women and men because of decreased formation of bone and decreased renal production of 1,25$(OH)_2$ D_3 occurring late in life. The consequence is a loss of cortical and trabecular bone and increased risk of fractures of the hip, long bones, and vertebrae.

Secondary osteoporosis, also called type 3 osteoporosis, occurs secondary to medications, especially glucocorticoids, or other conditions that cause increased bone loss by various mechanisms.

Implications for the PTA

Although the best management of the problems associated with osteoporosis is prevention in susceptible populations, exercise, particularly weight-bearing exercise, has been found to be a key component in the treatment. In adults, exercise has been shown to maintain or increase bone density; in the elderly, it has been demonstrated to reduce the effects of age-related or disease-related bone loss.[33] Weight-bearing exercises are the most beneficial as they apply controlled stresses to the bone.[34,35] These controlled mechanical loads to the bone coupled with muscle contractions deform the bone, which in turn stimulate osteoblastic activity and improve bone mineral density.[36–38] For adults, the American College of Sports Medicine recommends weight-bearing endurance and plyometric exercise 3 to 5 times per week, and resistance exercise of moderate to high loading 2 to 3 times per week for a total of 30 to 60 minutes per day.[39] However, because osteoporosis changes the shape of the vertebral bodies (they become more wedge-shaped), leading to kyphosis, flexion activities and exercises such as supine curl-ups and sit-ups as well as the use of sitting abdominal machines, which stress the spine into flexion and increase the risk of vertebral compression fracture, should be avoided.[23] Similarly, exercises that combine flexion and rotation of the trunk should also be avoided.

Recognizing a Medical Emergency

It is critical that the PTA be able to detect malfunctions of the various systems, often referred to as *red flags*, through observation and receiving subjective complaints. Any of the following should cause immediate concern for the PTA and require consultation with the supervising PT or medical personnel:[40]

☑ KEY POINT

The signs and symptoms of hypoglycemia (low blood sugar of less than 50 mg/dL) include:

- Sweating, unsteadiness, and weakness
- Increased heart rate and lightheadedness
- Headache, fatigue, and impaired vision
- Clumsiness and tingling sensation in the mouth
- Confusion, pallor, and behavior changes

If the PTA suspects hypoglycemia, the patient should be provided with sugar (half a cup of orange juice, a glass of milk, or four or five candies). The supervising PT should be notified. Ideally, to prevent such occurrences, the patient exercise program should be planned in conjunction with food intake and insulin administration, and the patient's glucose levels should be monitored before exercise.

☑ KEY POINT

The signs and symptoms of hyperglycemia (high blood sugar of more than 200 mg/dL) include:

- Fatigue and lethargy
- Blurred vision and dry skin
- Extreme thirst and frequent urination
- Dizziness and increased appetite
- Nausea, vomiting, or abdominal pain

Hyperglycemia can result in ketoacidosis and ultimately a diabetic coma. If hyperglycemia is suspected, the PTA should call for medical assistance, monitor the patient until help arrives, and inform the supervising PT. Ideally, to prevent such occurrences, the patient exercise program should be planned in conjunction with food intake, and insulin should be administered and the patient's glucose levels monitored before exercise.

- *Fatigue.* Complaints of feeling tired or run down are extremely common and therefore often only become significant if the patient reports that tiredness interferes with the ability to carry out typical daily activities and when the fatigue has lasted for 2 to 4 weeks or longer. Many serious illnesses can cause fatigue.
- *Malaise.* A sense of uneasiness or general discomfort that is often associated with conditions that generate a fever.
- *Fever/chills/sweats.* These are signs and symptoms that are most often linked to systemic illnesses

such as cancer, infections, hypoglycemia, and connective tissue disorders such as RA. To qualify as a red flag, the fever should have some longevity (2 weeks or longer).

- *Unexpected weight change.* A sensitive but nonspecific finding that can be a normal physiological response, but also may be associated with depression, cancer, or gastrointestinal disease.
- *Nausea/vomiting.* Persistent vomiting is an uncommon complaint reported in physical therapy because the physician will have already been contacted. However, low-grade nausea can be caused by systemic illness or an adverse drug reaction.
- *Dizziness/lightheadedness.* Dizziness (vertigo) is a nonspecific neurological symptom that requires a careful diagnostic workup. A report of vertigo, although potentially problematic, is not always contraindication to the continuation of the plan of care. Differential diagnosis includes primary central nervous system diseases, vestibular and ocular involvement, and, more rarely, metabolic disorders.[41]
- *Paresthesia/numbness/weakness.* Because motor and sensory axons run in the same nerves, disorders of the peripheral nerves (neuropathies) usually affect both motor and sensory functions. Peripheral neuropathies can manifest as abnormal, frequently unpleasant sensations, which are variously described by the patient as numbness, pins and needles, and tingling. When these sensations occur spontaneously without an external sensory stimulus, they are called *paresthesias*. Patients with paresthesias typically demonstrate a reduction in the perception of cutaneous and proprioceptive sensations.
- *Change in mentation/cognition.* Can be a manifestation of multiple disorders including delirium, dementia, head injury, stroke, infection, fever, and adverse drug reactions. The clinician notes whether the patient's communication level is age appropriate; whether the patient is oriented to person, place, and time; and whether his or her emotional and behavioral responses appear to be appropriate to his or her circumstances.

☑ KEY POINT

Dizziness provoked by head movements or head positions could indicate an inner ear dysfunction. Dizziness provoked by certain cervical motions, particularly extension or rotation, may indicate vertebral artery compromise.

Medical Emergency Diagnoses

The PTA may encounter a number of diagnoses that are recognized as medical emergencies. A knowledge of these diagnoses is essential because early recognition of these conditions can have a significant impact on the prognosis.

Deep Vein Thrombosis

A thrombus, or blood clot, is an obstruction of the venous or arterial system. If a thrombus is located in one of the superficial veins, it is usually self-limiting. Venous thromboembolism is a vascular disease that manifests as deep vein thrombosis (DVT) or pulmonary embolism (PE) (**FIGURE 5.1**).

A DVT most commonly appears in the lower extremity and is typically classified as being either proximal (affecting the popliteal and thigh veins) or distal (affecting the calf veins). Proximal DVT is the more dangerous form of lower extremity DVT because it is more likely to cause a life-threatening PE. A DVT can result from a surgical procedure (e.g., total joint arthroplasty), malignancy, oral contraceptives, prolonged immobility, or a severe fracture (usually pelvic and/or femur).

DVT is caused by an alteration in the normal coagulation system. The *Triad of Virchow* describes the three factors that are thought to contribute to thrombosis and includes hypercoagulability (the result of tissue trauma that produces an imbalance between fibrinolysis and coagulation), hemodynamic changes (stasis, turbulence), and endothelial injury/dysfunction.

The subsequent alteration in the fibrinolytic system, which acts as a system of checks and balances, results in a failure to dissolve the clot. If the clot becomes dislodged, it enters into the circulatory system, through which it can travel to become lodged in the lungs (PE), obstructing the pulmonary artery or branches that supply the lungs with blood. If the clot is large and completely blocks a vessel, it can cause sudden death.

Certain patients are at increased risk for DVT:[42]

- High-risk factors include fracture (e.g., pelvis, femur, tibia), hip or knee replacement, major general surgery, major trauma, or spinal cord injury. A recent study indicated that 17.96 percent of patients undergoing total hip or knee replacement surgery might develop a DVT even with prophylactic antithrombotic therapy.[43]
- Moderate risk factors include arthroscopic knee surgery, central venous lines, chemotherapy, congestive heart or respiratory failure, hormone replacement therapy, malignancy, oral contraceptive therapy, cerebrovascular accident, pregnancy/postpartum, previous venous thromboembolism, and thrombophilia.

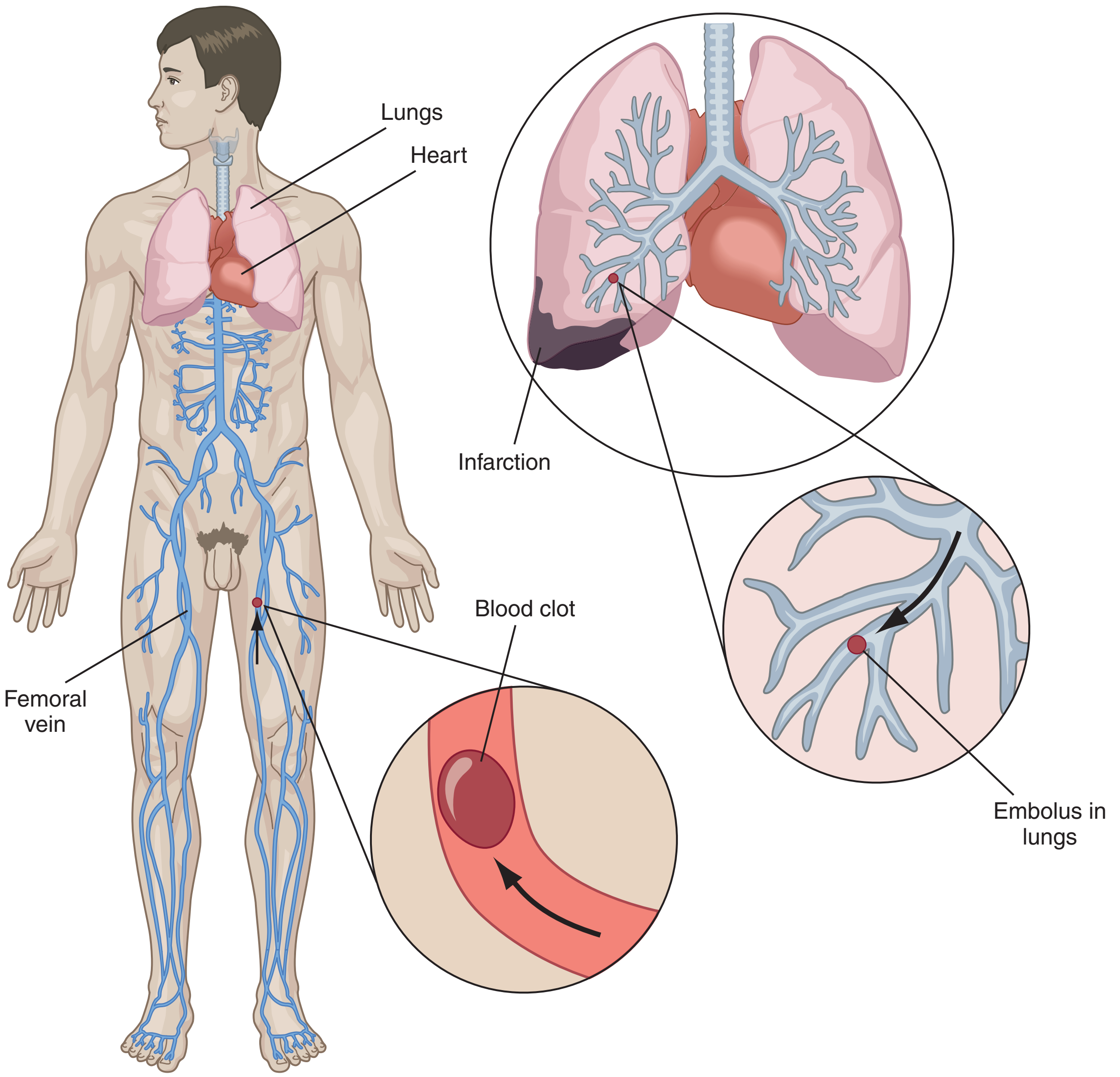


FIGURE 5.1 Blood clot resulting in pulmonary embolism.

- Weak risk factors include bed rest for more than 3 days, immobility due to sitting (e.g., extended air travel), increasing age, laparoscopic surgery, obesity, pregnancy/antepartum, and varicose veins.

☑ KEY POINT

Two-thirds of the fatalities resulting from DVT occur within 30 minutes of the initial symptoms.[44–46] Both DVT and PE can be symptomatic or asymptomatic. Clinical signs of a DVT have traditionally been described as including swelling of the extremity, tenderness or a feeling of cramping of the calf muscles that increases with weight bearing, vascular prominence, elevated temperature in the region of the clot, tachycardia, and inflammation and discoloration or redness of the extremity. However, a purely clinical diagnosis is fraught with a high incidence of false positives and negatives.

The traditional test used to detect a DVT was the Homan's sign—the gentle passive stretching of the ankle into full dorsiflexion. The test was considered positive if the symptoms increase when the ankle is dorsiflexed. However, a positive Homan's sign has been found to be insensitive, nonspecific, and is present in fewer than 30 percent of documented cases of DVT,[46,47] and the performance of the test may increase the risk of producing a PE. The most commonly used method to predict clinical probability, the Wells score, is a clinical prediction rule (**TABLE 5.2**).

Prevention is the key with DVT. Methods of prevention may be classified as pharmacological and nonpharmacological:

- *Pharmacological.* Includes anticoagulant drugs such as low-dose Coumadin (warfarin), low molecular weight heparin, adjusted-dose heparin,

TABLE 5.2 The Wells Score

Criteria	Scoring (if answer is affirmative)
Calf swelling >3 cm compared to the other leg (measured 10 cm below tibial tuberosity)	1.0 point
Collateral (non-varicose) superficial veins present	1.0 point
Entire leg swollen	1.0 point
Localized tenderness along the deep venous system	1.0 point
Pitting edema, confined to the symptomatic leg	1.0 point
Tachycardia	1.5 points
Immobilization for >3 days or major surgery in previous 4 weeks	1.5 points
History of DVT or PE	1.0 point
Hemoptysis	1.0 point
Active malignancy (treatment for within 6 months, palliative)	1.0 point
Alternative diagnosis to DVT as likely or more likely	–2.0 points

Interpretation: Score >3.0 – DVT is likely; consider diagnostic imagingScore of 1.0-2.0 - Moderate risk of DVT.
Score of 0 or lower - DVT unlikely.
Data from Wells P, Anderson D, Rodger M, et al: Derivation of a simple clinical model to categorize patients' probability of pulmonary embolism: Increasing the model's utility with the SimpliREDD-dimer. *Thromb Haemost* 83(3):416–20, 2000.

and heparin-antithrombin III combination; these drugs work by altering the body's normal blood-clotting process.

- *Nonpharmacological.* Attempts to counteract the effects of immobility through early mobilization, calf and foot/ankle exercises, and compression stockings.

Edema

Edema is an observable swelling from fluid accumulation in the tissue spaces of the body. The swelling occurs as a result of changes in the local circulation and an inability of the lymphatic system to maintain equilibrium, which causes an accumulation of excess fluid under the skin in the interstitial spaces or compartments within the tissues that are outside of the blood vessels. Edema can be generalized or localized. Generalized edema is diffused over a larger area and most commonly occurs due to a systemic disorder (e.g., congestive heart failure, renal disease); if it occurs in the feet and legs, it is referred to as peripheral edema.

☑ KEY POINT

The more serious causes of swelling include fracture, tumor, congestive heart failure, compartment syndrome, and DVT.

Injury or trauma to musculoskeletal tissue typically results in localized edema at the site of an injury. In general, the amount of swelling is related to the severity of the condition. Assessment of edema by a PTA involves measurement of the edematous part or extremity. The measurement can occur in one of two ways:

- *Volumetric measurement.* Involves immersing the limb into a specially designed container of fluid, a volumeter, and measuring the amount of water displaced.
- *Tape measurement.* Uses a tape measure to obtain circumferential measurements using recognized landmarks of the affected region (**TABLE 5.3**). For example, at the ankle, the figure-of-eight method is used, which is performed as follows:[48]

    1. The patient is positioned so that the lower leg is supported and the ankle is in the neutral position of dorsiflexion/plantarflexion.
    2. The start of the tape is placed midway between the tendon of the tibialis anterior (just medial and anterior to the medial malleolus on the posterior surface of the ankle) and the lateral malleolus.
    3. The tape is pulled medially toward the distal side of the tuberosity of the navicular.

TABLE 5.3 Examples of Common Tape Measurement Methods for Edema

Body Region	Method
Elbow	A circumferential measurement is made 4 inches (10 centimeters) above the elbow, 2 inches (5 centimeters) above the elbow, at the elbow (from the cubital fossa around the elbow, crossing the olecranon process), 2 inches (5 centimeters) below the elbow, and 4 inches (10 centimeters) below the elbow.
Ankle	Figure-of-eight method: The clinician places a tape measure midway between the tibialis anterior tendon and lateral malleolus. The tape is then drawn medially and is placed just distal to the navicular tuberosity. The tape is then pulled across the arch and just proximal to the fifth metatarsal. The tape is then pulled across the tibialis anterior tendon and around the ankle to a point just distal to the medial malleolus, before finally being pulled across the Achilles tendon and placed just distal to the lateral malleolus and across the start of the tape.

4. The tape can now be drawn across the instep ending proximal to the base of the 5th metatarsal.
5. The tape is then pulled across the tibialis anterior tendon and continues around the ankle joint just distal to the medial malleolus.
6. From the medial malleolus, the tape can be drawn across the Achilles tendon circling around the ankle and ending just distal to the lateral malleolus.
7. From the lateral malleolus, the measurement can be completed where the measurement was begun.

This process should be repeated three times, with the average of the three measurements recorded.

Petersen et al. performed a study to determine the interrater and intrarater reliability of water volumetry and the figure-of-eight method (shown in **FIGURE 5.2**) in subjects with ankle joint swelling, and found high interrater reliability for both the water volumetry (intraclass correlation coefficient [ICC] = 0.99) and the figure-of-eight method (ICC = 0.98). Additionally, intrarater reliability was high (ICCs = 0.98–0.99). The authors concluded that both methods are reliable measures of ankle swelling, although they recommended the figure-of-eight method because of its ease of use, time efficiency, and cost effectiveness. However, water volumetry may be more appropriate when measuring diffuse lower extremity swelling. Edema can also be assessed based on its quality (**TABLE 5.4**). A potentially serious condition involving edema is compartment syndrome (see next section).

Compartment Syndrome

Compartment syndromes, caused by compression of nerves and blood vessels within an anatomic compartment tightly bound with fascia, can be acute or chronic. Chronic compartment syndromes can occur when muscle hypertrophy causes compression. The acute syndrome occurs when fluid accumulation within a closed and unforgiving osseofascial space (compartment) causes neurovascular compression. For example, an acute compartment syndrome can be caused by the application of a tight bandage or plaster cast; a decrease in arterial flow, as in peripheral

FIGURE 5.2 Figure-of-eight measurement for ankle swelling.

TABLE 5.4 Quality Descriptors of Edema

Descriptor	Characteristics
Pitting	Formation of a sustained indentation when the swollen area is compressed. Can be quantified using the following scale: 1+ = barely perceptible/2 mm, disappears rapidly 2+ = somewhat deeper pit/4 mm, disappears in +15 seconds 3+ = deep pit/6 mm, may last 15–30 seconds; dependent extremity is swollen 4+ = very deep pit/8 mm, lasts 30+ seconds, dependent extremity is grossly distorted
Brawny/ nonpitting	Feels hard, tough, thick, or leathery. Is frequently associated with chronic inflammation or systemic pathologies involving fluid shift abnormalities (e.g., congestive heart failure)
Dependent	The fluid shifts in response to gravity. For example, if the patient is lying down, the fluid accumulates on the side of the body in contact with the bed.

vascular disease (PVD); or an increase in venous pressure. A number of recognized acute compartment syndromes exist:

- *Gluteal.* A tense, swollen buttock following a mechanism of severe contusion, such as a fall from a height.[49] The swelling in the buttock can result in necrosis of the gluteal muscles or sciatic neuropathy or both.
- *Thigh.* A pulsating, expanding swelling of the upper thigh.
- *Forearm (Volkmann's ischemic contracture).* Severe pain of the forearm, exacerbated with passive stretch of the forearm muscles.
- *Anterior aspect of the lower leg.* Tenderness along the proximal half of the lower leg, with swelling and tightness over the anterior compartment.
- *Lateral aspect of the lower leg.* Tenderness along the proximal half of the lower leg, with swelling and tightness over the lateral compartment.
- *Posterior aspect of the lower leg.* Acute calf pain with activity that improves with rest.

☑ KEY POINT

An acute compartment syndrome is a medical emergency and requires immediate consultation with the supervising PT. Clinical findings include:[50]

- A swollen and tense tender compartment
- Severe pain exacerbated with passive stretch of the surrounding muscles or with exercise
- Sensory deficits in the involved area
- Motor weakness or paralysis
- Absence of related peripheral pulses

The clinical signs of compartment syndrome can be remembered using the mnemonic of the five Ps: pain, paralysis, paresthesia, pallor, and pulses. Pain, especially when disproportionate, is often the earliest sign, but the loss of normal neurological sensation is the most reliable sign.[51,52]

Integumentary Changes

The integumentary system includes the skin, hair, and nails. Changes in the integumentary system may be manifestations of systemic disorders. Cyanosis in the nails, hands, and feet may be a sign of a central dysfunction (advanced lung disease, pulmonary edema, congenital heart disease, or low hemoglobin level) or peripheral dysfunction (pulmonary edema or venous obstruction).[53] Palpation of the skin, in general, should include assessment of temperature, texture, moistness, mobility, and turgor (degree of fluid loss or dehydration).[53] Skin mobility may be decreased in areas of edema or in scleroderma.

☑ KEY POINT

Skin temperature is best felt over large areas using the back of the clinician's hand.

Viscerogenic Symptoms

Visceral symptoms can be produced by chemical damage, ischemia, or spasm of the smooth muscles. Although not evoked from all viscera, the symptoms are generally described as diffuse and poorly localized and are often accompanied by autonomic reflexes, such as nausea and vomiting. Symptoms arising from problems in the peritoneum, pleura, or pericardium differ from those of other visceral impairments because of the innervation of these structures.

> ☑ **KEY POINT**
>
> A visceral source of the symptoms should always be suspected if the symptoms are not altered with movement or position changes.

Palpatory findings of tenderness, gross abnormal masses, or irregular pulsations are indicative of a broad range of abdominal pathologies, including tumor, obstruction, infection, and abdominal aortic aneurysm.[53] Any of these findings warrant a call to the physician.

> ☑ **KEY POINT**
>
> The clinician should always be alert for the presence of cancer. The most common signs and symptoms of cancer include:
>
> - Unexplained weight loss
> - Fever
> - Constant pain
> - Night pain
> - Fatigue
> - Changes in bowel and/or bladder function
> - Unexplained skin changes

Vasculogenic Symptoms

Vasculogenic symptoms tend to result from venous congestion or arterial deprivation to the musculoskeletal areas. Vasculogenic pain may mimic a wide variety of musculoskeletal, neurological, and arthritic disorders because this type of pain is often worsened by activity.

> ☑ **KEY POINT**
>
> Clinical evidence of arterial insufficiency includes lower calf pain with walking, extremity asymmetry, skin condition changes, skin temperature and color changes, and diminishing pulses. Venous insufficiency is characterized by leg aching, swelling, cramping, heaviness, and soreness, which are improved by walking or by elevating the legs.

The term *intermittent claudication* is used to describe activity-related discomfort associated with peripheral artery disease (PAD). The blood supply of the lumbar and sacral plexuses usually derives from branches of the internal iliac artery (iliolumbar artery, superior and inferior gluteal artery, and lateral sacral artery) and the deep iliac circumflex artery. Acute ischemic impairments of the lumbosacral plexus are caused by high-grade stenosis and occlusion of the iliac arteries or of the distal abdominal aorta.

Patients suffering from intermittent claudication often experience an effort-related cramp in the calves, thighs, and buttocks, which disappears at rest. Other signs and symptoms include pallor, a decrease in peripheral pulses, sensory changes, and weakness of the affected area distal to the site of blocked circulation.

> ☑ **KEY POINT**
>
> Unlike the pain from spinal stenosis, the pain from PVD is not relieved by trunk flexion or aggravated with sustained trunk extension.

Pain may occur at more regular intervals as the disease process continues to its end stage—critical limb ischemia—until finally, it occurs when the patient is at rest (rest pain). At this stage, rest pain is usually worse when the legs are elevated and during sleep, with the patient gaining relief by hanging the foot over the side of the bed. The development of nonhealing wounds or gangrene (tissue death) may occur at this stage. The diagnosis is confirmed by changes in the lumbar motor-evoked potentials after exertion. These changes exclude the diagnosis of ischemia of the lower spinal cord or conus medullaris. The PTA must report any significant changes in the resting vascular signs and symptoms or during exercise to the PT or physician. **TABLE 5.5** outlines the general signs and symptoms that warrant the discontinuation of a physical therapy intervention.

Infection

The most common type of infection encountered by PTAs is a nosocomial infection. A nosocomial infection, also referred to as a healthcare associated or hospital-acquired infection (HAI), is one that is contracted because of a viral, bacterial, or fungal pathogen that exists in a certain location, such as a hospital. The source of infection can include an endotracheal tube, intravascular or Foley catheter, insufficient surgical prophylaxis, open fracture or wound, ineffective handwashing by healthcare workers, and patient to patient transfer. Treatment typically involves prevention and antibiotic/antifungal/antiviral therapy as appropriate.

TABLE 5.5 The General Signs and Symptoms That Warrant the Discontinuation of a Physical Therapy Intervention

Temperature	>100°F
Systolic BP	>240 mm Hg
Diastolic BP	>110 mm Hg
Fall in systolic BP	More than 20 mm Hg
Rise in HR	More than 220 – age
Resting HR	More than 130 bpm or less than 40 bpm
Oxygen saturation (the percentage of hemoglobin binding sites in the bloodstream occupied by oxygen)	Less than 90%. At low partial pressures of oxygen, most hemoglobin is deoxygenated. An SaO_2 (arterial oxygen saturation) value below 90% causes hypoxemia.
Blood glucose	More than 250 mg/dL

Data from Dreeben O: *Introduction to Physical Therapy for Physical Therapist Assistants.* Sudbury, MA, Jones & Bartlett Learning, 2007.

Today, hospitals have sanitation protocols regarding uniforms, equipment sterilization, and thorough handwashing and/or use of alcohol rubs by all medical personnel before and after each patient contact. In addition, due to increased microbial resistance to antibiotics (e.g., MRSA, a resistant strain of *Staphylococcus aureus*), there is a more careful use of antimicrobial agents. It is important that the PTA be able to recognize the signs and symptoms of infection, particularly postsurgical infection, which can often be detected by examining the suture site for the following:

- Localized edema, erythema, and heat
- Cellulitis
- Abscess
- Discharge, which may be viscous in nature, discolored and purulent
- Delayed healing
- Discoloration of tissue both within and at the suture margins
- Abnormal smell
- Wound breakdown

If an infection is suspected, the PTA should notify the supervising PT as soon as possible.

Laboratory Values

Although PTAs are not involved in the administration or interpretation of laboratory values, an understanding of normal lab values is essential when reviewing medical charts and other documentation. Laboratory tests can be used for screening, diagnosing, and monitoring patient health and disease. A laboratory test result is interpreted using a reference range appropriate for the age and gender of the patient; the range is the interval between and including the lower and upper reference limits. Reference ranges of the more common laboratory values are provided in Appendix D. The traditional reference range for a quantitative test is the range of values of the central 95 percent of the healthy population.[54]

Musculoskeletal Pharmacology

A drug is any substance that can be used to modify a chemical process or processes in the body, for example, to treat an illness, relieve a symptom, enhance performance or ability, or alter states of mind. Drug therapy (**TABLE 5.6**) is one of the mainstays of modern treatments, and PTAs often encounter patients who are taking various medications. These medications may be administered to treat preexisting conditions that are not directly related to the condition being treated with physical therapy, but they can nonetheless have an impact on the patient's response to rehabilitation.[55] Drugs that are frequently encountered in orthopaedics can be classified in a number of ways (**TABLE 5.7**). As PTAs monitor the effects of their interventions, they also must understand the effect and potential interactions of all available and reasonable resources, including pharmacological interventions, offered by other members of the healthcare team.

Controlled substances are drugs classified according to their potential for abuse. These drugs are regulated under the Controlled Substances Act, which classifies these compounds into schedules from I to V (**TABLE 5.8**). A black box warning (also sometimes called a black label warning or boxed warning), named for the black border that usually surrounds the text of the warning, appears on the package insert for prescription drugs that carry a significant risk of serious or even life-threatening adverse effects. The U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) can require a pharmaceutical company to place a black box warning on the labeling of a prescription drug, or in the literature describing it. It is the strongest warning that the FDA requires.

TABLE 5.6 Pharmacology Terms and Definitions

Term	Definition
Pharmacology	The science of studying both the mechanisms and the actions of drugs to evaluate their potential therapeutic uses
Pharmacy	The mixing and dispensing of drugs The monitoring of drug prescriptions for appropriateness and the monitoring of patients for adverse drug interactions
Pharmacotherapeutics	The use of chemical agents to prevent, diagnose, and cure disease
Pharmacokinetics	The study of how the body absorbs, distributes, metabolizes, and eliminates a drug
Pharmacodynamics	The study of the biochemical and physiological effects of drugs and their mechanisms of action at the cellular or organ level
Pharmacotherapy	The treatment of a disease or condition with drugs
Pharmacogenetics	The study of how variation in human genes leads to changes in our response to drugs; helps direct therapeutics according to a person's genotype
Toxicology	A study of the adverse effects of chemicals on living things, including cells, plants, animals, and humans

Drugs are widely used in the management of infection, both acute and chronic pain, and inflammation. The following discussion emphasizes those drugs that are prescribed to control infection, pain, and/or inflammation.

☑ KEY POINT

In the absence of data supporting a therapeutic benefit, toxicity can be associated with any drug, including herbal supplements.

Antibacterial Drugs

Bacteria are unicellular organisms that consist of a cell wall, sometimes a membrane, DNA without a nuclear envelope, and protoplasm containing metabolites and enzymes. Drugs that affect these microorganisms are called antibacterial or antibiotic drugs and are relatively specific for bacteria only. Most antibacterial drugs have five major sites of action as follows:

1. Inhibition of synthesis and/or damage to the bacterial cell wall
2. Inhibition of synthesis and/or damage to the cytoplasmic membrane
3. Modification of synthesis and/or metabolism of microbial nucleic acids
4. Inhibition or modification of microbial protein synthesis by disrupting ribosomal function
5. Inhibition or modification of microbial cell metabolism

Antibacterials/antibiotics are among the most frequently prescribed medications in modern medicine. Although there are well over 100 antibiotics, the majority comes from only a few types of drugs. The main classes of antibiotics are outlined in **TABLE 5.9**. In orthopaedics, antibiotics are commonly used to treat general bone infections (e.g., osteomyelitis) and joint infections (e.g., septic arthritis), for preoperative surgical prophylaxis, and for fracture management with internal fixation.

☑ KEY POINT

Despite excellent antibiotics and preventive treatments, patients who undergo a joint replacement can develop an infection, which will often require removal of the implanted joint in order to treat the infection effectively.

TABLE 5.7 Drug Classifications

Term	Definition
Antibiotics	These include penicillins, cephalosporins, tetracyclines, aminoglycosides, quinolones, and fluoroquinolones. Antibiotics work in one of five ways: I, increase in cell membrane permeability; II, inhibition of cell wall synthesis; III, blocking of DNA metabolism; IV, inhibition of ribosomes; V, antimetabolic action.
Corticosteroids	These anti-inflammatory agents work by decreasing lymphocytes, basophils, and monocytes while inhibiting the migration of leukocytes and suppressing production of prostaglandins and leukotrienes.
Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs)	These drugs exert their effect by inhibition of the arachidonic acid metabolic enzyme cyclooxygenase (COX) and are thus known as COX inhibitors. Two types of COX inhibitors are recognized: COX-1, work through inhibition of prostaglandin secretion, which can cause gastrointestinal (GI) toxicity. COX-2, inhibit COX-1 protective prostaglandin secretion.
Para-aminophenol derivatives	Of the para-aminophenol derivatives, only acetaminophen (Tylenol) is widely used. Acetaminophen is not typically classified as a NSAID because of its lack of an anti-inflammatory effect (it does not inhibit prostaglandin synthesis in peripheral tissues).
Opioid analgesics	Narcotics used in medicine that are derived directly from opium or are synthetic opiates. Opioid analgesics are more effective in controlling pain of a constant duration than sharp, intermittent pain.
Disease modifying antirheumatic drugs (DMARDs)	Sometimes referred to as slow-acting antirheumatic drugs (SAARDs), a group of drugs that appears to decrease inflammation, although they are not categorized as anti-inflammatory drugs. DMARDs differ from NSAIDs in that they do not decrease prostaglandin production, do not directly relieve pain, nor reduce fever. In effect, DMARDs slow the disease process by modifying the immune system.
Skeletal muscle relaxants	Thought to act by decreasing muscle tone without causing impairment in motor function and by acting centrally to depress polysynaptic reflexes.

TABLE 5.8 Controlled Substances

Schedule	Description
I	These drugs are available only for research. They have a high abuse potential, leading to dependence without any acceptable medical indication. Examples include heroin, LSD, and marijuana.
II	These drugs also have a high abuse potential but also have accepted medical uses. Examples include amphetamines, morphine, and oxycodone.
III	Although these drugs have a lower abuse potential and dosing schedule than schedules I or II, they also may be abused and can result in some physical and psychological dependence. Examples include mild to moderately strong opioids, barbiturates, and steroids.
IV	These drugs have less of an abuse potential. No more than five refills within 6 months are allowed under one prescription. Examples include opioids, benzodiazepines, and some stimulants.
V	These drugs have the lowest abuse potential and often are available without a prescription. Examples include various cold and cough medicines containing codeine.

TABLE 5.9 Antibiotics

Type	Action	Examples	Implications for Physical Therapy
Penicillin	Bactericidal agent; acts by inhibiting cell membrane synthesis.	Penicillin and amoxicillin	Advise patients to follow prescription schedule strictly and to continue taking drugs even if clinical signs or symptoms have subsided. Adhere to drug warnings that tetracyclines and quinolones must be taken as prescribed because their use with food or antacids can render them ineffective.
Cephalosporin	Bactericidal agent; mainly used to counter staphylococcal organisms	Cephalexin (Keflex)	Notify supervising PT if the patient exhibits an unexplained rash or abdominal discomfort.
Aminoglycosides	Bactericidal agent; generally effective against aerobic gram-negative bacteria (*Klebsiella, Pseudomonas, Escherichia coli*)		Advise the patient to avoid exposure to sunlight because these drugs can cause photosensitization.
Macrolide	Bacteriostatic agent; inhibits organism replication and is used to counter organisms such as *Chlamydia, Clostridium, Staphylococcus aureus*, and *Bacteroides*	Erythromycin (E-Mycin), clarithromycin (Biaxin), and azithromycin (Zithromax)	
Quinolone	Bacteriostatic agent; broadly effective against all gram-negative rods (e.g., *E. coli*, salmonella, and *Pseudomonas*)	Ciprofloxacin (Cipro), levofloxacin (Levaquin), and ofloxacin (Floxin)	
Sulfonamide	Bacteriostatic agent; prescribed for the treatment of certain urinary tract infections but also for other (nonorthopaedic-related) infections	Co-trimoxazole (Bactrim) and trimethoprim (Proloprim)	
Tetracycline	Bacteriostatic agent; rarely used in the treatment of orthopaedic infections	Tetracycline (Sumycin, Panmycin) and doxycycline (Vibramycin)	

In general, antibacterial drugs can cause nausea, vomiting, allergic reactions, and superinfections.

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> Healthcare professionals have been shown to be a primary source of spreading infections. These are referred to as *nosocomial infections*. Between patients, gloves worn by the PTA should be discarded, hands should be washed with soap for at least 15 to 30 seconds, or disinfecting solutions should be used to minimize the spread of infection.

Opioid Analgesics

Most of the narcotics used in medicine are referred to as opioids because they are derived directly from opium or are synthetic opiates. Examples of these opioids include codeine, Darvon (propoxyphene hydrochloride), morphine, and Demerol (meperidine).

Nonopioid Analgesics

Cyclooxygenase (COX) is an enzyme responsible for the formation of important biological mediators called prostanoids, including prostaglandins, prostacyclin, and thromboxane. Pharmacological inhibition of COX can provide relief from the symptoms of inflammation and pain. The main COX inhibitors are the NSAIDs, including Voltaren (diclofenac), Relafen (nabumetone), Naprosyn (naproxen), Motrin (ibuprofen), Indocin (indomethacin), Feldene (piroxicam), Lodine (etodolac), Celebrex (celecoxib), and many others.

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> Different tissues express varying levels of COX-1 and COX-2. Although both enzymes act primarily in the same fashion, selective inhibition can make a difference in terms of side effects.

The NSAIDs are not selective and inhibit all types of COX. The resulting inhibition of prostaglandin and thromboxane synthesis has the effect of reducing inflammation as well as causing antipyretic, antithrombotic, and analgesic effects. The most frequent adverse effect of this class of medication is an irritation of the gastric mucosa, a direct effect of inhibition of prostaglandin synthesis, which normally has a protective role in the GI tract.

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> NSAIDs currently are the medication of choice to help control the inflammatory process at initial presentation. It has not been proven that these agents have a particular effect on fibroblast function or on connective tissue healing.[55] However, the analgesic effects of the anti-inflammatory medications make it easier to rehabilitate injured structures, as well as the muscles in the surrounding kinematic chain and can help curb further inflammatory response as patients increase their activity level.[55]

NSAIDs also may alter kidney blood flow by interfering with the synthesis of prostaglandins in the kidneys that are involved in the autoregulation of blood flow and glomerular filtration.[55]

Because COX-2 is usually specific to inflamed tissue, there is much less gastric irritation associated with COX-2 inhibitors, with a decreased risk of peptic ulceration. Currently, the only COX-2 inhibitor available in the United States is celecoxib [Celebrex]. The selectivity of COX-2 does not seem to negate other side effects of NSAIDs, most notably an increased risk of renal failure, and there is evidence that indicates an increase in the risk for heart attack, thrombosis, and stroke through an increase of thromboxane unbalanced by prostacyclin (which is reduced by COX-2 inhibition).

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> Acetaminophen (paracetamol) is not a NSAID and acts via different mechanisms. Although acetaminophen has the analgesic and antipyretic properties of the NSAIDs, it lacks the anti-inflammatory or antithrombotic properties. An example of acetaminophen is Tylenol. Acetaminophen is broken down in the body by the liver, unlike NSAIDs, which are removed via the kidneys and have very different side effects.

Corticosteroids

Corticosteroids are natural anti-inflammatory hormones produced by the adrenal glands under the control of the hypothalamus. An injection of corticosteroids can be used to decrease pain at the site of inflammation, at least temporarily.

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> Leadbetter[56] reviewed the literature on the use of injections of corticosteroids to treat sports-related injuries. He concluded that such intervention should remain a form of adjunctive therapy and not the sole means of intervention.

Synthetic corticosteroids (cortisone, dexamethasone) are commonly used to treat a broad range of immunological and inflammatory musculoskeletal conditions. Corticosteroids exert their anti-inflammatory effects by binding to a high-affinity intracellular cytoplasmic receptor present in all human cells.[57] As a result, these agents are capable of producing undesirable and sometimes severe systemic adverse effects that may offset clinical gains in many patients. The side effects from corticosteroids emulate those from exogenous hypercortisolism, which is similar to the clinical syndrome of Cushing's disease. These side effects include the following:[58]

- *Cutaneous manifestations.* Cutaneous manifestations of hypercortisolism include delayed wound healing, acanthosis nigricans (a velvety, thickened, hyperpigmented plaque that usually occurs on the neck or in the axillary region), acne, ecchymosis after minor trauma, hyperpigmentation, hirsutism, petechial, and striae.
- *Hypokalemia.* Hypokalemia is a well-recognized side effect of corticosteroid therapy and is probably related to the mineralocorticoid effect of hydrocortisone, prednisone, and prednisolone. Dexamethasone has no mineralocorticoid effect.
- *Myopathy.* There are two recognized forms of corticosteroid-induced myopathy: acute and chronic. Severe myopathy may in part be caused by hypokalemia, although corticosteroids (especially large dosages) may have a direct effect on skeletal muscle. Both proximal and distal muscle weakness occur acutely, usually with an associated and significant elevation in serum creatinine phosphokinase, which is indicative of focal and diffuse muscle necrosis. In the more chronic form of myopathy, weakness is more insidious in onset and primarily involves proximal muscle groups.
- *Hyperglycemia.* Although it is not clear how corticosteroid use causes it, hyperglycemia, especially when combined with the immunosuppressive effect of corticosteroids, may significantly increase the risk for infection.
- *Neurological impairments.* These can include vertigo, headache, convulsions, and benign intracranial hypertension.
- *Osteoporosis.* Corticosteroids inhibit bone formation directly via inhibition of osteoblast differentiation and type I collagen synthesis and indirectly by inhibition of calcium absorption and enhancement of urinary calcium excretion.
- *Ophthalmological side effects.* Corticosteroids increase the risk of glaucoma by increasing intraocular pressure, regardless of whether administered intranasal, topically, periocularly or systemically.
- *Growth suppression.* Corticosteroids interfere with bone formation, nitrogen retention, and collagen formation, all of which are necessary for anabolism and growth.

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> Pain medications and NSAIDs including corticosteroids can mask signs and symptoms, thereby affecting examination findings and increasing the potential for injury during the performance of prescribed exercises.[59] However, if the patient has a significant amount of pain, appropriate use of these medications may enhance treatment, allowing a more rapid progression than would otherwise be possible. As the patient improves, the need for these drugs should lessen.

Muscle Relaxants

Muscle relaxants, such as Robinin and Soma, are thought to decrease muscle tone without impairment in motor function by acting centrally to depress polysynaptic reflexes. Because muscle guarding and spasm accompany many musculoskeletal injuries, it was originally thought that these drugs, by preventing the spasm and guarding, would facilitate the progression of a rehabilitation program. However, other drugs with sedative properties, such as barbiturates, also depress polysynaptic reflexes, making it difficult to assess if centrally acting skeletal muscle relaxants actually are muscle relaxants as opposed to nonspecific sedatives.[60] A description of most common drugs, their indications, and their implications to physical therapy is provided in **TABLE 5.10**.

TABLE 5.10 The Most Common Drugs, Their Indications, Mechanism of Action, and Implications for Physical Therapy

Drug	Indications	Mechanism of Action	Implications
ACE inhibitors	Hypertension Congestive heart failure Diabetic nephropathy Migraine headaches	Inhibit ACE (angiotensin-converting enzyme), which causes less stimulation of angiotensin receptors, blood vessel dilation, and a fall in blood pressure	Advise patients to change positions and get up slowly because orthostatic hypotension may occur. Notify the physician if the patient complains of a sore throat (an early warning sign of agranulocytosis).
α agonists	Nasal congestion Allergic conditions Bronchoconstriction	Stimulate α agonist receptors resulting in constriction of blood vessels (with increased peripheral resistance and increased blood pressure), and prevent urinary outflow	Some of these drugs are available OTC, and patients often assume that OTC drugs are safe. Advise older men that use of OTC α agonists can lead to urinary hesitancy or even retention in the presence of benign prostatic hyperplasia. Inquire about the use of OTC medications that contain α agonists if you notice that blood pressure has increased in a patient.
α blockers	Hypertension Benign prostatic hyperplasia	Block α agonist receptors resulting in dilation of blood vessels (with decreased peripheral resistance and decreased blood pressure), and increased urinary outflow	Advise patients to change positions and get up slowly because orthostatic hypotension may occur. Monitor patients after strenuous exercise because of the risk of a hypotensive episode.
Antiarrhythmic drugs	Arrhythmias/dysrhythmias	These drugs can affect the movement of electrical and muscular activity of the heart. There are four major classes: ■ Sodium channel blockers ■ β blockers ■ Drugs that slow the efflux of potassium ■ Calcium channel blockers	Advise patients to adhere to the prescribed dosing strictly, and avoid caffeine. Monitor patients for peripheral edema or dyspnea. Advise patients to change positions and get up slowly because orthostatic hypotension may occur.
Anticholinergics	Arrhythmias Peptic ulcer and irritable bowel syndrome Urinary bladder hypermobility Asthma Parkinson's disease	Inhibit muscarinic (M) cholinergic receptors, thereby reducing the action of acetylcholine resulting in increased heart rate and contractility, dilation of bronchial muscles, and decreased gut and bladder activity	Expect some increases in heart rate in all patients and some mental confusion in older patients. Keep the exercise environment cool because these patients have a decreased ability to sweat and lose heat.

TABLE 5.10 The Most Common Drugs, Their Indications, Mechanism of Action, and Implications for Physical Therapy *(continued)*

Drug	Indications	Mechanism of Action	Implications
β blockers	Angina pectoris Hypertension Arrhythmias	Bronchial constriction, blood vessel constriction, decreased heart rate, and decreased systolic blood pressure	When exercising a patient, be aware that because the heart rate will be reduced by the drug, the use of target heart rate needs to be altered accordingly.
Corticosteroids	Inflammation Adrenocortical insufficiency	Multiple metabolic effects on glucose, carbohydrate, and lipid metabolism as well as on inflammatory processes	Observe standard precautions with patients on long-term, high-dose steroid therapy due to the likelihood of a weakened immune system. Be aware of the association between osteoporosis and long-term, high-dose steroid therapy. Be aware that steroid injections can weaken ligaments and tendons. Monitor blood pressure in these patients because hypertension can be a side effect.
Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs)	General inflammation Dysmenorrhea Fever Ocular inflammation	*See text*	Advise the patient that these drugs must be used with caution. NSAIDs may mask pain during exercises. Notify supervising PT if the patient complains about stomach problems, upper respiratory infection, muscle aching, a rash with blisters, or any indications of dermatitis.
Opioid analgesics	Moderate to severe pain Therapy for opioid dependence and withdrawal	Stimulation of opioid receptors in the CNS, which can prevent pain impulses from reaching their final destination	Analgesics may mask pain during exercises. Monitor patients for drowsiness and respiratory depression. Advise patients to change positions and get up slowly because orthostatic hypotension may occur.
Skeletal muscle relaxants	Spasticity Spasm Malignant hyperthermia/tetanus/seizures/neuralgia/cosmetic purposes (Botox)	Enhance the action of the inhibitory GABA system and reduce muscle tone Suppress polysynaptic reflex activity Suppress calcium release from the sarcoplasmic reticulum in skeletal muscles	Monitor patients who have previously used extensor spasticity to maintain balance. Monitor all patients when walking or getting up because drowsiness and muscle weakness can cause falls.

Data from Vogel W: Introduction to pharmacology, in Sueki D, Brechter J (eds): *Orthopedic Rehabilitation Clinical Advisor*. St Louis, MO, Mosby, 2010, pp. 873–922.

Learning Portfolio

Case Study

Your supervising PT is having a brainstorming session with you about a patient you have on your schedule. The patient is a 62-year-old female with bilateral osteoarthritis of the knees, and the PT is asking you to list the key components for a plan of care for this patient.

1. Provide a list, in order of importance, of all of the components that could be used with this patient.

At the end of the treatment session, you want to provide some patient education.

2. What topics do you feel would be important to discuss with the patient?

By chance, after the patient leaves, you happen to see her in the car park and notice that she appears to be having difficulty walking even though while in the clinic she had demonstrated no such problems.

3. What would be your course of action?

That evening, you are giving a presentation to a local retirement group. The goal of your presentation is to describe the differences between osteoarthritis and rheumatoid arthritis.

4. List all of the differences between osteoarthritis and rheumatoid arthritis.

Review Questions

1. **True or false:** Osteoarthritis is a chronic, progressive, systemic, inflammatory disease of connective tissue, which is characterized by spontaneous remissions and exacerbations (flare-ups).
2. Which is the most common chronic metabolic bone disease characterized by increased bone fragility?
   a. Osteoarthritis
   b. Osteoporosis
   c. Osteocalcin
   d. Osteopenia
3. Which of the following statements is true when describing fibromyalgia (FM)?
   a. FM is a disease.
   b. FM is a form of no neuropathic chronic neuromuscular pain.
   c. The pathology and pathophysiology of the pain associated with FM is well understood.
   d. All of these are true.
4. Which of the following statements is true when describing myofacial pain syndrome (MPS)?
   a. MPS is characterized by the presence of myofascial trigger points.
   b. The terms FM and MPS describe the same entity.
   c. MPS is largely psychosomatic.
   d. All of these are true.
5. **True or false:** Therapeutic exercise, particularly when performed with controlled rigor is considered to be one of the most significant treatment methods for relief from the symptoms of MPS.
6. All of the following are true statements about osteoarthritis (OA) *except*:
   a. OA is degenerative joint disease.
   b. OA most commonly affects the knees, hips, hands, facet joints, and feet.
   c. OA can be defined as radiological, clinical, or subjective.
   d. All of these are true.
7. All of the following are true statements about rheumatoid arthritis (RA) *except*:
   a. RA is an inflammatory disease that affects the entire body and the whole person.
   b. RA is a life-long disease.
   c. RA can cause significant damage to the soft tissues and periarticular structures.
   d. RA usually starts in the large synovial joints.
8. All of the following are true statements about osteoporosis *except*:
   a. Osteoporosis typically involves the hip, distal arm, and spinal vertebrae.
   b. Osteoporosis is classified as either primary, secondary, or tertiary.
   c. Nutrition and physical activity are important during growth and development in helping to prevent osteoporosis.
   d. Primary osteoporosis is more common in women.
9. **True or false:** Weight-bearing exercises are the most beneficial form of exercise for a patient with osteoporosis.

10. All of the following are signs that could indicate a potential medical emergency except:
    a. An unexpected weight change
    b. Dizziness provoked by head movements but not provoked by neck movements
    c. A change in a patient's cognition level
    d. Vomiting
11. All of the following are true statements about a deep vein thrombosis (DVT) *except*:
    a. DVT is caused by an alteration in the normal coagulation system.
    b. A DVT most commonly appears in the lower extremity.
    c. A DVT can result in a pulmonary embolism (PE).
    d. The best way to detect a DVT is to use the Homan's sign.
12. All of the following are true statements about edema *except*:
    a. Edema is an observable swelling from fluid accumulation in the tissue spaces of the body.
    b. Generalized edema is diffused over a larger area and most commonly occurs due to a systemic disorder.
    c. Dependent edema produces a sustained indentation when the swollen area is compressed.
    d. Brawny or nonpitting edema feels hard, tough, thick, or leathery, and is frequently associated with chronic inflammation or systemic pathologies.
13. All of the following are clinical findings associated with a compartment syndrome *except*:
    a. A swollen and tense tender compartment
    b. Sensory and motor deficits in the involved area
    c. No loss of related peripheral pulse(s)
    d. Severe pain, exacerbated with exercise
14. **True or false:** The most common type of infection found in a healthcare setting is a nosocomial infection.
15. All of the following are true statements about drugs *except*:
    a. Controlled substances are drugs classified according to their potential for abuse.
    b. A drug is any substance that can be used to modify a chemical process or processes in the body.
    c. Drugs are widely used in the management of infection, both acute and chronic pain, and inflammation.
    d. All of these are true statements.

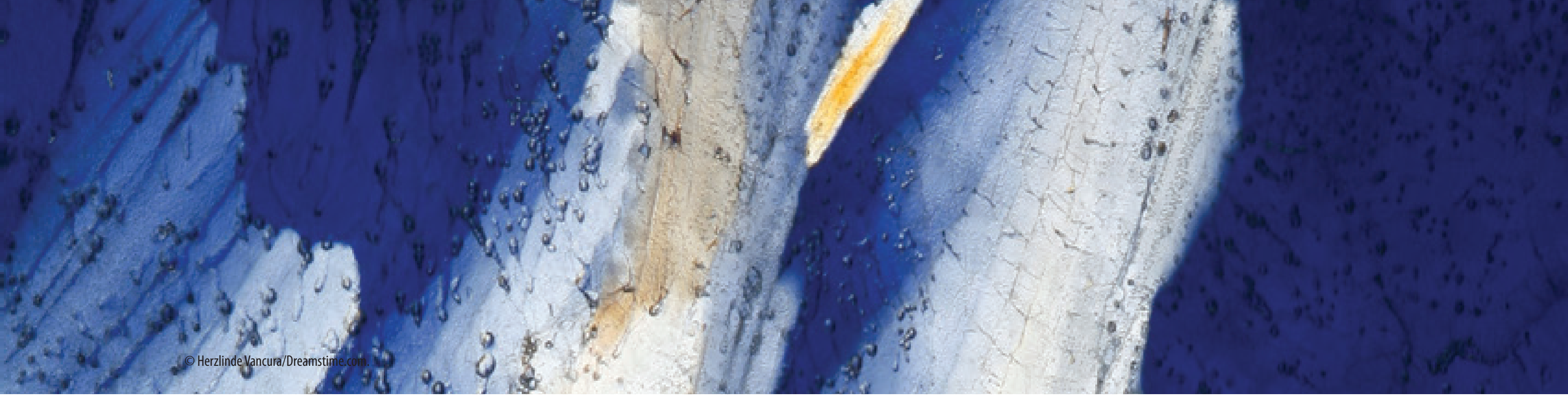
References

1. Litwic A, Edwards MH, Dennison EM, Cooper C. Epidemiology and burden of osteoarthritis. *British Medical Bulletin*. 2013; 105:185–99.
2. Barry F, Murphy M. Mesenchymal stem cells in joint disease and repair. *Nature Reviews Rheumatology*. 2013; 9:584–94.
3. Cosman F, de Beur SJ, LeBoff MS, Lewiecki EM, Tanner B, Randall S, et al. Clinician's guide to prevention and treatment of osteoporosis. *Osteoporosis International*. 2014; 25:2359–81.
4. Hauser W, Ablin J, Perrot S, Fitzcharles MA. Management of fibromyalgia: practical guides from recent evidence-based guidelines. *Polish Archives of Internal Medicine*. 2017; 127:47–56.
5. Wallace DJ. Is there a role for cytokine based therapies in fibromyalgia. *Current Pharmaceutical Design*. 2006; 12:17–22.
6. Klaus K, Fischer S, Doerr JM, Nater UM, Mewes R. Classifying fibromyalgia syndrome as a mental disorder? An ambulatory assessment study. *International Journal of Behavioral Medicine*. 2017; 24:230–8.
7. Chen X, Zou K, Abdullah N, Whiteside N, Sarmanova A, Doherty M, et al. The placebo effect and its determinants in fibromyalgia: meta-analysis of randomised controlled trials. *Clinical Rheumatology*. 2017; 36(7):1623–30.
8. Desai MJ, Saini V, Saini S. Myofascial pain syndrome: a treatment review. *Pain and Therapy*. 2013; 2:21–36.
9. Mortada M, Zeid A, Al-Toukhy MA, Ezzeldin N, Elgawish M. Reliability of a proposed ultrasonographic grading scale for severity of primary knee osteoarthritis. *Clinical Medicine Insights Arthritis and Musculoskeletal Disorders*. 2016; 9:161–6.
10. Pan F, Ding C, Winzenberg T, Khan H, Martel-Pelletier J, Pelletier JP, et al. The offspring of people with a total knee replacement for severe primary knee osteoarthritis have a higher risk of worsening knee pain over 8 years. *Annals of the Rheumatic Diseases*. 2016; 75:368–73.
11. Aury-Landas J, Marcelli C, Leclercq S, Boumediene K, Bauge C. Genetic determinism of primary early-onset osteoarthritis. *Trends in Molecular Medicine*. 2016; 22:38–52.
12. Kooner SS, Clark M. The effect of synovectomy in total knee arthroplasty for primary osteoarthritis: a meta-analysis. *The Journal of Knee Surgery*. 2016; 30(4):289–96.
13. Ackerman IN, Bohensky MA, de Steiger R, Brand CA, Eskelinen A, Fenstad AM, et al. Substantial rise in the lifetime risk of primary total knee replacement surgery for osteoarthritis from 2003 to 2013: an international, population-level analysis. *Osteoarthritis and Cartilage*. 2017; 25:455–61.
14. Sharma L, Pai Y-C, Holtkamp K, Rymer WZ. Is knee joint proprioception worse in the arthritic knee versus the unaffected knee in unilateral knee osteoarthritis? *Arthritis and Rheumatism*. 1997; 40:1518–25.
15. Tateuchi H, Koyama Y, Akiyama H, Goto K, So K, Kuroda Y, et al. Daily cumulative hip moment is associated with

radiographic progression of secondary hip osteoarthritis. *Osteoarthritis and Cartilage*. 2017; 25(8):1291–8.

16. Birchfield PC. Osteoarthritis overview. *Geriatric Nursing*. 2001; 22:124–30; quiz 30–1.
17. Birchfield PC. Arthritis: osteoarthritis and rheumatoid arthritis. In: Robinson D, Kidd P, Rogers KM, editors. *Primary Care Across the Lifespan*. St. Louis: Mosby; 2000. p. 89–95.
18. Huang J, Ushiyama KI, Kawasaki T, Hukuda S. Vitamin D receptor gene polymorphisms and osteoarthritis of the hand, hip, and knee: a case control study in Japan. *Rheumatology*. 2000; 39:79–84.
19. Mustafa Z, Chapman CI, Carr AJ, et al. Linkage analysis of candidate genes as susceptibility loci for arthritis-suggestive linkage of COL9A1 to female hip osteoarthritis. *Rheumatology*. 2000; 39:299–306.
20. Sharkey NA, Williams NI, Guerin JB. The role of exercise in the prevention and treatment of osteoporosis and osteoarthritis. *Rheumatology*. 2000; 35:209–19.
21. Hubertsson J, Turkiewicz A, Petersson IF, Englund M. Understanding occupation, sick leave, and disability pension due to knee and hip osteoarthritis from a sex perspective. *Arthritis Care and Research*. 2017; 69:226–33.
22. Villafane JH, Silva GB, Chiarotto A. Effects of passive upper extremity joint mobilization on pain sensitivity and function in participants with secondary carpometacarpal osteoarthritis: a case series. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*. 2012; 35:735–42.
23. Kisner C, Colby LA. Joint, connective tissue, and bone disorders and management. In: Kisner C, Colby LA, editors. *Therapeutic Exercise Foundations and Techniques*. 5th ed. Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2002. p. 309–27.
24. Townes AS. Osteoarthritis. In: Barker LR, Burton JR, Zieve PD, editors. *Principles of ambulatory medicine*, 5th ed. Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins; 1999. p. 960–73.
25. Wegener L, Kisner C, Nichols D. Static and dynamic balance responses in persons with bilateral knee osteoarthritis. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 1997; 25:13–8.
26. McConnell S, Kolopack P, Davis AM. The Western Ontario and McMaster Universities Osteoarthritis Index (WOMAC): a review of its utility and measurement properties. *Arthritis and Rheumatism*. 2001; 45:453–61.
27. Faucher M, Poiraudeau S, Lefevre-Colau MM, Rannou F, Fermanian J, Revel M. Assessment of the test-retest reliability and construct validity of a modified WOMAC index in knee osteoarthritis. *Joint Bone Spine*. 2004; 71:121–7.
28. Cochrane T, Davey RC, Matthes Edwards SM. Randomised controlled trial of the cost-effectiveness of water-based therapy for lower limb osteoarthritis. *Health Technology Assessment*. 2005; 9:iii–iv, ix–xi, 1–114.
29. Looker AC, Borrud LG, Dawson-Hughes B, Shepherd JA, Wright NC. Osteoporosis or low bone mass at the femur neck or lumbar spine in older adults: United States, 2005–2008. *NCHS data brief*. 2012:1–8.
30. Looker AC, Sarafrazi Isfahani N, Fan B, Shepherd JA. Trends in osteoporosis and low bone mass in older US adults, 2005–2006 through 2013–2014. *Osteoporosis International*. 2017.
31. Moyer VA, U.S. Preventive Services Task Force. Vitamin D and calcium supplementation to prevent fractures in adults: U.S. Preventive Services Task Force recommendation statement. *Annals of Internal Medicine*. 2013; 158:691–6.
32. Lewiecki EM, Gordon CM, Baim S, Leonard MB, Bishop NJ, Bianchi ML, et al. International Society for Clinical Densitometry 2007 Adult and Pediatric Official Positions. *Bone*. 2008; 43:1115–21.
33. Marcus R. Role of exercise in preventing and treating osteoporosis. *Rheumatic Disease Clinics of North America*. 2001; 27:131–41, vi.
34. Ayalon J, Simkin A, Leichter I, Raifmann S. Dynamic bone loading exercises for postmenopausal women: effect on the density of the distal radius. *Archives of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation*. 1987; 68:280–3.
35. Simkin A, Ayalon J, Leichter I. Increased trabecular bone density due to bone-loading exercises in postmenopausal osteoporotic women. *Calcified Tissue International*. 1987; 40:59–63.
36. Sinaki M, Wollan PC, Scott RW, Gelczer RK. Can strong back extensors prevent vertebral fractures in women with osteoporosis? *Mayo Clinic Proceedings*. 1996; 71:951–6.
37. Sinaki M, Itoi E, Rogers JW, Bergstralh EJ, Wahner HW. Correlation of back extensor strength with thoracic kyphosis and lumbar lordosis in estrogen-deficient women. *American Journal of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation*. 1996; 75:370–4.
38. Sinaki M. Effect of physical activity on bone mass. *Current Opinion in Rheumatology*. 1996; 8:376–83.
39. Kohrt WM, Bloomfield SA, Little KD, Nelson ME, Yingling VR. American College of Sports Medicine Position Stand: physical activity and bone health. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise*. 2004; 36:1985–96.
40. Boissonnault WG. Review of systems. In: Boissonnault WG, editor. *Primary Care for the Physical Therapist: Examination and Triage*. St Louis: Elsevier Saunders; 2005. p. 87–104.
41. Mohn A, di Ricco L, Magnelli A, Chiarelli F. Celiac disease–associated vertigo and nystagmus. *Journal of Pediatric Gastroenterology and Nutrition*. 2002; 34:317–8.
42. Gorman WP, Davis KR, Donnelly R. ABC of arterial and venous disease. Swollen lower limb-1: general assessment and deep vein thrombosis. *BMJ*. 2000; 320:1453–6.
43. Zhang H, Mao P, Wang C, Chen D, Xu Z, Shi D, et al. Incidence and risk factors of deep vein thrombosis (DVT) after total hip or knee arthroplasty: a retrospective study with routinely applied venography. *Blood Coagulation and Fibrinolysis*. 2017; 28:126–33.
44. Skaf E, Stein PD, Beemath A, Sanchez J, Olson RE. Fatal pulmonary embolism and stroke. *American Journal of Cardiology*. 2006; 97:1776–7. Epub 2006 Apr 27.
45. Perrier A, Bounameaux H. Accuracy or outcome in suspected pulmonary embolism. *New England Journal of Medicine*. 2006; 354:2383–5.
46. McRae SJ, Ginsberg JS. Update in the diagnosis of deep-vein thrombosis and pulmonary embolism. *Current Opinion in Anaesthesiology*. 2006; 19:44–51.
47. Aschwanden M, Labs KH, Engel H, Schwob A, Jeanneret C, Mueller-Brand J, et al. Acute deep vein thrombosis: early mobilization does not increase the frequency of pulmonary embolism. *Thrombosis and Haemostasis*. 2001; 85:42–6.
48. Tatro-Adams D, McGann SF, Carbone W. Reliability of the figure-of-eight method of ankle measurement. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 1995; 22:161–3.
49. Owen CA. Gluteal compartment syndromes. *Clinical Orthopaedics and Related Research*. 1978; 132:57.
50. Botte MJ, Gelberman RH. Acute compartment syndrome of the forearm. *Hand Clinics*. 1998; 14:391–403.
51. Mars M, Hadley GP. Raised intracompartmental pressure and compartment syndromes. *Injury*. 1998; 29:403–11.

52. Matsen FA, Winquist RA, Krugmire RB. Diagnosis and management of compartment syndromes. *Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery*. 1980; 62A:286–91.
53. Bailey MK. *Physical Examination Procedures to Screen for Serious Disorders of the Low Back and Lower Quarter*. La Crosse, Wisconsin: Orthopaedic Section, APTA, Inc; 2003.
54. Wall LJ. Laboratory tests and values. In: Boissonnault WG, editor. *Primary Care for the Physical Therapist: Examination and Triage*. St Louis: Elsevier Saunders; 2005. p. 348–67.
55. Ciccone CD. Basic pharmacokinetics and the potential effect of physical therapy interventions on pharmacokinetic variables. *Physical Therapy*. 1995; 75:343–51.
56. Leadbetter WB. Corticosteroid injection therapy in sports injuries. In: Leadbetter WB, Buckwalter JA, Gordon SL, editors. *Sports-Induced Inflammation: Clinical and Basic Science Concepts*. Park Ridge, Illinois: American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons; 1990. p. 527–45.
57. Brattsand R, Linden M. Cytokine modulation by glucocorticoids: mechanisms and actions in cellular studies. *Alimentary Pharmacology and Therapeutics*. 1996; 10(Suppl 2):81–90; Discussion 1–2.
58. Buchman AL. Side effects of corticosteroid therapy. *Journal of Clinical Gastroenterology*. 2001; 33:289–94.
59. Stetts DM. Patient examination. In: Wadsworth C, editor. *Current Concepts of Orthopaedic Physical Therapy*. Home study Course 1122. La Crosse, WI: Orthopaedic Section, APTA; 2001.
60. Elenbaas JK. Centrally acting oral skeletal muscle relaxants. *American Journal of Hospital Pharmacy*. 1980; 37:1313–23.


© Herzlinde Vancura/Dreamstime.com

CHAPTER 6

Assessment of the Musculoskeletal System

CHAPTER OBJECTIVES

At the completion of this chapter, the reader will be able to:

1. Describe the various components of the physical therapy examination.
2. Describe the difference between an examination and an evaluation.
3. Discuss the importance of a general medical assessment.
4. Understand the importance of monitoring vital signs.
5. Describe the typical findings for each of the vital signs.
6. List the components of the standard precautions included in a typical healthcare setting.
7. Discuss the importance of pain assessment and the various methods by which pain can be measured.
8. Describe the methods used to measure range of motion and strength.
9. Discuss the various imaging studies used in orthopaedics and the advantages and disadvantages of each.

Overview

Any patient that is referred to physical therapy should be triaged by the physical therapist (PT) during the initial examination using one of three approaches based on a determination of the appropriateness of physical therapy:[1]

1. *Medical management*. This subtype of patient demonstrates red flags of serious pathology or severe comorbidities that will not respond to standard rehabilitation management.
2. *Rehabilitation management*. This patient type is self-explanatory and is the largest group encountered.
3. *Self-care management*. These patients may be treated by the rehabilitation team using a combination of patient education, physician prescribed medication, and a home exercise program.

An assessment is defined as the "the management or quantification of a variable or the placement of a value on something."[2] An assessment is not the same as an examination. The examination involves the gathering of data and performing screens, tests, and measures to obtain a comprehensive base from which to make decisions and individualize a plan of care based on the physical therapy needs of each patient.

The Elements of Patient Management

The physical therapist assistant (PTA) must be aware of the sequence, organization, and administration of an examination and evaluation process performed by the PT. This awareness increases the PTA's understanding of the rationale for the decision making that takes place during the patient's episode of care. The elements of patient management are as follows:[2]

1. Examination
2. Evaluation (may require a referral to an appropriate healthcare provider). Included within the evaluation process are two components:
   a. Diagnosis
   b. Prognosis
3. Intervention
4. Outcomes

Included within these elements are the following:

- Plan of care
- Coordination and communication
- Documentation
- Ongoing assessment

Examination

The examination is an ongoing process that begins with the patient referral or initial entry and continues throughout the course of the rehabilitation program and is referred to as the *episode of care*. The process of examination includes gathering information from the chart, other caregivers, the patient, the patient's family, caregivers, and friends in order to identify and define the patient's problem(s).[3] The examination consists of three components of equal importance: patient history, systems review, and tests and measures. These components are closely related, in that they often occur concurrently. One further element, observation, occurs throughout.

☑ KEY POINT

A continual assessment by the PTA with each treatment session allows the PT to evaluate progress and modify interventions as appropriate.[2] It is not unusual for a patient to neglect to provide the PT with information pertinent to their condition during the initial examination, often because they felt it was irrelevant. If the patient provides such information to the PTA, he or she must decide whether the information warrants communication with the PT.

Patient History

The patient history involves gathering information from a review of the medical records and interviews with the patient, family members, caregiver, and other interested persons about the patient's history and current functional and health status.[4]

☑ KEY POINT

It is estimated that 80 percent of the information needed to explain the presenting patient problem can be provided by a thorough history.[5]

Systems Review

The systems review is a brief or limited examination that provides additional information about the patient's general health and the continuum of patient/client care throughout the life span. The purpose of the systems review is as follows:

- Help determine the anatomic and physiological status of all systems (musculoskeletal, neurological, cardiovascular, pulmonary, integumentary, gastrointestinal, urinary, and genitoreproductive).
- Provide information about communication skills, affect, cognition, language abilities, education needs, and learning style of the patient.
- Narrow the focus of subsequent tests and measures.
- Define areas that may cause complications or indicate a need for precautions during the examination and intervention processes.
- Screen for physical, sexual, and psychological abuse.
- Make a determination of the need for further physical therapy services based on an evaluation of the information obtained.
- Identify problems that require consultation with, or referral to, another healthcare provider.

General Medical Assessment

It is the PT's responsibility to perform the initial systems review and evaluation of general health. Following the initial examination, the PTA must continually monitor and assess a patient's response to care, and be alert for the occurrence of medical complications/emergencies. An important component of this monitoring is the taking of vital signs and being able to determine the significance of abnormal vital signs so that the supervising PT can be alerted. Monitoring vital signs can provide the PTA with important information as to the health status of the patient. The four vital signs, which are standard in most medical settings, are temperature, heart rate, blood pressure, and respiratory rate. Fatigue and pain are considered by many to be additional important vital signs. Based on a patient's medical history, it may be necessary to take vital signs at every session both before and after treatment.

Temperature

A patient's temperature can be taken using a variety of devices (**FIGURE 6.1**). In most individuals there is a diurnal (occurring every day) variation in body temperature of 0.5–2°F, with the lowest ebb occurring during sleep. "Normal" adult body temperature is 98.6°F (37°C); however, a temperature in the range of 96.5–99.4°F (35.8–37.4°C) is not at all uncommon. The normal temperature of infants is 98.2°F (36.8°C). The normal temperature of a child or an adolescent is the same as for adults.[6]

☑ KEY POINT

Caution should be used when prescribing exercises for a patient who has a fever. Exercise should not be attempted if the patient has a temperature of 99.5°F (37.5°C) or above due to the increased stresses placed on the cardiopulmonary and immune systems.

It is worth remembering that in adults over 75 years of age and in those who are immune-compromised (e.g., transplant recipients, corticosteroid users, persons with chronic renal insufficiency, anyone taking excessive antipyretic medications), fever response may be blunted or absent. Menstruating women have a well-recognized temperature fluctuation that reflects the effects of ovulation, with the temperature dropping slightly before menstruation and then dropping further 24 to 36 hours prior to ovulation. Coincident with ovulation, the temperature rises and remains at a somewhat higher level until just before the next menses.

The PTA must be able to differentiate between normal and expected temperature and any temperature change that occurs because of inflammation or disease. Both the degree of temperature change and its duration are relevant to diagnostic processes when elevated body temperature is evident. Although an increase in localized skin temperature as compared to the normal side is to be expected as part of the inflammatory process following an injury, a systemic increase in temperature, or swelling and tenderness of the lymph nodes, may be signs of illness or infection and should be communicated to the PT. The testing of skin temperature also can help to make a differentiation between a venous and an arterial insufficiency. With venous insufficiency, an increase in skin temperature is usually noted in the area of occlusion, and the area also appears bluish in color. Pitting edema (**FIGURE 6.2**), especially in the ankles, sacrum, and hands, also may be present. However, if pitting edema is present and the skin temperature is normal, the lymphatic system may be at fault. With

FIGURE 6.1 Devices used for taking a patient's temperature.

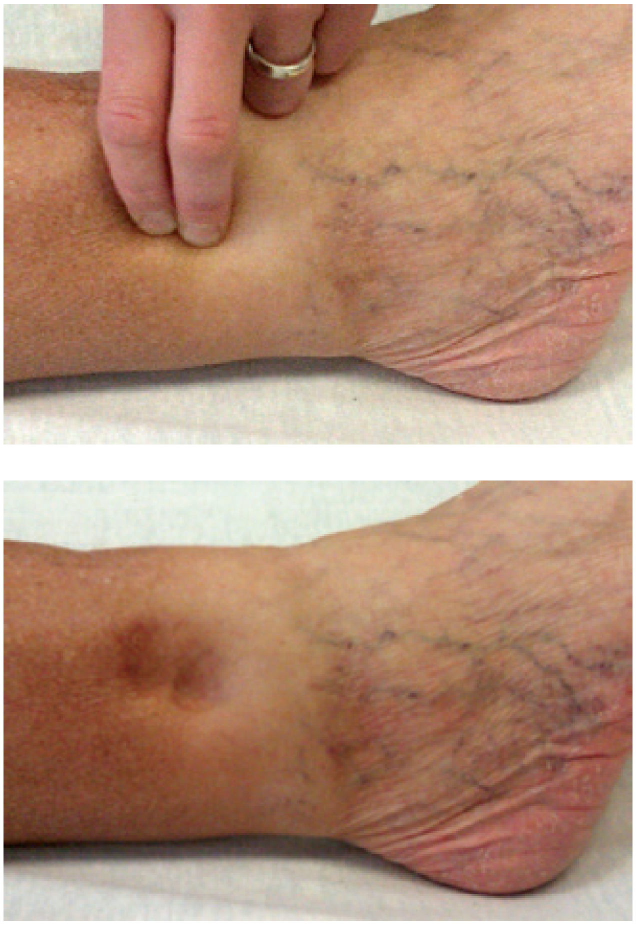


FIGURE 6.2 Pitting edema.

arterial insufficiency, a decrease in skin temperature is usually noted in the area of occlusion, and the area appears whiter. It is also excruciatingly painful.

It is critical to be able to recognize the signs and symptoms of infection (see Chapter 5), so that the PT and the patient's physician can be notified immediately. An infection may cause redness, warmth, and inflammation around the affected area and the area may become stiff, drain pus, and begin to lose range of motion.

The PTA must always exercise vigilance regarding proper hygiene techniques, especially regular handwashing before, during, and after encountering each patient and the cleaning and disinfection of all treatment areas and equipment as per the policy and procedure of the facility (**TABLE 6.1**).

☑ KEY POINT

Infection and inflammation are not to be confused:

- *Infection*. The harmful colonization of a host by an infecting organism
- *Inflammation*. The complex biological response of vascular tissues to harmful stimuli while initiating the healing process for the tissue. (See Chapter 4.)

Heart Rate

In most people, the pulse is an accurate measure of heart rate. The heart rate or pulse is taken to obtain information about the resting state of the cardiovascular system and the system's response to activity or

TABLE 6.1 Standard Precautions

Handwashing

1. Wash hands after touching blood, body fluids, secretions, excretions, and contaminated items, whether or not gloves are worn.
2. Wash hands immediately after removing gloves, between patient contacts, and when otherwise indicated to reduce transmission of microorganisms.
3. Wash hands between tasks and procedures on the same patient to prevent cross-contamination of different body sites.
4. Use plain (nonantimicrobial) soap for routine handwashing.
5. An antimicrobial agent or a waterless antiseptic (usually alcohol-based) agent may be used for specific circumstances (hyperendemic infections), as defined by infection control.

Patient Care Equipment

1. Handle used patient-care equipment soiled with blood, body fluids, secretions, or excretions in a manner that prevents skin and mucous membrane exposures, contamination of clothing, and transfer of microorganisms to other patients or environments.
2. Ensure that all equipment, including but not limited to blood pressure equipment, weights, exercise toys, and dumbbells, is not used for the care of another patient until it has been cleaned and reprocessed appropriately.
3. Ensure that single-use items are discarded properly.

Gloves

1. Wear gloves (clean, unsterile gloves are adequate) when touching blood, body fluids, secretions, excretions, and contaminated items; put on clean gloves just before touching mucous membranes and nonintact skin.
2. Change gloves between tasks and procedures on the same patient after contact with materials that may contain high concentrations of microorganisms.
3. Remove gloves promptly after use, before touching uncontaminated items and environmental surfaces, and before going on to another patient; wash hands immediately after glove removal to avoid transfer of microorganisms to other patients or environments.

Environmental Control

1. Follow hospital procedures for the routine care, cleaning, and disinfection of environmental surfaces, beds, bed rails, bedside equipment, and other frequently touched surfaces.

Linen

1. Handle, transport, and process used linen soiled with blood, body fluids, secretions, and excretion in a manner that prevents skin and mucous membrane exposures and contamination of clothing, and avoids transfer of microorganisms to other patients or environments.

Adapted from Centers for Disease Control, Hospital Infection Control Practices Advisory Committee: Part II Recommendations for Isolation Precautions in Hospitals. February 1997.

exercise and recovery.[6] It is also used to assess patency of the specific arteries palpated and the presence of any irregularities in the rhythm.[6]

When taking a pulse, the fingers must be placed near the artery and pressed gently against a firm structure, usually a bone. One should avoid using the thumb when taking a pulse, as it has its own pulse and can thus interfere with detecting the patient's pulse. Depending on the health status of the patient and the presence of any irregular rhythms, the PTA may need to palpate and count the pulse for a full minute. However, with a healthy patient, it may be sufficient to perform a 6-second beat count and multiply by 10 to quickly determine the heart rate.

The pulse can be taken at a number of points. The most accessible is usually the radial pulse, at the distal aspect of the radius (**FIGURE 6.3**). Sometimes, the pulse cannot be taken at the wrist and is taken at the elbow (brachial artery), at the neck against the carotid artery (carotid pulse) (**FIGURE 6.4**), behind the knee (popliteal artery), or in the foot using the dorsalis pedis or posterior tibial arteries. The pulse rate also can be measured by listening directly to the heartbeat, using a stethoscope.

The normal adult heart rate is 70 beats per minute (bpm), with a range of 60 to 80 bpm. A rate of greater than 100 bpm is referred to as tachycardia. Normal causes of tachycardia include anxiety, stress, pain, caffeine, dehydration, or exercise. Abnormal causes of tachycardia include anemia, high or low blood pressure, heart disease, congenital heart conditions (e.g., long QT syndrome), electrolyte imbalance, or an overactive thyroid (hyperthyroidism). A rate of less than 60 bpm is referred to as bradycardia. Athletes may normally have a resting heart rate lower than 60.

FIGURE 6.4 Taking the pulse at the carotid artery.

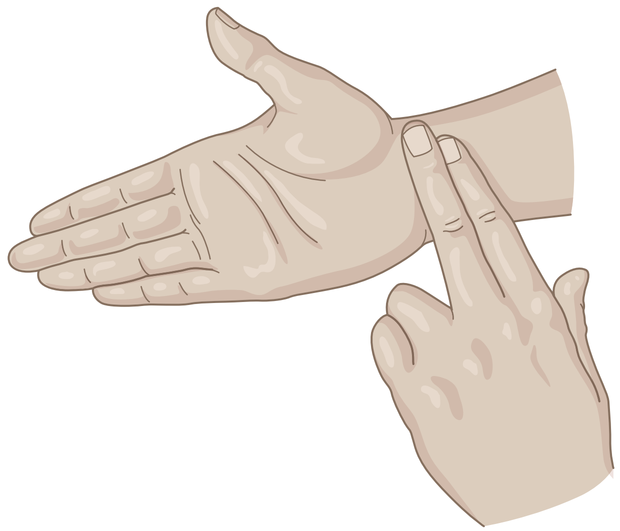


FIGURE 6.3 Taking the radial pulse.

The normal range of resting heart rate in children is between 80 and 120 bpm. The rate for a newborn is 120 bpm (normal range 70–170 bpm).

☑ KEY POINT

- *Normal resting adult heart rate (HR)*. 70 bpm (range = 60–100); a true resting heart rate should be taken prior to the patient getting out of bed in the morning.
- *Bradycardia*. Less than 60 bpm; at <60 bpm, the supervising PT should be informed as the patient may need to be monitored carefully.
- *Tachycardia*. More than 100 bpm; at 110 bpm, the supervising PT should be informed and the patient should be monitored carefully.
- *Normal infant HR*. 120 bpm (range = 70–170).
- *Normal child HR*. 100 bpm (range = 80–120).
- *Normal adolescent HR*. 85 bpm (range = 50–100).

The PTA must be aware of the number of adaptations that occur within the circulatory system in response to exercise:

- *Heart rate*. As the body begins to exercise, the working tissues require an increased supply of oxygen to meet increased demand. Monitoring heart rate is an indirect method of estimating oxygen consumption as, normally, these two factors have a linear relationship with very low- and very high-intensity exercise. If a physical therapy intervention requires an increase in activity level, then HR should also be seen to increase. The extent at which the HR increases with escalating workloads is influenced by many factors including age, fitness level, type of activity being performed, body position, the presence of disease, medications, blood volume, and environmental factors such as temperature, humidity, and altitude. Failure of the HR to increase with increasing workloads, referred to as *chronotropic incompetence*, should always be of concern.

- *Stroke volume*. Stroke volume (SV) is the amount of blood pumped out by the left ventricle of the heart with each beat. SV should increase with exercise, but only to the point when there is enough time between beats for the heart to fill up. In the normal heart, as workload increases, SV increases linearly up to 40 to 50% of aerobic capacity, after which it increases only slightly. Factors that influence the magnitude of change in SV include exercise intensity, body position, and ventricular function.
- *Cardiac output*. Cardiac output (CO) is the amount of blood discharged by each ventricle per minute. CO is the product of HR and SV, and should, therefore, increase linearly with the workload. During exercise, CO increases to approximately four times that experienced during rest. Factors that influence the magnitude of change in CO include age, posture, body size, the presence of disease, and level of physical conditioning. A long-term beneficial training effect that occurs with regard to HR as the heart becomes more efficient is a reduced resting HR and a reduced HR at a standard exercise load.

☑ KEY POINT

Pulse oximetry is an electronic device that measures the degree of saturation of hemoglobin with oxygen [SaO_2]. Normal oxygen saturation levels are between 95 and 98 percent, and this value is not expected to change with activity or exercise in a healthy individual. In general, saturation levels below 90 percent (86 percent in the patient with chronic lung disease) are considered significant and warrant cessation of physical therapy and additional testing beyond the data provided by pulse oximetry (e.g., arterial blood gas analysis), as well as indicating the potential need for administration of supplemental oxygen.

Respiratory Rate

In adults, the normal chest expansion difference between the resting position and the fully inhaled position is 2–4 centimeters. (It is greater for females than for males.) As per the PT's instructions, the PTA should compare measurements of both the anterior-posterior diameter and the transverse diameter during rest and at full inhalation.

☑ KEY POINT

- *Normal adult respiratory rate (RR).* 12–18 breaths /min; at 30 breaths/min the supervising PT should be informed, and the patient should be monitored carefully.
- *Normal infant RR.* 30–55 breaths/min.
- *Normal child RR.* 20–25 breaths/min.
- *Normal adolescent RR.* 15–22 breaths/min.

The following breathing patterns are characteristic of disease:

- *Cheyne–Stokes respiration*. Breathing characterized by a periodic, regular, sequentially increasing depth of respiration. Occurs with serious cardiopulmonary or cerebral disorders.
- *Biot's respiration*. Respiration characterized by irregular, spasmodic breathing and periods of apnea. Is almost always associated with hypoventilation due to central nervous system disease.
- *Kussmaul's respiration*. Respiration characterized by deep, slow breathing; it indicates acidosis, as the body attempts to blow off carbon dioxide.
- *Apneustic breathing.* An abnormal pattern of breathing characterized by a postinspiratory pause. The usual cause of apneustic breathing is a pontine lesion.
- *Paradoxical respiration.* An abnormal pattern of breathing in which the abdominal wall is sucked in during inspiration (it is usually pushed out). Paradoxical respiration is due to paralysis of the diaphragm.

Blood Pressure

Blood pressure is a measure of vascular resistance to blood flow. Blood pressure values, measured with a sphygmomanometer and stethoscope (**FIGURE 6.5**), are usually given in millimeters of mercury (mm Hg).

The blood pressure values consist of two parts:

- *Systolic pressure.* The pressure exerted on the brachial artery when the heart is contracting[6]
- *Diastolic pressure*. The pressure exerted on the brachial artery during the relaxation phase of the heart contraction[6]

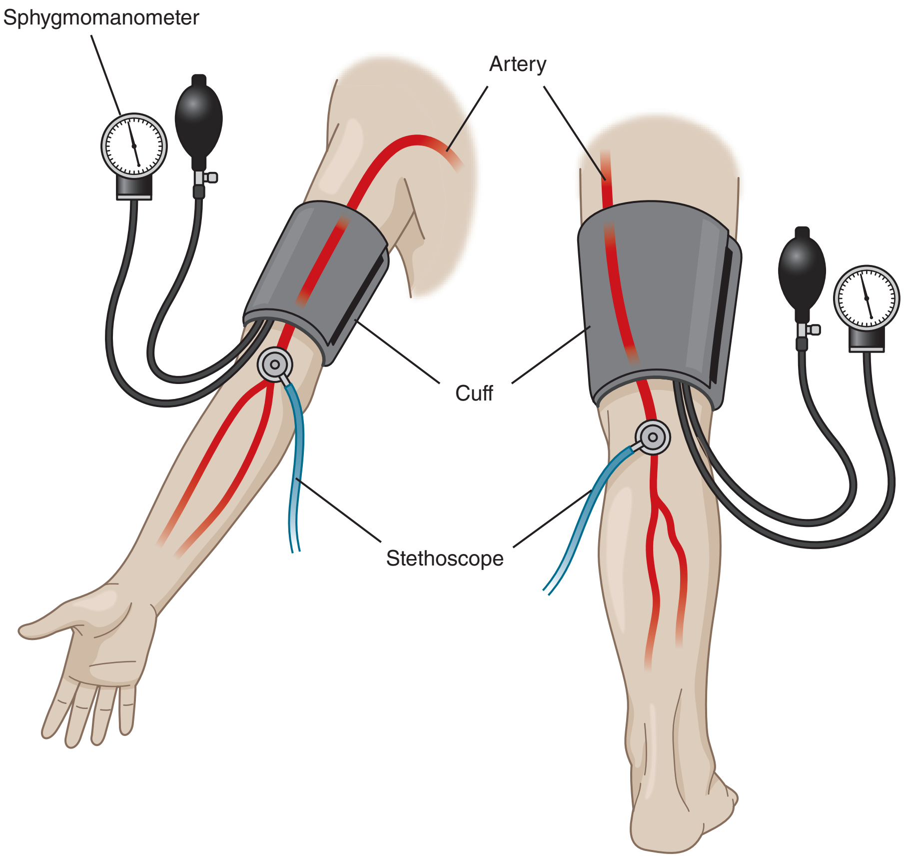


FIGURE 6.5 A sphygmomanometer and stethoscope.

☑ KEY POINT

The values for resting blood pressure in adults are as follows:

- *Normal.* Systolic blood pressure <120 mm Hg and diastolic blood pressure <80 mm Hg
- *Prehypertension.* Systolic blood pressure 120–139 mm Hg or diastolic blood pressure 80–90 mm Hg
- *Stage 1 hypertension.* Systolic blood pressure 140–159 mm Hg or diastolic blood pressure 90–99 mm Hg
- *Stage 2 hypertension.* Systolic blood pressure ≥160 mm Hg or diastolic blood pressure ≥100 mm Hg

The normal values for resting blood pressure in children are:

- *Systolic.* Birth to 1 month, 60 to 90 mm Hg; up to 3 years of age, 75 to 130 mm Hg; over 3 years of age, 90 to 140 mm Hg
- *Diastolic.* Birth to 1 month, 30 to 60 mm Hg; up to 3 years of age, 45 to 90 mm Hg; over 3 years of age, 50 to 80 mm Hg

Systolic blood pressure typically increases in proportion to oxygen consumption and CO, while diastolic blood pressure regularly shows little or no increase, or may decrease. Long-term aerobic training can result in reduced systolic and diastolic blood pressure. Failure of the systolic blood pressure to rise with an increase in intensity referred to as exertional hypotension, is considered abnormal, and may occur in a patient with a cardiovascular problem. Orthostatic (postural) hypotension is a form of hypotension in which a person's blood pressure drops upon standing up, particularly after resting. The decrease is typically greater than 20/10 mm Hg. The symptoms, which can include dizziness, lightheadedness, nausea, headache, blurred or dimmed vision, generalized (or extremity) numbness/tingling, and fainting, are the consequences of insufficient blood pressure and cerebral perfusion (blood supply to the brain).

☑ KEY POINT

White coat hypertension, also known as the white coat effect or isolated office hypertension, is the presence of higher blood pressure when measured in the physician's office than at other times.[7–9] Whether this is a benign phenomenon or carries increased cardiovascular risk is not known.

Fatigue

Fatigue is an overall feeling of tiredness. Fatigue and recovery from fatigue are complex processes that depend on a number of factors including the following:

- *Environmental*. The environmental factors include room temperature, air quality, and altitude.
- *Physical*. The physical factors include the patient's health status, diet, and lifestyle (sedentary or active).
- *Physiological*. The physiological factors include the adequacy of the blood supply to the working muscle and the maintenance of a viable chemical environment.
- *Psychological factors*. The psychological factors include motivation and incentive.

Certain disease processes also can affect fatigue. For example, multiple sclerosis typically allows a patient to function well during the early morning, but by midafternoon the patient often can become notably weak. Cardiopulmonary fatigue is likely to cause a decrease in blood sugar (glucose) levels, a decrease in glycogen stores in the muscle and liver, and a depletion of potassium. It is important that the PTA provide adequate time for recovery from fatigue for every intrasession and intersession exercise progression. Signs and symptoms of fatigue or exercise intolerance include, but are not limited to changes in the following:

- *Blood pressure*. The following changes in blood pressure (BP) indicate exercise intolerance:
  - Systolic BP >200 to 210 mm Hg
  - Drop in systolic BP >20 mm Hg
  - Diastolic BP >110 mm Hg
- *Heart rate*. The following changes in heart rate indicate exercise intolerance:
  - Increase in HR >50 bpm with low-level activity
  - Significant arrhythmias
  - Chest pain
- Nausea, vomiting
- Syncope or moderate dizziness
- Marked dyspnea (2+/4+)
- Severe claudication (grade III/IV)
- Cyanosis or severe pallor

The Assessment of Pain

The mechanisms behind the transmission of pain are governed by the nervous system. (See Chapter 3.) Although pain is universally attributed to some mix of brain activity, the exact mechanism of how the feeling emerges as a result of the brain activity remains an enigma. Pain is clearly related to both external and internal stimuli, which are modulated by other sensory inputs and cognitive, emotional, and social factors.[10] In essence, pain is a perceptual inference that urges protective action that is modulated by anything that weights the inference toward protection.[10] Any input that is perceived as a threat to body tissue, such as internal stimuli, external stimuli, or cognition, will likely increase the likelihood and intensity of pain.[10]

A pain assessment should be made throughout each patient interaction. Red-flag pain findings may require immediate attention and supersede physical therapy being the primary provider of service (**TABLE 6.2**).

TABLE 6.2 Red-Flag Findings

History	Possible Condition
Constant and severe pain, especially at night	Neoplasm and acute neuromusculoskeletal injury
Frequent or severe headaches	Neoplasm
Arm pain lasting >2–3 months	Neoplasm or neurological dysfunction
Persistent nerve root pain	Neoplasm or neurological dysfunction
Radicular pain with coughing	Neoplasm or neurological dysfunction
Pain worsening after 1 month	Neoplasm
Bilateral nerve root signs and symptoms	Neoplasm, spinal cord compression, and vertebrobasilar ischemia
Signs worse than symptoms	Neoplasm

Referred pain occurs at a site adjacent to, or at a distance from, the location of an injury's origin. Referred pain can arise from a muscle, joint, and/or viscera. For example, the pain during a myocardial infarction is often felt in the neck, shoulders, and back rather than in the chest, the site of the injury.

With the exception of constant pain, the clinician should not always view the presence of pain negatively. After all, its presence helps to determine the location of the injury, and its behavior aids the clinician in determining the stage of healing and the impact it has on the patient's function; for example, whether the pain is worsening, improving, or unchanging provides information on the effectiveness of an intervention. In addition, a gradual increase in the intensity of the symptoms over time may indicate to the clinician that the condition is worsening or that the condition is nonmusculoskeletal in nature. If pain is present, the PTA's major focus should be to seek methods to help control it throughout each interaction.

☑ KEY POINT

Remember that the location of symptoms for many musculoskeletal conditions is quite separate from the source, especially in those peripheral joints that are more proximal, such as the shoulder and the hip. The term *referred pain* is used to describe symptoms that have their origin at a site other than where the patient feels the pain. The concept of referred pain is often difficult for patients to understand, so an explanation of referred pain can enable the patient to better understand and answer questions about symptoms they might otherwise have felt irrelevant.

Pain can also be described as acute or chronic. (See Chapter 3.) Chronic pain conditions start with an acute episode, and there is an inherent link between the two. Acute pain may be constant, variable, or intermittent. Variable pain is pain that is perpetual, but that varies in intensity. Variable pain usually indicates the involvement of both a chemical and a mechanical source.

The mechanical cause of constant pain is less understood than the chemical causes of pain but is thought to be the result of the deformation of collagen, which compresses or stretches the nociceptive free nerve endings, with the excessive forces being perceived as pain. Thus, specific movements or positions should influence pain of a mechanical nature. Chemical, or inflammatory pain is more constant and is less affected by movements or positions than mechanical pain. Intermittent pain is unlikely to be caused by a chemical irritant. Usually, prolonged postures, a loose intra-articular body, or an impingement of a musculoskeletal structure cause this type of pain.

☑ KEY POINT

Constant pain following an injury continues until the healing process has sufficiently reduced the concentration of harmful irritants.

Unfortunately, the source of the pain is not always easy to identify, because most patients present with both mechanical and chemical pain. It is therefore important that the PTA be able to determine the following:

- *Any change in the patient's pain since their last PT visit or examination*. If the perception of pain has increased since the previous visit, further questioning may be needed to determine whether the increase is due to postexercise muscle soreness rather than deterioration in the patient's condition.
- *The response of the pain to any of the interventions, or to the direction of movement of the involved structure* (e.g., does the patient complain of more pain with lumbar flexion or with extension?). Musculoskeletal conditions are typically aggravated with movement and alleviated with rest.
- *The nature and pattern of the pain*. Because pain is variable in its nature, quality, and location, describing pain is often difficult for the patient. A body chart can be used to ascertain the specific location and the nature of the symptoms (**FIGURE 6.6**). Information about how the site of the symptoms has changed since the onset can indicate whether a condition is worsening or improving (see next). In general, as a condition worsens, the pain distribution becomes more widespread and distal (peripheralized). As the condition improves, the symptoms tend to become more localized (centralized).
- *The intensity of the pain*. One of the simplest methods to quantify the intensity of pain is to use an 11-point (0–10) visual analog scale (VAS). The VAS is a numerically continuous scale that requires the pain level be identified by making a mark on a 100-mm line, or by circling the appropriate number in a 0–10 series. The patient is asked to rate his or her present pain compared with the worst pain ever experienced, with 0 representing no pain, 1 representing minimally perceived pain, and 10 representing pain that requires immediate attention.

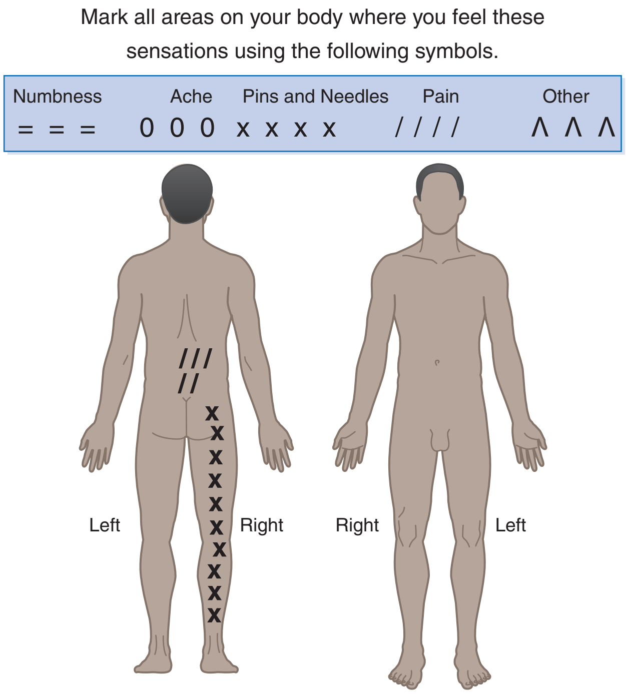


FIGURE 6.6 A body chart.

Although many pain assessment tools have been designed to gauge acute pain, there are a number of tools that can be used to assess chronic pain, including the Patient Centered Outcomes Questionnaire (PCOQ), but the assessment of chronic pain is fraught with difficulties. For example, it is widely believed that patients with chronic pain are more likely to exaggerate or misreport pain levels.[11] Such beliefs occur because chronic pain remains poorly understood. In recent years, chronic pain has been classified as a disease process due to its progressive and debilitating nature.[12]

The clinician has several tools at his or her disposal to help to control pain, inflammation, and edema, including the application of gentle range of motion exercises, graded manual techniques, and electrotherapeutic and physical modalities. (See Chapters 9 and 10.) Most episodes of pain resolve on their own provided that the condition is not exacerbated through constant reinjury and that the injured tissue is allowed to progress through the natural stages of healing. If this natural progression does not occur, chronic pain can result. The prognosis for chronic pain syndromes is generally poor and often requires a biopsychosocial approach. In these instances, the PTA may need to discuss with the PT resources that will aid the patient both physically and emotionally. This can include referrals for counseling, pain control, stress management, and self-help groups.

☑ KEY POINT

Symptom magnification, an exaggerated subjective response to symptoms in the absence of adequate objective findings, is an increasingly common occurrence in the clinic. The patients who display this type of behavior are a difficult population to deal with. The causes of symptom magnification can be categorized into two main patient types:

1. Patients with a psychosomatic overlay, and whose symptoms have a psychogenic cause
2. Patients who are involved in litigation

In either case, the PTA must inform the PT.

Tests and Measures

Once the PT has completed the patient history and the systems review/general medical examination, he or she then selects tests and measures based on the hypothesis formed thus far. The tests and measures portion of the examination involves the physical examination of the patient and provides the PT with objective data to accurately determine the validity of the hypothesis and the degree of specific function and dysfunction.[4] A number of recognized tests and measures are commonly performed during an orthopaedic examination:[2]

- Aerobic capacity/endurance (see Chapter 15)
- Balance (see Chapter 3)
- Cranial and peripheral nerve integrity (see Chapter 3)
- Gait (see Chapter 7)
- Joint integrity and mobility (see Chapter 9)
- Mobility (see Chapter 12)
- Motor function
- Muscle performance (see Chapter 13)
- Pain
- Posture (see Chapter 7)
- Range of motion (see Chapter 12)
- Reflex integrity (see Chapter 3)
- Sensory integrity (see Chapter 3)

Based on the history and the systems review, the PT may modify the physical examination. The PT may decide to use one, more than one, or portions of several specific tests and measures as part of the examination, based on the purpose of the visit, the complexity of the condition, and the directions taken in the clinical decision-making process.[2]

Range of Motion

A normal joint has an available range of active, or physiological, motion, which is limited by a physiological barrier as tension develops within the surrounding tissues. At the physiological barrier, there is an additional amount of passive range of motion. Beyond the available passive range of motion, the anatomic barrier is found. This barrier cannot be exceeded without disruption to the integrity of the joint. In addition to being impacted by anatomy, normal joint motion can be influenced by the following:

- *Body mass index (BMI)*. Obesity or muscle hypertrophy can impede a joint from achieving its full range of motion.
- *Age*. The younger population typically has a greater range of motion than the elderly population.
- *Gender*. In general, females tend to have a slightly greater joint range of motion compared to age-matched males.
- *Disease*. A number of diseases can cause an overall decrease in range of motion (e.g., ankylosing spondylitis, osteoarthritis, and rheumatoid arthritis).
- Joint surface congruency, the pliability of the connective tissues, and the extensibility of the muscles that cross the joint.

Both passive and active range of motion, using planar motions, can be measured using a goniometer, which has been shown to have a satisfactory level of intraobserver reliability.[13–15] It is important to remember that the planar motions may appear normal in the presence of abnormal multiplanar (functional) motion. For example, reaching behind the neck involves a combination of shoulder flexion, external rotation, and adduction.

Goniometry It is not within the scope of this text to cover every aspect of goniometry, but merely to provide a description so that the PTA can fully appreciate its function in the overall assessment of a patient. The term *goniometry* is derived from two Greek words, *gonia* meaning angle and *metron* meaning measure. Thus, a goniometer is an instrument used to measure angles. Within the field of physical therapy, goniometry is used to measure the total amount of available motion at a specific joint. Goniometry can be used to measure both active and passive range of motion. Goniometers are produced in a variety of sizes and shapes and are usually constructed of either plastic or metal. The two most common types of instruments used to measure joint angles are the bubble inclinometer and the traditional goniometer.

The bubble goniometer has a 360 degree rotating dial and scale with a fluid indicator (**FIGURE 6.7**).

FIGURE 6.7 Bubble goniometer.

The traditional goniometer, which comes in many shapes and sizes (**FIGURE 6.8**), consists of three parts:

1. *Body.* The body of the goniometer is designed like a protractor and may form a full or half circle. A measuring scale is located around the body. The scale can extend either from 0 to 180 degrees and 180 to 0 degrees for the half circle models, or from 0 to 360 degrees and from 360 to 0 degrees on the full circle models. The intervals on the scales can vary from 1 to 10 degrees.
2. *Stationary arm.* The stationary arm is structurally a part of the body and therefore cannot move independently of the body.
3. *Moving arm.* The moving arm is attached to the fulcrum in the center of the body by a rivet or screwlike device that allows the moving arm to move freely on the body of the device. In some instruments, the screwlike device can be tightened to fix the moving arm in a certain position or loosened to permit free movement.

The correct selection of which type of goniometer to use depends on the joint angle to be measured.

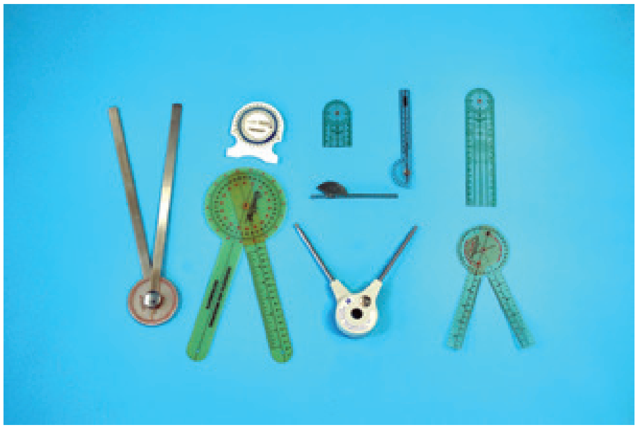


FIGURE 6.8 Different types of goniometers.

FIGURE 6.9 Extendable goniometer.

The length of arms varies among instruments and can range from 3 to 18 inches (8 to 46 centimeters). Extendable goniometers allow varying ranges from 9.5 to 26 inches (24 to 66 centimeters) (**FIGURE 6.9**). The longer armed goniometers, or the bubble inclinometer, are recommended when the landmarks are farther apart, such as when measuring hip, knee, elbow, and shoulder movements.

Bubble inclinometers are recommended when measuring spinal motions. In the smaller joints, such as the wrist and hand and foot and ankle, a traditional goniometer with a shorter arm is used.

To use the goniometer, the patient is positioned in the recommended testing position. While stabilizing the proximal joint component, the clinician gently moves the distal joint component through the available range of motion until the end feel is determined. An estimate is made of the available range of motion, and the distal joint component is returned to the starting position. The clinician palpates the relevant bony landmarks and aligns the goniometer. A record is made of the starting measurement. The goniometer is then removed and the patient moves the joint through the available range of motion. Once the joint has been moved through the available range of motion, the goniometer is replaced and realigned, and a measurement is read and recorded. A brief summary of the goniometric technique for each of the upper and lower extremity joints is provided in the respective chapters.

Active Range of Motion Active range of motion testing gives the clinician information about the following:

- The quantity of available physiological motion
- The presence of muscle substitutions
- The willingness of the patient to move
- The integrity of the contractile and inert tissues
- The quality of motion (coordination and motor control)
- Symptom reproduction
- The pattern of motion restriction (e.g., capsular versus noncapsular, impingement)

Active range of motion testing may be deferred if small and unguarded motions provoke intense pain because this may indicate a high degree of joint irritability.

Full and pain-free active range of motion suggests normalcy for that movement, although it is important to remember that normal *range* of motion is not synonymous with normal motion.[16] Normal motion implies that the control of motion must also be present. Single motions in the cardinal planes are usually tested first. Dynamic testing involves repeated movements in specific directions. Pain that increases after the repeated motions may indicate a retriggering of the inflammatory response, and repeated motions in the opposite direction should be explored.

☑ KEY POINT

Static testing involves sustaining a position. Sustained static positions may be used to help detect postural syndromes.[17]

Combined motions, as their name suggests, use single plane motions with other motions superimposed. For example at the elbow, the single plane motion of elbow flexion is tested together with forearm supination and then forearm pronation. The active range of motion will be found to be either abnormal or normal. Abnormal motion is typically described as being reduced. It must be remembered, though, that abnormal motion also may be excessive. Excessive motion often is missed and is erroneously classified as normal motion. To help determine whether the motion is normal or excessive, passive range of motion, in the form of passive overpressure, and the end feel is assessed by the PT.

Passive Range of Motion If the active motions do not reproduce the patient's symptoms, or the active range of motion appears incomplete, it is important to perform gentle passive range of motion and overpressure at the end of the active range in order to fully test the motion. The passive overpressure should be applied carefully in the presence of pain. The barrier to active motion should occur earlier in the range than the barrier to passive motion. Pain that occurs at the end range of active and passive movement is suggestive of hypermobility or instability, a capsular contraction, or scar tissue that has not been adequately remodeled.[18]

☑ KEY POINT

If active and passive motions are limited/painful in the same direction, the injured tissue is likely inert in nature. If active and passive motions are limited/painful in the opposite direction, the injured tissue is likely contractile in nature. The exception to these generalizations occurs with tenosynovitis.

Passive range of motion testing gives the clinician information about the integrity of the contractile and inert tissues, and the *end feel*. Cyriax[19] introduced the concept of the end feel, which is the quality of resistance at end range. The end feel can indicate to the clinician the cause of the motion restriction (**TABLE 6.3**). If the PTA detects an abnormal end feel that was not present at the time of initial examination, the intervention must be terminated, and the supervising PT must be notified immediately.

☑ KEY POINT

An association has been demonstrated between an increase in pain and abnormal-pathologic end feels compared to normal end feels.

The PT bases the planned intervention and its intensity on the type of tissue resistance to movement demonstrated by the end feel and the acuteness of the condition.[19] This information may indicate whether the resistance is caused by pain, muscle, capsule ligament, disturbed mechanics of the joint, or a combination.

Recording Range of Motion The methods of recording range of motion vary. The measurements depicted in **TABLE 6.4**, **TABLE 6.5**, and **TABLE 6.6** highlight one method.

Flexibility Flexibility is examined to determine if a particular structure or group of structures has sufficient extensibility to perform a desired activity. The extensibility and habitual length of connective tissue is a factor of the demands placed upon it. These demands produce changes in the viscoelastic properties and, thus, the length–tension relationship of a muscle or muscle group (see Chapter 2), resulting in an increase or decrease in the length of those structures.

☑ KEY POINT

The concepts of contracture and adaptive shortening are important to understand.

- A contracture is a condition of fixed high resistance to passive stretch of the tissue resulting from fibrosis or shortening of the soft tissues around the joint, including the muscles. Contractures occur after injury, surgery, or immobilization and are the result of the remodeling of dense connective tissue.
- Adaptive shortening takes place when the length of the tissue shortens relative to its normal resting length. Immobilization of the tissue in a shortened position or a prolonged posture results in adaptive shortening.

Capsular and Noncapsular Patterns of Restriction A capsular pattern of restriction is a limitation of pain and movement in a joint-specific ratio, which is usually present with arthritis, or following prolonged immobilization (**TABLE 6.7**).[19] A noncapsular pattern of restriction is a limitation in a joint in any pattern other than a capsular one, and may indicate the presence of either a derangement, a restriction of one part of the joint capsule, or an extra-articular lesion, that obstructs joint motion.[19] A reminder of each of the capsular patterns is included in each of the joint chapters.

Joint Integrity and Mobility

The small motion available at joint surfaces is referred to as *accessory* or *arthrokinematic motion*. A variety of measurement scales have been proposed for judging the amount of accessory joint motion present between two joint surfaces, most of which are based on a comparison with a comparable contralateral joint using manually applied forces in a logical and precise manner.[20] Using these techniques to assess the joint glide, the PT can describe joint motion as hypomobile (restricted), normal (unrestricted but not excessive), or hypermobile (excessive).

Passive accessory mobility tests assess the accessory motions of a joint. The joint glides are tested in the loose (open) pack position of a peripheral joint (see Chapter 9) and at the end of available range in the spinal joints to avoid soft tissue tension affecting the results. The information gathered from these tests will help the PT determine the integrity of the inert structures.

TABLE 6.3 End Feels

Type	Cause	Characteristics and Examples
Bony	Produced by bone-to-bone approximation	Abrupt and unyielding but painless Examples: *Normal*: Elbow extension *Abnormal*: Cervical rotation (may indicate osteophyte)
Elastic/stretch	Produced by the muscle–tendon unit and is, therefore, the most common type of normal end feel	Stretch with elastic recoil Examples: *Normal*: Wrist flexion with finger flexion, and ankle dorsiflexion with the knee extended *Abnormal*: Decreased dorsiflexion of the ankle with the knee flexed as compared to knee extended
Soft tissue approximation	Produced by the contact of two muscle bulks on either side of a flexing joint	A very forgiving end feel Examples: *Normal*: Knee flexion, elbow flexion *Abnormal*: Elbow flexion with an obese subject
Capsular/firm	Produced by capsule or ligaments	Various degrees of stretch without elasticity Stretch ability depends on the thickness of the tissue Examples: *Normal*: Wrist flexion (soft), elbow flexion in supination (medium), and knee extension (hard) *Abnormal*: Inappropriate stretch ability for a specific joint
Springy	Produced by the articular surface rebounding from an intra-articular meniscus or disk	A rebound sensation Examples: *Normal*: Axial compression of the cervical spine *Abnormal*: Knee flexion or extension with a displaced meniscus
Boggy	Produced by fluid (blood) within a joint	A "squishy" sensation as the joint is moved toward its end range Further forcing feels as if it will burst the joint Examples: *Normal*: None *Abnormal*: Hemarthrosis at the knee
Spasm	Produced by reflex and reactive muscle contraction	An abrupt end to movement that is unyielding With acute joint inflammation, it occurs early in the range Note: Muscle guarding is not an actual end feel because it involves a co-contraction Examples: *Normal*: None *Abnormal*: Significant traumatic arthritis, recent traumatic hypermobility, grade II muscle tears
Empty	Produced solely by pain	The limitation of motion has no tissue resistance component The resistance is from the patient being unable to tolerate further motion due to severe pain Examples: *Normal*: None *Abnormal*: Acute subdeltoid bursitis, sign of the buttock

TABLE 6.4 Recording Range of Motion Measurements for the Spine

Region	Patient Example	Documentation Recording (in degrees)
Cervical	Patient extends to 20 degrees and flexes to 40 degrees	20-0-40
	Patient sidebends 20 degrees to left, 30 degrees to right	20-0-30
	Patient rotates 50 degrees to the left, 40 degrees to the right	50-0-40
Thoracic	Patient extends to 10 degrees, flexes to 48 degrees	10-0-48
	Sidebends left 30 degrees to the left, 15 degrees to the right	30-0-15
	Rotates left 10 degrees, right 15 degrees	10-0-15
Lumbar	Extends to 20 degrees, flexes to 35 degrees	20-0-35
	Patient sidebends 20 degrees to left, 30 degrees to right	20-0-30

AROM, active range of motion.
Data from *American Medical Association: Guides to the Evaluation of Permanent Impairment* (ed 5). Chicago, American Medical Association, 2001.

TABLE 6.5 Recording Range of Motion Measurements for the Upper Extremities

Joint	Patient Example	Documentation Recording (in degrees)
Shoulder	Patient extends left shoulder to 30 degrees, flexes to 160 degrees	Left: 30-0-160
	Patient abducts right shoulder to 100 degrees, adducts to 10 degrees	Right: 100-0-10
	Patient rotates left shoulder to 75 degrees, internal rotation to 85 degrees	Left: 75-0-85
Elbow	Patient extends left elbow to 0 degrees, flexes to 150 degrees	Left: 0-0-150
	Patient hyperextends right elbow to 4 degrees, flexes to 100 degrees	Right: 4-0-100
Forearm	Patient supinates left forearm to 50 degrees, pronates to 85 degrees	Left: 50-0-85
Wrist	Patient extends left wrist to 10 degrees, flexes to 60 degrees	Left: 10-0-60
Wrist	Patient radially deviates left wrist to 10 degrees, ulnar deviates to 20 degrees	Left: 10-0-20

AROM, active range of motion.
Data from *American Medical Association: Guides to the Evaluation of Permanent Impairment* (ed 5). Chicago, American Medical Association, 2001.

TABLE 6.6 Recording Range of Motion Measurements for the Lower Extremities

Joint	Patient Example	Documentation Recording (in degrees)
Hip	Patient extends the left hip to 20 degrees, flexes to 100 degrees	Left: 20-0-100
	Patient abducts the left hip to 20 degrees, adducts to 15 degrees	Left: 20-0-15
	Patient externally rotates the left hip to 20 degrees, internally rotates to 30 degrees	Left: 20-0-30
Knee	Patient extends the left knee to 0 degrees, flexes to 120 degrees	Left: 0-0-120
Ankle (Talocrural)	Patient dorsiflexes left ankle to 5 degrees, plantarflexes to 10 degrees	Left: 5-0-10
Ankle (Subtalar)	Patient everts left ankle to 10 degrees, inverts to 20 degrees	Left: 10-0-20

AROM, active range of motion.
Data from *American Medical Association: Guides to the Evaluation of Permanent Impairment* (ed 5). Chicago, American Medical Association, 2001.

Muscle Strength

Strength measures the power with which musculotendinous units act across a bone–joint lever-arm system to actively generate motion or passively resist movement against gravity and variable resistance.[21]

☑ KEY POINT

A measure of a person's strength is really a measurement of an individual's torque production. Specific joint positions are used when performing manual muscle testing, because force production is highly dependent on the muscular length and joint angle.

A number of methods can be used to measure strength, including dynamometry, isokinetics, and cable tensiometry. The *Guide to Physical Therapist Practice* lists both manual muscle testing (MMT) and dynamometry as appropriate measures of muscle strength.

- MMT evaluates the function and strength of individual muscles and muscle groups based on the efficient performance of a movement in relation to the forces of gravity and manual resistance.
- Dynamometry is a method of strength testing using sophisticated strength measuring devices (e.g., hand-grip, hand-held, fixed, isokinetic).

Manual Muscle Testing Traditionally, the clinician uses MMT to assess the strength of a muscle or muscle group. MMT is designed to evaluate a muscle or muscle group's ability to resist the force applied by the clinician isometrically. When performing strength testing, a particular muscle or muscle group is first isolated and then an external force is applied. Resistance applied at the end of the tested range is termed a *break test*. This method is best used solely as a screening tool. Resistance applied throughout the range is termed a *make test*. The results of the strength testing differ depending on the method used. The isometric hold (break test) shows the muscle to have a higher test grade than the resistance given throughout the range (make test). A one-repetition-maximum (1 R-M) also can be used to quantify strength, as well as to guide the dosage for resistance exercises. (See Chapter 13.) For example, 1 R-M protocols can be used for non–weight-bearing knee extension or weight-bearing leg press to assess quadricep strength.[22]

Whichever testing method is used, resistance should be applied and released gradually to give the

TABLE 6.7 Capsular Patterns of Restriction

Joint	Limitation of Motion (Passive Angular Motion)
Glenohumeral	External rotation > Abduction > Internal rotation (3:2:1)
Acromioclavicular	No true capsular pattern; possible loss of horizontal adduction, pain (and sometimes slight loss of end range) with each motion
Sternoclavicular	See acromioclavicular joint
Humeroulnar	Flexion > Extension (±4:1)
Humeroradial	No true capsular pattern; possible equal limitation of pronation and supination
Superior radioulnar	No true capsular pattern; possible equal limitation of pronation and supination with pain at end ranges
Inferior radioulnar	No true capsular pattern; possible equal limitation of pronation and supination with pain at end ranges
Wrist (carpus)	Flexion = Extension
Radiocarpal Carpometacarpal Midcarpal	*See wrist (carpus)*
First carpometacarpal	Retroposition
Carpometacarpal 2–5	Fan > Fold
Metacarpophalangeal 2-5	Flexion > Extension (±2:1)
Interphalangeal Proximal (PIP) Distal (DIP)	Flexion > Extension (±2:1)
Hip	Internal rotation > Flexion > Abduction = Extension > Other motions
Tibiofemoral	Flexion > Extension (±5:1)
Superior tibiofibular	No capsular pattern: pain at end range of translatory movements
Talocrural	Plantarflexion > Dorsiflexion
Talocalcaneal (subtalar)	Varus > Valgus
Midtarsal Talonavicular calcaneocuboid	Inversion (plantarflexion, adduction, supination) > Dorsiflexion
First metatarsophalangeal	Extension > Flexion (±2:1)
Metatarsophalangeal 2–5	Flexion ≥ Extension
Interphalangeal 2–5 Proximal Distal	 Flexion ≥ Extension Flexion ≥ Extension

Data from Cyriax J: *Textbook of Orthopaedic Medicine, Diagnosis of Soft Tissue Lesions* (ed 8). London, Bailliere Tindall, 1982.

patient sufficient time to offer resistance. Following the manual muscle test, the muscle tested is said to be "weak" or "strong" based upon the muscle's ability to resist the externally applied force over time. If a position other than the standard position is used, it must be documented.

Interpretation of Manual Muscle Testing Results A number of grading scales have been devised to assess muscle strength (**TABLE 6.8**).[23,24] Each system specifies the patient testing position, clinician positioning to maximize patient stabilization and minimize substitution of agonist muscles, the force vector for clinician resistance, and a corresponding grading scheme describing the clinician's results (**TABLE 6.9**).[25] In the Medical Research Council scale, the grades of 0, 1, and 2 are tested in the gravity-minimized position (contraction is perpendicular to the gravitational force). All other grades are tested in the antigravity position. The Daniels and Worthingham grading system is considered by some as the most functional of the three grading systems outlined in Table 6.8, because it tests a motion that utilizes all of the agonists and synergists involved in the motion.[26] The Kendall and McCreary approach is designed to test a specific muscle rather than the motion, and it requires both selective recruitment of a

TABLE 6.8 Comparison of MMT Grades

Medical Research Council	Daniels and Worthingham	Kendall and McCreary	Explanation
5	Normal (N)	100%	Holds test position against maximal resistance
4+	Good+ (G+)		Holds test position against moderate to strong pressure
4	Good (G)	80%	Holds test position against moderate resistance
4–	Good– (G–)		Holds test position against slight to moderate pressure
3+	Fair+ (F+)		Holds test position against slight resistance
3	Fair (F)	50%	Holds test position against gravity
3–	Fair– (F–)		Gradual release from test position
2+	Poor+ (P+)		Moves through partial ROM against gravity *or* Moves through complete ROM gravity eliminated and holds against pressure
2	Poor (P)	20%	Able to move through full ROM gravity eliminated
2–	Poor– (P–)		Moves through partial ROM gravity eliminated
1	Trace (T)	5%	No visible movement; palpable or observable tendon prominence/flicker contraction
0	0	0%	No palpable or observable muscle contraction

ROM, range of motion.

Data from Frese E, Brown M, Norton B: Clinical reliability of manual muscle testing: Middle trapezius and gluteus medius muscles. *Phys Ther* 67:1072–76, 1987; Daniels K, Worthingham C: *Muscle Testing Techniques of Manual Examination* (ed 5). Philadelphia, WB Saunders, 1986; and Kendall FP, McCreary EK, Provance PG: *Muscles: Testing and Function*. Baltimore, Williams & Wilkins, 1993.

TABLE 6.9 Manual Muscle Testing Procedure

Explanation	It is important that the clinician provides instructions to the patient. For example, the following statements may be used: "I'm going to test the strength of one of the muscles that bends your elbow." "This is the movement pattern I want you to do. Do it first on your uninvolved side."
Patient positioning	The patient and the part to be tested should be positioned comfortably on a firm surface in the correct testing position. The correct testing position ensures that the muscle fibers to be tested are correctly aligned. The patient is properly draped so that the involved body part is exposed as necessary.
Stabilization	Stabilization, which helps to prevent substitute movements can be provided manually or through the use of an external support such as a belt. The stabilization is applied to the proximal segment using counterpressure to the resistance.
Active range of motion	The patient moves through the test movement actively against gravity. (If using the Daniels and Worthingham grading system, the clinician passively moves the patient's joint through the test movement.) The clinician palpates the muscle for activity and also notes any adaptive shortening (slight to moderate loss of motion), substitutions or trick movements (weakness or instability), or contractures (marked loss of motion). The joint is then returned to the start position. If the patient is unable to perform the muscle action against gravity, the patient is positioned in the gravity-minimized position.
Test	The test should be completed on the uninvolved side first to ascertain normal strength before being repeated on the involved side. The patient is instructed to complete the test movement again and then hold the segment in the desired position. The clinician alerts the patient that resistance will be applied and then applies resistance in the appropriate direction and in a smooth and gradual fashion. The proper location for the application of resistance is as far distal as possible from the axis of movement on the moving segment without crossing another joint. Resistance should never cross an intervening joint unless the integrity of the joint has been assessed as normal. The resistance is applied in a direction opposite the muscle's rotary component and at right angles to the long axis of the segment (opposite the line of the pull of the muscle fibers). The test is repeated three times and the muscle strength grade is determined. Fatigue with three repetitions may be suggestive of nerve root compression.

muscle by the patient and a sound knowledge of anatomy and kinesiology on the part of the clinician to determine the correct alignment of the muscle fibers.[26]

☑ KEY POINT

Choosing a particular grading system is based on the skill level of the clinician while ensuring consistency for each patient so that coworkers who may be reexamining the patient are using the same testing methods. To confirm a finding, another muscle that shares the same innervation (spinal nerve or peripheral nerve) is tested. Knowledge of both spinal nerve and peripheral nerve innervation will aid the clinician in determining which muscle to select.

All of the grading systems for MMT produce ordinal data with unequal rankings between grades, and all are innately subjective because they rely on the subject's ability to exert the maximal contraction.

☑ KEY POINT

The primary tenet of MMT is that each muscle should be tested just proximal to the next distal joint of the muscle's insertion and that the clinician must place the subject in positions that will isolate, as much as possible, the specific muscle or muscles being examined and eliminate substitution of agonist muscles.[25]

To be a valid test, strength testing must elicit a maximum contraction of the muscle being tested. Four strategies ensure this:

1. *Placing the muscle to be tested in a shortened position.* This puts the muscle in an ineffective physiological position, and it has the effect of increasing motor neuron activity.
2. *Having the patient perform an eccentric muscle contraction by using the command "Don't let me move you."* The tension at each cross-bridge and the number of active cross-bridges is greater during an eccentric contraction, so the maximum eccentric muscle tension developed is greater with an eccentric contraction than with a concentric one.
3. *Breaking the contraction.* It is important to break the patient's muscle contraction in order to ensure that the patient is making a maximal effort and that the full power of the muscle is being tested.
4. *Holding the contraction for at least 5 seconds.* Weakness due to nerve palsy has a distinct fatigability. The muscle demonstrates poor endurance because it is usually able to sustain a maximum muscle contraction for only about 2 to 3 seconds before complete failure occurs. This is based on the theories behind muscle recruitment wherein a normal muscle performing a maximum contraction uses only a portion of its motor units, keeping the remainder in reserve to help maintain the contraction. A palsied muscle with its fewer functioning motor units has very few, if any, in reserve. If a muscle appears to be weaker than normal, further investigation is required. The test is repeated three times. Muscle weakness resulting from disuse will be consistently weak and should not get weaker with several repeated contractions.

☑ KEY POINT

Multiple studies have shown good intertester and intratester reliability with MMT and a high degree of exact consistency to within one grade using some form of the Medicine Research Council's grading sequence (0–5).[25]

Substitutions by other muscle groups during testing indicate the presence of weakness. They do not, however, tell the clinician the cause of the weakness.

☑ KEY POINT

From a functional perspective, wherever possible, strength testing by the clinician should assess the function of a muscle. If a power muscle is assessed, its ability to produce power should be evaluated. In contrast, an endurance muscle should be tested for its capacity to sustain a contraction for a prolonged period, such as that which occurs with sustained postures.

Whenever possible, the same muscle is tested on the opposite side, using the same testing procedure, and a comparison is made.

☑ KEY POINT

Remember that the grades obtained with MMT are largely subjective and depend on a number of factors, including the effect of gravity, the manual force used by the clinician, the patient's age, the extent of the injury, and cognitive and emotional factors of both patient and clinician.

Dynamometry A handheld dynamometer (HHD) is a precision measurement instrument designed to obtain more discrete, objective measures of strength during MMT than can be achieved via traditional MMT. More recently, electromechanical dynamometry, in either isometric or isokinetic mode has become the gold standard for assessing muscle strength, although it is used mainly in research settings.[27] Clinical utility of such devices is limited because the equipment requires a large amount of space and is cost prohibitive for most clinics. The advantage of a HHD is that it improves the reliability of MMT and can quantify the force producing capacity.[28]

A prerequisite for quality MMT measures, and likewise HHD measures, is adequate force-generating capacity by the testers performing the measurements. When subject strength is clearly beyond a tester's capability to control, use of an HHD does not appear to be indicated. This issue is often encountered when attempting to measure plantar flexion. Aside from limitations regarding mechanical advantage and strength when using an HHD, there is also the issue of patient comfort as a potential limitation. Even though the HHD is padded, it does not and cannot conform to a given body part like a tester's hand, and a common subject complaint is tenderness over the dynamometer placement site.

☑ KEY POINT

The handheld devices used in dynamometry can help quantify the "breaking force" necessary to depress a limb held in a specific position by the patient.

Clinical Relevance of Strength Testing According to Cyriax, pain with a contraction generally indicates an injury to the muscle or a capsular structure.[19] The PT confirms this by combining the findings from the isometric test with the findings of the passive motion and the joint distraction and compression. In addition to examining the integrity of the contractile and inert structures, strength testing may also be used to examine the integrity of the myotomes. A myotome is a muscle or group of muscles served by a single nerve root. *Key muscle* is a better, more accurate term, because the muscles tested are the most representative of the supply from a particular segment. Cyriax reasoned that if you isolate and then apply tension to a structure, you could make a conclusion as to the integrity of that structure.[19] His work also introduced the concept of tissue reactivity, which is the manner in which different stresses and movements can alter the clinical signs and symptoms. This knowledge can be used to gauge any subtle changes to the patient's condition.[29]

Pain that occurs consistently with resistance, at whatever the length of the muscle, may indicate a tear of the muscle belly. Pain with muscle testing may indicate a muscle injury, a joint injury, or a combination of both.

Pain that does not occur during the contraction, but occurs upon the release of the contraction, is thought to have an articular source, produced by the joint glide that occurs following the release of tension.

☑ KEY POINT

The degree of significance with the findings in resisted testing depends on the position of the muscle and the force applied. For example, pain reproduced with a minimal contraction in the rest position for the muscle is more strongly suggestive of a contractile lesion than pain reproduced with a maximal contraction in the lengthened position for the muscle.

Special Tests

Numerous special tests exist for each area of the body. The PT performs these tests only if there is some indication that they will be helpful in confirming or implicating a particular structure, or providing information as to the degree of tissue damage. For example, in the joints of the spine, special tests include directional stress tests (posterior–anterior pressures and anterior, posterior, and rotational stressing), joint quadrant testing, vascular tests, and repeated movement testing. Examples of special tests in the peripheral joints include ligament stress tests (e.g., Lachman for the anterior cruciate ligament), articular stress testing (valgus stress applied at the elbow), and rotator cuff impingement tests.

For the most part, only those special tests that have appeared in peer-reviewed literature are included in the various chapters of this book so that the PTA can have a full appreciation of their purpose and implications. It is important to remember that the interpretation of the findings from the special tests depends on the sensitivity and specificity of the test, the skill and experience of the PT, and the PT's degree of familiarity with the tests.

Evaluation

Following the history, systems review, and tests and measures, the PT makes an evaluation based on an analysis and organization of the collected data and information.[2] An evaluation is the level of judgment necessary to make sense of the findings in order to identify a relationship between the symptoms reported and the signs of disturbed function.[30] The evaluation process also may identify possible problems that require consultation with, or referral to, another provider. Two components of the evaluation process are the diagnosis and the prognosis.

Diagnosis

Although physicians typically use labels that identify a disease, disorder, or condition at the level of the cell, tissue, organ, or system, PTs use labels that identify the impact of a condition on function at the level of the system (especially the movement system) and at the level of the whole person.[2] Thus, a physical therapy diagnosis includes a label that describes a cluster of signs and symptoms usually associated with a disorder or syndrome and the accompanying impairments, functional limitations, and disabilities from which to base the intervention strategies.

Prognosis

The prognosis, determined by the PT, is the predicted level of optimum function that the patient will attain and an identification of the barriers that may impact the achievement of optimal improvement—such as age, medication(s), socioeconomic status, comorbidities, cognitive status, nutrition, social support, medical prognosis, and environment—within a certain time frame.[2] This prediction helps guide the intensity, duration, frequency, and type of the intervention, in addition to providing justifications for the intervention. Knowledge of the severity of an injury; the age, physical status, and health status of a patient; and the healing processes of the various tissues involved are among the factors used by the PT in determining the prognosis.

Intervention

According to the *Guide to Physical Therapist Practice*,[2] an intervention is "the purposeful and skilled interaction of the PT/PTA and the patient/client and, when appropriate, with other individuals involved in the patient/client care, using various physical therapy procedures and techniques to produce changes in the condition consistent with the diagnosis and prognosis." One of the primary purposes of rehabilitative interventions after orthopaedic injury is to improve the tolerance of a healing tissue to tension and stress, and to ensure that the tissue has the capacity to tolerate the various stresses that will be placed on it. (See Chapter 2.) As an example, with contractile tissues, such as the muscles, this can be accomplished through measured rest, rehabilitative exercise, high-voltage electrical stimulation, central (cardiovascular) aerobics, general conditioning, and absence from overuse.[31]

☑ KEY POINT

The intervention, which outlines anticipated patient management, involves the setting of goals, coordination of care, progression of care, and discharge. The intervention comprises the following:[2]

- Is based on the examination, evaluation, diagnosis, and prognosis, including the predicted level of optimal improvement
- Includes statements that identify the anticipated goals
- Describes the specific interventions to be used, and the proposed frequency and duration of the interventions
- Includes documentation that is dated and appropriately authenticated by the PT who established the plan of care
- Includes patient and family (as appropriate) goals, and a focus on patient education
- Includes plans for discharge of the patient/client.

The inert structures, such as ligaments and menisci, rely more on the level of tension and force placed on them for their recovery, which stimulates the fibroblasts to produce fiber and glycosaminoglycans.[32] (See Chapter 4.) Thus, the intervention chosen for these structures must involve the repetitive application of modified tension in the line of stress based on the stress of daily activities or sporting activity.[32]

Outcomes

Outcomes, which the PT measures and compares to the baseline as the individual reaches the end of the episode of care, are the actual results of implementing the treatment plan that indicate the impact on functioning (body functions and structures, activities, and participation).[2] Examples of available outcome measurement tools are listed in **TABLE 6.10**. Outcomes determine the global impact of the services provided by characterizing or quantifying the impact of the PT intervention on the following domains:[2]

- Pathology/pathophysiology (disease, disorder, or condition)
- Impairments in body function and structure
- Activity limitations
- Participation restrictions
- Risk reduction and prevention
- Health, wellness, and fitness
- Societal resources
- Patient or client satisfaction

Predictive analytics is the process by which outcome forecasts are made by extracting information from existing data sets (data-mining) to determine patterns, and predict future outcomes. Currently, many clinicians are collecting and using data to achieve better outcomes, practice more efficiently, boost reimbursement, and reduce costs. Much of this data comes from having the patient fill out a functional-status questionnaire such as the Oswestry Disability Index Questionnaire (**TABLE 6.11**), which has been widely researched and validated by investigators of spinal disorders. The data from the questionnaire is then typically inputted into an analytical software program along with additional data about demographics (e.g., age, gender, level of education, employment status, and job description), comorbidities, and information from the patient's electronic medical record (EMR) to produce a likelihood of success using risk adjustments. Risk adjustment is a method by which a wide variety of patient types can be analyzed as to how they compare against others

TABLE 6.10 Examples of Available Outcome Measurement Tools

General Function	Dynamic Gait Index	Timed Up and Go Test (TUG)	Mini Mental State Exam	Functional Reach Test	Dizziness Handicap Inventory	Barthel Index
Balance	Tinetti	Motion Sensitivity Score	Fullerton Advanced Balance Sale	Berg Balance Scale	Activities-specific Balance Confidence (ABC) Scale	Balance Error Scoring System (BESS)
Spine	Neck Disability Index Questionnaire	The Quebec Back Pain Disability Scale	Oswestry Disability Index Questionnaire	Spinal Cord Independence Measure (SCIM)	Roland-Morris Questionnaire	Medical Outcomes Study 36-item short-form health survey (SF-36)
Upper Extremity	Shoulder Pain and Disability Questionnaire	Upper Extremity Functional Index	Upper Extremity Quick DASH	Disabilities of the Arm, Shoulder and Hand (DASH)	Hand Profile	Nine-Hole Peg Test
Lower Extremity	Lower Extremity Functional Scale	Foot and Ankle Disability Index	Foot and Ankle Ability Measure	Hip Disability and Osteoarthritis Outcome Score	Foot Function Index (FFI)	Western Ontario and McMaster Universities Arthritis Index (WOMAC)
Pain	Chronic Pain Grade Scale (CPGS)	Pain Catastrophizing Scale	McGill Pain Questionnaire	Brief Pain Inventory—Short Form	The Assessment of Pain and Occupational Performance	Numeric Pain Rating Scale
Gait	Dynamic Gait Index					

with similar risk factors. For example, the care provided for a 13-year-old soccer player who twisted her ankle in practice can be compared with the care that was given to an 80-year-old man with arthritis who sprained his ankle while walking on an uneven surface. Once sufficient data are imported, the software program can predict with a very high level of certainty how many visits the patient should need and the functional change they will have at discharge. One study,[33] using predictive analytics for patients with shoulder complaints, demonstrated that a short duration of complaints, not having feelings of depression or anxiety, having a paid job, a better working alliance, and a low disability score were predictors of recovery after 6 months. The clinician can use this information to determine whether the patient is progressing as predicted or whether there needs to be a change in the plan of care.

TABLE 6.11 The Oswestry Disability Index Questionnaire

PLEASE READ: This questionnaire is designed to enable us to understand how much your low back pain has affected your ability to manage your everyday activities. Please answer each section by marking the **ONE BOX** that most applies to you. We realize that you feel that more than one statement may relate to your problem, but please just mark the one box that most closely describes your problem at this point in time.

Name:

Date:

Section 1—Pain Intensity
( ) The pain comes and goes and is very mild
( ) The pain is mild and does not vary much
( ) The pain comes and goes and is moderate
( ) The pain is moderate and does not vary much
( ) The pain comes and goes and is severe
( ) The pain is severe and does not vary much

Section 2—Personal Care
( ) I have no pain when I wash or dress
( ) I do not normally change my way of washing and dressing even though it causes some pain
( ) I have had to change the way I wash and dress because these activities increase my pain
( ) Because of pain I am unable to do **some** washing and dressing without help
( ) Because of pain I am unable to do **most** washing and dressing without help
( ) Because of pain I am unable to do **any** washing and dressing without help

Section 3—Lifting (*Skip if you have not attempted lifting since the onset of your back pain.*)
( ) Can lift heavy weights without increasing my pain
( ) Can lift heavy weights but it increases my pain
( ) Pain prevents me from lifting heavy weights off the floor
( ) Pain prevents me from lifting heavy weights off the floor, but I can manage if they are conveniently positioned, e.g., on a table
( ) Pain prevents me from lifting heavy weights, but I can manage light to medium weights if they are conveniently positioned
( ) I can only lift very light weight at the most

Section 4—Walking
( ) I have **no** pain when I walk
( ) I have **some** pain when I walk, but it does not prevent me from walking normal distances
( ) Pain prevents me from walking **long** distances
( ) Pain prevents me from walking **intermediate** distances
( ) Pain prevents me from walking **short** distances
( ) Pain prevents me from walking at all

Section 5—Sitting
( ) Sitting does not cause me any pain
( ) I can sit as long as I need to provided I have my choice of chair
( ) Pain prevents me from sitting more than 1 hour
( ) Pain prevents me from sitting more than ½ hour
( ) Pain prevents me from sitting more than 10 minutes
( ) Pain prevents me from sitting at all

Section 6—Standing
( ) Standing does not cause me any pain
( ) I have some pain when I stand, but it does not increase with time
( ) Pain prevents me from standing more than 1 hour
( ) Pain prevents me from standing more than ½ hour
( ) Pain prevents me from standing more than 10 minutes
( ) Pain prevents me from standing at all

TABLE 6.11 The Oswestry Disability Index Questionnaire *(continued)*

Section 7—Sleeping
( ) I have no pain when I lie in bed
( ) I have some pain when I lie in bed, but it does not prevent me from sleeping well
( ) Because of pain my sleep is reduced by 25%
( ) Because of pain my sleep is reduced by 50%
( ) Because of pain my sleep is reduced by 75%
( ) Pain prevents me from sleeping at all

Section 8—Sex Life (if applicable)
( ) My sex life is normal and causes no pain
( ) My sex life is normal but increases my pain
( ) My sex life is nearly normal but is very painful
( ) My sex life is severely restricted
( ) My sex life is nearly absent because of pain
( ) Pain prevents any sex life at all

Section 9—Social Life
( ) My social life is normal and causes no pain
( ) My social life is normal but increases my pain
( ) Pain has no significant effect on my social life, apart from limiting my more energetic interests (sports, etc.)
( ) Pain has restricted my social life, and I do not go out often
( ) Pain has restricted social life to my home
( ) I have no social life because of pain

Section 10—Traveling
( ) I have no pain when I travel
( ) I have some pain when I travel, but none of my usual forms of travel make it worse
( ) Traveling increases my pain but has not required that I seek alternative forms of travel
( ) I have had to change the way I travel because my usual form of travel increases my pain
( ) Pain has restricted all forms of travel
( ) I can only travel while lying down

Plan of Care

The plan of care (POC), which outlines anticipated patient management, involves the setting of goals, coordination of care, the progression of care, and discharge. The POC comprises the following:

- Is based on the examination, evaluation, diagnosis, and prognosis, including the predicted level of optimal improvement
- Includes statements that identify the anticipated goals and expected outcomes
- Describes the targeted interventions to be used and the proposed frequency and duration of the interventions that are required to reach the anticipated goals and expected outcomes
- Includes documentation that is dated and appropriately authenticated by the PT who established the plan of care
- Includes patient and family (as appropriate) goals, and a focus on patient education
- Includes plans for discharge of the patient/client, taking into consideration achievement of anticipated goals and expected outcomes, and provides for appropriate follow-up or referral

Patient Coordination and Communication

The PT is responsible for the coordination of physical therapy care and services. The coordination of care may include any of the following:

- Addressing advanced care directives
- Obtaining informed consent
- Assistance with admission and discharge planning
- Communicating with case management
- Cost-effective resource utilization
- Data collection, analysis, and reporting
- Interdisciplinary teamwork

Much about becoming an effective clinician relates to an ability to communicate with the patient, the patient's family, and to the other members of the healthcare team. Good communication involves an understanding of human behavior, effective listening, and the ability to detect subtle changes in mood, tone of voice, and body language (**TABLE 6.12**). The nonverbal cues such as mood and body language are especially important because they often are performed subconsciously.

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> Communication involves interacting with the patient by using terms he or she can understand.

Communication between PTA and patient begins when the PTA first meets the patient and continues throughout any future sessions. The introduction to the patient should be handled at eye

TABLE 6.12 General Recommendations for Communication

Verbal commands	Should focus the patient's attention on specific desired actions for intervention.
Intentional pause	Using a purposeful pause can help draw out more information from the patient
Instruction	Should remain as simple as possible and must never incorporate confusing medical terminology. The general sequence of events should be explained to the patient before initiating the intervention.
Questions	The patient should be asked questions before and during the intervention to establish a rapport with the patient and to provide feedback as to the status of the current intervention. Open-ended questions or statements, such as "How does that feel?" are used to encourage the patient to elaborate, help determine the patient's chief complaint, and to decrease the opportunity for bias on the part of the clinician. Closed-ended questions, such as "Where is your pain?" are more specific and help to focus the examination and deter irrelevant information. *Neutral* questions, such as "What activities make your symptoms worse?" are structured in such a way as to avoid leading the patient into giving a particular response. Leading questions, such as "Does it hurt more when you walk?" must be used with care.
Tone of voice	The PTA should speak clearly in moderate tones and vary his or her tone of voice as required by the situation.
Nonverbal behaviors	These include expressions, mannerisms, gestures, and posture. Examples of good nonverbal behaviors include projecting a relaxed posture with arms uncrossed, good eye contact, pleasant facial expression, and nods of agreement. Examples of bad nonverbal behaviors include yawning, blank facial expressions, constantly looking at the clock, and fidgeting.
Empathy	Expressing empathy involves understanding the ideas being communicated and the emotion behind the ideas—seeing another person's viewpoint and what the person is experiencing. Particularly important aspects of empathy are the recognition of patients' rights, potential cultural differences, typical responses to loss, and the perceived role of spirituality in health and wellness to the patient.
Paraphrasing	This involves using words to describe something a patient says to ensure that there is a mutual understanding of what the patient has said.
Summarizing	This involves providing the patient with a compressed version of a verbal interaction so that the patient can get confirmation that what they have said has been understood.
Knowledge	Knowing the importance of each question is based on the didactic background of the clinician. For example, if the patient reports that lumbar extension relieves their low-back pain, but that lumbar flexion aggravates it, the clinician needs to know which structures are stressed in lumbar flexion, but unstressed in lumbar extension.

level and in a professional yet empathetic tone. In addition to being able to articulate well, the PTA also must be an effective listener, which involves actively paying attention to the patient's verbal and nonverbal responses. Listening with empathy means understanding the ideas being communicated and the emotion behind the ideas. In essence, empathy is seeing another person's viewpoint, so that a deep and genuine understanding of what the person is experiencing can be obtained.

☑ KEY POINT

From the patient's perspective, there is no substitute for interest, acceptance, and especially empathy on the part of the clinician. In fact, a patient's perception of being listened to, cared about, and valued result in high levels of satisfaction and better clinical outcomes.[34]

Documentation

Documentation of the assessment and intervention processes is an important part of any therapeutic regimen. Documentation in health care includes any entry made in the patient/client record. As a record of client care, documentation provides useful information for the clinician, other members of the healthcare team, and third-party payers. The APTA Board of Directors has approved a number of guidelines for physical therapy documentation that are intended to be a foundation for the development of more specific guidelines in specialty areas, while at the same time providing guidance across all practice settings. In all instances, it is the APTA's position that the physical therapy examination, evaluation, diagnosis, prognosis, and intervention must be documented, dated, and authenticated by the PT or PTA, as appropriate. The APTA's Documentation Guidelines are outlined in Appendix B.

The SOAP (Subjective, Objective, Assessment, Plan) note format has traditionally been used to document the examination and intervention process.

- *Subjective.* Information about the condition from a patient or family member
- *Objective.* A measurement that a clinician obtains during the physical examination
- *Assessment.* Analysis of the problem including the long- and short-term goals
- *Plan.* A specific intervention plan for the identified problem

The purposes of documentation are as follows:[3]

- To document what the clinician does to manage the individual patient's case
- To record examination findings, patient status, intervention provided, and the patient's response to treatment
- To communicate with all other members of the healthcare team, which helps to maintain consistency among the services provided and includes communication between the PT and PTA
- To provide information to third-party payers, such as Medicare and other insurance companies, who make decisions about reimbursement based on the quality and completeness of the physical therapy note
- To be used for quality assurance and improvement purposes and for issues such as discharge planning

☑ KEY POINT

The physical therapy documentation is considered a legal document, and it becomes a part of the patient's medical record.

The PTA reads the initial documentation of the examination, evaluation, diagnosis, prognosis, anticipated outcomes and goals, and intervention plan, and is expected to follow the POC as outlined by the PT in the initial patient note. After the patient has been seen by the PTA for a period of time (the time varies according to the policies of each facility or healthcare system and state law), the PTA must write a progress note documenting any changes in the patient's status that have occurred since the PT's initial note was written.[3] Also, after a discussion with the PT about the diagnosis and prognosis, expected outcomes, anticipated goals, and interventions, the PTA rewrites or responds to the previously written expected outcomes and documents the revised POC accordingly.[3] In many facilities (according to the policies of each facility or healthcare system and state law), the PT then cosigns the PTA's notes, indicating agreement with what is documented.[3]

☑ KEY POINT

Students in PT or PTA programs may document when the record is additionally authenticated by the PT or, when permissible by law, documentation by a PTA student may be authenticated by a PTA.

Abbreviations

Medical abbreviations are used throughout the various disciplines in health care to document client status or progression. To avoid miscommunication, it is important to remember that before using abbreviations the PTA must ensure that they are approved for use by the facility. Appendix C outlines some of the more common abbreviations used by orthopaedic physical therapy professionals.

Ongoing Assessment, Progression, and Compliance

During the physical therapy visits, the PTA and the patient work together to alter the patient's perception of their functional capabilities. Discussions about intervention goals must continue throughout the rehabilitative process and must be mutually acceptable. Open-ended questions (Table 6.12) or statements, such as "Tell me how you are feeling today," are used initially to encourage the patient to provide narrative information and to decrease the opportunity for bias on the part of the clinician.[5] More specific questions, such as "How would you rate pain today on a scale of 0 to 10?" are asked as the session proceeds. The specific questions help to obtain specific responses and deter irrelevant information. The clinician should provide the patient with encouraging responses, such as a nod of the head, when the information is relevant and when needed to steer the patient into supplying the necessary information. *Neutral* questions should be used whenever possible. These questions are structured to avoid leading the patient into giving a particular response. Avoid leading questions, such as "Does it hurt more when you sit?" A more neutral question would be, "What activities make your symptoms worse?" It is also important to use statements that summarize the data that have been collected; for example, "Would I be right in saying that your neck only hurts when you turn your head to the right?" Summarizing the patient's information helps clarify the purpose of the intervention, while increasing patient involvement.

PTAs help a patient to progress by identifying and quantifying changes in the patient's condition, receiving direction for the PT, and then making modifications to the treatment plan. (See Chapter 8.) For example, the PTA may notice an increase in swelling and warmth around an incision site (suggesting inflammation or infection), or the patient may report an increase in pain levels not related to activity levels (may indicate systemic involvement).

> ☑ **KEY POINT**
>
> The PTA has to remove the patient's notion that all pain is bad. In many respects, a slight increase in pain following an intervention is a more desirable finding than no change in pain, because it indicates that the correct structure is being stressed, albeit too aggressively.

Imaging Studies

For healthcare professionals involved in the primary management of neuromusculoskeletal disorders, diagnostic imaging is an essential tool. The availability of diagnostic images varies greatly depending on the practice setting. Although the interpretation of diagnostic images is always the responsibility of the radiologist, it is important for the PTA to know what importance to attach to these reports, and the strengths and weaknesses of the various techniques that image bone and soft tissues, such as muscle, fat, tendon, cartilage, and ligament. In general, imaging tests have a high sensitivity (few false negatives) but low specificity (high false-positive rate), so they are not used in isolation. Although imaging may provide evidence of pathology, the mere presence of an abnormality may or may not be relevant to the presenting signs and symptoms.

Conventional (Plain Film) Radiography

X-rays are part of the electromagnetic spectrum with the ability to penetrate through body tissues of varying densities. The amount of beam absorbed as it passes through the body depends on the density of the tissue. Tissues of greater density allow less penetration of the X-rays and therefore appear lighter on the film (**FIGURE 6.10**).

The following structures are listed in order of descending density: metal, bone, soft tissue, water or body fluid, fat, and air. Metal structures (total joint components) are denser than bone and therefore appear as the lightest structures. In contrast, because air is the least dense material in the body, it absorbs the least amount of X-ray particles, thereby appearing as the darkest structure on the film. Conventional (plain film) radiography is typically the first diagnostic imaging modality ordered. The basic process is simple—the patient's body part of interest is oriented in a prescribed position and a film plate, receptor or, detector is positioned to capture the particles of the X-ray beam that are not absorbed by the tissues of the body. The term "radiograph" refers

FIGURE 6.10 Tissues of greater density (bone) appear lighter on the film.

to the image produced on the radiographic film. X-ray film initially produces a negative image but, once the exposure of the patient to the X-rays has occurred, the X-ray film is placed into a film developer and the final image is produced.

Any exposure to the X-ray particles causes the film to darken, whereas areas where absorption occurred appear lighter on the film.

In general, radiographs are relatively inexpensive and give an excellent view of cortical bone (see **FIGURE 6.11**, **FIGURE 6.12**, and **FIGURE 6.13**). However, they do not provide the most accurate image of soft tissue structures, such as intervertebral disks, tendons, muscles, and ligaments.

FIGURE 6.11 Femoral neck fracture.

FIGURE 6.12 Humeral fracture.

When studying radiographs, a systematic approach, such as the mnemonic ABCS is recommended:

A *Architecture or alignment*. The entire radiograph is scanned from top to bottom, side to side, and in each corner to check for the

FIGURE 6.13 Fracture of the radius.

regular shape and alignment of each bone. The outline of each bone should be smooth and continuous. Breaks in continuity usually represent fractures. Malalignments may indicate subluxations or dislocations, or in the case of the spine, scoliosis. Malalignment in a setting of trauma must be considered traumatic rather than degenerative until proven otherwise.

B *Bone density.* The clinician should assess both general bone density and local bone density. The cortex of the bone should appear denser than the remainder of the bone. Subchondral bone becomes sclerosed in the presence of stress in accordance with Wolff's law (see Chapter 4) and increases its density. This is a radiographic hallmark of osteoarthritis.

C *Cartilage spaces.* Each joint should have a well-preserved joint space between the articulating surfaces. A decreased joint space typically indicates that the articular cartilage is thinned from a degenerative process such as osteoarthritis.

S *Soft tissue evaluation.* Trauma to soft tissues produces abnormal images resulting from effusion, bleeding, and distension.

Radiographs, like many medical procedures, have a number of associated risks and benefits. For example, ionizing radiation can increase the risk of cancer, and in sufficient doses, can cause death.[35]

Stress Radiograph

A stress radiograph is a procedure that involves taking a conventional radiograph while a stress is applied to a joint. During this technique, an unstable joint demonstrates a widening of the joint space as the stress is applied. For example, spine flexion and extension views, which are frequently ordered in the acutely injured athlete when there is a high degree of suspicion of spinal injury, can be helpful in determining spinal stability.

Arthrography

Arthrography is the study of structures within an encapsulated joint using a contrast medium with or without air that is injected into the joint space. The contrast medium distends the joint capsule. This type of radiograph is called an *arthrogram*. An arthrogram outlines the soft tissue structures of a joint that would otherwise not be visible with a plain-film radiograph. This procedure is commonly performed on patients with injuries involving the hip, knee, ankle (**FIGURE 6.14**), shoulder, elbow, wrist, or temporomandibular joint.

FIGURE 6.14 Arthrogram of the ankle.

Myelography

Myelography is the radiographic study of the spinal cord, nerve roots, dura mater, and spinal canal. The contrast medium is injected into the subarachnoid space, and a radiograph is taken (**FIGURE 6.15**). This type of radiograph is called a *myelogram*. Myelography is frequently used to diagnose intervertebral disk herniations, spinal cord compression, stenosis, nerve root injury, or tumors. The nerve root and its sleeve can be observed clearly on direct myelograms.

Diskography

Diskography is the radiographic study of the intervertebral disk. A radiopaque dye is injected into the disk space between two vertebrae. The radiopaque dye acts to obstruct the passage of radiant energy rather than letting it pass through. A radiograph is then taken. This type of radiograph is called a *diskogram*. An abnormal dye pattern between the intervertebral disks indicates a rupture of the disk.

Angiography

Angiography is the radiographic study of the vascular system. A water-soluble radiopaque dye is injected

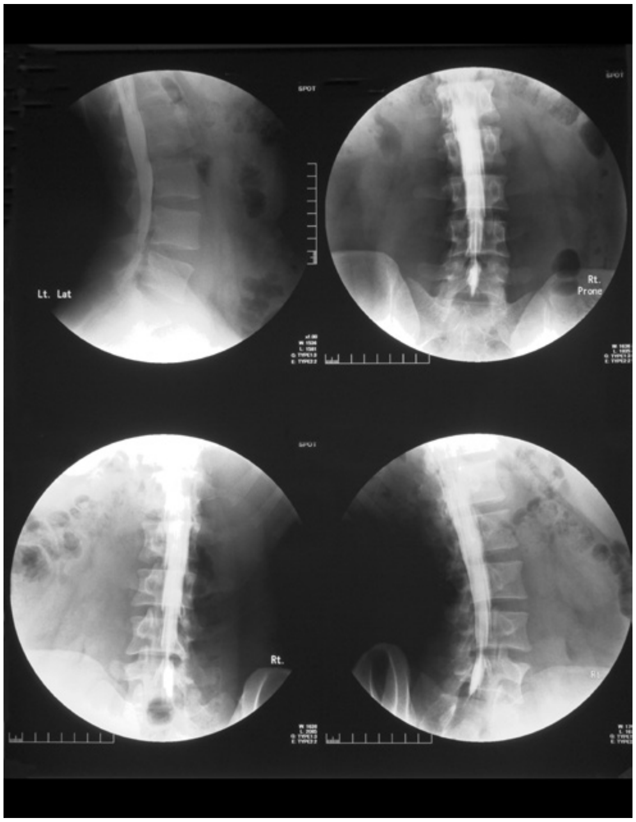


FIGURE 6.15 Myelogram.

either intra-arterially (arteriogram) or intravenously (venogram). A rapid series of radiographs is then taken to follow the course of the contrast medium as it travels through the blood vessels. Angiography is used to help detect injury to or partial blockage of blood vessels.

Video Fluoroscopy

Video fluoroscopic procedures involve the use of X-rays to evaluate the quality and quantity of joint motion. Because of the relatively high exposure to radiation with this technique, it is used mainly in the detection of joint instability.

Computed Tomography

The word "tomography" is derived from the Greek *tomos* (slice) and *graphia* (to write). A computed tomography (CT) scanner system, also known as computerized axial tomography (CAT) and computerized transaxial tomography (CTT), consists of a scanning gantry that holds the X-ray tube and detectors (moving parts), a moving table or couch for the patient, an X-ray generator, a computer processing unit, and a display console or workstation.[36] Images are obtained in the transverse (axial) plane of the patient's body by rotating the X-ray tube 360 degrees. The X-rays are absorbed in part by the patient's body, and the number of X-rays transmitted through the body is detected by an array of detectors. Each rotation of the scanner provides a picture of a thin slice of the area (**FIGURE 6.16**). Each detector reacts to the sum of rays detected and downloads data to the system's computer, which consigns a numeric value based on the attenuation property of the different tissues of the body, and then forms an image based on the differential absorption rates of the X-rays.

These attenuation values, referred to as the relative attenuation coefficient (μ), are expressed in Hounsfield units (HU) and are normalized to water: 0 HU.[37] Bone, which has the highest absorption values, measures >400 HU, whereas muscle measures 40 HU, fat measures −120 HU, and air (the lowest absorption values) measures −1,000 HU.[38] By adjusting the level and the width of the displayed ranges of HU, the operator can study different tissues optimally in any desired plane (2D) or surface reconstruction (3D).[38] The continuous movement offered by multislice or multidetector CT scanners (spiral CT), have significantly reduced scan time. These newer scanners provide simultaneous activation of multiple detector rows positioned along the longitudinal or z-axis (direction of table or gantry), which allows for the acquisition of interweaving helical sections.[39] The importance of this design is that section thickness is determined by detector size and not by the

FIGURE 6.16 CT image of the brain.

collimator (a device that filters rays so that only those moving parallel to a specified direction are allowed to pass) itself.[39] The quality of the image is dependent on variables selected by the operator. Two parameters are used to determine image quality:[36]

- *Spatial resolution.* The ability of the system to distinguish between two closely spaced objects.
- *Contrast resolution.* The ability of the system to discriminate between two adjacent areas. The contrast resolution of CT is dramatically better than conventional radiography, providing the operator with greater soft tissue detail compared with plain films.[40]

As with plain radiographs, bone appears white, and air appears as the darkest portion of the film.

CT Myelogram

A CT myelogram (CTM) is a diagnostic tool that uses radiographic contrast media (dye) that is injected into the subarachnoid space (cerebrospinal fluid; CSF). After the dye is injected, the contrast medium serves to illuminate the spinal canal, cord, and nerve roots during imaging. The low viscosity of the water-soluble contrast permits filling of the nerve roots and better visualization.[40]

Magnetic Resonance Imaging

Unlike CT, which depends upon multiple thin slices of radiation that are "backplotted" through Fourier transformers, magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) is the result of the interaction among magnetic fields, radiofrequency (RF) waves, and complex image reconstruction techniques, which means they are able to align parallel or antiparallel when exposed to a large magnetic field.[41] Normally, the axes of protons in the body have a random orientation. Certain nuclei (the most common being hydrogen, carbon 13, fluorine, sodium, and phosphorus) produce their own magnetic moment and so interact with external magnetic fields. When the body or body part is placed within a high magnetic field, the protons abandon their normal random spatial orientations and align themselves parallel with or perpendicular to the direction of the magnetic field. The protons, now spinning synchronously at an angle within the magnetic field, induce a current in a nearby transmitter-receiver coil or antenna. This small nuclear signal is then recorded, amplified, measured, and localized (linked to the exact location in the body where the MRI signal is coming from), producing a high contrast, clinically useful MR image. Because of the unique properties of magnetic imaging, MRI is subject to a number of artifacts (specifically those produced by ferromagnetic objects), which distort the alignment of protons in the scanner's magnetic field and produce erroneous measurements.[37] MRI has excellent soft tissue contrast detail and multiplanar imaging capabilities with excellent reproducibility. The ability to manipulate numerous interactions allows an MRI to differentiate between the various soft tissues in the neuromusculoskeletal system (**FIGURE 6.17**), delineate pathology, and can thus be used to aid in diagnosis, staging, and treatment monitoring.[38,41] The disadvantages of MRI are its cost and limited availability.

Magnetic Resonance Spectroscopy

Magnetic resonance (MR) spectroscopy is a superior MRI technique that involves the addition of a series of tests to a traditional MRI scan. This series of tests compares the chemical composition of normal versus abnormal tissue, and makes an assessment of the chemical metabolism of the tissues. MR spectroscopy can provide details about the structure, dynamics, reaction state, and chemical environment of a variety of tissues. For example, MR spectroscopy has been used to explore and quantify the metabolic environment of the spinal cord

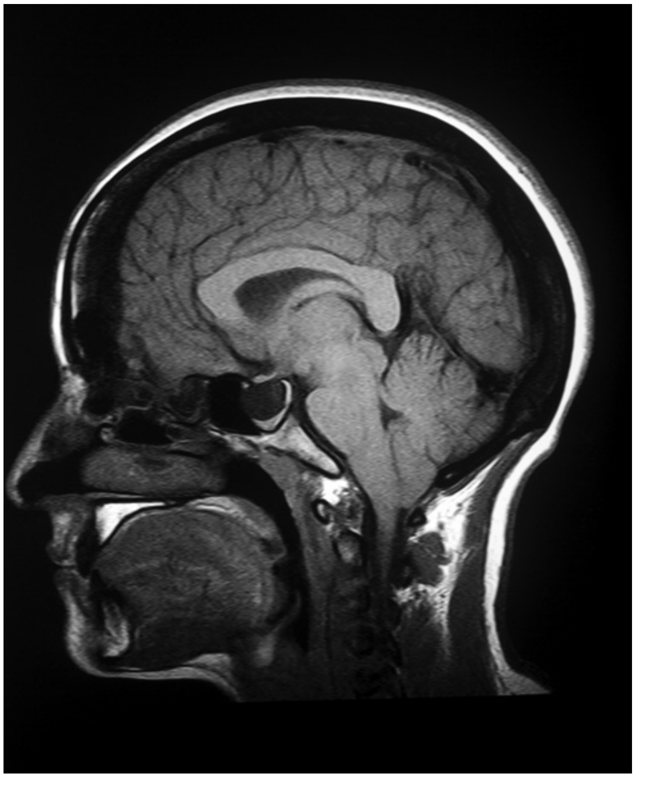


FIGURE 6.17 MRI.

and brain in patients with varying spinal conditions with neurological compromise, such as myelopathy, chronic whiplash related pain and disability, and fibromyalgia.[42]

Diagnostic Ultrasound (Ultrasonography)

A diagnostic ultrasound system is composed of a set of transducers, a power system, and a computer unit with a display screen. Continuous or pulsed therapeutic ultrasound produces 1 MHz or 3 MHz thermal and nonthermal energy, whereas diagnostic ultrasound produces pulsed waves at 7.5–20 MHz. As these pulsed ultrasound waves are transmitted through the body, they are reflected at tissue interfaces. The time it takes for the waves to be reflected back to the transducing probe allows the computer to produce pulsed echo images. The reflectivity of the sound wave is influenced by the following two factors:[43]

- *Acoustic impedance*. Acoustic impedance is the product of the speed of sound transmission within a substance and the density of that material. The reflectivity is greatest at the interfaces between tissues of dissimilar acoustic impedance.
- *Angle of incidence of the sound beam*. When the angle of incidence of the sound beam is at 90 degrees or perpendicular to the tissue interface, the reflectivity is highest but decreases with increasing angle.

A sound void area beneath the interface occurs between soft tissues and air or calcium. The sound beam is enhanced when it passes through tissue such as water or other fluids that do not absorb ultrasound, therefore, showing as sound void areas. Thus, different tissues transmit sound waves at different velocities and thereby create different images. Less dense tissue such as water or fat reflects fewer waves than the more dense tissues such as bone and collagen.

Ultrasonography is a readily available technique, is less expensive than most other imaging modalities (with the exception of plain films), does not involve ionizing radiation, and is noninvasive.[43] Additionally, it allows real-time imaging, an advantageous feature for some conditions, such as snapping tendon syndrome or developmental dysplastic hip, where dynamic imaging provides critical information (**FIGURE 6.18**).[43]

Some of the disadvantages of ultrasonography include a high reliance on operator competence, a small field of view and the presence of artifacts associated with metal or glass foreign bodies. For example,

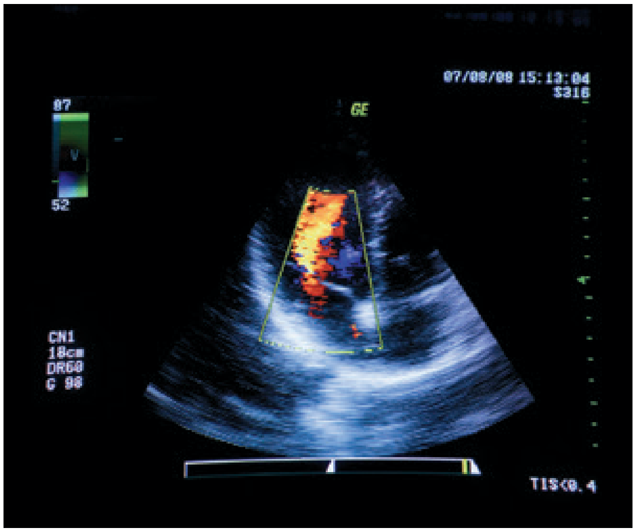


FIGURE 6.18 Ultrasound image.

a slight change in the ultrasound transducer tilt can generate imaging artifacts that are similar to those seen with pathology.[44]

Ultrasonography can be used to diagnose any superficial pathologic condition and is currently used in orthopaedics to help detect soft tissue injuries (e.g., bursitis, tendinopathy), cysts, tumors, nerve thickening, bone infections, to stage muscle injuries, arthropathy (intra-articular loose bodies) and to evaluate bone mineral density. Ultrasound imaging also may be used to assess the degree and quality of fracture healing and to confirm proper placement of an injection.

Radionuclide Scanning

Radionuclide scanning involves the introduction of bone-seeking isotopes that are administered to the patient orally or intravenously and allowed to localize to the skeleton. The photon energy emitted by the isotopes is then recorded using a gamma camera 2 to 4 hours later. The pathophysiological basis of the technique is complex but depends on localized differences in blood flow, capillary permeability, and metabolic activity that accompany any injury, infection, repair process, or growth of bone tissue.[45]

Single Photon Emission Computed Tomography

The most common radionuclide scanning test is the bone scan. Single photon emission computed tomography (SPECT) scanning improves both the detection and localization of a bone abnormality. It is able to perform this by permitting spatial separation of bone structures that overlap on standard planar images.[46] The abnormality shows up as a *hot spot*, which is darker in appearance than normal tissue. After the acquisition of the study, a computer is used to reconstruct the images in axial, sagittal, and coronal planes. To date, bone SPECT has been used in studies of the vertebral column and has been shown to be more sensitive than plain film radiology, with the majority of SPECT lesions corresponding to identifiable disease on CT.[46] SPECT scanning is also a highly sensitive method to detect spondylolysis, a fracture of the pars interarticularis.[46]

Positron Emission Tomography

Positron emission tomography (PET) is a gamma imaging technique, which uses small amounts of radioactive materials (radiotracers), to observe metabolic and functional processes in the body, and to monitor the progress of certain conditions. By mapping gamma rays that arrive simultaneously, the PET system is able to produce an image with high spatial resolution. Because a PET scan may detect biochemical changes in an organ or tissue, it can identify the onset of a disease process before any anatomic changes related to the disease can be seen with other imaging processes. This is particular useful in oncology (to detect the growth of a tumor or the spread of cancer), cardiology (evaluate the perfusion to the myocardium), and neurology (to detect signs of Alzheimer's and Parkinson's disease, hematoma, bleeding, and/or perfusion of the brain tissue). PET scans can also be used in conjunction with other diagnostic tests such as CT scans.

Learning Portfolio

Case Study

You are talking with a patient while they are performing a therapeutic exercise. During the discussion, the patient mentions something about their past medical history that you feel is important. When you ask the patient whether they told the supervising physical therapist about this piece of information, the patient replies that they did not because they felt it was irrelevant.

1. What would be your course of action?

Later that morning you are training a student physical therapist assistant and reviewing vital signs.

2. What are the four vital signs, and what are considered to be fifth vital signs?

Having reviewed the vital signs with your student, you ask the student to take a patient's blood pressure. The patient you chose has normal blood pressure but the student reports that the patient has a systolic blood pressure of 140–159 mm Hg.

3. What would be the most appropriate course of action?

Review Questions

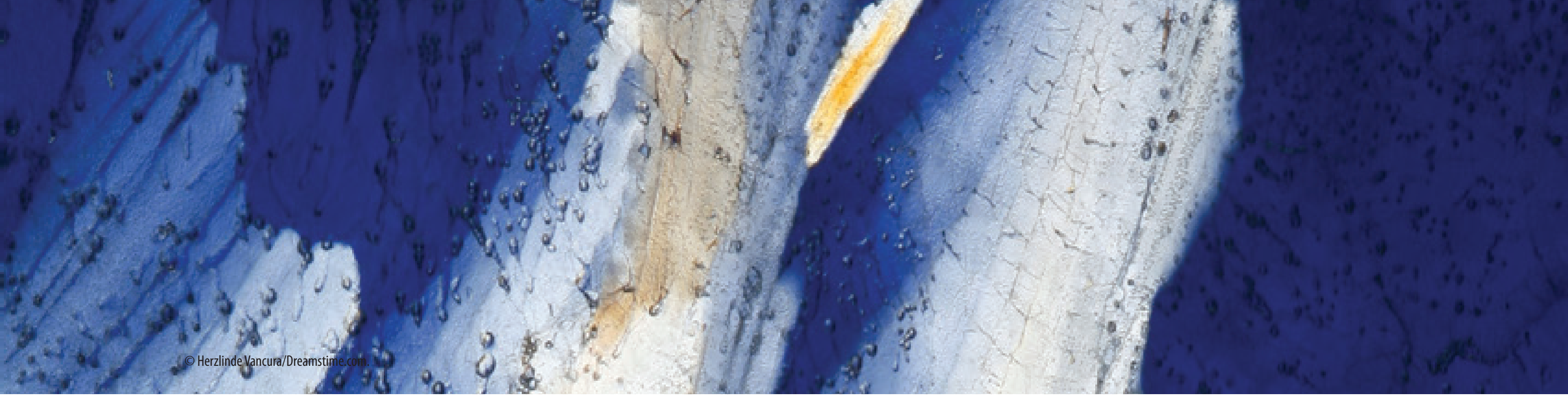
1. A physical therapist assistant checks the vital signs of a 40-year-old patient who has a history of cardiac disease. The heart rate is steady at 65 beats per minute; respiratory rate is 8 breaths per minute; blood pressure is 120/72 mm Hg; and the oral temperature is 98.6°F. The vital sign that presents the most concern at this time is the patient's:
   a. Respiratory rate
   b. Heart rate
   c. Blood pressure
   d. Temperature
2. A patient with hepatitis B receives a bleeding skin tear on the right forearm during a treatment session. To prevent transmission of the disease while cleaning up, the physical therapist assistant should:
   a. Wear disposable gloves and wash both hands before and after cleaning up.
   b. Proceed as normal as long as the physical therapist assistant does not have any skin breaks on his or her hand.
   c. Wipe up the blood with gauze and dispose in a trash container.
   d. Wear a mask with a splash guard.

3. You are working with a patient who begins to exhibit signs and symptoms of unresponsiveness. You should:
   a. Activate emergency protocols and check for vital signs.
   b. Sit the patient down and monitor blood pressure and pulse rate.
   c. Administer chest compressions.
   d. Allow the patient to rest, then resume exercise activities at a lighter pace.
4. A patient who is substituting with the sartorius muscle during testing of the iliopsoas muscle for a grade 3 (fair) muscle test would demonstrate which of the following?
   a. External rotation and abduction of the hip
   b. Internal rotation and abduction of the hip
   c. Flexion of the hip and extension of the knee
   d. Extension of the hip and knee
5. The stationary arm of a goniometer is placed in line with the lateral midline of the trunk, the fulcrum is placed at the greater trochanter, and the movable arm is aligned with the lateral femoral condyle. What motion is being measured?
   a. Hip flexion
   b. Hip abduction
   c. Trunk lateral flexion
   d. Trunk extension
6. Which element of patient/client management includes gathering information from the chart, other caregivers, the patient, and the patient's family, caregiver, and friends in order to identify and define the patient's problem(s)?
   a. Evaluation
   b. Intervention
   c. Examination
   d. Tests and measures
7. Which component of the examination includes an analysis of posture, structural alignment or deformity, scars, crepitus, color changes, swelling, and muscle atrophy?
   a. Palpation
   b. Observation
   c. Patient history
   d. None of these is correct
8. Which of the elements of patient/client management attempts to identify a relationship between the symptoms reported and the signs of disturbed function?
   a. Tests and measures
   b. Patient history
   c. Examination
   d. None of these is correct
9. Which of the elements of patient/client management determines the predicted level of function that the patient will attain and identifies the barriers that may impact the achievement of optimal improvement—age, medication(s), socioeconomic status, comorbidities, cognitive status, nutrition, social support, and environment—within a certain time frame?
   a. Evaluation
   b. Examination
   c. Prognosis
   d. Diagnosis
10. Which of the elements of patient/client management can be defined as "the purposeful and skilled interaction of the PTA and the patient/client and, when appropriate, other individuals involved in the patient/client care, using various physical therapy procedures and techniques to produce changes in the condition consistent with the diagnosis and prognosis."
    a. Examination
    b. Prognosis
    c. Intervention
    d. Evaluation
11. Which of the following statements are true about the plan of care?
    a. It is based on the examination, evaluation, diagnosis, and prognosis, including the predicted level of optimal improvement.
    b. It describes the specific interventions to be used, and the proposed frequency and duration of the interventions that are required to reach the anticipated goals and expected outcomes.
    c. It includes plans for discharge of the patient/client taking into consideration achievement of anticipated goals and expected outcomes, and provides for appropriate follow-up or referral.
    d. All of these are correct
12. What are the four components of the traditional SOAP note?
13. **True or false:** Correction fluid/tape can be used to correct text when documenting in medical records.
14. You are completing documentation using a SOAP note. Where should "The patient reports wanting to return to playing soccer in 5 weeks" be placed in a SOAP note?
    a. Subjective
    b. Objective
    c. Assessment
    d. Plan
15. **True or false:** A PTA may modify an intervention only in accordance with changes in patient status and within the established plan of care developed by the physical therapist.

References

1. Alrwaily M, Timko M, Schneider M, Stevans J, Bise C, Hariharan K, et al. Treatment-based classification system for low back pain: revision and update. *Physical Therapy*. 2016; 96:1057–66.
2. *Guide to Physical Therapist Practice*. 3.0. Alexandria, VA: American Physical Therapy Association; 2014.
3. Kettenbach G. Background information. In: Kettenbach G, editor. *Writing SOAP Notes with Patient/Client Management Formats*, 3rd ed. Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2004. p. 1–5.
4. O'Sullivan SB. Clinical decision-making. In: O'Sullivan SB, Schmitz TJ, editors. *Physical Rehabilitation*, 5th ed. Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2007. p. 3–24.
5. Goodman CC, Snyder TK. Introduction to the interviewing process. In: Goodman CC, Snyder TK, editors. *Differential Diagnosis in Physical Therapy*. Philadelphia: Saunders; 1990. p. 7–42.
6. Bailey MK. *Physical Examination Procedures to Screen for Serious Disorders of the Low Back and Lower Quarter*. La Crosse, Wisconsin: Orthopaedic Section, APTA, Inc; 2003.
7. Huber MA, Terezhalmy GT, Moore WS. White coat hypertension. *Quintessence International.* 2004; 35:678–9.
8. Chung I, Lip GY. White coat hypertension: not so benign after all? *Journal of Human Hypertension*. 2003; 17:807–9.
9. Alves LM, Nogueira MS, Veiga EV, de Godoy S, Carnio EC. White coat hypertension and nursing care. *Canadian Journal of Cardiovascular Nursing*. 2003; 13:29–34.
10. Lotze M, Moseley GL. Theoretical considerations for chronic pain rehabilitation. *Physical Therapy*. 2015; 95:1316–20.
11. O'Connell NE, Moseley GL, McAuley JH, Wand BM, Herbert RD. Interpreting effectiveness evidence in pain: short tour of contemporary issues. *Physical Therapy*. 2015; 95:1087–94.
12. Niv D, Devor M. Chronic pain as a disease in its own right. *Pain Practice*. 2004; 4:179–81.
13. Boone DC, Azen SP, Lin C-M, Spence C, Baron C, Lee L. Reliability of goniometric measurements. *Physical Therapy*. 1978; 58:1355–60.
14. Mayerson NH, Milano RA. Goniometric measurement reliability in physical medicine. *Archives of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation*. 1984; 65:92–4.
15. Riddle DL, Rothstein JM, Lamb RL. Goniometric reliability in a clinical setting: shoulder measurements. *Physical Therapy*. 1987; 67:668–73.
16. Farfan HF. The scientific basis of manipulative procedures. *Clinics in Rheumatic Diseases*. 1980; 6:159–77.
17. Heffner SL, McKenzie R, Jacob G. McKenzie protocols for mechanical treatment of the low back. In: Morris C, editor. *Low Back Syndromes: Integrated Clinical Management*. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2006. p. 611–22.
18. McKenzie R, May S. Physical examination. In: McKenzie R, May S, editors. *The Human Extremities: Mechanical Diagnosis and Therapy*. Waikanae, New Zealand: Spinal Publications New Zealand Ltd; 2000. p. 105–21.
19. Cyriax J. *Textbook of Orthopaedic Medicine, Diagnosis of Soft Tissue Lesions*, 8th ed. London: Bailliere Tindall; 1982.
20. Riddle DL. Measurement of accessory motion: critical issues and related concepts. *Physical Therapy*. 1992; 72:865–74.
21. American Medical Association. *Guides to the Evaluation of Permanent Impairment*, 5th ed. Cocchiarella L, Andersson GBJ, editors. Chicago: American Medical Association; 2001.
22. Verdijk LB, van Loon L, Meijer K, Savelberg HH. One-repetition maximum strength test represents a valid means to assess leg strength in vivo in humans. *Journal of Sports Sciences*. 2009; 27:59–68.
23. Sapega AA. Muscle performance evaluation in orthopedic practice. *Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery*. 1990; 72A:1562–74.
24. Janda V. *Muscle Function Testing*. London: Butterworths; 1983.
25. Nadler SF, Rigolosi L, Kim D, Solomon J. Sensory, motor, and reflex examination. In: Malanga GA, Nadler SF, editors. *Musculoskeletal Physical Examination: An Evidence-Based Approach*. Philadelphia: Elsevier-Mosby; 2006. p. 15–32.
26. Palmer ML, Epler M. Principles of examination techniques. In: Palmer ML, Epler M, editors. *Clinical Assessment Procedures in Physical Therapy*. Philadelphia: JB Lippincott; 1990. p. 8–36.
27. Martin HJ, Yule V, Syddall HE, Dennison EM, Cooper C, Aihie Sayer A. Is hand-held dynamometry useful for the measurement of quadriceps strength in older people? A comparison with the gold standard Bodex dynamometry. *Gerontology*. 2006; 52:154–9.
28. Kelln BM, McKeon PO, Gontkof LM, Hertel J. Hand-held dynamometry: reliability of lower extremity muscle testing in healthy, physically active, young adults. *Journal of Sport Rehabilitation*. 2008; 17:160–70.
29. Tovin BJ, Greenfield BH. Impairment-based diagnosis for the shoulder girdle. In: *Evaluation and Treatment of the Shoulder: An Integration of the Guide to Physical Therapist Practice*. Philadelphia: F.A. Davis; 2001. p. 55–74.
30. Grieve GP. *Common Vertebral Joint Problems*. New York, NY: Churchill Livingstone Inc; 1981.
31. Nirschl RP. Prevention and treatment of elbow and shoulder injuries in the tennis player. *Clinics in Sports Medicine*. 1988; 7:289–308.
32. Grimsby O, Power B. Manual therapy approach to knee ligament rehabilitation. In: Ellenbecker TS, editor. *Knee Ligament Rehabilitation*. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 2000. p. 236–51.
33. Karel YH, Verhagen AP, Thoomes-de Graaf M, Duijn E, van den Borne MP, Beumer A, et al. Development of a prognostic model for patients with shoulder complaints in physical therapist practice. *Physical Therapy*. 2017; 97:72–80
34. Hall AM, Ferreira PH, Maher CG, Latimer J, Ferreira ML. The influence of the therapist-patient relationship on treatment outcome in physical rehabilitation: a systematic review. *Physical Therapy*. 2010; 90:1099–110.
35. Shankman S. Conventional radiography and tomography. In: Spivak JM, Di Cesare PE, Feldman DS, et al., editors. *Orthopaedics: A Study Guide*. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill; 1999. p. 173–8.
36. Yamaguchi T. The central pattern generator for forelimb locomotion in the cat. *Progress in Brain Research*. 2004; 143:115–22.
37. Skogsbergh DR, Jones KM. Diagnostic imaging approaches to the evaluation of low back syndrome. In: Morris C, editor. *Low Back Syndromes: Integrated Clinical Management*. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill; 2006. p. 477–509.
38. Beltran J, Rosenberg ZS. Computed tomography. In: Spivak JM, Di Cesare PE, Feldman DS, et al., editors. *Orthopaedics: A Study Guide*. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill; 1999. p. 179–82.
39. Carrino JA, Morrison WB. Musculoskeletal imaging. *Orthopaedic Knowledge Update 8: Home Study Syllabus*.

Rosemont, IL: American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons; 2005. p. 119–36.
40. Iwasaki T, Zheng M. Sensory feedback mechanism underlying entrainment of central pattern generator to mechanical resonance. *Biological Cybernetics*. 2006; 94:245–61. Epub 2006 Jan 10.
41. McMahon KL, Cowin G, Galloway G. Magnetic resonance imaging: the underlying principles. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2011; 41:806–19.
42. Elliott JM, Flynn TW, Al-Najjar A, Press J, Nguyen B, Noteboom JT. The pearls and pitfalls of magnetic resonance imaging for the spine. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2011; 41:848–60.
43. Grijseels S, Beltran J. Ultrasonography. In: Spivak JM, Di Cesare PE, Feldman DS, et al., editors. *Orthopaedics: A Study Guide*. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill; 1999. p. 199–201.
44. Docking SI, Ooi CC, Connell D. Tendinopathy: is imaging telling us the entire story? *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2015; 45:842–52.
45. Norris BJ, Weaver AL, Morris LG, Wenning A, Garcia PA, Calabrese RL. A central pattern generator producing alternative outputs: temporal pattern of premotor activity. *Journal of Neurophysiology*. 2006; 96:309–26. Epub 2006 Apr 12.
46. Finkel JE. Musculoskeletal scintigraphy. In: Spivak JM, Di Cesare PE, Feldman DS, et al., editors. *Orthopaedics: A Study Guide*. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill; 1999. p. 203–8.



CHAPTER 7

Gait and Posture

CHAPTER OBJECTIVES

At the completion of this chapter, the reader will be able to:

1. Summarize the various components of the gait cycle.
2. Apply the knowledge of gait components to a rehabilitation program.
3. Categorize the various compensations of the body and their influences on gait.
4. Describe the characteristics of a number of abnormal gait syndromes.
5. Describe and demonstrate the various gait patterns used with assistive devices.
6. Summarize the different components of good posture.
7. Recognize the most common manifestations of abnormal posture.

Overview

Gait involves the displacement of body weight in the desired direction, utilizing a coordinated effort between the joints of the trunk and extremities and the muscles that control or produce these motions. Any interference that alters this relationship may result in a deviation or disturbance of the normal gait pattern. This, in turn, may result in increased energy expenditure or functional impairment. The physical therapist assistant (PTA) requires an understanding of what constitutes normal human gait and must be able to recognize the deviations from normal that can occur with this functional activity. For example, the PTA is frequently delegated the responsibility of teaching patients how to use assistive devices in a suitable manner with a particular gait pattern and with the appropriate weight-bearing status. In addition, the PTA frequently educates patients on how to perform functional activities and exercises while maintaining correct posture.

Gait

The fall that occurs at the initiation of gait so that an individual can lift one foot off the ground and take the first step is controlled by the central nervous system and a series of reflexes. The central nervous system computes in advance the required size and direction of this fall of the body toward the supporting foot. It is not clear whether gait is learned or is preprogrammed, but it is clear that gait relies on the control of the limb movements by reflexes. Two such reflexes are the stretch reflex and the extensor thrust. The stretch reflex is involved in the extremes of joint motion. The extensor thrust, present in a human in the first 2 months of life, is an exaggeration of the positive support reflex. The reflex consists of an uncontrolled extension of a flexed leg when the sole of the foot is stimulated, which may facilitate the extensor muscles of the lower extremity during weight bearing.[1,2] In patients who have developed dysfunctional gait patterns, physical therapy can help to restore this exquisite evolutionary gift.[3] Pain, weakness, and disease all can cause a disturbance in the normal rhythm of gait (see "Influences on Normal Gait" later in this chapter); however, except in obvious cases, abnormal gait does not always equate with impairment.

Terminology

The following terminology is commonly used when discussing gait:

- *Base of support.* The base of support, defined as the distance between an individual's feet while standing and during ambulation, includes the part of the body in contact with the supporting surface and the intervening area.[4] The standard base of support is considered to be between 2 to 4 inches (5 and 10 centimeters).
- *Center of gravity.* The center of gravity (COG), which changes both vertically and horizontally during gait (see "The Kinematics of Gait"), may be defined as the point at which the three planes of the body intersect. (See Chapter 2.) In humans, that point is approximately 2 inches (5 centimeters) anterior to the second sacral vertebra (**FIGURE 7.1**). As the COG moves forward with each step, it briefly passes beyond the anterior margin of the base of support, resulting in a temporary loss of balance.[4] This temporary loss of equilibrium is counteracted by the advancing foot at initial contact, which establishes a new base of support.
- *Step length.* Step length is defined as the linear distance between the right and left foot during gait (**FIGURE 7.2**). Step length is measured as the distance between the same point on each foot with successive footprints (ipsilateral to the contralateral footfall).
- *Stride length.* Stride length is the distance between successive points of foot-to-floor contact of the same foot. A stride is one full lower extremity cycle. Two step lengths added together make up the stride length (**TABLE 7.1**). Stride length can be estimated based on height (females: height × 0.413; males: height × 0.415). The average length of the female stride is 2 feet. The average length of the male stride is 2.5 feet.[1,6] Typically, the stride length does not vary more than a few inches between tall and short individuals.
- *Cadence.* Cadence is defined as the number of separate steps taken in a certain time period. Normal cadence is between 90 and 120 steps per minute.[1,2] The cadence of women is usually six to nine steps per minute slower than that of men. Cadence is also affected by age, decreasing from the age of 4 to the age of 7 years, and then again in advancing years.[7]
- *Velocity.* Velocity is defined as the distance a body moves in a given time and is thus calculated by dividing the distance traveled by the time taken. Velocity is expressed in meters per second. Reductions in velocity correlate with joint impairments, amputation levels, and many acute pathologies due to pain.

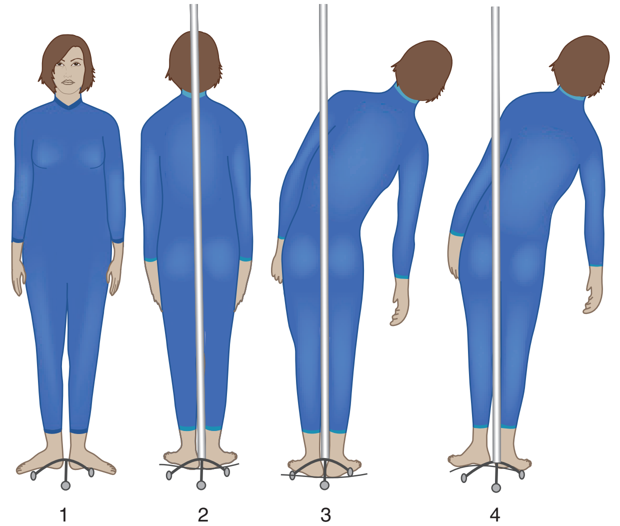


FIGURE 7.1 Center of gravity.

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> Larger than normal bases of support are observed in individuals who have muscle imbalances of the lower limbs and trunk, as well as those who have problems with overall static and dynamic balance.[5]

Gait Cycle

Walking involves the alternating action of the two lower extremities. The walking pattern is studied as a gait cycle. A gait cycle is defined as the interval of time between any of the repetitive events of walking. Such an event includes everything from the point when the foot initially contacts the ground to the point when the same foot contacts the ground again, or all of the activity that occurs during one stride length. The gait cycle consists of two periods (**TABLE 7.2**):

1. *Stance.* This period describes the entire time the foot is in contact with the ground, and the limb is bearing weight. The stance period begins with the initial contact of the

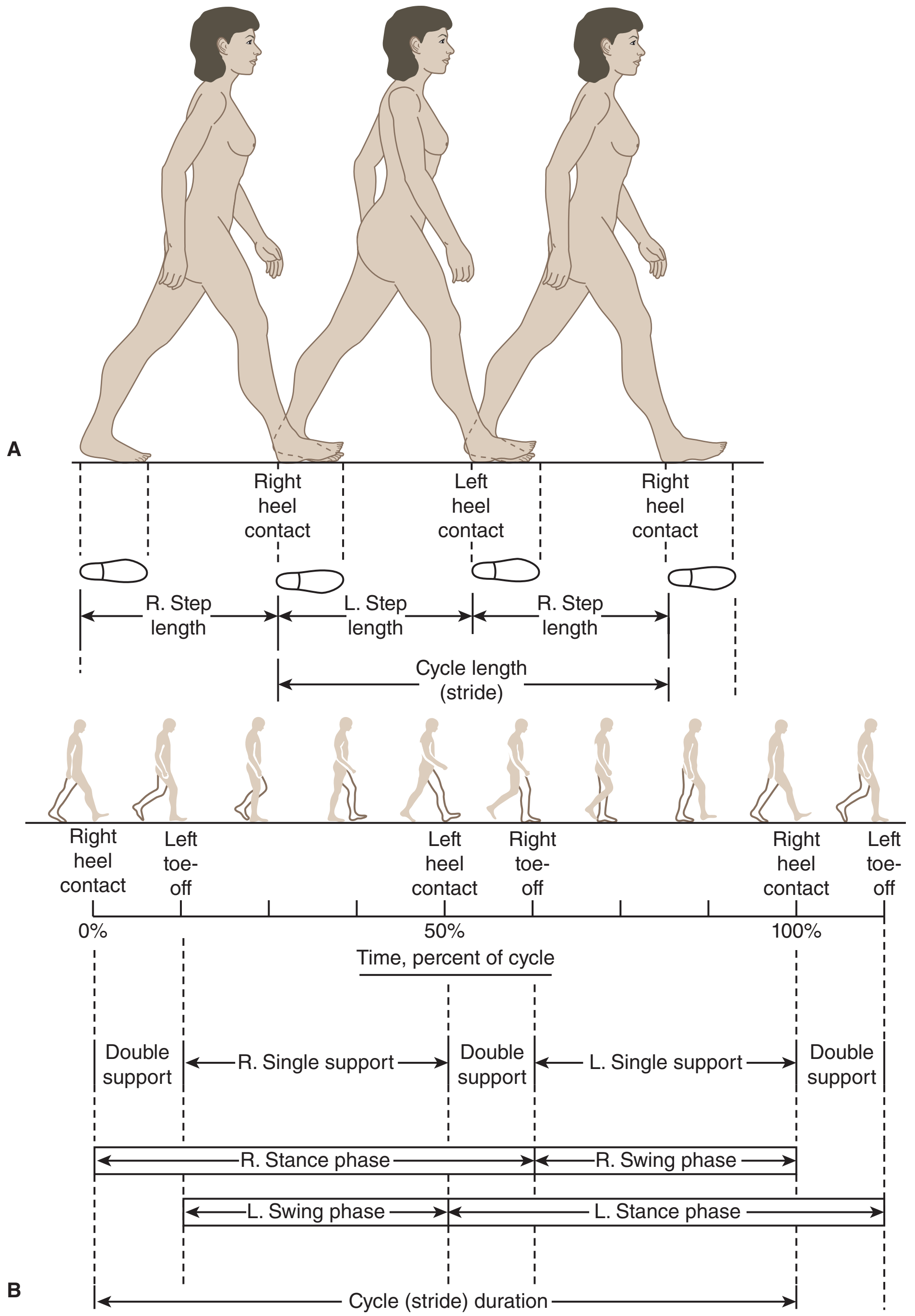


FIGURE 7.2 The gait cycle.

Inman VT, Ralston H, Todd F: *Human Walking*. Baltimore, Lippincott, Williams & Wilkins, 1981.

TABLE 7.1 Gait Parameters

Cadence (steps/min) = velocity (m/s) × 120/stride length (m)
Stride length (m) = velocity (m/s) × 120/cadence (steps/min)
Velocity (m/s) = cadence (steps/min) × stride length (m)/120

Data from Levine D, Whittle M: *Gait Analysis: The Lower Extremities*. La Crosse, WI, Orthopaedic Section, American Physical Therapy Association, 1992.

TABLE 7.2 The Gait Cycle

Period	Component	Biomechanics and Muscle Actions
Stance phase	Initial contact	The center of gravity is at its lowest point. *Ankle*. The ankle is held in neutral dorsiflexion through isometric activation of the dorsiflexor muscles (e.g., tibialis anterior). As the ankle transitions toward the loading response, the dorsiflexor muscles are eccentrically active to lower the ankle into plantarflexion. *Knee*. The knee is slightly flexed as a way to absorb the shock of initial weight bearing. The quadriceps are eccentrically active to allow a slight give to the flexed knee and to prevent the knee from buckling as weight is transferred onto the stance limb. *Hip*. The hip is in about 30 degrees of flexion, and as weight-bearing continues, the hip extensor muscles are isometrically active.
	Loading response	*Ankle*. The ankle has just rapidly moved into 5 to 10 degrees of plantarflexion. This motion is controlled through eccentric activation of the dorsiflexor muscles. Immediately following this point, the ankle begins to move toward dorsiflexion as the lower leg advances forward over the fixed foot. *Knee*. The knee continues to flex to about 15 degrees, acting as a shock-absorbing spring; the knee extensor muscles continue to be active eccentrically. *Hip*. The hip extensor muscles shift from isometric to slight concentric activation, guiding the hip toward extension.
	Midstance	*Ankle*. The ankle approaches about 5 degrees of dorsiflexion, during which time the dorsiflexor muscles are inactive and the plantarflexor muscles are eccentrically active, controlling the rate at which the lower leg advances forward over the foot. *Knee*. The knee reaches near full extension. Because the line of gravity falls just anterior to the medial-lateral axis of rotation of the knee, the knee is mechanically locked into extension, requiring little activation from the quadriceps at this time. *Hip*. The hip approaches 0 degrees of extension, and the hip extensors such as the gluteus maximus are only slightly active to help stabilize the hip as the body is propelled forward. This activation is minimal during slow walking on level surfaces, but it increases significantly with increasing speed and slope of the walking surface. During midstance, the stance leg is in single limb support as the other leg is freely swinging toward the next step. The hip abductor muscles (e.g., gluteus medius) of the stance leg, therefore, are active to stabilize the hip in the frontal plane, preventing the opposite side of the pelvis from dropping excessively.
	Preswing	*Ankle*. At the beginning of preswing, the heel breaks contact with the ground and the ankle continues to dorsiflex to about 10 degrees, stretching the Achilles tendon, which prepares the calf muscles for propulsion. As the heel lift continues, the plantarflexor muscles switch their activation from eccentric (to control forward motion of the leg) to concentric. This concentric action produces plantarflexion for propulsion or push-off. *Knee*. The extended knee prepares to flex, often driven by a short burst of activity from the hamstring muscles. *Hip*. The hip continues to extend to about 10 degrees of extension with eccentric activation of the hip flexors, in particular the iliopsoas, helping to control the rate and amount of extension. Tight ligaments of the hip or tight hip flexor muscles will reduce the amount of extension at this point in the gait cycle, thereby reducing stride length.

TABLE 7.2 The Gait Cycle *(continued)*

Period	Component	Biomechanics and Muscle Actions
	Toe off	*Ankle*. The ankle continues plantarflexing (to about 15 degrees) through concentric activation of the plantarflexor muscles. The muscular force required for push-off is typically shared between the plantarflexors and the hip extensor muscles. Activation of the gastrocnemius and soleus is usually minimal while walking on level surfaces and at slow speed, but it increases significantly with increasing speed and incline. *Knee*. The knee is flexed 30 degrees. *Hip*. The slightly extended hip starts to flex due to concentric activation of the hip flexor muscles.
Swing phase	Initial swing	*Ankle*. The plantarflexed ankle begins to dorsiflex by concentric activation of the dorsiflexor muscles. The dorsiflexing ankle allows the foot to clear the ground as it is advanced forward. *Knee*. The knee continues to flex, primarily driven by the indirect action of the flexing hip. *Hip*. The hip flexor muscles continue to contract, pulling the extended thigh forward.
	Midswing	*Ankle*. The ankle is held in neutral dorsiflexion via isometric activation of the dorsiflexor muscles. *Knee*. The knee is flexed about 45 to 55 degrees, which helps shorten the functional length of the lower limb to facilitate its advance. *Hip*. The hip approaches about 30 degrees of flexion through concentric activation of the hip flexor muscles.
	Terminal swing	*Ankle*. The ankle dorsiflexors continue their isometric activation, holding the ankle in neutral dorsiflexion and preparing for initial contact. *Knee*. The knee has moved from a flexed position in midswing to almost full extension. *Hip*. The hip flexor muscles, which have powered the leg into nearly 35 degrees of hip flexion, become inactive in terminal swing, but the hip extensor muscles are active eccentrically to decelerate the forward progression of the thigh.

foot on the ground, and concludes when the ipsilateral foot leaves the ground.

2. *Swing*. The swing period describes the time when the foot is not in contact with the ground. The swing period begins as the foot is lifted from the ground and ends with initial contact of the ipsilateral foot.

Stance Period

Within the stance period, two tasks and four intervals are recognized. The two tasks are weight acceptance and single limb support. According to the Rancho Los Amigos terminology, the four intervals are initial contact, loading response, midstance, and terminal stance (refer to Figure 7.2).

☑ KEY POINT

For the stance phase, standard terminology uses the terms *heel strike* (initial contact), *foot flat* (loading response), *midstance, heel off* (terminal stance), and *toe off* (preswing).

As the initial contact of one foot is occurring, the contralateral foot is preparing to come off the floor.

Task 1: Weight Acceptance The weight acceptance task occurs during the first 10 percent of the stance period (refer to Figure 7.2). This consists of the intervals of *initial contact* (when the heel first hits the ground) and *loading response*. The loading response interval begins as the foot comes flat with the floor and one limb bears weight while the other leg begins to go through its swing period. This interval may be referred to as the initial double stance period and consists of the first 0 to 10 percent of the gait cycle.[8]

Task 2: Single Leg Support The middle 40 percent of the stance period is divided equally into midstance and terminal stance.

The midstance interval (refer to Figure 7.2), representing the first half of the single limb support task, begins as one foot is lifted and continues until the body weight is aligned over the forefoot.

The terminal stance interval is the second half of the single limb support task. It begins when the heel of the weight-bearing foot lifts off the ground and continues until the contralateral foot strikes the ground. Terminal stance comprises the 30 to 50 percent phase of the gait cycle.

Swing Period

Gravity and momentum are the primary sources of motion for the swing period. Within the swing period, one task (limb advancement) and three to four intervals are recognized (preswing, initial swing, midswing, and terminal swing).[1]

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> In addition to representing the final portion of the stance period and single limb support task, the preswing interval is considered in some texts as part of the swing period.

Limb Advancement The swing period involves the forward motion of the non–weight-bearing foot. The three intervals of the swing period are:[1]

1. *Initial swing.* This interval (referred to as *acceleration* in traditional terminology) begins with the lifting of the foot from the floor and ends when the swinging foot is opposite the stance foot. It represents the 60 to 73 percent phase of the gait cycle.
2. *Midswing.* This interval begins as the swinging limb is opposite the stance limb, and ends when the swinging limb is forward, and the tibia is vertical. It represents the 73 to 87 percent phase of the gait cycle.
3. *Terminal swing.* This interval (referred to as *deceleration* in traditional terminology) begins with a vertical tibia of the swing leg with respect to the floor and ends the moment the foot strikes the floor. It represents the last 87 to 100 percent of the gait cycle.

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> For the swing phase, standard terminology uses the following terms: *acceleration* (initial swing), *midswing*, and *deceleration* (terminal swing).

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> The precise duration of the gait cycle intervals depends on a number of factors, including age, impairment, and the patient's walking velocity. As gait speed increases, it develops into jogging and then running, with changes in each of the intervals (see "Running" later).

Characteristics of Normal Gait

Much has been written about the criteria for normal and abnormal gait.[1,2,9,10] Although the presence of symmetry in gait appears to be important, asymmetry in itself does not guarantee impairment. It must be remembered that the definition of what constitutes the so-called normal gait is elusive. Five prerequisites are required for normal gait:[8]

1. Stability of the weight-bearing foot throughout the stance period
2. Clearance of the non–weight-bearing foot during the swing period
3. Appropriate prepositioning (during terminal swing) of the foot for the next gait cycle
4. Adequate step length
5. Energy conservation

The Six Determinants of Gait

During gait, as the upper body moves forward, the trunk rotates about a vertical axis. The thoracic spine and the pelvis rotate in opposite directions to each other to enhance stability and balance. In contrast, the lumbar spine tends to rotate with the pelvis. The shoulders and trunk rotate out of phase with each other during the gait cycle. Unless they are restrained, the arms tend to swing in opposition to the legs—the left arm swinging forward as the right leg swings forward, and vice versa. When an arm swing is prevented, the upper trunk tends to rotate in the same direction as the pelvis, producing an inefficient gait. For gait to be efficient and to conserve energy, the COG must undergo minimal displacement. To minimize the energy costs of walking, the body uses a number of biomechanical mechanisms. In 1953, Saunders, Inman, and Eberhart[11] proposed that six kinematic features—the Six Determinants—were employed to reduce the energetic cost of human walking. These determinants of gait are based on two principles: (1) Any displacement that elevates, depresses, or moves the COG beyond normal maximum excursion limits wastes energy, and (2) Any abrupt or irregular movement will waste energy even when that movement does not exceed the normal maximum displacement limits of the COG. The six determinants are as follows:[12]

1. *Pelvic rotation.* The rotation of the pelvis typically occurs about a vertical axis in the transverse plane toward the weight-bearing limb. The entire pelvic rotation is approximately 4 degrees to each side.[13] Forward rotation of the pelvis on the swing side prevents an excessive drop in the body's center of gravity. The pelvic rotation also results in a relative lengthening of the femur, and thus step length, during the termination of the swing period. If the pelvis does not rotate, the COG's position is somewhat lower during periods of double limb support, and the COG's total vertical displacement increases.
2. *Pelvic tilt.* Lateral pelvic tilting (dropping on the unsupported side) during midstance prevents an excessive rise in the body's center of gravity. If the pelvis does not drop, the COG's position is somewhat higher during midstance, and the COG's total vertical displacement is greater.
3. *Displacement of the pelvis.* To avoid significant muscular and balancing demands, the pelvis shifts over the support point of the stance limb. If the lower extremities dropped directly vertical from the hip joint, the center of mass would have to shift 3 to 4 inches (7.5 to 10 centimeters) to each side to be positioned effectively over the supporting foot. The combination of femoral varus and anatomic valgus at the knee permits a vertical tibial posture with both tibias in close proximity to each other. This narrows the walking base to 2 to 4 inches (5 to 10 centimeters) from heel center to heel center, thereby reducing the lateral shift required of the COG to 1 inch (2.5 centimeters) toward either side.
4. *Knee flexion in stance.* Knee motion is intrinsically associated with foot and ankle motion. At initial contact, before the ankle moves into a plantarflexed position and is thus relatively more elevated, the knee is in relative extension. In response to a plantarflexed posture at loading response, the knee flexes. Midstance knee flexion prevents an excessive rise in the body's COG during that period of the gait cycle. If not for the midstance knee flexion, the COG's elevation during midstance would be larger, as would its total vertical displacement. Passing through midstance as the ankle remains stationary with the foot flat on the floor, the knee again reverses its direction to one of extension. As the heel comes off the floor in terminal stance, the heel begins to rise as the ankle plantarflexes, and the knee flexes. In preswing, as the forefoot rolls over the metatarsal heads, the heel elevates even more as further plantarflexion occurs and flexion of the knee increases.
5. *Ankle mechanism.* For normal foot function and human ambulation, the amount of ankle joint motion required is approximately 10 degrees of dorsiflexion (to complete midstance and begin terminal stance) and 20 degrees of plantarflexion (for full push-off in preswing). At initial contact, the foot is in relative dorsiflexion due to the muscle action of the pretibial muscles and the triceps surae. This muscle action produces a relative lengthening of the leg, resulting in a smoothing of the pathway of the COG during stance phase.
6. *Foot mechanism.* The controlled lever arm of the forefoot at preswing is particularly helpful as it rounds out the sharp downward reversal of the COG. Thus, it does not reduce a peak displacement period of the COG as the earlier determinants did, but rather smoothes the pathway.

☑ KEY POINT

The amount of lateral tilting of the pelvis may be accentuated in the presence of a leg length discrepancy or hip abductor weakness, the latter of which results in a Trendelenburg sign. The Trendelenburg sign is said to be positive if, when standing on one leg, the pelvis drops on the side opposite to the stance leg. The weakness is present on the side of the stance leg—the gluteus medius is not able to maintain the COG on the side of the stance leg.

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> The movements of the thigh and lower leg occur in conjunction with the rotation of the pelvis. The pelvis, thigh, and lower leg typically rotate toward the weight-bearing limb at the beginning of the swing period. Hip motion occurs in all three planes during the gait cycle.
>
> - Hip rotation occurs in the transverse plane. The hip begins in internal rotation during the loading response. Maximum internal rotation is reached near midstance, and then the hip externally rotates during the swing period, with maximal external rotation occurring during terminal swing.
> - The hip flexes and extends once during the gait cycle, with the limit of flexion occurring at the middle of the swing period, and the limit of extension being achieved before the end of the stance period.
> - In the frontal plane, hip adduction occurs throughout early stance and reaches a maximum at 40 percent of the cycle. Hip adduction occurs in early swing period, which is followed by slight hip abduction at the end of the swing phase, especially if a long stride is taken.

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> In normal walking, about 60 degrees of knee motion is required for adequate clearance of the foot in the swing period. A loss of knee extension, which can occur with a flexion deformity, results in the hip being unable to extend fully, which can alter the gait mechanics.

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> An adaptively shortened gastrocnemius muscle may produce movement impairment by restricting normal dorsiflexion of the ankle from occurring during the midstance to heel raise portion of the gait cycle. This motion is compensated for by increased pronation of the subtalar joint, increased internal rotation of the tibia, and resultant stresses to the knee joint complex.

The Kinematics of Gait

Forces that may impact walking can be internal or external:

- *Internal*. The ankle and hip muscles are responsible for the majority of positive (concentric) work performed during walking (54 percent of the hip and 36 percent of the ankle).[14] The knee contributes the majority of the negative (eccentric) work (56 percent).[14] The internal joint moment is the net result of all of the internal forces acting about the joint, including moments due to muscles, ligaments, joint friction, and structural constraints. The joint moment usually is calculated around a joint center; for example, a net knee extensor moment means the knee extensors (quadriceps) are dominant at the knee joint, and the knee extensors are creating a greater moment than the knee flexors (hamstrings and gastrocnemius). The units used to express moments or torques are newton meters (Nm). The term *joint power* is used to describe the product of a joint moment and the joint angular velocity. Joint power is said to be generated when the moment and the angular velocity are in the same direction and is said to be absorbed when they are in opposite directions. The units used to measure joint power are watts (W).
- *External*. Gravity and inertia are two external forces that produce the force that the foot exerts on the floor during stance phase. This is opposed by another external force: the *ground reaction force*.

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> Ground reaction force is any force exerted by the ground on a body in contact with it. It is composed of three components:
>
> - *Vertical force*. During gait, vertical ground reaction forces are created by a combination of gravity, body weight, and the firmness of the ground. Vertical ground reaction force begins with an impact peak of less than body weight and then exceeds body weight at the end of the initial contact interval, dropping during midstance, and rising again to exceed body weight, reaching its highest peak during the terminal stance interval.
> - *Anteroposterior shear*. Anteroposterior shear forces in walking gait begin with an anterior shear force at initial contact and the loading response intervals, and a posterior shear at the end of the terminal stance interval.
> - *Mediolateral shear*. Mediolateral shear in walking gait begins with an initial medial shear (occasionally lateral) after initial contact, followed by lateral shear for the remainder of the stance period. At the end of the stance period, the shear shifts to a medial direction because of propulsion forces.

An appreciation of the six determinants of gait and the direction of the ground reaction force vector during the gait cycle leads to an understanding of muscle activity during gait.[15]

Initial Contact

At the moment the foot strikes the ground, the ankle is at the neutral position, and the knee is close to full extension. In the sagittal plane, the alignment of the ground reaction force vector at initial contact is posterior to the ankle joint, creating a plantarflexion moment (**FIGURE 7.3**). The three pretibial muscles (tibialis anterior, extensor digitorum longus, and extensor hallucis longus), whose line of pull is anterior to the ankle joint, maintain the ankle and subtalar joint in neutral through eccentric contraction. The function of the fibularis (peroneus) tertius is considered identical to the extensor digitorum longus—they share the same lateral tendon, and their muscle bellies blend into each other. At the knee, the vector is anterior to the joint axis, creating a passive extensor torque (refer to Figure 7.3). The activity of the quadriceps and hamstring muscle groups continues from the previous terminal swing to preserve and stabilize the neutral position of the knee joint. The hip and pelvis are emerging from a function of swing limb advancement with significant flexion, about 30 degrees. In normal gait, maximum hip flexion occurs during terminal swing and initial contact. A rapid high-intensity flexion moment thus is created at the hip as the vector falls anterior to the joint, placing a great demand on the hip extensors. To restrain this impending flexion torque created by the anterior position of the vector, both the gluteus maximus and the hamstrings are activated. In the coronal plane, the gluteus medius is actively preparing to stabilize the pelvis.

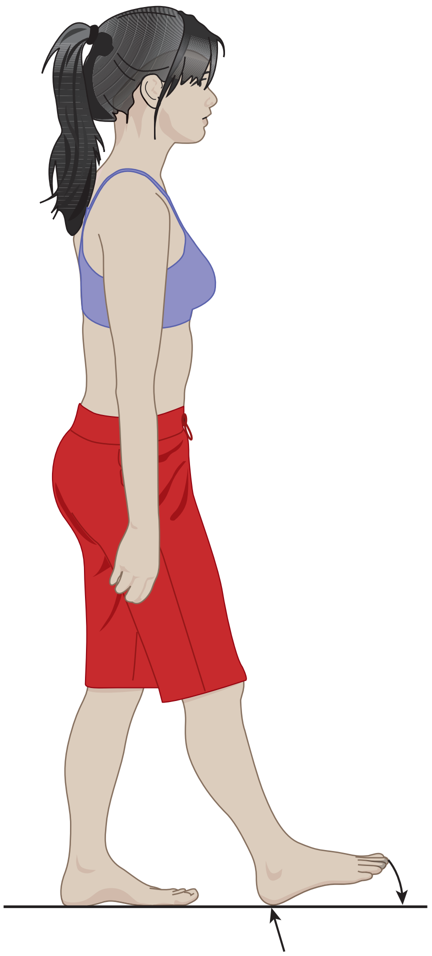


FIGURE 7.3 Ground reaction force at initial contact.

Loading Response

To absorb the impact force of loading and to maintain forward momentum, the eccentric action of the pretibial muscles regulates the rate of ankle plantarflexion. A heel rocker action occurs as the pretibials begin to pull the tibia forward over the fulcrum of the os calcis even as the foot is moving into a plantargrade position. This movement enables forward momentum of the tibia relative to the foot, but it also flexes the knee. During the peak of loading response, the magnitude of the vertical ground reaction force exceeds body weight. The pretibials (tibialis anterior, extensor hallucis longus, and extensor digitorum longus) act as a shock absorber during loading response. As a shock-absorbing mechanism and for energy efficiency, the knee flexes under the eccentric action of the quadriceps to about 15 to 18 degrees. During the stance phase of gait, the maximum knee-flexion angle usually is reached at foot flat. The quadriceps muscle group following this plantargrade posture controls the degree of knee flexion. Just as the pretibials advance the tibia forward over the foot in the rocker mechanism described, the quadriceps assist in advancing the femur over the tibia. This integrated action provides controlled forward movement of the entire lower-extremity unit.

The hip maintains its posture of about 30 degrees of flexion, creating a rapid, high-intensity flexion torque, the second-highest joint torque in normal gait after the dorsiflexion torque, which occurs at the talocrural joint during terminal stance. During loading response, the hip extensors (gluteus maximus, hamstrings) act as a shock absorber around the hip joint. The hamstrings also limit forward flexion of the pelvis and trunk. The function of the hamstrings when the hip is in flexion during stance is taken over by the gluteus maximus as stance progresses. The hip extensors prevent further flexion at the hip, and shock absorption is provided by the gluteus maximus, hamstrings, and adductor magnus. The medial-lateral control function of the hip adductors occurs as the body weight is assumed by the stance leg.

Midstance

The momentum of forward progression over a stable foot with tibial stability maintained is referred to as the ankle rocker (**FIGURE 7.4**). The ankle rocker movement that progresses the tibia over a stationary foot is controlled early in midstance by the eccentric contraction of the soleus and is assisted by the gastrocnemius as the knee nears extension. At the beginning of midstance, the ankle is in a posture of 10 degrees of plantarflexion and moves through a range of more than 15 degrees to arrive at 5 to 7 degrees of dorsiflexion by the end of this phase. As the lower limb rolls forward over the stance foot, the body weight vector becomes anterior to the ankle joint, creating an increasing dorsiflexion moment (refer to Figure 7.4). The activity of the soleus assisted by the gastrocnemius controls the rate of dorsiflexion. The action of the plantarflexors is crucial in providing limb stability as the contralateral toe off transfers the body weight onto the stance foot.

At the beginning of midstance, the vector is posterior to the knee joint but moves anteriorly as midstance progresses. The knee extends from 15 degrees of flexion to a neutral position. This is particularly mechanically efficient because plantarflexion of the ankle is most forceful with the knee in extension. The quads are active as knee extensors in early midstance only. The momentum of the contralateral swing leg creates an extension torque on the ipsilateral knee that decreases demand on the quadriceps and extends the knee without muscle action. By the end of midstance, the vector is anterior to the knee, creating passive stability. In the coronal plane, the ground reaction force line is medial to the anatomic knee joint on the stance side, creating a varus moment. The moment is restrained by the capsular structures of the knee, especially the lateral collateral ligaments. The hip joint is in a flexed posture of 30 degrees, which is reduced to 10 degrees as midstance progresses (with the gluteus maximus contracting to produce the progression toward hip extension). The vector is anterior to the hip in early midstance and moves increasingly posterior to the hip, gradually reducing the flexion torque and diminishing the demand on the hip extensors. The vertical ground reaction force is reduced in magnitude at midstance due to the upward momentum of the contralateral swing limb. This upward momentum improves stability at the ipsilateral hip. The gluteus maximus, at this point not needed for sagittal stability, is active as an abductor rather than a hip extensor. In the coronal plane, the activity of hip abductors during midstance is essential to provide hip stability and avoid excessive pelvic tilt. In the frontal view, the body mass and the ground reaction force are quite medial to the structural support point at the head of the femur. At the time of midstance during gait it has been estimated that the vertical loading on the head of the femur on the stance side reaches a magnitude approximately equal to 2.5 times body weight. This creates a strong tendency toward excessive pelvic tilt (positive Trendelenburg). The gluteus medius responds to limit pelvic tilt and stabilize the pelvis.

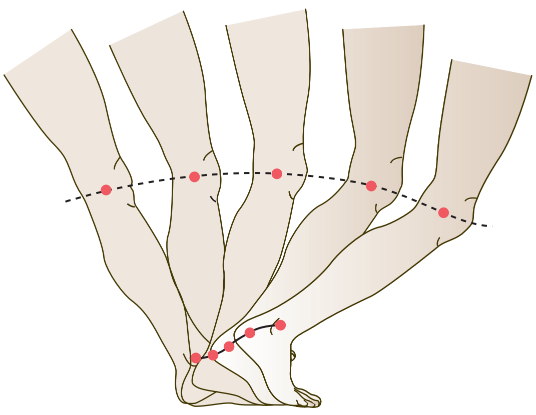


FIGURE 7.4 Midstance ankle rocker mechanism.

Terminal Stance

In terminal stance, forward fall of the body moves the vector further anterior to the ankle, creating a large dorsiflexion moment. Stability of the tibia on the ankle is provided by the eccentric action of the calf muscles. The plantarflexors are more active during this heel-off period than during any other period of gait. The soleus and gastrocnemius prevent forward tibial collapse and allow the heel to rise over the metatarsal heads as the center of mass of the head, arms, and trunk (HAT) advances over the foot. This is referred to as the forefoot rocker. The forefoot rocker is composed of two components, and some believe there are two distinct forefoot rockers. The initial forefoot rocker (third rocker) begins at heel off and ends when the contralateral limb contacts the ground. The mechanics are much different in the terminal forefoot rocker (fourth rocker), which occurs in preswing as body weight rapidly is unloading the ipsilateral limb and shifting to the contralateral side. The initial forefoot rocker (third rocker) serves as an axis around which progression of the body vector advances beyond the area of foot support, creating the highest demand of the entire gait cycle on the calf muscles. Minimal ankle movement of 5 degrees is required to reach 10 degrees of dorsiflexion, which then is maintained. The maximum amount of dorsiflexion of the anatomic ankle joint occurs during heel off. The knee achieves an angular position of full extension accompanied by a mild extension torque (**FIGURE 7.5**) that diminishes in the latter part of terminal stance. Joint stability and forward progression at the knee are achieved without muscle action. Although it once was believed the hip underwent up to 10 degrees of hyperextension during this period, it actually is likely to be less—hip extension combined with 5 degrees of pelvic rotation provides a smooth progression and facilitates an increased step length. The posture of the trailing limb and the presence of the vector posterior to the hip provide passive stability at the hip joint. The tensor fascia lata serves to restrain the posterior vector at the hip. At the end of terminal stance, the magnitude of the vertical force reaches a second peak greater than body weight, similar to that which occurred at the end of loading response.

Preswing

During preswing, the ankle moves rapidly from its dorsiflexed position at terminal stance to 20 degrees of plantarflexion. Although the ankle reaches its angular peak of plantarflexion during this period, actual plantarflexor activity is decreased in intensity as the limb is unloaded. In late preswing, the vertical force is diminished, and the plantarflexors are quiescent. There is no "push-off" in normal reciprocal free walk bipedal gait. The dorsiflexion torque present at the beginning of preswing diminishes rapidly as the metatarsophalangeal joints extend to 60 degrees. Passive knee flexion is created by planted hyperextended toes, advancement of the body past the metatarsal heads, and contralateral loading. An early extension torque at the knee quickly gives way to a flexion torque. With the vector posterior to the knee, the knee flexes rapidly to achieve 35 degrees of flexion by the end of preswing, more than half the requirement for toe clearance in swing phase. The hip flexes to a neutral position initiated by the rectus femoris, sartorius, and adductor longus and assisted by momentum. The sagittal vector extends through the hip as the hip returns to a neutral posture. The adductor longus also decelerates the passive abduction created by contralateral body weight transfer. The continuing backward rotation of the pelvis effectively lengthens the trailing limb and counteracts hip flexion.

Initial Swing

The action of the pretibial muscles and long toe extensors begins to lift the foot and the ankle, which initially are at approximately 20 degrees of plantarflexion, the maximum achieved at any period in the gait cycle (**FIGURE 7.6**). By the end of initial swing, however, the plantarflexion position is reduced to about 5 to 10 degrees, providing foot clearance for the midswing phase. Although the knee began initial swing in only 30 degrees of flexion, the momentum from hip flexion assisted by the short head of the biceps femoris, sartorius, and gracilis creates further rapid knee flexion to 60 degrees with the goal of providing limb advancement and foot clearance. The hip is flexed 20 degrees, initiated not only by the iliacus but also by activity of both the gracilis and sartorius, which contribute to flexion of both the hip and knee joints.

Midswing

The knee extends as the ankle dorsiflexes, contributing to foot clearance while advancing the tibia. Pretibial muscle activity continues to preserve foot clearance as the ankle moves further toward dorsiflexion to reach a neutral position. Movement from plantarflexion toward dorsiflexion during the swing phase is referred to as dorsiflexion recovery. Rapid knee extension, a passive event created by momentum, moves the knee from 60 to 30 degrees of flexion. Half of the knee extension needed for subsequent step length is achieved. The tibia assumes a relatively vertical position. The hip flexors

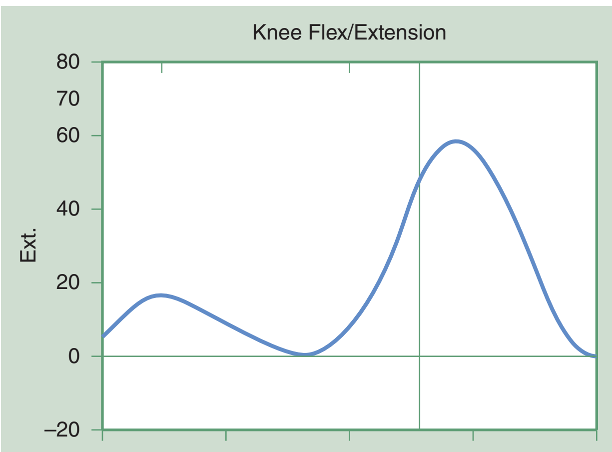


FIGURE 7.5 Knee extension during gait.

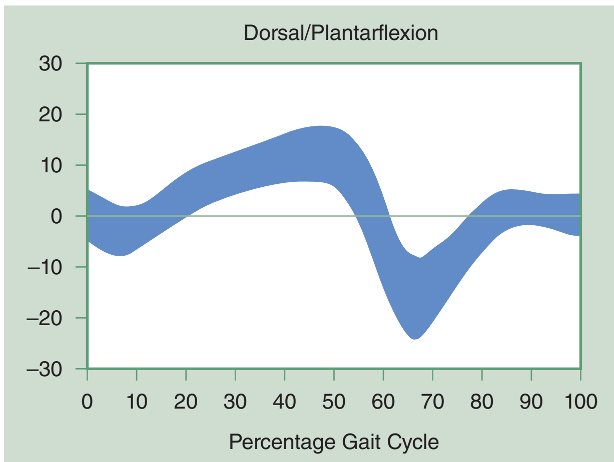


FIGURE 7.6 Action of the pretibial muscles.

continue to preserve 30 degrees of hip flexion with mild EMG activity. The foot achieves ground clearance by 0.5 inch (1 centimeter). The gracilis, sartorius, and iliacus cut off in early midswing, and the hamstrings begin midway to decelerate the thigh. Additional limb advancement is created largely by momentum. Pelvic rotation is now neutral. The gluteus medius is quiescent on the ipsilateral side.

Terminal Swing

During terminal swing, the function of pretibial activity changes from one of foot clearance in swing to more appropriate limb placement and positioning for initial contact. A neutral position prepares the foot for the heel rocker function, assuring a heel first posture. In the second half of terminal swing, the quadriceps extend the knee concentrically in a shortening contraction to facilitate full knee extension, which, assisted by pelvic rotation, accomplishes a full step length. Eccentric contraction of both the hamstrings and the gluteus maximus is critical to accomplish deceleration of the thigh segment and restrain further hip flexion, which remains at 30 degrees. The long hamstrings have multiple roles—decelerating the leg, stabilizing the knee, and limiting hip flexion in an eccentric or lengthening contraction. The gluteus maximus prepares for the impending forces of loading.

Influences on Normal Gait

Although gait on a level surface typically occurs at the subconscious level, requiring little or no thought, there are a number of important influences that can impact the quality of gait.

Endurance: Economy of Mobility

It has been proposed that the type of gait selected is based on metabolic energy considerations.[16] Age-related declines in the economy of mobility have been reported in the literature, with differing results. Some researchers reported that older adults were less economical than younger adults while walking at various speeds.[17–19] Conversely, economy of mobility appears to be unaffected by aging for individuals who maintain higher levels of physical activity.[20–22]

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> The cardiovascular benefits derived from increases in gait speed may be acceptable for a normal population or advanced rehabilitation but should be used cautiously with postsurgical patients.[23]

Base of Support

The size of the base of support and its relation to the COG are important factors in the maintenance of balance, and thus, the stability of an object. The COG must be maintained over the base of support if equilibrium is to be maintained.

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> Assistive devices, such as crutches or walkers, can be prescribed to increase the base of support, and therefore, enhance stability.

Gender

On average, women walk at a higher cadence than men (6 to 9 steps higher), but at lower speeds.[24,25] Because leg length in women is 51.2 percent of total body height, compared with 56 percent in men, women must strike the ground more often to cover the same distance.[24,25] Furthermore, because their feet are shorter, women complete the heel-to-toe component of gait in a shorter time than men do.

Pregnancy

Substantial hormonal and anatomic changes occur during pregnancy that dramatically alter body mass, body mass distribution, and joint laxity. It is widely presumed that pregnant women exhibit marked gait deviations. However, one study[26] showed only small deviations in pelvic tilt and hip flexion, extension, and adduction occur during pregnancy.[26] It was unclear from this study whether the women examined had gained normal amounts of weight associated with pregnancy. It would seem obvious that obesity associated with pregnancy may have differing effects on gait.

Obesity

The gait used by the obese patient is often described as a waddling gait. Depending on the degree of obesity, the waddling gait is characterized by increased lateral displacement, pelvic obliquity, hip circumduction, increased knee valgus, external foot progression angle, overpronation, and increases in the normalized dynamic base of support. The changes in the natural alignment of the weight-bearing segments may result in musculoskeletal dysfunction, including overuse injuries such as tendinopathy and bursitis and eventual osteoarthritis of the hip, knee, or both.

Age

Age may be a factor in gait variations. As the body ages, there may be some decrease in both strength and flexibility. Balance strategies during gait are task specific and vary according to age and visual acuity. Consequently, older people tend not to increase their speed and stride length to the same extent as younger adults.[27] In addition, the width of the base of support tends to be wider, and the time spent in the double support phase is increased in the older adult to maintain stability.[27]

Lateral and Vertical Displacement of the COG

Rotation of the trunk may be excessive or lacking. Excessive trunk rotation may result from a restricted or exaggerated arm swing. A pelvic hike (excessive elevation of the ipsilateral side of the pelvis) may result during the swing period to help with foot clearance in the presence of inadequate hip or knee flexion, or excessive planterflexion of the ankle. Weakness of the hip abductors is noted during the single support phase of stance, because the hip abductors are required to prevent collapse of the pelvis toward the unsupported side. As previously discussed, an increase in lateral displacement also may occur with obesity.

Abnormal Gait Syndromes

Each of the attributes of normal gait described earlier under "Characteristics of Normal Gait" are subject to compromise by disease states, particularly neuromuscular conditions. A summary of the common gait deviations and their causes is provided in **TABLE 7.3**.

Antalgic Gait

The antalgic gait pattern can result from pain caused by disease, joint inflammation, or an injury to the muscles, tendons, and ligaments of the lower extremity. The antalgic gait is characterized by a decrease in the stance period on the involved side in an attempt to eliminate the weight from the affected leg and use of the injured body part as much as possible. In the case of joint inflammation, attempts may be made to avoid positions of maximal intra-articular pressure and to seek the position of minimum articular pressure.

Gluteus Maximus Gait

The gluteus maximus gait, which results from weakness of the gluteus maximus, is characterized by a posterior thrusting of the trunk at initial contact in an attempt to maintain the hip extension of the stance leg and prevent the trunk from moving forward. Leaning the trunk posteriorly during the stance phase shifts the body's line of gravity posterior to the hip, reducing the demands of the hip extensor muscles.

Quadriceps Gait

This type of gait occurs if there is a weakness of the quadriceps. Quadriceps weakness can result from a peripheral nerve lesion (femoral), spinal nerve root lesion, trauma, or disease (muscular dystrophy). To prevent buckling of the knee or excessive flexion of the knee during stance, particularly midstance, the patient compensates by maintaining the knee in extension during stance by bending forward at the waist and/or by pushing back on the thigh with the hand. The bending forward at the waist shifts the line of gravity anterior to the medial-lateral axis of the knee, thereby mechanically locking the knee in extension, which reduces the need for activation of the quadriceps muscle.

Steppage (Foot Slap) Gait

This type of gait occurs in patients with a foot drop. A foot drop is the result of weakness or paralysis of the dorsiflexor muscles resulting from an injury to the muscles, their peripheral nerve supply, or the nerve roots supplying the muscles.[28] Depending on the severity of the weakness, the patient's foot will either slap the ground at initial contact (the dorsiflexors are too weak to eccentrically control the plantarflexion), or, in severe cases, the patient has to lift the leg high enough to clear the flailing foot off the floor (as though stepping over an imaginary obstacle), by flexing excessively at the hip and knee, and then slaps the foot on the floor, producing a reverse loading from the toes to the heel.

Vaulting Gait

This type of gait occurs when there is an impairment of the lower extremity that reduces the ability to functionally reduce the length of the advancing limb (e.g., an inability to flex the hip or knee). To compensate, the patient rises up on the toes of the uninvolved extremity during stance to provide extra clearance for the affected leg to swing through.

Hip Hiking Gait

This type of gait occurs when there is an inability to shorten the swing leg functionally. To compensate, there is an excessive elevation of the pelvis on the

TABLE 7.3 Common Gait Deviations and Potential Causes Once Pain is Ruled Out

Deviation	Possible Reasons
Slow cadence	Decreased lower extremity strength, endurance, or motor control Joint motion restrictions
Vaulting on shorter limb side	Functional leg-length discrepancy
Stance phase longer on one side	Weakness, or poor control of lower limb muscles Joint motion restrictions of trunk, pelvis and/or lower limb joints
Ipsilateral trunk lean	Weakness of hip abductor (gluteus medius) Commonly referred to as Trendelenburg gait Leg length inequality
Contralateral trunk lean	Decreased amount of available hip flexion in swing limb
Pelvic drop during stance	Weakness of contralateral gluteus medius
Anterior trunk leaning at initial contact	Inadequate strength of knee extensors or gluteus maximus Inadequate ankle dorsiflexion Inadequate hip flexion
Posterior trunk leaning at initial contact	Inadequate strength of hip extensors, especially gluteus maximus - commonly referred to as gluteus maximus gait Inadequate hip or knee motion
Circumducting hip	Functional leg-length discrepancy Inadequate motion at hip or knee
Hip hiking	Functional leg-length discrepancy Inadequate hip flexion, knee flexion, or ankle dorsiflexion
Excessive pelvic rotation	Inadequate hip joint flexion
Toe-in Gait	Abnormal increase in hip internal rotation motion (commonly caused by adaptive shortening of the hip internal rotators) Weakness of hip external rotators Femoral anteversion
Toe-out Gait	Abnormal increase in hip external rotation motion (commonly due to adaptive shortening of the hip external rotators) Femoral retroversion
The sole of the foot slaps down on the ground during initial contact to midstance	Weak or paralyzed dorsiflexors
Wide walking base (>20 cm)	Hip abductor muscle contracture Genu valgus Poor balance control
Narrow walking base (<10 cm)	Hip adductor muscle contracture Genu varum

TABLE 7.3 Common Gait Deviations and Potential Causes Once Pain is Ruled Out *(continued)*

Deviation	Possible Reasons
Excessive pronation	Foot arch weakness/instability Lack of adequate ankle dorsiflexion (<10 degrees) Pes planus Leg length discrepancy Weakness of anterior tibialis
Excessive supination	Excessive foot arch (pes cavus) Rigid forefoot valgus
Excessive calcaneal eversion	Forefoot varus Weakness of posterior tibialis

Data from Dutton M: *McGraw-Hill's NPTE (National Physical Therapy Examination)*. New York, McGraw-Hill, 2009.

side of the swing leg to provide extra clearance for the advancing leg. Alternatively, the patient may circumduct the swing leg, moving it forward in a semicircular arc to create extra clearance. However, this maneuver may place additional demands on the hip abductor muscles to help advance the swing limb.

Trendelenburg Gait

This type of gait results from weakness of the hip abductors (gluteus medius and minimus). It can be characterized in one of two ways:

- *Uncompensated.* During single-limb support, the pelvis leans to the side opposite the weak hip abductor muscles. The pelvic lean lasts until initial contact on the uninvolved side and is accompanied by an apparent lateral protrusion of the affected hip. This deviation occurs because the hip abductors of the stance leg are unable to produce enough force to hold the pelvis level.
- *Compensated.* During single-limb support, the trunk and pelvis lean to the side of the weak hip abductors. This deviation occurs because by purposely leaning the pelvis and trunk to the same side as the weak hip abductors, the line of gravity shifts closer to the axis of rotation of the stance hip, reducing the external torque demands, and thereby reducing the demand on the weak hip abductors.

Gait Training with Assistive Devices

Assistive devices function to reduce ground reaction forces and increase the base of support, with the size of the base of support that they provide being proportional to the amount of reduction in these forces. Assistive devices, in order of the stability they provide, from most to least, include a walker, crutches, walker cane (hemi-walker), quad cane, straight cane, and bent cane.

Correct fitting of an assistive device is necessary to ensure the safety of the patient and to allow for minimal energy expenditure. Once fitted, the patient should be taught the correct walking technique with the device. The fitting depends on the device chosen:

- *Walkers, hemiwalker canes, quad canes, and standard canes.* The height of the device handle should be adjusted to the level of the greater trochanter of the patient's hip to a point 6 inches (15 centimeters) to the side of the toes and/or at the level of the ulnar styloid process with the elbow flexed to 20 to 25 degrees.
- *Standard crutches.* A number of methods can be used for determining the correct crutch length for axillary crutches. The crutch tip should be vertical to the ground and positioned approximately 6 inches (15 centimeters) lateral and 2 inches (5 centimeters) anterior to the patient's foot. The handgrips of the crutch are adjusted to the height of the greater trochanter of the hip of the patient and/or at the level of the ulnar styloid process with the elbow flexed to 20 to 25 degrees. There should be a 2- to 3-inch (5- to 8-centimeter) gap between the tops of the axillary pads and the patient's axilla. Bauer and colleagues[29] found that the best calculation of ideal crutch length was either 77 percent of the patient's height or the height minus 16 inches (41 centimeters).
- *Forearm/Lofstrand crutches.* The crutch is adjusted so that the handgrip is level with the greater trochanter of the patient's hip and the top of the

forearm cuff 1 to 1.5 inches (2.5 to 4 centimeters) distal to the olecranon process, and/or at the level of the ulnar styloid process with the elbow flexed to 20 to 25 degrees.

- *Canes.* Canes are used to provide support and protection, to reduce pain in the lower extremities, and to improve balance during ambulation. It is common practice to instruct patients with lower extremity pain to use the cane in the hand contralateral to the symptomatic side. The use of a cane in the contralateral hand helps preserve reciprocal motion and a more normal pathway for the COG. Use of a cane can transmit 20 to 25 percent of body weight away from the lower extremities.[24] The cane also allows the subject to increase the effective base of support, thereby decreasing the hip abductor force exerted.

The clinician must always provide adequate physical support and instruction while working with a patient using an assistive gait device. The clinician positions him- or herself posterolaterally on the involved side of the patient, to be able to assist the patient on the side where the patient will most likely have difficulty. In addition, a gait belt should be fitted around the patient's waist to enable the clinician to assist the patient.

The selection of the proper gait pattern to instruct the patient is dependent on the patient's balance, strength, cardiovascular status, coordination, functional needs, and weight-bearing status (**TABLE 7.4**). In addition to observing the weight-bearing status, the patient may be prescribed an appropriate gait pattern. Several gait patterns are recognized.

Two-Point Pattern

The two-point gait pattern, which closely approximates the normal gait pattern, requires the use of an assistive gait device (canes or crutches) on each side of the body. This pattern requires the patient to move the assistive gait device and the contralateral lower extremity at the same time (**FIGURE 7.7**). This pattern requires some coordination and is used when there are no weight-bearing restrictions in the presence of bilateral weakness or when there is a need to enhance balance.

Two-Point Modified

The two-point modified pattern is the same as the two-point except that it requires only one assistive device, positioned on the opposite side of the involved lower extremity. This pattern cannot be used if there are any weight-bearing restrictions (i.e., PWB, NWB), but is appropriate for a patient with unilateral weakness or mild balance deficits. The patient is instructed to move the cane and the involved leg simultaneously, and then the uninvolved leg (refer to Figure 7.7).

Four-Point Pattern

The four-point gait pattern, which requires the use of an assistive gait device (canes or crutches) on each side of the body, is used when the patient requires maximum assistance with balance and stability. The pattern is initiated by the forward movement of one of the assistive gait devices, and then the contralateral lower extremity, the other assistive gait device, and finally the opposite lower extremity (e.g., right crutch, then left foot; left crutch, then right foot).

TABLE 7.4 Types of Weight-Bearing Status

Weight-Bearing Status	Description
Non–weight bearing (NWB)	Patient not permitted to bear any weight through the injured limb.
Partial weight bearing (PWB)	Patient is permitted to bear a portion (e.g., 25%, 50%) of his or her weight through the injured limb.
Touch-down weight-bearing (TDWB)/toe-touch weight-bearing (TTWB)	Patient permitted minimal contact of the injured limb with the ground for balance. The expression "as though walking on eggshells" can be used to help the patient understand.
Weight bearing as tolerated (WBAT)	The patient is permitted to bear as much weight through the injured limb as is comfortable.
Full weight bearing	Patient no longer medically requires an assistive device.

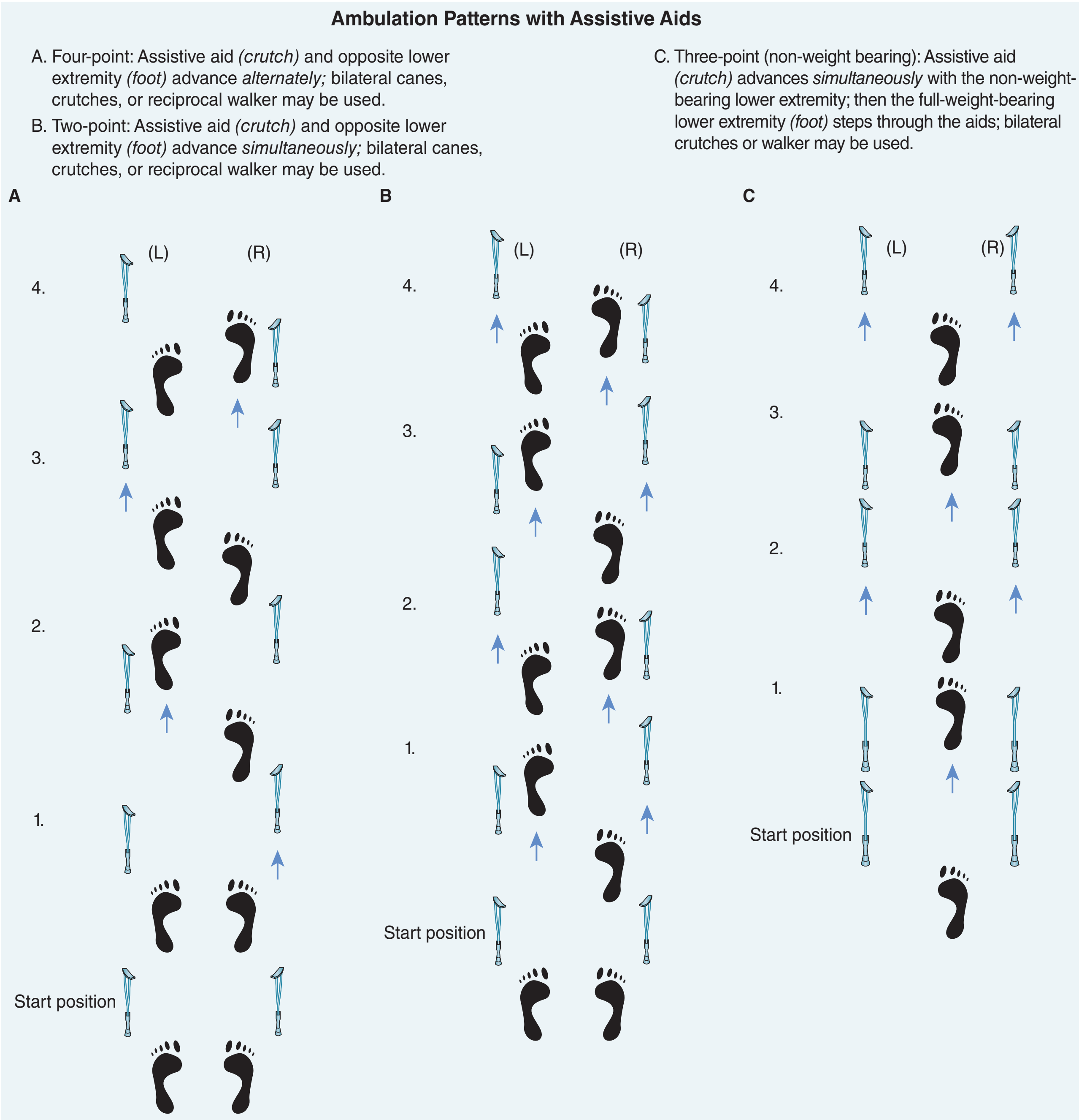


FIGURE 7.7 Gait patterns with assistive devices. (*continues*)

Adapted from Frank M. Pierson and Sheryl L. Fairchild, *Principles and Techniques of Patient Care*. Philadelphia: W. B. Saunders Company, 1994.

Four-Point Modified

The four-point modified pattern is the same as the four-point except that it requires only one assistive device, positioned on the opposite side of the involved lower extremity. This pattern cannot be used if there are any weight-bearing restrictions (i.e., PWB, NWB), but is appropriate for a patient with unilateral weakness or mild balance deficits. The patient is instructed to move the cane, then the involved leg, and then the uninvolved leg.

Three-Point Gait Pattern

This pattern is used for NWB, when the patient is permitted to bear weight through only one lower extremity. The three-point gait pattern involves the use of two crutches or a walker. It cannot be used with a cane or one crutch. The three-point gait pattern requires good upper body strength, good balance, and good cardiovascular endurance. The pattern is initiated by the forward movement of the assistive gait device(s). Next, the involved lower extremity is advanced, while staying NWB as the

D. Three-one-point (partial weight bearing): Assistive aid *(crutch)* and partial-weight-bearing lower extremity *(foot)* advance *simultaneously;* then the full-weight-bearing lower extremity steps through the aids; bilateral cane, crutches, or walker may be used.

E. Modified four-point: Only one assistive aid *(crutch)* is used; the assistive aid and the opposite lower extremity *(foot)* advance *alternately;* the assistive aid is held in the hand opposite the affected lower extremity; one cane or crutch may be used.

F. Modified two-point: Only one assistive aid *(crutch)* is used; the assistive aid and the opposite lower extremity *(foot)* advance *simultaneously;* the assistive aid is held in the hand opposite the affected lower extremity; one cane or crutch may be used.

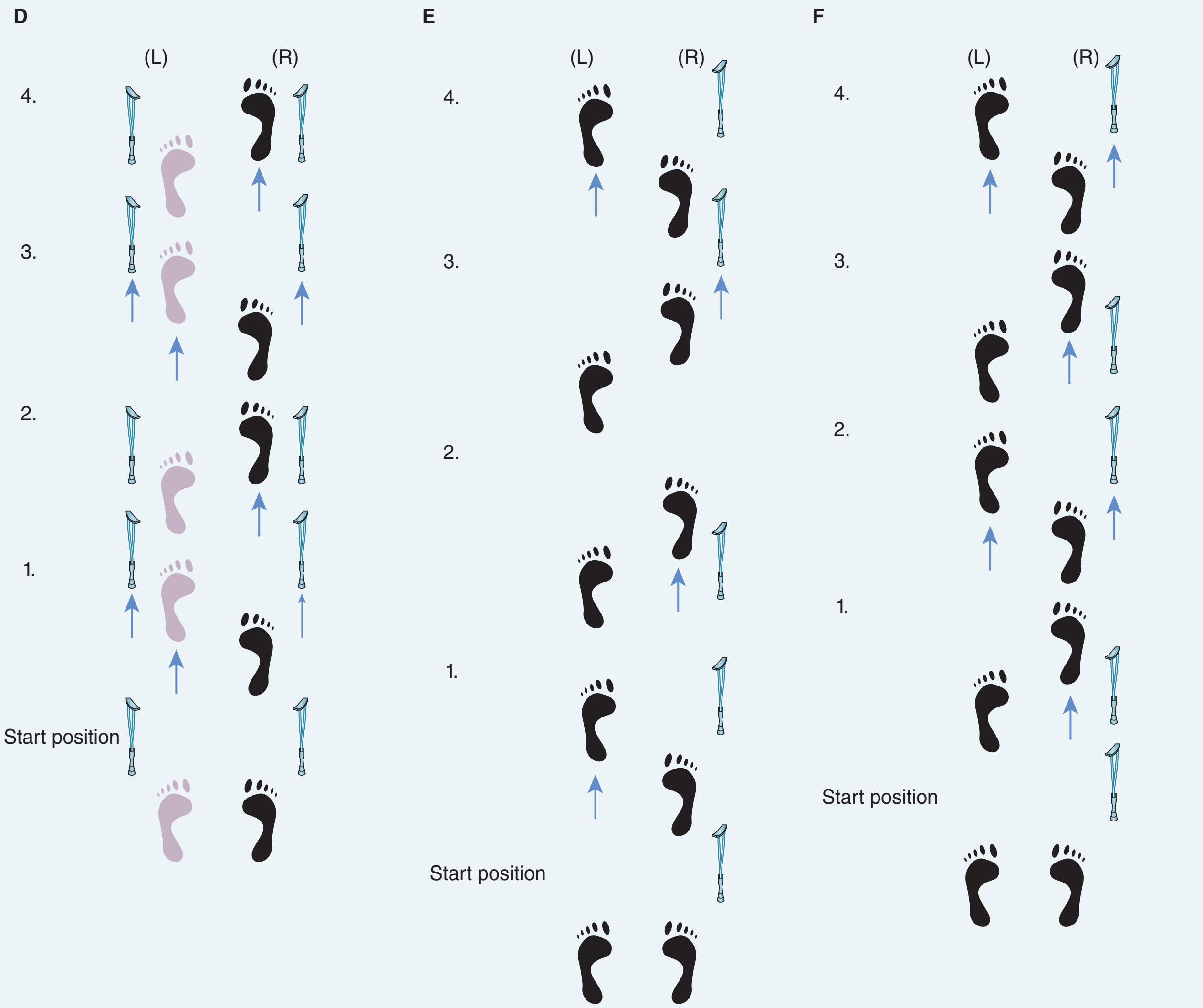


FIGURE 7.7 Gait patterns with assistive devices. (*continued*)

patient then presses down on the assistive gait device and advances the uninvolved lower extremity.

Three-Point Modified or Three Point One

A modification of the three-point gait pattern requires two crutches or a walker. This pattern is used when the patient can bear full weight with one lower extremity but is only allowed to partially bear weight on the involved lower extremity. In partial weight bearing, only part of the patient's weight is allowed to be transferred through the involved lower extremity. It must be remembered that most patients have difficulty replicating a prescribed weight-bearing restriction and will need constant reinforcement.[30]

The pattern is initiated by the forward movement of one of the assistive gait devices, and then the involved lower extremity is advanced forward, allowing only PWB. The patient presses down on the assistive gait device and advances the uninvolved lower extremity, using either a "swing-to" or a "swing-through" pattern.

Instructions

Whichever gait pattern is chosen, it is important that the patient receive verbal and illustrated instructions for use of the assistive gait device to negotiate stairs, curbs, ramps, doors, and transfers. These instructions should include any weight-bearing precautions pertinent to the patient, the appropriate gait sequence, and a contact number where the clinician can be reached if questions arise.

Running

Although the motion occurring at each of the lower extremity joints is similar for walking and for running, the required range of motion increases with the speed of the activity. As the speed increases, so do the forces that act on the various joints, and the joints themselves have to produce greater excursions with greater muscle activity. It is mostly agreed that activities such as slow walking are associated with less force through the foot and ankle complex than faster walking, and that running puts more force through the foot and ankle complex than does walking. As gait speed increases, it develops into jogging at approximately 2.0 to 2.7 m/s,[31] and then running, with changes in each of the intervals. For example, as speed increases, the stance phase decreases and the terminal double stance interval disappears altogether, so that there are alternating single extremity support intervals that are separated by a period of no ground contact by either extremity. This produces a double unsupported interval. Initial contact with the ground is normally made by the heel when walking, which is also the case for more than 75 percent of individuals while running.[32] Normal running gait typically begins with a lateral heel strike, followed by foot pronation during midstance, and foot supination during push-off. The rearfoot strike running pattern is facilitated by the elevated and cushioned heels of modern running shoes during which ground reaction forces reach 1.5 to 3 times body weight.[33] Throughout the years, different approaches have centered on modifying running techniques to prevent, treat, and reduce running injuries. Different running styles are defined by which portion of the foot segment makes initial contact with the ground. Three common patterns have been described: rearfoot strike, midfoot strike, and forefoot strike.[34] Runners/joggers tend to use a heel strike or midfoot strike, whereas sprinters typically use a forefoot strike. Barefoot, or evolution, running, with its emphasis on forefoot striking, has increased in popularity due to its claim that the style produces a significant reduction in ground reaction forces, stride length, and ground contact time. However, running with a forefoot strike pattern is considered to load the Achilles tendon more than running with a rearfoot strike pattern. One study determined that running with the midfoot- or forefoot strike pattern, as opposed to a rearfoot strike pattern, added an additional load of 48 times body weight for each mile (1.6 kilometers) run.[35]

As with walking, running economy can be affected by physiological and biomechanical factors. While forefoot strikers rely more heavily on musculature to aid in cushioning during stance, traditional runners demonstrate a heel strike pattern, secondary to a heavy reliance on footwear to absorb ground reaction forces.[36] While it has been shown that barefoot (forefoot strike) runners generate smaller impact forces than rearfoot strikers, there is no evidence to date that either confirms or refutes improved performance and reduced injuries in barefoot runners, although there is some evidence that the former improves running efficiency.[36]

Humans have the capacity to run at a broad spectrum of speeds.[37] Elite athletes have the ability to achieve maximal running speeds greater than 10 m/s (36 km/h or 22 mph).[38] Gait speed can be increased by pushing on the ground more frequently, pushing on the ground more forcefully, or a combination of the two. When speed is initially increased, the priority appears to be pushing on the ground more forcefully as this results in a longer stride length because the body spends more time in the air.[39] The lower limb muscles that are responsible for pushing on the ground forcefully during running are the major ankle plantar flexors (soleus and gastrocnemius). At speeds beyond approximately 7.0 m/s, the dominant strategy shifts toward the goal of increasing stride frequency and pushing on the ground more frequently, which results in the force generating capacity of these muscles becoming less effective.[37] Instead, as more power at the hip joint is required, the proximal lower limb muscles such as the iliopsoas, gluteus maximus, rectus femoris, and hamstrings become dominant.[37]

Posture

As with the so-called good movement, good posture is a subjective term reflecting what the clinician believes to be correct based on ideal models. Various attempts have been made to define and interpret posture. Good posture may be defined as "the optimal alignment of the patient's body that allows the neuromuscular system to perform actions requiring the least amount of energy to achieve the desired effect."[40] Postural or skeletal alignment has important consequences because each joint has a direct effect on both its neighboring joint and the joints farther away. Although highly variable, the line of gravity acting on a person with ideal posture passes through the mastoid process of the temporal bone, anterior to the second sacral vertebra, slightly posterior to the hip, and slightly anterior to the knee and ankle (**FIGURE 7.8**).

Because the line of gravity courses just to the concave side of each vertebral region's curvature, when in ideal posture, gravity produces a torque that helps maintain the optimal shape of each spinal curvature, allowing one to stand at ease with minimal muscular activation and minimal stress on the surrounding connective tissues.[40] Abnormal posture can increase the shear forces on the intervertebral disks and joints that interconnect the spine. Abnormal, or *non-neutral*, alignment is defined as "positioning that deviates from the midrange position of function." To be classified as abnormal, the alignment must produce physical functional limitations. These functional limitations can occur anywhere along the kinematic chain, at adjacent or distal joints through compensatory motions or postures.[41] (See Chapter 11.) Postural alignment is both static and dynamic.

Jull and Janda[42–44] developed a system that characterized muscles as being in one of two functional divisions, based on common patterns of kinematic chain dysfunction:

- *Postural muscles.* These relatively strong muscles are designed to counter gravitational forces and provide a stable base for other muscles to work from, although they are likely to be poorly recruited, lax in appearance, and show an inability to perform inner range contractions over time (e.g., rotator cuff, rhomboids, mid and lower trapezius).
- *Phasic muscles.* These muscles tend to function in a dynamically antagonistic manner to the postural

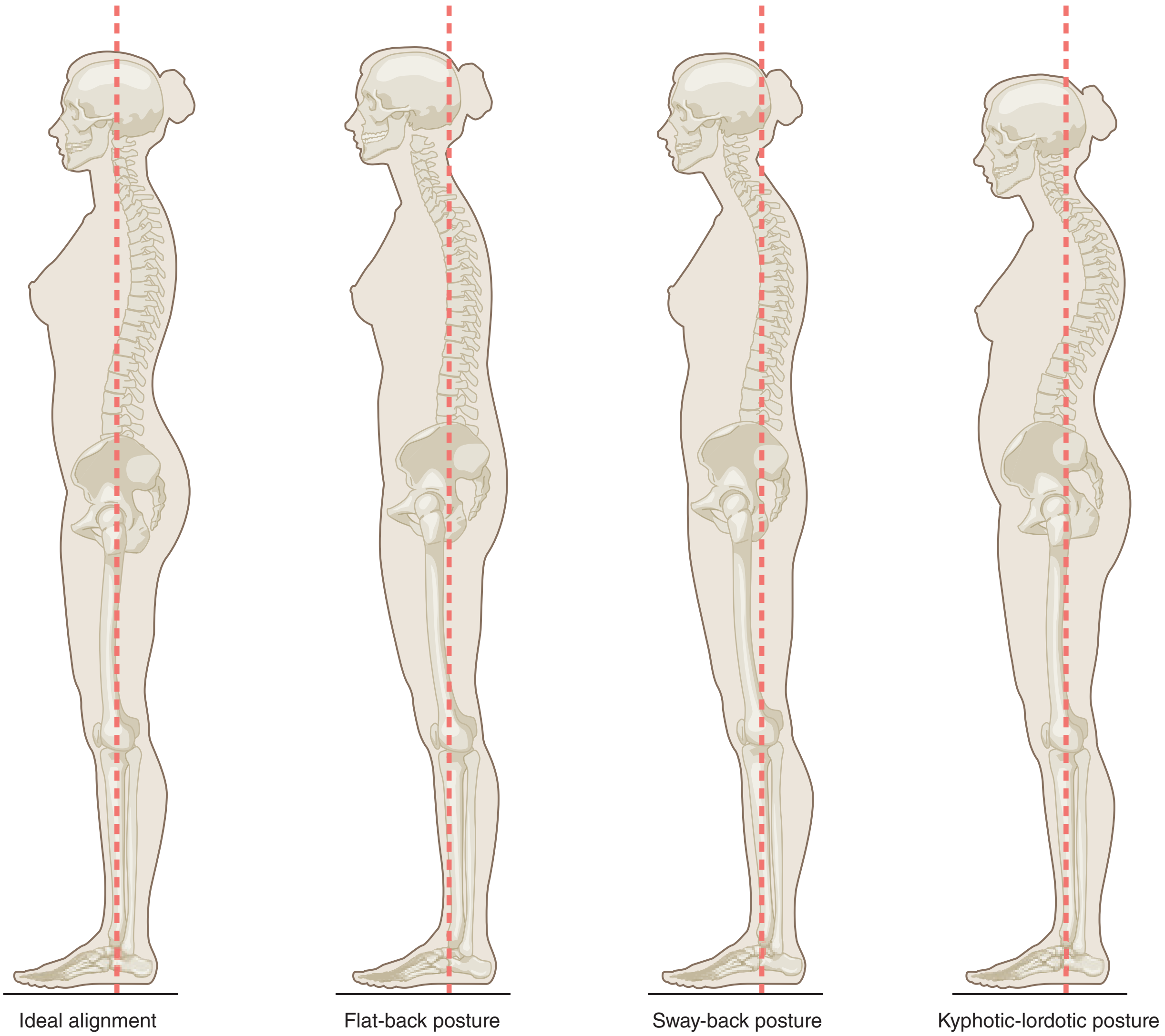


FIGURE 7.8 The line of gravity and its impact on ideal posture.

muscles. Phasic muscles tend to become relatively weak compared to the postural muscles, are more prone to atrophy and adaptive shortening, and show preferential recruitment in synergistic activities. In addition, these muscles will tend to dominate movements and may alter posture by restricting movement (e.g., upper trapezius, deltoid, latissimus dorsi).

☑ KEY POINT

A muscle imbalance occurs when the resting length of the agonist and the antagonist changes, with one adopting a shorter resting length than normal and the other assuming a longer resting length than normal. The inert tissues, such as the ligaments and joint capsules, react in a similar fashion, thereby altering joint play, which in turn changes arthrokinematic function and force transmission, as the muscles around that joint change their length in an attempt to minimize the stresses at that joint.[45–47]

The pain from any sustained position is thought to result from ischemia of the isometrically contracting muscles, localized fatigue, or an excessive mechanical strain on the structures. Intramuscular pressure can compress the blood vessels and prevent the removal of metabolites and the supply of oxygen, either of which can cause temporary pain. Although most clinicians can appreciate that repeated movement patterns performed in a therapeutic manner may be beneficial, it also must be remembered that repeated motions performed erroneously can produce changes in muscle tension, strength, length, and stiffness.[48]

It is quite normal for muscles to change their lengths during movements frequently; however, this change in resting length may become pathologic when it is sustained through incorrect habituation or as a response to pain.

☑ KEY POINT

A sustained change in muscle length is postulated to influence the information sent by the proprioceptors, which can cause alterations in recruitment patterns and the dominance of one synergist over another.[48,49]

Muscles maintained in a shortened or lengthened position eventually will adapt to their new positions. These muscles initially are incapable of producing a maximal contraction in the newly acquired positions; however, changes at the sarcomere level eventually allow the muscle to generate maximal tension at this new length.[48] Although this may appear to be a satisfactory adaptation, the changes in length create changes in tension development, as well as shifts in the angle of pull.[50]

☑ KEY POINT

Postural imbalances involve the entire body, as should any corrections.

The ability to maintain correct posture appears to be related to a number of factors, including disease, energy cost, strength and flexibility, age, pregnancy, and habit:[51]

- *Disease.* The adult spine is divided into four curves: two primary, or posterior, curves, and two compensatory, or anterior, curves. The posterior curves are in the thoracic and sacral regions. *Kyphosis* is a term used to denote a posterior curve (Figure 7.8). The anterior curves are in the cervical and lumbar region. *Lordosis* is a term used to describe an anterior curve (Figure 7.8). Together, the curves function to withstand the effects of gravity and other external forces. The normal coronal alignment of the spine can be altered by many conditions, including joint degeneration and scoliosis. Scoliosis, which is a descriptive term for lateral curvature, is usually accompanied by a rotational abnormality. Scoliosis can be idiopathic; a result of congenital deformity, pain, or degeneration; or be associated with numerous neuromuscular conditions, such as leg-length inequality. (See Chapter 26.) Sagittal plane alignment also can be altered by disease and injury, and is manifested clinically with areas of excessive kyphosis or lordosis, or a loss of the normal curves. Respiratory conditions (e.g., emphysema), general weakness, excess weight, loss of proprioception, or muscle spasm (as seen in cerebral palsy or with trauma) also may lead to poor posture.[52]
- *Energy cost.*[51] The increase in metabolic rate over the basal rate when standing is so small compared with the metabolic cost of moving and exercising, as to be negligible. The abnormal type of posture that involves a minimum of metabolic increase over the basal rate is one in which the knees are hyperextended, the hips are pushed forward to the limit of extension, the thoracic curve is increased, the head is projected forward, and the

upper trunk is inclined backward in a posterior lean (Figure 7.8; also known as slouched or sway-back posture—see later in this chapter).

- *Strength and flexibility*. Pathologic changes to the neuromuscular system (e.g., excessive wearing of the articular surfaces of joints, the development of osteophytes and traction spurs, and maladaptive changes in the length-tension development and angle of pull of muscles and tendons) may be the result of the cumulative effect of repeated small stresses (microtrauma) over an extended period of time or of constant abnormal stresses (macrotrauma) over a short period of time. Strong, flexible muscles are able to resist the detrimental effects of faulty postures for longer periods and provide the ability to unload the structures through a change of position. However, these changes in position are not possible if the joints are stiff (hypomobile) or too mobile (hypermobile), or the muscles are weak, shortened, or lengthened.
- *Age.* As the human body develops from infancy to old age, several physical and neurological factors may affect posture. At birth, a series of primary curves cause the entire vertebral column to be concave forward, or flexed, giving a kyphotic posture to the whole spine, although the overall contour in the coronal plane is straight. At the other end of the lifespan, there may be numerous causes for age-related postural changes. With increasing age, there is an increased probability of developing specific pathologies that lead to accelerated degeneration in neural and/or musculoskeletal systems.[53] A relatively inactive lifestyle also may result in disuse-related changes in the neuromuscular system, including muscle weakness and slowed response time. In elderly persons, weaker muscles impose a relatively higher demand during muscular activity, leading to early fatigue and postural imbalance.[54] Reduced sensation, leg muscle weakness, and increased reaction time appear to be important factors associated with postural instability in the elderly.[55]
- *Pregnancy.* Although not yet substantiated, postural changes often have been implicated as one of the main causes of back pain in pregnant women.[56,57] The relationship between posture and the back pain experienced during pregnancy is unclear. This may be because significant skeletal alignment changes that are related to back pain are occurring at the pelvis during pregnancy, but may not be directly measured by postural assessments, such as lumbar lordosis, sacral base angle (the angle that the superior border of the first sacral vertebral body makes with the horizontal, which is optimally 30 degrees), and pelvic tilt. The results from a study by Franklin and Conner-Kerr[58] suggest that from the first to the third trimester of pregnancy, lumbar lordosis, posterior head position, lumbar angle, and pelvic tilt increase; however, the magnitudes and the changes of these posture variables are not related to back pain. (See Chapter 28.)
- *Habit.* The most common postural problem is a poor postural habit and its associated adaptive changes. Poor posture, and in particular, poor sitting posture, is considered to be a major contributing factor in the development and perpetuation of shoulder, neck, and back pain. Two of the manifestations of poor sitting posture are a forward head (increased flexion of the lower cervical and upper thoracic regions, increased extension of the upper cervical vertebrae, and extension of the occiput on C1) and forward rounded shoulders. Dynamic postural habits can also result in dysfunction. For example, loads carried in a backpack shift the COG behind the body. In order to compensate, the COG of the body plus the load is moved back over the base of support: the feet. This is accomplished by either leaning forward at the ankle or the hip or inclining the head; the rigidity of postural muscles controlling these adjustments increases to support the load.[59] As individuals fatigue and these changes become more pronounced, there is potential for the risk of injury to the load carrier.[59]
- *Pain.* The motor system tends to prioritize its response in relation to incoming sensory information or demands placed upon it. Nociception appears to occupy a high priority in this relative system. Pain can cause the body to adopt a posture that decreases the pain unconsciously. For example, pressure on a nerve root in the lumbar spine can lead to pain in the back and result in sciatic scoliosis.

Postural Examination

To assess posture accurately, the patient must be adequately undressed. Standard protocols for patient attire vary with respect to, among other factors, regional, societal, religious, legal, healthcare specialty, gender and age-related issues.[60] Ideally, male patients should be in shorts, and female patients should be in a bra and shorts, and the patient should not wear shoes or stockings. The patient should assume a comfortable and relaxed posture, looking straight ahead, with feet approximately 4 to 6 inches (10 to 15 centimeters) apart.

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> A simple and commonly applied parameter of global balance is the plumb line offset taken from a full-length standing radiograph. The center of C2 (or C7) is drawn vertically downward, and the distance from the center of the sacrum is noted on the coronal projection, while the offset from the anterior–superior edge or posterior–superior edge of S1 is noted on the lateral projection.

When observing a patient for abnormalities in posture, the clinician looks for asymmetry.[52] Regional asymmetry should trigger a further evaluation of that area, but asymmetry alone does not confirm or rule out the presence of dysfunction. A summary of the most common findings and faults are outlined in **FIGURE 7.9** and listed in **TABLE 7.5**.

Common Faulty Postures

Due to the relationships among the head, neck, thorax, lumbar spine, and pelvis, any deviation in one region can affect the other areas.

Pelvic and Lumbar Region

The more common faulty postures of the pelvic and lumbar region include lordotic posture, slouched posture, and flat low back posture.[61]

Lordotic Posture This is characterized by an increase in the lumbosacral angle, an increase in lumbar lordosis, and an increase in the anterior pelvic tilt and hip flexion (**FIGURE 7.10**). This posture is commonly seen in pregnancy, obesity, and in people with weakened abdominal muscles. Potential muscle impairments include the following:

- Decreased mobility in the hip flexor muscles (iliopsoas, tensor fascia latae, rectus femoris) and lumbar extensor muscles (erector spinae)
- Impaired muscle performance due to stretched and weakened abdominal muscles (rectus abdominis, internal and external obliques, and transversus abdominis)

This posture places stress throughout the lumbar spine on the anterior longitudinal ligament and the zygapophyseal (facet) joints, and narrows the posterior disk space and the intervertebral foramen, all of which are potential sources of symptoms.

Slouched Posture This posture, also referred to as the swayback, is characterized by a shifting of the entire pelvic segment anteriorly, resulting in relative hip extension, and a shifting of the thoracic segment posteriorly, resulting in a relative flexion of the thorax on the upper lumbar spine (**FIGURE 7.11**). As a result, there is an increased lordosis in the lower lumbar region, increased kyphosis in the thoracic region, and usually a forward (protracted) head. This posture is commonly seen throughout most age groups and is typically the result of fatigue or muscle weakness. Potential muscle impairments include the following:

- Decreased mobility in the upper abdominal muscles (upper segments of the rectus abdominis and obliques), internal intercostal, hip extensor, and lower lumbar extensor muscles and related fascia
- Impaired muscle performance due to stretched and weakened lower abdominal muscles (lower segments of the rectus abdominis and obliques), extensor muscles of the lower thoracic region, and hip flexor muscles

This posture places stress on the iliofemoral ligaments, the anterior longitudinal ligament of the lower lumbar spine, and the posterior longitudinal ligament of the upper lumbar or thoracic spine. In addition, there is a narrowing of the intervertebral foramen in the lower lumbar spine and approximation of the zygapophyseal (facet) joints in the lower lumbar spine.

Flat Low Back Posture This is characterized by a decreased lumbosacral angle, reduced lumbar lordosis/extension, and posterior tilting of the pelvis (**FIGURE 7.12**). This posture is commonly seen in those individuals who spend extended periods of time slouching or flexing in the sitting or standing positions. The potential muscle impairments include the following:

- Decreased mobility in the trunk flexor (rectus abdominis, intercostals) and hip extensor muscles
- Impaired muscle performance due to stretched and weak lumbar extensor and possibly hip flexor muscles

This posture can apply stress to the posterior longitudinal ligament, the posterior disk space, and the normal physiological lumbar curve, which reduces the shock absorbing effects of the lumbar region and predisposes the patient to injury.

Cervical and Thoracic Region

The more common faulty postures of the cervical and thoracic region include round back with forward head and flat upper back and neck.[61]

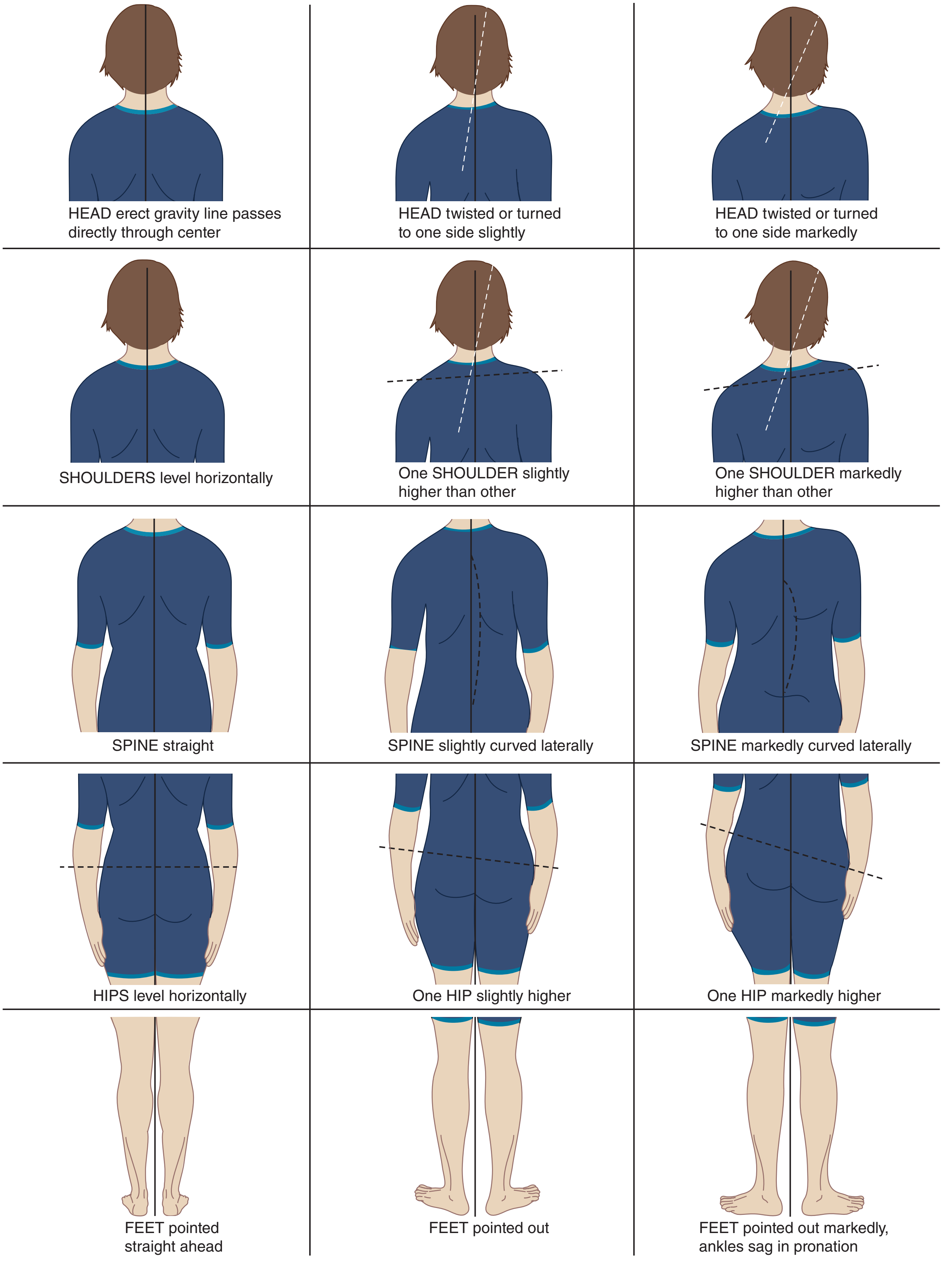


FIGURE 7.9 Common postural deviations.

TABLE 7.5 Good and Faulty Posture Summary

	Good Posture	Faulty Posture
Head	■ Head is held erect in a position of good balance.	■ Chin is up too high. ■ Head is protruding forward. Head is tilted or rotated to one side.
Shoulder and arms	■ Shoulders are level, and neither one is more forward or backward than the other when seen from the side. ■ Arms hang relaxed at the sides with palms of the hands facing toward the body. ■ Elbows are slightly bent, so forearms hang slightly forward. ■ Scapulae lie flat against the rib cage. ■ Scapulae are neither too close together nor too wide apart (in adults; a separation of approximately 4 inches (10 centimeters) is average).	■ Arms are held stiffly in any position forward, backward, or out from the body. ■ Arms are turned so that palms of hands face backward. ■ One shoulder is higher than the other. Both shoulders are hiked up. One or both shoulders is drooping forward or sloping. ■ Shoulders are rotated either clockwise or counterclockwise. ■ Scapulae are pulled back too hard. Scapulae are too far apart. ■ Scapulae are too prominent, standing out from the rib cage ("winged scapulae").
Chest	■ Chest should be slightly up and slightly forward (while the back remains in good alignment) and in a position about halfway between that of a full inspiration and a forced expiration.	■ Chest is in a depressed, or "hollow-chest," position. ■ Chest is lifted and held up too high, caused by arching the back. ■ Ribs are more prominent on one side than on the other. ■ Lower ribs are flaring out or protruding.
Abdomen	■ In young children up to about the age of 10, the abdomen normally protrudes somewhat. ■ In older children and adults, it should be flat.	■ The entire abdomen protrudes. ■ The lower part of the abdomen protrudes while the upper part is pulled in.
Spine and pelvis (side view)	■ The front of the pelvis and the thighs are in a straight line. ■ The buttocks are not prominent in back but instead slope slightly downward. ■ The spine has four natural curves. In the neck and lower back, the curve is forward, and in the upper back and lowest part of the spine (sacral region), it is backward. ■ The sacral curve is a fixed curve, whereas the other three are flexible.	■ The low back arches forward too much (lordosis). The pelvis tilts forward too much. The front of the thigh forms an angle with the pelvis when this tilt is present. ■ The normal forward curve in the low back has straightened out. The pelvis tips backward, and there is a slight backward slant to the line of the pelvis in relation to the front of the hips (flat back). ■ There is an increased backward curve in the upper back (kyphosis or round upper back). ■ The neck has an increased forward curve, almost always accompanied by round upper back and seen as a forward head. ■ There is a lateral curve of the spine (scoliosis), toward one side (C-curve) or toward both sides (S-curve).

(continues)

TABLE 7.5 Good and Faulty Posture Summary *(continued)*

	Good Posture	Faulty Posture
Hips, pelvis, and spine (back view)	■ Ideally, the body weight is borne evenly by both feet and the hips are level. ■ One side is not more prominent than the other as seen from front or back, nor is one hip more forward or backward than the other as seen from the side. ■ The spine does not curve to the left or the right side.	■ One hip is higher than the other (lateral pelvic tilt). Sometimes it is not really much higher but appears so because a sideways sway of the body has made it more prominent. ■ The hips are rotated so that one is farther forward than the other (clockwise or counterclockwise rotation).
Knees and legs	■ Legs are straight up and down. ■ Patellae face straight ahead when feet are in good position. Looking at the knees from the side, the knees are straight (i.e., neither bent forward nor "locked" backward).	■ Knees touch when feet are apart (genu valgum). ■ Knees are apart when feet touch (genu varum). ■ Knee curves slightly backward (hyperextended knee; genu recurvatum). ■ Knee bends slightly forward—that is, it is not as straight as it should be (flexed knee). Patellae face slightly toward each other (medially rotated femurs). ■ Patellae face slightly outward (laterally rotated femurs).
Foot	■ In standing, the longitudinal arch has the shape of a half dome. ■ Barefoot, the feet toe-out slightly.	■ There is a low longitudinal arch or flatfoot. ■ There is a low metatarsal arch, usually indicated by calluses under the ball of the foot. ■ Weight is borne on the inner side of the foot (pronation; "Ankle rolls in"). ■ Weight is borne on the outer border of the foot (supination; "Ankle rolls out"). ■ Toeing-out occurs while walking or while standing in shoes with heels ("outflared" or "slue-footed"). ■ Toeing-in occurs while walking or standing ("pigeon-toed").
Toes	■ Toes should be straight—that is, neither curled downward nor bent upward. They should extend forward in line with the foot and not be squeezed together or overlap.	■ Toes bend up at the first joint and down at middle and end joints so that the weight rests on the tips of the toes (hammer toes). This fault is often associated with wearing shoes that are too short. ■ The big toe slants inward toward the midline of the foot (hallux valgus). This defect is often related to wearing shoes that are too narrow and pointed at the toes.

Data from Magee DJ: Assessment of posture, in Magee DJ (ed): *Orthopedic Physical Assessment*. Philadelphia, WB Saunders, 2002, pp. 873–903; Kendall FP, McCreary EK, Provance PG: *Muscles: Testing and Function*. Baltimore, Williams & Wilkins, 1993; and Dutton M: *Orthopaedic Examination, Evaluation, and Intervention* (ed 2). New York, McGraw Hill, 2008.

FIGURE 7.10 Lordotic posture.

FIGURE 7.11 Slouched posture.

Round Back with Forward Head This is characterized by an increased kyphotic thoracic curve, protracted scapulae (round shoulders), and forward head (excessive flexion of the lower cervical spine and hyperextension of the upper cervical spine). The causes for this posture are similar to those found with the flat low back posture. The potential muscle impairments include the following:

- Decreased mobility in the muscles of the anterior thorax (intercostal muscles), muscles of the upper extremity originating on the thorax (pectoralis major and minor, latissimus dorsi, serratus anterior), muscles of the cervical spine and head that attach to the scapula and upper thorax (levator scapulae, sternocleidomastoid, scalene, upper trapezius), and muscles of the suboccipital region (rectus capitis posterior major and minor, obliquus capitis inferior and superior)
- Impaired muscle performance due to stretched and weak lower cervical and upper thoracic erector spinae and scapular retractor muscles (rhomboids, middle trapezius), anterior throat muscles (suprahyoid and infrahyoid), and capital flexors (rectus capitis anterior and lateralis, superior oblique longus colli, longus capitis)

This posture can cause the following problems:

- Excessive stress on the anterior longitudinal ligament in the upper cervical spine and posterior longitudinal ligament in the lower cervical and thoracic spine
- Irritation of the zygapophyseal (facet) joints in the upper cervical spine
- Impingement on the neurovascular bundle due to anterior scalene or pectoralis minor muscle tightness (thoracic outlet syndrome)
- Impingement of the cervical plexus from levator scapulae muscle tightness
- Temporomandibular joint dysfunction
- Lower cervical disk lesions

Flat Upper Back and Neck Posture This is characterized by a decrease in the thoracic curve, depressed scapulae, depressed clavicles, and decreased cervical

FIGURE 7.12 Flat low back posture.

lordosis with increased flexion of the occiput on the atlas. Although not common, this posture occurs primarily with exaggeration of the military posture. The potential muscle impairments include the following:

- Decreased mobility in the anterior neck muscles, thoracic erector spinae, and scapular retractors, with potentially restricted scapular movement, which can interfere with shoulder elevation
- Impaired muscle performance in the scapular protractor and intercostal muscles of the anterior thorax

This posture can place stress on the neurovascular bundle in the thoracic outlet between the clavicle and ribs, and can decrease the shock absorbing function of the kyphotic curvature, thereby predisposing the neck to injury.

Intervention

The methods for postural correction involve the appropriate strengthening of weak muscles, stretching of adaptively shortened structures, and educating the patient on the importance of maintaining a correct posture while standing, sitting, or performing other activities of daily living. The focus of therapeutic intervention for posture and movement impairment syndromes is to alleviate symptoms and to play a significant role in educating the patient against habitual abuse. Interestingly, despite the widespread inclusion of postural correction in therapeutic interventions, there is limited experimental data to support its effectiveness. The intervention for any muscle imbalance is divided into three stages:

1. Restoration of normal length of the muscles
2. Strengthening of the muscles that have become inhibited and weak
3. Establishing optimal motor patterns to secure the best possible protection to the joints and the surrounding soft tissues

Summary

For most individuals, gait and posture are inherent characteristics, as much a part of their personality as their smile. Indeed, many people can be recognized in a group by their gait or posture. Normal human gait involves the complex synchronization of the cardiopulmonary and neuromuscular systems. The energy required for gait is largely a factor of the health of the cardiopulmonary systems. The lower kinematic chain is a specialized system designed for human locomotion. Once mastered, gait allows us to move around our environment in an efficient manner and allows the arms and hands to be free for exploration of the environment. Although gait appears to be a simple process consisting of a series of rotations allowing translation of the entire body through space,[62] it is prone to breakdown.

Postural development begins at a very early age. As the infant starts to activate the postural system, skeletal muscles develop according to their predetermined specific uses in various recurrent functions and movement strategies.[60] In a multisegmented organism such as the human body, many postures are adopted throughout the course of a day. Non-neutral alignment, whether maintained statically or performed repetitively, appears to be a key precipitating factor in soft tissue and neurological pain.[45] This may be the result of an alteration in joint load distribution or in the force transmission of the muscles. This change may give rise to a muscle imbalance.

Learning Portfolio

Case Study

Your supervising physical therapist (PT) asks you to provide exercises for a patient with a Trendelenburg gait.

1. Which muscle weakness can cause a Trendelenburg gait pattern?
2. Describe three exercises that you could provide to the patient that would focus on strengthening this muscle and any progressions that you could incorporate.

Later in the day, you are asked to provide patient education and a home exercise program for a patient described as having a forward head syndrome.

3. How would you describe what a forward head syndrome is to the patient?
4. What postural corrections and cues would you give to the patient?
5. Which muscles do you think would need strengthening and which muscles would likely need stretching?

Review Questions

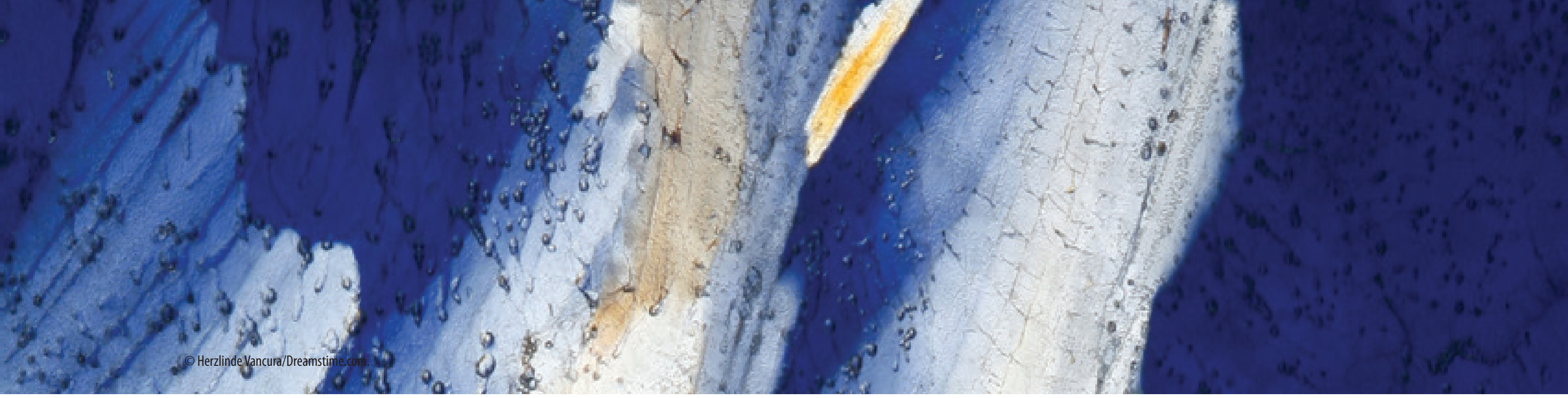
1. Give three of the major requirements for successful walking.
2. Define the gait cycle.
3. What are the functional tasks associated with normal gait?
4. What are the two periods of the gait cycle?
5. What are the intervals of the stance phase called?
6. What are the four intervals of the swing phase called?
7. What are the three gait parameters that are the most meaningful to measure in the clinic?
8. What are the three primary determinants of gait velocity?
9. What is the average normal cadence in adults without pathology?
10. Where is the center of gravity (COG) of the body located?
11. **True or false:** During the gait cycle, the COG is displaced both vertically and posteriorly.
12. **True or false:** During the gait cycle, the thoracic spine and the pelvis rotate in the same direction to enhance stability and balance.
13. Describe the characteristics of a positive Trendelenburg sign.
14. List three effects that a weak tibialis anterior could have on gait.
15. During the normal gait cycle, when do the hamstrings have their maximum activity?
16. A positive Trendelenburg sign results from paralysis of:
    a. Hip flexors
    b. Hip abductors
    c. Hip extensors
    d. Hip adductors
17. An individual demonstrates a steppage gait pattern during ambulation activities. Steppage gait is characterized by excessive:
    a. Knee and hip extension
    b. Knee and hip flexion
    c. Knee and ankle dorsiflexion
    d. Knee and ankle extension
18. The weakness of which muscle can cause a Trendelenburg gait pattern?
19. While observing the gait of a 67-year-old man with arthritis of the left hip, you observe a left lateral trunk lean during stance. Why does the patient present with this gait deviation?
    a. To increase the joint compression force of the involved hip by moving the weight toward it
    b. To decrease the joint compression force by moving the weight toward the involved hip
    c. To bring the line of gravity closer to the involved hip joint
    d. Because his right leg is shorter
20. You observe a patient demonstrating a significant posterior trunk lean at initial contact. Which is the most likely muscle that you will need to focus on during the exercise session in order to minimize this gait deviation?
21. A patient who has had a recent fracture of the right tibia and fibula has developed foot drop of the right foot during gait. Which nerve is causing this loss of motor function?
22. You are observing a patient with excessive subtalar pronation in standing. What other postural adaptations are you likely to notice at the tibia, femur, and pelvis?

23. Which abnormal posture is characterized by an increase in the lumbosacral angle, an increase in lumbar lordosis, and an increase in the anterior pelvic tilt and hip flexion?
24. Which abnormal posture is characterized by a shifting of the entire pelvic segment anteriorly, resulting in relative hip extension, and a shifting of the thoracic segment posteriorly, resulting in a relative flexion of the thorax on the upper lumbar spine?
25. A patient presents with a flat low back posture. Which muscle imbalances would you expect to be associated with this posture?

References

1. King SL, Barton GJ, Ranganath LR. Interpreting sources of variation in clinical gait analysis: a case study. *Gait and Posture*. 2017; 52:1–4.
2. Pistacchi M, Gioulis M, Sanson F, De Giovannini E, Filippi G, Rossetto F, et al. Gait analysis and clinical correlations in early Parkinson's disease. *Functional Neurology*. 2017; 32:28–34.
3. Donatelli R, Wilkes R. Lower kinetic chain and human gait. *Journal of Back and Musculoskeletal Rehabilitation*. 1992; 2:1–11.
4. Luttgens K, Hamilton N. The center of gravity and stability. In: Luttgens K, Hamilton N, editors. *Kinesiology: Scientific Basis of Human Motion*, 9th ed. Dubuque, IA: McGraw-Hill; 1997. p. 415–42.
5. Epler M. Gait. In: Richardson JK, Iglarsh ZA, editors. *Clinical Orthopaedic Physical Therapy*. Philadelphia: WB Saunders; 1994. p. 602–25.
6. Song HN, Kim YM, Kim K. A kinematic analysis of the lower limb with regard to restricted spinal motion during gait. *Journal of Physical Therapy Science*. 2017; 29:81–4.
7. Pesenti S, Blondel B, Peltier E, Viehweger E, Pomero V, Authier G, et al. Spinal alignment evolution with age: a prospective gait analysis study. *World Journal of Orthopedics*. 2017; 8:256–63.
8. Perry J. Stride analysis. In: Perry J, editor. *Gait Analysis: Normal and Pathological Function*. Thorofare, NJ: Slack Inc; 1992. p. 431–41.
9. Auvinet B, Touzard C, Montestruc F, Delafond A, Goeb V. Gait disorders in the elderly and dual task gait analysis: a new approach for identifying motor phenotypes. *Journal of Neuroengineering and Rehabilitation*. 2017; 14:7.
10. Siasios ID, Spanos SL, Kanellopoulos AK, Fotiadou A, Pollina J, Schneider D, et al. The role of gait analysis in the evaluation of patients with cervical myelopathy: a literature review study. *World Neurosurgery*. 2017; 101:275–82.
11. Saunders JBD, Inman VT, Eberhart HD. The major determinants in normal and pathological gait. *The Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery American Volume*. 1953; 35:543–58.
12. Whitehouse PA, Knight LA, Di Nicolantonio F, Mercer SJ, Sharma S, Cree IA. Heterogeneity of chemosensitivity of colorectal adenocarcinoma determined by a modified ex vivo ATP-tumor chemosensitivity assay (ATP-TCA). *Anticancer Drugs*. 2003; 14:369–75.
13. Gage JR, Deluca PA, Renshaw TS. Gait analysis: principles and applications with emphasis on its use with cerebral palsy. *Instructional Course Lectures*. 1996; 45:491–507.
14. Dee R. Normal and abnormal gait in the pediatric patient. In: Dee R, Hurst LC, Gruber MA, et al., editors. *Principles of Orthopaedic Practice*, 2nd ed. New York: McGraw-Hill; 1997. p. 685–92.
15. Baker R, Dreyfuss P, Mercer S, Bogduk N. Cervical transforaminal injection of corticosteroids into a radicular artery: a possible mechanism for spinal cord injury. *Pain*. 2003; 103:211–5.
16. Hoyt DF, Taylor CF. Gait and the energetics of locomotion in horses. *Nature*. 1981; 292:239–40.
17. Larish DD, Martin PE, Mungiole M. Characteristic patterns of gait in the healthy old. *Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences*. 1987; 515:18–32.
18. Martin PE, Rothstein DE, Larish DD. Effects of age and physical activity status on the speed-aerobic demand relationship of walking. *Journal of Applied Physiology*. 1992; 73:200–6.
19. Waters RL, Hislop HJ, Perry J, Thomas L, Campbell J. Comparative cost of walking in young and old adults. *Journal of Orthopaedic Research*. 1983; 1:73–6.
20. Allen W, Seals DR, Hurley BF, Ehsani AA, Hagberg JM. Lactate threshold and distance running performance in young and older endurance athletes. *Journal of Applied Physiology*. 1985; 58:1281–4.
21. Trappe SW, Costill DL, Vukovich MD, Jones J, Melham T. Aging among elite distance runners: A 22-year longitudinal study. *Journal of Applied Physiology*. 1996; 80:285–90.
22. Wells CL, Boorman MA, Riggs DM. Effect of age and menopausal status on cardiorespiratory fitness in masters women runners. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise*. 1992; 24:1147–54.
23. Lange GW, Hintermeister RA, Schlegel T, Dillman CJ, Steadman JR. Electromyographic and kinematic analysis of graded treadmill walking and the implications for knee rehabilitation. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 1996; 23:294–301.
24. Baker R, Esquenazi A, Benedetti MG, Desloovere K. Gait analysis: clinical facts. *European Journal of Physical and Rehabilitation Medicine*. 2016; 52:560–74.
25. Kobayashi Y, Hobara H, Heldoorn TA, Kouchi M, Mochimaru M. Age-independent and age-dependent sex differences in gait pattern determined by principal component analysis. *Gait and Posture*. 2016; 46:11–7.
26. Foti T, Davids JR, Bagley A. A biomechanical analysis of gait during pregnancy. *The Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery*. 2000; 82A:625–32.
27. Shkuratova N, Morris ME, Huxham F. Effects of age on balance control during walking. *Archives of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation*. 2004; 85:582–8.
28. Morag E, Hurwitz DE, Andriacchi TP, et al. Abnormalities in muscle function during gait in relation to the level of lumbar disc herniation. *Spine*. 2000; 25:829–33.

29. Bauer DM, Finch DC, McGough KP, et al. A comparative analysis of several crutch-length-estimation techniques. *Physical Therapy*. 1991; 71:294–300.
30. Li S, Armstrong CW, Cipriani D. Three-point gait crutch walking: variability in ground reaction force during weight bearing. *Archives of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation*. 2001; 82:86–92.
31. Segers V, De Smet K, Van Caekenberghe I, Aerts P, De Clercq D. Biomechanics of spontaneous overground walk-to-run transition. *The Journal of Experimental Biology*. 2013; 216:3047–54.
32. Perl DP, Daoud AI, Lieberman DE. Effects of footwear and strike type on running economy. Medicine and science in sports and exercise. 2012; 44:1335–43.
33. Lieberman DE, Venkadesan M, Werbel WA, Daoud AI, D'Andrea S, Davis IS, et al. Foot strike patterns and collision forces in habitually barefoot versus shod runners. *Nature*. 2010; 463:531–5.
34. Lieberman DE. What we can learn about running from barefoot running: an evolutionary medical perspective. Exercise and sport sciences reviews. 2012; 40:63–72.
35. Almonroeder T, Willson JD, Kernozek TW. The effect of foot strike pattern on achilles tendon load during running. Annals of biomedical engineering. 2013; 41:1758–66.
36. Lorenz DS, Pontillo M. Is there evidence to support a forefoot strike pattern in barefoot runners? A review. *Sports Health*. 2012; 4:480–4.
37. Schache AG, Dorn TW, Williams GP, Brown NA, Pandy MG. Lower-limb muscular strategies for increasing running speed. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2014; 44:813–24.
38. Denny MW. Limits to running speed in dogs, horses and humans. *The Journal of Experimental Biology*. 2008; 211:3836–49.
39. Dorn TW, Schache AG, Pandy MG. Muscular strategy shift in human running: dependence of running speed on hip and ankle muscle performance. *The Journal of Experimental Biology*. 2012; 215:1944–56.
40. Jackson-Manfield P, Neumann DA. Structure and function of the vertebral column. In: Jackson-Manfield P, Neumann DA, editors. *Essentials of Kinesiology for the Physical Therapist Assistant*. St. Louis, MO: Mosby Elsevier; 2009. p. 177–225.
41. Neumann DA. Axial skeleton: osteology and arthrology. In: Neumann DA, editor. *Kinesiology of the Musculoskeletal System: Foundations for Physical Rehabilitation*. St. Louis: Mosby; 2002. p. 251–310.
42. Jull GA, Janda V. Muscle and motor control in low back pain. In: Twomey LT, Taylor JR, editors. *Physical Therapy of the Low Back: Clinics in Physical Therapy*. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1987. p. 258–78.
43. Janda V. Muscles and motor control in cervicogenic disorders: assessment and management. In: Grant R, editor. *Physical Therapy of the Cervical and Thoracic Spine*. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1994. p. 195–216.
44. Janda V. Muscle strength in relation to muscle length, pain and muscle imbalance. In: Harms-Ringdahl K, editor. *Muscle Strength*. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1993. p. 83–91.
45. Keller K, Corbett J, Nichols D. Repetitive strain injury in computer keyboard users: pathomechanics and treatment principles in individual and group intervention. *Journal of Hand Therapy*. 1998; 11:9–26.
46. Kiser DM. Physiological and biomechanical factors for understanding repetitive motion injuries. *Seminars in Occupational Medicine*. 1987; 2:11–7.
47. Greenfield B. Upper quarter evaluation: structural relationships and interindependence. In: Donatelli R, Wooden M, editors. *Orthopedic Physical Therapy*. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1989. p. 43–58.
48. Sahrmann SA. *Movement Impairment Syndromes*. St Louis: Mosby; 2001.
49. Babyar SR. Excessive scapular motion in individuals recovering from painful and stiff shoulders: causes and treatment strategies. *Physical Therapy*. 1996; 76:226–47.
50. Seidel-Cobb D, Cantu R. Myofascial treatment. In: Donatelli RA, editor. *Physical Therapy of the Shoulder*, 3rd ed. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1997. p. 383–401.
51. Hamilton N, Luttgens K. The standing posture. In: Hamilton N, Luttgens K, editors. *Kinesiology: Scientific Basis of Human Motion*, 10th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2002. p. 399–411.
52. Magee DJ. Assessment of posture. In: Magee DJ, editor. *Orthopedic Physical Assessment*. Philadelphia: W.B. Saunders; 2002. p. 873–903.
53. Horak FB, Earhart GM, Dietz V. Postural responses to combinations of head and body displacements: vestibular-somatosensory interactions. *Experimental Brain Research*. 2001; 141:410–4.
54. Hahn ME, Lee HJ, Chou LS. Increased muscular challenge in older adults during obstructed gait. *Gait and Posture*. 2005; 22:356–61.
55. Lord SR, Clark RD, Webster IW. Postural stability and associated physiological factors in a population of aged persons. *Journal of Gerontology*. 1991; 46:M69–76.
56. Berg G, Hammar M, Moller-Nielsen J, Linden U, Thorblad J. Low back pain during pregnancy. *Obstetrics and Gynecology*. 1988; 71:71–5.
57. Bullock JE, Jull GA, Bullock MI. The relationship of low back pain to postural changes during pregnancy. *The Australian Journal of Physiotherapy*. 1987; 33:10–7.
58. Franklin ME, Conner-Kerr T. An analysis of posture and back pain in the first and third trimesters of pregnancy. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 1998; 28:133–8.
59. Orloff HA, Rapp CM. The effects of load carriage on spinal curvature and posture. *Spine*. 2004; 29:1325–9.
60. Morris C, Chaitow L, Janda V. Functional examination for low back syndromes. In: Morris C, editor. *Low Back Syndromes: Integrated Clinical Management*. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2006. p. 333–416.
61. Kisner C, Colby LA. The spine and posture: structure, function, postural impairments, and management guidelines. In: Kisner C, Colby LA, editors. *Therapeutic Exercise Foundations and Techniques*, 5th ed. Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2002. p. 383–406.
62. Inman VT, Ralston HJ, Todd F. *Human Walking*. Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins; 1981.


© Herzlinde Vancura/Dreamstime.com

CHAPTER 8

Decision-Making for the Physical Therapist Assistant

CHAPTER OBJECTIVES

At the completion of this chapter, the reader will be able to:

1. Describe the various decision-making processes that enable the physical therapist assistant (PTA) to progress a patient appropriately in the orthopaedic setting.
2. Describe the differences between a clinical prediction rule and a clinical practice guideline.
3. Describe the importance of being able to judge the strength of the evidence in the decision-making process.
4. Discuss the various methods that help the clinician judge the strength of evidence.
5. Describe the differences between reliability and validity in peer-reviewed articles.
6. Discuss the differences between sensitivity and specificity.
7. Describe the importance of hypothesis testing in evidence-based practice.
8. List the various components that must be considered when determining an appropriate exercise progression.
9. Differentiate between exercise intensity, frequency, and duration, and explain how each can impact an exercise progression.

Overview

Physical therapy is a dynamic profession with an established theoretical and scientific base and widespread clinical applications in the restoration, maintenance, and promotion of optimal physical function.[1] The services provided by the physical therapy team prevent, minimize, or eliminate impairments of body functions and structures, activity limitations, and participation restrictions for individuals of all ages.[1] Fortunately, we live in an era where there are increasingly apparent and sophisticated management approaches and a burgeoning evidence base for a broad range of conditions and therapeutic pathways to aid in the decision-making process. The problem facing most clinicians is how to take that evidence and apply it in the clinical setting. This requires an ability to discern a clear signal from the background noise.

The therapeutic goals set by the physical therapist (PT) often relate to the capacity of individuals to do what is important to them in their daily activities and roles.[1] The role of the physical therapist assistant (PTA) is to recognize that a problem exists, and then take specific steps to notify the PT, and then adjust the program based on the input from the PT. Thus, decisions about the type and intensity of the interventions are based on the PT's assessment of the individual's current condition and are contingent on the timely monitoring by the PTA of the individual's response and the progress made toward achieving the goals.[1] The PTA attempts to achieve these goals using a careful and appropriate progression of electrotherapeutic modalities, manual therapy techniques, and therapeutic exercise listed in the PT's plan of care (POC). It is not the role of the PTA to interpret objective and measurable data but to provide information to the PT. That is not to say that the PTA cannot provide insightful and meaningful suggestions for modifications. In fact, the PTA is frequently called upon to modify or adjust therapeutic interventions, by either progressing the patient as directed by the PT or by ensuring patient safety and comfort. These modifications or adjustments include, but are not limited to, any or all interventions in response to changes in a patient's signs and symptoms, range of motion (ROM), strength, endurance, function, balance, and coordination.

Misjudgments are sometimes made with the intervention. One of the most common mistakes is progressing a patient too quickly. This typically results in an exacerbation of the patient's pain or symptoms. In general, an elevation of the patient's pain or symptoms should not last more than 1 to 2 hours after an intervention. Pain that lasts longer than 2 hours is usually an indication that the intensity of the intervention, rather than the intervention itself, has been inappropriate. However, it is important to remember that some therapeutic exercise protocols have the potential to cause pain, discomfort, and soreness that can last 24 to 48 hours after exercise (e.g., delayed onset muscle soreness; see Chapter 13). Alternatively, a patient can be progressed too slowly (see "Correct Therapeutic Exercise Progression" later).

Clinical Decision-Making

Patients may be referred to physical therapy with a nonspecific diagnosis, an incorrect diagnosis, or no diagnosis at all (a prescription reading "Evaluate and Treat"). The PT uses information derived from the history, physical examination, and other investigations to revise prior beliefs about the likelihood of a diagnosis or outcome by a magnitude proportional to the relative strength of that information.[2] The application of such methods, particularly within a diagnostic context, has been termed probabilistic reasoning, or clinical reasoning.[3,4] Clinical reasoning is an ongoing decision-making process which is used throughout the episode of care with the understanding that perfect predictions are not anticipated and error is knowingly accepted.[5] The goal of clinical reasoning is to reduce cognitive bias and to generate predictions that are more often "less wrong" than those generated by other methods.[4] Thus, both PTs and PTAs must systematically consider and prioritize variable and uncertain factors, such as understanding the patient's environment, beliefs, and values, as part of the clinical reasoning process, ultimately leading to the ability to make appropriate clinical judgments.[6] Once the impairments have been highlighted by the PT, a determination can be made as to the reason for those impairments, the best way to address the impairments, and the patient's functional limitations or disabilities.

Decision-making by the PT encompasses the selection of tests during the examination process, interpretation of data from the detailed history and examination, establishment of the diagnosis, estimation of the prognosis, determination of intervention strategies, sequence of therapeutic procedures, and establishment of discharge criteria.[1] The decision-making process is a multifaceted, fluid process that combines tacit knowledge with accumulated clinical experience.[7] The following two types of clinical reasoning are commonly recognized:

- *Hypothetico-deductive (deductive reasoning)*. This method, a form of backward reasoning, involves the generation of a hypothesis based on results of the tests and measures, followed by the testing of this hypothesis. PTs with less experience tend to rely more on this method, which is more time consuming. The most commonly used type is the *hypothesis-oriented algorithm for clinicians* (HOAC) designed by Rothstein and Echternach.[8] The HOAC is intended to guide the clinician through the evaluation to the intervention planning using a logical sequence of activities, and it requires the clinician to generate working hypotheses early in the examination process, the latter of which is a strategy often used by expert clinicians.
- *Pattern recognition (inductive reasoning)*. Experienced PTs and PTAs are able to recognize patterns and extrapolate information from them using forward reasoning, to develop or modify a therapeutic approach.

According to Kahney,[9] the expert seems to do less problem solving than the novice because the former has already stored solutions to many of the clinical problems previously encountered.[10] In essence, the experienced PT or PTA is reflecting on what has or has not worked for their patients in the past, something that is difficult for a novice clinician to do. At the most basic level, the PTA must be able to reflect and determine if what they are doing with the patient is working as well as expected and, if not, why not, and what other things could be attempted. *Metacognition* is a term that is used to describe the ability to take knowledge and apply it to new situations. It is a highly important skill for the PTA to develop.

A number of teaching tools have been designed to aid the novice clinician in the decision-making process. One such tool is the Systematic Clinical Reasoning in Physical Therapy (SCRIPT) tool, which helps the clinician formulate and prioritize hypotheses and then gradually rule out the incorrect hypotheses through the use of mentoring.[6] Without mentoring, one of the biggest problems for the inexperienced PTA is how to attach relevance to all of the information gleaned from the patient and the success or failure of a particular intervention. An expert PTA is able to see meaningful relationships, possess enhanced memory, is skilled in qualitative analysis, and has well-developed reflection skills.[7] This combination of skills allows the expert PTA to systematically organize the information needed to make efficient and effective clinical decisions. Thus, the clinician's knowledge base is critical to the evaluation process.[11]

When integrating evidence into practice, an understanding of how to appraise the quality of the evidence offered by clinical studies is important. One of the major problems in evaluating studies is that the volume of literature makes it difficult to obtain and analyze all of the evidence necessary to guide the clinical decision-making process.[17] The other problem involves deciding whether the results from the literature are definite enough to indicate an effect other than chance. Thus, judging the strength of the evidence becomes an important part of the decision-making process.

In an effort to reduce the burden of having to sift through the huge volume of literature, a number of frameworks have been introduced to clinical practice to provide structure and to help guide the clinical decision-making process.[18,19] Perhaps the earliest of these was the development of surgical protocols, a sort of cookbook approach, designed by surgeons, that provide specific timeframes of when specific interventions should be introduced. For example, on Day 1, the patient performs the following isometric exercises; on Day 4, the patient begins active range of motion exercises. For the novice clinician, this would appear to be the perfect solution, as it removes any decision-making on the part of the clinician. However, because these protocols were designed by surgeons and not by PTs, their usefulness began to be questioned, especially in light of the fact that every patient is different, and every patient heals at a different speed. Another similar method that became popular, was the use of subgroups, where patients are grouped based on how it is thought they will respond best to a specific intervention. This method can be thought of as a one-size-fits-all approach and is commonly used with low back pain (LBP).[20] However, although subgrouping has some disadvantages, the approach can be simple and effective. For example, the Keele STarT Back approach, based on a single feature, uses a simple prognostic tool (nine questions) to match patients to an appropriate treatment package.[21] The patient rates statements 3-8

☑ KEY POINT

The standard for the assessment of the usefulness of a test or intervention is the clinical trial, that is, a prospective study assessing the effect and value of a test or intervention against a control in human subjects.[12] Unfortunately, many of the experimental studies that deal with physical therapy topics are not clinical trials, because there is no control to judge the efficacy of the test or intervention, and there are no tests or interventions from which to draw comparisons.[13]

The best evidence for making decisions about interventions comes from randomized controlled trials, systematic reviews, and evidence-based clinical practice guidelines.[14] The ideal clinical trial includes a blinded, randomized design and a control group. A randomized controlled trial (RCT) is conducted to compare two (or more) treatments, or treatment to a control or comparison group.[15] It may be possible to discriminate between high- and low-quality trials by asking three simple questions:[14]

1. Were subjects randomly allocated to conditions? Random allocation implies that a nonsystematic, unpredictable procedure was used to allocate subjects to conditions.
2. Was there blinding of assessors and patients? Blinding of assessors and patients minimizes the risk of the placebo effect and the "Hawthorne effect," an experimental artifact that is of no clinical utility, where patients report better outcomes than they really experience because they perceive that this is what is expected from them.[16]
3. Was there an adequate follow-up? Ideally, all subjects who enter the trial should be subsequently followed up to avoid bias. In practice, this rarely happens. As a general rule, losses to follow-up of less than 10 percent avoid serious bias, and losses to follow-up of more than 20 percent cause potential for serious bias.

based on their back pain over the last few days by simply agreeing or disagreeing:[21]

1. How **bothersome** has **pain spreading down your legs from your back** been in the **last few days**?
2. How **bothersome** has pain in your **shoulder** or **neck** being in the **last few days**?
3. In the last **few days**, I have **dressed more slowly** than usual because of my back pain.
4. In the last **few days**, I have only **walked short distances** because of my back pain.
5. It's **really not safe** for a person with a condition like mine to be **physically active**.
6. **Worrying thoughts** have been going through my mind a lot of the time in the last **few days**.
7. I feel that **my back pain is terrible** and that **it is never going to get any better**.
8. In general, in the last **few days**, **I** have **not enjoyed** all the things I used to enjoy.

Questions 1, 2 and 9 are rated using a 0 to 4 scale (0 representing Not at All and 4 representing Extremely).

9. Overall, how **bothersome** has your **back pain** been in the **last few days**?

A score of three or less places the patient in the low risk subgroup. A patient with a score of four or more is given a psychologic score that places him or her into the medium-risk or high-risk subgroup. While this type of approach can speed up the diagnostic process, its main disadvantage is that it is protocol-based and therefore provides generic treatment rather than individualized treatment to the patient.

Another subgroup approach, personalized medicine, is based on the classification of patients into different subpopulations depending on the characteristics (i.e., genetic markers, susceptibility to disease, or response to treatment), with the aim to optimize efficacy.[22] Although this approach is currently being more widely used in the fields of genetic and molecular medicine, it soon may well be seen in physical therapy.[20]

The more recent models have focused on enablement perspectives using algorithms. An algorithm is a systematic process involving a finite number of steps that produce the solution to a problem. Algorithms used in health care allow for clinical decisions and adjustments to be made during the clinical reasoning and decision-making process, because they are not prescriptive or protocol driven.[7] Clinical guidelines and pathways, which are often based on evidence of efficacy, consensus, and cost-effectiveness, offer a more attractive mechanism to assist PTAs in navigating the decision-making process. Pathways are operational structures with which to implement clinical practice guidelines.[23] To be truly useful, guidelines must synthesize the evidence and provide high-level clinical guidance that is flexible and facilitates clinical reasoning, rather than being prescriptive.[23] What follows is a brief description of clinical prediction rules (CPRs), clinical practice guidelines (CPGs), and clinical guidance statements (CGSs):

- *Clinical prediction rules*. CPRs function to produce estimates of the likelihood of a target diagnosis, prognosis, or treatment outcome that, in turn, informed clinical decision-making.[24] A CPR is initially derived using multivariable statistical procedures to identify which aspects of a patient's presentation are independently related to a certain diagnosis or outcome.[25] The tool then undergoes a process of validation, whereby it is applied to new groups of patients in different settings to evaluate its ability to accurately predict that same diagnosis/outcome.[25] Validated CPRs subsequently undergo impact analysis, by which they are tested to determine whether their clinical application leads to improved patient outcomes or efficiencies in resource consumption.[25]
- *Clinical practice guidelines*. CPGs are statements that include recommendations intended to optimize patient care that are informed by a systematic review of evidence and an assessment of the benefits and harms of alternative care options.[26] CPGs use strong methodology to guide a systematic review of all available literature to develop statements and recommendations for appropriate healthcare decisions.[26] For example, Flynn et al.[27] designed a CPR to identify patients with low back pain more likely to benefit from lumbopelvic thrust manipulation. The study determined that the probability of success from this intervention increased from 45 to 95 percent when four or more factors were present, including precise estimates of the tool sensitivity and specificity. These data were then used to help calculate more precise estimates of the posttest probability of a fall in patients who were either positive or negative on the CPR.[4] It is important to remember that a CPR that has not undergone validation is not recommended for use in practice as it may reflect chance statistical associations or be specific to the patient sample or setting from which it was derived.[25,28]
- *Clinical guidance statements*. As their name suggests CGSs systematically compare and synthesize CPGs of similar topic areas and include a discussion of guideline methodologies, areas of agreement and difference, and recommendations based on the corresponding strength of evidence.[26]

There remain many conditions for which evidence is not sufficient to guide treatment. In these cases, it is necessary to blend a systematic review with the experience of the clinician while erring on the side of caution.

An outline of the physical therapy examination for each of the joints is provided in the relevant chapters of this book. Throughout the patient's plan of care, the PTA must communicate changes in the patient's status relative to data from the initial examination and make safe and appropriate modifications to the existing program based on consultation with the supervising PT.

☑ KEY POINT

Successful intervention programs are those that are custom designed from a blend of scientific data and clinical experience. The level of improvement achieved is related to accurate goal setting and the attainment of those goals.

When progressing interventions for an individual, the PTA must consider a number of parameters for each intervention (e.g., method, mode, or device; intensity, load, or tempo; duration and frequency; and progression).[1] The treatment strategy is determined solely from the responses obtained from tissue loading and the effect that loading has on the symptoms reported by the patient. This, in turn, is based on the stage of healing. (See Chapter 4.) Based on these factors, a number of strategies can be developed to help guide the novice PTA (**TABLE 8.1**). For example, if pain and inflammation appear to be the dominant presenting issue (Table 8.1), it is safe to assume that the patient is in the acute stage of healing and that the strategy should be to implement rest/ice, use of a support/brace, introduction of gentle passive range of motion (PROM), and the use of any electrotherapeutic/physical agent that helps to decrease pain and inflammation (e.g., cryotherapy and gentle e-stim). Similarly, a hierarchy of

TABLE 8.1 Intervention Goals and Strategies

Presenting Issue	Goal	Strategies and Implementation
Pain and inflammation	Increase pain-free mobility while promoting tissue repair/regeneration	Rest/ice Supports/braces Gentle PROM/active-assisted ROM (AAROM)/active ROM (AROM) Electrotherapeutic and physical agents
Decreased strength	Increase muscle strength/endurance	Isometric exercises Concentric exercises Eccentric exercises Isokinetic exercises Stabilization exercises
Decreased ROM	Increase ROM	PROM, AAROM, and AROM Stretching Joint mobilizations
Deconditioning	Increase aerobic capacity	Cardiovascular exercises (e.g., treadmill, upper body ergometer, elliptical)
Decreased function	Enhance function/independence	Address psychosocial factors Improve ergonomic factors Gait progression as appropriate Closed kinetic chain exercises Neuromuscular and agility drills
Poor balance	Improve balance	Eyes open—eyes closed Stable to unstable surfaces Single movements in single planes to multiple movements in multiple planes

TABLE 8.2 Intervention Principles
Control pain and inflammation, and promote and progress healing.
Provide patient education and self-management.
Increase range of motion, and flexibility.
Incorporate neuromuscular reeducation.
Progressively increase strength (single-angle isometrics, multi-angle isometrics, light resistance concentric exercises in pain-free range, functional/activity-specific plane submaximal concentrics.
Correct posture and movement impairment syndromes.
Analyze and integrate the entire kinetic chain.
Maintain or improve overall fitness.
Ensure a safe return to function.
Improve functional outcome.

approaches can be followed (**TABLE 8.2**). Using this hierarchy, the first objective is to control pain and inflammation and promote and progress healing before addressing the other items in the hierarchy in the order in which they are presented. Obviously, there may be a fair degree of overlap between each level of approach, but these will serve as a guideline in discussions with the supervising PT.

Correct Therapeutic Exercise Progression

As previously mentioned, the most common mistakes in physical therapy are either progressing a patient too quickly, or, erring on the side of caution and progressing the patient too slowly. This can be avoided if the PTA knows when and how to advance a patient's exercise program. For the novice clinician, this can be a daunting task and is complicated by the desire to get the patient better while not causing any harm. For example, consider a patient who recently underwent ACL reconstruction surgery and who has been performing isometric exercises and straight leg raises while wearing the prescribed brace. According to the surgeon's protocol, the patient may now be progressed to progressive resistance exercises. The PTA must be able to recognize the presenting stage of healing, because it is the stage of healing that governs everything. Fortunately, there are a number of guidelines (in addition to those listed in Chapter 4) that can be used to help the clinician make that determination in consultation with the supervising PT:[29]

- The degree of irritability can be determined by inquiring about the vigor, duration, and intensity of the pain. Greater irritability is associated with very acutely inflamed conditions. The characteristic sign for an acute inflammation is pain at rest that is diffuse in its distribution and often referred from the site of the primary condition. In contrast, chronic conditions usually have low irritability but have an associated loss of active and passive ROM.
- If pain is reported by the patient before a resistive activity or before the end feel during PROM, the patient's symptoms are considered irritable, and therefore, acute. The intervention in the presence of irritability should not be aggressive, and the focus should be on controlling pain and inflammation.[30] If the pain during PROM is synchronous with tissue resistance, it can be assumed the stage of healing is in the proliferative (subacute) stage, and this indicates that the patient will likely have near-normal ROM, and will be able to tolerate the introduction of a strengthening program. If pain occurs after resistance, which indicates the remodeling stage of healing, then the patient's symptoms are not considered irritable, and exercise, particularly stretching, can be more aggressive.

Once the stage of healing is determined, a number of guidelines still need to be adhered to and these include the following:

- The patient should be taught to exercise initially in cardinal planes before progressing as quickly as allowed to exercise in the functional planes.
- The exercise protocol should initiate with exercises that utilize a short lever arm. These exercises decrease the amount of torque at the joint. Extremity exercises can be adapted to include short levers by flexing the extremity, by exercising with the extremity closer to the body, or if resistance is included, to shorten the lever arm.
- The goal should be to achieve the close-packed position at the earliest opportunity. The close-packed position of a joint is its position of maximum stability. It is also the position of maximum ligamentous and capsular tautness, so care needs to be taken in achieving this position.
- As the rehabilitation progresses, the prescribed exercises should reproduce the forces and loading rates that will approach the patient's functional demands.

- The therapeutic exercise program always begins with an exercise the patient can perform, before progressing in difficulty toward a functional outcome. Each progression is made more challenging by altering one of the parameters of exercise (type/mode of exercise, intensity, duration, and frequency), which are modified according to patient response.

All exercise progressions must include the following:[31]

- *Variation*. Variation is provided by altering:
    - The plane of motion
    - The range of motion
    - The body position
    - The exercise duration
    - The exercise frequency
- *A safe progression*. A safe progression is ensured as the exercises are progressed from:
    - Slow to fast
    - Simple to complex
    - Stable to unstable
    - Low force to high force

☑ KEY POINT

At regular intervals, the PTA should ensure the following:

- The patient is adherent with their exercise program at home.
- The patient is aware of the rationale behind the exercise program.
- The patient is performing the exercise program correctly and at the appropriate intensity.
- The patient's exercise program is being updated appropriately based on clinical findings and patient response.

Exercise Precautions

Exercise progression in the following populations is determined by a number of factors, including the general health of the patient, the stage of healing and the degree of irritability of the structure, and the patient's response to exercise:

- Patients with an acute illness/fever
- Patients with an acute injury
- Postsurgical patients
- Patients with cardiac disease—edema, weight gain, unstable angina
- Patients who are obese

Summary

Clinical decision making is a critical component for the PTA to master. Excellent clinical decision-making involves a combination of well-developed observational skills, good listening skills, a sound clinical knowledge base, mentoring where possible, and good communication with the supervising PT. At the heart of all clinical decision-making is the patient's stage of healing. The ability to recognize the various stages of healing will enable the PTA to make sound clinical judgments that can be communicated to the supervising PT so that the patient can heal in the safest and most efficient manner.

Learning Portfolio

Case Study

You have a number of patients on your schedule with varying degrees of recovery and therefore different stages of healing. Your first patient of the day is in the acute stage of healing for an ankle sprain.

1. Describe the physical agents and mechanical modalities that you think would benefit this patient and provide your rationale.

Your next patient is diagnosed with tennis elbow, and you have been treating the patient for 3 weeks. Thus far, the patient has tolerated multi-angle isometric exercises and concentric exercises using light resistance.

2. Describe the exercises that will have been prescribed for this patient up to this point and then discuss an exercise progression for this patient that you might suggest to the supervising PT.

The third patient of the day is nearing the end of his rehabilitation. He is pain-free and has been able to tolerate both concentric and eccentric exercises.

3. List the four parameters of exercise and how you could change each of them to make the exercises more challenging for the patient.

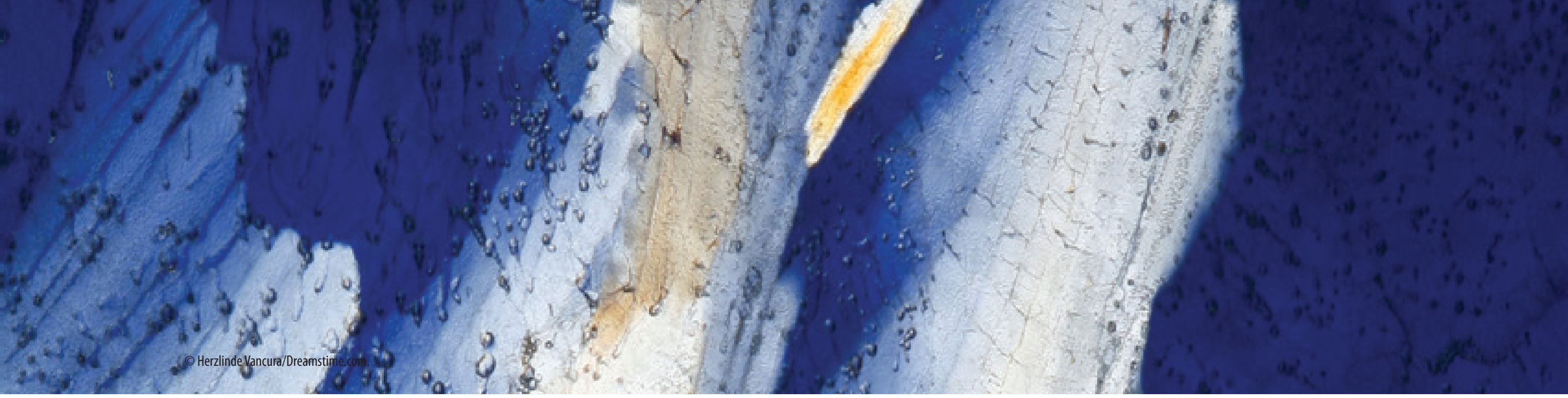
Review Questions

1. All of the following are true statements about the role of the PTA *except*:
   a. To recognize that a problem with the patient exists, and then to take specific steps to notify the supervising PT
   b. To interpret objective and measurable data
   c. To provide insightful and meaningful suggestions to the PT for modifications
   d. All of these are true statements about the role of the PTA
2. **True or false:** In general, an elevation of the patient's pain or symptoms should not last more than 1 to 2 hours after an intervention.
3. All of the following are true statements about clinical decision making *except*:
   a. Clinical reasoning is an ongoing decision-making process that is used throughout the episode of care.
   b. Clinical reasoning always involves making perfect predictions.
   c. The goal of clinical reasoning is to reduce cognitive bias.
   d. All of these are true statements about clinical decision-making.
4. **True or false:** Hypothetico-deductive reasoning involves the generation of a hypothesis based on results of the tests and measures, followed by the testing of this hypothesis.
5. All of the following are true statements about an expert PTA *except*:
   a. An expert PTA is able to see meaningful relationships.
   b. An expert PTA possesses an enhanced memory and is skilled in qualitative analysis.
   c. An expert PTA has well-developed reflection skills.
   d. All of these are true statements about an expert PTA.
6. **True or false:** The best evidence for making decisions about interventions comes from randomized controlled trials, systematic reviews, and evidence-based clinical practice guidelines.
7. **True or false:** Clinical guidelines and pathways are often based on evidence of efficacy, consensus, and cost-effectiveness.
8. All of the following are true statements about clinical pathways and guidelines *except*:
   a. They assist PTAs in navigating the decision-making process.
   b. They are operational structures with which to implement clinical practice guidelines.
   c. To be truly useful, guidelines and pathways must be prescriptive.
   d. All of these are true statements about clinical pathways and guidelines.
9. **True or false:** The therapeutic strategy is determined solely from the responses obtained from tissue loading and the effect that loading has on the symptoms reported by the patient.
10. All exercise progressions should include all of the following *except*:
    a. Variation
    b. A safe progression
    c. Exercising to fatigue
    d. All of these should be included in every exercise progression

References

1. *Guide to Physical Therapist Practice*. 3.0. American Physical Therapy Association. Alexandria, VA; 2014.
2. Davidson M. The interpretation of diagnostic tests: a primer for physiotherapists. *The Australian Journal of Physiotherapy*. 2002; 48:227–33.
3. Doust J. Diagnosis in general practice. using probabilistic reasoning. *BMJ*. 2009; 339:b3823.
4. Haskins R, Osmotherly PG, Tuyl F, Rivett DA. Uncertainty in clinical prediction rules: the value of credible intervals. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2014; 44:85–91.
5. Einhorn HJ. Accepting error to make less error. *Journal of Personality Assessment*. 1986; 50:387–95.
6. Baker SE, Painter EE, Morgan BC, Kaus AL, Petersen EJ, Allen CS, et al. Systematic Clinical Reasoning in Physical Therapy (SCRIPT): tool for the purposeful practice of clinical reasoning in orthopedic manual physical therapy. *Physical Therapy*. 2017; 97:61–70.
7. Hoogenboom BJ, Voight ML. Clinical reasoning: an algorithm-based approach to musculoskeletal rehabilitation. In: Voight ML, Hoogenboom BJ, Prentice WE, editors. *Musculoskeletal Interventions: Techniques for Therapeutic Exercise*. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2007. p. 81–95.
8. Rothstein JM, Echternach JL. Hypothesis-oriented algorithm for clinicians: a method for evaluation and treatment planning. *Physical Therapy*. 1986; 66:1388–94.
9. Kahney H. *Problem Solving: Current Issues*. Buckingham: Open University Press; 1993.
10. Coutts F. Changes in the musculoskeletal system. In: Atkinson K, Coutts F, Hassenkamp A, editors. *Physiotherapy in Orthopedics*. London: Churchill Livingstone; 1999. p. 19–43.
11. Jones MA. Clinical reasoning in manual therapy. *Physical Therapy*. 1992; 72:875–84.
12. Friedman LM, Furberg CD, DeMets DL. *Fundamentals of Clinical Trials*, 2nd ed. Chicago: Mosby-Year Book; 1985. p. 2, 51, 71.

13. Bloch R. Methodology in clinical back pain trials. *Spine*. 1987; 12:430–2.
14. Maher CG, Herbert RD, Moseley AM, Sherrington C, Elkins M. Critical appraisal of randomized trials, systematic reviews of radomized trials and clinical practice guidelines. In: Boyling JD, Jull GA, editors. *Grieve's Modern Manual Therapy: The Vertebral Column*. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 2004. p. 603–14.
15. Abbott JH. The distinction between randomized clinical trials (RCTs) and preliminary feasibility and pilot studies: what they are and are not. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2014; 44:555–8.
16. Wickstrom G, Bendix T. The "Hawthorne effect:" what did the original Hawthorne studies actually show? *Scandinavian Journal of Work, Environment and Health*. 2000; 26:363–7.
17. Cleland J. Introduction. In: *Orthopedic Clinical Examination: An Evidence-Based Approach for Physical Therapists*. Carlstadt, NJ: Icon Learning Systems, LLC; 2005. p. 2–23.
18. Higgs J, Jones M, editors. *Clinical Reasoning in the Health Professions*, 2nd ed. London: Butterworth-Heinemann; 2000.
19. Rothstein JM, Echternach JL, Riddle DL. The Hypothesis-Oriented Algorithm for Clinicians II (HOAC II): a guide for patient management. *Physical Therapy*. 2003; 83:455–70.
20. Saragiotto BT, Maher CG, Hancock MJ, Koes BW. Subgrouping patients with nonspecific low back pain: hope or hype? *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2017; 47:44–8.
21. Hill JC, Whitehurst DG, Lewis M, Bryan S, Dunn KM, Foster NE, et al. Comparison of stratified primary care management for low back pain with current best practice (STarT Back): a randomised controlled trial. *Lancet*. 2011; 378:1560–71.
22. Annadurai K, Danasekaran R, Mani G. Personalized medicine: a paradigm shift towards promising health care. *Journal of Pharmacy and Bioallied Sciences*. 2016; 8:77–8.
23. Morrissey D. Guidelines and pathways for clinical practice in tendinopathy: their role and development. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2015; 45:819–22.
24. Haskins R, Rivett DA, Osmotherly PG. Clinical prediction rules in the physiotherapy management of low back pain: a systematic review. *Manual Therapy*. 2012; 17:9–21.
25. Haskins R, Osmotherly PG, Rivett DA. Diagnostic clinical prediction rules for specific subtypes of low back pain: a systematic review. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2015; 45:61–76.
26. Avin KG, Hanke TA, Kirk-Sanchez N, McDonough CM, Shubert TE, Hardage J, et al. Management of falls in community-dwelling older adults: clinical guidance statement from the Academy of Geriatric Physical Therapy of the American Physical Therapy Association. *Physical Therapy*. 2015; 95:815–34.
27. Flynn T, Fritz J, Whitman J, Wainner R, Magel J, Rendeiro D, et al. A clinical prediction rule for classifying patients with low back pain who demonstrate short-term improvement with spinal manipulation. *Spine*. 2002; 27:2835–43.
28. McGinn TG, Guyatt GH, Wyer PC, Naylor CD, Stiell IG, Richardson WS. Users' guides to the medical literature: XXII: how to use articles about clinical decision rules. Evidence-Based Medicine Working Group. *JAMA*. 2000; 284:79–84.
29. Litchfield R, Hawkins R, Dillman CJ, et al. Rehabilitation of the overhead athlete. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 1993; 2:433–41.
30. Cyriax J. *Textbook of Orthopaedic Medicine, Diagnosis of Soft Tissue Lesions*, 8th ed. London: Bailliere Tindall; 1982.
31. Cook G, Voight ML. Essentials of functional exercise: a four-step clinical model for therapeutic exercise prescription. In: Prentice WE, Voight ML, editors. *Techniques in Musculoskeletal Rehabilitation*. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2001. p. 387–407.


© Herzlinde Vancura/Dreamstime.com

CHAPTER 9

Manual Modalities

CHAPTER OBJECTIVES

At the completion of this chapter, the reader will be able to:

1. Summarize the various types of manual therapy (MT).
2. Discuss the general and applied concepts of MT.
3. Recognize the role that the different MTs play in the performance of a comprehensive rehabilitation program.
4. Recognize the manifestations of abnormal tissue and develop strategies using MT techniques to treat these abnormalities.
5. Categorize the various effects of MT on the soft tissues.
6. Recognize a variety of MT techniques.

Overview

Touch has always been and continues to be a primary healing modality. The techniques of manual therapy (MT) fall under the umbrella of therapeutic touch. MT techniques traditionally have been used to produce a number of therapeutic alterations in pain and soft tissue extensibility through the application of specific external forces. MT has become such an important component of the intervention for orthopaedic disorders that it is considered as an area of specialization within physical therapy.

Within these areas of specialization, a number of major philosophies have dominated. These include the Cyriax,[2] Mennell,[3] and osteopathic techniques, which originated from physicians, and the Maitland,[4,5] Kaltenborn,[6] and McKenzie[7] approaches. In addition, a number of MT subsets have emerged, including massage, joint mobilizations, soft tissue techniques, proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation (PNF), and myofascial trigger point therapy.

☑ KEY POINT

Several MT approaches or techniques have evolved over the years. By their nature, many of these techniques have not been developed with the same scientific rigor as fields such as anatomy and physiology, and much of their use is based on clinical outcomes, rather than evidence-based proof. However, an absence of evidence does not always mean that there is evidence of absence (of effect), and there is always the risk of rejecting therapeutic approaches that are valid.[1]

At the time of writing, the delegation of many manual techniques is based on the discretion of the supervising physical therapist (PT). There is also the issue of legality, which involves the licensing practice act of the state in which the physical therapist assistant (PTA) practices. In the United States, some states still do not have legal rules and regulations covering the service delivery of PTAs in general; other states have laws that limit the performance of specific PTA-related skills. However, whether or not a PTA is permitted to perform manual techniques, it is important that the PTA understands the concepts behind techniques such as joint mobilization so he or she can better understand the rationale of the PT's intervention program.

☑ KEY POINT

The most effective therapeutic approach occurs when manual techniques are combined with other interventions, such as the use of therapeutic modalities, progressive exercises, and patient education about proper body mechanics, positions, and postures. As with any therapeutic technique, a sufficient level of expertise must be obtained before these techniques are applied to a patient.

Correct Application of Manual Techniques

Despite the number of different approaches and rationales, there is a general consensus that certain criteria are necessary for the proper application of a manual technique. These include the following:

- *Duration, type, and irritability of symptoms.* This information can provide the clinician with guidelines to help determine the intensity of the application of a selected technique (see "Indications for Manual Therapy" later in this chapter). The more irritable a structure, the gentler the technique needs to be.
- *Patient and clinician position.* Correct patient positioning is crucial both to ensure safe body mechanics from the clinician and to help the patient relax. When relaxed, the patient's muscle activity is decreased, reducing the amount of resistance encountered during the technique.
- *Hand placement.* Wherever possible, contact with the patient should be maximized. The hand should conform to the treatment area so the forces are spread over a larger area. A gentle and confident touch inspires confidence from the patient. Accurate hand placement is essential for efficient stabilization and for the precise transmission of force.
- *Specificity.* Specificity refers to the exactitude of the procedure, and is always based on its intent. Whenever possible, the force of a technique should occur at the point where it is needed.
- *The direction of force.* The direction of the force can be either *direct*, which is toward the motion barrier or restriction, or *indirect*, which is away from the motion barrier or restriction. The rationale for a direct technique is easy to understand, but the logic for using an indirect method is more confusing. A good analogy is a stuck drawer that cannot be opened. Often the movement that eventually frees the drawer is an inward motion followed by a pull.
- *Preheating the treatment area.* Preheating the treatment area promotes relaxation, increases blood flow, and enhances the viscoelasticity of the tissues. This can be achieved by exercise or the application of a thermal modality. (See Chapter 10.)
- *Reinforcement of any gains made.* It has been demonstrated that any motion gained by a particular manual technique performed in isolation will be lost within 48 hours if the motions added are not reinforced. Thus, the motion achieved by a manual technique must be enhanced by both the mechanical and the neurophysiological benefits of active movement. These active movements must be as local and precise as possible to the involved segment or myofascial structure.

If the MT to be used is a joint mobilization, the following criteria are important:

- *Knowledge of the resting (open-packed) position of the joint.* The position of the treated joint must be appropriate for the skill of the clinician and the stage of healing. When the patient has an acute condition or the clinician is inexperienced, it is recommended to use the resting, or open-packed position of the joint. (See Chapter 2 and Appendix F.) The resting position, in this case, refers to the position that the injured joint adopts, rather than the documented resting (open-packed) position for a healthy joint (see "Joint Mobilizations" later).
- *Knowledge of the relative shapes of the joint surfaces (concave or convex).* The importance of the convex–concave rule is discussed in the "Joint Mobilizations" section.

☑ KEY POINT

Reassessment is a fundamental part of any intervention. The clinician must be able to gauge how useful a technique has been (changes in pain level, impairments, and functional ability) so that necessary modifications can be made.

> ☑ **KEY POINT**
>
> It is worth remembering that the resting position is easily obtainable in a healthy joint but is harder to obtain in dysfunctional joints due to pain and stiffness. For example, the resting position for the humeroradial joint is elbow extended and forearm supinated, but elbow injuries tend to be held in slight elbow flexion.

Indications for Manual Therapy

MT is generally indicated in the following cases:

- Mild, intermittent musculoskeletal pain that is relieved by rest
- A nonirritable musculoskeletal condition, demonstrated by acute pain that is provoked by motion but that disappears quickly
- Soft tissue tightness and adhesions
- Contractures
- Edema/effusion
- Reported pain that is relieved or provoked by particular motions or positions
- Pain that is altered by changes related to sitting or standing posture

Contraindications to Manual Therapy

Contraindications to MT include those that are absolute and those that are relative. Absolute contraindications include the following:

- Bacterial infection
- Malignancy
- Systemic localized infection
- Recent fracture
- Cellulitis
- Febrile state
- Hematoma
- Acute circulatory condition
- An open wound at the treatment site
- Osteomyelitis
- Advanced diabetes
- Hypersensitivity of the skin
- Inappropriate end feel (spasm, empty, or bony)
- Constant, severe pain
- Extensive radiation of pain
- Pain unrelieved by rest
- Severe irritability (pain that is easily triggered and does not go away within a few hours)

Relative contraindications include the following:

- Joint effusion or inflammation
- Rheumatoid arthritis
- Presence of neurological signs
- Osteoporosis
- Hypermobility
- Pregnancy (if a technique is to be applied to the spine)
- Dizziness
- Steroid or anticoagulant therapy

Massage

Massage has historically been used as a therapeutic treatment to help reduce pain and promote relaxation. Massage is a mechanical modality that produces physiological effects through different types of stroking (**FIGURE 9.1**), kneading (**FIGURE 9.2**), rubbing, tapotement (**FIGURE 9.3**), and vibration (**FIGURE 9.4**):

- *Reflexive effects.* An autonomic nervous system phenomenon produced through stimulation of the sensory receptors in the skin and superficial fascia; causes sedation, relieves tension, and increases blood flow. A recent randomized crossover study investigated the effect of therapeutic massage on the upper trapezius muscles, which are commonly associated with increased muscle tension, and reported that short-duration moderate pressure massage led to a reduction in upper trapezius muscle activity.[8]
- *Pain reduction.* Most likely regulated by both gate control and the release of endogenous opiates. (See Chapter 3.) It also has been hypothesized that massage reduces the excessive release of neurotransmitters in abnormal endplates, which can result in spontaneous electromyographic activity within that part of the muscle and create myofascial trigger points.[9]

FIGURE 9.1 Stroking.

FIGURE 9.2 Kneading.

FIGURE 9.3 Tapotement.

FIGURE 9.4 Vibration.

- *Circulatory effects.* Increases lymphatic and blood flow.
- *Metabolism.* Indirectly affects metabolism due to the increase in lymphatic and blood flow.
- *Mechanical effects.* The various massage techniques all stretch, compress, bend, and twist the connective tissue, and increase range of motion (ROM). For example, a recent systematic review showed that massage therapy is effective in improving shoulder flexion and abduction.[10] There is also some evidence that massage improves the formation and maturation of collagen in the fascia or tendons.
- *Skin.* Increases skin temperature due to the increase in local blood flow.

Indications for massage include the following:

- To decrease pain
- To reduce neuromuscular excitability
- To stimulate circulation
- To restore skin mobility
- To help remove lactic acid and metabolites
- To alleviate muscle cramps
- To increase blood flow
- To increase venous return
- To break adhesions
- To reduce symptoms from myositis, bursitis, fibrositis, or tendinopathy

Contraindications for massage include the following:

- Arteriosclerosis
- Thrombosis
- Embolism
- Severe varicose veins
- Acute phlebitis, cellulitis, or synovitis
- Skin infections
- Malignancies
- Acute inflammatory conditions

One of the advantages of massage is that some of the techniques can be taught to family members or caregivers. For example, one study found that in patients receiving chemotherapy, effleurage hand massages performed by trained volunteers effectively reduced anxiety and pain similar to previously reported results with massages administered by massage therapists.[11]

Specific Massage Techniques

The patient must be draped and well supported in a comfortable and relaxed position. The part of the body being treated is placed in a gravity-eliminated position to assist with the venous flow. In most cases, the massage is initiated in the proximal segments of the upper or lower extremity before moving distally and then returning to the proximal region. Hoffa, Classic, and Swedish massage are traditional massage techniques that use a variety of superficial strokes, including the following:

- *Effleurage.* Produces a reflexive response. Effleurage is typically performed at the beginning and at the end of a massage to allow the patient to relax. It also is used in the management of edema. The massage is begun in the peripheral areas and moves distally to proximally from the extremity toward the heart. At the beginning of the massage, the pressure should be light, using flat hands with fingers slightly bent and thumbs spread apart. In the course of the massage, the pressure can be increased.

- *Petrissage.* Described as a kneading or working stroke that is directed primarily at the muscle system—the muscle being squeezed and rolled under the clinician's hands. Petrissage, applied in a distal to proximal sequence, is used mainly for:
  - Increasing the local blood supply
  - Reducing edema
  - Loosening adhesions
  - Improving lymphatic return
  - Removing metabolic waste
- *Rubbing (friction).* Mainly used in areas of local, deep lying trigger points to produce a strong, hyperemic effect in small surface areas of the muscle. The motion applied is circular to elliptical, or transverse (transverse frictional massage; see details later in this chapter).
- *Tapotement/percussion.* A massage technique that provides stimulation using rapid and alternating movements, such as tapping, hacking, cupping, and slapping, to enhance circulation and stimulate peripheral nerve endings. This type of massage is used for chest PT techniques and the active population.
- *Vibration.* Manual vibration, which is particularly strenuous for the clinician, involves a rapid shaking motion that causes vibration to the treatment area. This type of massage is used primarily for relaxation, but it also can have a stimulating effect.

A general sequence of techniques is typically followed. For example, light effleurage is applied first before advancing to deep effleurage, which is then followed by petrissage, then friction, then tapotement. The session is then concluded with vibration and light effleurage.

As with any passive modality, massage should be used for a short period of time as an adjunct to active interventions. Any of the aforementioned massage techniques can be applied at various times during a treatment session depending on the goals of the intervention. For example, if the goal is to reduce muscle activity, the massage should be applied at the end of the treatment session and the patient should be allowed to relax after the massage, preferably in a darkened room. If, however, the goal is to prepare a muscle for activity, then the massage is performed prior to the activity.

Manual Lymphatic Drainage

According to the theory behind the Vodder and/or Leduc techniques, manual lymphatic drainage (MLD) is a gentle technique that stimulates superficial lymphatics and reroutes lymph toward healthy lymphatic vessels. MLD is designed to clear the healthy quadrant (central areas) and then progress systematically down the involved extremity. MLD may be used in cases where there is high-protein edema, as in postsurgical swelling; for wounds that do not heal because of chronic swelling; and to promote a sympathetic and parasympathetic response in those patients who experience chronic pain. Compression garments are essential between treatments. Contraindications specific to this form of therapy include congestive heart failure, any metastatic or systemic malignant condition, acute inflammation, or in the presence of a known thrombosis. Precautions include thyroid dysfunction, diabetes, chronic inflammation, bronchial asthma, hypotension, and edema following carcinoma treatment or cardiac decompensation.

Joint Mobilizations

The American Physical Therapy Association (APTA) *Guide to Physical Therapist Practice* defines mobilization/manipulation as "a manual therapy technique that comprises a continuum of skilled passive movements to joints and/or related soft tissues that are applied at varying amplitudes and speeds, including a small amplitude, high velocity therapeutic movement."[12] Although it would appear that the terms *mobilization* and *manipulation* are used interchangeably, the term *mobilization* is used in this text when describing a nonthrust manual technique. The APTA has made clear its stance on PTAs performing joint mobilization in its very name—"Procedural Interventions Exclusively Performed by Physical Therapists" (HOD P06-00-30-36). In contrast, the position of the Commission on Accreditation in Physical Therapy Education (CAPTE) is more ambivalent, and has stated that it is "not inappropriate for PTA education programs to train PTAs to perform soft tissue mobilization, or to manually assist the PT in the delivery of peripheral joint mobilization procedures (i.e., assist with patient positioning, stabilization, or grade I-II movements.)" Muddying the waters further is that CAPTE, based on input from the Federation of State Boards of Physical Therapy (FSBPT) also has stated that it believes it is appropriate for PTA educational programs to include curricular content related to the rationale for joint mobilization procedures that are commonly included in the PT's plan of care, in order to adequately monitor patient responses to these treatment procedures. It also has stated that grade I and II peripheral joint mobilization techniques do not necessarily require the level of expertise of a PT because these techniques do not require the application of manual pressure or force at the end range of a tissue restriction that may produce an adverse patient response. One area that all seem to agree on is that *spinal* mobilizations can be performed only by a PT. What follows is a description of the concepts behind peripheral joint mobilization and how they relate to the relevant osteokinematics and arthrokinematics. (See Chapter 2.) The various techniques of peripheral joint mobilization are described in the appropriate chapters.

☑ KEY POINT

Some confusion exists regarding the terms *joint mobility* and *joint mobilization*. Joint mobility refers to the amount of motion occurring at joint surfaces. The assessment of joint mobility is not within the current scope of PTA practice. Joint mobilization is a treatment modality that uses manual passive techniques to enhance arthrokinematic motion (spin, slide, or roll; see Chapter 2). These techniques may or may not be within the scope of the PTA, depending on the state in which he or she practices.

Joint mobilization techniques include a broad array, from the general passive motions performed in the physiological cardinal planes at any point in the joint range to the semispecific and specific accessory (arthrokinematic) joint glides (see Chapter 2), or joint distractions, initiated from the resting position of the joint. Accessory or arthrokinematic motions include rolling, spinning, and gliding (see Chapter 2) and are not under voluntary control. The direction of the arthrokinematic motions depends on the anatomic structure of the joint surfaces, particularly in terms of convexity and concavity. If the joint surface is convex relative to the other surface, the joint glide (arthrokinematic) occurs in the direction opposite to the osteokinematic movement (angular motion). (See Chapter 2.) If, on the other hand, the joint surface is concave, the joint glide occurs in the same direction as the osteokinematic movement. If the joint glide is restricted, the axis of movement moves in the same direction as the osteokinematic motion, which results in abnormal tissue stresses and possible tissue damage.

☑ KEY POINT

The concave–convex rule is as follows:

- If the joint surface is convex relative to the other surface, the arthrokinematic glide occurs in the opposite direction to the osteokinematic movement.
- If the joint surface is concave, the arthrokinematic glide occurs in the same direction as the osteokinematic movement.

Joint mobilization techniques form the cornerstone of most rehabilitative programs and involve low- to high-velocity passive movements within or at the limit of joint ROM, to restore any loss of accessory joint motion as the consequence of joint injury.

☑ KEY POINT

The techniques of joint mobilization are used to improve joint mobility or to decrease joint pain by restoring accessory movements to the joint and thus allowing full, nonrestricted, pain-free ROM. Additional benefits attributed to joint mobilizations include reducing muscle guarding, lengthening the tissue around a joint, neuromuscular influences on muscle tone, and increased proprioceptive awareness.[13–16]

☑ KEY POINT

The primary indications for joint mobilizations are as follows:

- Limited passive ROM.
- An abnormal, but appropriate, end feel. (See Chapter 6.) The end feel can indicate to the clinician the cause of the motion restriction.
- Limited joint accessory motion, as determined by joint mobility testing.
- Tissue texture abnormality in the area of dysfunction.
- Pain.
- If the symptoms are aggravated by activity but relieved by rest.

Before applying a joint mobilization technique, it is important to consider the stage of healing, the direction of force, and the magnitude of force. The terms *velocity*, *oscillation*, and *amplitude of movement* describe the rate of motion and degree of vigor used during any of the grades of mobilization. If a joint distraction technique is to be used, the joint is usually positioned in the resting or open-packed position (refer to **TABLE 9.1**). The joint position for a joint glide technique can vary and an experienced and skilled clinician may use start positions other than the open-packed position in patients with non-acute conditions.

Joint mobilizations are applied in a direction that is either parallel or perpendicular to the treatment plane to restore the physiological articular relationship within a joint and to decrease pain. To apply a

TABLE 9.1 Shape, Resting Position, and Treatment Planes of the Joints

Joint	Convex Surface	Concave Surface	Resting Position	Treatment Plane
Sternoclavicular	Clavicle*	Sternum*	Arm resting by side	Parallel to joint
Acromioclavicular	Clavicle	Acromion	Arm resting by side	Parallel to joint
Glenohumeral	Humerus	Glenoid	55 degrees of abduction, 30 degrees of horizontal adduction	In scapular plane
Humeroradial	Humerus	Radius	Elbow extended, forearm supinated	Perpendicular to long axis of radius
Humeroulnar	Humerus	Ulna	70 degrees of elbow flexion, 10 degrees of forearm supination	45 degrees to long axis of ulna
Radioulnar (proximal)	Radius	Ulna	70 degrees of elbow flexion, 35 degrees of forearm supination	Parallel to long axis of ulna
Radioulnar (distal)	Ulna	Radius	Supinated 10 degrees	Parallel to long axis of radius
Radiocarpal	Proximal carpal bones	Radius	Line through radius and third metacarpal	Perpendicular to long axis of radius
Metacarpophalangeal	Metacarpal	Proximal phalanx	Slight flexion	Parallel to joint
Interphalangeal	Proximal phalanx	Distal phalanx	Slight flexion	Parallel to joint
Hip	Femur	Acetabulum	Hip flexed 30 degrees, abducted 30 degrees, slight external rotation	Varies according to goal
Tibiofemoral	Femur	Tibia	Flexed 25 degrees	On surface of tibial plateau
Patellofemoral	Patella	Femur	Knee in full extension	Along femoral groove
Talocrural	Talus	Mortise	Plantarflexed 10 degrees	In the mortise in anterior/posterior direction

(continues)

TABLE 9.1 Shape, Resting Position, and Treatment Planes of the Joints *(continued)*

Joint	Convex Surface	Concave Surface	Resting Position	Treatment Plane
Subtalar	Calcaneus	Talus	Subtalar neutral between inversion and eversion	In talus, parallel to foot surface
Intertarsal	Proximal articulating surface	Distal articulating surface	Foot relaxed	Parallel to joint
Metatarsophalangeal	Tarsal bone	Proximal phalanx	Slight extension	Parallel to joint
Interphalangeal	Proximal phalanx	Distal phalanx	Slight flexion	Parallel to joint

*In the sternoclavicular joint, the clavicle surface is convex in a superior/inferior direction and concave in an anterior/posterior direction.
Data from Prentice WE: Joint mobilization and traction, in Prentice WE (ed): *Therapeutic Modalities for Allied Health Professionals*. New York, McGraw-Hill, 1998, pp. 443–78.

joint mobilization, a number of components can be utilized, depending on the method employed:

- *Direct method.* Engagement is made against a barrier in several planes.
- *Indirect method.* Maigne[17] postulated the concept of painless and opposite motion, where disengagement from the barrier occurs, and a balance of ligamentous tension is sought. Traction, which can be used by itself or together with other mobilization techniques, is an example of this method.
- *Combined method.* Disengagement is followed by a direct retracement of the motion.

Joint Mobilization Approaches

Several schools of thought have been put forward to address the concept of increasing joint ROM.

Kaltenborn

Kaltenborn[6] introduced the Nordic program of manual therapy, which utilizes Cyriax's[2] method for evaluation, and the specific osteopathic techniques of Mennell[3] for intervention. Further influence from Stoddard,[18] an osteopath, cemented the foundations of the Nordic system of manual therapy. Evjenth,[19] who joined Kaltenborn's group, brought a greater emphasis on muscle stretching, strengthening, and coordination training. Kaltenborn's techniques use a combination of traction and mobilization to reduce pain and mobilize hypomobile joints. Three grades of traction are defined (**FIGURE 9.5**):

- *Grade I piccolo (loosen).* This involves a distraction force that neutralizes pressure in the joint without producing any actual separation of the joint surfaces. This grade of distraction is used to reduce the compressive forces on the articular surfaces and is used both in the initial intervention session to relieve pain and to minimize compressive joint forces, and with all of the mobilization grades. Grade I techniques are used in the inflammatory stage of healing.
- *Grade II (take up the slack).* This grade of distraction separates the articulating surfaces and eliminates the play in the joint capsule.
- *Grade III (stretch).* This grade of distraction actually stretches the joint capsule and the soft tissues

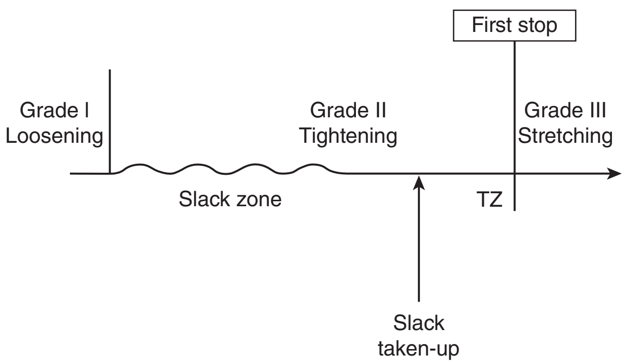


FIGURE 9.5 Kaltenborn grades.

surrounding the joint to increase mobility. Grade III traction is used in conjunction with mobilization glides according to the convex–concave rules to treat joint hypomobility. These techniques are typically used during the remodeling stage of healing.

> ☑ **KEY POINT**
>
> Kaltenborn's piccolo and slack movements are generally used by the PT in the treatment of joint problems in which the predominant feature is pain; stretch is used to improve ROM in a joint condition whose predominant feature is stiffness.

Australian Techniques

The Australian approach was introduced primarily by Maitland.[5] Under this system, ROM is defined as the available range, not the full range, and is usually in one direction only. Each joint has an anatomic limit, which is determined by the configuration of the joint surfaces and the surrounding soft tissues (**FIGURE 9.6**). The point of limitation is that point in the range that is short of the anatomic limit and is reduced by either pain or tissue resistance. Maitland advocated five grades of joint mobilization, or oscillations, each of which falls within the available ROM that exists at the joint—a point somewhere between the beginning point and the anatomic limit. Although the relationship that exists between the five grades in terms of their positions within the ROM is always constant, the point of limitation shifts further to the left as the severity of the motion limitation increases. Grades I through IV are often performed as oscillatory-type movements during treatment. Grade I occurs at the beginning of range, grade II occurs in midrange, grade III is a large-amplitude movement toward the end of range, and grade IV is a small-amplitude movement at the end of range.

> ☑ **KEY POINT**
>
> Many PTs use a combination of Kaltenborn's grade III traction with Maitland's grade IV oscillations to decrease pain and increase joint mobility.

Maitland's grades I and II are used solely for pain relief and have no direct mechanical effect on the restricting barrier, although they do have a hydrodynamic effect. Mobilization-induced analgesia has been demonstrated in a number of studies in humans[20–22] and is characterized by a rapid onset and a distinct influence on mechanical nociception. Grade I and II joint mobilizations theoretically reduce pain by improving joint lubrication and circulation in tissues related to the joint. Rhythmic joint oscillations also possibly activate articular and skin mechanoreceptors that play a role in pain reduction.[13–16] Grades III and IV have been further subdivided into III+ (+ +) and IV+ (+ +), indicating that once the end of the range has been reached, a further stretch to impart a mechanical force to the movement restriction is given. Grades III and IV (or at least III+ and IV+) do stretch the barrier and have a mechanical, as well as a neurophysiological, effect.

Grade III and IV joint distractions and stretching mobilizations may, in addition to the above-stated effects, activate inhibitory joint and muscle spindle receptors, which aid in reducing restriction to movement.[23]

Clinical Application

Once the PT has determined the deficient direction of joint motion, the direction of the joint glide mobilization to be used is determined by the concave–convex rule. The clinician then decides which side of the joint is to be stabilized and which side is to be mobilized. For example, if extension of the tibiofemoral joint is restricted, either the femur (convex) can be stabilized,

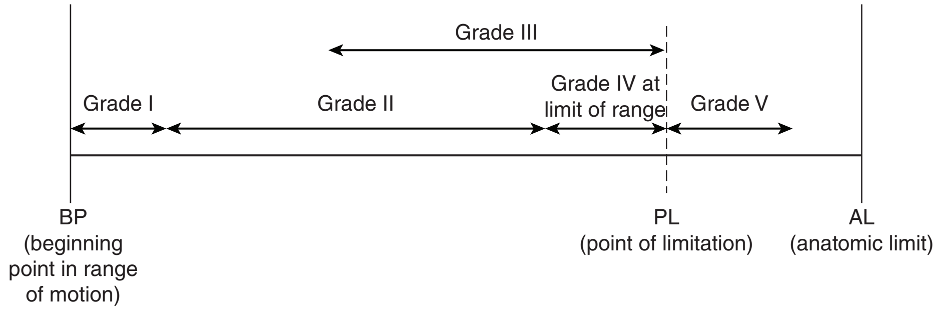


FIGURE 9.6 Maitland grades.

Dutton M: *Orthopaedic Examination, Evaluation and Intervention*. New York, McGraw-Hill, 2016.

and the tibia (concave) glided anteriorly, or the tibia can be stabilized, and the femur glided posteriorly. Once the mobilization techniques are completed, the patient should be instructed on specific active motions that will reinforce the gains in motion that have been achieved. Using the above example, the patient is prescribed a series of active ROM exercises that enhance knee extension. A passive stretch can be applied at the end of the available ROM by positioning the patient in supine with the leg extended and placing a pillow under the patient's heel. To further enhance the stretch the patient can perform a series of quad sets in this position.

Soft Tissue Mobilization Techniques

Soft tissue mobilization (STM) techniques, a type of deep massage, are directed toward the muscles and fascia throughout the body to stretch tissues, break adhesions, increase blood flow, and enhance relaxation. Physical therapy practice guidelines indicate the use of STM to improve pain and function for musculoskeletal impairments.[12] The choice of technique is largely based on treatment goals. What follows is a description of some of the commonly used STM techniques.

Transverse Friction Massage

Cyriax devised the techniques of transverse friction massage (TFM), which incorporate the application of repeated cross-grain massage to muscle, tendons, tendon sheaths, and ligaments. TFM has long been used in physical therapy to increase the mobility and extensibility of individual musculoskeletal tissues, such as muscles, tendons, and ligaments, and to help prevent and treat inflammatory scar tissue.[2,24–29]

☑ KEY POINT

TFM is indicated for subacute muscle, ligament, or tendon injuries; chronically inflamed bursae; and adhesions in ligament or muscle, or between tissues. TFM also can be applied before performing a manipulation or a forceful stretch, to desensitize and soften the tissues.

TFM is contraindicated for acute inflammation, hematomas, debilitated or open skin, and peripheral nerves, and in patients who have diminished sensation in the area.

TFM is purported to have the following therapeutic effects:

- *Traumatic hyperemia.*[2] According to Cyriax, longitudinal friction to an area increases the flow of blood and lymph, which, in turn, removes the chemical irritant by-products of inflammation. In addition, the increased blood flow reduces venous congestion, thereby decreasing edema and hydrostatic pressure on pain-sensitive structures.
- *Pain relief.* The application of TFM stimulates type I and II mechanoreceptors, producing presynaptic anesthesia. This presynaptic anesthesia is based on the gate theory of pain control. (See Chapter 3.) However, if the frictions are too vigorous, the nociceptor stimulation overrides the effect of the mechanoreceptors, causing the pain to increase. Occasionally, the patient may feel an exacerbation of symptoms following the first two or three sessions of the massage, especially in the case of a chronically inflamed bursa.[30] In these cases, it is important to forewarn the patient to apply ice at home.
- *Decreasing scar tissue.* The transverse nature of the friction assists with the orientation of the collagen in the appropriate lines of stress and helps produce stimulation of the new collagen. Given the stages of healing for soft tissue, light TFM should be applied only in the early phases of a subacute lesion, so as not to damage the granulation tissue. These gentle movements theoretically serve to minimize cross-linking and thereby enhance the extensibility of any new tissue. Following a ligament sprain, Cyriax recommends immediate use of TFM to prevent adhesion formation between the tissue and its neighbors, by moving the ligamentous tissue over the underlying bone.[2]

The application of the correct amount of tension to a healing structure is very important. The tissue undergoing TFM should, whenever possible, be positioned in a moderate but not painful stretch. The exception to this rule is when applying TFM to a muscle belly, which is usually positioned in its relaxed position. Lubricant is not typically used with the application of TFM; however, ultrasound at the appropriate intensity can be applied to a tissue before TFM.

Using a reinforced finger (i.e., middle finger placed over the index finger) or thumb, and beginning with light pressure, the clinician moves the skin back and forth over the site of the identified lesion, in a direction perpendicular to the normal orientation of its fibers. It is important that the patient's skin move with the clinician's finger to prevent blistering.

> ☑ **KEY POINT**
>
> The intensity of the TFM application is based on the stage of healing, and any pain induced by TFM should be kept within the patient's tolerance. Light pressure should be used in the early stages, before gradually building up the pressure to allow for accommodation.

The amplitude of the massage should be sufficient to cover all of the affected tissue, and the rate should be at two to three cycles per second, applied in a rhythmic manner.

The duration of the friction massage is usually determined when desensitization is reported by the patient (normally within 3 to 5 minutes). If desensitization does not occur within 3 to 5 minutes, some other form of intervention should be attempted. If the condition is chronic (in the remodeling stage of healing), the technique is continued for a further 5 minutes after the desensitization. This is done in an effort to enhance the mechanical effect on the cross-links and adhesions. Following the application of TFM, the involved tissue is either actively exercised or passively stretched, being careful not to cause pain.

The most common use of TFM is for tendinopathy. For example, TFM is used as an adjunct treatment for supraspinatus tendinopathy (see Chapter 20), tennis or golfer's elbow (see Chapter 21), and patella tendinopathy. (See Chapter 24.) Most conditions amenable to TFM should resolve in 6 to 10 sessions over 2 to 8 weeks. If there is no sign of improvement after three treatment sessions, some other form of intervention should be tried.

> ☑ **KEY POINT**
>
> Because of their simplicity, TFM techniques are often taught to patients as part of their home exercise program.

Augmented Soft Tissue Mobilization

Augmented soft tissue mobilization (ASTM) or instrument assisted STM (IASTM) is a form of deep massage that uses specially designed handheld devices to assist the clinician in the mobilization of disorganized scar tissue in and around muscles, tendons, and myofascial planes. ASTM originated from and expanded on the concepts of TFM.[31] The instruments or tools used for ASTM are solid, with angled edges, which are guided with the assistance of a lubricant, such as cocoa butter. They can be constructed out of wood, plastic, or metal. Using the appropriate tool, longitudinal strokes are applied along the skin parallel to the fiber alignment, in a stroking motion, to mobilize the underlying soft tissues. As the tool moves over an area with an underlying fibrotic lesion, a change in texture is palpable.

The initial strokes are used for screening purposes and are initially smooth and flowing before becoming shorter and more concentrated to increase the pressure per unit area over the fibrotic area. The pressure exerted needs to be firm enough to locate the fibrosis and cause microtrauma, but not so hard that macrotrauma occurs. The stroking motion is sustained for approximately 5 minutes. Usually, upon completion of the ASTM, there is immediate erythema and the potential for some transient ecchymosis. Therefore the clinician must modulate the pressure of the stroke application to the patient's tolerance and minimize posttreatment ecchymosis. The patient is counseled to expect and tolerate some discomfort, but to report pain associated with uncontrolled tensing or muscle guarding. The microvascular trauma and capillary hemorrhage induce a localized inflammatory response and stimulate the body's healing cascade and immune-reparative system.[32] On occasion, the clinician can apply simultaneous STM as the patient actively moves to enhance the stretching.

Following an application of ASTM, the tissue undergoes a stretching, strengthening, and functional therapeutic exercise program to maintain flexibility and reestablish muscular balance around the treatment area, as well as to influence the structural alignment of the remodeling collagen fibers and soft tissues. Subsequently, cryotherapy is applied to the treated area for approximately 5 to 10 minutes, to limit any posttreatment soreness.

Myofascial Release

Myofasical release (MFR) is a series of techniques designed to release fascial restrictions and is used for the treatment of soft tissue dysfunction. The advance of a holistic and comprehensive approach for the evaluation and treatment of the myofascial system is credited to John Barnes, who was strongly influenced by the teachings of Mennell[33] and Upledger.[34]

According to Barnes, the collagen provides strength to the fascia, the elastin gives it its elastic

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> Fascia is a tough connective tissue, composed of collagen, elastin, and a viscous gel, that exists in the body in the form of a continuous three-dimensional web of connective tissue, organized along the lines of tension imposed on the body.[35] (See Chapter 2.)

properties, and the gel functions to absorb the compressive forces of movement.

MFR is based on the principle that trauma or structural abnormalities may create inappropriate fascial strain, because of an inability of the fascia to absorb or distribute the forces.[35] These strains to the fascia can result in a gradual tightening of the fascia, causing the body to lose its physiological adaptive capacity.[35] Over time, the fascial restrictions begin to pull the body out of its three-dimensional alignment, causing biomechanically inefficient movement and posture.[35] In addition, because of the association of fascia at the cellular level, it is conjectured that trauma to or malfunction of the fascia can lead to poor cellular efficiency, disease, and pain throughout the body.[35,36] Three theoretical models for the manifestation of myofascial dysfunction are contraction, contracture, and cohesion–congestion (**TABLE 9.2**).

Thus, the goal of MFR techniques is to use a gentle, sustained pressure to the fascia in order to release fascial restrictions, and thereby restore normal pain-free function.[36] The application of MFR relies entirely on the feedback received from the patient's tissues, with the clinician interpreting and responding to the feedback, so a great deal of practice is required. This rhythm, called the craniosacral rhythm (based on the Upledger concept) is theorized to guide the clinician as to the direction, force, and duration of the technique.

It is not unusual for a patient to experience soft tissue soreness following MFR techniques. This is thought to result from the subsequent postural and alignment changes, or from the techniques themselves.

Myofascial Stroking

The soft tissue techniques used in MFR are alleged to break up cross-restrictions of the collagen of the fascia. Three of the more commonly used techniques involve stroking maneuvers:[36]

- *J stroke*. This technique is used to increase skin mobility. The heel of the hand applies counterpressure, while a stroke in the shape of the letter J is applied using two or three fingers in the direction of the restriction, which creates a degree of torque at the end of the stroke.
- *Vertical stroke*. The purpose of vertical stroking is to open up the length of vertically oriented superficial fascia (**FIGURE 9.7**). As in the J stroke, one hand applies counterpressure while the stroking is performed with the other hand.
- *Transverse stroke*. The transverse stroke, as its name suggests, is applied in a transverse direction to the body. Force is applied down into the muscle with the fingertips of both hands, and the force is applied slowly and perpendicular to the muscle fibers.
- *Cross-hands*. The cross-hands technique is used to release the deep fascial tissues. The crossed hands are placed over the site of restriction. The elastic component of the fascia is then stretched to the

TABLE 9.2 Theoretical Models for the Manifestation of Myofascial Disorders

Model	Manifestation	End Feel
Contraction	Muscle hypertonicity or spasm	Reactive, firm, and painful end feel
Contracture	Inert or noncontractile tissues that have undergone fibrotic alteration	Abrupt, firm, stiff, or hard end feel
Cohesion–congestion	Fluidochemical changes in microcellular transport systems, resulting in impaired lymphatic flow, vascular stasis, or ischemia	Boggy, stiff, or reactive end feel

Data from Ellis JJ, Johnson GS: Myofascial considerations in somatic dysfunction of the thorax, in Flynn TW (ed): *The Thoracic Spine and Rib Cage: Musculoskeletal Evaluation and Treatment*. Boston, Butterworth-Heinemann, 1996, pp. 211–62.

FIGURE 9.7 Myofascial stroking.

point of the barrier. At this point, the clinician maintains consistent gentle pressure at the barrier for approximately 90 to 120 seconds. Once the release is felt, the clinician reduces the pressure.

☑ KEY POINT

It is important to remember that the claimed benefits and effectiveness of MFR techniques are largely anecdotal, because at the time of writing there is no scientific experimental research to validate these claims.[37]

Muscle Energy

There are two primary forms of muscle energy techniques. The first muscle energy technique (MET) was devised by osteopaths in the 1940s and 1950s. Proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation (PNF) was designed prior to the osteopathic techniques and, although there are similarities between the two techniques, they are different in certain aspects. For example, whereas MET typically involves only isometric contractions, PNF can include both concentric and isotonic contractions.

Proprioceptive Neuromuscular Facilitation

According to PNF doctrine, muscles function as flexors, extensors, rotators, and side benders of joints. Combinations of these components work together to produce diagonals of movement, of which there are two for each major body part: the head, neck, and upper trunk; the lower trunk; the upper extremities (**TABLE 9.3** and **FIGURE 9.8** through **FIGURE 9.15**); and the lower extremities (**TABLE 9.4** and **FIGURE 9.16** through **FIGURE 9.19**). Normal coordinated motions are diagonal with spiral components. The various terms and techniques used in PNF are outlined in Appendix E. PNF techniques can be used to develop muscular strength and endurance; facilitate stability, mobility, neuromuscular control, and coordinated movements;

TABLE 9.3 PNF Patterns for the Upper Extremities

Joint	D1 Flexion	D1 Extension	D2 Flexion	D2 Extension
Scapulothoracic	Upward rotation, abduction (protraction), anterior elevation	Downward rotation, adduction (retraction), posterior depression	Upward rotation, adduction, posterior elevation	Downward rotation, abduction, anterior depression
Glenohumeral	External rotation, adduction, flexion	Internal rotation, abduction, extension	External rotation, abduction, flexion	Internal rotation, adduction, extension
Elbow	Flexion	Extension	Flexion	Extension
Radioulnar	Supination	Pronation	Supination	Pronation
Wrist	Flexion, radial deviation	Extension, ulnar deviation	Extension, radial deviation	Flexion, ulnar deviation
Fingers	Flexion, adduction to the radial side	Extension, abduction to the ulnar side	Extension, abduction to the radial side	Flexion, adduction to the ulnar side
Thumb	Flexion, abduction	Extension, abduction	Extension, adduction	Flexion, abduction

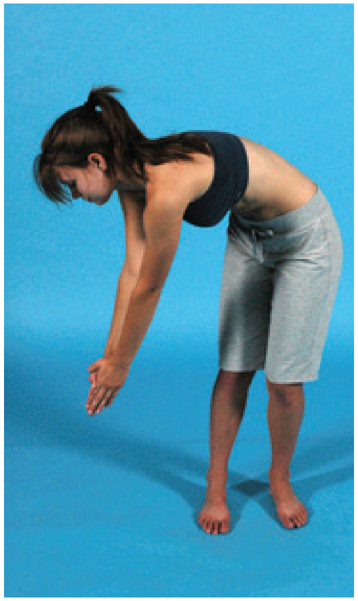


FIGURE 9.8 PNF pattern - Flexion with rotation to the right.

FIGURE 9.9 PNF pattern - Extension with rotation to the left.

FIGURE 9.10 PNF pattern - Flexion with rotation to the left.

FIGURE 9.11 PNF pattern - Extension with rotation to the right.

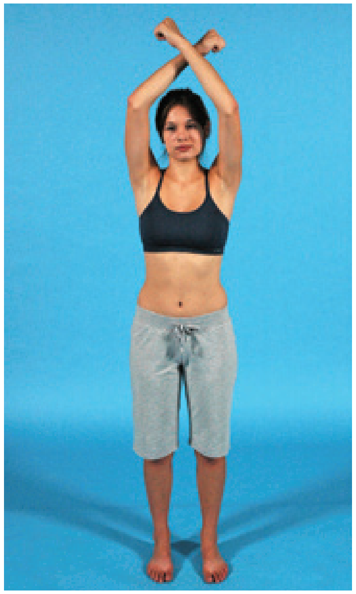


FIGURE 9.12 PNF pattern - Flexion-adduction-external rotation (D1 flex).

FIGURE 9.13 PNF pattern - Extension-abduction-internal rotation (D1 ext).

FIGURE 9.14 PNF pattern - Flexion-abduction-external rotation (D2 flex).

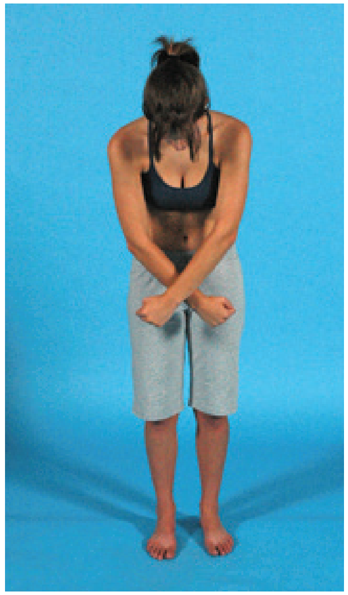


FIGURE 9.15 PPNF pattern - Extension-adduction-internal rotation (D2 ext).

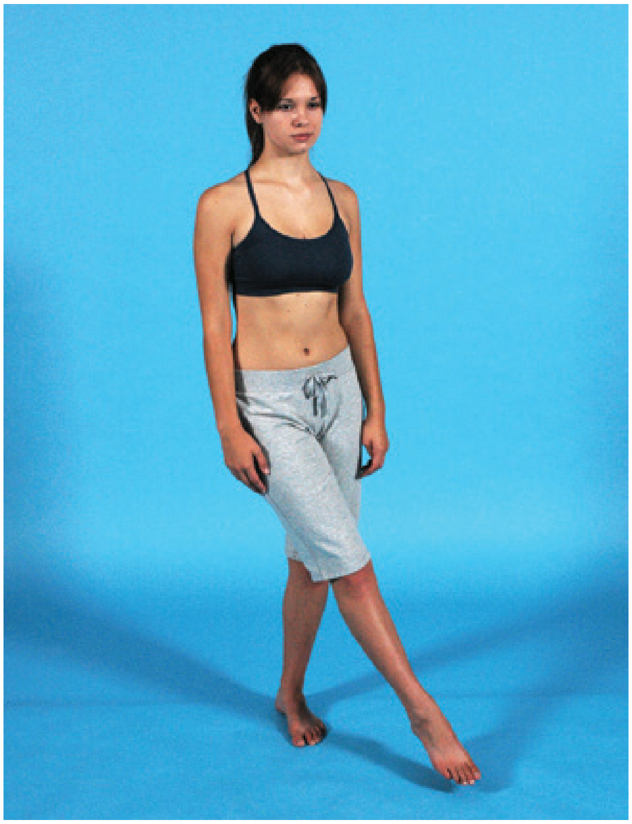


FIGURE 9.16 PNF pattern - Flexion-adduction-external rotation (D1 flex).

FIGURE 9.17 PNF pattern - Extension-abduction-internal rotation (D1 ext).

FIGURE 9.18 PNF pattern - Flexion-abduction-external rotation (D2 flex).

FIGURE 9.19 PNF pattern - Extension-adduction-internal rotation (D2 ext).

TABLE 9.4 PNF Patterns for the Lower Extremities

Joint	D1 Flexion	D1 Extension	D2 Flexion	D2 Extension
Hip	External rotation, adduction, flexion	Internal rotation, abduction, extension	Internal rotation, abduction, flexion	External rotation, adduction, extension
Knee	Flexion or extension	Extension or flexion	Flexion or extension	Extension or flexion
Ankle	Dorsiflexion	Plantarflexion	Dorsiflexion	Plantarflexion
Subtalar	Inversion	Eversion	Eversion	Inversion
Toes	Extension, abduction to the tibial side	Flexion, adduction to the fibular side	Extension, abduction to the fibular side	Flexion, adduction to the tibial side

and lay a foundation for the restoration of function.[38] Muscle groups are classified as agonists, antagonists, neutralizers, supporters, and fixators; muscle contractions are classified as dynamic (concentric and eccentric) or static (isometric). Chapter 12 of this text describes the use of PNF stretching techniques—specifically contract-relax and hold-relax techniques or other variations—to increase flexibility. Chapter 13 describes the PNF techniques that are used to improve muscle performance.

☑ KEY POINT

The intent of PNF is to restore the muscles that surround a joint to their normal neurophysiological state, through either stretching or strengthening the agonist and antagonist. The PNF techniques used are dependent on the application of sensory cues—specifically proprioceptive, cutaneous, visual, and auditory stimuli—to elicit or augment motor responses.[38]

The clinician's position must allow easy access to the structures involved while maintaining proper body mechanics. The clinician positions the bone or joint so that the muscle group to be used is at its resting length. The patient is then given specific instructions about the direction in which to move, the intensity of the contraction, and the duration of the contraction.[39–42] The amounts of force and counterforce are determined by the length and strength of the muscle group involved, as well as by the patient's symptoms.[39] The effort of the patient must be matched by the clinician's force, thus producing an isometric contraction by allowing no movement to occur. Alternatively, the clinician's force may overcome the patient's effort, thus moving the area or joint in the direction opposite to that in which the patient is attempting to move it, thereby using a concentric or isolytic contraction.[40]

Muscle Energy

MET is typically used to treat adaptively shortened musculature or joint dysfunctions of the spine or the extremities. The techniques involve both short- or long lever applications depending on which body part is being treated. Similar to PNF techniques, the joint or muscle is taken to the restrictive barrier of motion. Once positioned at the restrictive barrier, the patient is asked to perform a contraction, the force of which is equally met by the clinician so that the contraction produced is isometric and no motion of the joint occurs. The contraction is held for 3 to 5 seconds after which the patient relaxes the contraction. The clinician then "takes up the slack" by repositioning the joint or muscle farther toward the direction of the restrictive barrier. The isometric contraction is then repeated for several cycles before the patient's progress is reassessed. MET is thought to work by the process of postisometric relaxation, whereby the new motion is gained during the refractory period of the muscle contraction.

Myofascial Trigger Point Therapy

Myofascial pain syndromes are closely associated with tender areas that have come to be known as myofascial trigger points (MTrPs). Dysfunctional joints also are related to trigger points and tender attachment points.

> ☑ **KEY POINT**
>
> The term *myofascial trigger point* is a bit of a misnomer because trigger points also can be cutaneous, ligamentous, periosteal, and fascial.

The primary goals of MTrP therapy are to relieve pain and adaptive shortening of the involved muscles, improve joint motion, improve circulation, and eliminate perpetuating factors. When treating a patient for a particular muscle syndrome, it is important to explain the function of the involved muscle and to describe or demonstrate a few of the activities or postures that might overstress it, so that the patient can avoid such activities or postures. Ischemic compression is advocated for myofascial trigger points and is achieved by sustaining direct pressure over a trigger point, using the thumb to apply pressure. The procedure is repeated three times on each trigger point.

> ☑ **KEY POINT**
>
> To facilitate self-treatment for inaccessible regions such as the rhomboid muscles, the patient can lie on a tennis ball or use the handle of a cane as substitutes for direct manual compression.

Stretch and Spray or Stretch and Ice

The patient is placed in a position of maximum comfort to enhance muscle relaxation. The part of the body affected is then positioned so that a mild stretch is exerted specifically on the taut band. Parallel sweeps of a vapocoolant spray or ice are applied unidirectionally. The spray is held approximately 18 inches (46 centimeters) away from the skin to allow for sufficient cooling. One or two sweeps of coolant are sprayed over the area of the involved muscle to reduce any pain. Then, while one of the clinician's hands anchors the base of the muscle, the other stretches the muscle to its full length. As the muscle is passively stretched, successive parallel sweeps of the spray are applied over the skin from the MTrP to the area of referred pain, covering as much of the referred pain pattern as possible (**FIGURE 9.20**). After each application of the spray-and-stretch technique, the muscle is selectively moved through as full a ROM as possible. Intense cold stimulates cold receptors in the skin, which tends to inhibit pain. This technique is supposed to help block reflex spasm and pain, allowing for a gradual passive stretch of the muscle, which decreases muscle tension. Several treatments may be needed to eliminate the pain syndrome, and results should be seen after four to six treatments. It is important to remember that vapor cooling sprays are dangerous if inhaled, are inflammable, and should not be used near the eyes and face or on large areas of damaged skin, puncture wounds, or other wounds. If vaporized coolants are inappropriate or not available, ice may be used in their place, taking care to prevent chilling of the underlying muscles, which is less likely with the use of vaporized coolants.

FIGURE 9. 20 Stretch-and-spray technique.

Neurodynamic Mobilizations

Neurodynamics is the study of the physiology and mechanics of the nervous system. The viscoelasticity of nervous tissue, a form of connective tissue, allows for the transfer of mechanical stresses throughout the nervous system during trunk or limb movements. The efficacy of this mechanism partially depends on the capacity of the loose connective tissue around the nerve (adventitia, conjunctiva nervorum, and perineurium) to permit traction forces to be distributed over the whole length of the nerve. If this distribution of forces is compromised, an unfavorable rise in traction forces can occur at specific sites along the length of the nerve. Theoretically, any increase in dural tension may be felt throughout the neuromeningeal system and could, potentially, affect the ROM available to the trunk and to an extremity. Additionally, a decrease in the mobility of a nerve along its entire length may make the nerve more vulnerable to additional injuries during repetitive movements.[43,44] Neurodynamic tension tests are designed to apply a controlled sequential and progressive mechanical and compressive stress to the dura and other neurological tissues to assess if any reported extremity pain is being caused by tension of the spinal nerve roots and/or peripheral nerves. If a tension test is positive, neurodynamic treatment techniques are used to mobilize the structures that surround the nervous system, or to mobilize the nervous system itself.[45]

The examination of neural adhesions is by no means an exact science, but it is based on sound anatomic theory. Knowledge of the course of each of the peripheral nerves is thus essential in order to put a sequential and adequate tension through each of them. (See Chapter 3.) A variety of assessment and treatment techniques have been introduced over the years including the following:[46]

- *Tension technique*. Tensioning techniques involve moving one or more joints to elongate the nerve bed, forcing the nervous system to slide relative to its surrounding structures. Biomechanical studies have demonstrated that a joint movement that elongates the nerve bed increases strain within the nervous system and that cumulative increases in stress occur if several of these joint movements are combined.[47–49]
- *Slide technique*. Sliding techniques simultaneously move two joints in such a manner that the movement in one joint counterbalances the increase in nerve strain caused by another movement.

These two techniques are employed in a variety of tests for the upper and lower extremities that are now used commonly (see **TABLE 9.5**). The slump test assesses the entire nervous system, while the straight leg raise (SLR) and prone knee bending tests evaluate the nerves of the lower extremity and the median, radial, and ulnar nerve upper limb neurodynamic tests are designed to assess the three major nerves of the upper extremity. The movements of each of these tests are based on the anatomic course of the various nerves and are designed to assess the interplay between the mechanics and physiology of the individual nerves. It is important to remember that a positive test requires reproduction of the patient's pain and symptoms with the movement sequence and alteration of the symptoms by one of the sensitization maneuvers.

The treatment techniques are variations of the testing methods. For example, in the cervical spine, the sequence of neurodynamic mobilizations begins with shoulder depression, with the neck in neutral and the symptomatic arm by the side, followed by shoulder depression with fixation of the cervical spine, then shoulder depression, cervical fixation, and arm traction with the arm by the side. Once this progression has been performed without any adverse effects, the more specific movements used to isolate the nerve are employed. In the lumbar spine, to stretch the sciatic nerve, a similar technique to that employed to stretch the hamstrings is used as the straight leg is gradually raised and held at a position just shy of the symptoms and then passive ankle dorsiflexion is introduced gradually.

TABLE 9.5 Commonly Used Upper and Lower Extremity Neurodynamic Tests

Test	Description
Slump	A combination of other neuromeningeal tests (the seated SLR, neck flexion, and lumbar slumping). The patient is seated in full flexion of the thoracic and lumbar regions of the spine and then sensitizing maneuvers are progressively applied and then released to the cervical spine (usually flexion) and lower extremities (usually the extension and ankle dorsiflexion) while the clinician maintains the patient's slumped trunk position.
Straight leg raise	The patient is positioned supine with no pillow under the head, and the trunk and hips in neutral, avoiding internal or external rotation, and excessive adduction or abduction. The clinician holds the patient's heel, maintaining the extension and neutral dorsiflexion at the ankle, and raises the straight leg until complaints of pain or tightness in the posterior thigh are elicited. At this point, the ROM is noted, and the clinician then lowers the straight leg slightly until the patient reports a decrease in symptoms. Passive dorsiflexion of the ankle and/or passive cervical flexion may be used as sensitizers for the SLR test. There are a number of variations of this test including the *crossed SLR sign*, the bilateral SLR, and the bowstring tests.
Prone knee bending (PKB)	The patient is positioned prone, and the clinician stabilizes the ischium to prevent an anterior rotation of the pelvis. The clinician then gently moves the lower extremity into knee flexion, bending the knee until the onset of symptoms. The test is designed to stretch the femoral nerve.

TABLE 9.5 Commonly Used Upper and Lower Extremity Neurodynamic Tests *(continued)*

Test	Description
Upper Limb Tension Test 1 (ULTT 1)—Median Bias	The patient is positioned supine. The clinician depresses the shoulder girdle, abducts the humerus to approximately 110 degrees, supinates the forearm, and extends the elbow, wrist, and fingers to place stress through the median nerve. The sensitizers for this test are cervical spine side flexions either toward or away from the involved side.
Upper Limb Tension Test 2 (ULTT 2)—Radial Bias	The patient is positioned supine. The clinician depresses the shoulder girdle, extends the elbow, internally rotates the shoulder, pronates the forearm, flexes the wrist and fingers, and then abducts the shoulder to place stress through the radial nerve. The sensitizers for this test are cervical spine side flexions either toward or away from the involved side, or scapular elevation. Alternatively, a position consisting of scapular depression, shoulder internal rotation, elbow extension, forearm pronation, and wrist flexion with the addition of shoulder abduction 40 degrees and extension 25 degrees, wrist ulnar deviation and thumb flexion has been demonstrated to significantly provide greater tension of the radial nerve than any other tested position.[50]
Upper Limb Tension Test 3 (ULTT 3)—Ulnar Bias	The patient is positioned supine. The clinician extends the wrist, supinates the forearm, fully flexes the elbow, and depresses, externally rotates, and abducts the shoulder to place stress through the ulnar nerve. The patient's wrist and fingers are then placed in extension. The sensitizers for this test are side flexion of the head and neck, both toward and away from the test side. A number of modifications to this test have been suggested including: ■ Replacing the forearm supination with forearm pronation ■ Replacing the combination of shoulder external rotation in abduction with internal rotation combined with horizontal abduction ■ Adding horizontal abduction to the original test.[51]

Summary

A number of manual therapy techniques are at the disposal of the PTA and, when combined with other forms of intervention, such as therapeutic exercise, can be very effective in restoring a patient's function. At present, the number of manual techniques that can be delegated to the PTA remains limited, but as with most things, time brings changes. Until such time, the appropriate application of manual therapy techniques remains at the discretion of the law and the PT.

Learning Portfolio

Case Study

Because you are a PTA trained in joint mobilizations and who is legally allowed to perform these techniques, your supervising PT asks you to perform a joint mobilization to the distal radioulnar and the radiocarpal joints on a patient whose cast has been removed following a wrist fracture.

1. Describe what you would say to the patient to explain what a joint mobilization is and how it will benefit the patient.
2. Describe the various joint surfaces that you will be mobilizing in terms of their convexity and concavity.

Having mobilized the distal radioulnar joint, you decide to perform a mobilization to increase the patient's wrist extension.

3. Describe each of the bone or bones that will be stabilized and which will be mobilized and the direction of the mobilization force.
4. Describe how you differentiate between a grade I and a grade II mobilization in terms of the amplitude.

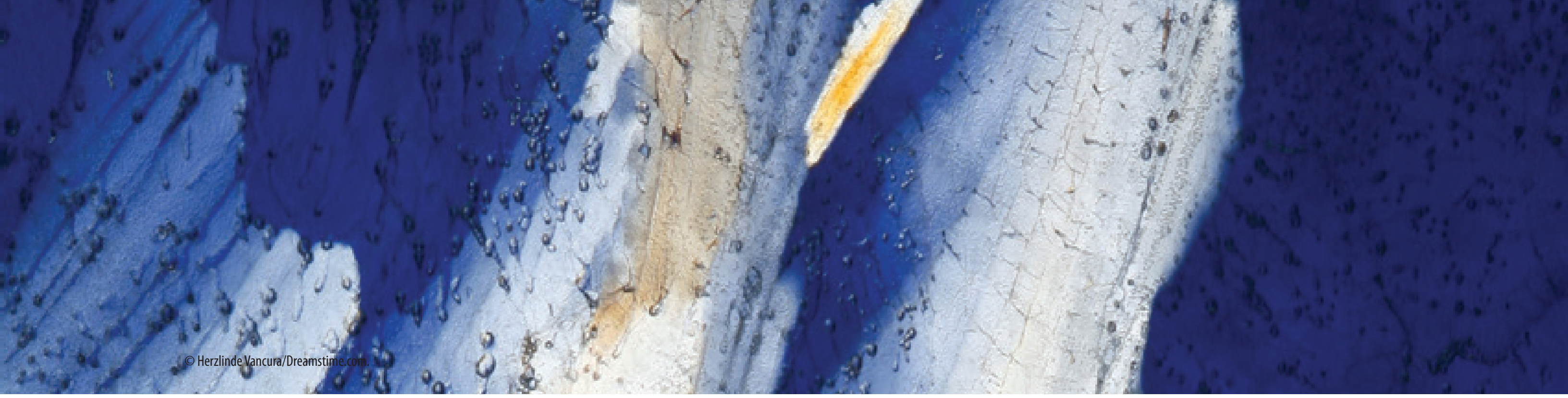
Review Questions

1. All of the following principal philosophies have dominated the field of manual physical therapy *except*:
   a. Maitland
   b. McKenzie
   c. Kaltenborn
   d. Kendall
2. **True or false:** The direction of a manually applied force can be either *direct*, which is toward the motion barrier or restriction, or *indirect*, which is away from the motion barrier or restriction.
3. All of the following are necessary for the correct application of a manual technique *except*:
   a. Patient and clinician position
   b. Hand placement
   c. Preheating the treatment area
   d. All of these are important for the correct application
4. All of the following are indications for manual therapy *except*:
   a. Mild, intermittent musculoskeletal pain that is relieved by rest
   b. Pain unrelieved by rest
   c. Edema/effusion
   d. All of these are indications for manual therapy
5. How many grades of physiological and accessory joint motions has Kaltenborn described?
6. According to Maitland, a large amplitude motion performed by the physical therapist that occurs from the mid-range of motion to the end of the available range is what grade of mobilization?
7. According to Maitland, a small oscillation or small amplitude joint motion performed by the physical therapist that occurs only at the beginning of the available range of motion is what grade of mobilization?
8. What characteristic end-range feel should be felt for knee flexion or elbow flexion?
9. What are three benefits reported to occur with transverse friction massage?
10. What massage technique is typically performed at the beginning and at the end of a massage to allow the patient to relax?
11. Which massage technique provides stimulation through rapid and alternating movements such as tapping, hacking, cupping, and slapping to enhance circulation and stimulate peripheral nerve endings?
12. What specific set of techniques is designed to release fascial restrictions and is used for the treatment of soft tissue dysfunction?

References

1. Watson T. The role of electrotherapy in contemporary physiotherapy practice. *Manual Therapy*. 2000; 5:132–41.
2. Cyriax J. *Textbook of Orthopaedic Medicine, Diagnosis of Soft Tissue Lesions*, 8th ed. London: Bailliere Tindall; 1982.
3. Mennell JM. *Back Pain. Diagnosis and Treatment Using Manipulative Techniques*. Boston, MA: Little, Brown & Company; 1960.
4. Maitland G. *Vertebral Manipulation*. Sydney: Butterworth; 1986.
5. Maitland G. *Peripheral Manipulation*, 3rd ed. London: Butterworth; 1991.
6. Kaltenborn FM. *Manual Mobilization of the Extremity Joints: Basic Examination and Treatment Techniques*, 4th ed. Oslo, Norway: Olaf Norlis Bokhandel, Universitetsgaten; 1989.
7. McKenzie RA, May S. *The Lumbar Spine: Mechanical Diagnosis and Therapy*, 2nd ed. Waikanae, NZ: Spinal Publication; 2003.
8. Domingo AR, Diek M, Goble KM, Maluf KS, Goble DJ, Baweja HS. Short-duration therapeutic massage reduces postural upper trapezius muscle activity. *Neuroreport*. 2017; 28:108–10.
9. van den Dolder PA, Ferreira PH, Refshauge KM. Effectiveness of soft tissue massage for nonspecific shoulder pain: randomized controlled trial. *Physical Therapy*. 2015; 95:1467–77.
10. Yeun YR. Effectiveness of massage therapy on the range of motion of the shoulder: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Journal of Physical Therapy Science*. 2017; 29:365–9.
11. Gensic ME, Smith BR, LaBarbera DM. The effects of effleurage hand massage on anxiety and pain in patients undergoing chemotherapy. *Journal of the American Academy of Physician Assistants*. 2017; 30:36–8.
12. *Guide to Physical Therapist Practice*. 3.0. American Physical Therapy Association. Alexandria, VA; 2014.
13. An CM, Won JI. Effects of ankle joint mobilization with movement and weight-bearing exercise on knee strength, ankle range of motion, and gait velocity in patients with stroke: a pilot study. *Journal of Physical Therapy Science*. 2016; 28:689–94.

14. Courtney CA, Steffen AD, Fernandez-de-Las-Penas C, Kim J, Chmell SJ. Joint mobilization enhances mechanisms of conditioned pain modulation in individuals with osteoarthritis of the knee. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2016; 46:168–76.
15. Lantz JM, Emerson-Kavchak AJ, Mischke JJ, Courtney CA. Tibiofemoral joint mobilization in the successful management of patellofemoral pain syndrome: a case report. *International Journal of Sports Physical Therapy*. 2016; 11:450–61.
16. Shih YF, Yu HT. Immediate effect of joint mobilization on corticospinal excitability in individuals with functional ankle instability: 406 Board #243 June 1. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise*. 2016; 48:112.
17. Maigne R. *Orthopedic Medicine*. Springfield, IL: Charles C Thomas; 1972.
18. Stoddard A. *Manual of Osteopathic Practice*. New York: Harper & Row; 1969.
19. Evjenth O, Hamberg J. *Muscle Stretching in Manual Therapy, A Clinical Manual*. Alfta, Sweden: Alfta Rehab Forlag; 1984.
20. Vicenzino B, Collins D, Benson H, Wright A. An investigation of the interrelationship between manipulative therapy-induced hypoalgesia and sympathoexcitation. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*. 1998; 21:448–53.
21. Vicenzino B, Collins D, Wright A. The initial effects of a cervical spine manipulative physiotherapy treatment on the pain and dysfunction of lateral epicondylalgia. *Pain*. 1996; 68:69–74.
22. Vicenzino B, Gutschlag F, Collins D, Wright A. An investigation of the effects of spinal manual therapy on forequarter pressure and thermal pain thresholds and sympathetic nervous system activity in asymptomatic subjects. In: Schachloch MO, editor. *Moving in on Pain*. Adelaide: Butterworth-Heinemann; 1995. p. 164–73.
23. Meadows JTS. The principles of the Canadian approach to the lumbar dysfunction patient. *Management of Lumbar Spine Dysfunction - Independent Home Study Course*. La Crosse, WI: APTA, Orthopaedic Section; 1999.
24. Johnson GS. Soft tissue mobilization. In: Donatelli RA, Wooden MJ, editors. *Orthopaedic Physical Therapy*. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1994.
25. Cyriax JH, Cyriax PJ. *Illustrated Manual of Orthopaedic Medicine*. London: Butterworth; 1983.
26. Gersten JW. Effect of ultrasound on tendon extensibility. *American Journal of Physical Medicine*. 1955; 34:662.
27. Hunter SC, Poole RM. The chronically inflamed tendon. *Clinics in Sports Medicine*. 1987; 6:371.
28. Palastanga N. The use of transverse frictions for soft tissue lesions. In: Grieve GP, editor. *Modern Manual Therapy of the Vertebral Column*. London: Churchill Livingstone; 1986. p. 819–26.
29. Walker JM. Deep transverse friction in ligament healing. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 1984; 6:89–94.
30. Hammer WI. The use of transverse friction massage in the management of chronic bursitis of the hip or shoulder. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*. 1993; 16:107–11.
31. Melham TJ, Sevier TL, Malnofski MJ, Wilson JK, Helfst RH, Jr. Chronic ankle pain and fibrosis successfully treated with a new noninvasive augmented soft tissue mobilization technique (ASTM): a case report. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise*. 1998; 30:801–4.
32. Stauber WT. Repair models and specific tissue responses in muscle injury. In: Leadbetter WB, Buckwalter JA, Gordon SL, editors. *Sports-Induced Inflammation: Clinical and Basic Science Concepts*. Park Ridge, IL: American Academy of Orthopedic Surgeons; 1990. p. 205–13.
33. Mennell JB. *The Science and Art of Joint Manipulation*. London: J & A Churchill; 1949.
34. Upledger JE, Vredevoogd JD. *Craniosacral Therapy*. Chicago: Eastland Press; 1983.
35. Barnes J. *Myofascial Release: A Comprehensive Evaluatory and Treatment Approach*. Paoli, PA: MFR Seminars; 1990.
36. Ramsey SM. Holistic manual therapy techniques. *Primary Care*. 1997; 24:759–85.
37. Morton T. Panel debates the pros and cons of myofascial release approach. *APTA Progress Report*; 1988, February.
38. Kisner C, Colby LA. Resistance exercise for impaired muscle performance. In: Kisner C, Colby LA, editors. *Therapeutic Exercise Foundations and Techniques*, 5th ed. Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2002. p. 147–229.
39. Goodridge JP. Muscle energy technique: Definition, explanation, methods of procedure. *Journal of the American Osteopathic Association*. 1981; 81:249–54.
40. Chaitow L. An introduction to muscle energy techniques. In: Chaitow L, editor. *Muscle Energy Techniques*, 2nd ed. London: Churchill Livingstone; 2001. p. 1–18.
41. Liebenson C. Active muscular relaxation techniques (part 2). *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*. 1990; 13:2–6.
42. Liebenson C. Active muscular relaxation techniques (part 1). *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*. 1989; 12:446–51.
43. Keller K, Corbett J, Nichols D. Repetitive strain injury in computer keyboard users: pathomechanics and treatment principles in individual and group intervention. *Journal of Hand Therapy*. 1998; 11:9–26.
44. Butler DS, Tomberlin JP. Peripheral nerve: structure, function, and physiology. In: Magee D, Zachazewski JE, Quillen WS, editors. *Scientific Foundations and Principles of Practice in Musculoskeletal Rehabilitation*. St. Louis, MI: WB Saunders; 2007. p. 175–89.
45. Butler DS. *The Sensitive Nervous System*. Adelaide, Australia: Noigroup Publications; 2000.
46. Coppieters MW, Andersen LS, Johansen R, Giskegjerde PK, Hoivik M, Vestre S, et al. Excursion of the sciatic nerve during nerve mobilization exercises: an in vivo cross-sectional study using dynamic ultrasound imaging. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2015; 45:731–7.
47. Coppieters MW, Alshami AM, Babri AS, Souvlis T, Kippers V, Hodges PW. Strain and excursion of the sciatic, tibial, and plantar nerves during a modified straight leg raising test. *Journal of Orthopaedic Research*. 2006; 24:1883–9.
48. Alshami AM, Babri AS, Souvlis T, Coppieters MW. Strain in the tibial and plantar nerves with foot and ankle movements and the influence of adjacent joint positions. *Journal of Applied Biomechanics*. 2008; 24:368–76.
49. Coppieters MW, Alshami AM. Longitudinal excursion and strain in the median nerve during novel nerve gliding exercises for carpal tunnel syndrome. *Journal of Orthopaedic Research*. 2007; 25:972–80.
50. Manvell JJ, Manvell N, Snodgrass SJ, Reid SA. Improving the radial nerve neurodynamic test: an observation of tension of the radial, median and ulnar nerves during upper limb positioning. *Manual Therapy*. 2015; 20:790–6.
51. Manvell N, Manvell JJ, Snodgrass SJ, Reid SA. Tension of the ulnar, median, and radial nerves during ulnar nerve neurodynamic testing: observational cadaveric study. *Physical Therapy*. 2015; 95:891–900.


© Herzlinde Vancura/Dreamstime.com

CHAPTER 10

Physical Agents and Mechanical Modalities

CHAPTER OBJECTIVES

At the completion of this chapter, the reader will be able to:

1. List the clinical tools that can be used to control pain, inflammation, and edema and the rationale for each.
2. Discuss the intrinsic and extrinsic stimuli that can be used to promote and progress healing.
3. Describe the physiological effects of a local heat application and of cryotherapy.
4. Describe each of the five types of heat transfer and the modalities that are involved with each.
5. Describe the benefits of each of the physical agents and mechanical modalities.
6. Understand the rationale for the use of each of the physical agents and mechanical modalities during each of the three stages of healing.
7. Describe the benefits of each of the electrotherapeutic modalities.
8. Have a working knowledge of the contraindications for each of the physical agents and mechanical modalities.

Overview

The physical therapy intervention is typically guided by short- and long-term goals, which can fluctuate, being altered as the patient's condition changes. Strategies with which to achieve those goals are based on the stages of healing. (See Chapter 8.) The physical therapist (PT) determines which elements of the plan of care will be performed by the physical therapist assistant (PTA) and if and how the PTA may make modifications. The clinical management of soft tissue injuries includes physical agents and mechanical modalities. A number of physical agents and mechanical modalities are used in physical therapy. Many of them remain unproven to result in beneficial alterations in tissue physiology. At present, with the exception of cryotherapy and thermotherapy, there is insufficient evidence to support or reject the use of other modalities.[1–3] However, the absence of evidence does not always mean that there is evidence of absence (of effect), and there is always the risk of rejecting therapeutic approaches that are valid.[4] The use of physical agents and mechanical modalities is determined by the goals of the intervention

(**TABLE 10.1** and **TABLE 10.2**). If modalities have a role in the clinic, it is during the acute phase of healing, when there is little else the clinician can do. In the remodeling or functional phase, various agents and modalities may be used to promote blood flow to the healing tissues and to prepare the tissues for exercise or manual techniques. There are entire texts devoted to describing all aspects of the various physical agents, and electrotherapeutic/mechanical modalities. This chapter merely serves as a refresher course. Three categories of modalities are recognized:

- Physical agents
- Electrotherapeutic modalities
- Mechanical modalities

TABLE 10.1 Electrotherapeutic and Thermal Modalities

Modality	Physiological Responses
Cryotherapy (cold packs, ice)	Decreased blood flow (vasoconstriction) Analgesia Reduced inflammation Reduced muscle guarding/spasm
Thermotherapy (hot packs, whirlpool, paraffin wax)	Increased blood flow (vasodilation) Analgesia Reduced muscle guarding/spasm Increased metabolic activity
Ultrasound	Increased connective tissue extensibility Deep heat Increased circulation Reduced inflammation (pulsed) Reduced muscle spasm
Shortwave diathermy and microwave diathermy	Increased deep circulation Increased metabolic activity Reduced muscle guarding/spasm Reduced inflammation Facilitated wound healing Analgesia Increased tissue temperatures over a large area
Electrical stimulating currents: high voltage	Pain modulation Muscle reeducation Muscle pumping contractions (retard atrophy) Fracture and wound healing
Electrical stimulating currents: low voltage	Wound healing Fracture healing
Electrical stimulating currents: interferential	Pain modulation Muscle reeducation Muscle pumping contractions Fracture healing
Electrical stimulating currents: Russian	Muscle strengthening
Electrical stimulating currents: microelectrical nerve stimulation (MENS)	Fracture healing Wound healing

TABLE 10.2 Clinical Decision Making on the Use of Various Therapeutic Modalities During Various Stages of Healing

Clinical Presentation	Possible Modalities Used	Examples and Parameters (Where Applicable)
Acute: Erythema (rubor), swelling (tumor), elevated tissue temperature (calor), and pain (dolor) Swelling subsides, warm to touch, discoloration, pain to touch, pain on motion	Cryotherapy Electrical stimulation Nonthermal ultrasound	Ice packs, ice massage, cold whirlpool (15–20°C [59–68°F])
Subacute: Pain to touch, pain on motion, swollen	Cryotherapy/thermotherapy Electrical stimulation Ultrasound	Contrast baths, hot packs, paraffin wax, fluidotherapy, etc. (41–45°C [106–113°F])
Chronic: No more pain to touch, decreasing pain on motion	Thermotherapy (hot packs, ultrasound, paraffin) Electrical stimulation Ultrasound	

If an intervention is delegated to a PTA based on the PT's plan of care, the PTA must:

- Adhere to the relevant state practice acts, the practice setting, and any other regulatory agency.
- Assess and note the component of the patient's physical therapy plan that is being addressed by the use of a modality to determine whether use of the modality is still warranted.
- Ensure that any equipment to be used is correctly functioning and calibrated, and that safety inspections of the device have been performed as per the clinic's policies and procedures.
- Recognize when a physical agent or mechanical modality should not be administered based on the patient's status and stage of healing.
- Adjust or modify an intervention within the established plan of care in response to data collection and patient clinical indications.
- Notify the PT of any changing clinical condition that warrants a modification or termination of a particular intervention.
- Provide the patient with information about the procedure in addition to describing what the patient may feel during the application of the agent or modality.
- Perform the standard pretreatment checks (e.g., skin and sensory integrity, review of contraindications).
- Provide the patient with a call bell if he or she is to be left unattended.
- Provide accurate, concise, timely, and legible documentation that describes what physical agents and mechanical modalities were used and note any changes in the patient's progress that occurred.

☑ KEY POINT

According to the American Physical Therapy Association (APTA) policy statement, *Direction and Supervision of the Physical Therapist Assistant,* "regardless of the setting in which the service is provided, the determination to utilize physical therapist assistants for selected interventions requires the education, expertise and professional judgment of a physical therapist as described by the Standards of Practice, Guide to Professional Conduct and Code of Ethics."

Physical Agents

Some physical agents involve the transfer of thermal energy and are referred to as *thermal agents* or *thermal modalities*. Five types of thermal energy transfer are recognized (**TABLE 10.3**). Thermal agents can either lower tissue temperature (cryotherapy) or increase tissue temperature (thermotherapy).

TABLE 10.3 Types of Thermal Energy Transfer

Type	Description	Example
Evaporation	Liquid changes state to a gas and a resultant cooling takes place.	Vapocoolant sprays
Conduction	Heat is transferred from a warmer object to a cooler object through the direct molecular interaction of objects in physical contact.	Cold pack, ice pack, ice massage, cold bath, paraffin bath
Convection	Particles (air or water) move across the body, creating a temperature variation.	Whirlpool
Radiation	The transfer of heat from a warmer source to a cooler source through a conducting medium, such as air.	Infrared lamp
Conversion	The transfer of heat when nonthermal energy (mechanical, electrical) is absorbed into tissue and transformed into heat.	Ultrasound, diathermy

☑ KEY POINT

Temperature conversions:
Fahrenheit = (Temperature in Celsius × 9/5) + 32 *or* (Temperature in Celsius × 1.8) + 32
Celsius = (Temperature in Fahrenheit – 32) × 5/9 *or* (Temperature in Fahrenheit – 32) × 0.55

Cryotherapy

Traditionally, cryotherapy has been applied immediately to acute soft tissue injuries and for the first 24 to 48 hours postinjury. The indications for cryotherapy include the following:

- Acute or subacute pain
- Myofascial pain syndrome
- Muscle spasm
- Bursitis
- Acute or subacute inflammation
- Musculoskeletal trauma (sprains, strains, contusions)
- Tendonitis

Contraindications include the following:

- Area of compromised circulation
- Peripheral vascular disease
- Ischemic tissue
- Cold hypersensitivity
- Raynaud's phenomenon
- Cold urticaria
- Hypertension
- Infection
- Cryoglobulinemia (a form of vasculitis)

☑ KEY POINT

Increased heart rate and blood pressure are associated with cold application to large areas of the body.[5] Conditioned patients should not have a problem with dizziness after cold applications, but care should be taken when transferring any patient from the whirlpool area.

Physiological Effects

The physiological effects of a local cryotherapy application include:

- *Decreased muscle and intra-articular temperature.* This decrease in muscle temperature and intra-articular structures occurs because of a decrease in local blood flow, and appears to be most marked between the temperatures of 40°C and 25°C (100°F and 77°F).[6,7] Temperatures below 25°C, which typically occurs after 30 minutes of cooling therapy, actually result in an increased blood flow (known as the Hunting effect),[6,7] with a consequent detrimental increase in hemorrhage and an exaggerated acute inflammatory response.[6,7]

- *Local analgesia*. The stages of analgesia achieved by cryotherapy are outlined in **TABLE 10.4**. It is worth remembering that the timing of the stages depends on the depth of penetration and varying thickness of adipose tissue.
- *Decreased muscle spasm*.
- *Decreased swelling*.

Application

Cryotherapy is typically used in the acute stage of healing and in the early subacute stage of healing. However, it can also be used at the end of a treatment session to help calm down any exacerbation of symptoms that were provoked during the session. For example, if the patient has been performing a series of eccentric exercises to treat a diagnosis of patellar tendinopathy, cryotherapy is often applied after the exercises.

Before the first application, the PTA performs an assessment of skin and sensory integrity, including temperature, and observes for any lesions in the area compared with findings during the initial evaluation. After the first 5 minutes of treatment, the PTA visually observes the patient's skin for any adverse effects (e.g., urticaria, facial flush, or anaphylaxis [medical emergency]). The usual response for a cold application, which typically lasts from 10 to 20 minutes, involves the sequence of cold, burning, aching, and numbness (CBAN; refer to Table 10.4). The patient should be advised about these various stages, especially in light of the fact that the burning or aching phases occur before the therapeutic phases. The patient is given a call bell and instructed to alert the clinician if there are any sensory changes.

TABLE 10.4 Stages of Analgesia Induced by Cryotherapy

Stage	Response	Time After Initiation of Cryotherapy (min)
1	Cold sensation	0–3
2	Burning or aching	2–7
3	Local numbness or analgesia	5–12
4	Deep tissue vasodilation without increase in metabolism	12–15

Commercial Cold Packs The commercial cold pack typically contains silica gel and is available in a variety of shapes and sizes. A cold pack requires a temperature of 23°F (−5°C). A towel is dampened with warm water and the excessive water wrung out. The cold pack is taken out of the refrigeration unit, wrapped in the moistened towel, and placed securely on the patient with elastic bandages or towels. One to three dry towels can be placed over the moist towel to retard warming. The treatment time is typically 10 to 20 minutes. Cold packs may not maintain uniform contact with the body, so their use requires observation of the skin every 5 minutes. The patient should be kept warm throughout the treatment.

Ice Packs An ice pack consists of crushed ice folded in a moist towel or placed in a plastic bag covered with a moist towel. The method of application, patient preparation, and the treatment time is the same as for the cold packs.

☑ KEY POINT

The various methods of applying cryotherapy (ice chips in toweling, cold gel packs, and ice bags) have been examined in different studies. The use of ice chips in toweling has been shown to be more efficient in decreasing skin temperature than ice chips in plastic bags or cold gel packs.[8,9]

Ice Massage Ice massage is recommended for small and contoured areas. It allows for easy observation and is inexpensive to use. Ice massage is typically performed by freezing water in either a commercially available cup (**FIGURE 10.1**) or a paper cup that can be torn away to expose the ice block. The ice is then applied directly to the area in small, circular motions for 10 to 15 minutes before and after activity, up to six times per day. Ice massage has been shown to reduce tissue temperature faster than using a cold pack.[10]

Cryokinetics Cryokinetics is a rehabilitation technique used for the treatment of strains and sprains.[11] The technique involves an initial application of cold

FIGURE 10.1 Ice massage.

for 20 minutes followed by a 3-minute bout of active exercise to the injured area, which is followed by a 5-minute application of cold. The sequence of 3-minutes of exercise and 5-minutes of cold application is repeated for a total of four cycles.

Cryostretching Cryostretching is a rehabilitation technique that has been advocated to increase flexibility during healing. The technique involves a 20-minute cold application followed by alternating periods of progressive passive stretching with isometric contractions and renumbing using cold for a total of three cycles.

Cold Bath A cold bath, using a basin or whirlpool, is commonly used for the immersion of the distal extremities. The temperature for a cold whirlpool used for acute conditions is in the range of 55–64°F (13–18°C).[5] Typically the body part is immersed for 5 to 15 minutes, depending on the desired therapeutic effect.

Vapocoolant Spray Vapocoolant sprays (e.g., Spray and Stretch, which has replaced the non–ozone-layer-friendly Fluori-Methane) are often used in conjunction with passive stretching and in the treatment of muscle spasms, trigger points, and myofascial referred pain. (See Chapter 9.) The depth of cooling is superficial with this modality. Physiologically the relief is accomplished through the theoretical gate control method of pain control. (See Chapter 3.)

CryoCuff and Cryopress The AirCast CryoCuff combines the therapeutic benefits of controlled compression and cryotherapy to minimize hemarthrosis, edema hematoma, swelling, and pain. The cuff is anatomically designed to completely fit a number of different joints and body parts, providing maximum cryotherapy. The cryopress is a sequential cryocompression unit. Studies have shown that cold therapy and compression combined have a better effect than compression and cryotherapy alone.[12,13]

Thermotherapy

Thermotherapy is the therapeutic application of heat. Thermal modalities generally involve the transfer of thermal energy (refer to Table 10.3). Thermotherapy is used in the later stages of healing, because the deep heating of structures during the acute inflammatory stage may destroy collagen fibers and accelerate the inflammatory process. However, in the later stages of healing, an increase in blood flow to the injured area is beneficial. Thermotherapy can also be used at the beginning of a treatment session to help stimulate blood flow to the treatment area and to warm the tissues in preparation for exercise. For example, it is not uncommon for a patient with a diagnosis of mechanical low back pain to begin his or her treatment session in a supine or prone position with a large hot pack placed over the lumbar spine area.

Indications for thermotherapy include the following:

- Pain control
- Chronic inflammatory conditions
- Trigger points
- Tissue healing
- Muscle spasm
- Decreased range of motion
- Desensitization

Contraindications include the following:

- Circulatory impairment
- Area of malignancy; heat can increase the metabolic activity of a tumor and thereby increase the rate of growth[14]
- Acute musculoskeletal trauma
- Bleeding or hemorrhage, including hemophilia
- Sensory impairment; it is important to assess the patient's sensitivity to temperature, pain, and circulation status prior to the use of thermotherapy (See Chapter 3.).
- Thrombophlebitis
- Arterial disease
- Pregnancy; the application of heat is contraindicated over the abdominal, pelvic, or low back regions of pregnant women due to the potential risk to the development and growth of the fetus.[14]

> ☑ **KEY POINT**
>
> Application of a superficial hot pack over an area with significant subcutaneous fat results in decreased heating of deeper structures.

> ☑ **KEY POINT**
>
> A decrease in diastolic blood pressure can occur following a heat application to a large body area.[5] Care should be taken when transferring any patient following the treatment.

Physiological Effects

The physiological effects of a local heat application include:

- *Dissipation of body heat*. This effect occurs through selective vasodilation and shunting of blood via reflexes in the microcirculation and regional blood flow.
- *Decreased muscle spasm*. The muscle relaxation probably results from a decrease in neural excitability on the sensory nerves, and hence gamma input.
- *Increased capillary permeability, cell metabolism, and cellular activity*. These effects have the potential to increase the delivery of oxygen and chemical nutrients to the area while decreasing venous stagnation.
- *Increased analgesia*. This occurs through hyperstimulation of the cutaneous nerve receptors.
- *Increased tissue extensibility*. This effect has obvious implications for the application of stretching techniques. The best results are obtained if heat is applied during the stretch and if the stretch is maintained until cooling occurs after the heat has been removed.

> ☑ **KEY POINT**
>
> For a heat application to have a therapeutic effect, the amount of thermal energy transferred to the tissue must be sufficient to stimulate normal function without causing damage to the tissue.
>
> Although the human body functions optimally between 36°C and 38°C (96.8°F and 100.4°F), an applied temperature between 40°C and 45°C (104°F and 113°F) is considered sufficient for a heat intervention.

> ☑ **KEY POINT**
>
> Wet heat produces a greater rise in local tissue temperature compared with dry heat at a similar temperature. However, at higher temperatures, wet heat is not tolerated as well as dry heat.

Superficial Heating Agents

The area to be treated should be positioned in such a way as to be easily observed and to prevent a dependent position of the area, or any areas of the body distal to the treatment site. All clothing and jewelry should be removed from the treatment area. Before the first application, the PTA performs an assessment of skin and sensory integrity, including temperature (see Chapter 3), and observes for any lesions in the area compared with findings during the initial evaluation. If any are found, the PT should be notified.

> ☑ **KEY POINT**
>
> Prior to the application of heat, the area to be treated should be assessed for protective sensation to avoid burning the patient.

The modality should be positioned correctly and the patient monitored during the application. The patient is given a call bell and instructed to alert the clinician if there are any sensory changes.

Heating Packs Heating packs are made of a hydrophilic silicate gel encased in a canvas or nylon cover, which is immersed in a thermostatically controlled water unit (hydrocollator) that is typically between 158°F and 167°F (70°C to 75°C). The hot packs are made in various sizes and shapes designed to fit different body areas. The moist heat pack causes an increase in the local tissue temperature, reaching its highest point about 8 minutes after the application.[15] The depth of penetration for the traditional heating pads (and cold packs) is about 5 inches (12 centimeters), and it results in changes in the cutaneous blood vessels and the cutaneous nerve receptors.[9] Before applying the hot pack, layers of terrycloth toweling (approximately six to eight depending on the length of treatment and patient comfort) are placed between the skin and the hot pack. Having the patient lie on the pack is not recommended because this position may increase heat transfer beyond therapeutic levels and increase the risk of burn. The skin should be inspected every 5 minutes, and the patient should be provided with a call device to notify the clinician of any discomfort.

☑ KEY POINT

The skin normally looks pink or red with the application of heat. A dark red or mottled (a red area with white areas) appearance indicates that too much heat has been applied and that the treatment should cease. In such cases, a cold wet towel should be applied to the area and the supervising PT should be notified immediately.

Treatment times vary from 15 to 20 minutes, depending on the goal established by the evaluating PT. It is important that some form of a daily monitoring system for the water levels and temperature of the hot pack storage units be in place in every clinic.

☑ KEY POINT

A daily temperature log for hot pack units is now required by The Joint Commission.

Paraffin Bath Liquid paraffin, heated in a thermostatically controlled paraffin bath unit (**FIGURE 10.2**), is used to provide superficial heat to stiff or painful joints and for arthritis of the hands and feet because, by its very nature, the liquid wax is able to conform to all of the irregularly contoured areas found in these areas. It is, however, contraindicated when there is evidence of an allergic rash, open wounds, recent scars or sutures, or a skin infection. In addition, the contraindications for paraffin are essentially the same as for other thermal modalities.

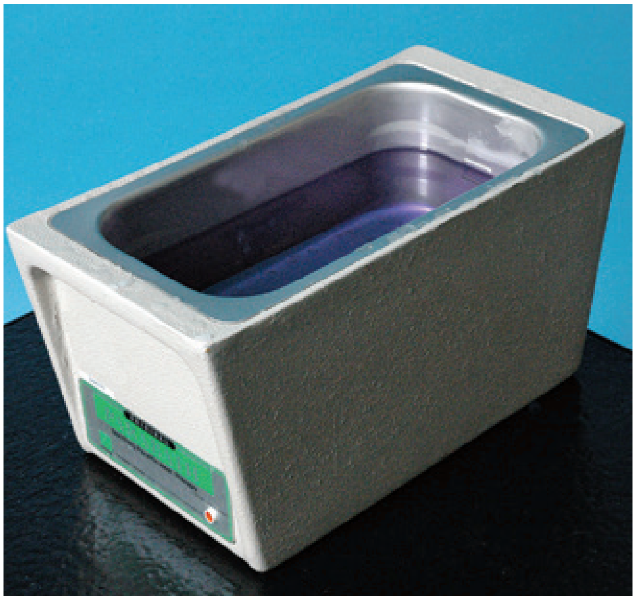


FIGURE 10.2 Paraffin bath.

☑ KEY POINT

Paraffin treatments provide six times the amount of heat available from water because the mineral oil in the paraffin lowers the paraffin's melting point.[5] This provides the paraffin with a lower specific heat* than water, allowing for a slower exchange of heat to the skin.

**Specific heat* is the amount of heat per unit of mass required to raise the temperature by 1°C. The specific heat of water is 1 calorie/gram °C = 4.186 joules/gram °C, which is approximately four times higher than air. Paraffin has a specific heat capacity of 2.14–2.9 joules/gram °C.

For clinical use, the wax used is a mixture of paraffin wax and mineral oil (approximately 2 pounds of wax mixed with 1 gallon of oil). Paraffin melts rapidly at 118–130°F (48–54°C) and self-sterilizes at 175–200°F (79–93°C).[42,43] The typical paraffin bath unit maintains a temperature of 113–126°F (45–52°C). The patient is asked to remove all jewelry and to wash and dry the area to be treated. (If jewelry cannot be removed, it is covered with several layers of gauze.) The clinician inspects the area for infection and open areas. Due to the nature of the paraffin treatment, the treated area cannot be accessed easily for observation, so the PTA must periodically check the status of the patient and, if the patient is to be left unattended, he or she must be provided with a call bell.

Three different procedures are commonly utilized:

- *Dip-wrap (glove) method*. When dipping into the paraffin, the first layer of wax should be the highest on the body segment, and each successive layer lower than the previous one. This is to prevent subsequent layers from getting between the first layer and the skin and burning the patient. With their fingers/toes apart, the patient is asked to dip the involved part (hand or foot) in the wax bath as far as possible and tolerable, while avoiding touching the sides or bottom of the wax bath to prevent burns. After a few seconds, the patient is asked to remove the hand/foot without moving his or her toes to avoid cracks forming in the wax. The layer of paraffin hardens (becomes opaque). The patient repeats the process five more times.

After the paraffin has solidified, the part is then wrapped in a plastic bag, wax paper, or treatment table paper and then in a towel or insulating glove to conserve the heat, thereby slowing down the rate of cooling of the paraffin. The involved extremity is elevated, and the paraffin remains on for 15–20 minutes until it cools, after which the clinician peels off the paraffin.

- *Paint.* As its name implies, this method uses a brush to paint the treatment area with 6 to 10 layers of paraffin. The area is then covered and the wax remains on for approximately 20 minutes.
- *Dip and immersion.* This method is similar to the dip-wrap method, except the patient's extremity remains comfortably in the bath after the final dip. Extra caution must be taken with this approach compared with the other two due to the potential for greater heat exchange to occur.

Fluidotherapy Fluidotherapy consists of a container (**FIGURE 10.3** and **FIGURE 10.4**) that provides a dry heat by circulating warm air (111–125°F/44–52°C) and small cellulose particles at varying degrees of agitation based on patient comfort. The extremity to be treated is placed into the container, and the dry heat is generated through the energy transferred by forced convection for a period of 20 minutes. Unlike a heating pack and paraffin bath, but similar to hydrotherapy, fluidotherapy allows for active movement during treatment and a constant treatment temperature. However, the treatment setup may require the extremity to be placed in a dependent position.

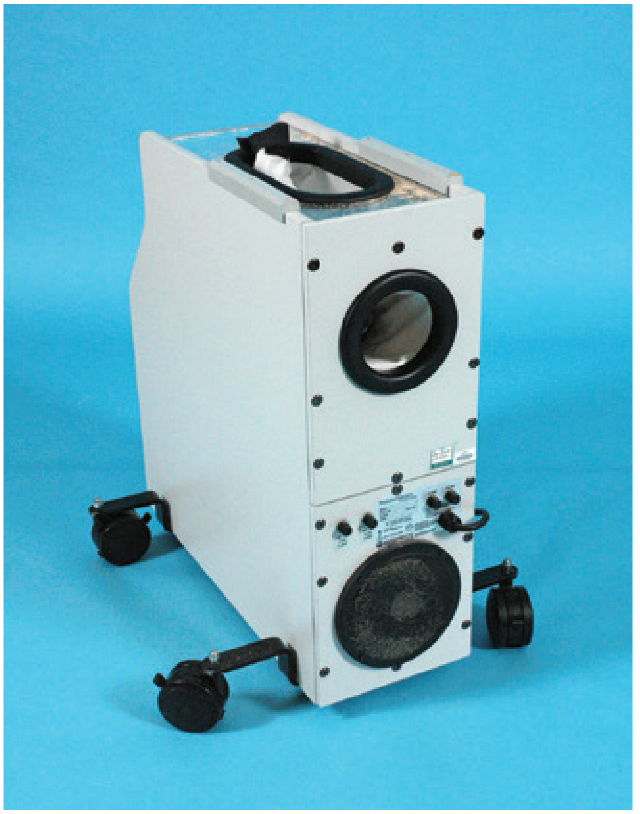


FIGURE 10.4 Fluidotherapy.

FIGURE 10.3 Fluidotherapy.

Infrared Lamp An infrared lamp produces superficial heating of tissue through radiant heat with a depth of penetration of less than 1 to 3 millimeters. The patient is positioned approximately 20 inches (51 centimeters) from the source and a moist towel is placed over the treatment area. The standard parameter for treatment indicates 20 inches of distance should equal 20 minutes of treatment. If the distance decreases, the intensity will increase, and the time of total treatment should decrease. The advantages of infrared are that direct contact with the skin is not required and the area being treated can be easily observed. However, due to the limited depth of penetration, the dehydrating effects on wounds, and the risk of burns during treatment, the use of infrared is declining.

Ultrasound

Indications for ultrasound include the following:

- Soft tissue repair
- Contracture
- Bone fracture healing
- Trigger point
- Dermal ulcer healing
- Scar tissue
- Pain
- Muscle spasm
- Plantar wart

Contraindications include the following:

- Over a pregnant uterus
- Over a cemented prosthetic joint
- Over a cardiac pacemaker
- Over vital areas such as the brain, ear, eyes, heart, cervical ganglia, carotid sinuses, reproductive organs, or spinal cord
- Over epiphyseal areas in children
- Over a malignancy
- Impaired circulation
- Thrombophlebitis
- Impaired pain or temperature sensory deficits
- Infection

Physiological Effects Ultrasound (**FIGURE 10.5**) can be used to deliver heat to either superficial or deep musculoskeletal tissues, such as tendon, muscle, and joint structures. The effects of ultrasound are chemical and thermal. The ultrasonic waves are delivered through a transducer, which has a metal faceplate with a piezoelectric crystal cemented between two electrodes. This crystal can vibrate very rapidly, converting electrical energy to acoustical energy. This energy leaves the transducer in a straight line. As the energy travels farther from the transducer, the waves begin to diverge. The depth of penetration depends on the absorption and scattering of the beam.

FIGURE 10.5 Ultrasound.

☑ KEY POINT

The specific effects and depth of penetration when using ultrasound are affected by the ultrasound wavelength or frequency (1 or 3 megahertz [MHz]), the intensity (watts/meter^2 [W/m^2]), the contact quality of the transducer, the treatment surface, and the tissue type (e.g., muscle, skin, fat).[16,17] Scar tissue, tendon, and ligament demonstrate the highest absorption. Tissues that exhibit poor absorption include bone, tendinous and aponeurotic attachments of skeletal muscle, cartilaginous coverings of joint surfaces, and peripheral nerves lying close to bone.[16,17]

The portion of the sound head that produces the sound wave is referred to as the *effective radiating area (ERA)*. The ERA, which is always smaller than the transducer, can be found on all transducers, allowing the PTA to determine appropriate treatment time.

Frequency The depth of penetration of the ultrasound is approximately inversely related to its frequency. A frequency of 3 MHz is more superficial, reaching a depth of approximately 0.8 inches (2 centimeters), whereas 1 MHz is effective to a depth of 1.6 to 2 inches (4 or 5 centimeters).

Duty Cycle A duty cycle refers to the percentage of time (on time ÷ [on time + off time] × 100) that the ultrasound energy is being transmitted with a pulsed waveform to achieve the proposed associated nonthermal effects. Duty cycles less than 100 percent are usually termed *pulsed ultrasound*, whereas a 100 percent duty cycle is referred to as *continuous ultrasound*. Continuous mode ultrasound produces a thermal effect. Pulsed ultrasound with duty cycles of less than 20 percent have no thermal effect, whereas duty cycles of more than 20 percent have a thermal effect.

Acoustic Cavitation Acoustic cavitation occurs as a result of the acoustic energy generated by ultrasound that develops into microscopic bubbles causing cavities that surround the soft tissues. Two types of cavitation can occur:

- *Stable:* The microscopic bubbles increase and decrease in size but do not burst. Stable cavitation produces microstreaming, which is the minute flow of fluid that takes place around the vapor-filled bubbles that oscillate and pulsate.
- *Transient (unstable):* The microscopic bubbles increase in size over multiple cycles and implode, causing brief moments of local temperature and pressure increases in the area surrounding the bubbles. This process should not occur, however, during therapeutic ultrasound because the intensities required are much higher than 3 W/cm^2.

The Beam Nonuniformity Ratio The beam nonuniformity ratio (BNR) of ultrasound is the maximal/average intensity (W/cm^2) found in the ultrasound field. The BNR value should range between 2:1 and 6:1. (Most devices fall in the 5:1 or 6:1 range.) The BNR of a particular unit is required to be listed on the device for consumer education and awareness. Each transducer produces sound waves in response to the vibration of the crystal. This vibration has different intensities at points on the transducer head, having peaks and valleys of intensity. The better the quality of the transducer, the lower the BNR. The greater ratio difference in the BNR, the more likely the transducer will have *hot spots*. Hot spots are areas of high intensity and increase the likelihood of patient discomfort. Higher intensities have been shown to cause unstable cavitational effects and to retard tissue repair.

Application A pretreatment and posttreatment assessment of skin and sensory integrity should be completed and any unexpected changes reported to the supervising PT. Typically, ultrasound is applied prior to a manual technique such as transverse frictional massage because of its ability to heat up connective tissue. Ultrasound can be applied directly or indirectly. Direct contact (transducer-skin interface) is used on relatively flat areas.

- The clinician applies generous amounts of coupling medium (gel/cream) to the treatment area. (If, while performing the ultrasound, a hot spot is encountered, the PTA should apply more coupling agent or decrease the intensity.)
- The clinician selects an appropriate sound head size. (The ERA should be half the size of the treatment area.)
- Placing the sound head at a right angle to the skin surface and using relatively light pressure (approximately 1 pound or 450 grams), the clinician maintains the intensity to the appropriate level while moving the sound head slowly (approximately 1.75 inches/second or 4 centimeters/second) in overlapping circles or longitudinal strokes and maintaining the sound head/body surface angle. Periosteal pain occurring during treatment may be due to any of the following: high intensity, momentary slowing, or cessation of movement of the head.

The area covered should not be greater than two to three times the size of the ERA for 5 minutes of treatment. Larger areas will require a separate application of ultrasound or another form of heat.

The intensity for continuous ultrasound is usually set between 0.5 and 2 W/cm^2 for thermal effects. Pulsed ultrasound for nonthermal effects is typically set between 0.5 and 0.75 W/cm^2 with a 20 percent duty cycle. The treatment time varies depending on the target tissue (muscle, tendon, and other soft tissues), the size of the area, intensity, condition, and frequency. Indirect contact (water immersion) is used for the application of ultrasound over irregular body parts:

- The clinician fills a container with water high enough to cover the treatment area. Ideally, a plastic container should be used because it reflects less acoustic energy than a metal one.
- The body part to be treated is immersed in the water.
- The sound head is placed in the water, keeping it 1/2 to 1 inch (1 to 2.5 centimeters) from the skin surface and at right angles to the body part being treated.
- The clinician moves the sound head slowly, as in the direct contact method, while turning up the intensity to the desired level. If a stationary technique is being applied, the clinician should reduce the intensity or use pulsed ultrasound.

Indirect contact (fluid-filled bag) is an alternative method to immersion, but it is not commonly used. To perform this technique, an ultrasound gel pad, a thin-walled bag such as a balloon, or a surgical glove is needed.

- The bag is placed around the side of the sound head and the sound head is immersed in water.
- The clinician applies coupling agent on the skin and then places the bag over the treatment area.
- While maintaining the sound head within the bag and increasing the intensity to the desired level, the clinician moves the head slowly while keeping a right angle between the sound head and the treatment area. The bag should not slide on the skin.

Phonophoresis

Phonophoresis refers to a specific type of ultrasound application in which pharmacological agents, such as corticosteroids, local anesthetics, and salicylates, are introduced. Phonophoresis has been used clinically since the early 1960s in attempts to drive these drugs transdermally into subcutaneous tissues. Both the thermal and mechanical (nonthermal) properties of ultrasound have been cited as possible mechanisms for the transdermal penetration of the pharmacological agents. Increased diffusion of the topical agent accompanied by the acoustic pressure wave can cause increases in cell permeability and local vasodilation.

The indications and contraindications for phonophoresis are the same as for ultrasound, except the clinician needs to be aware of potential allergic reactions from the medications used.

> ☑ **KEY POINT**
>
> Recent papers have argued that many of the commonly used cream-based preparations do not allow adequate transmission of the acoustic wave.[18–20] Gel-based preparations appear to provide a superior transmissivity of ultrasound. Consequently, gel-based corticosteroid compounds might be expected to be better for phonophoresis applications.

A pretreatment and posttreatment assessment of skin and sensory integrity should be completed, and any unexpected changes reported to the supervising PT. It is important that the PTA understands the specific indications and desired effects of the pharmacological agents being used and that the patient status is monitored to determine the effectiveness of the treatment after every session.

Diathermy

Indications for the use of diathermy include those situations when the aim is to do the following:

- Promote wound care.
- Decrease pain and edema.
- Increase oxygen to the tissue through vasodilation.
- Increase temperature.
- Increase metabolic rate.
- Decrease nerve conduction latency.
- Increase collagen extensibility.
- Increase muscle, bone, and nerve tissue repair via stimulation of protein synthesis at the cell membrane level.
- Decrease chronic inflammation.

Contraindications include the following:

- Implanted deep brain stimulators
- Internal or external metal implants
- Cardiac pacemakers
- The presence of malignancy
- Pregnancy
- Use over the eyes, epiphysis of growing bone, or testes
- Acute inflammation

Physiological Effects Diathermy, which includes both shortwave (SW) and microwave (MW), is a thermal agent that produces therapeutic effects through conversion. As with ultrasound, diathermy offers both thermal and nonthermal effects through the application of continuous or pulsed modes.

Application A pretreatment and posttreatment assessment of skin and sensory integrity should be completed, and any unexpected changes reported to the supervising PT. The patient needs to be monitored often during treatment because the treated area is not visible. Any conductive material must be removed. This includes jewelry, clothes with zippers, synthetic fabrics, electronic devices, and metal-containing or magnetic equipment.

> ☑ **KEY POINT**
>
> To avoid any potential exposure to hazardous levels of electromagnetic energy, the operator of the diathermy unit must stand behind the unit console.

Shortwave applicators include inductive coil applicators or capacitive plates. SW delivers a thermal or pulsed electromagnetic field. The most common SW frequency used is 27.12 MHz. In the electrical circuit method, the patient's area to be treated is placed between two conducting electrodes for 15 to 30 minutes. In the inductive field method, the patient's treated area is placed into a magnetic field formed by electrodes, and the current is induced within the patient's body tissues with the tissue resistance to the current producing an increase in temperature of the deep body tissues. Inductive coil applicators utilize a coil that generates alternating electric current, create a magnetic field perpendicular to the coil, and produce eddy currents within the tissues. As the eddy currents cause an oscillation of ions, tissue temperature is increased.

The microwave is applied using electromagnetic radiation directed through a coaxial cable to an antenna mounted in the treatment applicator. Treatment time is typically 15 to 30 minutes. Caution must be used when energy is reflected at fat/muscle and muscle/bone interfaces because it can increase superficial tissue temperatures (skin or fat).

☑ KEY POINT

The choice of heating modality should be made according to the patient's diagnosis, the body part being treated, the onset of the condition, the age of the patient, and the desired goal. For example, if the primary treatment goal is a tissue temperature increase with a corresponding increase in blood flow to the deeper tissues, the clinician should choose a modality, such as diathermy or ultrasound, that produces energy that can penetrate the cutaneous tissues and be directly absorbed by the deep tissues.

Hydrotherapy

Hydrotherapy comprises the use of warm or cold water for the treatment of musculoskeletal dysfunction. Hydrotherapy, which involves submerging all or part of the body in water, can include several types of equipment.

Various temperatures can be used depending on the desired goal (**TABLE 10.5**).

Physical Properties of Water

Water has several physical properties, including the following:

- *Buoyancy.* The upward force of buoyancy somewhat counteracts the effects of gravity. Archimedes' principle states that any entity submerged or floating in water is buoyed upward by a counterforce that helps support the submerged or partially submerged entity against the downward pull of gravity, resulting in an apparent loss of weight. The center of buoyancy is the reference point of an immersed object on which the buoyant (vertical) forces of a fluid predictably act. In the vertical position, the center of buoyancy for the human body is located at the sternum. Buoyancy can provide the patient with relative weightlessness and joint unloading, allowing performance of active motion with increased ease.[21] In addition, buoyancy allows the clinician three-dimensional access to the patient.

TABLE 10.5 Clinical Applications of Hydrotherapy Treatment According to Temperature Ranges

Temperature	Degrees	Use
Very hot	104–110°F (40–43.5°C)	Used for short exposure of 7–10 minutes to increase superficial temperature
Hot	99–104°F (37–40°C)	Used to increase superficial temperature
Warm	96–99°F (35.5–37°C)	Used to increase superficial temperature where a prolonged exposure is wanted, such as to decrease spasticity of a muscle in conjunction with passive exercise
Neutral	92–96°F (33.5–35.5°C)	Used with patients who have an unstable core body temperature
Tepid	80–92°F (27–33.5°C)	May be used in conjunction with less vigorous exercise
Cool	67–80°F (19–27°C)	May be used in conjunction with vigorous exercise
Cold	55–67°F (13–19°C)	Used for longer exposure of 10–15 minutes to decrease superficial temperature
Very cold	32–55°F (0–13°C)	Used for short exposure of 1–5 minutes to decrease superficial temperature

- *Hydrostatic pressure.* The pressure exerted by the fluid on an immersed object is equal on all surfaces of the object (Pascal's law). Therefore, as the density of water and depth of immersion increase so does hydrostatic pressure. From a clinical perspective, the proportionality of depth allows patients to perform exercise more easily when closer to the surface. It is important to remember that hydrostatic pressure can result in a number of cardiovascular shifts, including decreased peripheral blood flow and vital capacity, increased heart volume, increased stroke volume, increased cardiac output, and a decrease or no change in the heart rate.
- *Viscosity.* Friction that occurs between molecules of liquid resulting in resistance to flow. From a clinical perspective, increasing the velocity of movement increases the resistance. In addition, increasing the surface area moving through the water increases the resistance.
- *Specific gravity.* Any object with a specific gravity less than that of water will float. The buoyant values of different body parts vary according to bone-to-muscle weight and the amount and distribution of fat.
- *Specific heat.* The amount of heat per unit mass required to raise the temperature by 1°C. The specific heat of water is higher than any other common substance; as a result, water plays a significant role in temperature regulation.
    - Water can store four times the heat as compared to air.
    - Water's thermal conductivity is approximately 25 times faster than air at the same temperature.
- *Surface tension.* Formed by the water molecules loosely binding together, whereby the attraction of surface molecules is parallel to the surface. From a clinical perspective, an extremity that moves through the surface performs more work than if kept under the water.
- *Drag force.* A factor of the shape of an object and its speed of movement. Objects that are more streamlined (minimizing the surface area at the front of the object) produce less drag force.

Whirlpool

Whirlpool therapies involve partial or total immersion of a body or body part in an immersion bath in which the water is agitated and mixed with air so that it can be directed against, or around, the affected part. Whirlpool tanks come in various sizes: high-boy (used for upper extremities); low-boy (used for lower extremities); and Hubbard tank (used for full body immersion).

A turbine, consisting of a motor secured to the side of the tank, pumps a combination of air and water throughout the tank. The water/air jet can be set in a desired direction and height to increase stimulation, help control pain, or clean an area. If the area is hypersensitive, the pressure can be directed away from it.

> ☑ **KEY POINT**
>
> A ground fault interrupter (GFI) is a safety device that continuously compares the amount of electricity flowing from the wall outlet to the clinical unit with the amount returning to the outlet. If any leakage in the current flow is detected, the GFI unit automatically shuts off current flow to reduce the chances of electrical shock. A GFI should be installed at the circuit breaker for the receptacle of all whirlpools and Hubbard tanks, and the unit should be checked periodically for current leakage.

Application The tank is filled to the desired level and adjusted to the appropriate temperature (refer to Table 10.5). Whirlpool liners may be used for patients with burns, wounds, or who are infected with bloodborne pathogens. If an antimicrobial is to be used it should be added to the water before the treatment starts. The following are appropriate antimicrobial agents:

- *Sodium hypochlorite (bleach).* Dilution of 200 parts per million (ppm)
- *Povidone-iodine.* Dilution of 4 ppm
- *Chloramine-T.* Dilution of 100–200 ppm

The patient is asked to uncover the treatment area adequately (as appropriate, any wound dressing is removed), and the skin is tested for thermal sensitivity. The checking of vital signs also may be appropriate based on patient history. Patient comfort is ensured by avoiding pressure of the limb on the edge of the whirlpool (which may compromise circulation). Any pressure points should be padded. Once the patient is comfortable, the turbine direction is adjusted and then turned on. The force, direction, and depth of the jet/agitator are adjusted appropriately. During the treatment, the body part may be exercised. The patient should be accompanied throughout the treatment session and his or her vital signs monitored as appropriate. Whirlpool treatments can provide a sedative effect, and depending on the temperature of the water, can cause fluctuations in blood pressure.

Once the treatment is completed, the patient is asked to remove the body part from the water, and the area is dried and inspected. If appropriate, a clean dressing is applied. The whirlpool is drained, cleaned, and rinsed. Cleaning procedures vary according to clinical setting. In general, the inside of the tank, outside of the agitator, thermometer, and drains are washed with disinfectant diluted in water. The disinfectant is allowed to stand for at least 1 minute. The agitator is placed in a bucket filled with water and disinfectant, so that all openings are covered with the solution. The agitator is turned on for about 20 to 30 seconds, after which the motor is turned off and the agitator is removed from the bucket. The entire tank and all the equipment is then rinsed until the entire residue is removed. The tank is then drained.

Contrast Bath

Contrast baths are an alternating cycle of warm (38°C to 44°C [100°F to 111°F]) and cold (10°C to 18°C [50°F to 64°F]) whirlpools that create a cycle of alternating vasoconstriction and vasodilation (10 minutes warmth, 1 minute cold, 4 minutes warmth; cycled over a period of 30 minutes). Contrast baths are used most often in the management of extremity injuries to reduce swelling around injuries or to aid recovery from exercise.[22,23] The technique provides good contact over irregularly shaped areas, allows for movement during treatment, and assists with pain management. Disadvantages include potential intolerance to cold and dependent positioning. Contraindications for this modality include those for thermotherapy and those for cryotherapy.

Aquatic Therapy

An entire chapter could be devoted to aquatic therapy, but because the majority of outpatient clinics do not have a therapeutic pool due to the costs involved, this section merely serves as an outline of the benefits of aquatic therapy. In the past decade, widespread interest has developed in aquatic therapy as a tool for rehabilitation. Among the psychological aspects, water motivates movement, because painful joints and muscles can be moved more easily and with less pain in water. The exact proportion and quantity of both land and water activity is determined by the needs and response of the patient.

The indications for aquatic therapy include the following:[24]

- Instances when partial weight-bearing ambulation is necessary
- To increase range of motion
- When standing balance needs to be improved
- When endurance/aerobic capacity needs to be improved
- When the goal is to increase muscle strength via active-assisted, gravity-assisted, active, or resisted exercise

Contraindications to aquatic therapy include the following:[24]

- Incontinence
- Urinary tract infections
- Unprotected open wounds/menstruation
- Autonomic dysreflexia
- Heat intolerance
- Severe epilepsy/uncontrolled seizures
- Uncontrolled diabetes
- Unstable blood pressure
- Severe cardiac and/or pulmonary dysfunction

Once any contraindications have been ruled out, the patient's water safety skills and swimming ability should be evaluated, as well as their general level of comfort in the water. The following strategies/techniques can be used:[25]

- *Position and direction of movement.* A three-part progression moving from buoyancy-assisted exercises, to buoyancy-supported exercises, to buoyancy-resisted exercises. As with gravity, patient position and direction of movement can greatly alter the amount of assistance or resistance used.
  - *Buoyancy-assisted exercises.* Involve movements toward the surface of the water and are similar to gravity-assisted exercises on land. For example, in the standing position, shoulder abduction and flexion, as well as the ascent phase of the squat, are considered buoyancy-assisted exercises. In the prone position, hip extension can be buoyancy assisted.
  - *Buoyancy-supported exercises.* Involve movements that are parallel to the bottom of the pool and are similar to gravity-minimized positions on land. In the standing position, horizontal shoulder abduction/adduction is an example of such activity, as are hip and shoulder abduction in the supine position.
  - *Buoyancy-resisted exercises.* Involve movements toward the bottom of the pool. For example, in the supine position, shoulder and hip extension and the descent phase of the squat are considered buoyancy-resisted activities.
- *The depth of water.* Less support is provided by buoyancy in shallow water than in deeper water. In addition, modifications can be made by adding buoyancy equipment or resistance equipment. A study by Harrison and Bulstrode[26] measured static

weight bearing in a pool using a population of healthy adults. Results indicated that weight bearing during immersion was reduced to less than the land-based weight.

- Immersion to C-7 levels reduced weight to 5.9–10 percent of normal weight.
- Immersion to the xiphosternum reduced weight to 25–37 percent of normal.
- Immersion to the level of the anterior superior iliac spine (ASIS) reduced weight to 40–56 percent of normal.

A follow-up study by Harrison and colleagues[27] compared weight bearing during immersed standing and slow and fast walking. During slow walking, subjects had to be immersed to the ASIS before weight bearing was reduced to 75 percent of normal. Immersion to the clavicle during slow walking reduced weight bearing up to 50 percent of normal values, and immersion above the clavicle resulted in weight bearing of 25 percent of normal or less.[27] During fast walking, mid-trunk immersion produced weight bearing up to 75 percent of actual weight.[27] Subjects had to be immersed deeper than the xiphosternum in order for weight bearing to be less than 50 percent and deeper than C-7 for weight bearing to be less than 25 percent of normal values.[27] More recent studies have demonstrated similar findings. Haupenthal and colleagues[28] looked at loading forces (vertical and anteroposterior components of the ground reaction force) in shallow water running in two levels of immersion and found that vertical forces corresponded to 0.80 and 0.98 times the subject's body weight at the chest and hip level, respectively. Anteroposterior forces corresponded to 0.26 and 0.31 times the subject's body weight at the chest and hip level, respectively. As the water level decreased, the subjects ran faster. Interestingly, no significant differences were found for the force values between the immersions, which was likely due to variability in speed, which was self-selected.[28] In another study, de Brito Fontana and colleagues[29] analyzed the vertical and anteroposterior components of the ground reaction force during stationary running performed in water and on dry land, while also focusing on the effect of gender, level of immersion, and cadence. The study concluded that ground reaction forces during stationary running were similar between genders and that vertical peak and loading rates were lower in water, although the values were increased at higher cadences.[29]

- *Lever arm length.* As with land-based exercises, the lever arm length can be adjusted to change the amount of assistance or resistance. For example, performing buoyancy-assisted shoulder flexion in a standing position is easier with the elbow straight (i.e., long lever) than with the elbow flexed (i.e., short lever). Conversely, buoyancy-resisted shoulder abduction is more difficult with the elbow extended because of the long lever arm.
- *Buoyant equipment.* To further increase the amount of assistance (support for individuals in certain positions) or resistance, buoyant equipment can be added to the lever arm. As the buoyancy of the equipment increases, the resistance also increases. Equipment designed to assist with patient positioning can be applied to the neck, extremities, or trunk.
- *Viscosity.* The viscous quality of water allows it to be used effectively as a resistive medium. When moving through the water, the body experiences a frontal resistance proportional to the presenting surface area. Enlarging the surface area or increasing the velocity of movement can increase this resistance.
- *Water temperature.* Variable temperature control for the water should be available, and the ambient air temperature should be 3°C (5°F) higher than the water temperature for patient comfort. The body's ability to regulate temperature during immersion exercise differs from that during land exercise. Water conducts temperature 25 times faster than air, and water retains heat 1,000 times more than air. With immersion, less skin is exposed to air, resulting in less opportunity to dissipate heat through normal sweating mechanisms. The following water temperatures are recommended based on activity:
    - 26°C to 33°C (79°F to 91°F) for aquatic exercises, including flexibility, strengthening, gait training, and relaxation. Therapeutic exercise performed in warm water (33°C [91°F]) may be beneficial for patients with painful musculoskeletal areas.
    - 26°C to 28°C (79°F to 82°F) should be used for cardiovascular training and aerobic exercise (active swimming).
    - 22°C to 26°C (71°F to 79°F) should be used for intense and aerobic training.

It is important that the patient enters the water slowly so that all systems have an opportunity to gradually accommodate to the environment.

A variety of aquatic therapy techniques exist (**TABLE 10.6**). The following is a sample exercise activity for a patient with low back pain: In waist-deep water at the side of the pool, the patient is

TABLE 10.6 Aquatic Specialty Techniques

Specialty Technique	Description
Ai Chi	A water-based total body strengthening and relaxation progression that unites the East and West philosophies of T'ai Chi, Shiatsu, and Watsu. Ai Chi is initially performed standing in shoulder-depth water using deep breathing patterns. Progression involves moving from these simple breathing techniques to the incorporation of upper-extremity, trunk, lower-extremity, and finally full torso involvement.
Aquatic proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation (PNF)	As the name suggests, this technique is based on the principles and movement patterns of PNF while in water. The goal of aquatic PNF is to assist in the restoration of strength and movement through the use of buoyancy, resistance, and heat. The water may be used for both active exercises and for passive immersion.
Bad Ragaz ring method (BRRM)	An aquatic version of PNF that seeks to improve muscle function via patterns of movement and clinician resistance. Exercises are performed while lying supine in the water with support provided by rings or floats around the neck, arms, pelvis and knees. By using the extremities as levers, the trunk muscles are activated.
Fluid moves (aquatic Feldenkrais)	The patient performs Feldenkrais moves, which are based on the early developmental stages of the infant. The movements are performed slowly while the clinician gives verbal (and occasionally tactile) cues. The exercises are usually performed with the patient's back or side against the pool wall to enable feedback from touch receptors. The intent of these exercises is to promote greater flexibility and better body awareness.
Halliwick method	The goals of this method are to teach people how to maintain balance control in the water and to teach them to swim with rotational control patterns. The Halliwick method uses a 10-point program that is divided into four phases: (1) attempts to address the psychological aspects of being in water; (2) improves the patient's ability to restore balance from all positions in the water; (3) concentrates on teaching the patient to inhibit undesired movements while maintaining stability; and (4) teaches the patient to swim from a position of stability.
Swim stroke training and modification	Uses swim stroke training to rehabilitate patients.
Task-type training approach (TTTA)	TTTA, which uses a task-oriented approach that emphasizes functional skills performed in functional positions, is designed for patients with neurological dysfunction.
Watsu	Watsu, or water shiatsu, is a passive technique performed in warm water. The patient is cradled in the clinician's arms (beginning in the fetal position), while stretches and other bodywork are performed.

Adapted from Aquatic Resources Network: How to Define Aquatic Specialty Techniques: Operational Definitions. http://www.aquaticnet.com/Article%20-%20How%20to%20define%20aquatic%20 specially%20techniques.htm.

asked to sit in an imaginary chair so that the back is against the pool wall, the thighs are parallel to the bottom of the pool, and the knees are aligned over the ankles. The back remains against the pool wall throughout the exercise. The arms are placed at the sides with the palms facing backward, and the shoulders are relaxed. The head faces straight ahead. The patient is asked to begin pumping the arms forward and back about 6 inches (15 centimeters) while inhaling for five counts and exhaling for five counts.

Design and Special Equipment Certain characteristics of the pool should be taken into consideration if it is to be used for rehabilitation purposes:

- The pool should not be smaller than 10 by 12 feet (3 by 3.6 meters).
- The pool should have a shallow, 2.5 feet (1.25 meter), and a deep, 5+ feet (2.5 meter), area to allow for standing exercises and swimming or nonstanding exercises.
- The pool bottom should be flat and the depth gradations clearly marked.

The following equipment is helpful for aquatic therapy:

- Rescue tubes, inner tubes, and/or wet vests should be purchased to assist in floatation activities, and aqua shoes will help prevent slipping on the bottom of the pool.
- Hand paddles, webbed gloves, and pull-buoys can be used for strengthening the upper extremities.
- Buoyant dumbbells (swim bars), which are available in short and long lengths, can be used for supporting the upper body or trunk in the upright position and the lower extremities in the supine or prone positions.
- Kick boards, boots, and fins are useful for strengthening the lower extremities.

Advantages The buoyancy of the water allows active exercise while providing a sense of security and causing little discomfort. Early in the rehabilitation process, aquatic therapy is useful in restoring range of motion and flexibility using a combination of the water's buoyancy, resistance, and warmth. Additional advantages include the following:

- The buoyancy provides support.
- The slow-motion effect of moving in water provides extra time to control movement and to react.
- The water provides tactile stimulation and feedback.
- The water allows a gradual transition from non–weight-bearing to full weight-bearing exercises by adjusting the amount the body is submerged.
- The intensity of exercise can be controlled by manipulating the body's position or through the addition of exercise equipment.

Disadvantages Disadvantages of aquatic therapy include the following:

- Cost of building and maintenance
- Training and staffing appropriately
- Difficulty treating patients with inherent fear of water
- Cannot treat patients that have open wounds, fever, urinary tract infections, allergies to the pool chemicals, cardiac problems, uncontrolled seizures, contagious skin diseases, or sores
- Difficult to reproduce lower extremity eccentric muscle contractions

Electrotherapeutic Modalities

As their name suggests, electrotherapeutic modalities are those that use electricity to produce a therapeutic effect. There are a variety of electrotherapy devices, each with different current characteristics that result in somewhat different responses. The electrical current that passes through tissue forces nerves to depolarize. Electrotherapeutic devices (**FIGURE 10.6**) generate three different types of current:

- *Monophasic or direct (galvanic).* A unidirectional flow of electrons. The energy travels only in the positive direction. The direct current produces polar effects. It is important to remember that intact skin cannot tolerate a current density of great than 1 mA/cm^2.[18] Iontophoresis uses direct current.
- *Biphasic or alternating.* The flow of electrons constantly changes direction or, stated differently, reverses its polarity. The energy travels in both a positive and a negative direction. The wave form that occurs will be replicated on both sides of the isoelectric line. Alternating current is used in muscle retraining, spasticity, and stimulation of denervated muscle.

FIGURE 10.6 E-stim machine.

- *Pulsed.* Usually contains three or more pulses grouped together, which are interrupted for short periods of time and repeat themselves at regular intervals. The current can be either monophasic or biphasic.

Electrical current tends to choose the path of least resistance (impedance) in which to flow. Electricity has an effect on each cell and tissue that it passes through. The type and extent of the response depend on the type of tissue and its response characteristics. Typically, tissue that is highest in water content and consequently highest in ion content is the best conductor of electricity.

Good conductors within the body include the following:

- *Blood.* Composed largely of water and ions, it is consequently the best electrical conductor of all tissues.
- *Muscle.* Composed of about 75 percent water, and therefore a relatively good conductor.
- *Nerves.* The type of nerve and the rate at which the fiber is depolarized will determine the physiological and, therefore, therapeutic effect achieved.[30,31] Nerves with a larger diameter are depolarized before nerves with smaller diameters.

☑ KEY POINT

No definitive studies support the use of electrical muscle stimulation to prevent muscle degeneration. If the nerve does not regenerate in time to reinnervate the muscle, stimulating the muscle is not warranted. It is hypothetically possible to use alternating current stimulation with reinnervated muscle; however, a large number of reinnervated muscle fibers to stimulate the muscle are needed.

Poor conductors include the following:

- *Skin.* Offers the primary resistance to current flow and is considered an insulator. The greater the impedance (resistance to current) of the skin, the higher the voltage of the electrical current required to stimulate the underlying nerve and muscle. Thus, proper preparation of the skin by abrasively cleaning the skin where the electrodes are to be placed is critical. Alcohol, which can cause excessive skin dryness and, therefore, increase impedance, should be avoided. Instead, soap and water is preferred.
- *Tendons.* Denser than muscle and contain relatively little water.
- *Fat.* Contains only about 14 percent water.
- *Bone.* Extremely dense; contains only about 5 percent water—the poorest biological conductor.

The traditional uses of electrical stimulation are listed in **TABLE 10.7**. Indications for electrotherapeutic modalities include the following:

- Pain relief
- Wound care (The clinician should always use standard precautions when treating a patient with an open wound or lesion, and wear gloves, waterproof gown, goggles, and a mask, particularly when there is a possibility of splashing.)
- Burn care
- Need to facilitate the resorption of effusion (edema control)
- Need to improve range of motion
- Sprain/strain

The following are precautions against use of electrical stimulation:

- Allergies to tapes and gels
- Areas of absent or diminished sensation
- Electrically sensitive patients
- Need to place electrode over an area of significant adipose tissue, near the stellate ganglion, over the temporal and orbital region, or over damaged skin

Contraindications include the following:

- Decreased temperature sensation
- Impaired cognition
- Recent skin graft
- Incontinence
- Confusion/disorientation
- Deconditioned state
- Bleeding
- Wound maceration
- Cardiac instability
- Profound epilepsy

The key points to remember when using electrical modalities are listed in **TABLE 10.8**.

Physiological Effects

As electricity moves through the body, changes in physiological functioning occur at the various levels of the system (**TABLE 10.9**).

☑ KEY POINT

The limited studies on postsurgical or acutely injured patients seem to indicate that electrical muscle stimulation is either as effective as, or more effective than, isometric exercises at increasing muscle strength and bulk[32–35] in both atrophied[36] and normal muscles.[37,38]

TABLE 10.7 Traditional Uses of Electrical Stimulation

Use	Method	Frequency (Hz)	Pulses per Second	Time (min)
Pain relief	High-frequency stimulation (80–120 Hz) and short duration should be used to stimulate the smallest unmyelinated nerve (C and delta) fibers in order to reduce pain (gate control theory). Low frequency (longer duration) stimulation, which stimulates the larger myelinated (alpha) fibers, should be used when the goal is to produce muscle contractions. Ultra-low frequencies can increase endorphin production through initiation of the descending inhibition mechanisms (opiate pain control theory).	>100 (TENS, HVGS, IFC)	70–100	20–60
Reduce edema	By producing a muscle pump action that increases the lymph and venous flow towards the heart. Increasing ion flow by attracting specific ions in a desired direction, because edema is believed to be slightly negatively charged (DC or Hi-volt).	100–150 (HVGS, IFC)	120 (negative polarity)	20
Wound healing	Through modification of the local inflammatory response (increased polarity produces an increase in inflammation), increasing circulation (negative polarity). Pulsed currents (monophasic, biphasic, or polyphasic) with interrupted modulations can increase circulation and thus hasten metabolic waste disposal. Restoration of electrical cell charges through the use of monophasic currents (low-volt continuous modulations and high-volt pulsed currents). May also have a bactericidal effect (cathode) by disrupting DNA or RNA synthesis or the cell transport system of microorganisms. Low-intensity continuous (nonpulsed and low volt) direct current and high-volt pulsed current can be applied for wound healing (by use of ionic effects).	>100 or 1	Varies but typically 70–100	20
Muscle reeducation	Using electrical stimulation to bring motor nerves and muscle fibers closer to threshold for depolarization. Reeducating muscles to respond appropriately using volitional effort by: ■ Providing proprioceptive feedback. ■ Assisting with active exercise to help produce a contraction (active-assisted). ■ Assisting in the coordination of muscle movement. Current intensity must be adequate for muscle contraction, and pulse duration should be set as close as possible to the duration needed for chronaxie of the tissue to be stimulated. The pulses per second (pps) should be high enough to give a titanic contraction (20–40 pps).	50–60	1–20	Fatigue (1–15)

DC, direct current; HVGS, high volt galvanic stimulator; TENS, transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation; IFC, interferential current.

Data from Riker DK: Assessment: Efficacy of transcutaneous electric nerve stimulation in the treatment of pain in neurologic disorders (an evidence-based review); utility of transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation in neurologic pain disorders. *Neurology* 74:1748–49, author reply 1749, 2010; Cheng JS, Yang YR, Cheng SJ, et al: Effects of combining electric stimulation with active ankle dorsiflexion while standing on a rocker board: A pilot study for subjects with spastic foot after stroke. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil* 91:505–12, 2010; Dubinsky RM, Miyasaki J: Assessment: Efficacy of transcutaneous electric nerve stimulation in the treatment of pain in neurologic disorders (an evidence-based review): Report of the Therapeutics and Technology Assessment Subcommittee of the American Academy of Neurology. *Neurology* 74:173–76, 2010; Meade CS, Lukas SE, McDonald LJ, et al: A randomized trial of transcutaneous electric acupoint stimulation as adjunctive treatment for opioid detoxification. *J Subst Abuse Treat* 38:12–21, 2010; Chan MK, Tong RK, Chung KY: Bilateral upper limb training with functional electric stimulation in patients with chronic stroke. *Neurorehabil Neural Repair* 23:357–65, 2009; Kumaravel S, Sundaram S: Fracture healing by electric stimulation—biomed 2009. *Biomed Sci Instrum* 45:191–96, 2009.

TABLE 10.8 Key Points to Remember When Using Electrotherapeutic Modalities

- The introduction of electricity to a patient affects the whole body.
- The physical condition of the patient must be considered before introducing an electrical current.
- The electrical current affects the electrically active tissue, such as muscles and nerves.
- The response of the tissue is based on the current's density (current amplitude, placement of the electrodes, relative size of the electrodes).
- Electrical current affects type II muscle fibers at lower density levels than it does for type I muscle fibers, which results in an abnormal recruitment order.
- The current is sensed more by the skin than other tissues, due to the local resistance and ion concentrations in the local areas around the electrodes.

TABLE 10.9 Changes in Physiological Functioning That Occur Due to Electricity

Body System Level	Changes
Cellular level	Excitation of nerve cells Changes in cell membrane permeability Protein synthesis (with DC) Stimulation of fibroblasts and osteoblasts (with DC) Modification of microcirculation
Tissue level	Skeletal muscle contraction Smooth muscle contraction Tissue regeneration
Segmental level	Modification of joint mobility Muscle pumping action to enhance circulation and lymphatic activity Alteration of the microvascular system not associated with muscle pumping Increased movement of charged proteins into the lymphatic channels with subsequent oncotic force bringing increases in fluid to the lymph system TENS cannot stimulate lymph, smooth muscle, or the autonomic nervous system without also stimulating a motor nerve
Systematic effects	Analgesic effects as endogenous pain suppressors are released. Analgesic effects from the stimulation of certain neurotransmitters to control neural activity

DC, direct current; TENS, transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation.

According to Taylor and colleagues,[39] the present regimens being used (i.e., one intervention per day, or three times per week) may be insufficiently aggressive to provide benefit.

Electrodes and Their Placement

Electrodes are used in the therapeutic application of current. At least two electrodes are required to complete the circuit; the patient's body becomes the conductor. The strongest stimulation occurs where the current exits the body. Electrodes placed close together will be of high density and give a superficial stimulation, whereas electrodes spaced far apart penetrate more deeply with less current density (interferential). When stimulating a muscle, electrode orientation should be parallel to the muscle fibers along the line of pull of the muscle group.

Generally, the larger the electrode, the lower the current density. If a large "dispersive" pad is creating muscle contractions there may be some areas of high current concentration and other areas that are relatively inactive, thus functionally reducing the total size of the electrode.

☑ KEY POINT

- *Large electrodes.* Decreased current density, decreased impedance, and increased current flow
- *Small electrodes.* Increased current density, increased impedance, and decreased current flow

Electrodes may be placed on or around the painful area. The configuration of the electrodes depends on the intent of the intervention:

- *Monopolar.* Requires one negative electrode and one positive electrode. The stimulating or active electrode is placed over the target area (e.g., motor point). A second dispersive electrode is placed at another site away from the target area. This technique is used with wounds, iontophoresis, and in the treatment of edema.
- *Bipolar.* Two active electrodes of equal size are placed over the target area. This technique is used for muscle weakness, neuromuscular facilitation, spasms, and to increase range of motion.
- *Quadripolar.* Two electrodes from two separate stimulating circuits are positioned so that the individual currents intersect with each other.

Electrical Equipment Care and Maintenance

Electrical safety in the clinical setting should be of maximal concern to the clinician. The typical electrical circuit consists of a source producing electric power, a conductor that carries the power to a resistor or series of given elements, and a conductor that carries the power back to the power source. Safety considerations when using electrical equipment include those listed in **TABLE 10.10**.

TABLE 10.10 Safety Considerations When Using Electrical Devices

- The two-pronged plug has only two leads, both of which carry some voltage. Consequently, the electrical device has no true ground (connected to the earth), and relies instead on the chassis or casing of the power source to act as a ground. This increases the potential for electrical shock.
- The third prong of a three-pronged plug is designed to be grounded directly to the earth. However, never assume that all three-pronged wall outlets are automatically grounded. Although three-pronged plugs generally work well in dry environments, they may not provide sufficient protection from electrical shock in a wet or damp area. Any equipment used in a wet or damp environment is required to be fitted with a ground fault interrupter (GFI).
- Equipment should be visually inspected before each use to check for frayed cords and other safety hazards.
- The entire electrical system of the clinic should be designed or routinely evaluated by a qualified electrician.
- Equipment should be reevaluated on an annual basis and should conform to National Electrical Code guidelines. This includes the lead wires.
- Any defective equipment should be removed from the clinic immediately.
- Do not jerk plugs out of the wall by pulling on the cable.
- Extension cords or multiple adapters should never be used.

Transdermal Iontophores

Transdermal iontophoresis is the administration of selected (by the PT or physician) ionic therapeutic agents through the skin by the application of a low-level electrical current. The principle behind iontophoresis is that an electrical potential difference will actively cause ions in solution to migrate according to their electrical charge—negatively charged ions are repelled from a negative electrode and attracted toward the positive electrode. In contrast, the positive ions are repelled from the positive electrode and attracted toward the negative electrode. Ordinarily, ionized medications or chemicals do not penetrate tissues, and if they do, it is not normally at a rate rapid enough to achieve therapeutic levels.[40] This problem is overcome by using a direct current energy source that provides penetration and transport. Iontophoresis has proved to be valuable in the intervention of musculoskeletal disorders because the application of current through the tissue causes an increased penetration of drugs and other compounds into the tissue.[40] Iontophoresis has, therefore, been used for the transdermal delivery of systemic drugs in a controlled fashion. The factors affecting transdermal iontophoretic transport include pH; the intensity of the current, or current density, at the active electrode; ionic strength; concentration of the drug; molecular size; and the duration of the current flow (continuous or pulse current). The proposed mechanisms by which iontophoresis increases drug penetration are as follows:

- The electrical potential gradient induces changes in the arrangement of the lipid, protein, and water molecules.

- Pore formation occurs in the stratum corneum (SC), the outermost layer of the skin. The exact pathway by which ionized drugs are transmitted through the SC has not been elucidated. The impermeability of the SC is the main barrier to cutaneous or transcutaneous drug delivery. If the integrity of the SC is disrupted, the barrier to molecular transit may be greatly reduced.
- Hair follicles, sweat glands, and sweat ducts act as diffusion shunts with reduced resistance for ion transport.[40] Skin and fat are poor conductors of electrical current and offer greater resistance to current flow.

Iontophoresis can be performed using a wide variety of chemicals (**TABLE 10.11**). For a chemical to be successful in iontophoresis, it must solubilize into ionic components. Following the basic law of physics that *like poles repel*, the positively charged ions are placed under the positive electrode while the negatively charged ions are placed under the negative electrode. If the ionic source is in an aqueous solution, it is recommended that a low concentration be used (2 to 4 percent) to aid in the dissociation.[40] Although electrons flow from negative to positive, regardless of electrode size, having a larger negative pad than a positive one will help shape the direction of flow.

Current intensity is recommended to be at 5 milliamps (mA) or less for all interventions. The duration of the treatment may vary from 15 to 20 minutes. Longer durations have been shown to produce a decrease in the skin impedance, thus increasing the likelihood of burns from an accumulation of ions under the electrodes. The patient is monitored during and after the treatment to ensure that the skin is not burned under the electrode. At present, research has been focused on the development of iontophoretic patches for the systemic delivery of drugs. The iontophoretic patch has the option to monitor and control the power supplied during use, thus permitting safer and more reliable operation. The system can also detect the number of times the patch has been used and records the date and time of use, and its microprocessor can detect when the medication is exhausted. Furthermore, the controller can be rendered unusable to avoid abuse once the drug is exhausted.

The indications for the use of transdermal iontophoresis include those situations when the aim is to accomplish the following:

- Decrease inflammation
- Decrease pain
- Decrease calcium deposits
- Facilitate wound healing
- Decrease edema

TABLE 10.11 Various Ions Used in Iontophoresis

Ion	Polarity	Solution	Purpose/Condition
Acetate	–	2–5% acetic acid	Calcium deposits
Calcium	+	2% calcium chloride	Myopathy, muscle spasm
Chlorine	–	2% sodium chloride	Scar tissue, adhesions
Dexamethasone	+	4 mg/mL dexamethasone Na-P	Tendonitis, bursitis
Hyaluronidase	+	Wyadase	Edema
Iodine	–	Iodex ointment	Adhesions, scar tissue
Lidocaine	+	4% lidocaine	Trigeminal neuralgia
Potassium iodide	–	10%	Scar tissue
Salicylate	–	2% sodium salicylate	Myalgia, scar tissue
Tap water	+/–	N/A	Hyperhidrosis

+, positive; –, negative.

Contraindications include the following:

- Cardiac pacemakers or other electrically sensitive implanted devices
- Known sensitivity to the drugs to be administered
- Known adverse reactions to the application of electrical current
- Damaged skin or recent scar tissue
- Use across the temporal regions or for the treatment of the orbital region

Transcutaneous Electrical Nerve Stimulation

Transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation (TENS), a portable, inexpensive, and low-risk form of electrostimulation, has been used effectively as a noninvasive, drug-free method of treatment for various chronic and acute pain syndromes for many years. Depending on the parameters of electrical stimuli applied, there are several modes of therapy, resulting in different contributions of hyperaemic, muscle-relaxing, and analgesic components of TENS. TENS has been shown to be effective in providing pain relief in the early stages of healing following surgery, and in the remodeling phase of healing.[41,42]

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> The percentage of patients who benefit from short-term TENS pain intervention has been reported to range from 50 to 80 percent, and good long-term results with TENS have been observed in 6 to 44 percent of patients.[41,43,44] However, most of the TENS studies rely solely on subjects' pain reports to establish efficacy and rarely on other outcome measures such as activity, socialization, or medication use.

TENS units typically deliver symmetric or balanced asymmetric biphasic waves of 100- to 500-millisecond pulse duration, with zero net current to minimize skin irritation, and it may be applied for extended periods (**TABLE 10.12**). Three modes of action are theorized for the pain-relieving quality of this modality—gate control mechanism, endogenous opiate control, and central biasing. These are described further in Chapter 3. There are several guidelines when using electrical stimulation of sensory nerves for pain suppression:

- Electrodes may be placed close to the spinal cord segment that innervates a painful area.
- Electrodes may be placed on either side of the pain, over the pain, or, in the case of four pads, surrounding the pain.
- Placing electrodes over sites where the nerve becomes superficial and can be stimulated easily may stimulate peripheral nerves that innervate a painful area.
- Vascular structures contain neural tissue as well as ionic fluids that would transmit electrical stimulating current and may be most easily stimulated by electrode placement over superficial vascular structures.
- Electrodes can be placed over trigger points and acupuncture locations.
- Electrodes may be placed over specific myotomes, dermatomes, or sclerotomes that correspond to the painful area.
- Changing the settings from time to time prevents the user from getting used to one sensation.
- An intermittent setting can be used for longer treatments than a constant setting.

Russian Current or Medium-Frequency Alternating Current

Because medium-frequency stimulation is capable and effective at stimulating deep and superficial

TABLE 10.12 TENS Parameters and Effects

Type	Frequency (Hz)	Duration (microseconds)	Amplitude (mA)	Muscle Contraction
Conventional	50–150	20–100	10–30	Yes
Low frequency (acupuncture)	1–4	100–200	30–80	Yes
Burst	70–100/burst	40–75	30–60	Yes
Brief intense (high-intensity)	70–100/burst	15–200	30–60	No

tissues, Russian current—a type of neuromuscular electrical stimulation (NMES) or functional electrical stimulation (FES)—is believed to augment muscle strengthening by polarizing both sensory and motor nerve fibers, resulting in tetanic contractions that are painless and more forceful than those made voluntarily by the patient. The majority of E-stim units (such as the one shown in Figure 10.6) provide a variety of treatment modes. The medium frequency used with Russian current makes this type of current more comfortable than some others, especially if the current is delivered in bursts or if an interburst interval is used.

Interferential Current

Interferential current combines two high-frequency alternating waveforms that are biphasic. By using overall shorter pulse widths and higher frequencies of each waveform, interferential current can reach deeper tissues. Interferential current can be used for:[45–48]

- Muscle contraction (20–50 pps), together with the overall shorter pulse widths (100–200 μs)
- Pain management, using a frequency of 50–120 pps and a pulse width of 50–150 μs AcuStim pain relief, using a frequency of 1 pps

Biofeedback

Biofeedback is a modality that is widely used in musculoskeletal rehabilitation. The clinical conditions for which biofeedback is most commonly used include muscle reeducation, which involves regaining neuromuscular control and/or increasing the strength of a muscle; relaxation of muscle spasm or muscle guarding; and pain reduction. The biofeedback units most commonly used in physical therapy measure electromyographic (EMG) activity through skin surface electrodes, indicating the amount of electrical activity during muscle contraction. Specifically, the EMG activity measured is the change in potential difference or voltage associated with depolarization. The biofeedback units provide auditory or visual feedback to give the patient information on timing of recruitment and intensity of muscle contractions. In addition, using biofeedback can help the patient regain function of a muscle that may have been lost or forgotten following injury. It is important to remember that the various EMG biofeedback units do not use a universally accepted standardized measurement scale, so different brands may give different readings for the same degree of muscle contraction. Consequently, EMG readings can be compared only when the same equipment is used for all readings.

EMG skin surface electrodes come in a variety of sizes, and prior to the attachment of the surface electrodes, the skin must be properly prepared by removing oil and dead skin, along with excessive hair, to reduce skin impedance. The electrodes are placed as near to the muscle being monitored as possible so they are parallel to the direction of the muscle fibers, thereby reducing extraneous electrical activity. Three electrodes are typically used:

- Two active electrodes
- One reference or ground electrode

The electrodes are placed in a bipolar arrangement—the active electrodes are placed in close proximity to one another while the reference electrode is placed between the two active electrodes. As the active electrodes pick up electrical activity, the information is passed into a *differential amplifier*, which basically subtracts the signal from one active electrode from the other active electrode, thereby amplifying the difference between the signals. The ability of the differential amplifier to eliminate the common noise between the active electrodes is called the *common mode rejection ratio*. The external noise can be further reduced by using filters built into the unit. Signal sensitivity or signal gain can be set by the clinician on many units. If a high gain is chosen, the unit will have a high sensitivity for the muscle activity signal. This setting is typically used during relaxation training. Lower sensitivity levels are used more in muscle reeducation. Biofeedback units generally provide visual and/or auditory feedback relative to the quantity of electrical activity.

Muscle Reeducation

Biofeedback for muscle reeducation is useful in patients who perform poorly on manual muscle tests—those who can elicit only a fair, trace, or zero grade. The sensitivity setting is chosen by having the patient perform a maximum isometric contraction of the target muscle for 6 to 10 seconds. The gain is then adjusted such that the patient will be able to achieve the maximum on about two-thirds of the muscle contraction. The patient should be advised to look at the muscle when trying to contract it. Sometimes it may be necessary to move the active electrodes to the contralateral limb so the patient can practice the muscle contraction. Between each contraction, the patient should be instructed to completely relax the muscle so the feedback mode returns to baseline or zero prior to initiating another contraction. Ideally, a period of 5 to 10 minutes working with a single muscle or muscle group is most desirable to prevent fatigue.

Muscle Relaxation

The purpose of this approach is so that the patient is attempting to reduce the visual or auditory feedback to zero. During relaxation training, the patient should be given verbal cues that enhance relaxation of either individual muscles, muscle groups, or body segments. For example, biofeedback for relaxation is commonly used at the temporomandibular joint (TMJ) where monitoring of the frontal, temporal, and masseter muscles is used. As relaxation progresses, the spacing between the electrodes is increased and the sensitivity setting is adjusted from low to high. Both of these changes require the patient to relax more muscles, thus achieving greater relaxation.

Mechanical Modalities

Mechanical modalities are those that require a physical force to be imparted from either a machine or a clinician. They include spinal traction and intermittent mechanical compression. Mechanical forces direct cellular activities that influence tissue-level processes of growth, modeling, remodeling, and repair, with the ultimate outcomes being altered tissue mass, structure, and quality.[49] Almost all of the physical therapy interventions used in musculoskeletal rehabilitation introduce mechanical forces, regardless of whether the forces are generated extrinsically (e.g., joint or tissue mobilization, or the introduction of external therapeutic modalities such as mechanical traction) or intrinsically, within the individual themselves via the prescription of exercise therapy.[49]

Mechanical Spinal Traction

Mechanical spinal traction involves the use of a distraction force applied to the cervical or lumbar spine to separate or attempt to separate the articular surfaces between the zygapophysial joints and the vertebral bodies. A number of methods can be employed to apply a distraction to the spine including positional, manual, gravity-assisted, and inversion techniques, but this discussion will focus on the use of mechanical traction, which can be continuous or intermittent, because mechanical traction is the most common method. Despite historical recommendations for traction, several systematic reviews and clinical guidelines have concluded that the effectiveness of traction is limited.[50–52] For example, a 2016 randomized clinical trial found no evidence that mechanical lumbar traction in combination with an extension-oriented treatment was superior to extension-oriented exercises alone.[53] Furthermore, one study has summarized moderate evidence that traction should not be used in patients with acute or subacute nonradicular low back pain, or in patients with chronic low back pain.[51] Such conclusions can be misleading as it is possible that trials examining traction's efficacy may have been underpowered to detect clinically meaningful changes in pain or function.[54]

Indications for mechanical spinal traction have traditionally included the following:

- Nerve impingement
- Herniated or protruding disk
- Subacute joint inflammation
- Joint hypomobility
- Degenerative joint disease
- Paraspinal muscle spasm

Contraindications include the following:

- Joint instability or when motion is contraindicated
- Pregnancy (lumbar traction)
- Acute inflammatory response
- Acute sprain
- Osteoporosis
- Fracture
- Impaired cognitive function
- Central spinal stenosis

Whatever protocol or parameters are used, a call bell or cutoff switch should be issued to the patient, and the patient should be closely monitored for any adverse reaction.

Cervical Traction

Childs et al.[55] recommend cervical traction for patients with a primary complaints of neck pain and neck-related arm pain. In contrast, recent studies have found that subjects with a primary complaint of neck pain of at least 3 months in duration and without arm-related pain, who underwent 6 weeks of intermittent traction, reported no clinically meaningful differences in pain scores, neck range of motion, or disability scores compared to a control group. The decision to use cervical traction is typically based on whether a manual distraction of the neck relieves the patient's pain and/or neck-related arm symptoms.[56,57]

Cervical traction can be applied to the patient in sitting or supine position, although the supine position is generally preferred because it removes the weight of the patient's head and allows the patient to relax more. With intermittent traction, a duty cycle of either 1:1 or 3:1 is used. The treatment time varies according to condition—5 to 10 minutes is recommended for acute conditions and disk protrusion; 15 to 20 minutes is recommended for other conditions.[56,58,59] Two methods of cervical traction can be used: the halter method or the use of a sliding device (Saunders) (**FIGURE 10.7**). The

FIGURE 10.7 Saunders unit for cervical traction.

halter device should not be used with patients with TMJ dysfunction or with patients who suffer from claustrophobia. The traction force used is determined by the treatment goals and by patient tolerance.

Acute Phase The recommended treatment for disk protrusions, muscle spasm, and elongation of soft tissue is approximately 10–15 pounds of pull initially, with progression up to 7 percent of the patient's body weight, as tolerated for a duration of 6 to 10 minutes.[56] Actual joint distraction requires about 20–30 pounds of force.[60] It is important to remember that these are merely guidelines and consideration must always be given to the presenting body weight, which can vary significantly.

Halter Method The head halter is placed under the occiput and the mandible and is then attached to the traction cord directly or to the traction unit through a spreader bar. Generally, a starting position of approximately 20 to 30 degrees of neck flexion is used (a pillow may be used).[56] The PT may decide to apply traction more specifically by varying the angle of neck flexion:

- To increase the intervertebral space at the C1–C5 levels, approximately 0–5 degrees should be used.
- To increase the intervertebral space at the C5–C7 levels, 25–30 degrees of flexion is recommended.
- 15 degrees of flexion is recommended for zygapophysial joint separation.[61]
- 0 degrees of flexion is recommended for disk dysfunction.

Supine cervical traction has been found to be more efficacious than seated traction in the treatment of cervical spine disorders.[56,62] The clinician should ensure that the traction force is applied to the occipital region and not to the mandible.

Saunders Device When using the Saunders device, the clinician places the patient's head on a padded headrest (refer to Figure 10.7) in 20 to 30 degrees of neck flexion. The clinician adjusts the neck yoke so that it fits firmly just below the mastoid processes. A head strap is typically used across the forehead to secure the head in place.

☑ KEY POINT

The total treatment times to be used in cervical traction are only partially research-based and can range from 5 minutes to 30 minutes.

Lumbar Traction

A split table or other mechanism to eliminate friction between body segments and the table surface is a prerequisite to effective lumbar traction. In addition, a nonslip traction harness is needed to transfer the traction force comfortably to the patient and to stabilize the trunk while the lumbar spine is placed under traction. The patient should be suitably disrobed because clothing between the harness and the skin will promote slipping.

Generally, the harness is applied when the patient is standing next to the traction table, although it can be applied with the patient lying down:

1. The pelvic harness is applied so that the contact pads and upper belt are at or just above the level of the iliac crest.
2. The contact pads are adjusted so that the harness loops provide the required direction of pull, encouraging either lumbar flexion or extension.
3. The rib belt is then applied in a similar manner with the rib pads positioned over the lower rib cage in a comfortable manner. The rib belt is then fitted snugly.

The patient is then asked to lie on the table. While the most commonly indicated position for administering traction is supine with the knees and hips flexed in a moderate flexion bias, many PTs position the patient based on their clinical presentation. For example, consider a patient with a herniated disk versus a patient with degenerative joint disease. The patient with a disk protrusion (posterior or posterior lateral), should be positioned in the prone position with a normal to slightly flattened lumbar lordosis. In contrast, a patient with degenerative joint disease (lateral spinal stenosis), should be positioned using a flexion bias to allow for the largest intervertebral foramen opening.

☑ KEY POINT

In the supine position, the hip position can affect vertebral separation. As hip flexion increases from 0 to 90 degrees, the traction produces a greater posterior intervertebral and facet joint separation.

Overall, patient positioning should be determined by patient needs and comfort.

As per the PT's instruction, a continuous or intermittent mode is used. The total treatment times to be used in lumbar traction are only partially research-based and can range from 11 minutes to 20 minutes.[54] The force of the lumbar traction pull depends on the goals of treatment, and should be set with a force of less than half of the body weight for the initial treatment. Most PTs administer lumbar traction at loads of 30 to 40 percent, or 40 to 50 percent of the patient's body weight.[54] Following the treatment session, the patient is reexamined, and any changes in their symptoms are noted so the results can be used to determine the parameters for the next session, or whether traction should be discontinued.

Summary

Electrotherapeutic modalities, physical agents, and mechanical modalities are best used as adjuncts to other forms of intervention. Decisions on how a particular modality may best be used are established by both theoretical knowledge and practical experience, and, for the PTA, are based on the plan of care. For example, electrical stimulating currents may be used to stimulate motor nerves to elicit a muscle contraction, to stimulate sensory nerves to modulate pain, create an electrical field in the tissues to stimulate or alter the healing process, and to introduce chemical ions into superficial tissues for medicinal purposes. Modalities used in the initial acute injury phase should be directed at reducing the amount of inflammation and swelling that occurs. During the later stages, the goal is to increase blood flow to the area and increase connective tissue extensibility and strength.

Learning Portfolio

Case Study

As member of your rehab team, you are participating in a community presentation to help educate the public on the benefits that physical therapy can provide during the healing process. Your topic is to describe the benefits of physical agents and mechanical modalities. The information that you are providing has been discussed with and approved by your rehab team.

1. One of the most frequently asked questions by non-healthcare providers is when to use heat and when to use ice. Describe how you would explain when to use heat or ice and the benefits of each.
2. Someone in the audience tells you that a friend of theirs has a small electrical device that is used to help control pain. To what device is the audience member referring? How would you describe the potential benefits of this device?
3. During your discussion about cervical traction, you describe how the amount of force to be applied and the direction of pull is calculated. In layman's terms, describe how you would relate that information to the audience.

Review Questions

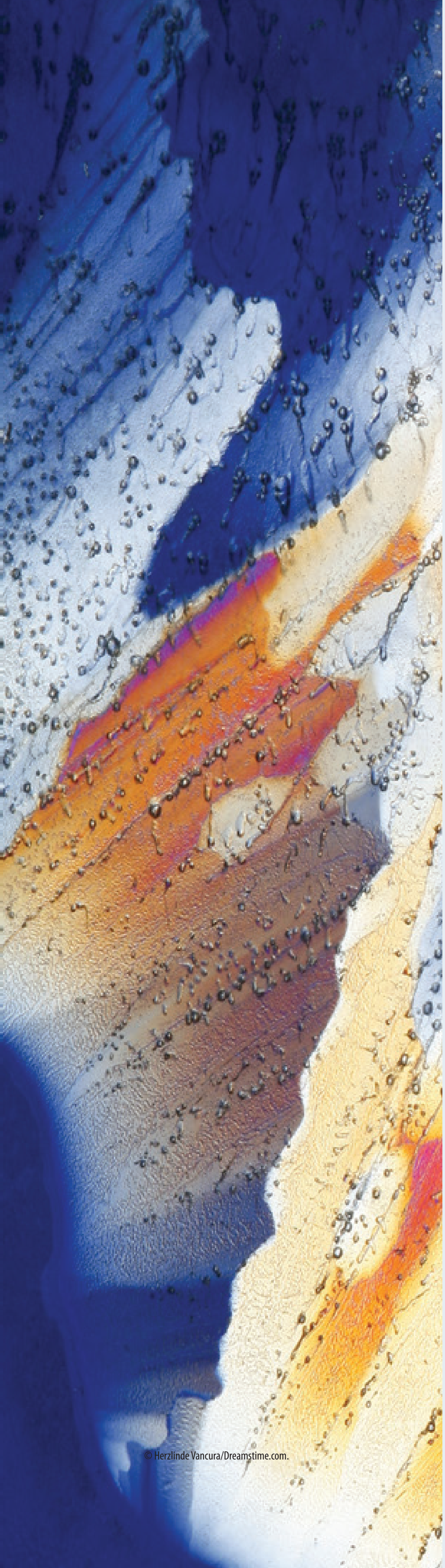
1. In comparing the use of cold pack and hot pack treatments, which of the following statements is false?
   a. Cold packs penetrate more deeply than hot packs.
   b. Cold packs and hot packs can both cause skin burns.
   c. Cold decreases spasm by decreasing sensitivity to muscle spindles, and heat decreases spasm by decreasing nerve conduction velocity.
   d. None of the above.
2. As part of your weekly inspection, you test the temperature of the water in your hydrocollator to make sure it is appropriate to avoid a burn to the patient. What is the ideal temperature range?

3. What is the function of the transducer in an ultrasound machine?
   a. Changes ultrasound waves into heat
   b. Changes electricity into ultrasound waves
   c. Changes ultrasound waves into sonic waves
   d. Changes light waves into sound waves
4. Which of the following waves are *not* found on the electromagnetic spectrum: ultraviolet, infrared, or ultrasound?
5. What units are used to measure electrical current?
6. An example of the transmission of heat by conduction is:
   a. Ultrasound
   b. Hot pack
   c. Diathermy
   d. None of the above
7. Which of the following applies to positive ions?
   a. They are attracted to the anode.
   b. They are produced by ionization of acids.
   c. They are attracted to the cathode.
   d. None of the above.
8. Which of the following tissues provides the best conductivity of electrical current?
   a. Skin
   b. Tendon
   c. Bone
   d. Muscle
9. The unit of power is represented by the:
   a. Ohm
   b. Volt
   c. Watt
   d. Ampere
10. Ultrasound waves cause the greatest rise in temperature in which of the following tissues?
    a. Adipose tissue
    b. Cartilage
    c. Tendon
    d. Protein
11. Ultrasound has what theoretical effect on membrane permeability?
    a. Increases permeability
    b. Decreases permeability
    c. Produces no change
    d. Creates alternating permeability
12. The minimal amount of current necessary to elicit a threshold contraction of muscle is:
    a. Chronaxie
    b. Rheobase
    c. Rheostat
    d. None of the above
13. In a strength-duration curve, the variable factor is:
    a. Rheobase
    b. Waveform
    c. Both A and B
    d. Neither A nor B
14. Local effects of a heat application include:
    a. Local analgesia
    b. Decreased blood flow in the area
    c. Decreased tissue metabolism
    d. None of the above
15. Local effects of cold applications include:
    a. Vasoconstriction
    b. Increased local circulation
    c. Increased leukocytic migration
    d. None of the above
16. You are treating a patient who demonstrates mild swelling on the dorsum of the hand and limited flexion of the metacarpophalangeal joints in all digits following an open reduction of a Colles' fracture 6 weeks ago. Which of the following would be the most appropriate heating agent to use?
    a. Hot pack
    b. Ultrasound
    c. Paraffin bath
    d. Massage
17. You are treating a patient with complaints of pain and muscle spasm in the cervical region. Past medical history reveals chronic heart disease and a demand-type pacemaker. Which of the following modalities should you avoid in this case?
    a. Hot pack
    b. TENS
    c. Mechanical traction
    d. Ultrasound
18. You are performing an in-service on the use of electrical equipment in the physical therapy department. Which of the following safety precautions would you stress to increase safety to the patient and therapist?
    a. Never use an extension cord.
    b. Check all of the leads for fraying.
    c. When using a device close to water, check that it is fitted with a ground fault interrupter.
    d. All of the above should be stressed.

References

1. Chapman CE. Can the use of physical modalities for pain control be rationalized by the research evidence? *Canadian Journal of Physiology and Pharmacology*. 1991; 69:704–12.
2. Feine JS, Lund JP. An assessment of the efficacy of physical therapy and physical modalities for the control of chronic musculoskeletal pain. *Pain*. 1997; 71:5–23.
3. McMaster WC, Liddle S, Waugh TR. Laboratory evaluation of various cold therapy modalities. *The American Journal of Sports Medicine*. 1978; 6:291–4.
4. Watson T. The role of electrotherapy in contemporary physiotherapy practice. *Manual Therapy*. 2000; 5:132–41.
5. Bell GW, Prentice WE. Infrared modalities. In: Prentice WE, editor. *Therapeutic Modalities for Allied Health Professionals*. New York: McGraw-Hill; 1998. p. 201–62.
6. Point M, Guilhem G, Hug F, Nordez A, Frey A, Lacourpaille L. Cryotherapy induces an increase in muscle stiffness. *Scandinavian Journal of Medicine and Science in Sports*. 2017; 00:1–7.
7. Smith JS, Sanusi B, Swarts A, Faesen M, Levin S, Goeieman B, et al. A randomized clinical trial comparing cervical dysplasia treatment with cryotherapy versus loop electrosurgical excision procedure in HIV-seropositive women from Johannesburg, South Africa. *American Journal of Obstetrics and Gynecology*. 2017; 217(2):183.
8. Belitsky RB, Odam SJ, Hubley-Kozey C. Evaluation of the effectiveness of wet ice, dry ice, and cryogen packs in reducing skin temperature. *Physical Therapy*. 1987; 67:1080–4.
9. Oosterveld FGJ, Rasker JJ, Jacobs JWG, Overmars HJA. The effect of local heat and cold therapy on the intraarticular and skin surface temperature of the knee. *Arthritis and Rheumatism*. 1992; 35:146–51.
10. Zemke JE, Andersen JC, Guion WK, McMillan J, Joyner AB. Intramuscular temperature responses in the human leg to two forms of cryotherapy: ice massage and ice bag. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 1998; 27:301–7.
11. Knight KL. *Cryotherapy in Sports Injury Management*. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics; 1995.
12. Aduayom I, Campbell PG, Denizeau F, Jumarie C. Different transport mechanisms for cadmium and mercury in Caco-2 cells: inhibition of Cd uptake by Hg without evidence for reciprocal effects. *Toxicology and Applied Pharmacology*. 2003; 189:56–67.
13. Merrick MA, Knight KL, Ingersoll CD, Potteiger JA. The effects of ice and compression wraps on intramuscular temperatures at various depths. *Journal of Athletic Training*. 1993; 28:236–45.
14. Cwynar DA, McNerney T. A primer on physical therapy. *Lippincott's Primary Care Practice*. 1999; 3:451–9.
15. Lehmann JF, Silverman DR, Baum BA, Kirk NL, Johnston VC. Temperature distributions in the human thigh, produced by infrared, hot pack and microwave applications. *Archives of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation*. 1966; 47:291–9.
16. Zissen MH, Wallace G, Stevens KJ, Fredericson M, Beaulieu CF. High hamstring tendinopathy: MRI and ultrasound imaging and therapeutic efficacy of percutaneous corticosteroid injection. *American Journal of Roentgenology*. 2010; 195:993–8.
17. Owers KL, Grieve PP, Mee S, Chew NS, Ansede G, Lee J. Ultrasound changes in the extensor pollicis longus and flexor pollicis longus tendons following open reduction and internal fixation of displaced intra-articular fractures of the distal radius. *The Journal of Hand Surgery, European Volume*. 2013; 38:129–32.
18. Pociask FD, Kahn J, Galloway K. Iontophoresis, ultrasound, and phonophoresis. In: Placzek JD, Boyce DA, editors. *Orthopaedic Physical Therapy Secrets*. Philadelphia: Hanley & Belfus, Inc.; 2001. p. 74–80.
19. Baskurt F, Ozcan A, Algun C. Comparison of effects of phonophoresis and iontophoresis of naproxen in the treatment of lateral epicondylitis. *Clinical Rehabilitation*. 2003; 17:96–100.
20. Hoppenrath T, Ciccone CD. Is there evidence that phonophoresis is more effective than ultrasound in treating pain associated with lateral epicondylitis? *Physical Therapy*. 2006; 86:136–40.
21. Schrepfer R. Aquatic exercise. In: Kisner C, Colby LA, editors. *Therapeutic Exercise Foundations and Techniques*, 5th ed. Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2002. p. 273–93.
22. Cox JS. The diagnosis and management of ankle ligament injuries in the athlete. *Athl Training*. 1982; 18:192–6.
23. Marino M. Principles of therapeutic modalities: implications for sports medicine. In: Nicholas JA, Hershman EB, editors. *The Lower Extremity and Spine in Sports Medicine. St. Louis*: C. V. Mosby; 1986. p. 195–244.
24. Martin G. Aquatic Therapy in rehabilitation. In: Prentice WE, Voight ML, editors. *Techniques in Musculoskeletal Rehabilitation*. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2001. p. 279–87.
25. Thein-Brody L. Aquatic physical therapy. In: Hall C, Thein-Brody L, editors. *Therapeutic Exercise: Moving Toward Function*, 2nd ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2005. p. 330–47.
26. Harrison RA, Bulstrode S. Percentage weight bearing during partial immersion in the hydrotherapy pool. *Physiotherapy Practice*. 1987; 3:60–3.
27. Harrison RA, Hillma M, Bulstrode S. Loading of the lower limb when walking partially immersed: implications for clinical practice. *Physiotherapy*. 1992; 78:164–6.
28. Haupenthal A, Ruschel C, Hubert M, de Brito Fontana H, Roesler H. Loading forces in shallow water running in two levels of immersion. *Journal of Rehabilitation Medicine*. 2010; 42:664–9.
29. de Brito Fontana H, Haupenthal A, Ruschel C, Hubert M, Ridehalgh C, Roesler H. Effect of gender, cadence, and water immersion on ground reaction forces during stationary running. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2012; 42:437–43.
30. Scott O. Stimulative effects. In: Kitchen S, Bazin S, editors. *Clayton's Electrotherapy*. London: WB Saunders; 1996. p. 61–80.
31. Low J, Reed A. *Electrotherapy Explained: Principles and Practice*. Oxford: Butterworth-Heinemann; 2000.
32. Delitto A, Rose SJ, McKowen JM, et al. Electrical stimulation versus voluntary exercise in strengthening thigh musculature after anterior cruciate ligament surgery. *Physical Therapy*. 1988; 68:660–3.
33. Laughman RK, Youdas JW, Garrett TR, Chao EYS. Strength changes in the normal quadriceps femoris muscle as a result of electrical stimulation. *Physical Therapy*. 1983; 63:494–9.
34. McMiken DF, Todd-Smith M, Thompson C. Strengthening of human quadriceps muscles by cutaneous electrical stimulation. *Scandinavian Journal of Rehabilitation Medicine*. 1983; 15:25–8.

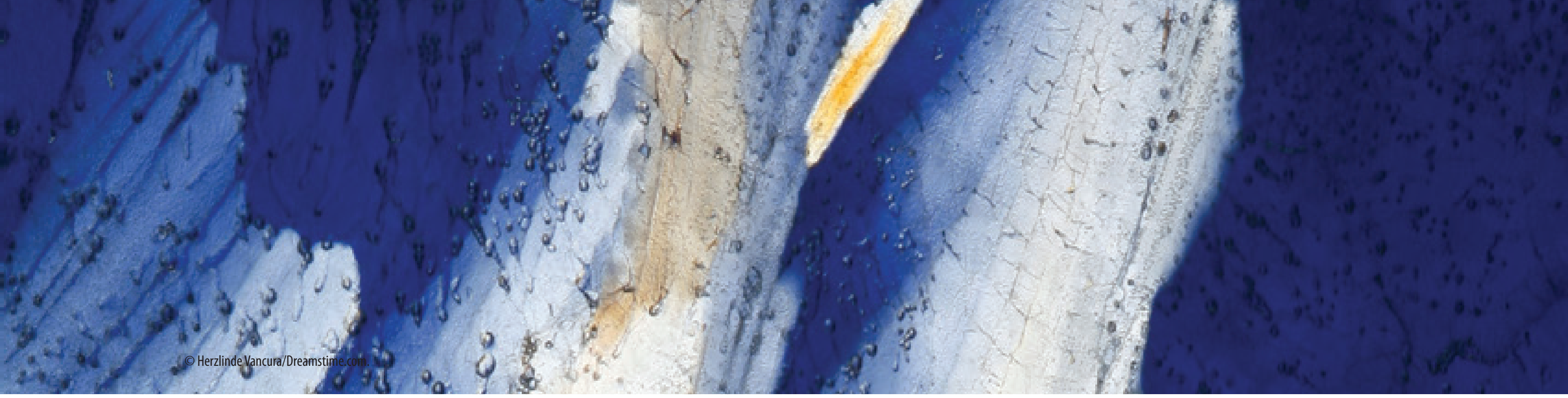
35. Snyder-Mackler L, Delitto A, Bailey SL, Stralka SW. Strength of the quadriceps femoris muscle and functional recovery after reconstruction of the anterior cruciate ligament. A prospective, randomized clinical trial of electrical stimulation. *Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery, American Volume*. 1995; 77:1166–73.
36. Gould N, Donnermeyer BS, Pope M, Ashikaga T. Transcutaneous muscle stimulation as a method to retard disuse atrophy. *Clinical Orthopaedics and Related Research*. 1982; 164:215–20.
37. Selkowitz DM. Improvement in isometric strength of quadriceps femoris muscle after training with electrical stimulation. *Physical Therapy*. 1985; 65:186–96.
38. Currier DP, Mann R. Muscular strength development by electrical stimulation in healthy individuals. *Physical Therapy*. 1983; 63:915–21.
39. Taylor K, Fish DR, Mendel FC, Burton HW. Effect of a single 30 minute treatment of high voltage pulsed current on edema formation in frog hind limbs. *Physical Therapy*. 1992; 72:63–8.
40. Bubna AK. Iontophoresis with topical 0.05% tretinoin for the management of recalcitrant palmar psoriasis: A report of two cases. *Indian Journal of Dermatology, Venereology and Leprology*. 2017; 83:119–21.
41. Ammendolia C, Cote P, Rampersaud YR, Southerst D, Budgell B, Bombardier C, et al. Effect of TENS versus placebo on walking capacity in patients with lumbar spinal stenosis: a protocol for a randomized controlled trial. *Journal of Chiropractic Medicine*. 2016; 15:197–203.
42. Moran F, Leonard T, Hawthorne S, Hughes CM, McCrum-Gardner E, Johnson MI, et al. Hypoalgesia in response to transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation (TENS) depends on stimulation intensity. *The Journal of Pain*. 2011; 12:929–35.
43. Karasuno H, Ogihara H, Morishita K, Yokoi Y, Fujiwara T, Ogoma Y, et al. The combined effects of transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation (TENS) and stretching on muscle hardness and pressure pain threshold. *Journal of Physical Therapy Science*. 2016; 28:1124–30.
44. Tseh W, Candler-Miller G, Goodwin N, Lineback R, O'Sullivan T, Patino S. Effectiveness of TENS unit on quadriceps muscular endurance during weight bearing exercise: 1696 Board #349, June 2, *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise*. 2016; 48:473.
45. Bae YH, Lee SM. Analgesic effects of transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation and interferential current on experimental ischemic pain models: frequencies of 50 hz and 100 hz. *Journal of Physical Therapy Science*. 2014; 26:1945–8.
46. Correa JB, Costa LO, Oliveira NT, Lima WP, Sluka KA, Liebano RE. Effects of the carrier frequency of interferential current on pain modulation and central hypersensitivity in people with chronic nonspecific low back pain: A randomized placebo-controlled trial. *European Journal of Pain*. 2016; 20:1653–66.
47. Albornoz-Cabello M, Maya-Martin J, Dominguez-Maldonado G, Espejo-Antunez L, Heredia-Rizo AM. Effect of interferential current therapy on pain perception and disability level in subjects with chronic low back pain: a randomized controlled trial. *Clinical Rehabilitation*. 2017; 31:242–9.
48. Franco KM, Franco YD, Oliveira NB, Miyamoto GC, Santos MO, Liebano RE, et al. Is interferential current before Pilates exercises more effective than placebo in patients with chronic nonspecific low back pain?: a randomized controlled trial. *Archives of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation*. 2017; 98:320–8.
49. Thompson WR, Scott A, Loghmani MT, Ward SR, Warden SJ. Understanding mechanobiology: physical therapists as a force in mechanotherapy and musculoskeletal regenerative rehabilitation. *Physical Therapy*. 2016; 96:560–9.
50. Savigny P, Watson P, Underwood M, Guideline Development Group. Early management of persistent non-specific low back pain: summary of NICE guidance. *BMJ*. 2009; 338:b1805.
51. Delitto A, George SZ, Van Dillen LR, Whitman JM, Sowa G, Shekelle P, et al. Low back pain. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2012; 42:A1–57.
52. Wegner I, Widyahening IS, van Tulder MW, Blomberg SE, de Vet HC, Bronfort G, et al. Traction for low-back pain with or without sciatica. *The Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*. 2013:CD003010.
53. Thackeray A, Fritz JM, Childs JD, Brennan GP. The effectiveness of mechanical traction among subgroups of patients with low back pain and leg pain: a randomized trial. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2016; 46:144–54.
54. Madson TJ, Hollman JH. Lumbar traction for managing low back pain: a survey of physical therapists in the United States. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2015; 45:586–95.
55. Childs JD, Cleland JA, Elliott JM, Teyhen DS, Wainner RS, Whitman JM, et al. Neck pain: clinical practice guidelines linked to the International Classification of Functioning, Disability, and Health from the Orthopedic Section of the American Physical Therapy Association. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2008; 38:A1–A34.
56. Madson TJ, Hollman JH. Cervical traction for managing neck pain: a survey of physical therapists in the United States. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2016; 1–39.
57. Madson TJ, Hollman JH. Cervical traction for managing neck pain: a survey of physical therapists in the United States. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2017; 47:200–8.
58. Jellad A, Ben Salah Z, Boudokhane S, Migaou H, Bahri I, Rejeb N. The value of intermittent cervical traction in recent cervical radiculopathy. *Annals of Physical and Rehabilitation Medicine*. 2009; 52:638–52.
59. Takasaki H, Hall T, Jull G, Kaneko S, Iizawa T, Ikemoto Y. The influence of cervical traction, compression, and spurling test on cervical intervertebral foramen size. *Spine*. 2009; 34:1658–62.
60. Chung CT, Tsai SW, Chen CJ, Wu TC, Wang D, Lan HC, et al. Comparison of the intervertebral disc spaces between axial and anterior lean cervical traction. *European Spine Journal*. 2009; 18:1669–76.
61. Wong AMK, Leong CP, Chen C. The traction angle and cervical intervertebral separation. *Spine*. 1992; 17:136–8.
62. Raney NH, Petersen EJ, Smith TA, Cowan JE, Rendeiro DG, Deyle GD, et al. Development of a clinical prediction rule to identify patients with neck pain likely to benefit from cervical traction and exercise. *European Spine Journal*. 2009; 18:382–91.



© Herzlinde Vancura/Dreamstime.com.

SECTION II

Therapeutic Activities


© Herzlinde Vancura/Dreamstime.com

CHAPTER 11

Therapeutic Exercise

CHAPTER OBJECTIVES

At the completion of this chapter, the reader will be able to:

1. Describe the most common therapeutic activities used in orthopaedics.
2. Outline how the body creates energy.
3. List some of the methods of measuring energy expenditure.
4. Calculate a person's body mass index (BMI).
5. Describe the concept and importance of specificity of training.

Overview

Therapeutic exercise is the foundation of physical therapy and a fundamental component of the vast majority of interventions. An understanding of how therapeutic exercise can be used to reestablish, maintain, and advance a patient's functional status by increasing a patient's strength, endurance, and flexibility is essential for the physical therapist assistant (PTA). To accomplish this, the PTA must be able to integrate and apply knowledge of anatomy, physiology, kinesiology, pathology, and the behavioral sciences. In addition, the PTA must know and be able to apply principles of motor learning and motor skill acquisition. When prescribed correctly, therapeutic exercise enables the patient/client to do the following:

- Remediate or reduce impairments
- Enhance function
- Optimize overall health
- Enhance fitness and well-being

Kinematic Chains

The term *kinematic chain* is used to describe the function or activity of an extremity or trunk in terms of a sequence of linked chains, such as the connected pelvis, thigh, leg, and foot of the lower extremity.[1] According to kinematic chain theory, each of the joint segments of the body involved in a particular movement constitutes a link in the kinematic chain. Because each motion of a joint is often a function of other joint motions, the efficiency of an activity can depend on how well these chain links work together.[2] The number of links within a particular kinematic chain varies, depending on the activity. In general, the longer kinematic chains are involved with more strenuous activities.

Closed Kinematic Chain

A variety of definitions have been proposed for a closed kinematic chain (CKC) activity. Kibler[3] defines a closed-chain activity as a sequential combination of joint motions that have the following characteristics:

- The distal segment of the kinematic chain meets considerable resistance.
- The movement of the individual joints, and translation of their instant centers of rotation, occurs in a predictable manner that is secondary to the distribution of forces from each end of the chain.

Examples of closed kinematic chain exercises (CKCEs) involving the lower extremities include the squat (**FIGURE 11.1**) and the leg press (**TABLE 11.1**). The activities of walking, running, jumping, climbing, and rising from the floor all incorporate CKC components. Examples of CKCEs for the upper extremities are the push-up and using the arms to help rise out of a chair.

FIGURE 11.1 Squat.

☑ KEY POINT

In most activities of daily living involving the lower extremities, the activation sequence involves a closed chain whereby the activity is initiated from a firm base of support and transferred to a more mobile distal segment.

Open Kinematic Chain

It is generally accepted that the difference between open kinematic chain (OKC) and CKC activities is determined by what movement occurs at the end segment. The traditional definition of an open-chain activity includes all activities that involve the end segment of an extremity moving freely through space, resulting in an isolated movement.

Examples of open-chain activities include lifting a drinking glass and waving. Open kinematic chain exercises (OKCEs) involving the lower extremity include

TABLE 11.1 Differential Features of OKC and CKC Exercises

Kinematic Chain Mode	Characteristics	Advantages	Disadvantages
Open	Single muscle group Single axis and plane Emphasizes concentric contraction Non–weight-bearing	Isolated recruitment Simple movement pattern Minimal joint compression	Limited function Limited eccentrics Less proprioception and joint stability with increased joint shear forces
Closed	Multiple muscle groups Multiple axes and planes Balance of concentric and eccentric contractions Weight-bearing exercise	Functional recruitment Functional movement patterns Functional contractions Increased proprioception and joint stability	Difficult to isolate More complex Loss of control of target joint Compressive forces on articular surfaces

Data from Greenfield BH, Tovin BJ: The application of open and closed kinematic chain exercises in rehabilitation of the lower extremity. *J Back Musculoskel Rehabil* 2:38–51, 1992.

the seated knee extension and prone knee flexion. Upper extremity examples of OKCE include the biceps curl (**FIGURE 11.2**) and the military press (refer to Table 11.1). Many activities, such as swimming and cycling, traditionally viewed as OKC activities, include loading of the end segment; yet the end segment is not "fixed" or restricted from movement. This ambiguity of definitions for CKC and OKC activities has produced a growing need for clarification of OKC and CKC terminology, especially when related to functional activities.

FIGURE 11.2 Biceps curl.

Exercise Physiology

Exercise physiology is the study of the acute and chronic adaptations of the body in response to a wide-range of physical exercise conditions. Muscles are metabolically active and must produce energy to move. The energy production occurs initially from the breakdown of certain nutrients from foodstuffs, and the energy is stored in a compound called adenosine triphosphate (ATP). ATP is produced in the muscle tissue from blood glucose or glycogen. Fats and proteins can also be metabolized to generate ATP. Glucose not needed immediately is stored as glycogen in the resting muscle and liver. Stored glycogen can be converted back to glucose and then transferred to the blood. If the duration or intensity of the exercise increases, the body relies more profoundly on fat stored in adipose tissue. During periods of rest and submaximal exertion, both fat and carbohydrates are used to provide energy in approximately a 60 to 40 percent ratio.

During physical exercise, energy turnover in skeletal muscle can increase by 400 times compared with muscle at rest, and muscle oxygen consumption can increase by more than 100 times.[4] The energy required for muscular activity is derived from the hydrolysis of ATP to ADP (adenosine diphosphate) and inorganic phosphate (P_i). Despite the large fluctuations in energy demand just mentioned, muscle ATP remains practically constant and demonstrates a remarkable precision of the system in adjusting the rate of the ATP-generating processes to the demand.[5] There are three energy systems that contribute to the resynthesis of ATP via ADP rephosphorylation. The relative contribution of these energy systems to ATP resynthesis has been shown to depend upon the intensity and duration of exercise.[6] It is worth noting that at no time during either rest or exercise does any single energy system provide the complete supply of energy. The three energy systems are as follows:

- *Phosphagen system.* The phosphagen system is an anaerobic process; that is, it can proceed without oxygen (O_2). Skeletal muscle cells contain phosphocreatine (PCr), and therefore, at the onset of muscular contraction, PCr represents the most immediate reserve for the rephosphorylation of ATP. The phosphagen system provides ATP primarily for short-term, high-intensity activities (e.g., sprinting) and is active at the start of all exercises regardless of intensity.[7] One disadvantage of the phosphagen system is that because of its significant contribution to the energy yield at the onset of near maximal exercise, the concentration of PCr can be reduced to less than 40 percent of resting levels within 10 seconds of the start of intense exercise.[8]
- *Glycolysis system.* The glycolysis system is an anaerobic process that involves the breakdown of carbohydrates—either glycogen stored in the muscle or glucose delivered in the blood—to produce ATP. Because this system relies upon a series of nine different chemical reactions, it is slower to become fully active than the phosphagen system. However, glycolysis has a greater capacity to provide energy than does PCr, and therefore it supplements PCr during maximal exercise and continues to rephosphorylate ADP during maximal exercise after PCr reserves have become essentially depleted.[7] The process of glycolysis can go one of two ways, termed fast glycolysis and slow glycolysis, depending on the energy demands within the cell. If energy must be supplied at a high rate, fast glycolysis is used

primarily. If the energy demand is not as high, slow glycolysis is activated. The main disadvantage of the fast glycolysis system is that during very high-intensity exercise, hydrogen ions dissociate from the glycogenolytic end product of lactic acid.[5] An increase in hydrogen ion concentration is believed to inhibit glycotic reactions and directly interfere with muscle excitation—contraction and coupling—which can potentially impair contractile force during exercise.[7]

- *Oxidative system.* As its name suggests, the oxidative system requires O_2 and is consequently termed the *aerobic system*. The oxidative system is the primary source of ATP at rest and during low-intensity activities. Although unable to produce ATP at an equivalent rate to that produced by PCr breakdown and glycolysis, the oxidative system is capable of sustaining low-intensity exercise for several hours.[7] However, because of an increased complexity, the time between the onset of exercise and when this system is operating at its full potential is around 45 seconds.[9]

☑ KEY POINT

In most activities, both aerobic and anaerobic systems function simultaneously, with the ratio being determined by the duration and intensity of the activity. In general, short duration high-intensity activities rely more heavily on the anaerobic system, whereas longer duration low intensity activities rely more on the aerobic system.

Measures of Energy Expenditure

The energy value of the food we eat can be quantified in terms of the calorie. A kilocalorie (kcal) is the amount of heat necessary to raise 1.0 kg of water by 1.0°C. A metabolic equivalent unit, or MET, is defined as the energy expenditure required for sitting quietly, talking on the phone, or reading a book; for the average adult this is approximately 3.5 milliliters of oxygen uptake per kilogram of body weight per minute (3.5 mL O_2/kg/min)—1.2 kcal/min for a 70-kg (154-pound) individual. METs are defined as multiples of resting energy metabolism. For example, a 2-MET activity requires two times the metabolic energy expenditure of sitting quietly. The harder the body works during the activity, the higher the MET (**TABLE 11.2**). Any activity that burns 3 to 6 METs is considered moderate-intensity physical activity. Any activity that burns more than 6 METs is considered vigorous-intensity physical activity.

TABLE 11.2 Metabolic Equivalents for Various Activities

Activity	MET Level
Mowing the lawn	6–7
Shoveling snow	6–7
Swimming	4–8
Walking (4 mph)	4.5–5.5
Dancing	4–5
Showering	3.5–4
Light gardening	3–4
Light housework	2–4
Cooking	2–3
Bathing	2–3
Walking (2 mph)	2–2.5
Dressing	2
Driving a car	1–2
Eating	1

☑ KEY POINT

The Borg scale is commonly used by healthcare professionals to help determine a patient's rate of perceived exertion (RPE). It is now recognized that an individual's perception of effort (relative perceived exertion) is closely related to the level of physiological effort (**TABLE 11.3**).[10,11] A high correlation exists between a person's RPE (multiplied by 10) and their actual heart rate. For example, if a person's RPE is 12, then 12 × 10 = 120; so the heart rate should be approximately 120 beats per minute.

The original Borg scale[12] rated exertion on a scale of 6 to 20, but a more recent scale designed by Borg, the Borg CR10 scale, includes a category (C) ratio (R) scale. Note that this calculation is only an approximation of heart rate, and the actual heart rate can vary quite a bit depending on age and physical condition. It is important, therefore, to closely monitor the patient's response to exercise.

TABLE 11.3 Rating of Perceived Exertion

Traditional Scale	Verbal Rating	Revised 10-Grade Scale	Verbal Rating
6		0	Nothing at all
7	Very, very light	0.5	Very, very weak
8		1.0	Very weak
9	Very light	2.0	Weak (light)
10		3.0	Moderate
11	Fairly light	4.0	Somewhat strong
12		5.0	Strong (heavy)
13	Somewhat hard	6.0	
14		7.0	Very strong
15	Hard	8.0	
16		9.0	
17	Very hard	10.0	Very, very strong (almost maximum)
18			
19	Very, very hard		Maximal

Adapted from Borg GAV: Psychophysical basis of perceived exertion. *Med Sci Sports Exerc* 14:377–81, 1992.

Basal Metabolic Rate (BMR)

The basal metabolic rate (BMR), the sum total of cellular activity in all metabolically active tissues while under basal conditions, is the minimum amount of oxygen utilized in order to support life. A person's BMR varies according to overall body size, gender, age, fat-free mass, and endocrine function. In general, the BMR tends to be 5 to 10 percent lower in women than in men. There is a decline in BMR of 2 to 3 percent per decade of life, which is most likely due to the reduction in physical activity associated with aging.

Body Mass Index

Body mass index (BMI) is a measure of body fat based on an individual's height and weight. Body fat can be divided into two types:

- *Essential fat*. Necessary for normal physiological function, serving as a source of energy and a storage site for some vitamins
- *Storage fat*. Stored in adipose tissue

☑ KEY POINT

Fat-free mass (FFM) includes muscle, skin, bone, and viscera.

Separate calculations are used for boys and girls ages 2 to 20, and for adult men and women. Further subdivisions can be made according to gender for adults.

The limitations of relying on the BMI include the following:

- It may overestimate body fat in athletes and others who have a muscular build.
- It may underestimate body fat in older persons and others who have lost muscle mass.

Two methods can be used to calculate BMI:

- BMI (kg/m^2) = weight in kilograms/height in meters^2
- BMI ($lbs/inches^2$) = (weight in pounds × 703)/height in inches^2

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> The categories of BMI are as follows:
>
> - Underweight = <18.5
> - Normal weight = 18.5–24.9
> - Overweight = 25–29.9
> - Obese = 30 or greater
>
> The standard margin of error when estimating percentage of body fat with the BMI is approximately 5 percent.

Bioelectrical Impedance Analysis

Bioelectrical impedance analysis (BIA) measures body composition by transmitting a small, safe electrical current through the body fluids. BIA measures the impedance or opposition to the flow of this electric current.

- Impedance is low in lean tissue, which comprises primarily intracellular fluid and electrolytes.
- Impedance is high in fat tissue.

Impedance is thus proportional to total body water volume (TBW). Prediction equations, previously generated by correlating impedance measures against an independent estimate of TBW, may be used subsequently to convert the measured impedance to a corresponding estimate of TBW. Lean body mass is then calculated from this estimate using an assumed hydration fraction for lean tissue. Fat mass is calculated as the difference between body weight and lean body mass.

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> BIA values are altered by numerous variables, including body position, hydration status, recent consumption of beverages and food, ambient air and skin temperature, and recent physical activity. Reliable BIA requires standardization and control of these variables.

Motor Learning

Motor learning is a complex set of internal processes that involve the somewhat permanent attainment and retention of a skilled movement or task through practice. Motor learning involves the following:

- *Performance*. Acquisition of a skill
- *Learning*. Acquisition and retention of a skill
- *Motor task*. There are three basic types of motor tasks:[13,14]
  - *Discrete*. A movement with a recognizable beginning and end; for example, throwing a ball or opening a door
  - *Serial*. A series of discrete movements that are combined in a particular sequence; for example, getting out of a chair when using crutches
  - *Continuous*. Repetitive, uninterrupted movements that have no distinct beginning and ending; for example, walking and cycling
- *Action*. The observable outcome resulting from the performer's purposeful interaction with the environment
- *Movement*. The means by which action is realized
- *Neuromotor processes*. The organizational mechanisms within the central nervous system (CNS) that constrain and sequence movement

A number of theories of skill acquisition have been proposed, including open versus closed skills and Gentile's taxonomy.

Open Versus Closed Skills

Open skills are temporal and spatial factors in an unpredictable environment. Closed skills are only spatial factors in a predictable environment. Both involve a single dimensional continuum. Using sports as an example, a closed skill could include shooting a foul shot in basketball. An example of an open skill would be playing a through ball in soccer. Open and closed skills can be viewed as a continuum, where the perceptual and habitual nature of a task determines whether the task is open or closed.

Gentile's Taxonomy of Motor Tasks

Gentile's taxonomy[15] is a two-dimensional classification system for teaching motor skills. Using the concept that motor skills range from simple to complex, Gentile expanded the popular one-dimensional classification system of open and closed skills to combine the environmental context with the function of the action.[13,15] The taxonomy consists of the following:

- *The environmental (closed or open) context in which the task is performed*. Regulatory conditions (other people, objects) in the environment may be either stationary (closed skills) or in motion (open skills).
- *The intertrial variability (absent or present) of the environment that is imposed on the task*. When the environment in which a task is set is unchanging from one performance of a task to the next, intertrial variability is absent—the environmental conditions are predictable. An example is walking

on just one type of surface. Intertrial variability is present when the demands change from one attempt or repetition of the task to the next; for example, walking over varying terrain.

- *The need for a person's body to remain stationary (stable) or to move (transport) during the task.* Skills that require body transport are more complex than skills that require no body transport because there are more variables to consider. For example, a body transport task could include walking in a crowded shopping mall.
- *The presence or absence of manipulation of objects during the task.* When a person must control an object, the skill level increases in complexity because the individual must do two things at once—control the object and adjust the body posture to fit the efficient movement of the object.

TABLE 11.4 illustrates Gentile's taxonomy of tasks. The simplest task is represented by 1A, and 4D represents the most complex task.

Stages of Motor Learning

There are three stages of motor learning:[16]

- *Cognitive.* This stage begins when the patient is first introduced to the motor task. The patient must determine the objective of the skill as well as the relational and environmental cues to control and regulate the movement. The patient is more concerned with what to do and how to do it. During this phase, the PTA should provide frequent and explicit positive feedback using a variety of forms of feedback (verbal, tactile, visual), and allow trial and error to occur within safe limits.
- *Associative.* The patient is concerned with performing and refining the skills. The important stimuli have been identified, and their meaning is known. Conscious decisions about what to do become more automatic and the patient concentrates more on the task and appears less rushed. During this phase, the PTA should begin to increase the complexity of the task, emphasize problem-solving, avoid manual guidance, and vary the sequence of tasks.
- *Autonomous.* This stage is characterized by a nearly automatic kind of performance; for example, when walking occurs automatically without conscious thought. During this phase, the PTA should set up a series of progressively more difficult activities the patient can perform independently, such as increasing the speed, distance, and complexity of the task.

Practice and Feedback

Practice—repeatedly performing a movement or series of movements in a task—is probably the single most important variable in learning a motor skill.[14,16] The various types of practice for motor learning are outlined in **TABLE 11.5**. Second only to practice, feedback is considered the second most important variable that influences learning. The various types of feedback associated with motor learning are outlined in **TABLE 11.6**.

TABLE 11.4 Gentile's Taxonomy

		Body Stability		Body Transport	
Environmental Context		**No Object Manipulation**	**Object Manipulation**	**No Object Manipulation**	**Object Manipulation**
Stationary regulatory conditions	No intertrial variability	1A	1B	1C	1D
	Intertrial variability	2A	2B	2C	2D
In-motion regulatory conditions	No intertrial variability	3A	3B	3C	3D
	Intertrial variability	4A	4B	4C	4D

TABLE 11.5 Types of Practice for Motor Learning

Type of Practice	Components	Description
Part versus whole	Part	Generally involves breaking down a task or skill into natural parts or segments. These parts/segments are then practised separately until they are learned, and then integrated to perform the task or skill in its entirety. For example, when practicing a tennis serve, the components of the serve (racket grip, ball toss, serving motion, etc.) are each practiced individually
	Whole	Typically involves performing the full task or skill in its entirety. For example, repeatedly performing the full tennis serve
Blocked and random	Blocked	Generally involves performing a single task or skill over and over in an environment of little variance. For example, consistently practicing a basketball free-throw in the same indoor environment.
	Random	Involves practicing multiple skills in a random order with minimization of the number of successive repetitions of any one skill - never doing the exact same thing twice. For example, practicing a basketball free-throw from different points on the court
Physical versus mental	Physical	A task or skill is performed. For example, performing a sequential tapping task on a computer's numerical keypad with their non-dominant hand
	Mental	The performance of a task or skill is mentally rehearsed, often using imagery techniques. For example, the subject imagines performing a sequential tapping task on a computer's numerical keypad with their nondominant hand

Data from Kisner C, Colby LA: Therapeutic exercise: Foundational concepts, in Kisner C, Colby LA (eds): *Therapeutic Exercise: Foundations and Techniques* (ed 5). Philadelphia, FA Davis, 2002, pp 1–36.

TABLE 11.6 Types of Feedback Associated with Motor Learning

Type of Feedback	Description
Intermittent versus continuous	*Intermittent:* Feedback occurs sporadically and arbitrarily. *Continuous:* Feedback in the form of kinesthesis or proprioception that is given constantly.
Terminal, delayed, and summary	*Terminal:* Given immediately after a task or skill is completed. *Delayed:* Is received sometime after the completion of a task or skill that involves the interaction of various parameters (e.g., video analysis). *Summary:* Provides information about the typical performance after several practice attempts of the movement or task.
Knowledge of performance (KP) versus knowledge of results (KR)	*KP:* Provides feedback related to specific movement component characteristics (e.g., displacement, velocity or joint motion) *KR:* Provides immediate feedback about the performance outcome of a task or skill

TABLE 11.6 Types of Feedback Associated with Motor Learning *(continued)*

Type of Feedback	Description
Intrinsic	Comes from within – feedback received as a direct result of producing a movement to the kinesthetic and proprioceptive senses.
Extrinsic (augmented)	Comes from an external source (e.g., therapist, teacher, or coach) either visually or audibly

Data from Kisner C, Colby LA: Therapeutic exercise: Foundational concepts, in Kisner C, Colby LA (eds): *Therapeutic Exercise: Foundations and Techniques* (ed 5). Philadelphia, FA Davis, 2002, pp 1–36.

Patient Safety

Many factors can have an impact on patient safety during therapeutic exercise. These include, but are not limited to, the following:[14]

- *The patient's health history and current health status*. Medical clearance is indicated before beginning an exercise program.
- *Medication side effects*. Many medications can adversely affect a patient's cardiopulmonary response to exercise, in addition to having a negative impact on balance and coordination.
- *The environment in which the exercises are performed*. Sufficient space, adequate lighting, and safe equipment are minimum requirements.
- *The ability to perform the correct technique at the appropriate intensity, speed, and duration*. Correct technique is important to avoid injury and to focus the exercises on the specific body part. Modifying the intensity, speed, and duration allows the clinician to increase strength, power, or endurance.
- *Ensuring the patient recognizes the instances when they are exercising too aggressively or which signs and symptoms warrant them contacting the PT or physician (signs and symptoms of infection, severe pain)*. The typical signs of overexercising include continued achiness or pain in the muscles and/or joints, fatigue, insomnia, elevated morning pulse rate, headaches, loss of appetite, and increased susceptibility to infections.

Summary

Therapeutic exercises are an essential component of the rehabilitation process. When used judiciously, and when designed with specific goals in mind, therapeutic exercises can improve overall function by increasing flexibility, joint mobility, and muscle performance. A number of exercise principles and methods of exercise progression must be utilized to ensure patient safety and maximum benefit.

Learning Portfolio

Case Study

You are supervising a number of patients in the exercise area. Your supervising physical therapist (PT) wants you to provide both open and closed kinematic chain exercises to a patient who underwent a total knee replacement recently and has been weight bearing as tolerated for a week.

1. Describe the differences between open and closed kinematic chain exercises.
2. Discuss the exercises you would suggest to the PT for this patient.

Your supervising PT asked that you keep one of the patients in the exercise area at an exercise intensity below the anaerobic threshold.

3. Describe the differences between aerobic and anaerobic exercises and how you would ensure that the patient stays at the correct level.

You are observing another patient perform a series of tasks. The patient appears to be concerned with performing and refining the skills that he has learned and his decision making appears to be more automatic and his performances are less rushed.

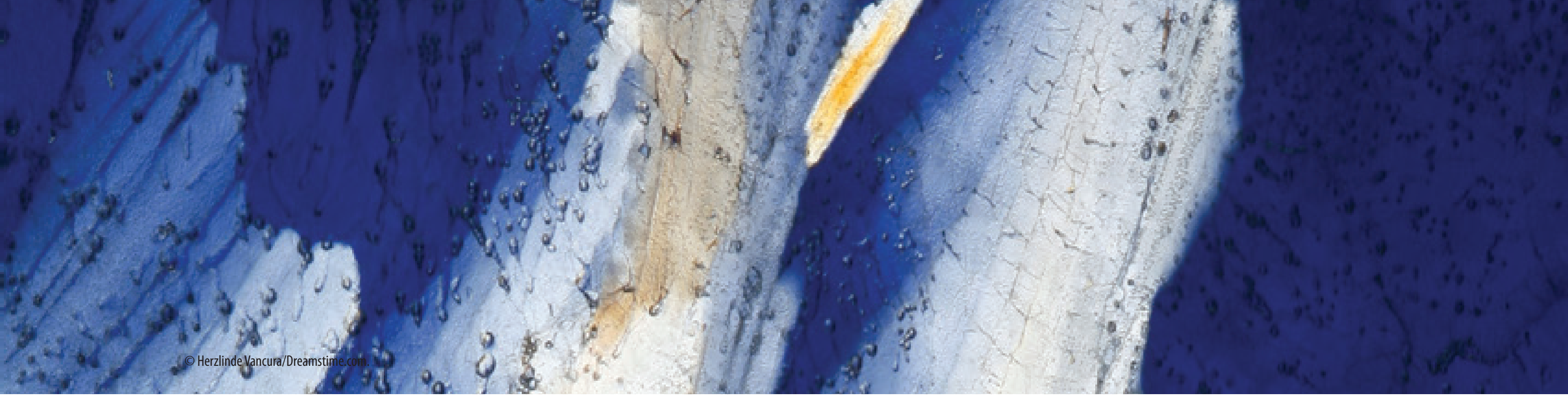
4. Based on the three stages of learning listed in this chapter, at which stage would you place this patient?
5. Having determined the correct stage of learning, describe how you would try to continue to challenge the patient.

Review Questions

1. Name the two energy systems that can be used during anaerobic activity.
2. The energy required for exercise is stored in which compound?
3. What is a metabolic equivalent unit (MET)?
4. What are the two types of fat found in the body?
5. What is considered to be a normal range body mass index score?
6. Which is more difficult for a patient to learn, an open skill or a closed skill?
7. What are the two types of flexibility addressed by physical therapy?

References

1. Neumann DA. Getting started. In: Neumann DA, editor. *Kinesiology of the Musculoskeletal System: Foundations for Physical Rehabilitation*. St. Louis: Mosby; 2002. p. 3–24.
2. Marino M. Current concepts of rehabilitation in sports medicine. In: Nicholas JA, Herschman EB, editors. *The Lower Extremity and Spine in Sports Medicine*. St. Louis: Mosby; 1986. p. 117–95.
3. Kibler BW. Closed kinetic chain rehabilitation for sports injuries. *Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation of North America*. 2000; 11:369–84.
4. Tonkonogi M, Sahlin K. Physical exercise and mitochondrial function in human skeletal muscle. *Exercise and Sport Sciences Reviews*. 2002; 30:129–37.
5. Sahlin K, Tonkonogi M, Soderlund K. Energy supply and muscle fatigue in humans. *Acta Physiologica Scandinavica*. 1998; 162:261–6.
6. Sahlin K, Ren JM. Relationship of contraction capacity to metabolic changes during recovery from a fatiguing contraction. *Journal of Applied Physiology*. 1989; 67:648–54.
7. McMahon S, Jenkins D. Factors affecting the rate of phosphocreatine resynthesis following intense *exercise. Sports Medicine*. 2002; 32:761–84.
8. Walter G, Vandenborne K, McCully KK, et al. Noninvasive measurement of phosphocreatine recovery kinetics in single human muscles. *American Journal of Physiology*. 1997; 272:C525–34.
9. Bangsbo J. Muscle oxygen uptake in humans at onset and during intense exercise. *Acta Physiologica Scandinavica*. 2000; 168:457–64.
10. Astrand PO, Rodahl K. *Physical Training: Textbook of Work Physiology*. New York: McGraw-Hill; 1986.
11. DeLorme T, Watkins A. *Techniques of Progressive Resistance Exercise*. New York: Appleton-Century; 1951.
12. Borg GAV. Psychophysical basis of perceived exertion. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise*. 1992; 14:377–81.
13. Schmidt R, Lee T. *Motor Control and Learning*, 4th ed. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics; 2005.
14. Kisner C, Colby LA. Therapeutic exercise: foundational concepts. In: Kisner C, Colby LA, editors. *Therapeutic Exercise Foundations and Techniques*, 5th ed. Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2002. p. 1–36.
15. Gentile AM. Skill acquisition: action, movement, and neuromotor processes. In: Carr J, Shepherd R, editors. *Movement Science: Foundations for Physical Therapy in Rehabilitation*. Gaithersburg, MD: Aspen; 2000. p. 111–87.
16. Magill RA. *Motor Learning and Control: Concepts and Applications*, 8th ed. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill; 2007.



CHAPTER 12

Improving Mobility

CHAPTER OBJECTIVES

At the completion of this chapter, the reader will be able to:

1. Define range of motion (ROM), flexibility, and accessory motion.
2. Describe the different components that impact ROM.
3. Describe strategies to increase ROM, flexibility, and accessory motion.
4. Describe the indications and contraindications for the various types of ROM and flexibility exercises.
5. Outline the indications and contraindications for continuous passive motion.
6. Describe strategies to increase flexibility using different techniques.

Overview

A major goal of rehabilitation is to improve patient mobility. Mobility involves a number of components that impact mobility: range of motion, flexibility, and accessory joint motion:

- *Range of motion* (ROM). Refers to the distance and direction in which a joint can move. Each specific joint has a normal ROM that is stated in degrees. Within the field of physical therapy, goniometry is commonly used to measure the total amount of available motion at a specific joint.
- *Flexibility.* Refers to the amount of passive extensibility the connective tissues demonstrate that permits a joint, or series of joints, to move through a complete, nonrestricted, injury-free, and pain-free ROM. Flexibility is dependent on a combination of connective tissue extensibility and neuromuscular control. Flexibility is typically measured using muscle-specific testing positions (e.g., standing toe-touch to assess hamstring length).
- *Accessory joint motion.* Can be defined as the amount of the arthrokinematic glide that occurs at the joint surfaces, called *joint play.* (See Chapter 9.) A number of factors can prevent a joint from moving through a full, unrestricted ROM, including the pliability and mobility of the soft tissues that surround a joint, the integrity of the joint surfaces, and increasing age.

In order to treat a loss of mobility, the clinician must determine the specific cause, (i.e., decreased ROM, decreased flexibility, or a loss of joint play), so that the intervention can be as specific as possible.

Improving Range of Motion

The purpose of a ROM exercise is to provide sensory stimulation and to prevent the development of contractures, adaptive muscle shortening, and shortening of the capsule, ligaments, and tendons. Movement about a joint, whether passive, active-assisted, or active, produces a load on the soft tissues. In the early stages of a rehabilitation progression, ROM exercises are prescribed using the following sequence: Passive ROM → Active-assisted ROM → Active ROM (TABLE 12.1). Before prescribing any ROM exercises, it is important that the clinician determines the purpose of the exercise, the ability of the patient to perform the exercise safely and correctly, the amount support necessary for the patient, whether stabilization is needed, and the effect of gravity. The most common prescription for ROM exercises in terms of sets and reps is to have the patient perform three sets of 10 repetitions three times per day. However, there is currently no evidence on what is the most optimal prescription in terms of volume (number of sets and reps), intensity (how hard the exercise is), duration (how long the exercise is performed) and frequency (number of times per day/week the exercise is performed) with ROM exercises.

Passive Range of Motion

Passive motions are movements performed in the anatomic ROM for the joint by the clinician or caregiver without the assistance of the patient. Passive motion normally demonstrates slightly greater ROM than active motion, as the barriers to active motion

TABLE 12.1 Indications and Contraindications for Range of Motion Exercises

Range of Motion Exercise	Description	Examples	Indications	Contraindications
Passive range of motion (PROM)	Movement of a motion segment within the unrestricted ROM, which is produced entirely by an external force, in so much as there is little to or no voluntary muscle contraction. PROM and passive stretching are not synonymous.	Pulleys, gravity, another part of the individual's own body, continuous passive motion devices, family members, or various household objects such as the floor, counters, or chairs	Prescribed when mobility must be performed without any muscular activation (acute, inflamed tissue). Exercise is performed within the available ROM to: ▪ Decrease pain and help in the healing process ▪ Prepare a patient for stretching ▪ Maintain joint connective tissue mobility and elasticity ▪ Assist circulation ▪ Prevent joint contracture	Extreme pain at rest Disruption of the healing process
Active-assisted range of motion (AAROM)	A form of AROM where assistance is provided mechanically or manually by an outside force because the prime mover muscle(s) need assistance to complete the motion.	Use of a cane, pulley, or sliding board	Indicated for patients who are unable to complete the ROM actively because of weakness resulting from trauma, neurological injury, muscular or neuromuscular disease, or pain. Prescribed when mobility must be performed with some muscular activation through the available ROM to: ▪ Increase circulation ▪ Promote healing of connective tissue, including bone ▪ Encourage motor learning, proprioception, and coordination	Extreme pain with movement Disruption of the healing process

TABLE 12.1 Indications and Contraindications for Range of Motion Exercises *(continued)*

Range of Motion Exercise	Description	Examples	Indications	Contraindications
Active range of motion (AROM)	Movement of a segment within the unrestricted ROM that is produced by active contraction of the prime mover muscle(s) crossing that joint.	Elbow flexion	Prescribed when mobility must be performed with muscular activation through the available ROM to: ▪ Promote healing of connective tissue, including bone ▪ Encourage motor learning, proprioception, and coordination ▪ Prepare connective tissues for functional activities and aerobic conditioning ▪ Initiate strengthening of weak muscles (fair strength [manual muscle grade of 3/5] or less) ▪ Foster independence	Disruption of the healing process

should occur earlier in the range than those to passive motion. Passive range of motion (PROM) does not prevent muscle atrophy and increase strength or endurance, nor does it assist circulation to the same extent that active, voluntary muscle contraction does. However, it does help maintain ROM and prevent secondary complications such as contractures and adaptive shortening of the connective tissues that surround a joint. When performing PROM, the physical therapist assistant (PTA) must be aware of a number of possible findings:

- Pain that occurs at the mid-end range of passive movement is suggestive of a capsular contraction or a scar tissue that has not been adequately remodeled.[1]
- Pain during passive overpressure is often due to the stretching or pinching of noncontractile structures, or stretching of the contractile structures.[2]

Therefore, PROM gives the clinician information about the integrity of the contractile and inert tissues, and with gentle overpressure, the *end-feel*. PROM exercises are usually used where there is paralysis, in the presence of a healing fracture, when the patient is comatose, or if pain is elicited during an active muscle contraction. When performing PROM as a treatment, the clinician must provide sufficient support to the extremity and move the extremity at an appropriate speed. For example, if the clinician is performing passive shoulder flexion on a patient who is 1-week post rotator cuff surgery, the patient's arm should be held at both the wrist and the elbow (**FIGURE 12.1**) and the arm should be moved slowly and gently so that the clinician can stop further motion if pain is reported. Figures 12.2 through 12.7 demonstrate PROM of

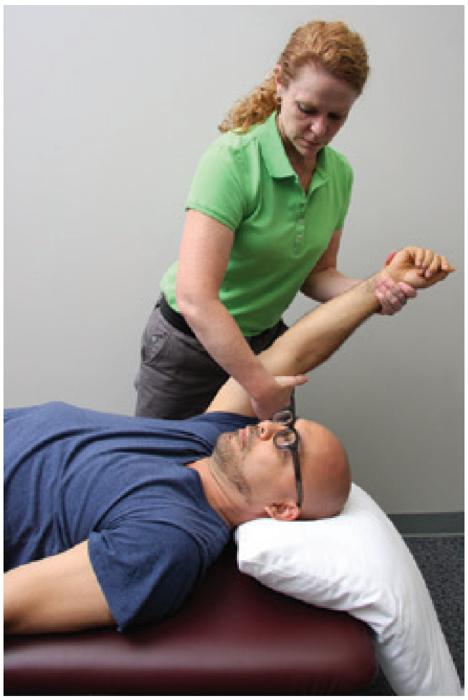


FIGURE 12.1 Passive shoulder flexion.

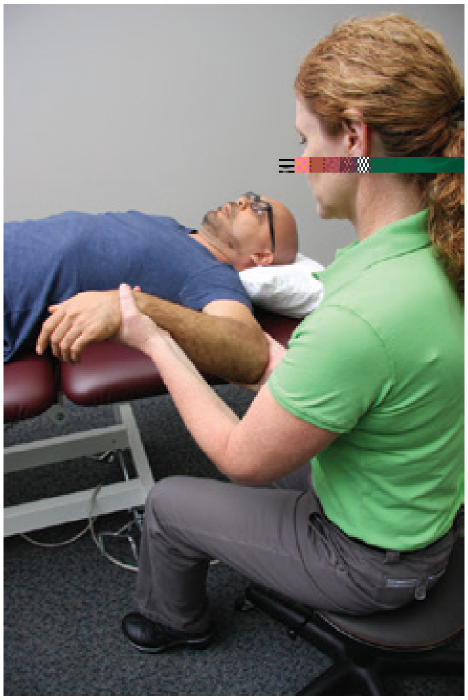


FIGURE 12.2 Passive shoulder internal rotation.

shoulder internal rotation (FIGURE 12.2), wrist extension (FIGURE 12.3), hip external rotation (FIGURE 12.4), hip extension (FIGURE 12.5), knee flexion (FIGURE 12.6), and ankle dorsiflexion (FIGURE 12.7). In addition to moving each joint through the straight planes of its motion, the clinician must incorporate three-dimensional or diagonal patterns of movement such as those used with proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation (PNF) techniques because most functional motions do not occur in straight planes. (See Chapter 9 for further details on PNF techniques.)

FIGURE 12.3 Passive wrist extension.

FIGURE 12.4 Passive hip external rotation.

Continuous Passive Motion

Continuous passive motion (CPM) refers to passive motion performed by a mechanical device that moves the joint slowly and continuously through a controlled ROM.[3] CPM machines have been designed for use on many body parts, including the hip, knee (most common), ankle, shoulder, elbow, wrist, and hand. The topic of CPM device use following surgery has been debated for years, with some surgeons advocating and others opposing its use.

☑ KEY POINT

CPM protocols vary significantly, ranging from 24 hours per day for as long as 1 month, to as little as 6 hours per day, after surgery. The CPM machine is calibrated in degrees of motion and cycles per minute.

FIGURE 12.5 Passive hip extension.

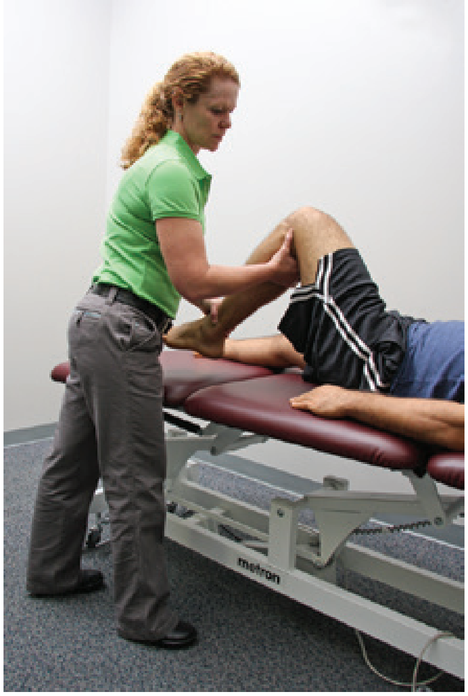


FIGURE 12.6 Passive knee flexion.

The use of a CPM device has been endorsed as a means to assist a more rapid recovery by improving ROM, decreasing length of hospital stay, and lowering the amount of narcotic use.[4–6] However, studies have shown that the effects of CPM devices on hospital stay, analgesia consumption, ROM, and complications have been variable:[7,8]

- Data support the use of CPM to reduce the rate of manipulation for insufficient ROM after total knee arthroplasty (TKA).
- The use of CPM has not been shown to result in more long-term increases in ROM than other methods of early movement and positioning.
- Although it appears that the use of a CPM device does help regain knee flexion quicker post-TKA, it is not as effective in the improvement of knee extension.
- Knee impairment or disability are not reduced with the use of a CPM at the time of discharge from the hospital.
- Due to standardized inpatient clinical pathways, the length of stay is not reduced by the use of a CPM device.
- Depending on the hospital used, the overall cost is not increased.
- Wound complications are probably not increased with the use of CPM, provided proper technique is used in wound closure.

☑ KEY POINT

It is still not clear whether ROM is achieved faster and whether the prevalence of deep vein thrombosis (DVT) and analgesics use are decreased with CPM.

FIGURE 12.7 Passive ankle dorsiflexion.

The desired results for CPM include the following:

- Decrease soft tissue stiffness
- Increase short-term ROM, which may result in early discharge from the hospital
- Promote healing of the joint surfaces (promotes cartilage growth) and soft tissue
- Prevent adhesions and contractures and thus joint stiffness
- Decrease postoperative pain

Contraindications include the following:

- Nonstable fracture sites
- Excessive edema
- Patient intolerance

Application and Patient Preparation

First, the procedure is explained to the patient. Any wound area must be covered. The clinician adjusts the unit so the patient's anatomic joint is aligned with the mechanical hinge joint of the machine. The patient's limb is secured in the machine using the safety straps. The clinician sets the beginning and end range of motion degrees, and then turns the unit on. Typically a low arc of 20 to 30 degrees is used initially and is progressed 10 to 15 degrees per day as tolerated. The rate of motion is typically one cycle per 45 seconds to 2 minutes. The patient is monitored during the first few minutes to ensure correct fit and patient comfort. Treatment duration varies from 1 hour three times per day to 24 hours per day.

Active-Assisted Range of Motion

Active-assisted range of motion (AAROM) is performed when the patient requires assistance from an external force to move because of pain, fatigue, weakness, or changes in muscle tone. The assistance may be provided mechanically, manually, or by gravity. If being provided manually by the clinician, the same hand placements as those used for PROM are typically used for AAROM. However, unlike PROM, when the clinician is providing all of the support, with AAROM the clinician attempts to provide the least amount of assistance necessary so that the patient is able to perform a voluntary muscle contraction to the maximum extent he or she is able. Therefore, the goal of AAROM is for the patient to be allowed to perform at a level that is challenging without being detrimental. The support provided should be sufficient to control pain, relieve stress on the tissues by controlling the weight of the extremity or body part, or to compensate for the level of fatigue or loss of muscle strength.

Active Range of Motion

Active range of motion (AROM) is performed by the patient independently. AROM can provide the clinician with a lot of useful information including the willingness of the patient to move, the quantity and quality of motion, the pattern of motion restriction (e.g., capsular or noncapsular), the integrity of the contractile and the inert tissues, and the presence of muscle substitutions. AROM does very little to maintain or increase strength or develop skill or coordination, except in the movement patterns used. AROM exercises are prescribed when a patient is able to contract voluntarily, control, and coordinate movement when such activity is not contraindicated. Contraindications to AROM include a healing surgical or fracture site, severe and acute soft tissue trauma, and, on occasion, cardiopulmonary dysfunction. A number of conditions require caution with AROM exercises, including significant pain or joint swelling, acute rheumatoid arthritis, or if the symptoms are intensified with the exercise.

☑ KEY POINT

It is important to remember when making the transition through the various levels of ROM exercises (e.g., from PROM to AAROM or AROM) that gravity can have a significant impact, especially on those individuals with weak musculature. These people may require assistance when the segment moves up against gravity or moves down with gravity. For example, if the limb is supported, an active exercise performed parallel to the ground negates the effect of gravity.

The mobility activities chosen are typically performed initially in cardinal planes before progressing to multiple planes using functional movement patterns. Once the multiple planes and functional movement patterns are tolerated well by the patient, a resistive exercise progression is initiated.

Improving Flexibility

Normal flexibility is dependent upon sound joint arthrokinematics, full ROM (normal osteokinematics), and soft tissue extensibility. It also depends on the neurophysiological and mechanical properties of the tissues involved, and how those tissues react to physical loading. (See Chapter 2.) A loss of flexibility can be produced by any of the following:

- Restricted mobility
- Poor posture
- Tissue damage secondary to trauma
- Prolonged immobilization
- Disease
- Hypertonia (the muscle will feel hard and may stand out from those around it).

Flexibility can be measured using the following lower extremity and upper extremity tests:

- *Straight leg raise*. This test is used to assess the range of hip flexion with the knee fully extended. The patient is positioned in supine on a flat surface. The tested leg is placed in full knee extension and is then raised as far as possible while maintaining the knee extension and ensuring that the pelvis does not lift off the surface throughout the movement. At the point of maximum stretch, another clinician measures the angle of displacement of the leg from the horizontal using a goniometer, with the fulcrum held over the greater trochanter of the leg being tested, and the moving arm aligned with the midline of the femur, using the lateral epicondyle as a reference point (**FIGURE 12.8**). Two

FIGURE 12.8 Straight leg raise.

FIGURE 12.10 Angle of hip flexion.

separate trials are performed with the mean of the two recorded as the hip flexion score.

- *Sit and reach*. This test is used to correctly measure the flexibility of the lower back and hamstring muscles. The patient is positioned in sitting on the floor with the knees extended. The soles of the feet are placed flat on a box (approximately 9 inches [23 centimeters] high) (**FIGURE 12.9**). The patient reaches forward with both hands as far as possible while the clinician ensures that the hands stay at the same level, not one reaching farther forward than the other. The farthest position of the hands is held for 1 to 2 seconds while the distance between the fingertips and the toes is recorded. If the fingertips do not reach the toes, the score is given as a negative; whereas, if the fingertips reach beyond the toes, the score is given as a positive.
- *Modified Thomas*. This test is used to obtain measures of flexibility for the iliopsoas and quadriceps muscles. The patient is positioned in sitting at the very edge of a treatment table, and the patient then rolls back to lie supine onto the table while pulling both knees to the chest, so that the lumbar spine is flat on the table and the pelvis is posteriorly rotated. While holding the opposite hip in maximum flexion with both arms, the patient lowers the limb to be tested toward the floor. Two angles are measured using a goniometer:

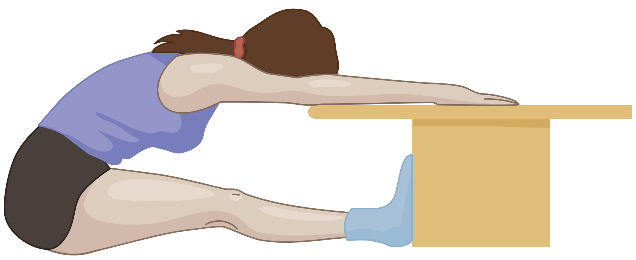


FIGURE 12.9 Sit and reach.

1. The angle of hip flexion (length of the iliopsoas), by aligning the stationary arm of the goniometer with the lateral midline of the pelvis. The moving arm is lined up with the midline of the femur using the lateral epicondyle as a reference point (**FIGURE 12.10**).
2. The knee flexion angle (length of the rectus femoris). The fulcrum is placed over the lateral epicondyle of the femur, and the stationary arm of the goniometer is lined up with the lateral midline of the thigh, using the greater trochanter as a reference point. The moving arm is lined up with the lateral midline of the fibula, using the lateral malleolus as the reference point (**FIGURE 12.11**).

- *Floor touch*. This test measures the flexibility of the lower back and hamstring muscles. The patient stands erect, with the hands at the sides and feet placed together. The patient leans forward slowly and attempts to touch the floor with the fingertips for 10 seconds. Bouncing and jerking is not allowed.
- *Groin flexibility (butterfly)*. As its name suggests, this is a simple test of groin flexibility, but it also

FIGURE 12.11 Knee flexion angle.

assesses hip external rotation flexibility. The patient is positioned in sitting with the knees flexed and together, and the feet flat on the floor. The patient lets the knees separate and drop sideways as far as possible while keeping the feet together so that the soles of the feet touch together and face each other. The patient then grasps both ankles and pulls them toward the body as far as possible. The clinician measures the distance from the heels to the groin.
- *Shoulder circumduction*. This is a simple test of shoulder flexibility. A cord, adjusted to a length equal to the participant's shoulder width (from acromion to acromion) is held in front by the patient so that the shoulders are flexed to 90 degrees. Holding the cord and maintaining the arms in the extended position, the patient raises the cord from the shoulder flexed position, over the head and as far back as possible while preventing the arms from fanning out more than is physically necessary to complete the movement.
- *Back scratch*. This test measures general shoulder ROM. The patient is positioned in sitting or standing. The patient places one hand behind the head and back over the shoulder, and the back of the other hand on the lower back. The patient then attempts to bring both hands together by sliding the hands along the spine, attempting to touch or overlap the middle fingers of both hands. The clinician measures the distance between the tips of the middle fingers. If the fingertips touch then the score is zero. If they do not touch, the distance between the fingertips is measured (a negative score), if they overlap, the distance by how much is measured (a positive score).

Stretching techniques are designed to improve the extensibility of both contractile and noncontractile tissues, including neural tissues. (See Chapter 9.) Flexibility training must involve techniques that stretch both the contractile and inert tissues. (See Chapter 2.) It is important to make a distinction between stretching and warm-up, as the two are not synonymous but are often confused. While stretching places the neuromusculotendinous units and their fascia under tension, a warm-up requires the performance of an activity that raises the total body and muscle temperatures to prepare the body for exercise.

Stretching

The following are indications for stretching:

- Loss of soft tissue extensibility due to adhesions, contractures, and scar tissue formation
- Restricted motion in an area that may lead to otherwise preventable structural deformities
- Muscle weakness and adaptive shortening of opposing tissue
- To help minimize postexercise muscle soreness

Contraindications include the following:

- Limited joint motion due to a bony block
- If the adaptive shortened soft tissue is providing necessary joint stability in lieu of normal structural stability or neuromuscular control, or is enabling a patient with paralysis or severe muscle weakness to perform specific functional skills otherwise not possible[9]
- An acute inflammatory or infectious process[9]
- Sharp or acute pain with joint movement or muscle elongation[9]
- A hematoma or other indication of tissue trauma[9]
- Hypermobility[9]

Effects of Manual Stretching

When soft tissue is stretched, a number of changes can occur, depending on the duration of the stretch:

- *Elasticity*. A property of connective tissues that allows the tissues to return to their prestretch resting length immediately after a short duration stretch force has been removed.[9,10]
- *Viscoelasticity*. The viscous properties of a tissue allow permanent deformation and are considered time-dependent and rate of change–dependent. The rate of deformation is directly proportional to the amount of force applied. Stress relaxation and creep (see Chapter 2) are examples of viscoelastic properties. Stress relaxation occurs if a tissue is stretched to a fixed length tolerable to the patient; the tissue will relax and less force will then be necessary for the tissue to remain at the same length. (See Chapter 4.) If the amount of applied force is kept constant, the tissue will elongate due to the process known as creep.[9,11]
- *Plasticity*. The tendency of soft tissue to assume a new and greater length after the stretch force has been removed.[9,12] The muscle–tendon unit contains active (contractile) and passive (noncontractile) components. The active components occur as an interaction between the contractile proteins (actin and myosin) within the muscle fibers. (See Chapter 2.) The passive components comprise the connective tissue structures within and around the muscle (e.g., sarcolemma, perimysium, epimysium, endomysium), the associated tendon and its insertion, and the connections between the sarcolemma and the tendon.

Changes in the neurophysiological properties of the muscle–tendon unit also occur with stretching, particularly with the muscle spindle and Golgi tendon organ. (See Chapter 3.)

Muscle Spindle When a stretch force is applied, the intrafusal muscle fibers of the muscle spindle sense the changes in length and they activate the extrafusal muscle fibers, thereby activating the stretch reflex and increasing tension in the muscle being stretched. When the stretch reflex activates the muscle being lengthened, it also may decrease activity in the muscle on the opposite side of the joint. This is referred to as reciprocal inhibition.[13–15] To minimize activation of the stretch reflex and the subsequent increase in muscle tension and reflexive resistance to muscle lengthening during stretching procedures, a slowly applied, low intensity, prolonged stretch is considered preferable to a quickly applied, short duration stretch.[9]

Golgi Tendon Organ When a stretch is produced in a muscle, particularly a prolonged stretch, the Golgi tendon organs (GTOs) in the tendons of that muscle respond to the increase in tension. (See Chapter 3.) This response of the GTO has an inhibitory impact (autogenic inhibition) on the level of muscle tension in the muscle tendon unit in which it lies.[16]

Methods of Stretching

When applying a stretch, a number of considerations must be taken into account. Proper alignment or positioning of both the patient and the specific muscles and joints to be stretched is necessary for patient comfort and stability during stretching.[9] For example, to stretch the rectus femoris, the lumbar spine and pelvis should be aligned in a neutral position (to prevent anterior tilting and hyperextension of the spine) as the knee is flexed and the hip is extended. To achieve an effective stretch of the specific muscle or muscle group, the proximal or distal attachment site of the muscle tendon unit being elongated must be stabilized. In addition, the following determinants must be considered:

- *Intensity*. There is general agreement that stretching should be applied at a low intensity by means of a low load to promote patient comfort, minimize voluntary or involuntary muscle guarding, and achieve optimal rates of improvement in ROM.[17]
- *Duration*. The duration (single cycle) refers to the period of time a stretch force is applied and shortened tissues are held in a lengthened position. In general, the shorter the duration of a single stretch cycle, the greater the number of repetitions applied during a stretching session.[9] However, despite numerous studies, there continues to be a lack of agreement on the ideal combination of the duration of a single cycle and the number of repetitions of stretch that should be applied in the daily stretching program to achieve the greatest and most sustained stretch-induced gains in ROM.[9]
- *Speed*. To ensure optimal muscle relaxation and prevent injury to tissues through activity of the stretch reflex, the speed of stretch should be slow and the stretch force should be applied and released gradually.[9]
- *Frequency*. The frequency refers to the number of sessions per day or per week a patient carries out a stretching regimen. To date, it is not possible to draw evidence-based guidelines from the literature as to the ideal frequency.
- *Mode*. The mode refers to the form of stretch or the manner in which stretching exercises are carried out (e.g., manual, mechanical, passive, active, self-stretching).[9]

There are four broad categories of stretching techniques that can be used to increase the extensibility of the soft tissues: static, cyclic, ballistic, and proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation stretching.

Static Stretching Static stretching is used to increase the pliability of tissues that have become adaptively shortened due to injury (scar tissue or adhesions) or immobility (contracture). Static stretching involves the application of a steady force for a sustained period at a point in the range just past tissue resistance. The duration of static stretch is based on the patient's tolerance and response during the stretching procedure. Long-duration, low-load static stretching combined with thermal agents to preheat the tissues is the safest form of stretching and is recommended in older patients due to decreased extensibility in the connective tissues (**TABLE 12.2**).

☑ KEY POINT

Small loads applied for long periods produce greater residual lengthening than heavy loads applied for short periods.[18]

The advantages of static stretching include the reduced likelihood of exceeding strain limits of the tissue being stretched and a reduced potential for muscle soreness.[19,20] Research has shown that the tension created in muscle during static stretching is approximately half that created during ballistic stretching.[21] Effective stretching, in the early phase, should be

TABLE 12.2 Guidelines for Applying a Low-Load, Prolonged Stretch

Sequence	Description	Rationale
I	The involved structure is preheated using either moist heat or ultrasound.	To increase extensibility of connective tissue
II	The involved structure is placed in a comfortable gravity-assisted position of slight but not maximum stretch.	To promote relaxation
III	A moist heat application is applied for the entire course of treatment (20–60 minutes).	To increase extensibility of connective tissue To promote relaxation To increase blood flow
IV	A low-load stress/weight (gravity alone may be sufficient) is applied gradually. The patient should be allowed to rest or recover for a few minutes during the course of treatment if the sensation of stretch becomes too uncomfortable.	To enhance a long-lasting change in motion
V	The low-load stress/weight is removed but the moist heat application is continued for a further 5–10 minutes as the patient is allowed to recover.	To increase extensibility of connective tissue To promote relaxation To increase blood flow
VI	Isometric contractions and passive stretching are performed.	To enhance strength gains at the new end of ROM

performed hourly, but with each session lasting only a few minutes. In healthy young and/or middle-aged adults, stretch durations of 15, 30, 45, or 60 seconds or 2 minutes to lower extremity musculature has been shown to produce significant gains in ROM.[22–26] Static stretches can be applied using a manually applied force, weighted traction, specific low-load braces, or pulley systems that have been modified to provide this type of stretching. Stretching needs to occur a minimum of two times per week, and approximately 6 weeks of stretching are necessary to establish significant increases in muscular flexibility.[20]

☑ KEY POINT

Heat should be applied to increase intramuscular temperature prior to, and during, stretching. This heat can be achieved with either low-intensity warm-up exercises or through the use of thermal modalities.

The question of whether muscle flexibility or stretching before activity results in a decrease in muscle injuries has yet to be answered. In addition, there is limited scientific literature to determine the appropriate place for stretching in an exercise program. In one study, static stretching was done before, after, and both before and after each workout.[27] All produced significant increases in ROM.[27]

Cyclic Stretching Intermittent cyclic stretching involves a relatively short duration stretch that is repeatedly but gradually applied, released, and then reapplied.[9] The end range stretched force is applied at a slow velocity, with a relatively low intensity, and in a controlled manner. There appears to be no consensus as to the duration of the stretch (5–30 seconds) or the optimal number of repetitions (typically based on patient tolerance) during a treatment session.

Ballistic Stretching This technique of stretching uses high-velocity, bouncing movements at the end of range to stretch a particular muscle. The bouncing movements at the end of range are slight initially but are progressively increased over several repetitions. Due to the increased potential for injury using this technique, it is not appropriate for all patient populations.

In comparisons between the ballistic and static methods, two studies[34,35] have found that both produce similar improvements in flexibility. However, ballistic stretching appears to cause more residual muscle soreness or muscle strain than techniques that incorporate relaxation.[28,29]

☑ KEY POINT

Some areas of the body are difficult to stretch adequately using a lengthening technique. In these instances, techniques of localized, manual release, using varying degrees of manual pressure along the length of the muscle and myofascial tissue, may need to be used.

Proprioceptive Neuromuscular Facilitation Stretching Proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation (PNF) stretching is one of the most effective forms of flexibility training for increasing ROM. PNF techniques can be passive (no associated muscular contraction) or active (performed with a voluntary muscle contraction). (See Chapter 9.) However, PNF stretching techniques are not appropriate in patients with paralysis or spasticity resulting from neuromuscular diseases or injury.

☑ KEY POINT

The majority of studies have revealed the PNF techniques to be the most effective stretching techniques for increasing ROM through muscle lengthening when compared to methods that use the static or slow sustained, and the ballistic or bounce.[30–32]

The different techniques of PNF stretching all facilitate muscular inhibition through autogenic inhibition and are therefore more appropriate where muscle spasm limits motion and less appropriate for stretching fibrotic contractures.[32]

☑ KEY POINT

- *Reciprocal inhibition.* The process by which muscles on one side of a joint relax (are inhibited) to accommodate contraction on the other side of the joint.
- *Autogenic inhibition.* Controlled by the Golgi tendon organ, the role of which is to monitor tension within a muscle. (See Chapter 3.) The stimulation of the Golgi tendon organ by a muscle contraction causes the inhibition or relaxation of the muscle in which it is located.

Often, in PNF, an isometric contraction is referred to as *hold* and a concentric muscle contraction is referred to as *contract*.

Postisometric Relaxation A commonly used technique in PNF and other manual techniques is postisometric relaxation (PIR). PIR refers to the effect of the subsequent reduction in tone experienced by a muscle, or group of muscles, after brief periods during which an isometric contraction has been performed.[33] The basis for PIR is related to the theory behind contract–relax in that light, brief isometric contractions of a hypertonic muscle externally stretch the nuclear bag fibers of the muscle spindles. This stretching, in turn, allows a lengthening of muscle during the postisometric phase, without stimulating myostatic reflexes.[31] Phasic muscles that have become adaptively shortened are treated using more forceful isometric contractions.

☑ KEY POINT

PIR techniques are ideal as an initial method to gain the patient's trust, especially in cases of reflex contraction or trigger point hypertonicity.[32] These techniques can also be used for joint mobilizations when a manipulation is not desirable.[34]

The most common PNF stretching techniques use a combination of contracting, holding, and passive stretching (often referred to as *relaxing*). There appears to be no consensus as to whether to use the relaxation of the agonist or the antagonist to gain motion. Each method, although slightly different, involves starting with a passive stretch held for about 10 seconds. A hamstring stretch can be used to illustrate the different variations. The patient is positioned in supine for each example. The patient places one leg, extended, flat on the floor, and the other extended resting on the clinician's shoulder.

Hold–Relax The clinician moves the patient's extended leg to a point of mild discomfort. This passive stretch (prestretch) is held for 10 seconds. The patient is then asked to isometrically contract the hamstrings by pushing their extended leg against the clinician's shoulder. The clinician applies just enough force so that the leg remains static. This is the hold phase, and it lasts for 6 seconds. The patient is then asked to relax, and the clinician moves the leg into the new range and completes a second passive stretch as the patient's leg is progressively moved farther into the range (greater hip flexion) due to the autogenic inhibition of the hamstrings.

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> The terms *contract–relax* and *hold–relax* are often used interchangeably, but they are not identical. (See Appendix E.)

Contract–Relax The clinician moves the patient's extended leg to a point of mild discomfort. This passive stretch is held for 10 seconds. The patient is then asked to concentrically contract the hamstrings by pushing their extended leg against the clinician's shoulder. The clinician applies just enough force so there is resistance while allowing the patient to push his or her leg to the floor (i.e., through the full ROM). This is the contract phase. The patient is then instructed to relax, and the clinician completes a second passive stretch, which is held for 30 seconds. The patient's extended leg should move farther into the range (greater hip flexion) due to the autogenic inhibition of the hamstrings.

Hold–Relax with Agonist Contraction The clinician moves the patient's extended leg to a point of mild discomfort. This passive stretch is held for 10 seconds. The patient is then asked to isometrically contract the hamstrings by pushing their extended leg against the clinician's shoulder. The clinician applies just enough force so the leg remains static. This is the hold phase, and it lasts for 6 seconds. This initiates autogenic inhibition. The clinician completes a second passive stretch held for 30 seconds, and the patient is asked to flex the hip (i.e., move the leg in the same direction as it is being stretched). This initiates the reciprocal inhibition.

Self-Stretching

Self-stretching techniques include any stretching exercise that is carried out independently by the patient after instruction and supervision. Self-stretching techniques are included at the end of each of the joint chapters.

Stretching and warm-up are not synonymous but are often confused by the layperson. Warm-up requires activity that raises total body and muscle temperatures to prepare the body for exercise. Research has revealed that warm-up prior to stretching results in significant changes in joint ROM.[20,35]

Anecdotally, it makes sense not to perform stretches at the beginning of the warm-up session because the tissue temperature is too low for optimal muscle–tendon function, less compliant and, therefore, less prepared for activity. Some advocate stretching after an exercise session, during the cool-down period, reporting that an increase in musculotendinous extensibility leads to the potential for enhanced joint flexibility.[20] Viscoelastic changes are not permanent, whereas plastic changes, which are more difficult to achieve, result in a residual or permanent change in length. (See Chapter 2.)

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> Each exercise session should include a 5- to 15-minute warm-up and a 5- to 15-minute cool-down period. The *warm-up* includes low-intensity cardiorespiratory activities and prepares the heart and circulatory system so they are not suddenly overloaded. The *cool-down* includes low-intensity cardiorespiratory activities and flexibility exercises and helps prevent abrupt physiological alterations that can occur with sudden cessation of strenuous exercise, such as adaptive shortening and lactic acid build-up. The length of the warm-up and cool-down sessions may need to be longer for deconditioned or older individuals.

It is important for the patient to realize that the initial session of stretching may increase symptoms in the stretched structures; however, this increase in symptoms should only be temporary, lasting for a couple of hours at most.[20] The stretch should be performed at the point just short of pain, although some discomfort may be necessary to achieve results. Connective tissue typically requires a greater stretching force initially to break up adhesions or cross-linkages and to allow for viscoelastic and plastic changes to occur in the collagen and elastin fibers.[35] (See Chapter 2.)

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> The application of a cold pack following the stretch, with the limb in a somewhat lengthened position, is used to take advantage of the thermal characteristics of connective tissue by lowering its temperature and thereby theoretically prolonging the length changes. The elasticity of a muscle diminishes with cooling.[36]

Improving Joint Mobility

Once a determination has been made by the supervising physical therapist (PT) that the loss of ROM is due to an arthrokinematic cause, joint mobilizations are the intervention of choice. (See Chapter 9.)

Summary

When injury occurs, there is almost always some associated loss of function. This loss of function may be due to swelling, pain, spasm, or muscle guarding; inactivity resulting in adaptive shortening of connective tissue and muscle; loss of neuromuscular control; or some combination of these. Restoring normal mobility following injury is one of the primary goals in any rehabilitation program.

Learning Portfolio

Case Study

A member of your rehabilitation team provided an in-service about mobility training earlier today.

1. What are the three components of mobility?
2. Describe how a physical therapist (PT) differentiates between the three components of mobility to help determine the actual cause of a loss of mobility.
3. When providing range of motion (ROM) exercises to a patient, describe the correct sequence in terms of the easiest and the hardest of the ROM exercises.
4. What type of ROM exercise is being performed when the clinician attempts to provide the least amount of assistance necessary so that the patient is able to perform a voluntary muscle contraction to the maximum extent he or she is able?

Your supervising PT is examining a patient and discussing the findings with you. Based on a number of observations, the PT feels that the patient appears to have adaptive shortening of the hip flexors and/or quadriceps.

5. Describe the test that the PT will likely use to assess the length of the hip flexors and quadriceps.

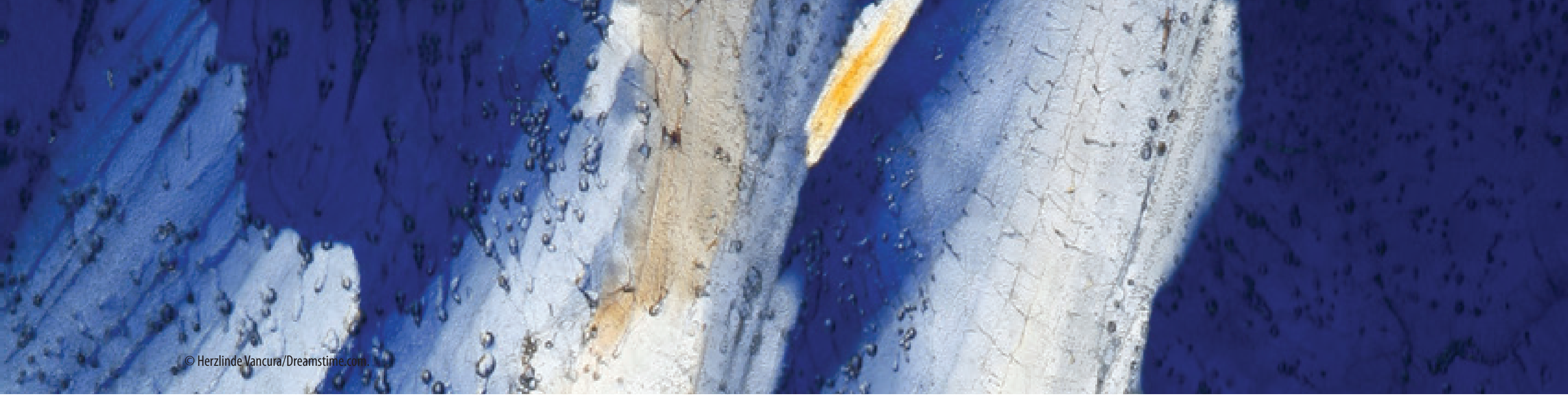
Review Questions

1. What are the two components of flexibility?
2. What are the two viscoelastic properties of connective tissue related to stretching?
3. List three goals of static stretching.
4. **True or false:** Tissue temperature does not affect connective tissue extensibility.
5. **True or false:** Acute exercise has no effect on intramuscular temperature and tissue extensibility.
6. **True or false:** Proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation stretching is superior to other forms of active stretching.
7. In terms of increasing intensity, what is the correct sequence when prescribing range of motion exercises?
8. **True or false:** Passive range of motion can prevent muscle atrophy.
9. **True or false:** The use of a continuous passive motion (CPM) machine can increase short-term range of motion, which may result in early discharge from the hospital.
10. What are the four types of stretching techniques described in this chapter?

References

1. McKenzie R, May S. Physical examination. In: McKenzie R, May S, editors. *The Human Extremities: Mechanical Diagnosis and Therapy*. Waikanae, New Zealand: Spinal Publications New Zealand Ltd; 2000. p. 105–21.
2. White DJ. Musculoskeletal examination. In: O'Sullivan SB, Schmitz TJ, editors. *Physical Rehabilitation*, 5th ed. Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2007. p. 159–92.
3. Kisner C, Colby LA. Range of motion. In: Kisner C, Colby LA, editors. *Therapeutic Exercise Foundations and Techniques*, 5th ed. Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2002. p. 43–64.
4. Bakirhan S, Unver B, Karatosun V. Effects of two different continuous passive motion protocols on the functional activities of total knee arthroplasty inpatients. Acta Orthopaedica et Traumatologica Turcica. 2015; 49:497–502.

5. Huang HS, Ao YF, Wang YJ, Li X. [The effects of continuous passive motion on tendon-bone healing of the tendon autograft used for anterior cruciate ligament reconstruction in a rabbit model]. *Zhonghua Wai Ke Za Zhi*. 2008; 46:1088–91.
6. Liao CD, Huang YC, Lin LF, Chiu YS, Tsai JC, Chen CL, et al. Continuous passive motion and its effects on knee flexion after total knee arthroplasty in patients with knee osteoarthritis. *Knee Surgery, Sports Traumatology, Arthroscopy.* 2016; 24:2578–86.
7. Denis M, Moffet H, Caron F, Ouellet D, Paquet J, Nolet L. Effectiveness of continuous passive motion and conventional physical therapy after total knee arthroplasty: a randomized clinical trial. *Physical Therapy*. 2006; 86:174–85.
8. Joshi RN, White PB, Murray-Weir M, Alexiades MM, Sculco TP, Ranawat AS. Prospective randomized trial of the efficacy of continuous passive motion post total knee arthroplasty: experience of the hospital for special surgery. *The Journal of Arthroplasty*. 2015; 30:2364–9.
9. Kisner C, Colby LA. Stretching for impaired mobility. In: Kisner C, Colby LA, editors. *Therapeutic Exercise Foundations and Techniques*, 5th ed. Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2002. p. 65–108.
10. De Deyne PG. Application of passive stretch and its implications for muscle fibers. *Physical Therapy*. 2001; 81:819–27.
11. Magnusson SP, Simonsen EB, Aagaard P, et al. A mechanism for altered flexibility in human skeletal muscle. *The Journal of Physiology*. 1996; 497:291–8.
12. Sapega AA, Quedenfeld T, Moyer R, Butler R. Biophysical factors in range of motion exercise. *The Physician and Sportsmedicine*. 1981; 9:57–65.
13. Geertsen SS, Lundbye-Jensen J, Nielsen JB. Increased central facilitation of antagonist reciprocal inhibition at the onset of dorsiflexion following explosive strength training. *Journal of Applied Physiology*. 2008; 105:915–22.
14. Cutsuridis V. Does abnormal spinal reciprocal inhibition lead to co-contraction of antagonist motor units? A modeling study. *International Journal of Neural Systems*. 2007; 17:319–27.
15. Yang HD, Minn YK, Son IH, Suk SH. Facilitation and reciprocal inhibition by imagining thumb abduction. *Journal of Clinical Neuroscience*. 2006; 13:245–8.
16. Khan SI, Burne JA. Afferents contributing to autogenic inhibition of gastrocnemius following electrical stimulation of its tendon. *Brain Research*. 2009; 1282:28–37.
17. Blanton S, Grissom SP, Riolo L. Use of a static adjustable ankle-foot orthosis following tibial nerve block to reduce plantar-flexion contracture in an individual with brain injury. *Physical Therapy*. 2002; 82:1087–97.
18. Yoder E. Physical therapy management of nonsurgical hip problems in adults. In: Echternach JL, editor. *Physical Therapy of the Hip*. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1990. p. 103–37.
19. Zachazewski JE. Flexibility for sports. In: Sanders B, editor. *Sports Physical Therapy*. Norwalk, CT: Appleton and Lange; 1990. p. 201–38.
20. Wallman HW. Stretching and flexibility. In: Wilmarth MA, editor. Orthopaedic Physical Therapy. *Strength and Conditioning Independent Study*, Course 153. La Crosse, WI: Orthopaedic Section, APTA, Inc.; 2005.
21. Walker SM. Delay of twitch relaxation induced by stress and stress relaxation. *Journal of Applied Physiology*. 1961; 16:801–6.
22. Bandy WD, Irion JM, Briggler M. The effect of time and frequency of static stretching on flexibility of the hamstring muscles. *Physical Therapy*. 1997; 77:1090–6.
23. Cipriani D, Abel B, Pirrwitz D. A comparison of two stretching protocols on hip range of motion: implications for total daily stretch duration. *Journal of Strength and Conditioning Research*. 2003; 17:274–8.
24. de Weijer VC, Gorniak GC, Shamus E. The effect of static stretch and warm-up exercise on hamstring length over the course of 24 hours. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2003; 33:727–33.
25. Madding SW, Wong JG, Hallum A, Medeiros J. Effect of duration of passive stretch on hip abduction range of motion. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 1987; 8:409–16.
26. Willy RW, Kyle BA, Moore SA, Chleboun GS. Effect of cessation and resumption of static hamstring muscle stretching on joint range of motion. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2001; 31:138–44.
27. Cornelius WL, Hagemann RW, Jr., Jackson AW. A study on placement of stretching within a workout. *The Journal of Sports Medicine and Physical Fitness*. 1988; 28:234–6.
28. Mahieu NN, McNair P, De Muynck M, Stevens V, Blanckaert I, Smits N, et al. Effect of static and ballistic stretching on the muscle-tendon tissue properties. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise.* 2007; 39:494–501.
29. Konrad A, Tilp M. Effects of ballistic stretching training on the properties of human muscle and tendon structures. *Journal of Applied Physiology*. 2014; 117:29–35.
30. Prentice WE. A comparison of static stretching and PNF stretching for improving hip joint flexibility. *Journal of Athletic Training*. 1983; 18:56–9.
31. Hill KJ, Robinson KP, Cuchna JW, Hoch MC. Immediate effects of PNF stretching programs compared to passive stretching programs for hamstring flexibility: a critically appraised topic. *Journal of Sport Rehabilitation*. 2016:1–17.
32. Konrad A, Stafilidis S, Tilp M. Effects of acute static, ballistic, and PNF stretching exercise on the muscle and tendon tissue properties. *Scandinavian Journal of Medicine and Science in Sports*. 2017; 27:1070–80.
33. Chaitow L. An introduction to muscle energy techniques. In: Chaitow L, editor. *Muscle Energy Techniques*, 2nd ed. London: Churchill Livingstone; 2001. p. 1–18.
34. Lewit K. *Manipulative Therapy in Rehabilitation of the Motor System*, 3rd ed. London: Butterworths; 1999.
35. Zakas A, Vergou A, Grammatikopoulou MG, Zakas N, Sentelidis T, Vamvakoudis S. The effect of stretching during warming-up on the flexibility of junior handball players. *The Journal of Sports Medicine and Physical Fitness*. 2003; 43:145–9.
36. Eguchi Y, Jinde M, Murooka K, Konno Y, Ohta M, Yamato H. Stretching versus transitory icing: which is the more effective treatment for attenuating muscle fatigue after repeated manual labor? *European Journal of Applied Physiology*. 2014; 114:2617–23.



CHAPTER 13

Improving Muscle Performance

CHAPTER OBJECTIVES

At the completion of this chapter, the reader will be able to:

1. List the different types of muscle contractions and the advantages and disadvantages of each.
2. Differentiate among muscle strength, endurance, and power.
3. Describe strategies to increase muscle strength.
4. List the different types of resistance that can be used to strengthen muscles.
5. Outline the various types of exercise progression and the components of each.
6. Describe strategies to increase muscle endurance.
7. Describe strategies to increase muscle power.
8. Explain the basic principles behind plyometrics.
9. Define delayed onset muscle soreness, and explain why it occurs.

Overview

It is well-established that exercise has numerous benefits. This chapter focuses on the benefits that exercise can provide to connective tissue, mainly muscle and tendon. For example, in the tendon, there is an acute increase in blood flow and collagen synthesis, and long-term effects lead to tissue hypertrophy and altered material properties.[1] The magnitude and type of adaptation likely depend on the exercise regime, including the extent of the load, the range of motion (ROM) performed, type of contraction, movement speed, the number of repetitions, and any rest periods between the exercise sessions.[1] There are three basic types of muscle contraction: isometric, concentric, and eccentric.

- *Isometric contraction*. Provides a static contraction with a variable and accommodating resistance without producing a change in the muscle length or movement at the joint. Isometric contractions can occur at any joint angle. Examples of isometric exercise include muscle setting exercises, stabilization exercises, and multiple angle isometrics.
- *Concentric contraction*. Provides a dynamic contraction that produces tension and shortening of the muscle, approximating the origin and insertion of the contracting muscle. An example of a concentric contraction is the raising of a dumbbell during a bicep curl. The term isotonic contraction is often used interchangeably with concentric contraction, but the term *isotonic* must be used carefully when referring to exercise because it infers

that the tension in the muscle remains constant despite changes occurring in muscle length. A better term for isotonic is isoinertial, which describes a contraction that maintains a constant inertia equal to mass.[2]

- *Eccentric contraction.* Provides a dynamic contraction whereby tension is produced as lengthening of the muscle occurs. The net action is the opposite of that generated by a concentric contraction in that the origin and insertion of the contracting muscle move farther apart during the contraction. In reality, the muscle does not actually lengthen; it merely returns from its shortened position to its normal resting length. An example of an eccentric contraction is the lowering of a dumbbell during a reverse bicep curl.

Three other terms that are used to describe contractions are worth mentioning:

- *Isokinetic contraction.* An isokinetic contraction occurs when a muscle is maximally contracting at the same speed throughout the whole range of its related lever. Isokinetic contractions require the use of specialized equipment that produces an accommodating resistance. Both high-speed/low-resistance and low-speed/high-resistance regimens result in excellent strength gains. The main disadvantage of this type of exercise is its expense. Also, there is the potential for incorrect joint axis alignment and impact loading. Isokinetic exercises also have debatable functional carryover.[3]
- *Econcentric contraction.* This type of contraction combines both a controlled concentric and a simultaneous eccentric contraction of the same muscle over two separate joints. Examples of an econcentric contraction include a standing hamstring curl, in which the hamstrings work concentrically to flex the knee while the hip flexors tend to work eccentrically. When rising from a squat position, the hamstrings work concentrically as the hip extends while working eccentrically as the knee extends. Conversely, the rectus femoris works eccentrically as the hip extends and works concentrically as the knee extends.
- *Isolytic contraction.* An isolytic contraction is a term used to describe a type of eccentric contraction that makes use of a greater force than the patient can overcome. The difference between an eccentric contraction and an isolytic contraction is that in the former, the contraction is voluntary; whereas, in the latter, it is involuntary. The isolytic contraction can be used in some manual proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation techniques to stretch fibrotic tissue. (See Chapter 12.)

Some distinctions can be made between strength, power, and endurance:

- *Strength.* Strength is defined as the amount of force that may be exerted by an individual in a single maximum muscular contraction against a specific resistance, or the ability to produce torque at a joint. Hence, strength is measured in one of three ways: as the maximal force exerted in an isometric contraction, the maximal load that can be lifted once, or the peak torque during an isokinetic measurement. In a clinical setting, muscle strength can be measured using manual muscle testing (MMT) or with a dynamometer. (See Chapter 6.)
- *Power.* Mechanical power is the product of force and speed. More specifically, power is work per unit of time (force × distance/time) or force × velocity (distance × time). *Muscular power*, the product of muscular force and the velocity of muscle shortening, is the maximum amount of work a muscle can perform in a given unit of time. The assessment of power involves increasing the work a muscle must perform during a specified period, or reducing the amount of time necessary to produce a given force.
- *Endurance.* Endurance is defined as the ability of a muscle, or group of muscles, to continue to perform a low-intensity sustained activity over an extended period without fatigue, while maintaining the proper alignment of the body segments using balance and control. There are two types of endurance: muscular endurance, which is related to specific activities, and general endurance, which is a base level of cardiorespiratory ability.[4] (See Chapter 15.) Muscular endurance is assessed by asking a patient to perform numerous repetitions using low resistance, or by sustaining a low-level muscle contraction for an extended period.

Exercises should be prescribed based on a number of factors including but not limited to the age of the patient (see Chapters 26 and 27), the patient's health status, and the stage of healing. In general, all exercise should be limited to the pain-free ROM, although there are exceptions to this. Typically, rehabilitative exercise can be initiated as soon as 5 days following a soft tissue injury but no later than 6 weeks after the initial injury.[5–7] Additionally, rehabilitation may be successful in 3 weeks, or it may require over 12 months for complete soft tissue remodeling and strengthening to be achieved.[5–7]

☑ **KEY POINT**

- *Repetitions*. The number of times a particular movement is repeated against a specific exercise load. The number of repetitions selected depends on the patient's status and whether the goal of the exercise is to improve muscle strength or endurance. No optimal number of repetitions for strength training or endurance training has been identified.
- *Sets*. A predetermined number of repetitions grouped together. After each set of a specified number of repetitions, there is a brief interval of rest. As with repetitions, there is no optimal number of sets per exercise session, but typically they can vary from one set to as many as six sets.[1]
- *Sequence*. The order in which exercises are performed during an exercise session. It is recommended that large muscle groups be exercised before small muscle groups, and multi-joint muscles before single-joint muscles, to prevent muscle fatigue and to allow for adaptive training effects.
- *Speed*. The speed at which an exercise is performed can be used to control the outcome of the exercise. Low resistance and high speeds are typically used to enhance endurance, whereas high resistance and low speeds are generally used to enhance strength. Getting a muscle to work dynamically against a resistance within a specified period increases power.
- *Mode*. The form of exercise, the type of muscle contraction that occurs, and the manner in which the exercise is carried out.[8]
- *Body position*. The body or limb position used for an activity determines whether the exercise is open-chain or closed-chain (see Chapter 11) and whether the muscle is working with or against gravity.

☑ **KEY POINT**

By varying these components, a wide range of exercise programs can be constructed from endurance (low load, high-speed, many repetitions) to strength (high load, low-speed, few repetitions) programs.

There are three exercise principles worth mentioning:

- *Specificity—SAID principle*. The specific adaptation to imposed demand (SAID) principle recognizes that the body responds to specific requirements placed upon it with a precise and predictable adaptation. Therefore, the focus of an exercise prescription should be to improve the strength and coordination of functional or sports-specific movements using strength and flexibility exercises that approximate the desired activity regarding its volume, frequency, intensity, and duration. Obviously, there is a wide variation in exercise tolerance, particularly in the elderly.
- *Overload principle*. This principle is based on the fact that a greater than normal stress or load on the body is required for a training adaptation to take place. A muscle must be challenged at a greater level than that to which it is accustomed to increase strength. High levels of tension produce adaptations in the form of hypertrophy and recruitment of more muscle fibers.
- *Reversibility principle*. Any adaptive changes in the body, such as increased strength or endurance, in reaction to a resistance exercise program, are transitory unless training-induced improvements are habitually used through functional activities or resistance exercises.[9] These changes can begin within 1 or 2 weeks after the cessation of resistance exercises and will continue until the training effects are lost.[8,10]

Improving Strength

The use of exercise as a treatment involves two important questions: what is the most effective type of exercise, and what is the most appropriate dosage?[11] To most effectively increase muscle strength, a muscle must work with increasing effort against a progressively increasing resistance.[12,13] If resistance is applied to a muscle as it contracts, so that the metabolic capabilities of the muscle are progressively overloaded, adaptive changes occur within the muscle that make it stronger over time (SAID principle).[14,15] These adaptive changes include the following:[13,16–21]

- An increase in the efficiency of the neuromuscular system. This increased efficiency results in the following:
  - An increase in the number of motor units recruited
  - An increase in the firing rate of each motor unit
  - An increase in the synchronization of motor unit firing
- An improvement in the endurance of the muscle.
- Stimulation of slow twitch (type I) fibers when performing workloads of low intensity, and stimulation of fast twitch (type IIa) fibers when performing workloads of high intensity and short duration. (See Chapter 2.)
- Muscle hypertrophy due to an increase in the number and size of the myofilaments (actin and myosin).
- An increase in blood flow to exercising muscles via a contraction and relaxation.

- An improvement in the power of the muscle.
- Improved bone mass (Wolfe's law) (See Chapter 2.)
- Increase in metabolism/calorie burning/weight control.
- Increased intramuscular pressure from a muscle contraction of about 60 percent of its force-generating capacity.
- Cardiovascular benefits when using large muscle groups. Strength training of specific muscles has a brief activation period and uses a relatively small muscle mass, thereby producing less cardiovascular metabolic demand than vigorous walking, swimming, and the like.

Conversely, a muscle can become weak or atrophied in a number of ways including the following:

- Disease
- Neurological compromise
- Immobilization
- Disuse

Methods of Strengthening Muscles

Physical strength, also known as muscular strength, is the ability of a person to exert force on physical objects using muscles. Increasing muscle strength often is a priority in rehabilitation. A muscle can be strengthened using a variety of methods including neuromuscular electrical stimulation (NMES) and exercise.

Neuromuscular Electrical Stimulation

NMES, also known as threshold electrical stimulation (TES), is a form of electrical stimulation that attempts to strengthen muscles that have been weakened by disuse using a subcontraction stimulus to promote muscle growth. However, in an individual with disuse atrophy, the contracting muscles use the strongest fibers and the weakened fibers deteriorate further. Therefore, NMES is better utilized for muscle reeducation, where the patient attempts to actively contract his or her muscle as the electrical stimulation contracts the muscle. NMES often is used for orthopaedic rehabilitation in individuals who have disuse weakness, joint restrictions, edema, and spasms.

Isometric Exercises

The amount of tension that can be generated during an isometric muscle contraction depends in part on the joint's position and the length of the muscle at the time of contraction.[22] A 6- to 10-second hold of 60 to 80 percent of a muscle's force-developing capacity is sufficient to increase strength when performed repetitively.[22] Initially, the patient performs isometric contractions by gradually developing tension for 2 seconds, maintaining a maximal contraction for 6 seconds, and then gradually decreasing tension for 2 seconds. The rule of tens is an isometric exercise protocol that is used extensively in physical therapy in the early stages of rehabilitation, of which there are a number of variations:

- The patient performs 10-second contractions for 10 repetitions with a 10-second rest between each repetition.[23]
- The patient performs 10-second contractions, 10-second rest, 10 repetitions, 10 different joint positions (every 20 degrees where appropriate), 10 times daily. The reason for exercising at different angles in the ROM is because if the force is applied only at one point, there is only approximately a 10-degree overflow of strength above and below the angle.[24]

It is worth noting that there are many occasions when the contraction time can be increased to as much as 45 seconds in some tendon healing protocols.

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> When instructing a patient on how to perform an isometric exercise, the patient is told to perform the isometric contraction by gradually developing tension for 2 seconds, maintaining a maximal contraction for 6 seconds, and then gradually decreasing tension for 2 seconds.

The advantages of isometric exercises include:

- They can be used in situations where joint movement is restricted, either by pain or by bracing/casting. Their primary role in this regard is to prevent atrophy and prevent a decrease of ligament, bone, and muscle integrity.
- An overflow of strength occurs approximately 10 degrees above and below the angle at which the exercise occurs.[25] When using multiple-angle isometrics, the exercises should be performed in 10-degree increments.

The disadvantages of isometric exercises include:

- The strength gains are developed at a particular point in the ROM and not throughout the range (unless performed at multiple angles).[24,26]

- Not all of a muscle's fibers are activated—there is predominantly an activation of slow twitch (type I) fibers.
- There are no flexibility or cardiovascular fitness benefits.
- Peak effort can be injurious to the tissues due to vasoconstriction and joint compression forces.
- There is limited functional carryover.[24]
- Considerable internal pressure is generated, especially if a breath is held during a muscle contraction, which can result in further injury to patients with a weakness in the abdominal wall (hernia) and cardiovascular impairment (increased blood pressure through the Valsalva maneuver, even if the exercise is performed correctly). The Valsalva maneuver occurs when a forcible exhalation is produced against a closed airway/mouth (a "bearing down" maneuver) and is particularly relevant in a patient with a cardiac condition because it can result in pressure inside the chest impeding the return of systemic blood to the heart and a reduction in cardiac output and stroke volume.

The typical progression for isometric exercises is:

1. Single-angle submaximal isometrics performed in the neutral position
2. Multiple-angle submaximal isometrics carried out at various angles of the range
3. Multiple-angle maximal isometrics

Concentric/Isotonic Exercises

Concentric contractions are commonly used in the rehabilitation process and frequently occur in activities of daily living—the biceps curl and the lifting of a cup to the mouth are examples of each, respectively. As the patient progresses from isometric exercises to concentric exercises, the clinician must be aware that the latter creates an increase in the force generated, an increase in articular stresses, and an increased potential for muscle soreness. If these changes do not cause any negative change in the patient's status, further progression can proceed. However, if the progression increases pain and swelling, the physical therapist assistant (PTA) must inform the physical therapist (PT) before progressing. The PT can then decide whether to make any necessary adjustments or modifications to the program (reducing the amount of resistance, the velocity of movement, the volume of exercise, or changing the joint angle of the exercise), including returning the patient back to an isometric protocol.

Eccentric Exercises

Eccentric muscle contractions are involved in activities that require deceleration. Such activities include slowing to a stop when running, lowering an object, or sitting down. Even though a concentric contraction produces more force than isometric contraction, it is worth remembering that a maximum concentric contraction produces less force than a maximum eccentric contraction under the same conditions—that is, greater loads can be lowered than lifted. This is because when lowering a load, the force exerted by the load is controlled not only by the active, contractile components but also by the connective tissue in and around the muscle and joint. Consequently, it requires more effort by a patient to control the same load during concentric exercise than during eccentric exercise.[8] From a clinical perspective, in the presence of substantial muscle weakness, it may be easier for the patient to control lowering an extremity against gravity than lifting the extremity.

As the load exceeds the bond between the actin and myosin filaments during an eccentric contraction, some of the myosin filaments are probably ripped away from the actin filament binding sites, while the remaining filaments are completing the contraction cycle.[27] The resulting force is considerably larger for a torn cross-bridge than it is for one being created during a normal muscle contraction cycle. Consequently, the cumulative increase in forces for each cross-bridge, and the number of active cross-bridges, results in a maximum lengthening muscle tension that is greater than the tension created with a shortening muscle action.[28] An appraisal of the three types of muscle actions regarding maximal force production demonstrates that eccentric contractions are capable of generating greater forces than either isometric or concentric contractions.[27,29]

However, regarding the amount of energy liberated via adenosine triphosphate (ATP) use, eccentric muscle contractions use the least ATP, whereas concentric contractions use the most.[30] Therefore, regarding energy efficiency, eccentric muscle contractions are more energy-efficient, require less motor unit firing, and produce greater tension per contractile unit than both concentric and isometric contractions, making it the most efficient of all of the contraction types. However, eccentric exercise, somewhat paradoxically, places greater stress on the cardiovascular system than does concentric exercise.[31] The fact that muscles can produce greater maximal force eccentrically than concentrically would suggest the potential for greater mechanical stimulation from an eccentric than from a concentric exercise. For example, isolated eccentric loading regimes for tendinopathy are widely accepted as the treatment of choice, but the potential mechanisms behind this intervention remain unclear.[1] Isolated eccentric loading does appear to influence biochemical and biomechanical parameters and improve clinical outcomes.[1] However, the beneficial effects of isolated eccentric loading using body weight exercises appear to be reduced if the pain is located toward the tendon insertion.[32] In fact, it has been suggested that the use of concentric exercises using heavy loads and low speeds would be more beneficial than isolated eccentric loading.[33]

☑ KEY POINT

Eccentric muscle contractions stimulate both contractile and noncontractile elements, whereas concentric contractions and isometrics focus on the contractile elements.[27,29]

☑ KEY POINT

Optimal strength-specific programs include the use of both eccentric and concentric muscle actions and the performance of both single-joint and multi-joint exercises. The hierarchy for the resistive exercise progression is based on patient response and tolerance to ensure that progress is made in a safe and controlled fashion. The typical sequence occurs in the following order:[23]

- Small arc submaximal concentric/eccentric
- Full ROM submaximal concentric/eccentric
- Full ROM submaximal eccentric
- Functional/activity-specific plane submaximal concentric
- Functional ROM submaximal eccentric
- Full ROM submaximal concentric isokinetic
- Full ROM submaximal eccentric isokinetic
- Functional ROM submaximal eccentric isokinetic

Cross-training effects (a slight increase in strength in the same muscle group of the opposite, unexercised extremity) have been shown to occur when a combination of high-intensity concentric and eccentric contractions are used.

Isokinetic Exercise

Isokinetic exercise requires the use of special equipment (**FIGURE 13.1**) that produces an accommodating and variable resistance. The main principle behind an isokinetic exercise is that peak torque (the maximum force generated through the ROM) is inversely related to angular velocity, the speed that a body segment moves through its ROM. Thus, an increase in angular

FIGURE 13.1 Isokinetic machine.

Used with permission of Biodex Medical Systems.

velocity decreases peak torque production. Advantages for this type of exercise include the following:

- Both high speed/low resistance and low speed/high resistance regimens result in excellent strength gains, even though it has been shown the speed of current machines do not come close to matching the actual speed of a joint/muscle during certain acceleration/deceleration activities.[34–37]
- Both concentric and eccentric resistance exercises can be performed on isokinetic machines.
- The machines provide maximum resistance at all points in the ROM as a muscle contracts.

The gravity-produced torque created by the device adds to the force generated by the muscle when it contracts, resulting in a higher torque output than is created by the muscle. The disadvantages of this type of exercise include:

- Expense
- The potential for incorrect joint axis alignment and impact loading[38]
- Uncertain functional carryover[3]
- The exercises involve open-chain exercise only
- The exercises involve a single muscle/motion

Proprioceptive Neuromuscular Facilitation

Proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation (PNF) techniques utilize manual resistance to strengthen muscles using a variety of muscle contractions:[39]

- *Isometric*. The clinician applies resistance to joint motion that is equal to that provided by the patient, such that no motion occurs. The contraction is held for approximately 30 to 60 seconds to increase the tone and strength of the muscle or muscle group.

- *Concentric.* The clinician applies resistance to joint motion such that it is less than that provided by the patient, so the patient moves the joint in the preferred direction through the desired range at a speed controlled by the clinician. The procedure is repeated five times and serves to increase the concentric strength of the agonist muscles and relaxation of the antagonists.
- *Eccentric*. The clinician applies resistance to joint motion such that it is greater than that provided by the patient. Thus, the patient is not only unable to move the joint in the preferred direction but also is unable to resist the clinician fully. As a result, even with maximum effort, the joint moves in the opposite direction of the desired movement. This is repeated five times and serves to increase the eccentric strength, and length, of the agonist muscles.

Stabilization Exercises

According to Voight,[40,41] the standard progression for stabilization exercises involves:

- *Static stabilization exercises with closed-chain loading and unloading (weight shifting).* This phase initially uses isometric exercises performed around the involved joint on both solid and even surfaces, before progressing to exercising on unstable surfaces. The early training comprises joint repositioning and balance training exercises and, in the lower extremities, is usually started (according to weight-bearing restrictions) by having the patient place the involved extremity on a 6- to 8-inch (15- to 20-centimeter) stool, to more easily control the amount of weight bearing. The proprioceptive awareness of a joint can also be enhanced by using an elastic bandage, orthotic, or through taping.[42–47] As full weight bearing through the extremity is returned, a number of devices such as a mini-trampoline, balance board, stability ball, and wobble board can be introduced. Exercises on these devices are progressed from double limb support, to single leg support, to support while performing sport-specific skills.
- *Transitional stabilization exercises.* The exercises during this phase include ones where conscious control of motion without impact is necessary, and replace the isometric activities with controlled concentric and eccentric exercises throughout a progressively larger range of functional motion.

  The physiological rationale behind the activities in this phase is to stimulate dynamic postural responses and to increase muscle stiffness. Muscle stiffness (see Chapter 2) has a significant role in improving dynamic stabilization around the joint by resisting and absorbing joint loads.
- *Dynamic stabilization exercises.* The exercises during this phase necessitate the unconscious control and loading of the joint, and bring together both ballistic and impact exercises to the patient.

☑ KEY POINT

One of the advantages of using the stability ball is that it creates an unstable base, which challenges the postural stabilizer muscles more than using a stable base. It is important to choose the appropriate size stability ball, which depends on patient size:

- *45-cm ball:* Shorter than 5 feet
- *55-cm ball:* 5 feet to 5 feet 8 inches
- *65-cm ball:* 5 feet 9 inches to 6 feet 3 inches
- *75-cm ball:* Taller than 6 feet 3 inches

With the patient sitting on the ball with both feet firmly planted on the ground, the patient's thighs should be parallel to the floor (the knees may be slightly above the hips).

- Pumping up the ball to increase firmness enhances the level of difficulty in any given exercise.
- The farther the ball is away from the support points, the greater the demand for core stability.
- Decreasing the number of support points increases the difficulty of the exercise.

A subtle balance between mobility and stability is accomplished with coordination among muscle strength, endurance, flexibility, and neuromuscular control.

The articular mechanoreceptors mediate the neuromuscular mechanism involved with joint stability. These receptors provide information about joint position sense and kinesthesia.[47,48] Initially, closed-chain exercises are performed within the pain free positions or ranges. Open-chain exercises, including mild plyometric exercises (see "Plyometrics" later in this chapter), can be built upon the base of the closed-chain stabilization to allow normal control of joint mobility.

The emphasis during these exercises is to concentrate on functional activities during exercise rather than isolating open- and closed-chain exercises. The activities should involve sudden alterations in joint positioning that necessitate reflex muscular stabilization coupled with an axial load.[47] Such activities include rhythmic stabilization (an isometric contraction of the agonist followed by an isometric contraction of the antagonist) performed in functional positions of the joints. The use of a stable, and then unstable, base during closed-chain exercises encourages co-contraction of the agonists and antagonists.[49]

Weight shifting exercises are ideal for this. For example, the following weight shifting exercises may be used for the upper extremity:

- Standing and leaning against a treatment table or object.
- In the quadruped position, rocking forward and backward with the hands on the floor or an unstable object.
- Kneeling forward in the three-point position (with one hand on the floor). A Body Blade can be added to this exercise to increase the difficulty.
- Kneeling in the two-point position (high kneeling).
- Weight shifting on a Fitter while in a kneeling position.
- Weight shifting on a Swiss ball (see Key Point) with the feet on a chair, and both hands on the Swiss ball in the push-up position.
- Slide board exercises in the quadruped position moving hands forward and backward, in opposite diagonals, and opposite directions.

Periodization

Periodization, a training method used for competitive athletes, consists of an organized and predictable approach to training volume, intensity, and rest periods during a specific period. Periodic training systems typically divide time into three cycles:

- *Microcycle*. Generally up to 7 days. Accumulated microcycles form a mesocycle.
- *Mesocycle*. Anywhere from 2 weeks to a few months, but typically 1 month. During the preparatory phase, a mesocycle commonly consists of 4 to 6 microcycles; during the competitive phase it will usually consist of 2 to 4 microcycles, depending on the competition's calendar.
- *Macrocycle*. The overall training period, usually representing 1 or 2 years.

Using periodization, a competitive athlete can achieve peak physical performance for a particular point in time, such as for a major competition.

Although used for competitive athletes, the principles behind periodization can be adapted for the orthopaedic population because the same training variables can be manipulated, including:[50]

- The number of sets per exercise
- The repetitions per set
- The types of exercises
- The number of exercises per training session
- The rest periods between sets and exercises
- The resistance used for a set
- The type and tempo of muscle action (e.g., eccentric, concentric, isometric)
- The number of training sessions per day and per week.

TABLE 13.1 outlines the various types of periodization, and **TABLE 13.2** describes the use of periodization depending on the muscle fiber type.

TABLE 13.1 Periodization Models

Model	Description
Traditional	The cycle begins with low-intensity and high-volume, then transitions to high-intensity and low-volume.
Quadrennial	Multi-year, usually greater than or equal to 4 years
Linear	Based on changing exercise volume and load across several predictable mesocycles
Step wise	The intensity is increased while the volume is decreased in a stepwise fashion: Reps are reduced from eight to five, five to three, and so on, at specific intervals.
Block	Involves highly concentrated, specialized workloads, with each step in the training cycle having a large volume of exercises focused on specific, targeted training abilities to ensure maximum adaptation.
Non-linear	Volume and load are altered more frequently (daily, weekly, biweekly) to allow the neuromuscular system longer periods of recovery as lighter loads are performed more often.

Data from: Frankel CC, Kravitz L. Periodization: Latest Studies and Practical Applications. *IDEA Personal Trainer*, 2000; 11(1):15–16.

TABLE 13.2 Periodization by Muscle Fiber Type

	Hypertrophy	Strength and Hypertrophy	Strength	Transition
Sets	1–5	1–5	1–5	1–2
Reps	9–12 (type I, IIa)	6–8 (type IIa)	1–5 (type IIb)	13–20 (type I)
Weeks	2–3	2–3	2–3	1–2

Types of Resistance

Resistance can be applied to a muscle by any external force or mass, including any of the following:

- *Gravity.* Gravity alone can supply sufficient resistance to a weakened muscle. Concerning gravity, muscle actions may occur as follows:
  - The same direction of gravity (downward), requiring an eccentric contraction
  - The opposite direction to gravity (upward), requiring a concentric or isometric contraction
  - A direction perpendicular to gravity (horizontal), minimizing the effects of gravity and therefore appropriate for weaker muscles
  - The same or opposite direction as gravity, but at an angle requiring multiplanar concentric/eccentric contractions
- *Body weight.* A wide variety of exercises have been developed that use no equipment and instead rely on the patient's body weight for the resistance (push-up).
- *Small weights.* Cuff weights and dumbbells are economical ways of applying a constant resistance. Small weights are typically used to strengthen the smaller muscles or to increase the endurance of larger muscles by increasing the number of reps. Free weights also provide more versatility than exercise machines, especially for three-dimensional exercises.
- *Surgical tubing/Theraband.* Elastic resistance offers a unique type of resistance because the amount of variable resistance offered by elastic bands or tubing depends on the internal tension produced by the material. This internal tension is a factor of the elastic material's coefficient of elasticity, the surface area of the elastic material, and how much the elastic material is stretched.[51]
- *Exercise machines.* In situations where the larger muscle groups require strengthening, a multitude of specific indoor exercise machines can be used. These machines are often used in the more advanced stages of a rehabilitation program when more resistance can be tolerated, but they also can be used in the earlier stages depending on the size of the muscle undergoing rehabilitation. Examples of these machines include the multi-hip, the lat pull-down, the leg extension, and the leg curl machines. Exercise machines may be fitted with an oval-shaped cam or wheel that mimics the length-tension curve of the muscle (e.g., Nautilus, Cybex). Although these machines are a more expensive alternative to dumbbell or elastic resistance, they do offer the following advantages:
  - Provide an adequate resistance for large muscle groups than can be achieved with free weights/cuff weights or manual resistance
  - Typically safer than free weights, because they provide control throughout the range
  - Provide the clinician with the ability to quantify and measure the amount of resistance the patient can tolerate over time

  The disadvantages of exercise machines include the following:
  - The inability to modify the exercise to be more functional or three-dimensional
  - The inability to modify the amount of resistance at particular points of the range
- *Manual resistance.* A type of active exercise in which another person provides resistance manually. An example of manual resistance is PNF. The advantages of manual resistance, when applied by a skilled clinician, are as follows:[52]
  - Control of the extremity position and force applied. This is especially useful in the early stages of an exercise program when the muscle is weak.
  - More effective reeducation of the muscle or extremity through the use of diagonal or functional patterns of movement.
  - Critical sensory input to the patient through tactile stimulation and appropriate facilitation techniques (e.g., quick stretch).

- Accurate accommodation and alterations in the resistance applied throughout the range; for example, an exercise can be modified to avoid a painful arc in the range.
- Ability to limit the range. This is particularly important when the amount of ROM needs to be carefully controlled (postsurgical restrictions or pain).

The disadvantages of manual resistance include:

- The amount of resistance applied cannot be measured quantitatively.
- The amount of resistance is limited by the strength of the clinician/caregiver or family member.
- No consistency of the applied force throughout the range, and with each repetition.

☑ KEY POINT

Free weights offer no variable resistance throughout the ROM, so the weakest point along the length–tension curve of each muscle limits the amount of weight lifted. This factor can be used for those patients in the early stages of rehabilitation who cannot move through the full ROM using a variable resistance.

☑ KEY POINT

It is commonly believed that the resistance provided by bands or tubing increases exponentially at the end range. However, the forces produced by elastic resistance are linear until approximately 500 percent elongation, at which point the forces increase exponentially.[51] As a result, Theraband exercises have their limitations, especially in cases when the resistance is greater in those ranges where the muscle tends to be weaker (near end ranges).

☑ KEY POINT

Water can be used as a form of resistance. (See Chapter 10.) Water provides resistance proportional to the relative speed of movement of the patient and the water and the cross-sectional area of the patient in contact with the water.[53]

Considerations for Strength Training

The greatest amount of tension the muscle can achieve is a 20 percent increase in fiber length measured from the resting length.[54] The clinical implications for this are that the patient can tolerate less resistance in the beginning and at the end of the range of a contraction, but can overcome more resistance at a point in the range 20 percent beyond resting contraction.[54]

☑ KEY POINT

At regular intervals, the clinician should ensure the following:

- The patient is adhering to their exercise program at home.
- The patient is aware of the rationale behind the exercise program.
- The patient is performing the exercise program correctly and at the appropriate intensity.
- The patient's exercise program is being updated appropriately based on the functional short- and long-term goals in the plan of care.

Some precautions must be observed with patients who are performing strength training:

- *Substitute motions.* Muscles that are weak or fatigued rely on other muscles to produce the movement if the resistance is too high. This results in incorrect stabilization and poor form.
- *Overworking of the muscles.* This can occur if the exercise parameters (frequency, intensity, duration) are advanced too quickly. Some of the signs of an overloaded muscle include decreased performance and muscle substitutions/compensations. Generally, 24 hours of rest are recommended in between bouts of strength exercise to a particular region to prevent overwork.
- *Adequate rest.* The patient must rest after each set of vigorous exercise. (Three to four minutes are needed to return the muscle to 90 to 95 percent of preexercise capacity, with the most rapid recovery occurring in the first minute.) The rest period between sets can be determined by how long it takes the breathing rate or pulse of the patient to return to the steady state.

Caution must be taken with patients diagnosed with osteoporosis whose bones are unable to withstand normal stresses and are highly susceptible to pathologic fracture. Osteoporotic fractures also may occur as a result of prolonged immobilization, bed rest, an inability to bear weight on an extremity, and hormonal or nutritional factors. Other patient populations that require close monitoring include:

- Patients with an acute illness/fever
- Patients with an acute injury

- Postsurgical patients
- Patients with cardiac/pulmonary disease (e.g., edema, weight gain, unstable angina)
- Patients who are obese
- Patients with diabetes

Contraindications to Strength Training

Absolute contraindications to strength training include hypertrophic cardiomyopathy, uncontrolled hypertension, unstable angina, uncontrolled dysrhythmias, and certain stages of retinopathy. Patients with myocardial ischemia, congestive heart failure (CHF), poor left ventricular function, or autonomic neuropathies must be monitored carefully during a strength-training program.

Strengthening Exercise Programs

A number of strengthening protocols are used in physical therapy; some of them have been around for decades, others are more recent.

Progressive Resistive Exercise

DeLorme[18] introduced the term progressive resistance exercise (PRE), the sets and repetition ratio of three sets of 10 repetitions, and a concept called *repetition maximum* (RM). A RM is defined as the greatest amount of weight a muscle can move through the ROM for a specific number of times. The original protocol involved the patient establishing a maximum weight that could be lifted for 10 repetitions—the 10 repetitions maximum (10 RM). At the beginning of the program, the patient performed the first set of 10 repetitions at 50 percent of the predetermined 10 RM. The second set of 10 repetitions was performed using 75 percent of the 10 RM, and the third set of 10 repetitions was performed using the established weight for the 10 RM (100 percent). Two other programs, the Oxford program, and the DAPRE, that were introduced at about the same time, also use the concept of a 10 RM and are summarized and compared in **TABLE 13.3**.

A one repetition maximum (1 RM) is the highest amount of weight one person can lift for a single repetition of a specific exercise. To achieve an increase in the total number of repetitions while maintaining a sufficient effort, the number of sets must also be increased. This increase in sets must occur in conjunction with a reduction in the number of repetitions per set by 10–20 percent[54] or a decrease of the resistance. While this would be appropriate for the athletic population, modifications need to be made in other populations. For example, both frail and prefrail older adults should start at an intensity of 55 percent of 1 RM for endurance training and progress to higher intensities of 80 percent of 1 RM for strength training to maximize functional gains.[55]

Pilates

The Pilates method was developed in the 1940s by Joseph Hubertus Pilates, who was prone to chronic illness as a child. His method, described as a unique mind-body exercise program, involves six basic principles:

- Breathing
- Centering (isometric muscle contractions known as “powerhouse” combined with the exercises)
- Concentration
- Control
- Precision
- Fluidity

Joseph Pilates is credited for labeling the center, or core, as “the powerhouse,” and centering, where all energy commences and then radiates outward to the extremities. The following muscles are involved in the powerhouse: anterior abdominal muscles (transversus abdominis, external and internal oblique, and rectus abdominis), posterior abdominal muscles (multifidus), hip extensors (gluteus maximus, hamstrings, and posterior portion of the hip adductor), hip flexors (iliopsoas, rectus femoris, sartorius, tensor fasciae latae, and anterior portion of the hip adductors), and the pelvic floor muscles.[56] Theoretically, the powerhouse is responsible for stabilizing the spine and pelvis in a static posture, and assisting in the body’s dynamic stability during the exercises.[56]

The Pilates method includes various strengthening and stretching exercises divided into two types:

- *Mat*. These exercises are performed on the ground with or without accessories.
- *Equipment based*. Exercises are performed on machines with or without springs.

There are two categories of Pilates:[57]

- *Traditional*. This approach was designed for individuals without injury due to its focus on the spine and the inclusion of more vigorous exercises with a high level of difficulty.
- *Contemporary*. This approach can be prescribed to the general population, including patients in rehabilitation, because its focus is aimed

TABLE 13.3 The DeLorme, Oxford, and DAPRE (Knight) Exercise Progressions

	Set(s) of 10	Amount of Weight	Repetitions
DeLorme program (PREs). Uses three sets of 10 repetitions of resistance after the patient has established a maximum weight that can be lifted for 10 repetitions (10 RM—repetitions maximum). In the first set, the patient uses 50 percent of the 10 RM, 75 percent in the second set, and 100 percent of the 10 RM in the third set. In this protocol, the progressive overload occurs by adding resistance.	1st	50% of 10 RM	10
	2nd	75% of 10 RM	10
	3rd	100% of 10 RM	10
Oxford technique. Begins by establishing the patient's 10 RM. The first set of 10 repetitions is then performed using 100 percent of the 10 RM. The second set is performed at 75 percent and the third set is at 50 percent of the established 10 RM. In this protocol, the load is reduced as the session progresses.	1st	100% of 10 RM	10
	2nd	75% of 10 RM	10
	3rd	50% of 10 RM	10
DAPRE program. Uses four sets with variable repetition after establishing the patient's 6 RM. The first set of 10 repetitions is then performed using 50 percent of the 6 RM. The second set consists of six repetitions at 75 percent of the 6 RM, and the third set consists of as many repetitions as possible at 100 percent of the established 6 RM. The number of repetitions performed in this set is used to determine the weight used in the fourth set, with the patient again performing as many repetitions as possible with this weight. The goal of this protocol is to increase the number of repetitions in the third set, resulting in an increase in weight for the fourth set.	1st	50% of RM	10
	2nd	75% of RM	6
	3rd	100% of RM	Maximum
	4th	Adjusted working weight	Maximum

DAPRE, daily adjustable progressive resistive exercise; RM, repetition maximum.

at spinal alignment and neutral posture and the exercises are adapted to the individual's physical condition.

During the Pilates exercises, the joints are always *stacked*: shoulders over the hips, hips over the knees, and knees over the ankles, and the exercises are progressed from basic gravity-eliminated movements to complex and functional movements requiring coordination and balance against gravity.[58] Unlike specific stabilization exercise therapy, Pilates does not attempt to facilitate conscious activation of any isolated muscle or muscle group.

Circuit Training

The term *circuit* refers to a consecutive arrangement of a number of carefully selected exercises. In the original format, 9 to 12 stations comprised the circuit, but this number can vary according to the circuit's design. Each circuit training participant moves from one exercise station to the next with little (15 to 30 seconds) or no rest, performing a 15- to 45-second workout of 8 to 20 repetitions at each station (using a resistance of about 40 to 60 percent of one repetition maximum [1 RM]). The circuit training workout program may be performed with exercise machines, handheld weights, elastic resistance, calisthenics, or any combination of these. Commonly prescribed exercises for circuit training include the triceps push-down, seated row, bench press, lat pull-down, leg press, leg extension, seated press, upright row, leg curl, arm curl, and an abdominal exercise (crunch).

☑ KEY POINT

An aerobic circuit is generated when a 30-second to 3-minute (or longer) aerobics station is added between stations. The aim of adding an aerobic circuit is to improve cardiorespiratory endurance (although this has not been irrefutably supported in experimental research).

Interval Training

Interval training, similar to circuit training, includes a period of exercise followed by a prescribed rest interval. This form of training is perceived to be less demanding than continuous training without a rest and is likely to improve strength and power more than endurance. With an appropriate spacing of work and rest intervals, a significant amount of high-intensity work can be accomplished and is greater than the amount of work achieved with continuous training without a rest. Longer work intervals stress the anaerobic system more and the duration of the rest interval (a period of low load work rather than actual rest) becomes less important.

☑ KEY POINT

With a short work interval, a recovery ratio of 1:1 or 1:5 is appropriate to stress the aerobic system.

Tabata Protocol

The Tabata protocol sequence is a high-intensity training regimen involving an interval training cycle of 20 seconds of maximum intensity exercise, followed by 10 seconds of rest, repeated without a break eight times for a total of 4 minutes (14 minutes when including a 5-minute warm-up and a 5-minute cool-down).[59] A study by Tabata showed that moderate-intensity aerobic training that improves the maximal aerobic power does not change anaerobic capacity, and that adequate high-intensity intermittent training may improve both anaerobic and aerobic energy-supplying systems significantly, probably through imposing intensive stimuli on both systems.[59] The Tabata protocol has limited use in the rehabilitation setting except for athletes returning to sports.

Maintaining Strength

To maintain the benefits of training, exercise must be maintained. Based on studies of isokinetic and concentric exercise:[60,61]

- The regaining of muscle strength follows a steady and predictable increase over time.[62]
- A lack of training results in decreased muscle recruitment and muscle fiber atrophy (reversibility).
- If an injured patient can preserve some form of strength training, even once per week, their strength can be fairly well maintained over a 3-month period.[63]

☑ KEY POINT

When expressed as a weekly percentage, the Albert 5 percent rule states that a 5 percent strength increase in a given week can be maintained for numerous weeks of resistive training providing that the patient trains three times a week at a minimum resistance load of 70 percent of maximal voluntary muscle contractile force.[62] Although seemingly esoteric, the 5 percent rule can be used in determining the prognosis. For example, a patient with a 40 percent deficit in strength of the triceps can be assumed to take approximately 8 weeks to recover, barring any illness or disease states.[62]

Delayed Onset Muscle Soreness

Muscular soreness may result from all types of exercise and is one of the drawbacks to participating in an exercise program involving activity beyond what one usually experiences. Two types of muscle soreness are commonly reported, acute and delayed onset. Acute soreness is apparent during the later stages of an exercise bout and during the immediate recovery period.[64] In contrast, delayed onset muscle soreness (DOMS) appears 24 to 56 hours after the exercise bout,[65] and can present as anything from minor muscle soreness to debilitating pain and swelling, but is most commonly described as causing a reduction in joint ROM, shock attenuation, and peak torque.[66] The traditional theory for this delayed onset muscle soreness (DOMS) was that it was due to a build-up of lactic acid and toxic metabolic waste products, but this has largely been discounted. However, although still not fully understood, DOMS appears to be a product of inflammation caused by microscopic tears in the connective tissue elements that sensitize nociceptors and thereby heighten the sensations of pain.[67,68]

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> Recognized mechanisms that can cause DOMS include lactic acid and potassium accumulation, muscle spasms, mechanical damage to the connective tissues, inflammation, enzyme efflux secondary to muscle cell damage, and edema.[69]

There is certainly a marked increase in the proportion of disrupted muscle fibers after eccentric as compared with concentric exercise, which has been roughly correlated to the degree of DOMS.[70] Eccentric exercise is also linked to morphological and metabolical signs of muscle alteration: myofibrillar damage along the Z-band,[71,72] mitochondrial swelling,[71,72] increased intramuscular pressure,[71,72] and impaired glycogen resynthesis.

Given the increased frequency of eccentric exercise and DOMS, prevention of DOMS should involve a careful design of any eccentric program, which should include preparatory techniques, accurate training variables, and appropriate aftercare, including a cool-down period of low-intensity exercise to facilitate the return of oxygen to the muscle.

It is a widely held belief among athletes, coaches, and therapists that massage is an effective therapeutic modality that can enhance muscle recovery and reduce soreness following intense physical activity.[73] However, the actual scientific literature does not tend to support the positive efficacy of manual massage as a postexercise therapeutic modality in the athletic setting.[73–75]

In the presence of DOMS, the intervention should include, as appropriate, rest, local measures to reduce edema (e.g., cryotherapy, elevation of the involved limb[s]), or further exercise (aerobic submaximal exercise with no eccentric component [e.g., swimming, biking, stepper machine], pain-free flexibility exercises, and high-speed [300 degrees per second] concentric-only isokinetic training).[62,76]

Improving Muscular Endurance

It is well established that endurance training results in enhanced performance and a delayed onset of fatigue during endurance exercise by increasing aerobic sources of energy, thereby delaying the onset the blood lactate accumulation. To increase muscle endurance, exercises must be performed against light resistance for many repetitions, so that the amount of energy expended is equal to the amount of energy supplied. The nature of endurance exercise encourages the body to work aerobically. This phenomenon, called *steady state*, happens after some 5 to 6 minutes of exercise at a constant intensity level. Therefore, an important component of muscular endurance exercising is cardiovascular health. (See Chapter 15.) During steady state, the rate of mitochondrial ATP production is closely matched to the rate of ATP breakdown and demonstrates the existence of efficient cellular mechanisms to control mitochondrial ATP synthesis.[77] Endurance exercise training produces an increase in mitochondrial volume density in all three muscle fiber types.[78] Working at a degree to which the muscle is accustomed may improve the endurance of a muscle but does not increase its strength. However, exercise programs that increase strength also increase muscular endurance. To increase muscle endurance, exercises must be performed against a light resistance for many reps (no fewer than 20 per set). The amount of weight used during muscular endurance training can be determined by using a rating of perceived exertion (RPE) scale (see Chapter 15), in which 1 is very light exertion, and 10 is intense exertion. General endurance is trained by using low loads (30 percent of 1 RM), short rest periods (10 to 30 seconds), and repetitions between 20 and 150.[4] Muscular endurance programs are typically indicated early in a strengthening program because the high repetition and low load exercises are easier, enhance the vascular supply to muscle, cause less muscle soreness and joint irritation, and reduce the risk of muscle injury.

If strength endurance is the goal, it can be developed with 25 to 50 percent of 1 RM, with a moderate tempo of repetition performance (60 to 120 repetitions per minute).[4] Using the example of a bench press, if an athlete's maximum weight for the bench press is 220 pounds, the athlete could reduce the workout weight by 50 percent (110 pounds) and increase the number of reps to approximately 90 per minute.

The number of reps used is a factor of the speed of one rep and how many reps the athlete can complete in 60 seconds. For example, if the athlete takes 5 seconds to raise the weight during a biceps curl and 5 seconds to lower it, the muscle is under tension for 10 seconds and the athlete is working at a speed of 6 reps per minute. By increasing the speed of the rep to 4 seconds (the time the muscle is under tension), the athlete must achieve at least 15 reps in order to build muscular endurance.[79]

Due to the repetitive nature of endurance exercises, there is the increased potential for overuse injuries. This can be offset by manipulating one or more of the training variables, such as tempo, sets, the number of exercises, loads, rest periods between sets, hand position, and grip width.

Improving Muscle Power

When a concentric contraction of a muscle is preceded by a phase of passive or active stretching, elastic energy is stored in the muscle. This stored energy is then used in the following contractile phase. During a functional activity, muscles operate with a strong concentric action, which is usually preceded by a *passive* eccentric loading, as part of a stretch shortening cycle.[20] For example, before producing a vertical leap, the Achilles tendon and gastrocnemius muscle undergo a passive eccentric load, before eliciting a strong concentric contraction. The stretch shortening cycle includes the ability of the muscle to absorb or dissipate shock, while also preparing the stretched muscle for response.[80] Plyometric exercises, described next, are used to improve the ability of the muscles to perform these actions, by enhancing their power, speed, and agility.

Muscle power is increased when a muscle works dynamically against resistance within a specified period. For power development, one to three sets of 30 to 60 percent of 1 RM for three to six repetitions should be incorporated in the intermediate program. In the context of rehabilitation, plyometric training is the bridge between strength and power exercises.[81]

Plyometrics

Plyometric exercises are associated with quick, rapid movements that comprise a prestretch of the contracting muscle that, in turn, stores elastic energy in the muscle and activates a myotatic reflex.[82,83] A muscle's ability to use the stored elastic energy is affected by time, the magnitude of the stretch, and the velocity of the stretch.[83]

☑ KEY POINT

The nerve receptors involved in plyometrics are the muscle spindle, the Golgi tendon organ, and the joint capsule/ligamentous receptors.

Movement patterns in both athletics and activities of daily living (ADLs) involve repeated stretch shortening cycles, where a downward eccentric movement must be stopped and converted into an upward concentric movement in the desired direction. The degree of enhanced muscle performance is dependent upon the time frame between the eccentric and concentric contractions.[84,85]

Acceleration and deceleration are essential components of all task-specific activities.[54] These activities utilize variable speed and resistance throughout the range of contraction, stimulating neurological receptors and increasing their excitability. These neurological receptors play a major role in fiber recruitment and physiological coordination. A plyometric exercise, such as jumping and landing using one foot (**FIGURE 13.2**), then both feet (**FIGURE 13.3**), serves to improve the reactivity of these receptors by involving muscle stretch-shortening exercises, and consists of three distinct phases:

- A setting, or eccentric phase, in which the muscle is eccentrically stretched and gradually loaded.[71]
- A rapid amortization (reversal) phase, which is the amount of time between undergoing the yielding eccentric contraction and the beginning of a concentric force.[86] If the amortization phase is slow, the stretch reflex is not activated.[86]
- A concentric response contraction, to develop a significant amount of momentum and force.

FIGURE 13.2 Plyometric exercise with one leg.

FIGURE 13.3 Plyometric exercise with both legs.

By reproducing these stretch-shortening cycles at positions of physiological function, plyometric activities stimulate proprioceptive feedback to fine-tune muscle activity patterns. Stretch-shortening exercise trains the neuromuscular system by exposing it to increased strength loads and improving the stretch reflex.[86]

The goal of plyometric training is to decrease the amount of time required between the yielding eccentric contraction (landing) and the initiation of the overcoming concentric contraction (taking-off). This is particularly useful in activities that require a maximum amount of muscular force in a minimum amount of time. These parameters are difficult to imitate using traditional exercise apparatuses, but are nonetheless a vital component of the rehabilitative process for the patient to make a safe return to sport.

Because plyometrics involves ballistic, high-velocity movement patterns, the clinician must ensure that the patient has adequate strength and physical conditioning before initiating plyometric exercises. The minimal performance criteria for the safe introduction of plyometrics include the ability to perform one repetition of a parallel squat with a load of body weight on the subject's back (for jumps over 12 inches) for the lower extremity, and a bench press with one-third body weight for the upper extremity.[81] Also, success in the static stability tests[81] and dynamic stability tests (medicine ball throw for the upper extremities and vertical jump for the lower extremities) may be used as a measure of preparation.

Plyometric exercises can include diagonal and multiplanar motions with tubing or isokinetic machines. These exercises can be used to mimic any of the needed motions and can be performed in the standing, sitting, prone, or supine positions.

Lower Extremity Plyometric Exercises

Lower extremity plyometric exercises involve managing the gravitational forces to alter the intensity of the exercise. Thus, plyometric exercises can be performed with the patient positioned vertically or horizontally.

Vertical plyometric exercises (against or with gravitational forces) are more advanced. These exercises require a greater level of control.[62] The drop jump is an example—the subject steps off a box, lands, and immediately executes a vertical jump.

Horizontal plyometrics are performed perpendicular to the line of gravity. These exercises are better for most initial clinical rehabilitation plans because the concentric force is reduced, and the eccentric phase is not facilitated.[62] Examples of these types of exercises include a modified leg press that allows the subject to push off and land on the footplate, and pushing a sled against resistance.

The footwear and landing surfaces used in plyometric drills must have shock-absorbing qualities, and the protocol should allow sufficient recovery time between sets to prevent fatigue of the muscle groups.[87]

Upper Extremity Plyometric Exercises

Plyometric exercises for the upper extremities include relatively rapid movements in planes that approximate normal joint function. For example, at the shoulder, this would include 90-degree abduction, trunk rotation, and diagonal arm motions, and rapid external/internal rotation exercises. Plyometrics should be done for all body segments involved in the activity. Plyometric exercises for the upper extremity include wall push-offs, corner push-ups, box push-offs, the rebounder, and weighted ball throws using medicine (**FIGURE 13.4**) and other weighted balls. (The weight of the ball being caught creates a prestretch and an eccentric loading, creating resistance and demanding a powerful agonist contraction to propel it forward again.) The exercises can be performed using one arm or both arms at the same time. The former

FIGURE 13.4 Upper extremity plyometric exercise.

emphasizes trunk rotation whereas the latter emphasizes trunk extension and flexion, as well as shoulder motion. Although force-dependent motor firing patterns should be reestablished, care must be taken to completely integrate all of the components of the kinetic chain to funnel the proper forces to the appropriate joint.

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> In general, tonic muscles (e.g., the psoas, erector spinae, upper trapezius) function as endurance (postural) muscles, whereas phasic muscles (e.g., gluteals, triceps, tibialis anterior) function as the power muscles.[88]

Summary

Functional strength is the ability of the body to perform the various types of contractions involved with multi-joint functional activities in an efficient manner in a multiplanar environment.[89] Therapeutic exercises must be progressed to include combinations of concentric and eccentric contractions in the performance of activities that relate to a patient's requirements. Effective rehabilitation targets specific muscles in functional muscle activity patterns and overall conditioning and utilizes a progression of increased activity while preventing further trauma.[90] Incremental gains in function should be seen as strength increases.

Learning Portfolio

Case Study

While you are supervising a patient who is exercising, the patient asks you whether the exercise that he is performing will increase his muscle power.

1. What criteria determine whether an exercise will increase power?
2. What criteria determine whether an exercise will increase endurance?

Another patient, who has just joined a gym, is confused about the definitions of repetitions and sets.

3. Describe how you would explain to the patient the difference between a repetition and a set.

Your last patient of the day comes in complaining of increased muscle soreness following the eccentric exercises that she performed during the previous session.

4. What is the most likely cause for this muscle soreness and how will you try and prevent a reoccurrence during this session?

Review Questions

1. What type of contraction occurs when tension is produced in the muscle without any appreciable change in muscle length or joint movement?
2. What type of contraction occurs when a muscle slowly lengthens as it gives in to an external force that is greater than the contractile force it is exerting?

3. Of the three types of muscle actions, isometric, concentric, and eccentric, which one is capable of developing the most force?
4. What are the four biomechanical properties that human skeletal muscle possesses?
5. **True or false:** Rapid lengthening contractions generate less force than do slower lengthening contractions.
6. What are two disadvantages of isometric exercise?
7. To facilitate muscle control, what is the best way to first exercise the postural (or extensor) musculature when it is extremely weak?
   a. Eccentric exercises
   b. Isometric exercises
   c. Isokinetic exercises
   d. Electrical stimulation
8. What are the four parameters of exercise?
9. What is the best gauge of exercise intensity in a healthy individual?
   a. Blood pressure
   b. Heart rate
   c. Rating of perceived exertion (RPE)
   d. Rate of perspiration
10. You ask a patient to assess his level of exertion using the Borg rating of perceived exertion. The patient rates the level of exertion as 9 on the 6–19 scale. A rating of 9 corresponds to which of the following?
   a. Very, very light
   b. Hard
   c. Very light
   d. Somewhat hard
11. Which of the following is the optimal exercise prescription to improve fast movement speeds and enhance endurance (improving fast-twitch fiber function)?
   a. Low-intensity workloads for short durations
   b. High-intensity workloads for short durations
   c. Low-intensity workloads for long durations
   d. High-intensity workloads for long durations
12. A 35-year-old presents with a prescription to improve aerobic conditioning. Which of the following is *not* a benefit of aerobic exercise?
   a. Improved cardiovascular fitness
   b. Increased high-density lipoprotein (HDL) cholesterol
   c. Improved flexibility
   d. Improved state of mind
13. A high school coach asks you which is the best type of exercise to improve an athlete's vertical jump. Which of the following exercise types would be the best to achieve this goal?
   a. Closed-chain
   b. Open-chain
   c. Plyometrics
   d. DeLorme

References

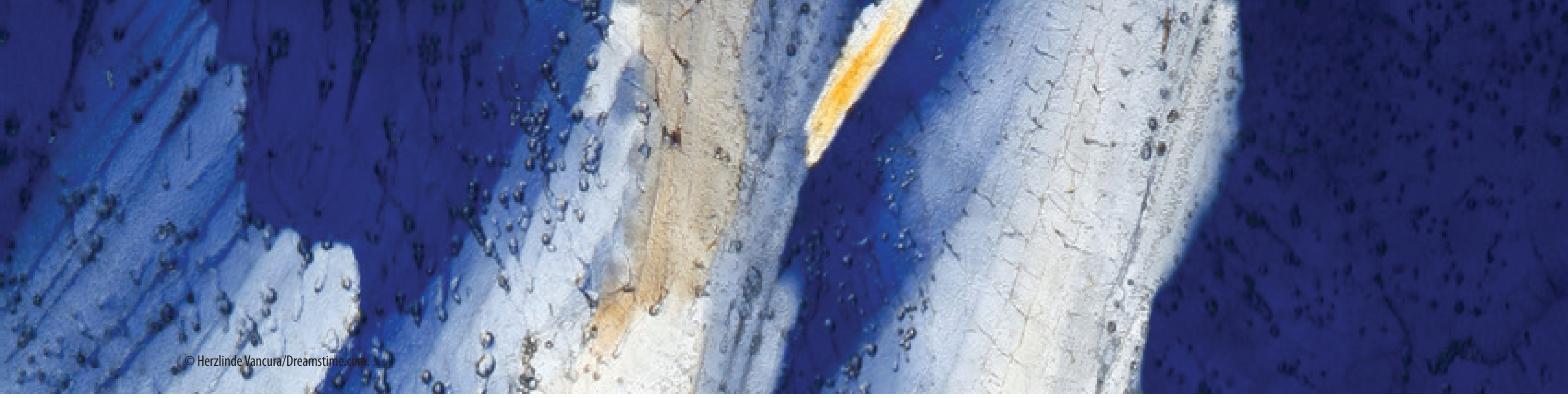
1. Couppe C, Svensson RB, Silbernagel KG, Langberg H, Magnusson SP. Eccentric or concentric exercises for the treatment of tendinopathies? *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2015; 45:853–63.
2. Aboodarda SJ, Page PA, Behm DG. Muscle activation comparisons between elastic and isoinertial resistance: a meta-analysis. *Clinical Biomechanics*. 2016; 39:52–61.
3. Albert MS. Principles of exercise progression. In: Greenfield B, editor. *Rehabilitation of the Knee: A Problem Solving Approach*. Philadelphia: FA Davis; 1993. p. 110–36.
4. Siff MC, Verkoshansky YV. *Supertraining*, 4th ed. Denver, CO: Supertraining International; 1999.
5. Emery CF, Kiecolt-Glaser JK, Glaser R, Malarkey WB, Frid DJ. Exercise accelerates wound healing among healthy older adults: a preliminary investigation. *The Journals of Gerontology Series A, Biological Sciences and Medical Sciences*. 2005; 60:1432–6.
6. Exercise speeds wound healing. *Health News*. 2006; 12:9.
7. Pines A, Fisman EZ. The healing properties of exercise. *Menopause*. 2006; 13:544–5.
8. Kisner C, Colby LA. Resistance exercise for impaired muscle performance. In: Kisner C, Colby LA, editors. *Therapeutic Exercise Foundations and Techniques*, 5th ed. Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2002. p. 147–229.
9. Connelly DM, Vandervoort AA. Effects of detraining on knee extensor strength and functional mobility in a group of elderly women. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 1997; 26:340–6.
10. Behm DG, Faigenbaum AD, Falk B, Klentrou P. Canadian Society for Exercise Physiology position paper: resistance training in children and adolescents. *Applied Physiology, Nutrition, and Metabolism/Physiologie Appliquee, Nutrition et Metabolisme*. 2008; 33:547–61.
11. Malliaras P, Barton CJ, Reeves ND, Langberg H. Achilles and patellar tendinopathy loading programmes: a systematic review comparing clinical outcomes and identifying potential mechanisms for effectiveness. *Sports Medicine*. 2013; 43:267–86.
12. Matsen FA, III, Lippitt SB, Sidles JA, et al. Strength. In: Matsen FA, III, Lippitt SB, Sidles JA, Harryman DT, II, editors. *Practical Evaluation and Management of the Shoulder*. Philadelphia: WB Saunders Company; 1994. p. 111–50.
13. Komi PV. *Strength and Power in Sport*. London: Blackwell Scientific Publications; 1992.

14. McArdle W, Katch FI, Katch VL. *Exercise Physiology: Energy, Nutrition, and Human Performance*. Philadelphia: Lea and Febiger; 1991.
15. Kisner C, Colby LA. *Therapeutic Exercise. Foundations and Techniques*. Philadelphia: FA Davis; 1997.
16. Astrand PO, Rodahl K. *The Muscle and its Contraction: Textbook of Work Physiology*. New York: McGraw-Hill; 1986.
17. Astrand PO, Rodahl K. *Physical Training: Textbook of Work Physiology*. New York: McGraw-Hill; 1986.
18. DeLorme T, Watkins A. *Techniques of Progressive Resistance Exercise*. New York: Appleton-Century; 1951.
19. Soest A, Bobbert M. The role of muscle properties in control of explosive movements. *Biological Cybernetics*. 1993; 69:195–204.
20. Komi PV. The stretch-shortening cycle and human power output. In: Jones NL, McCartney N, McComas AJ, editors. *Human Muscle Power*. Champlain, IL: Human Kinetics; 1986. p. 27–39.
21. Bandy W, Lovelace-Chandler V, Bandy B, et al. Adaptation of skeltal muscle to resistance training. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 1990; 12:248–55.
22. Cannon J, Kay D, Tarpenning KM, Marino FE. Comparative effects of resistance training on peak isometric torque, muscle hypertrophy, voluntary activation and surface EMG between young and elderly women. *Clinical Physiology and Functional Imaging*. 2007; 27:91–100.
23. Davies GJ. *Compendium of Isokinetics in Clinical Usage and Rehabilitation Techniques*, 4th ed. Onalaska, WI: S & S Publishers; 1992.
24. Marchetti PH, Jarbas da Silva J, Jon Schoenfeld B, Nardi PS, Pecoraro SL, D'Andrea Greve JM, et al. Muscle activation differs between three different knee joint-angle positions during a maximal isometric back squat exercise. *Journal of Sports Medicine*. 2016; 2016:3846123.
25. Coombes BK, Wiebusch M, Heales L, Stephenson A, Vicenzino B. Isometric exercise above but not below an individual's pain threshold influences pain perception in people with lateral epicondylalgia. *The Clinical Journal of Pain*. 2016; 32:1069–75.
26. Kwon MS, Sung DJ, So WY, Jeong TT. Effects of a 16-week combined exercise program on isometric ankle strength and gait velocity in a selected sample of Korean girls. *Iranian Journal of Public Health*. 2016; 45:102–3.
27. Jayaseelan DJ, Moats N, Ricardo CR. Rehabilitation of proximal hamstring tendinopathy utilizing eccentric training, lumbopelvic stabilization, and trigger point dry needling: 2 case reports. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2014; 44:198–205.
28. Verrall GM, Slavotinek JP, Barnes PG, et al. Clinical risk factors for hamstring muscle strain injury: a prospective study with correlation of injury by magnetic resonance imaging. *British Journal of Sports Medicine*. 2001; 35:435–9.
29. Ramskov D, Barton C, Nielsen RO, Rasmussen S. High eccentric hip abduction strength reduces the risk of developing patellofemoral pain among novice runners initiating a self-structured running program: a 1-year observational study. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2015; 45:153–61.
30. Albert MS. *Eccentric Muscle Training in Sports and Orthopedics*, 2nd ed. New York, NY: Churchill Livingstone; 1995.
31. Steiner R, Meyer K, Lippuner K, Schmid JP, Saner H, Hoppeler H. Eccentric endurance training in subjects with coronary artery disease: a novel exercise paradigm in cardiac rehabilitation? *European Journal of Applied Physiology*. 2004; 91:572–8.
32. Fahlstrom M, Jonsson P, Lorentzon R, Alfredson H. Chronic Achilles tendon pain treated with eccentric calf-muscle training. *Knee Surgery, Sports Traumatology, Arthroscopy*. 2003; 11:327–33.
33. Beyer R, Kongsgaard M, Hougs Kjaer B, Ohlenschlaeger T, Kjaer M, Magnusson SP. Heavy slow resistance versus eccentric training as treatment for Achilles tendinopathy: a randomized controlled trial. *The American Journal of Sports Medicine*. 2015; 43:1704–11.
34. Worrell TW, Perrin DH, Gansneder B, et al. Comparison of isokinetic strength and flexibility measures between hamstring injured and non-injured athletes. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 1991; 13:118–25.
35. Anderson MA, Gieck JH, Perrin D, Weltman A, Rutt R, Denegar C. The relationship among isokinetic, isotonic, and isokinetic concentric and eccentric quadriceps and hamstrings force and three components of athletic performance. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 1991; 14:114–20.
36. Steadman JR, Forster RS, Silfverskold JP. Rehabilitation of the knee. *Clinics in Sports Medicine*. 1989; 8:605–27.
37. Montgomery JB, Steadman JR. Rehabilitation of the injured knee. *Clinics in Sports Medicine*. 1985; 4:333–43.
38. Delsman PA, Losee GM. Isokinetic shear forces and their effect on the quadriceps active drawer. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise*. 1984; 16:151.
39. Chaitow L. An introduction to muscle energy techniques. In: Chaitow L, editor. *Muscle Energy Techniques*, 2nd ed. London: Churchill Livingstone; 2001. p. 1–18.
40. Voight M, Blackburn T. Proprioception and balance training and testing following injury. In: Ellenbecker TS, editor. *Knee Ligament Rehabilitation*. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 2000. p. 361–85.
41. Voight ML, Cook G. Impaired neuromuscular control: reactive neuromuscular training. In: Prentice WE, Voight ML, editors. *Techniques in Musculoskeletal Rehabilitation*. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2001. p. 93–124.
42. Jerosch J, Prymka M. Propriozeptive Fahigkeiten des gesunden kniegelenks: beeinflussung durch eine elastische bandage. *Sportverletz Sportsch*. 1995; 9:72–6.
43. Jerosch J, Hoffstetter I, Bork H, Bischoff M. The influence of orthoses on the proprioception of the ankle joint. *Knee Surgery, Sports Traumatology, Arthroscopy*. 1995; 3:39–46.
44. Perlau R, Frank C, Fick G. The effect of elastic bandages on human knee proprioception in the uninjured population. *The American Journal of Sports Medicine*. 1995; 23:251–5.
45. Robbins S, Waked E, Rappel R. Ankle taping improves proprioception before and after exercise in young men. *British Journal of Sports Medicine*. 1995; 29:242–7.
46. Barrett DS. Proprioception and function after anterior cruciate ligament reconstruction. *The Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery*. 1991; 73B:833–7.
47. Lephart SM, Pincivero DM, Giraldo JL, Fu FH. The role of proprioception in the management and rehabilitation of athletic injuries. *The American Journal of Sports Medicine*. 1997; 25:130–7.
48. Fremerey RW, Lobenhoffer P, Zeichen J, Skutek M, Bosch U, Tscherne H. Proprioception after rehabilitation and reconstruction in knees with deficiency of the anterior cruciate ligament: a prospective, longitudinal study. *Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery* [Br]. 2000; 82:801–6.

49. Irrgang JJ, Whitney SL, Harner C. Nonoperative treatment of rotator cuff injuries in throwing athletes. *Journal of Sport Rehabilitation*. 1992; 1:197–222.
50. Fleck SJ. Periodized strength training: a critical review. *Journal of Strength and Conditioning Research*. 1999; 13:82–9.
51. Simoneau GG, Bereda SM, Sobush DC, Starsky AJ. Biomechanics of elastic resistance in therapeutic exercise programs. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2001; 31:16–24.
52. Engle RP, Canner GC. Proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation (PNF) and modified procedures for anterior cruciate ligament (ACL) instability. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 1989; 11:230.
53. Manske RC, Reiman MP. Muscle weakness. In: Cameron MH, Monroe LG, editors. *Physical Rehabilitation: Evidence-Based Examination, Evaluation, and Intervention*. St Louis, MO: Saunders/Elsevier; 2007. p. 64–86.
54. Grimsby O, Power B. Manual therapy approach to knee ligament rehabilitation. In: Ellenbecker TS, editor. *Knee Ligament Rehabilitation*. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 2000. p. 236–51.
55. Bray NW, Smart RR, Jakobi JM, Jones GR. Exercise prescription to reverse frailty. *Applied Physiology, Nutrition, and Metabolism/Physiologie Appliquee, Nutrition et Metabolisme*. 2016; 41:1112–6.
56. Musculino JE, Cipriani S. Pilates and the “powerhouse”: I. *Journal of Bodywork and Movement Therapies*. 2004; 8:15–24.
57. Miyamoto GC, Moura KF, Franco YR, Oliveira NT, Amaral DD, Branco AN, et al. Effectiveness and cost-effectiveness of different weekly frequencies of Pilates for chronic low back pain: randomized controlled trial. *Physical Therapy*. 2016; 96:382–9.
58. Stolze LR, Allison SC, Childs JD. Derivation of a preliminary clinical prediction rule for identifying a subgroup of patients with low back pain likely to benefit from Pilates-based exercise. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2012; 42:425–36.
59. Tabata I, Nishimura K, Kouzaki M, Hirai Y, Ogita F, Miyachi M, et al. Effects of moderate-intensity endurance and high-intensity intermittent training on anaerobic capacity and VO_2 max. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise*. 1996; 10:1327–30.
60. Thomee R, Renstrom P, Grimby G, Peterson L. Slow or fast isokinetic training after surgery. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 1987; 8:476.
61. Grimby G, Thomee R. Principles of rehabilitation after injuries. In: Dirix A, Knuttgen HG, Tittel K, editors. *The Olympic Book of Sports Medicine*. Oxford, England: Blackwell Scientific Publications; 1984.
62. Albert M. Concepts of muscle training. In: Wadsworth C, editor. *Orthopaedic Physical Therapy: Strength and Conditioning Applications in Orthopaedics.* Home Study Course 98A. La Crosse, WI: Orthopaedic Section, APTA, Inc.; 1998.
63. Graves JE, Pollock SH, Leggett SH, et al. Effect of reduced training frequency on muscular strength. *Sports Medicine*. 1988; 9:316–19.
64. Canavan PK. Designing a rehabilitation program related to strength and conditioning. In: Wilmarth MA, editor. *Orthopaedic Physical Therapy: Strength and Conditioning.* Independent Study Course 153. La Crosse, WI: Orthopaedic Section, APTA, Inc.; 2005.
65. Byrnes WC, Clarkson PM, White JS, et al. Delayed onset muscle soreness following repeated bouts of downhill running. *Journal of Applied Physiology*. 1985; 59:710.
66. Bennett M, Best TM, Babul S, Taunton J, Lepawsky M. Hyperbaric oxygen therapy for delayed onset muscle soreness and closed soft tissue injury. *Cochrane Database of Systemic Reviews*. 2005; CD004713.
67. Bajaj P, Madeleine P, Sjogaard G, Arendt-Nielsen L. Assessment of postexercise muscle soreness by electromyography and mechanomyography. *The Journal of Pain*. 2002; 3:126–36.
68. Papacosta E, Nassis GP, Gleeson M. Effects of acute postexercise chocolate milk consumption during intensive judo training on the recovery of salivary hormones, salivary SIgA, mood state, muscle soreness, and judo-related performance. *Applied Physiology, Nutrition, and Metabolism/Physiologie Appliquee, Nutrition et Metabolisme*. 2015; 40:1116–22.
69. Cheung K, Hume P, Maxwell L. Delayed onset muscle soreness: treatment strategies and performance factors. *Sports Medicine*. 2003; 33:145–64.
70. Nureberg P, Giddings CJ, Stray-Gundersen J, Fleckenstein JL, Gonyea WJ, Peshock RM. MR imaging-guided muscle biopsy for correlation of increased signal intensity with ultrastructural change and delayed-onset muscle soreness after exercise. *Radiology*. 1992; 184:865–9.
71. Friden J. Delayed onset muscle soreness. *Scandinavian Journal of Medicine and Science in Sports*. 2002; 12:327–8.
72. Friden J, Sjostrom M, Ekblom B. Myofibrillar damage following intense eccentric exercise in man. *International Journal of Sports Medicine*. 1983; 4:170–6.
73. Cafarelli E, Flint F. The role of massage in preparation for and recovery from exercise. *Sports Medicine*. 1992; 14:1–9.
74. Callaghan MJ. The role of massage in the management of the athlete: a review. *British Journal of Sports Medicine*. 1993; 27:28–33.
75. Tiidus PM, Shoemaker JK. Effleurage massage, muscle blood flow and long-term post-exercise strength recovery. *International Journal of Sports Medicine*. 1995; 16:475–83.
76. Hasson S, Barnes W, Hunter M, Williams J. Therapeutic effect of high speed voluntary muscle contractions on muscle soreness and muscle performance. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 1989; 10:499.
77. Tonkonogi M, Sahlin K. Physical exercise and mitochondrial function in human skeletal muscle. *Exercise and Sport Sciences Reviews*. 2002; 30:129–37.
78. Howald H, Hoppeler H, Claassen H, Mathieu O, Straub R. Influences of endurance training on the ultrastructural composition of the different muscle fiber types in humans. *Pflugers Archiv: European Journal of Physiology*. 1985; 403:369–76.
79. Clark JE. The use of an 8-week mixed-intensity interval endurance-training program improves the aerobic fitness of female soccer players. *Journal of Strength and Conditioning Research*. 2010; 24:1773–81.
80. Malone T, Nitz AJ, Kuperstein J, Garrett W, Jr. Neuromuscular concepts. In: Ellenbecker TS, editor. *Knee Ligament Rehabilitation*. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 2000. p. 399–411.
81. Voight ML, Draovitch P, Tippett SR. Plyometrics. In: Albert MS, editor. *Eccentric Muscle Training in Sports and Orthopedics*. New York, NY: Churchill Livingstone; 1995.
82. Fletcher IM, Hartwell M. Effect of an 8-week combined weights and plyometrics training program on golf drive performance. *Journal of Strength and Conditioning Research*. 2004; 18:59–62.
83. Herrero AJ, Martin J, Martin T, Abadia O, Fernandez B, Garcia-Lopez D. Short-term effect of plyometrics and strength training with and without superimposed electrical stimulation on muscle strength and anaerobic performance:

a randomized controlled trial. Part II. *Journal of Strength and Conditioning Research*. 2010; 24:1616–22.

84. Creekmur CC, Haworth JL, Cox RH, Walsh MS. Effects of plyometrics performed during warm-up on 20 and 40 meter sprint performance. *The Journal of Sports Medicine and Physical Fitness*. 2017; 57:550–5.
85. McCormick BT, Hannon JC, Newton M, Shultz B, Detling N, Young WB. The effects of frontal- and sagittal-plane plyometrics on change-of-direction speed and power in adolescent female basketball players. *International Journal of Sports Physiology and Performance*. 2016; 11:102–7.
86. Wilk KE, Voight ML, Keirns MA, Gambetta V, andrews JR, Dillman CJ. Stretch-shortening drills for the upper extremities: theory and clinical application. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 1993; 17:225–39.
87. Robinson LE, Devor ST, Merrick MA, Buckworth J. The effects of land vs. aquatic plyometrics on power, torque, velocity, and muscle soreness in women. *Journal of Strength and Conditioning Research*. 2004; 18:84–91.
88. Jull GA, Janda V. Muscle and Motor control in low back pain. In: Twomey LT, Taylor JR, editors. *Physical Therapy of the Low Back: Clinics in Physical Therapy*. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1987. p. 258–78.
89. Clark MA. *Integrated Training for the New Millenium*. Thousand Oaks, CA: National Academy of Sports Medicine; 2001.
90. Lange GW, Hintermeister RA, Schlegel T, Dillman CJ, Steadman JR. Electromyographic and kinematic analysis of graded treadmill walking and the implications for knee rehabilitation. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 1996; 23:294–301.


© Herzlinde Vancura/Dreamstime.com

CHAPTER 14

Improving Balance

CHAPTER OBJECTIVES

At the completion of this chapter, the reader will be able to:

1. Define the components of balance.
2. Describe the differences between static and dynamic balance.
3. Describe ways in which balance can be improved through physical therapy.
4. Describe some exercises that can be used to improve balance.
5. Describe some exercises that can be used in an agility progression.

Overview

Taber's Cyclopedic Medical Dictionary defines coordination as "the working together of various muscles for the production of a certain movement." Coordination involves a complex and intricate sequence of activities. Balance or postural control, a component of coordination (see Chapter 3), is a complex motor control task involving the detection and integration of sensory information to assess the position (proprioception) and motion (kinesthesia) of the body in space and the execution of appropriate musculoskeletal responses to control the body position within the context of the environment and task.[1]

- Proprioception is a specialized variation of the sensory modality of touch, which plays an important role in coordinating muscle activity and involves the integration of sensory input concerning static joint position (joint position sensibility), joint movement (kinesthetic sensibility), velocity of movement, and the force of muscular contraction (from the skin, muscles, and joints).[2,3]
- Kinesthesia, a submodality of proprioception, refers to the sense of movement of the body or one of the segments. Although the articular receptors clearly play an active role, the stretch reflex, which is controlled by two other sensors, the muscle spindle, and the Golgi tendon organ (GTO), is also important. Information about movement sense travels up the spinocerebellar tract.

Balance involves the detection and integration of kinesthesia and proprioception to assess the motion and position of the body in space and the execution of appropriate musculoskeletal responses to control body position within its stability limits and within the context of the environment and task, whether stationary or moving.[1] An individual's balance is greatest when the body's center of gravity (COG) is maintained over the center of its base of support (BOS) (**FIGURE 14.1**).

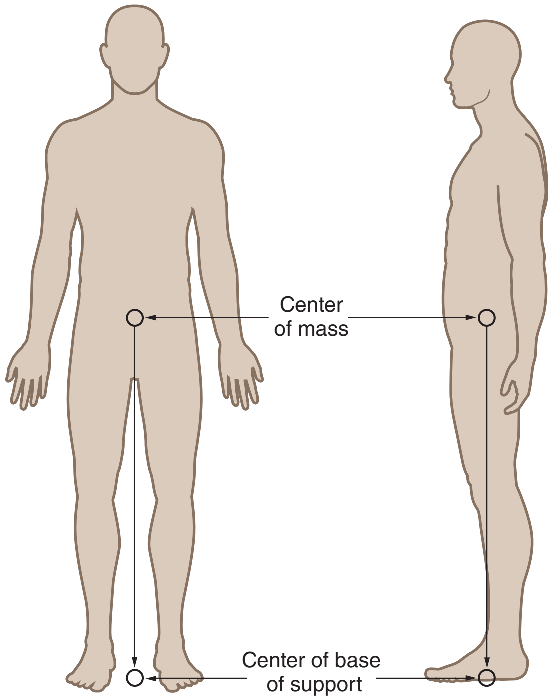


FIGURE 14.1 Center of mass and base of support.

Functional tasks require different types of balance control, including:[1]

- *Static balance.* The ability to maintain a stable antigravity position while at rest, such as when standing and sitting
- *Dynamic balance.* The capacity to stabilize the body when it is moving on a stable surface or when the support surface is moving, such as during sit-to-stand transfers or when walking
- *Automatic postural reactions.* The ability to maintain balance in response to unexpected external perturbations, such as standing on a bus that suddenly decelerates

To maintain balance, the body must continually adjust its position in space to keep the COG of an individual (see Chapter 2) over the BOS or to bring the COG back to that position after perturbation. A degree of anteroposterior and lateral sway typically occurs while maintaining balance; for example, normal anteroposterior sway in adults is 12 degrees from the most posterior to the most anterior position.[4] If the sway exceeds these limits, some strategy must be employed to regain balance.

Agility can be defined as the ability to think and change direction efficiently and effectively. Agility combines balance, coordination, and strength, with speed.

Impaired Balance

Injury or disease can cause impaired balance to any central nervous system structures involved in the stages of information processing (i.e., somatosensory input, visual and vestibular input, sensory motor integration, motor output generation).[1]

Somatosensory System

The somatosensory system provides information about proprioception (static position) and kinesthesia (positions during movement). The information arises from peripheral sources such as the mechanoreceptors in muscle, the joint capsule, and other soft tissue structures. (See Chapter 2.) Following soft tissue or joint injury, proprioception and kinesthesia are disrupted and alter neuromuscular control. The alterations in neuromuscular control occur in the normal recruitment pattern and timing of muscular contractions.[5] Any delay in response time to an unexpected load placed on the dynamic restraints (muscles, tendons) can expose the structures that provide static restraint (ligament, joint capsule, bone) to excessive forces, increasing the potential for injury and for falling.[6]

☑ KEY POINT

Extremes of joint motion activate the mechanoreceptors of the ligaments, initiating a spinal reflex with contraction of muscles antagonizing the movement through a ligamentomuscular reflex.[7,8] Such contractions are assumed to take place to prevent damage to the ligament and cartilage (a joint protective reflex). The reflex pattern most often seen is one of inhibition of knee extension and facilitation of knee flexion following injury or surgery.

☑ KEY POINT

Proprioception can play a protective role in an acute injury through reflex muscle splinting via stimulation of the muscle spindles.[9] A common area of the body in which reflex muscle splinting occurs is the spine, particularly the neck and low back.

Visual and Vestibular Input

The visual system provides information about the position of the head relative to the environment and orients the head to maintain level gaze. The system also provides information about the movement of surrounding objects. The vestibular system contains information on the orientation of the head in space and on acceleration.

Sensory Motor Integration

Sensory motor integration involves an analysis of the relative contributions of information from each system. This analysis functions to resolve conflicting input. For example, consider sitting stationary on the plane at an airport when an adjacent plane begins to move backward. The visual input is unable to detect whether one plane is moving backward or forward relative to the other, so the brain must rely on other information, such as information from the somatosensory system.

Motor Output Generation

Following the analysis of the sensory information, a response is selected and then executed. This response programming is influenced by movement and is the stage most often manipulated in treatment.[10] Simple tasks take less time to process and program than complex movements; however, rather than having to determine which of the muscles needs to be activated and when, the brain utilizes some preprogrammed synergies. Under this system, the brain only needs to decide which synergy to engage, when to engage it, and at what intensity to respond.[11] This is an example of feedforward control or open loop control, in which the responses are preprogrammed and automatic, rather than relying on feedback (feedback control or closed loop control). Healthy individuals use five primary movement strategies to recover balance in response to these sways and sudden perturbations of the supporting surface:

- *Ankle strategy (A-P plane).* Movements of the ankle that are activated during quiet stance and during small perturbations to restore a person's COG to a stable position.
- *Weight-shift strategy (lateral plane).* Involves shifting the body weight laterally from one leg to the other.
- *Suspension strategy.* Occurs during balance tasks when a person quickly lowers his or her body's COG by flexing the knees, causing an associated flexion of the ankles and hips.
- *Hip strategy.* Used for rapid and/or large external perturbations or for movement executed with the COG near the limits of stability. For example, hip extension is used with a posterior perturbation (**FIGURE 14.2**), and hip flexion is used if the body is perturbed in an anterior direction (**FIGURE 14.3**).

FIGURE 14.2 Hip strategy following posterior perturbation.

FIGURE 14.3 Hip strategy following anterior perturbation.

- *Stepping strategy.* A forward or backward step that is used when a large force displaces the COG beyond the limits of stability.

In addition, some reflex mechanisms produce quick, relatively invariant movements to ensure the response matches the postural challenge.

The physical therapist (PT) may choose to use some balance tests for an assessment of overall balance, including the functional reach test, Tinetti's balance and mobility assessment, timed get up and go, and Berg's balance test. Balance testing is described in Chapter 3.

Improving Balance

Studies have shown that proprioception and kinesthesia do improve following a rehabilitation program.[2,3] The most important factor in treating balance impairment is determining the cause of the impairment—whether the problem results from neuromuscular, sensory, musculoskeletal, or a cognitive (e.g., fear of falling) impairment.[11] Also, it must be determined whether the patient has adequate strength to maintain balance, particularly core strength. Finally, awareness of posture and the position of the body in space is fundamental to balance training.[11] The patient should receive education about how normal alignment of the spine feels in a variety of positions, and how muscles can be used to control those positions through the provision of verbal, visual, tactile, and proprioceptive cues to enhance learning.

Because balance training often involves activities that challenge the patient's limits of stability, it is important that the PTA take steps to ensure the patient's safety. This includes the use of a gait belt, performing the exercises near a railing, and closely guarding the patient. Balance training to promote static balance control involves changing the base of support of the patient while performing various tasks, first with his or her eyes open and then with the eyes closed. These tasks can be performed with the patient sitting (**FIGURE 14.4**), kneeling (**FIGURE 14.5**), or standing progressions (**FIGURE 14.6** through **FIGURE 14.12**) using one leg or both, depending on the ability of the patient and the goals of the intervention. Dynamic balance activities (**FIGURE 14.13** through **FIGURE 14.16**) can then be introduced as appropriate.

☑ KEY POINT

Afferent input is altered after joint injury, so rehabilitation must emphasize the restoration of proprioceptive sensibility and retrain these altered afferent pathways to enhance the sensation of joint movement.[12]

The usual progression employed involves a progressive narrowing of the BOS, a rise in the COG, and a change in the weight-bearing surface from hard to soft, or from flat to uneven, while increasing the perturbation (**FIGURE 14.17**). Challenges to the

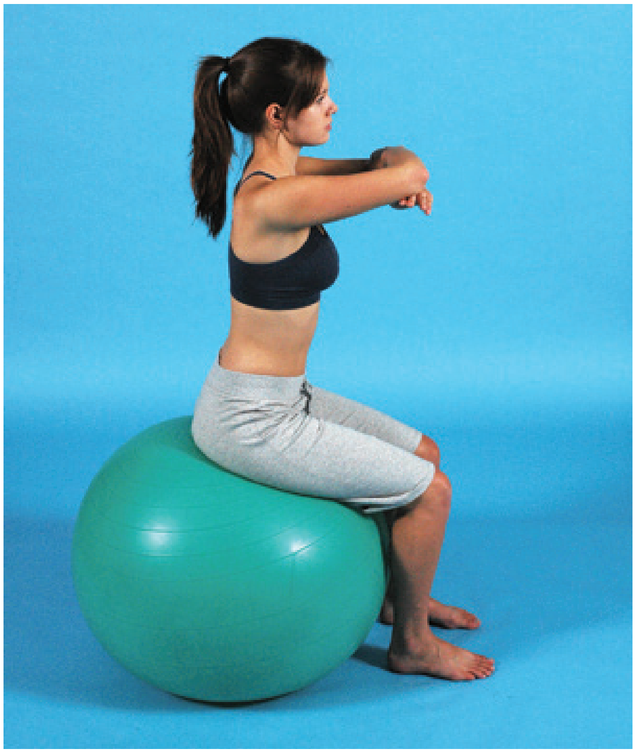


FIGURE 14.4 Sitting balance.

FIGURE 14.5 Start position for kneeling balance tasks.

FIGURE 14.6 Standing balance progression.

FIGURE 14.7 Standing balance progression.

FIGURE 14.8 Standing balance progression.

FIGURE 14.9 Standing balance progression.

FIGURE 14.10 Standing balance progression.

FIGURE 14.11 Standing balance progression.

FIGURE 14.12 Standing balance progression.

FIGURE 14.13 Dynamic balance exercise.

FIGURE 14.14 Dynamic balance exercise.

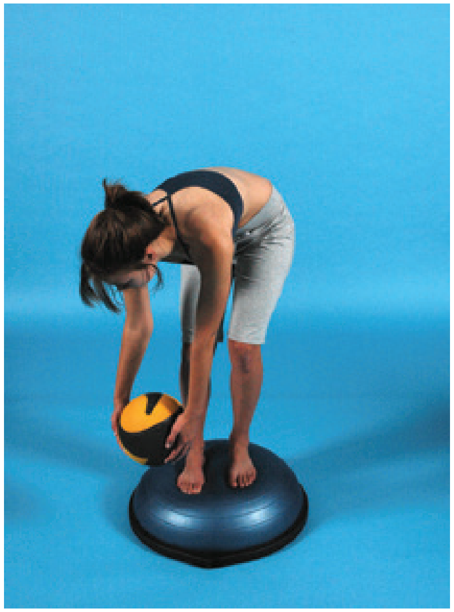


FIGURE 14.15 Dynamic balance exercise.

FIGURE 14.16 Dynamic balance exercise.
Used with permission of Fitter International, Inc.

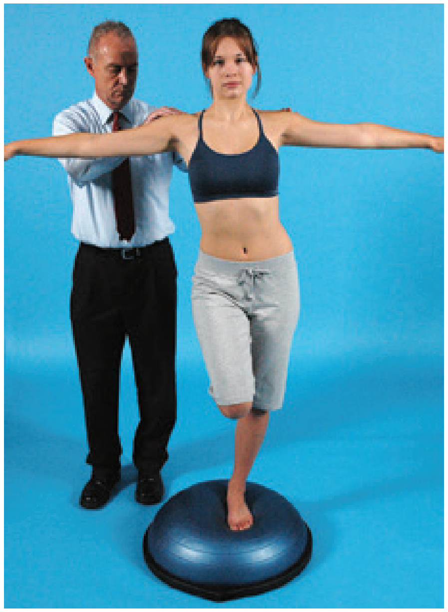


FIGURE 14.17 Balance activity with perturbation.

TABLE 14.1 Progressive Challenges for Balance Training

Position (in order of increasing difficulty)	Target Muscle Groups	Activities	Progressions and Rationale
Supine/prone	Trunk (all muscles) Neck muscles	Rolling to increase segmentation (using a hook-lying position) Reaching from side lying	Varying speeds can be used to increase the challenge.
Quadruped	Trunk (extensor) Upper extremities Proximal lower extremities	Static holding with applied challenges (e.g., alternating isometrics, rhythmic stabilization) Creeping on all fours	Alternating isometrics applied in a variety of directions—uniplanar (anterior-posterior, medial-lateral) initially and then three-dimensionally.
Sitting	Trunk Lower extremities (hips)	Decreasing upper extremity support Reaching activities Static holding with applied challenges (e.g., alternating isometrics, rhythmic stabilization)	Rhythmic stabilization: produces co-contractions of opposing muscle groups. Reaching activities enhance dynamic control of trunk.
Kneeling (including half-kneeling and tall-kneeling)	Trunk Lower extremities (except the foot and ankle)	Static holding with applied challenges (e.g., alternating isometrics, rhythmic stabilization)	Varying the BOS widths (wide to narrow).
Standing	Trunk Lower extremities	Static standing Gait: Bilateral support: parallel bars > walker Single hand support: quad cane > straight cane	Varying the BOS widths (wide to narrow).

patient's position can be added in a variety of ways (**TABLE 14.1**).

When restoring postural equilibrium, it is important to follow a structured sequence:

1. *Static control of trunk without extremity movement.* The proximal segments and trunk must provide a stable base onto which functional movements can be superimposed:
   - Manual perturbation to stable trunk
   - Weight shifting while maintaining postural equilibrium
2. *Dynamic control of trunk without extremity movement.*
   - Fixation of distal segments while proximal segments are moved; for example, maintaining both feet on the ground while bending at the waist
   - Gradual increase of range of motion from small range to large range
3. *Static control of trunk with extremity movement.*
   - Maintenance of trunk stability with increasingly ballistic extremity movements; for example, maintain a sitting position while throwing a medicine ball
   - Exercises to increase strength, endurance, flexibility, and coordination are prescribed in conjunction with equilibrium exercises
   - Exercises that challenge the endurance capabilities of the core muscles
   - Progression from extremity exercises with the spine in neutral to extremity exercises with the spine in a variety of functional positions
   - Emphasis on exercises that involve maintaining functional positions to work the correct muscle groups

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> It is important for the physical therapist assistant (PTA) to be aware of some factors that can affect balance and increase the risk of fall:
>
> - *Medications.* The risk of falling can be increased if the patient is prescribed sedatives and antidepressants.
> - *Low vision.* Patients with balance issues should be directed to have regular eye examinations and to avoid areas of poor lighting.
> - *Sensory loss.* Sensory loss in the lower extremities can result in difficulties when walking on soft or uneven surfaces.

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> Various clinical devices have been designed to assist with proprioceptive training for the upper and lower extremities. These include but are not limited to the following:
>
> - Mini-trampoline
> - Biomechanical ankle platform system (BAPS)
> - Foam rollers
> - Wobble board
> - Kinesthetic ability training (KAT) device
> - Fitter, rocker boards, or foam balance mats

At the earliest opportunity, functional tasks must be incorporated. A typical functional activity progression includes the following:

1. *Simple patterns of movements that encourage safe body mechanics.* Once these are mastered, more challenging movements can be introduced.
    - Closed-chain activities (wall squats, lunges) initially and then open-chain activities superimposed on the closed chain by adding extremity motions to the squats and lunges
    - Sit-stand-sit activities focusing on moving the body mass forward over the base of support, extending the lower extremities, and raising the body mass over the feet, and then reversing the procedure
    - Stand-to-sit transitions focusing on balance control while pivoting and changing direction
    - Floor-to-standing raises using a progression of side-sit to quadruped to kneeling to half-kneeling to standing
2. *Gait activities.* Ambulating forward, backward, and sideways at varying speeds and on varying BOS widths (wide to narrow). These can be progressed to include the following:
    - Cross-step walking and braiding, 360-degree turns, obstacle courses
    - Lateral step-ups, stair climbing, walking up and down ramps
    - Performing simultaneous activities with the upper extremities (throwing or bouncing a ball, kicking a ball)
3. *Trunk motions.* Uniplanar trunk motions initially, before progressing to three-dimensional trunk motions, such as proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation (PNF) rotations, in a variety of positions of lumbar flexion and extension.
    - The patient uses stability equipment (e.g., stability ball, wobble board).
    - The patient performs active weight shifts, upper extremity reaching activities, lower extremity movements, such as stepping and marching, and trunk movements with body weight applied through a variety of surfaces.
    - Challenges can be added by increasing the range of motion of the movements and by increasing the speed of the movements.

Agility

Agility is the ability to change the position of the body quickly and with control—translating power into meaningful movement. In essence, it is the highest form of dynamic balance and, although many patients do not require this level of skill, those who are returning to occupations or sports that require this ability do. Developing agility skills typically requires the use of specialized equipment such as a physioball, adjustable hurdles, and an agility ladder (about 10 yards [9 meters] long with 18 inch [45.7 centimeter] blocks). What follows is an example of advanced agility workout. It consists of two sets of five exercises.

- *Single leg balance with head nod.* This exercise is performed with the eyes closed. The patient can use his or her arms to maintain balance. The patient balances on one leg with the other leg placed in front so that the foot is hovering over the floor. Once balance is achieved, the patient rotates his or her head to the right, performs a nod of the head upwards and downwards, and then returns to the start position. This exercise is repeated 10 times. The patient then rotates his or her head to the left, performs the head nod movement and then returns to the start position. This exercise is repeated 10 times.

- *Physioball hip extensions*. The patient kneels on a physioball with the hands placed in front of the knees. Once the patient is able to maintain this balanced position, he or she then attempts to raise one hand out in front, returns the hand to the start position and then raises the other hand. Once this is completed, the patient extends one hip by lifting the knee off the ball, returns the knee to the start position and then extends the other hip. The exercise is then repeated 10 times. If this proves to be too challenging for the patient an inverted BOSU ball can be used.
- *Physioball trunk rotations*. The patient positions himself or herself in a high kneeling position on a physioball. Once the balance position has been achieved, the patient raises both arms out in front and clasps the fingers together before rotating the arms to one side and then the other side. This exercise is repeated 10 times to each side.
- *Agility ladder drill*. The patient runs through each rung of the ladder. On each step, the patient swings the arms high and brings one knee up to the chest, changing arms and legs as they make their way through the ladder. To make this exercise more challenging, the patient can move sideways through the rungs.
- *Hurdle jumps*. Position six mini-hurdles (6 to 12 inches [15 to 30 centimeters] high) in a straight line. The patient is asked to jump/step over the first hurdle and then pause for a few seconds before bringing the other leg over the hurdle. The patient then jumps back over the first hurdle, returning to the start position. The exercise is repeated so that the patient jumps over the first hurdle and the second hurdle before returning to the start position and so on.

It is important to progress each patient based on the following criteria:

- The required level of strength/endurance is available to perform the activities without fatigue and while maintaining good trunk control.
- The patient has adequate flexibility in those muscles that allow the correct pelvic tilt to occur so that a stable base can be created. (Adaptively shortened hamstrings can hold the pelvis in a posteriorly rotated position; adaptively shortened hip flexors can hold the pelvis in an anteriorly rotated position.)

Summary

Loss of balance and falling are problems that affect individuals with a wide range of diagnoses encountered in physical therapy. There are numerous factors to consider when designing an intervention program for balance impairments, and most programs require a multisystem approach. Because balance training often includes activities that challenge the patient's limits of stability, it is important that the PTA take steps to ensure patient safety.

Learning Portfolio

Case Study

You are treating a patient with a history of falls resulting from poor balance. The patient asks you what causes people to fall over.

1. Explain, as you would to the patient, using layman's terms, how the three main systems of the body work together to prevent falling.

Your physical therapist has provided a progression of balance exercises for the patient.

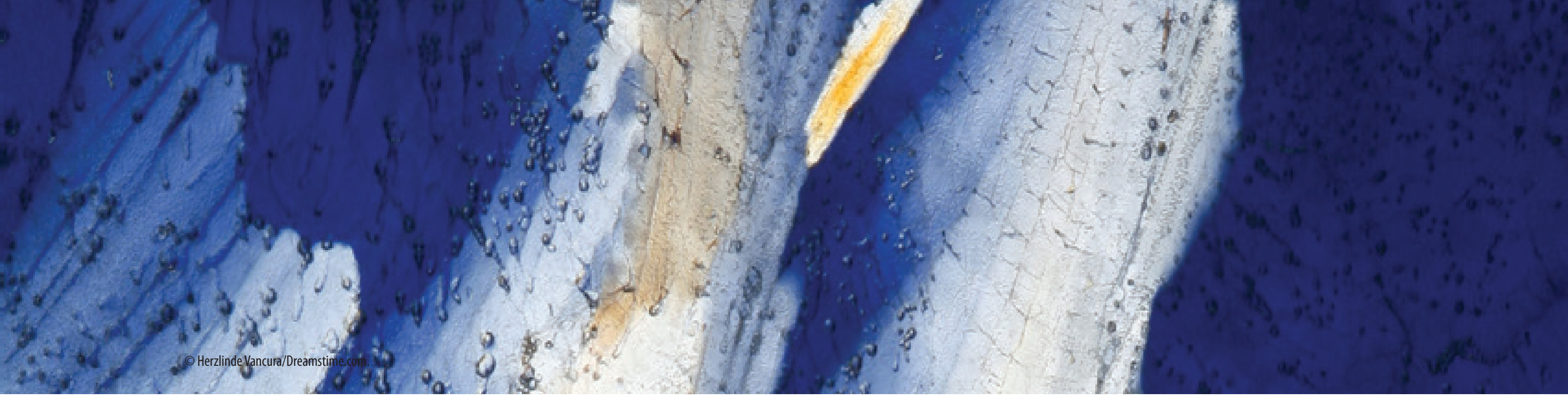
2. What is the usual progression employed regarding how the base of support and the center of gravity are manipulated?
3. What is the usual progression employed in terms of how the weight-bearing surface is changed?
4. Which of the following would you expect to be more challenging for the patient: maintaining dynamic control of trunk without extremity movement, or maintaining static control of trunk with extremity movement? Why?

Review Questions

1. Which two systems provide information concerning joint placement, joint position, pressure and stretch, and pain?
2. List four factors that can contribute to a balance dysfunction.
3. **True or false:** An individual's balance is greatest when the body's center of gravity is maintained over its base of support.
4. The ability to maintain balance in response to unexpected external perturbations is known as what?
5. Which three components of the central nervous system are critical for good balance?
6. What term is used to describe information in relation to positions during movement?
7. Which three primary movement strategies are used by healthy individuals to recover balance in response to body sways and sudden perturbations of the supporting surface?
8. The functional reach test and timed get up and go are examples of what?
9. Which position is more challenging for a patient with poor balance, quadruped or sitting?
10. **True or false:** Poor vision, decreased sensation, and medications can all have a negative impact on balance.

References

1. Kloos AD, Givens-Heiss D. Exercise for impaired balance. In: Kisner C, Colby LA, editors. *Therapeutic Exercise Foundations and Techniques*, 5th ed. Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2002. p. 251–72.
2. Bellan V, Wallwork SB, Gallace A, Spence C, Moseley GL. Integrating self-localization, proprioception, pain, and performance. *Journal of Dance Medicine and Science*. 2017; 21:24–35.
3. Kabbaligere R, Lee BC, Layne CS. Balancing sensory inputs: Sensory reweighting of ankle proprioception and vision during a bipedal posture task. *Gait and Posture*. 2017; 52:244–50.
4. Krishnamoorthy V, Latash ML. Reversals of anticipatory postural adjustments during voluntary sway in humans. *The Journal of Physiology*. 2005; 565:675–84.
5. Barrett DS. Proprioception and function after anterior cruciate ligament reconstruction. *The Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery*. 1991; 73B:833–7.
6. Voight ML, Cook G. Impaired neuromuscular control: reactive neuromuscular training. In: Prentice WE, Voight ML, editors. *Techniques in Musculoskeletal Rehabilitation*. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2001. p. 93–124.
7. Gardner E. Reflex muscular responses to stimulation of articular nerves in cat. *American Journal of Physiology*. 1950; 161:133–41.
8. Palmer I. On injuries to ligaments of knee joint; clinical study. *Acta Chirurgica Scandinavica*. 1938; Suppl. 53.
9. Lephart SM, Henry TJ. Functional rehabilitation for the upper and lower extremity. *The Orthopedic Clinics of North America*. 1995; 26:579–92.
10. Light KE. Information processing for motor performance in aging adults. *Physical Therapy*. 1990; 70:820–6.
11. Thein-Brody L, Dewane J. Impaired balance. In: Hall C, Thein-Brody L, editors. *Therapeutic Exercise: Moving Toward Function*, 2nd ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2005. p. 149–66.
12. Voight M, Blackburn T. Proprioception and balance training and testing following injury. In: Ellenbecker TS, editor. *Knee Ligament Rehabilitation*. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 2000. p. 361–85.


© Herzlinde Vancura/Dreamstime.com

CHAPTER 15

Improving Cardiovascular Conditioning

CHAPTER OBJECTIVES

At the completion of this chapter, the reader will be able to:

1. Explain the importance of cardiovascular endurance in the overall health of an individual.
2. Describe the physiology of the cardiovascular system.
3. Describe the various types of energy used by the body and how each is generated.
4. Explain how the different muscle types are involved with endurance and aerobic activities.
5. Outline the precautions with aerobic conditioning.
6. Discuss the several methods by which aerobic conditioning can be improved through a rehabilitation program.

Overview

Cardiorespiratory endurance is the ability to perform whole body activities (e.g., walking, jogging, biking, swimming) for an extended period without undue fatigue. The American College of Sports Medicine (ACSM) defines physical activity as "any bodily movement produced by the contraction of skeletal muscles that results in a substantial increase in resting energy expenditure."[1] When a person embarks on exercise or physical activity, a number of the body systems, particularly the cardiorespiratory and neuromuscular systems, adapt to the demands of the required tasks. The maximum work capacity of the cardiorespiratory system is a factor of the maximal amount of oxygen that can be taken in and used by the body (VO_2 max), whereas the capacity of the neuromuscular system is a factor of the maximum tension that can be developed by the working muscle or muscles—the maximal voluntary contraction.

Physical Fitness

According to the Department of Health and Human Services, physical fitness is a set of attributes a person has in regard to his or her ability to perform physical activities that require aerobic fitness, endurance, strength, or flexibility and is determined by a combination of regular activity and genetically inherited ability.[2] Physical fitness also encompasses a number of attributes including:[3]

- *Flexibility*. The capacity to stretch, easily bend or be pliable (See Chapter 12.)
- *Muscle strength*. The ability of muscles to exert or resist force (See Chapter 13.)

- *Muscle endurance*. The ability of the muscle to perform work (See Chapter 13.)
- *Muscle power*. The ability of a muscle to exert high force at high speed (See Chapter 13.)
- *Balance*. The capacity to maintain equilibrium when the body is static or moving (See Chapter 14.)
- *Agility*. The capacity to perform functional or powerful movements in different directions (See Chapter 14.)

Physical Activity

Physical activity is closely related to, but different from, physical fitness. Regular physical activity has long been regarded as an important component of a healthy lifestyle, and it is well established that active individuals have high levels of cardiorespiratory fitness. Clinical experience suggests that people who maintain or improve their levels of physical activity may be better able to perform daily activities, less likely to develop pain, and better able to avoid disability, especially as they advance into older age.[4] Regular physical activity also may contribute to better balance, coordination, and agility, which, in turn, may help prevent falls in the elderly.[5,6] Epidemiological research has demonstrated protective effects of physical activity against the risk of several chronic diseases, including hypertension, coronary heart disease, osteoporosis, non–insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus, colon cancer, and anxiety and depression.[7–9] Demographic characteristics appear to play a role in the patterns of physical activity:[1,10–12]

- *Sex*. Men are more likely than women to engage in regular activity, vigorous exercise, and sports.
- *Age*. The total amount of time spent engaging in a physical activity normally declines with age. Adults at retirement age (65 years) show some increased participation in activities of light to moderate intensity, but, overall, physical activity declines continuously as age increases.
- *Race*. Elderly African Americans and other ethnic minority populations are less active than white Americans, and this disparity is more pronounced for women.[13]
- *Education*. People with higher levels of education participate in more leisure-time physical activity than do people with less education.[1] Differences in education and socioeconomic status account for most, if not all, of the differences in leisure-time physical activity associated with race and ethnicity.[14]

☑ KEY POINT

The magnitude at which the heart rate (HR) increases with increasing workloads is influenced by many factors, including age, fitness level, type of activity being performed, the presence of disease, medications, blood volume, and environmental factors, such as temperature, humidity, and altitude. Failure of the HR to increase with increasing workloads (chronotropic incompetence) should be of concern for the physical therapist assistant (PTA), especially if the patient is taking beta-blockers. Beta-blockers slow the HR, which can prevent the increase in HR that typically occurs with exercise.[15]

Cardiorespiratory Endurance

By definition, cardiorespiratory endurance is the ability to perform whole body activities (walking, jogging, rowing, swimming, etc.) for extended periods of time without unwarranted fatigue. The maximal amount of oxygen that can be used during exercise is referred to as maximal aerobic capacity (VO_2 max). It is also common to see aerobic capacity expressed in metabolic equivalent units (METs). The following adaptations occur within the circulatory system in response to exercise:

- *Heart rate*. Monitoring heart rate (HR) is an indirect method of estimating oxygen consumption because, in general, these two factors have a linear relationship. If a physical therapy intervention requires an increase in systemic oxygen consumption expressed as either an increase in MET levels, kilocalories, or VO_2 max, then HR also should increase.[15]
- *Stroke volume*. The volume of blood being pumped out by the left ventricle of the heart with each beat increases with exercise, but only to the point at which there is enough time between beats for the heart to fill up (approximately 110 to 120 beats per minute). The heart does not pump all the blood out of the ventricle—normally, only about two-thirds. In the normal heart, as workload increases, stroke volume (SV) increases linearly up to 50 percent of aerobic capacity, after which it increases only slightly. Factors that influence the magnitude of change in SV include body position, ventricular function, and exercise intensity.
- *Cardiac output*. Cardiac output (CO), the product of HR and SV, increases linearly with workload because of the increases in HR and SV in response to increasing exercise intensity. CO is

the amount of blood discharged by each ventricle (not both ventricles combined) per minute, usually expressed as liters per minute. Factors that influence the magnitude of change in CO include age, posture, body size, the presence of disease, and level of physical conditioning.

- *Blood pressure.* Blood pressure, a product of CO and peripheral vascular resistance, is defined as the pressure exerted by the blood on the walls of the blood vessels, specifically *arterial blood pressure* (the pressure in the large arteries). Systolic pressure increases in proportion to oxygen consumption and cardiac output, whereas diastolic pressure shows little or no increase. Long-term aerobic training can result in reduced systolic and diastolic pressure.

☑ KEY POINT

A long-term beneficial training effect that occurs regarding cardiac output is that the stroke volume increases while the exercise heart rate is reduced at a given standard exercise load.

☑ KEY POINT

The normal blood pressure response to exercise is to observe a progressive increase in systolic blood pressure with no change or even a slight decrease in diastolic blood pressure. Failure of the systolic blood pressure to rise with an increase in intensity (called exertional hypotension) is considered abnormal and may occur in patients with some cardiovascular problems. The slight decrease in diastolic blood pressure is due primarily to the vasodilation of the arteries from the exercise bout. Thus, the expansion in artery size may lower blood pressure during the diastolic phase.[15]

The changes that can occur at the cellular level as a result of long-term aerobic exercise training include the following:

- *Mitochondria.* An increase in size and number of mitochondria.
- *Hemoglobin concentration.* The concentration of hemoglobin in circulating blood does not change with training; it may actually decrease slightly.
- *Myoglobin.* Increased myoglobin content.
- *Fat and carbohydrates.* Improved mobilization and use of fat and carbohydrates.

Lung changes that occur due to exercise include the following:

- An increase in the volume of air that can be inspired in a single maximal ventilation. Ventilation is the process of air exchange in the lungs.
- An increase in the diffusing capacity of the lungs.
- Oxygen consumption rises rapidly during the first few minutes of exercise and then levels off as the aerobic metabolism supplies the energy required by the working muscles.

Recovery

The performance of any activity requires a certain rate of oxygen consumption so that an individual's ability to perform an activity is limited by the maximal amount of oxygen the person is capable of delivering into the lungs.[16] Fatigue and recovery from fatigue are complex processes that depend on physical, physiological, environmental (room temperature, air quality, and altitude), and psychological factors, including the patient's lifestyle (sedentary or active), diet, and health status.

The following conditions can also affect fatigue:

- Multiple sclerosis typically allows a patient to function well during the early morning, but by mid-afternoon the patient can often become notably weak.
- Cardiopulmonary fatigue is likely to be caused by a decrease in blood sugar (glucose) levels, a decrease in glycogen stores in the muscle and liver, and a depletion of potassium. The threshold for fatigue is the level of exercise that cannot be sustained for indefinitely.

Adequate time for recovery from fatigue must be built into every intrasession and intersession exercise progression. Also, the body needs to be prepared for a resumption of the stresses and demands that the activity or exercise will place upon it. If not, when the patient returns to competitive sports or functional and work activities, fatigue may result in alterations in efficient movements making the individual susceptible to injury.

Precautions with Aerobic Conditioning

Conditioned individuals have a cardiovascular and pulmonary system that is more capable of delivering oxygen to sustain aerobic energy production at increasingly higher levels of intensity. However, in cases of severe pulmonary disease, the cost of breathing can reach 40 percent of the total exercise oxygen consumption, thereby decreasing the amount of oxygen available to the exercising muscles. Some precautions need to be taken when exercising patients who have a compromised cardiovascular or pulmonary system. First, an appropriate level of intensity must be chosen. Too high a level can overload the cardiorespiratory and muscular systems and potentially cause injuries. Exercising at this level causes the cardiorespiratory system to work anaerobically, not aerobically. Initially, the patient should be exercising so that their heart rate is at 60 percent of his or her maximum (220 – age of patient). If the patient is exercising within their target heart rate, they should be able to carry on a conversation (talk test). A sufficient period of time should be allowed for warm-up and cool-down to permit adequate cardiorespiratory and muscular adaptation.

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> Obese individuals should exercise at lower intensities and for longer durations.

Techniques for Improving, Maintaining, and Monitoring Cardiorespiratory Endurance

Several different training factors must be considered when attempting to maintain or improve cardiorespiratory endurance. For continuous training, use the FITT (frequency, intensity, type of exercise, and time) principle:

- *Frequency.* Frequency refers to how often an exercise is performed. Frequency of activity is dependent upon intensity and duration; the lower the intensity, the shorter the duration, the greater the frequency. The recommended frequency is three to five sessions per week at moderate intensities and duration (>5 METs). If the intensity is kept constant, there appears to be no additional benefit from exercising more times per week.
- *Intensity.* Recommendations regarding training intensity (overload) vary. Relative intensity for an individual is calculated as a percentage of the maximum function, using VO_2 max or maximum heart rate (HR max). To see minimal improvement in cardiorespiratory endurance, the average person must train with a heart rate elevated to at least 60 percent of his or her maximum HR max. Three common methods of monitoring intensity are employed:
  - *Monitoring heart rate.* For aerobic activities, the exercise intensity should be at a level that is 40 to 85 percent maximal aerobic power (VO_2 max) or 55 to 90 percent of maximal heart rate.[1] Two formulas are commonly used to monitor heart rate. The Karvonen equation[17,18] (220 – age) uses the difference between the maximum heart rate (MHR) and the resting heart rate (RHR), which is referred to as the maximum heart rate reserve. When using this formula, the recommended intensity level range is 50 to 85 percent of VO_2 max. For example, for a 50-year-old with a resting heart rate of 65 beats per minute (bpm) who wants to train at an intensity of 70 percent:

    $220 - 50 = 170$ bpm (maximum heart rate)
    $170 - 65 = 105$ bpm (maximum heart rate reserve)
    $(105 \times 0.7) + 65 = 139$ bpm

    The age-adjusted maximum heart rate (AAMHR) is calculated using the same formula (220 – age); however, the recommended level of intensity when using this formula is a range between 60 percent and 90 percent of an individual's maximum heart rate. For example, for a 50-year-old the MHR is $220 - 50 = 170$. Therefore, the target heart range is between 170×0.6 and 170×0.9 (102 to 153 bpm).
  - *Borg rating of perceived exertion (RPE).* A cardiorespiratory training effect can be achieved at a rating of "somewhat hard" or "hard" (13 to 16 on the scale). For further details refer to Table 11.3 in Chapter 11.
  - *Calculating the VO_2 max or HR directly or indirectly.* This can be done using a 3-minute step test, a 12-minute run, or a 1-mile walk test.
- *Type of exercise.* The type of activity chosen in continuous training must be aerobic, involving large muscle groups activated rhythmically.
- *Time (duration).* Duration refers to the length of the exercise session. In most functional exercises, fatigue must be considered when doing exercises so that the patient's tolerance is not exceeded. The exercise should be performed in a pain-free range until fatigue occurs. Fatigue may also occur as a lack of coordination observed by the clinician but not perceived by the patient. Physical conditioning occurs over a period of 15 to 60 minutes depending on the level of intensity. For minimal improvement to occur, the patient must participate in a continuous activity with a heart rate

elevated to its working level. Average conditioning time is 20 to 30 minutes for moderate intensity exercise. However, individuals who are severely compromised are more likely to benefit from a series of short exercise sessions (3 to 10 minutes) spaced throughout the day. Exercise bouts of 3 to 5 minutes per day produce a training effect in poorly conditioned individuals, whereas 20 to 30 minutes, three to five times per week is optimal for conditioned people.

☑ KEY POINT

It is now recognized that an individual's perception of effort (relative perceived exertion, or RPE) is closely related to the level of physiological effort.[19,20] (See Table 11-3 in Chapter 11.) It is important, therefore, to closely monitor the patient's response to exercise. Any discomfort or reproduction of symptoms that last more than 1 to 2 hours after the intervention is unacceptable. Patient responses that can modify the intensity include increases in pain level, muscle fatigue, the time taken to recover from fatigue, cardiovascular response, compensatory movements, insufficient balance, the level of motivation, and the degree of comprehension.

Aerobic Conditioning Programs

Two main types of aerobic conditioning training exist:

- *Continuous training.* Exercise is performed for 20 to 60 minutes with no rest interval at a submaximal energy requirement and little variation in heart rate. A number of pieces of exercise equipment can be used with continuous training:
  - *Treadmill walking.* Progressing from slow to fast and short distances to longer distances with or without an incline. Treadmills are also available in pools and combined with vertical traction to better control the forces of gravity.
  - *Ergometers.* These come in a variety of forms for both the upper extremities (UBE) and the lower extremities (recumbent cycle). The pace progression is from slow to fast and the goal is to increase the time spent exercising. Some models offer dual passive movement for the legs, which is controlled by the arms. One of the many benefits of ergometers is their availability to provide exercise for individuals who cannot use the lower extremities for physical activity (e.g., recovering from foot or leg injury/surgery, spinal cord injury, or multiple sclerosis). They can also be adapted if one of the extremities is injured. For example, one-arm cycling is possible on a UBE. There are a number of training programs available when using an ergometer depending on the intent. For example, steady state and high-intensity interval training can be used. Also, time trial training can be used by setting a distance to be achieved (e.g., 1,000, 2,000, or 5,000 meters) together with a speed and intensity level. There are times when equipment adjustments have to be made based on the patient's condition. For example, if the patient has left spinal stenosis and therefore does not tolerate lumbar extension very well, a recumbent cycle, which allows flexion of the spine, would be a better choice.
  - *Free weights and elastic resistance.* The use of low resistance and high repetitions can produce an aerobic effect.
  - *Rowing.* Rowing, whether performed on or off the water, involves a continuous repetitive motion stressing various anatomic areas depending on the stroke phase. Similar to training with the ergometer, training programs, including steady state, time trial, and high-intensity interval training, can be used. However, unlike the upper or lower extremity ergometer, rowing requires both the upper and lower extremities to be injury-free. Also, because rowing is thought to be responsible for a high incidence of diskogenic back pain,[21] care must be used in its prescription. The initial warm-up should be long and slow prior to training with intensity, distance, and frequency adjustments.
  - *Indoor stationary cycling.* As its name suggests, indoor stationary cycling involves cycling on a machine against some form of mechanical resistance. In the same way the UBE can be used to warm up the upper extremities before resistance training, stationary cycling can be used to warm up the lower extremities for the same purpose. Stationary cycling also allows individuals to maintain or improve their cardiovascular endurance when they cannot use the upper extremities for physical activity. In certain cases, modifications to the seat height may need to be made to the stationary cycle. Typically, the seat height should allow approximately 10 degrees of knee flexion at the end of the pedal stroke, but if this is too uncomfortable for the patient, the seat height can be raised or lowered.

- *Stair climbers.* The use of stair climbers is typically reserved for the more advanced orthopaedic patient because they require the patient to be correctly positioned vertically and to maintain balance during the exercise. They also require a high level of aerobic fitness, which is why they are better employed at the end of a rehabilitation progression.

- *Discontinuous training.* This type of training, also known as interval training, involves the use of repeated high-intensity exercise bouts that are interspersed with rest intervals. Although endurance levels can be improved with this method, more benefits occur in the development of strength and power. With an appropriate spacing of work and rest intervals, a significant amount of high-intensity work can be achieved, and this is greater than the amount of work accomplished with continuous training. The longer the work interval, the more the anaerobic system is stressed and the duration of the rest period is not important. In a short work interval, a work recovery ratio of 1:1 or 1:5 is appropriate to stress the aerobic system. Another type of interval training is circuit training. The fundamental feature of circuit training is the use of a series of different exercise activities. Circuit training incorporates a wide variety of modes of training and uses high repetitions and low weight to provide a more general conditioning program aimed at improving body composition and muscular strength, while providing some cardiovascular fitness.

Summary

Patients should be counseled as appropriate to adopt and maintain regular physical activity. Whenever appropriate, the clinician should educate the patient about the negative impact that can result fairly rapidly from the loss of physical activity as it pertains to both the cardiovascular and the musculoskeletal systems. It is important that the rehabilitation program always include exercises that increase strength and maintain or improve the patient's cardiovascular endurance, while simultaneously monitoring safety concerns.

Learning Portfolio

Case Study

You are providing cardiovascular training to a patient, and your supervising physical therapist wants the patient to work at 70 percent of her maximum heart rate capacity at 50 to 85 percent of her VO_2 max.

1. The patient is a 50-year-old woman with a resting heart rate of 65 beats per minute. Calculate the heart rate at which the patient should be exercising.

Later in the day, you are monitoring a 65-year-old patient to ensure that they maintain a heart rate range between 60 percent and 90 percent of their maximum heart rate.

2. Using the age-adjusted maximum heart rate (AAMHR) calculate the heart rate range the patient must maintain to be at the recommended level of intensity.

You read in the previous daily progress note of your final patient of the day that they have been performing their cardiovascular training using the traditional scale of the Borg rating of perceived exertion (RPE) method and have been exercising at a documented rating of "somewhat hard" or "hard."

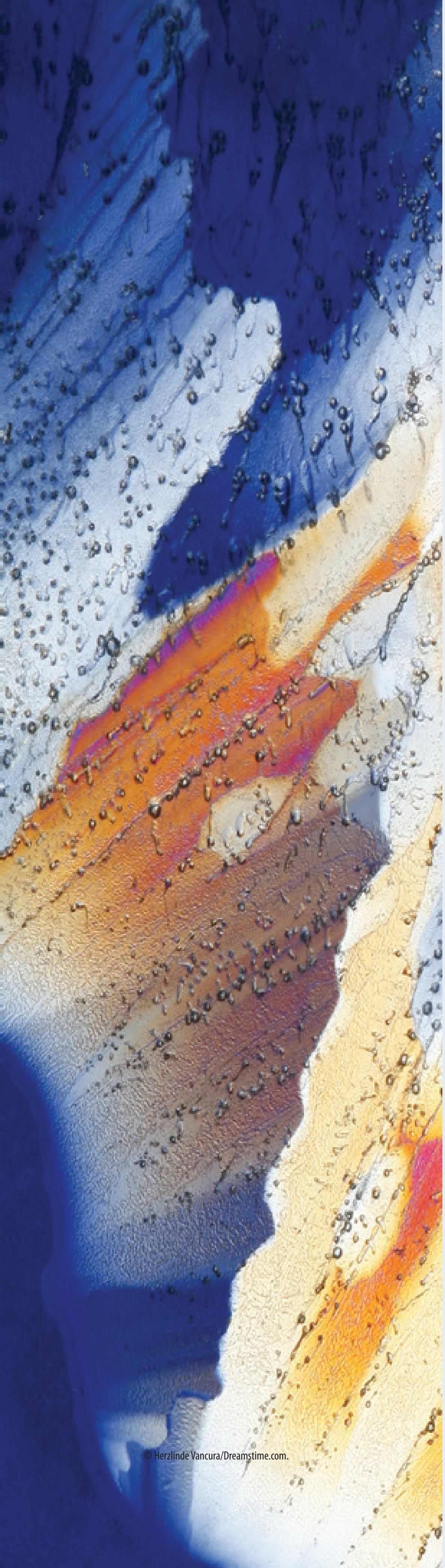
3. What is the approximate heart rate range at which the patient must be working to stay at the appropriate level of intensity?

Review Questions

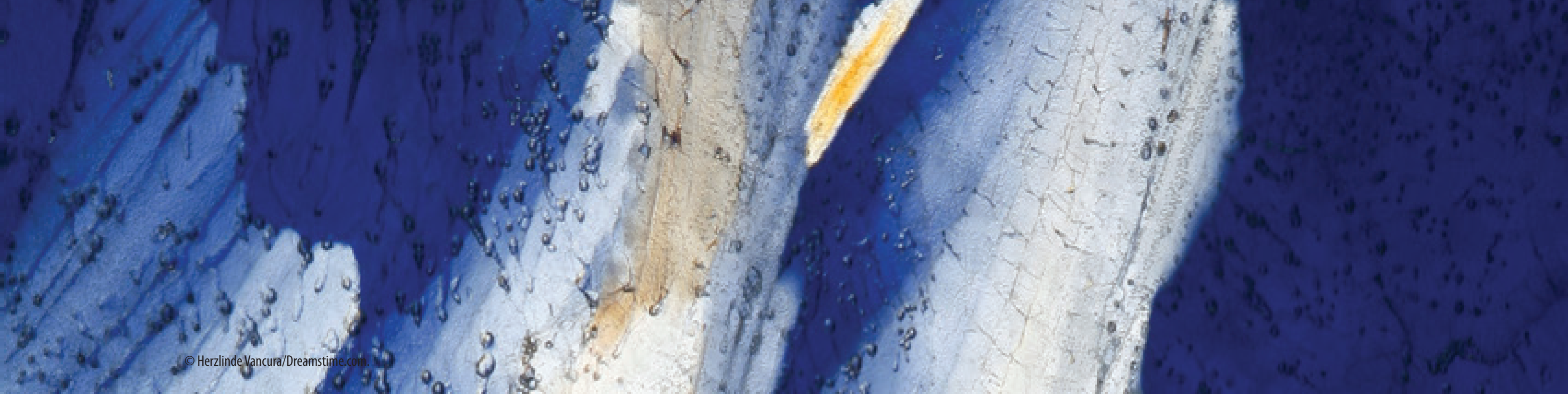
1. All of the following conditions have been shown to be helped by physical activity *except*:
   a. Coronary artery disease
   b. Anxiety and depression
   c. Brain cancer
   d. All of these have been shown to be helped by physical activity.
2. **True or false:** Men are more likely than women to engage in regular activity, vigorous exercise, and sports.
3. **True or false:** Failure of the heart rate to increase with increasing workloads should be of concern for the PTA, especially if the patient is taking beta-blockers.
4. **True or false:** A long-term beneficial training effect that occurs with regard to cardiac output is that the stroke volume decreases while the exercise heart rate is increased at a given standard exercise load.
5. **True or false:** Interval training is also referred to as continuous training.

References

1. American College of Sports Medicine. *ACSM's Guidelines for Exercise Testing and Prescription*, 8th ed. Philadelphia: Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2010.
2. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. *Physical Activity and Health: A Report of the Surgeon General*. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. Atlanta: National Center for Chronic Disease Prevention and Health Promotion; 1996.
3. Moffat M. Clinicians' roles in health promotion, wellness, and physical fitness. In: Magee D, Zachazewski JE, Quillen WS, editors. *Scientific Foundations and Principles of Practice in Musculoskeletal Rehabilitation*. St. Louis, MI: WB Saunders; 2007. p. 328–56.
4. Pate RR, Pratt M, Blair SN, et al. Physical activity and public health: a recommendation from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention and the American College of Sports Medicine. *JAMA*. 1995; 273:402–7.
5. Luk JK, Chan TY, Chan DK. Falls prevention in the elderly: translating evidence into practice. *Hong Kong Medical Journal/Xianggang Yi Xue Za Zhi, Hong Kong Academy of Medicine*. 2015; 21:165–71.
6. Wihlborg A, Englund M, Akesson K, Gerdhem P. Fracture predictive ability of physical performance tests and history of falls in elderly women: a 10-year prospective study. *Osteoporosis International*. 2015; 26:2101–9.
7. Dutton GR, Tan F, Provost BC, Sorenson JL, Allen B, Smith D. Relationship between self-efficacy and physical activity among patients with type 2 diabetes. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*. 2009; 32:270–7.
8. Hodges PW, Smeets RJ. Interaction between pain, movement, and physical activity: short-term benefits, long-term consequences, and targets for treatment. *The Clinical Journal of Pain*. 2015; 31:97–107.
9. Donnarumma P, Presaghi F, Tarantino R, Fragale M, Rullo M, Delfini R. The impact of pelvic balance, physical activity, and fear-avoidance on the outcome after decompression and instrumented fusion for degenerative lumbar stenosis. *European Spine Journal*. 2017; 26:428–33.
10. Beaudoin CE, Hong T. Health information seeking, diet and physical activity: an empirical assessment by medium and critical demographics. *International Journal of Medical Informatics*. 2011; 80:586–95.
11. Reed JA, Hooker SP, Muthukrishnan S, Hutto B. User demographics and physical activity behaviors on a newly constructed urban rail/trail conversion. *Journal of Physical Activity and Health*. 2011; 8:534–42.
12. Price AE, Reed JA, Muthukrishnan S. Trail user demographics, physical activity behaviors, and perceptions of a newly constructed greenway trail. *Journal of Community Health*. 2012; 37:949–56.
13. DiPietro L, Caspersen C. National estimates of physical activity among white and black Americans. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise*. 1991; 23(Suppl.):S105.
14. White CC, Powell KE, Goelin GC, Gentry EM, Forman MR. The behavioral risk factor surveys, IV: the descriptive epidemiology of exercise. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*. 1987; 3:304–10.
15. Grimes K. Heart disease. In: O'Sullivan SB, Schmitz TJ, editors. *Physical Rehabilitation*, 5th ed. Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2007. p. 589–641.
16. Sells P, Prentice WE. Impaired endurance: maintaining aerobic capacity and endurance. In: Voight ML, Hoogenboom BJ, Prentice WE, editors. *Musculoskeletal Interventions: Techniques for Therapeutic Exercise*. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2007. p. 153–64.
17. Towards cardiovascular health. In honour of Martti J. Karvonen on his 70th birthday. *Annals of Medicine*. 1989; 21:139–254.
18. Camarda SR, Tebexreni AS, Pafaro CN, Sasai FB, Tambeiro VL, Juliano Y, et al. Comparison of maximal heart rate using the prediction equations proposed by Karvonen and Tanaka. *Arquivos Brasileiros de Cardiologia*. 2008; 91:311–4.
19. Borg GAV. Psychophysical basis of perceived exertion. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise*. 1992; 14:377–81.
20. Borg GAV. Perceived exertion as an indicator of somatic stress. *Scandinavian Journal of Rehabilitation Medicine*. 1970; 2:92–8.
21. Verrall G, Darcey A. Lower back injuries in rowing national level compared to international level rowers. *Asian Journal of Sports Medicine*. 2014; 5:e24293.


© Herzlinde Vancura/Dreamstime.com.

SECTION III
The Joints



CHAPTER 16

The Vertebral Column

CHAPTER OBJECTIVES

At the completion of this chapter, the reader will be able to:

1. Describe the various components that make up the vertebral column and their various functions.
2. Outline the significance of the zygapophyseal joints and the intervertebral disks and the role they can play in causing a patient's symptoms.
3. Describe the biomechanics of the various regions of the vertebral column, including the coupling motions that occur.
4. Outline how Fryette's Laws can be used to help predict spinal motions.
5. Provide an overview as to the general guidelines for an intervention involving the vertebral column.

Overview

The term *vertebral column* labels the entire set of vertebrae, excluding the ribs, sternum, and pelvis. The vertebral column consists of 33 vertical segments, divided into five regions: cervical, thoracic, lumbar, sacral, and coccygeal. In the normal spine, there are 7 cervical, 12 thoracic, 5 lumbar, 5 sacral, and 4 coccygeal segments (**FIGURE 16.1**). The sacrococcygeal segments are fused in the adult, forming individual sacral and coccygeal bones. Individual vertebrae are numbered by region in a cranial to sacral direction; for example, C4 represents the fourth cervical vertebra from the top of the cervical spine, T7 represents the seventh thoracic vertebra (from the top), and L3 describes the third lumbar vertebra from the top.

Design

The overall contour of a typical vertebral column in the coronal plane is straight. In contrast, the contour of the sagittal plane changes with development. At birth, a series of primary curves gives a kyphotic posture to the whole spine. With the development of the erect posture, secondary curves develop in the cervical and lumbar spines, producing a lordosis in these regions, while the thoracic and sacral regions maintain their kyphosis. The curves in the vertebral column are not fixed; they are dynamic and flexible to allow a wide variety of different postures and movements and to provide it with shock-absorbing capabilities.[1] Disease, trauma, genetically loose ligaments, or habitual poor posture can lead to an exaggeration (or reduction) of the normal spinal curvatures, placing stress

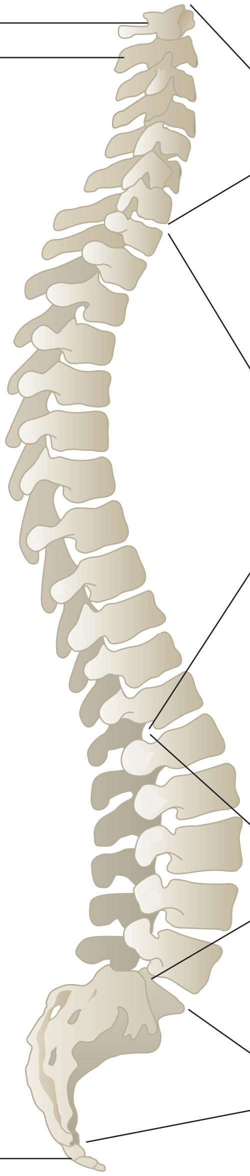


FIGURE 16.1 The vertebral column (lateral view).

on the local muscles and joints, as well as reducing the volume in the thorax for expansion of the lungs [1] (See Chapter 18.)

At the basic level, the fundamental building block of the spine is the vertebra. The vertebra serves as the weight-bearing element of the spinal column, and it is well designed for this purpose. Although a solid structure would provide the vertebral body with adequate strength, especially for static loads, it would prove too heavy and would not have the necessary flexibility for dynamic load bearing.[2] Instead, the vertebral body is constructed with a strong outer layer of cortical bone and a hollow cavity, the latter of which is reinforced by vertical and horizontal supports called *trabeculae*.[2]

Structure

The human vertebral column provides structural stability, affording full mobility as well as protection of the spinal cord and axial neural tissues.[3] While achieving these seemingly disparate objectives for the axial skeleton, the spine also contributes to the functional needs of gait and the maintenance of static weight-bearing postures.[3] Functionally, the vertebral column is divided into anterior and posterior pillars (vertebral arch):

- *Anterior pillar*. Consists of the intervertebral disks (IVDs) and vertebral bodies and is the weight-bearing, hydraulic, and shock-absorbing portion of the spinal column.
- *Posterior pillar*. Consists of the articular processes and facet (zygapophyseal) joints, two transverse processes and one spinous process. The purpose of the posterior pillar is to serve as a gliding mechanism and lever system for muscle attachments.

A number of ligaments are found throughout the vertebral column and function to add stability to spinal motions (**TABLE 16.1**). Of these, the most important ones are as follows:

- *Anterior longitudinal ligament (ALL)*. The ALL covers the anterior aspects of the vertebral bodies and IVD, extending from the sacrum along the anterior aspect of the entire spinal column, becoming thinner as it ascends. The ALL is usually connected only indirectly with the anterior aspect of the IVD by loose areolar tissue, but some of the ligament fibers insert directly into the bone or periosteum of the centrum.[2] Because of these attachments, and the frequent pull on the bone from the ligament, it is suggested that the anterior aspect of the vertebral body becomes the site for osteophytes. The remaining ligament fibers cover two to five segments, attaching to the upper and lower ends of the vertebral body. The ALL functions to prevent overextension of the spinal segments, and as a minor assistant in limiting vertical separation and anterior translation of the vertebral body.
- *Posterior longitudinal ligament (PLL)*. The PLL is found throughout the spinal column, where it covers the posterior aspect of the centrum and IVD. Its deep fibers, which span two segments, from the superior border of the inferior vertebra to the inferior margin of the superior, integrate with the superficial annular fibers to attach to the posterior margins of the vertebral bodies.[2]

TABLE 16.1 Major Ligaments of the Spine and Sacrum

Joint	Ligament	Function
Spine	Anterior longitudinal ligament	Functions as a minor assistant in limiting anterior translation and vertical separation of the vertebral body
		Limits hyperextension of the spine
	Posterior longitudinal ligament	Resists vertebral distraction of the vertebral body
	Ligamentum flavum	Resists posterior shearing of the vertebral body
	Interspinous	Acts to restrict flexion over a number of segments
	Intratransverse	Provides some protection against IVD protrusions
	Iliolumbar (lower lumbar)	Resists separation of the lamina during flexion
		Resists shear forces and separation of the lumbar spinous processes during flexion
		Prevents excessive rotation
		Resists side bending of the spine and helps in preventing rotation
		Resists flexion, extension, axial rotation, and side bending at the L5 on S1 levels
	Nuchal (represents the supraspinal ligaments of the lower vertebrae)	Resists cervical flexion
Sacroiliac	Sacrospinous	Resists any forward tilting of the sacrum on the hip bone during weight bearing
	Sacrotuberous	Resists forward tilting (nutation) of the sacrum around the hip bone during weight bearing
	Interosseous	Resists any anterior and inferior movement of the sacrum
	Posterior (dorsal) sacroiliac	Resists backward tilting (counternutation) of the sacrum on the hip bone during weight bearing of the vertebral column
	Anterior (ventral) sacroiliac	A capsular ligament that consists of numerous thin bands

The more superficial fibers extend up to five segments. Although the PLL is rather narrow and is not as substantial as the ALL, it is thought to be important in preventing IVD protrusions in the lumbar spine.[4] The PLL tightens in distraction and in posterior shearing of the vertebral body. It also acts to limit flexion over a number of segments.

- *Ligamentum flavum (LF)*. The LF connects two consecutive laminae. Its medial portion attaches inferiorly to the back of the lamina and the pedicle of the next inferior vertebra, while its lateral portion attaches to the articular process and forms the anterior capsule of the zygapophyseal joint. The LF resists spinal flexion and resists separation of the lamina during flexion.
- *Interspinous ligament (ISL)*. The ISL lies deeply between two neighboring spinal processes and is essential for stability, as it represents a significant structure for the posterior column of the spine. Unlike the longitudinal ligaments, it is not an uninterrupted fibrous band but, instead, consists of loose tissue that plugs the gap between the bodies of the spinous processes. The ISL has three distinct parts—anterior, middle, and posterior—and most likely functions to resist separation of the spinous processes during flexion.
- *Supraspinous ligament (SSL)*. The SSL is broad, thick, and cordlike, but it is only well developed in the upper lumbar region and is not considered by some to be a "true" ligament. As this ligament is the most superficial of the spinal ligaments and is the farthest from the axis of flexion, it has a greater potential for sprains.[5]
- *Iliolumbar ligament (ILL)*. The ILL is one of the three vertebropelvic ligaments, the others being the sacrotuberous and the sacrospinous ligaments. The ILL functions to restrain flexion, extension, axial rotation, and side bending of L5 on S1.

Motion Segments

A motion segment in the vertebral column is defined as two adjacent vertebrae and the joints in between (typically, two facet [zygapophyseal] joints and one IVD), forming a three-joint complex. By convention, movement of any spinal region is described by the direction of the motion of a point on the anterior aspect of the superior vertebra. For example, rotation of the C4–C5 segment to the left indicates that the anterior side (body) of the C4 vertebra is rotating to the left.

Zygapophyseal Joints

The vertebral column contains 24 pairs of zygapophyseal or facet joints, which are located posteriorly and project from the neural arch of the vertebrae. The regional features of the zygapophyseal joint are described in the relevant chapters. Mechanically, zygapophyseal joints are classified as plane joints because their articular surfaces are mostly flat.[6] The articular surfaces are covered in hyaline cartilage and, as with most synovial joints, have small fatty or fibrous synovial meniscoid-like fringes that project between the joint surfaces from the margins.[7] These intra-articular synovial folds act as space fillers during joint displacement and actively assist in the dispersal of synovial fluid within the joint cavity.[3] The articular processes provide mechanical guidance, particularly against excessive torsion and shear, permitting certain movements while blocking others:[6]

- Horizontal articular surfaces favor axial rotation.
- Vertical articular surfaces in the sagittal plane act to block axial rotation.

Most zygapophyseal joint surfaces are oriented somewhere between the horizontal and vertical.

- In the cervical spine, the facet joints are relatively horizontal while progressively increasing their surface area, and tend toward 45 degrees to the horizontal at the lower segments. This joint configuration allows fairly free movement in all planes of movement.[8–11]
- In the thoracic region, the facet joints assume an almost vertical direction while remaining mostly in a coronal (frontal) orientation, which facilitates axial rotation and resists anterior displacement of the vertebral body.[12]
- In the lumbar spine, the facet joints are vertical with a curved, J-shaped surface predominantly in the sagittal plane, which helps prevent anterior shear of the vertebral body while restricting rotation.[3]

Understanding the variable structures and functions of the human facet joints and their relationship with the other components of the spine is an essential requirement for the assessment and intervention of individuals with mechanical spinal pain disorders.[3]

Intervertebral Disks

The IVDs lie between the adjacent superior and inferior surfaces of the vertebral bodies from C2 through to S1 and are similar in shape to the bodies. The IVDs are described by their position between two vertebrae; for example, the L4–L5 disk represents the IVD located between the fourth and fifth lumbar vertebrae. Each disk is composed of an inner *nucleus pulposus*, an outer *annulus fibrosus*, and limiting cartilage end plates.

- *Annulus fibrosis (AF)*. The AF consists of approximately 10 to 12 (often as many as 15 to 25) concentric sheets of predominantly type I collagen tissue,[13] bound together by proteoglycan gel.[14] The number of annular layers decreases with age, but there is a gradual thickening of the remaining layers.[15] The fibers of the AF are oriented at about 65 degrees from vertical. The fibers of each successive sheet or lamella maintain the same inclination of 65 degrees, but in the opposite direction to the preceding lamella, resulting in every second sheet having the same orientation. Thus, only 50 percent of the fibers are under stress with rotational forces at any given time. This alteration in the direction of fibers in each lamella is vital in enabling the disk to resist torsional (twisting) forces.[16]
- *Vertebral end plate*. Each vertebral end plate consists of a layer of hyaline and fibrocartilage about 0.6 to 1 millimeter thick,[17] which covers the top or bottom aspects of the IVD, separating it from the adjacent vertebral body. Peripherally, the end plate is surrounded by the ring apophysis.[2] Nutrition of the IVD comes via a diffusion of nutrients from the anastomosis over the AF and from the arterial plexi underlying the end plate.[2] Although almost the entire AF is permeable to nutrients, only the center portions of the end plate are absorptive. The subchondral bone of the centrum is deficient over approximately 10 percent of the end plate surface. At these points, the bone marrow is in direct contact with the end plate, thereby augmenting the nutrition of the IVD and end plate.[18] It is possible that a mechanical pump action produced by spine motion could aid with the diffusion of the nutrients.
- *Nucleus pulposus (NP)*. The IVDs of a healthy young adult contain an NP that is composed of a semifluid mass of mucoid material. This

material is clear, firm, and gelatinous.[2] The overall consistency of the NP changes with increasing age, as the water content of the NP reduces and it subsequently becomes drier.

The annulus and end plates anchor the IVD to the vertebral body. In cervical and lumbar regions, the IVDs are thicker anteriorly, and this adds to the normal lordosis. In the thoracic region, each of the IVDs is of uniform thickness. The small migrations of the nucleus pulposus with spinal movements are considered normal. However, over time or combined with excessive pressure, the nucleus pulposus may seep through small cracks created within a fragmented annulus fibrosus and may lead to a herniated nucleus pulposus. (See Chapter 19.)

Intervertebral Foramina

The intervertebral foramina are located between each vertebral segment in the posterior pillar, with the IVD serving as their anterior boundary, the facet joints serving as their posterior boundary, and the pedicles of the superior and inferior vertebrae of the spinal segment serving as their superior and inferior boundaries. A mixed spinal nerve exits the spinal canal by the foramen along with blood vessels and the recurrent meningeal or sinuvertebral nerves.

☑ KEY POINT

The size of the intervertebral foramina is affected by spinal motion, being larger with forward bending and contralateral side bending, and smaller with extension and ipsilateral side bending.

Neutral Zone

From a mechanical point of view, the spinal system is inherently unstable and thus dependent on the contribution of muscles in addition to the passive elements of the spine, previously described, to maintain stability and control movement.[19,20] Panjabi[21] divided the full range of motion (ROM) of an intervertebral segment into two zones:

- *Neutral.* A region of laxity around the neutral resting position of a spinal joint segment. The neutral zone is the position at which negligible loading is occurring in the passive structures (IVD, facet joints, and ligaments) and the active structures (the muscles and tendons that surround and control spinal motion), and within which spinal motion occurs with minimal internal resistance. The size of the neutral zone, or balance point, is determined by the integrity of the passive restraint and active control systems, which in turn are controlled by the neural system.[19]
- *Elastic.* Portion of the range of motion from the end of the neutral zone up to the physiological limits of motion.

☑ KEY POINT

Studies have demonstrated that a larger than normal neutral zone, resulting from an accumulation of microtrauma and muscle weakness, is related to a lack of segmental muscle control and is associated with a higher risk of intersegmental injury and IVD degeneration.

Because the passive system of the spine is known to be unstable at loads far less than that of body weight,[22,23] the muscle and neural systems must fulfill the role of maintaining postural stability while simultaneously controlling and initiating movement. A large number of muscles have a mechanical effect on the spine and pelvis, and all muscles are required to maintain optimal control. The specific muscles that provide stability in the various regions are described in the relevant chapters.

Spinal Motion

Movements of the spinal column occur in diagonal patterns as a combination of flexion or extension, coupled with motions of side bending and rotation. As stated previously, segmental motion is defined by what is occurring at the anterior portion of the body of the superior vertebra.

- *Flexion/extension.* The movements of flexion (forward bending) or extension (backward bending) occur in the sagittal plane. With flexion, the anterior portion of the bodies approximate and the spinous processes separate. With extension, the anterior portion of the bodies separate and the spinous processes approximate.
- *Side bending (lateral flexion).* The motion of side bending to the left or right occurs in the frontal plane. With side bending, the lateral edges of the vertebral bodies approximate on the side toward which the spine is bending, and they separate on the opposite side.
- *Rotation.* Rotation of the spine occurs in the transverse plane. Rotation to the right results in relative movements of the body of the superior vertebra to

the right and the spinous process to the left, with the opposite occurring with rotation to the left. Even if the motion occurs from the pelvis upward, the motion is still defined by the relative motion of the superior vertebra.

- *Shear.* Shear can occur in some directions. When the body of the superior vertebra translates forward on the vertebra below, anterior shearing occurs; if it translates backward, posterior shearing occurs. Lateral shearing occurs when the body of the superior vertebra translates sideways on the vertebra below.
- *Distraction/compression.* Distraction or compression occurs with a longitudinal force, either away from or toward the vertebral bodies.

Movements of the spine, like those elsewhere, are produced by the synchronized action of nerves and muscles. Agonistic and synergistic muscles begin and perform the movements, whereas the antagonistic muscles control and modify the movements. The *amount* of motion available in each region of the spine is a factor of a number of variables. These include disk–vertebral height ratio; compliance of the fibrocartilage of the IVD; dimensions, orientation, and shape of the adjacent structures; and age, disease, and gender. The *type* of motion available is governed by the shape and orientation of the articulations, the ligaments and muscles of the segment, and the size and location of the vertebral processes.

During spinal motion, the axes of motion for each unit are generally in the nucleus pulposus of the IVD. Although the ROM at each vertebral segment varies, the relative amounts of motion that occur at each region are well documented.[24,25] These motions are described further in the relevant chapters.

Coupled Motions

The human facet joints are capable of only two primary motions: gliding upward and gliding downward. If these motions occur in the same direction, flexion or extension occurs. If the movements occur in opposite directions, side bending or rotation occurs. Due to the varied orientation of the facet joints, pure motions of the spine occur very infrequently. In fact, most motions of the spine occur three-dimensionally because of coupling. Coupling involves two or more individual motions occurring simultaneously at a joint, and has been found to occur throughout all spinal regions. Descriptions of the types of coupling that occur in these regions can be found in the respective chapters.

Fryette's Laws of Physiological Spinal Motion

Although listed as laws, Fryette's[26] descriptions of spinal motion are better viewed as concepts, because they have undergone review and modifications over time. However, these concepts serve as useful guidelines in the intervention of spinal dysfunction and are cited throughout many texts describing spinal biomechanics.

Fryette's First Law

"When any part of the lumbar or thoracic spine is in neutral position, side bending of a vertebra will be opposite to the side of the rotation of that vertebra."[26]

The term *neutral*, according to Fryette, is understood to be any position in which the facet joint surfaces are not in contact, and the position where the ligaments and capsules of the joints are not under strain. This law describes the coupling that occurs in the thoracic and lumbar regions. The cervical spine is not included because the facet joints of this area are always in contact. When a lumbar or thoracic vertebral segment is side bent from its neutral position, the vertebral body rotates toward the convexity that is being formed, with the maximum rotation occurring near the apex of the curve.

Fryette's Second Law

"When any part of the spine is in a position of hyperextension or hyperflexion, the side bending of the vertebra will be to the same side as the rotation of that vertebra."[26]

Put simply, when a vertebral segment is under load, the coupling of side bending and rotation occur to the same side. The term *non-neutral* is understood to be any position in which the facet joints are in contact, the ligaments and capsules of the segment are under tension, or when in positions of flexion or extension. This law describes the coupling that occurs in the C2 to T3 areas of the spine.

Fryette's Third Law

"If motion in one plane is introduced to the spine, any motion occurring in another direction is thereby restricted."[26]

For example, there is more rotation available when the spine is in neutral than when the spine is flexed or extended.

General Guidelines for Interventions for Spinal Dysfunction

Based on current evidence, it is not yet possible to give very specific recommendations for the management of patients with spinal dysfunction; however, there is growing evidence to suggest that physical therapy can have a positive impact on spinal dysfunction. For example, a systematic review by the Philadelphia Panel[27] suggested there was "good evidence to include stretching, strengthening, and mobility exercises" in treatment programs directed toward the management of chronic spinal pain.

The most logical approach for intervention is to identify the primary movement or postural dysfunction and focus the intervention on teaching the patient strategies that limit or avoid this motion or posture until safe to do so. This approach should be supplemented with strategies and goals based on the stage of healing. (See Chapter 4.)

Acute Phase

During the acute phase, the following recommendations for physical therapy intervention should be followed:[28–30]

- *Decrease pain, inflammation, and muscle spasm.* In cases of severe pain, it may be necessary for the patient to be confined to bed for a few days (a maximum of 2 days is recommended).[31] For the patient with cervical pain, a cervical collar may be warranted. Pain relief may be accomplished initially by the use of electrotherapeutic modalities, such as electrical stimulation, nonthermal agents, and cryotherapy. Thermal modalities, especially continuous ultrasound, with its ability to penetrate deeply, may be used after 48 to 72 hours, based on the plan of care and patient tolerance.
- *Promote healing of tissues.* Joint protection techniques can reduce and control pain by minimizing repetitive movements into painful ranges of motion. In the lumbar/thoracic spine, a lumbar cushion may be appropriate to support the spine in the position of normal lumbar lordosis/thoracic kyphosis. In the cervical spine, this can be achieved through the use of a cervical collar with appropriate weaning off the collar at the earliest opportunity after a negative high-quality cervical-spine computed tomography (CT) scan result alone.[32]
- *Regain soft tissue extensibility and increase pain-free range of segmental motion through therapeutic exercise.* Once the pain and inflammation are under control, the intervention can progress toward the restoration of full strength, ROM, and normal posture. ROM for the lumbar spine is regained initially in the unloaded position of the spine (supine, side lying, or prone). The various exercises recommended for this phase are described in each of the relevant chapters.
- *Aerobic conditioning must be maintained or improved throughout the rehabilitative process as tolerated.* For injuries involving the cervical and thoracic spines, this can be achieved using a stationary cycle, treadmill, or stair-stepper. For low back injuries, an upper body ergometer can be used if the previously mentioned equipment exacerbates the symptoms.
- *Allow progression to the subacute and then chronic (functional) phases of healing.* Patient education is an important component of any rehabilitative process. The patient is taught how to find the neutral position or the position of the optimal function of the spine. This position is the least painful and represents the position of minimized biomechanical stresses.[33] The patient also is advised to stay as active as possible and to continue normal daily and work activities whenever possible while maintaining good posture.[33]

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> Tissue loading during walking has been found to be below levels produced by many specific rehabilitation activities, suggesting that walking is a prudent choice as an initial aerobic exercise for general back rehabilitation.

Subacute and Chronic (Functional) Phases

During the subacute and chronic phases, the following recommendations for physical therapy intervention should be followed:

- *Causative factors associated with the injury must be addressed.* These usually include imbalances in muscle function. Once again, the patient must be taught how to correct these imbalances through correct posture, strengthening exercises, and self-stretches. In individuals suspected to have instability, stretching exercises should be used with caution, particularly ones encouraging end ranges.[34]

- *Progression of strengthening exercises*. The exercises for these phases are described in each of the relevant chapters. Full restoration of spinal function can occur only when the patient can progress to dynamic activities involving the trunk and extremities without the provocation of pain or the exacerbation of symptoms.
- *Neuromuscular control must be reestablished*. Neuromuscular control of the spine is taught first in static positions and then is advanced to include control during dynamic and functional activities through an appropriate stabilization program.[33]
- *Prevention of recurrence*. The patient should be instructed on correct lifting techniques and a maintenance exercise program, and be advised to maintain an appropriate height/weight ratio.

Summary

The vertebral column is involved with many functions. The column's semi-rigid structure provides a stable axis for the entire trunk, head, and neck, and also provides the primary source of protection to the delicate spinal cord and exiting spinal nerves. The joints of the vertebral column vary according to each location regarding specialization and available motion. Damage to the vertebral column from fractures, disease, trauma, muscle imbalances, and disk herniation can severely impact the function of the spine. Physical therapy is often the first line of conservative treatment for pain and dysfunction of the vertebral column.

Learning Portfolio

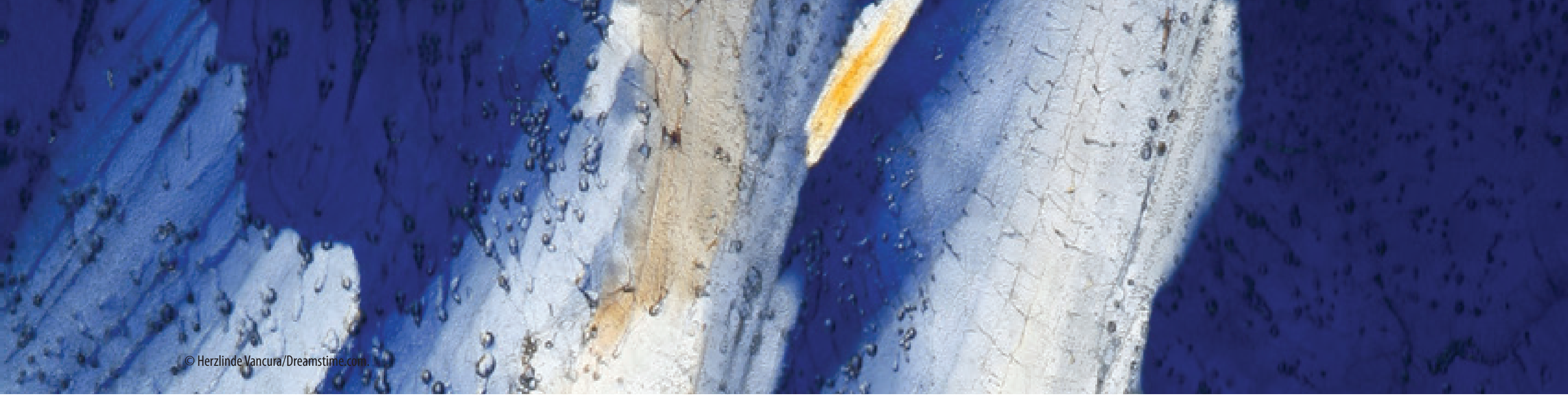
Review Questions

1. What are the five recognized regions of the vertebral column?
2. With development, which two secondary curves of the spine are formed?
3. Which structures are found within the anterior pillar of the spine?
4. How many pairs of zygapophyseal or facet joints are found in the normal spine?
5. What is the name given to the position of the segment in which minimal loading is occurring in the passive structures (intervertebral disks, zygapophyseal joints, and ligaments) and the active structures (the muscles and tendons that surround and control spinal motion)?
6. **True or false:** It is not yet possible to give specific recommendations for the management of patients with spinal dysfunction; however, there is growing evidence to suggest that physical therapy can have a positive impact on spinal dysfunction.

References

1. Jackson-Manfield P, Neumann DA. Structure and function of the vertebral column. In: Jackson-Manfield P, Neumann DA, editors. *Essentials of Kinesiology for the Physical Therapist Assistant*. St. Louis, MO: Mosby Elsevier; 2009. p. 177–225.
2. Bogduk N, Twomey LT. Anatomy and biomechanics of the lumbar spine. In: Bogduk N, Twomey LT, editors. *Clinical Anatomy of the Lumbar Spine and Sacrum*, 3rd ed. Edinburgh: Churchill Livingstone; 1997. p. 2–53; 71–76; 81–152.
3. Singer KP, Boyle JJW, Fazey P. Comparative anatomy of the zygapophysial joints. In: Boyling JD, Jull GA, editors. *Grieve's Modern Manual Therapy: The Vertebral Column*. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 2004. p. 17–29.
4. White AA, Panjabi MM. Clinical biomechanics of the spine. In: White AA, Panjabi MM, editors. *Clinical Biomechanics of the Spine*, 2nd ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven; 1990. p. 106–8.
5. Kapandji IA. *The Physiology of the Joints, the Trunk and Vertebral Column*. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1991.
6. Neumann DA. Axial skeleton: osteology and arthrology. In: Neumann DA, editor. *Kinesiology of the Musculoskeletal System: Foundations for Physical Rehabilitation*. St. Louis: Mosby; 2002. p. 251–310.
7. Singer KP, Giles LGF. Manual therapy considerations at the thoracolumbar junction: an anatomical and functional perspective. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*. 1990; 13:83–8.
8. Pal GP, Sherk HH. The vertical stability of the cervical spine. *Spine*. 1988; 13:447.
9. Pal GP, Routal RV, Saggu SK. The orientation of the articular facets of the zygapophyseal joints at the cervical and upper thoracic region. *Journal of Anatomy*. 2001; 198: 431–41.
10. Pal GP, Routal RV. The role of the vertebral laminae in the stability of the cervical spine. *Journal of Anatomy*. 1996; 188:485–9.

11. Pal GP, Routal RV. A study of weight transmission through the cervical and upper thoracic regions of the vertebral column in man. *Journal of Anatomy*. 1986; 148:245–61.
12. Gregersen GG, Lucas DB. An in vivo study of the axial rotation of the human thoracolumbar spine. *The Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery* (Am). 1967; 49:247–62.
13. Ghosh P, Bushell GR, Taylor TKF, Akeson WH. Collagens, elastin and noncollagenous protein of the intervertebral disc. *Clinical Orthopaedics and Related Research*. 1977; 129:124–32.
14. Taylor JR. The development and adult structure of lumbar intervertebral discs. *The Journal of Manual and Manupulative Therapy*. 1990; 5:43–7.
15. Tsuji H, Hirano N, Oshima H, Ishihara H, Motoe T. Structural variation of the anterior and posterior anulus fibrosus in the development of the human lumbar intervertebral disc: a risk factor for intervertebral disc rupture. *Spine*. 1993; 18:204–10.
16. Hickey DS, Hukins DWL. Relation between the structure of the annulus fibrosus and the function and failure of the intervertebral disc. *Spine*. 1980; 5:100–16.
17. Eyring EJ. The biochemistry and physiology of the intervertebral disc. *Clinical Orthopaedics and Related Research*. 1969; 67:16–28.
18. Nachemson AL. The lumbar spine: An orthopedic challenge. *Spine*. 1976; 1:59–71.
19. Panjabi MM. The stabilizing system of the spine. Part 1. Function, dysfunction adaption and enhancement. *Journal of Spinal Disorders*. 1992; 5:383–9.
20. Hodges PW. Motor control of the trunk. In: Boyling JD, Jull GA, editors. *Grieve's Modern Manual Therapy: The Vertebral Column*. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 2004. p. 119–39.
21. Panjabi MM. The stabilizing system of the spine. Part II. Neutral zone and instability hypothesis. *Journal of Spinal Disorders*. 1992; 5:390–6; discussion 7.
22. Nachemson A, Morris JM. In vivo measurements of intradiscal pressure. *The Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery*. 1964; 46:1077.
23. Nachemson A. Disc pressure measurements. *Spine*. 1981; 6:93–7.
24. White AA, Panjabi MM. *Clinical Biomechanics of the Spine*, 2nd ed. Philadelphia: J B Lippincott; 1990.
25. American Medical Association. Cocchiarella L, Andersson GBJ, editors. *Guides to the Evaluation of Permanent Impairment*, 5th ed. Chicago: American Medical Association; 2001.
26. Fryette HH. *Principles of Osteopathic Technique*. Colorado: Academy of Osteopathy; 1980.
27. Philadelphia Panel evidence-based clinical practice guidelines on selected rehabilitation interventions for low back pain. *Physical Therapy*. 2001; 81:1641–74.
28. McCarthy M. Non-drug therapies should be first line treatment for low back pain, US guidance says. *BMJ*. 2017; 356:j840.
29. Muller-Schwefe G, Morlion B, Ahlbeck K, Alon E, Coaccioli S, Coluzzi F, et al. Treatment for chronic low back pain: the focus should change to multimodal management that reflects the underlying pain mechanisms. *Current Medical Research and Opinion*. 2017:1–26.
30. Wieland LS, Skoetz N, Pilkington K, Vempati R, D'Adamo CR, Berman BM. Yoga treatment for chronic non-specific low back pain. *The Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*. 2017; 1:CD010671.
31. van Tulder MW, Waddell G. Conservative treatment of acute and subacute low back pain. In: Nachemson AL, Jonsson E, editors. *Neck and Back Pain: The Scientific Evidence of Causes, Diagnosis, and Treatment*. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins; 2000. p. 241–69.
32. Patel MB, Humble SS, Cullinane DC, Day MA, Jawa RS, Devin CJ, et al. Cervical spine collar clearance in the obtunded adult blunt trauma patient: a systematic review and practice management guideline from the Eastern Association for the Surgery of Trauma. *The Journal of Trauma and Acute Care Surgery*. 2015; 78:430–41.
33. Rihn JA, Radcliff K, Norvell DC, Eastlack R, Phillips FM, Berland D, et al. Comparative effectiveness of treatments for chronic low back pain: a multiple treatment comparison analysis. *Clinical Spine Surgery*. 2016.
34. Brukner P, Khan K. Core stability. In: Brukner P, Khan K, editors. *Clinical Sports Medicine*, 3rd ed. Sydney: McGraw-Hill; 2007. p. 158–73.


© Herzlinde Vancura/Dreamstime.com

CHAPTER 17

Cervical Spine and Temporomandibular Joint

CHAPTER OBJECTIVES

At the completion of this chapter, the reader will be able to:

1. Describe the anatomy of the vertebrae, ligaments, muscles, and blood and nerve supply that comprise the cervical intervertebral segment.
2. Summarize the various causes of temporomandibular dysfunction.
3. Describe the biomechanics of the cervical spine, including coupled movements, normal and abnormal joint barriers, kinesiology, and reactions to different stresses.
4. Describe the close association among the temporomandibular joint, the middle ear, and the cervical spine.
5. Apply some manual therapy techniques specific to the cervical spine.
6. Instruct the patient in an effective home program, including spinal care.
7. Help the patient to develop self-reliant intervention strategies through the use of self-stretching.

Overview

The cervical spine consists of 37 joints, which allow for more motion than any other region of the spine. However, with stability being sacrificed for mobility, the cervical spine is rendered more vulnerable to both direct and indirect trauma. As a result, the cervical spine can be the source of many pain syndromes, including neck, upper thoracic, and periscapular syndromes; cervical radiculopathy; and shoulder and elbow syndromes.[1] Indeed, neck and upper extremity pain are common in the general population, with surveys finding the 1-year prevalence rate for neck and shoulder pain to be 16 to 18 percent.[2,3] This prevalence also is reflected in the incidence of neck pain in the outpatient physical therapy setting, which has been found to be between 15 percent and 34 percent.[4] The stomatognathic system comprises the temporomandibular joint (TMJ), the masticatory systems, and the related organs and tissues, such as the inner ear and salivary glands. Due to the proximity of this system to the other structures of the head and neck, an intimate relationship exists.

Anatomy and Kinesiology

To effectively treat any region of the body, knowledge of anatomy and kinesiology is essential so relationships can be ascertained between a patient's symptoms and the structure that may be responsible.

Cervical Spine

The cervical spine is composed of two functional units. The craniovertebral (CV) complex comprises the bony structures of the foramen magnum, occiput, atlas, axis, and their supporting ligaments. The atlas (C1) articulates with the occiput of the skull above and with the axis (C2) below (**FIGURE 17.1**). The occipitoatlantal (OA) joint is formed between the occipital condyles and the superior articular facets of the atlas (C1). The paired occipital condyles are ovoid structures with their long axis situated in a posterolateral to anteromedial orientation. The OA joint is inherently stable, reinforced by the joint capsule, which is thickened anteriorly and laterally. The atlantoaxial (AA) joint (C1 and C2) is composed of two lateral facet joints and a median joint (with the dens) complex.

The middle to lower cervical spine consists of the region from the C2–C3 intervertebral segment to the C7–T1 segment. Each mobile segment of the mid-cervical spine consists of several joints, including the paired zygapophyseal (facet) and uncovertebral (UV) joints and the intervertebral disk (IVD).

- *Zygapophyseal (facet) joint.* The joint surfaces are planar, with the orientation gradually changing from approximately 60 degrees from vertical in the upper levels to 30 degrees from vertical in the lower cervical spine (refer to Figure 17.1). Fibroadipose meniscoids are commonly found in the cervical zygapophyseal joints, which can become impinged.
- *Uncovertebral joints.* Consist of nonsynovial clefts between the uncinate processes of adjacent vertebral bodies. They are located at the posterolateral corners of the superior aspect of the C3–C7 vertebrae and function to limit both lateral and posterior translation while guiding the motions of flexion and extension (**FIGURE 17.2**).
- *Intervertebral disks.* The IVDs lie between the adjacent superior and inferior surfaces of the vertebral bodies and are similar in shape to the bodies. Each IVD is composed of an inner *nucleus pulposus*, an outer *annulus fibrosus*, and limiting cartilage end plates. (See Chapter 2.) The annulus and end plates anchor the disk to the vertebral body. The IVDs contribute 20 to 25 percent of the length of the spinal column. In the cervical region, the IVDs are thicker anteriorly, which contributes to the normal lordosis. One of the functions of the IVDs is to facilitate motion and provide stability. Although IVDs are incapable of independent motion, movement of the IVDs does occur during the clinically defined motions of flexion-extension, side bending, and axial rotation.[5] The major stresses that must be withstood by the IVDs are axial compression, shearing, bending, and twisting, either singly or in combination with each other.

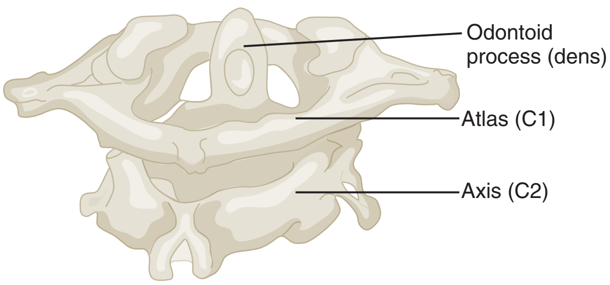


FIGURE 17.1 The atlas (C1) and axis (C2) (posterosuperior view).

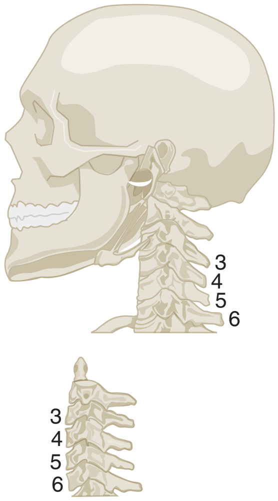


FIGURE 17.2 The uncovertebral joints.

☑ KEY POINT

In the absence of an IVD at the CV joints, the supporting soft tissues of the joints of C1–C2 must be lax in permitting motion, while simultaneously being able to withstand great mechanical stresses.

Eight pairs of cervical spinal nerves exit bilaterally through the intervertebral foramina. Each spinal nerve is named for the vertebra above which it exits; for example, the C6 nerve exits above the C6 vertebra. The nerves are surrounded by several structures including the aforementioned zygapophyseal joints, UV joints, IVD, and bony pedicles. Degenerative changes affecting any of these structures may diminish the foramen size and compromise nerve function.

Osteokinematics of the Cervical Spine

Although it may be clinically useful to describe the cervical spine motions as separate movements, the motions correspond to the motion of the head alone and do not explain what is occurring at the various segmental levels. It should be evident that the range of head movement bears no relation to the range of neck movement, and that the total range is the sum of both the head and the neck motions.[6]

The upper cervical spine is responsible for approximately 50 percent of the motion that occurs in the entire cervical spine. Motion at the AA joint occurs relatively independently, whereas below C2, normal motion is a combination of motion occurring at other levels. The primary motion that occurs at the OA joint is flexion and extension, although side bending and rotation also occur. The major motion that occurs at the AA articulations is axial rotation, totaling approximately 40 to 47 degrees to each side. This large amount of rotation has the potential to cause compression of the vertebral artery if it becomes excessive.

Flexion and extension movements of the AA joint amount to a combined range of 10 to 15 degrees: 10 degrees of flexion and 5 degrees of extension.

At the zygapophyseal (facet) joints of the mid-low cervical spine there is a combined sagittal range of 30 to 60 degrees.[7] Significant flexion occurs at C5–C6, and extension occurs around C6–C7.

☑ KEY POINT

Panjabi[8] divided the full range of motion (ROM) of an intervertebral segment into two zones: *neutral* (portion of the ROM that produces little resistance from the articular structures) and *elastic* (portion of the ROM from the end of the neutral zone up to the physiological limits of motion). The entire cervical spine, particularly the CV region, has a large neutral zone of motion because of the lack of tension in the capsule or ligamentous system in this middle part of the range.

Arthrokinematics of the Cervical Spine

The only significant arthrokinematics available to the zygapophyseal joint is an inferior, medial glide of the inferior articular process of the superior facet during extension and a superior, lateral glide during flexion. Segmental side bending is, therefore, an extension of the ipsilateral joint and flexion of the contralateral joint. Ipsilateral rotation, coupled with side bending, encompasses extension of the ipsilateral joint and flexion of the contralateral joint as well.

Muscle Control of the Cervical Spine

The control of head and neck postures and movements is a complicated task, especially in the presence of pain or dysfunction. The muscle groups of the cervical region can be divided into those that produce movement and those that sustain postures or stabilize the segments.[9–11]

There are many muscles in the neck that provide both global and local functions (**TABLE 17.1**, **TABLE 17.2**, and **TABLE 17.3**), with the former having a primary role in torque production and control of the head, and the latter being primarily responsible for the support and control of the spine at a segmental level and as a whole.[11,12]

The global muscles of the neck are thought to be the sternocleidomastoid (anteriorly) and the semispinalis capitis and splenius capitis (posteriorly). The local system is thought to comprise the longus capitis and longus colli[13] and semispinalis cervicis and multifidus (**FIGURE 17.3**).[14]

Temporomandibular Joint

The TMJ is a synovial, compound-modified ovoid bicondylar joint, formed between the articular eminence of the temporal bone, the intra-articular disk, and the head of the mandible (**FIGURE 17.4**). The TMJ is unique in that, even though the joint is synovial, the articulating surfaces of the bones are covered not by hyaline cartilage but by fibrocartilage.

The mandible works like a class-three lever, with its joint as the fulcrum. There is agreement among experts that postural impairments of the cervical and upper thoracic spine can result in both pain and impairment of the TMJ.[15–17] Located between the articulating surface of the temporal bone and the mandibular condyle is a fibrocartilaginous disk (sometimes inappropriately referred to as "meniscus"; see Figure 17.4). The biconcave shape of the disk is determined by the shape of the condyle and the articulating fossa. The supporting structures of the TMJ consist of periarticular connective tissue (ligament, tendon, capsule, and fascia), which serve to keep the joints together and to limit the range of motion (ROM).[18] The TMJ is primarily innervated by three nerves that are part of the mandibular division of the fifth cranial (trigeminal) nerve (**FIGURE 17.5**).

Osteokinematics and Arthrokinematics of the TMJ

The movements that occur at the TMJ are incredibly complex and involve arthrokinematic rolls and slides. Gliding, translation, or sliding movements arise in the

TABLE 17.1 Attachments and Innervation of Cervical Muscles

Muscle	Proximal	Distal	Innervation
Upper trapezius	Superior nuchal line Ligamentum nuchae	Lateral third of clavicle and the acromion process	Spinal accessory
Levator scapulae	Transverse processes of upper four cervical vertebrae	Medial border of scapula at level of scapular superior angle	Dorsal scapular C5 (C3 and C4)
Splenius capitis	Inferior ligamentum nuchae, spinous process of C7 and T1–T4 vertebrae	Mastoid process, occipital bone, and lateral third of superior nuchal line	Cervical spinal nerve and ventral primary rami of cervical spinal nerves
Splenius cervicis	Spinous processes of T3–T6 vertebrae	Posterior tubercles of C1–C3	
Scalenus			
Anterior Middle Posterior	Anterior tubercles of C3–C6 Posterior tubercles of C2–C7 Posterior tubercles of C5–C7	Superior crest of first rib Superior crest of first rib Outer surface of second rib	Ventral primary rami of cervical spinal nerves
Longus colli	Anterior tubercles of C3–C5 Anterior surface of C5–C7, T1–T3	Tubercle of the atlas, anterior tubercles of C5 and C6, anterior surface of C2–C4	Ventral primary rami of cervical spinal nerves
Longus capitis	Anterior tubercles of C3–C6	Inferior occipital bone, basilar portion	Ventral primary rami of cervical spine nerves

upper cavity, whereas rotation or hinged movement takes place in the lower cavity:[18]

- *Mouth opening (mandibular depression), contralateral deviation, and protrusion*. All involve an anterior osteokinematic rotation of the mandible and an anterior, inferior, and lateral glide of the mandibular head and intra-articular disk. With the head in the upright position, the condyles begin to rotate anteriorly and translate inferiorly and laterally during the first 25 degrees of opening. The upper head of the lateral pterygoid muscle and the anterior head of the digastric muscle draw the disk anteriorly and prepare for condylar rotation.[19] This initial condylar rotation is permitted by the gradual relaxation and lengthening of the mandibular elevators (masseter, temporalis, and medial pterygoid muscles). As the mandible moves anteriorly on opening, the disks move medially and posteriorly until the collateral ligaments, and the lateral pterygoid halt their movement. During the last 15 degrees of opening, the rotation stops due to tightening of the collateral ligaments and is supplanted by an anterior translation of the condyles.
- *Mouth closing (mandibular elevation), ipsilateral deviation, and retrusion*. All involve a posterior osteokinematic rotation of the mandible and a posterior, superior, and medial glide of the mandibular head and disk. Closing of the mouth requires a reversal of the movements described for mouth opening.
- *Protrusion*. Protrusion, an anterior movement of the mandible that occurs at both superior joint compartments, consists of the disk and condyle moving inferiorly, anteriorly, and laterally. The muscles responsible for protrusion are the anterior fiber of the temporalis and the medial and lateral pterygoid muscles.

TABLE 17.2 Prime Movers of the Cervical Spine: Extensors and Flexors

Prime Extensors	Prime Flexors
Trapezius	Sternocleidomastoid—anterior fibers
Sternocleidomastoid—posterior fibers	Accessory muscles
Iliocostalis cervices	Prevertebral muscles
Longissimus cervices	Longus coli
Splenius cervices	Longus capitis
Splenius capitis	Rectus capitis anterior
Interspinales cervices	Scalene group
Spinalis cervices	Scalenus anterior
Spinalis capitis	Infrahyoid group
Semispinalis cervices	Sternohyoid
Semispinalis capitis	Omohyoid
Levator scapulae	Sternothyroid
Suboccipitals	Thyrohyoid

TABLE 17.3 Prime Movers of the Cervical Spine: Rotation and Side Bending

Ipsilateral Side Bending
Longissimus capitis
Intertransversarii posteriores cervices
Multifidus
Rectus capitis lateralis
Intertransversarii anteriores cervices
Scaleni
Iliocostalis cervicis

Ipsilateral Rotation
Splenius capitis
Splenius cervices
Rotatores breves cervices
Rotatores longi cervices
Rectus capitis posterior major
Obliquus capitis inferior

Contralateral Rotation
Obliquus capitis superior

Ipsilateral Side Bending and Contralateral Rotation
Sternocleidomastoid
Scalenus anterior
Multifidus
Longus colli

Ipsilateral Side Bending and Ipsilateral Rotation
Longus colli
Scalenus posterior

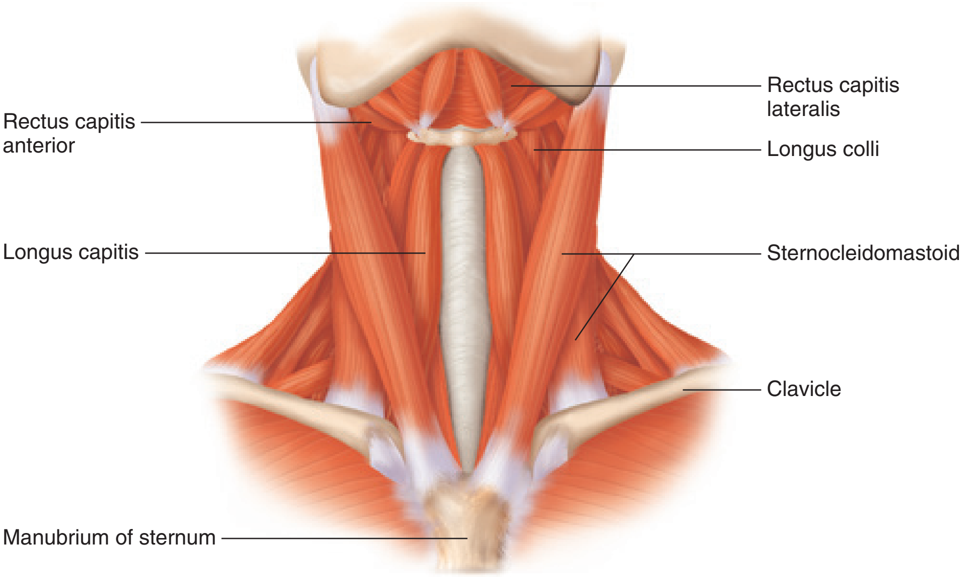


FIGURE 17.3 The global and local muscles of the neck.

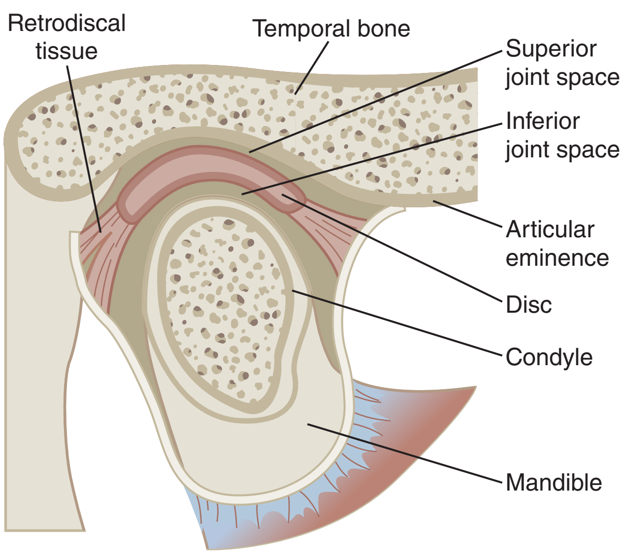


FIGURE 17.4 The temporomandibular joint.

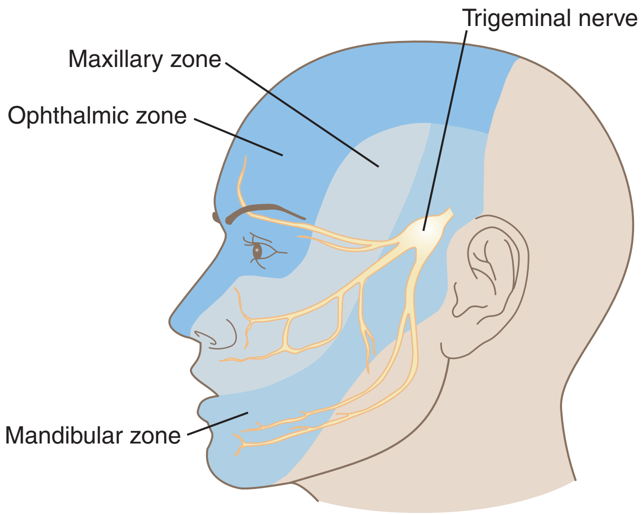


FIGURE 17.5 Distribution zones of the trigeminal nerve.

- *Retrusion*. Retrusion is a posterior movement of the mandible, which is produced by the posterior fibers of the temporalis, and aided by the suprahyoid muscles. The retrusive range is limited by the extensibility of the temporomandibular ligaments.
- *Lateral deviation*. Lateral movements of the mandible occur because of asymmetric muscle contractions. For example, during a lateral excursion to the right, the condyle and the disk on the left side glide inferiorly, anteriorly, and laterally in the sagittal plane, and medially in the horizontal plane along the articular eminence. The condyle and the disk on the right side rotate laterally in a sagittal plane and translate medially in the horizontal plane while remaining in the fossa.

Occlusal positions, which are functional positions of the TMJ, are defined as the point at which contact between some or all of the teeth occurs. In the absence of pathology, the upper molars rest directly on the lower molars, and the upper incisors slightly override the lower incisors. The capsular pattern of the TMJ is a limitation of mouth opening. If one joint is more restricted than the other, the jaw will laterally deviate to the same side during mouth opening.

Muscle Control of the TMJ

Working in combination, the muscles of the TMJ (**TABLE 17.4**) are involved as follows:

- *Mouth opening (mandibular depression)*. Bilateral action of the lateral pterygoid and digastric muscles
- *Mouth closing (mandibular elevation)*. Bilateral action of the temporalis, masseter, and medial pterygoid muscles
- *Lateral deviation*. Action of the ipsilateral masseter and temporalis, and contralateral medial and lateral pterygoid muscles

TABLE 17.4 Muscles of the Temporomandibular Joint

Muscle	Origin	Insertion	Innervation
Medial pterygoid (consists of two heads)	The larger head of the muscle arises as a deep head from just superior to the medial surface of the lateral pterygoid plate. The smaller head originates from the maxillary tuberosity and the pyramidal process of the palatine bone	The inferior and posterior aspect of the medial surface of the ramus and angle of the mandible	Nerve to medial pterygoid (a branch of the mandibular nerve of the trigeminal)

TABLE 17.4 Muscles of the Temporomandibular Joint *(continued)*

Muscle	Origin	Insertion	Innervation
Lateral pterygoid (consists of two heads)	The superior head arises from the infratemporal surface and infratemporal crest of the greater wing of the sphenoid bone The inferior head arises from the lateral surface of the lateral pterygoid plate.	The superior head inserts onto the articular disc and fibrous capsule of the temporomandibular joint The inferior head inserts onto the neck of condyloid process of the mandible	Nerve to lateral pterygoid (a branch of the mandibular nerve of the trigeminal)
Temporalis	The temporal fossa and the deep part of the temporal fascia	Via a tendon which inserts onto the coronoid process of the mandible, extending into the retromolar fossa posterior to the most distal mandibular molar	Deep temporal nerves, (branches of the anterior division of the mandibular nerve)
Masseter (consists of two heads, superficial and deep)	Superficial portion: Arises from the anterior two-thirds of the inferior border of the zygomatic arch and as a thick, tendinous aponeurosis from the maxillary process of the zygomatic bone. Deep portion: Arises from the posterior third of the lower border and entire from the medial surface of the zygomatic arch	The superior portion inserts into the angle of the mandible and inferior half of the lateral surface of the ramus of the mandible. The inferior portion inserts into the upper portion of the ramus	Anterior division of the mandibular nerve.

Data from: Dutton M. The Temporomandibular Joint. In: Dutton M, editor. *Dutton's Orthopaedic: Examination, Evaluation and Intervention*, 4th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2016. pp. 1340–82.

- *Protrusion*. Bilateral action of the lateral pterygoid, medial pterygoid, and anterior fibers of the temporalis muscles
- *Retrusion*. Bilateral action of the posterior fibers of the temporalis muscle, and the digastric, stylohyoid, geniohyoid, and mylohyoid muscles

Examination

The examination of the cervical complex performed by the physical therapist (PT) typically follows the outline in **TABLE 17.5**. The examination of the TMJ complex is outlined in **TABLE 17.6**.

Range of Motion

When measuring range of motion (ROM) in the spine, the inclinometer method is recommended.

Flexion. Two inclinometers are used, which are aligned in the sagittal plane. The center of the first inclinometer is placed over the T1 spinous process. The center of the second one is placed on top of the head, parallel to a line drawn from the corner of the eye to the ear, where the temple of eyeglasses would sit. The patient is asked to flex the neck, and both inclinometer angles are recorded. The cervical flexion angle is calculated by subtracting the T1 from the calvarium inclinometer angle.

Extension. Two inclinometers can be used, which are aligned as for measuring cervical flexion. The patient is asked to extend the neck, and both inclinometer angles are recorded. The cervical extension angle is calculated by subtracting the T1 from the calvarium inclinometer angle.

Rotation. The patient is positioned supine. One inclinometer is used, and it is aligned in the transverse plane. The base of the inclinometer is placed over the forehead. The patient is asked to rotate the neck, and the inclinometer angle is recorded. The test is repeated on the other side.

Side bending. Two inclinometers are used, which are aligned in the coronal plane. The center of the first inclinometer is placed over the T1 spinous process. The center of the second one is placed on top of the head, over the calvarium. The patient is asked to side bend the neck, and both inclinometer angles are recorded. The cervical side-bending angle is calculated by subtracting the T1 from the calvarium inclinometer angle.

TABLE 17.5 Examination of the Cervical Spine

Observation and Inspection	
Upper quarter and peripheral joint scan	Temporomandibular joint, shoulder complex, elbow, forearm, and wrist and hand Dermatomes and key muscle tests as appropriate
Examination of movements; active range of motion (AROM) with passive overpressure (except extension and rotation) Resisted isometric movements	Flexion, extension, side bending (right and left), rotation (right and left) Combined movements as appropriate Repetitive movements as appropriate Sustained positions as appropriate Craniovertebral joint movement testing All AROM directions
Palpation Neurological tests as appropriate Joint mobility tests	Palpation of bony prominences and superficial structures Reflexes, key muscle tests, sensory scan, peripheral nerve assessment Neurodynamic mobility tests (upper limb tension tests, slump test) ■ Side glides ■ Anterior and posterior glides ■ Traction and compression
Special Tests (refer to Table 17.7) Diagnostic imaging	As indicated As appropriate

Evidence-Based Testing

A description of the evidence-based tests of the cervical spine and TMJ are outlined in **TABLE 17.7**.

Special Tests

The PT may decide to use a special test to help confirm or refute a diagnosis. A number of tests are available for the various regions.

Craniovertebral Region The craniovertebral region demonstrates a high degree of mobility, but little stability, with the ligaments affording little protection during a high-velocity impact.

Transverse ligament. The patient is positioned in supine. The patient's occiput and C1 is cradled in the clinician's hands. The clinician locates the anterior arches of C2 and then pushes down on the anterior arches of C2 with the thumbs toward the table, while

TABLE 17.6 Examination of the Temporomandibular Joint

Observation and Inspection	
Upper quarter and peripheral joint scan	Cervical spine, shoulder complex, elbow, forearm, and wrist and hand Dermatomes and key muscle tests as appropriate
Examination of movements; AROM with passive overpressure (except extension and rotation) Resisted isometric movements	Mouth opening Lateral deviation Combined movements as appropriate Repetitive movements as appropriate Sustained positions as appropriate All AROM directions
Palpation Neurological tests as appropriate Joint mobility tests	Reflexes, key muscle tests, sensory scan, peripheral nerve assessment ■ Lateral glides ■ Anterior and posterior glides ■ Traction and compression
Special Tests (refer to Table 17-7) Diagnostic imaging	As indicated As appropriate

TABLE 17.7 Evidence-Based Special Tests of the Cervical Spine and TMJ

Name of Test	Brief Description	Positive Findings	Sensitivity and Specificity
Temporomandibular joint screen[a]	The patient is asked to open and close the mouth, and to laterally deviate the jaw as the clinician observes the quality and quantity of motion and notes any reproduction of symptoms.	The patient reports tenderness in the masticatory muscles, the preauricular area, or the TMJ area.	Sensitivity: 0.87 Specificity: 0.67
Lateral palpation of TMJ[b]	Clinician palpates the lateral and posterior aspects of the TMJ with the index finger.	Positive for TMJ dysfunction if pain is elicited.	Sensitivity: 0.83 Specificity: 0.69
Auscultation of TMJ using a stethoscope[b]	Clinician auscultates for the presence of sounds during mouth opening/closing.	Presence of a *click* sound is considered positive for TMJ dysfunction.	Sensitivity: 0.69 Specificity: 0.51
Auscultation of TMJ using a stethoscope[c]	Clinician auscultates for the presence of crepitus (grating or grinding) during mouth opening/closing	Presence of *crepitus* is considered positive for TMJ dysfunction.	Sensitivity: 0.70 Specificity: 0.43
Spurling (1)[d]	The patient side bends and extends the neck, and the clinician applies compression.	Positive if pain or tingling starts in the shoulder and radiates distally to the elbow.	Sensitivity: 0.30 Specificity: 0.93
Spurling (2)[e]	Patient is seated. Clinician side bends the neck toward the ipsilateral side, and applies 7 kg overpressure.	Positive if symptoms are reproduced.	Sensitivity: 0.50 Specificity: 0.86
Neck compression test[f]	Patient is seated. Clinician side bends and slightly rotates patient's head. A compression force of 7 kg is exerted.	Positive if test aggravates radicular pain, numbness, or paresthesias.	Sensitivity: 0.28 (right), 0.33 (left) Specificity: 0.92 (right), 1.0 (left)
Axial manual traction[f]	With patient supine, clinician provides actual distraction force between 10 and 15 kg.	Positive if symptoms are reduced or disappear.	Sensitivity: 0.26 Specificity: 1.0
Shoulder abduction test[f]	The patient lifts the hand above the head.	Positive if symptoms are reduced or disappear.	Sensitivity: 0.31 (right), 0.42 (left) Specificity: 1.05 (right), 1.0 (left)
Sharp-Purser test[g]	Patient sits with neck in a semi-flexed position. Clinician places palm of one hand on patient's forehead and index finger of the other hand on the spinous process of the axis.	When posterior pressure is applied to the forehead, a sliding motion of the head posteriorly in relation to the axis indicates a positive test for atlantoaxial instability.	Sensitivity: 0.69 Specificity: 0.96

(continues)

TABLE 17.7 Evidence-Based Special Tests of the Cervical Spine and TMJ *(continued)*

Name of Test	Brief Description	Positive Findings	Sensitivity and Specificity
Compression of brachial plexus[g]	Clinician applies firm compression and squeezes the brachial plexus with the thumb.	Positive only when the pain radiates to the shoulder or upper extremity.	Sensitivity: 0.69 Specificity: 0.83
Pain provocation using active flexion and extension[h]	The patient performs active flexion and extension to the extremes of the range.	Positive for neck dysfunction if subject reports pain with procedure.	Sensitivity: 0.27 Specificity: 0.90

a. Visscher CM, et al: Clinical tests in distinguishing between persons with or without craniomandibular or cervical spinal pain complaints. *Eur J Oral Sci* 108:475–83, 2000.
b. Manfredini D, et al: Predictive value of clinical findings for temporomandibular joint effusion. *Oral Surg Oral Med Oral Pathol Oral Radiol Endod* 96:521–6, 2003.
c. Israel HA, et al: Osteoarthritis and synovitis as major pathoses of the temporomandibular joint: Comparison of clinical diagnosis with arthroscopic morphology. *J Oral Maxillofac Surg* 56:1023–7, 1998, discussion 1028.
d. Tong HC, Haig AJ, Yamakawa K: The Spurling test and cervical radiculopathy. *Spine* 27:156–9, 2002.
e. Wainner RS, et al: Reliability and diagnostic accuracy of the clinical examination and patient self-report measures for cervical radiculopathy. *Spine* 28:52–62, 2003.
f. Wainner RS, Fritz JM, Irrgang JJ, et al: Reliability and diagnostic accuracy of the clinical examination and patient self-report measures for cervical radiculopathy. *Spine* 28:52–62, 2003.
g. Uchihara T, Furukawa T, Tsukagoshi H: Compression of brachial plexus as a diagnostic test of cervical cord lesion. *Spine* 19:2170–3, 1994.
h. Sandmark H, Nisell R: Validity of five common manual neck pain provoking tests. *Scand J Rehabil Med* 27:131–6, 1995.

the patient's occiput and C1 is lifted, keeping the head parallel to the ceiling but in slight flexion.

Sharp–Purser test. This test was designed to test the sagittal stability of the A-A segment in patients with rheumatoid arthritis (RA). The aim of the test is to determine whether the instability is significant enough to provoke central nervous system (CNS) signs or symptoms. The patient is positioned in sitting and is asked to perform short neck flexion and relate any signs or symptoms that are elicited to the clinician. If no serious signs or symptoms occur, the clinician stabilizes C2 posteriorly with one hand and applies a posteriorly oriented force to the forehead of the patient.

Alar ligament. The alar ligaments have been described primarily as limiting occipito-atlanto-axial rotation and sidebending, whereas flexion typically tightens both alar ligaments. The patient can be positioned in sitting or supine. The posterior aspect of the spinous process and lamina of the axis (C2) is palpated/stabilized with one hand while the patient's head is side bent or rotated. If the C2 transverse process does not move as soon as the head begins to side bend or rotate, laxity of the alar ligament should be suspected.

Temporomandibular Joint Because the TMJ can refer pain, the PT often performs a quick screen of this joint to see whether any symptoms are provoked. The patient is asked to open and close the mouth, protrude and retrude the lower jaw, and to laterally deviate the jaw, as the clinician observes the quality and quantity of motion and notes any reproduction of symptoms.

Cervical Spine

Spurling test. The patient is positioned in sitting. The patient is asked to rotate the head to the uninvolved side and then the involved side. If no signs or symptoms are provoked, the clinician places the patient's head in neutral with regard to flexion/extension and then carefully rotates the head before applying a downward pressure on the head. The test is considered positive if pain radiates into the limb ipsilateral to the side at which the head is rotated.

Cervical hyperflexion. The patient is positioned in sitting and is asked to flex his or her neck to the first point of pain or toward end range if no pain exists. Reproduction of radicular symptoms during hyperflexion is considered a positive response.

Cervical hyperextension (Jackson's test). The patient is positioned in sitting and is asked to extend his or her neck to the first point of pain or toward the end range if no pain exists. Reproduction of symptoms is considered a positive response.

Vertebral Artery Screening procedures to identify patients at risk for vertebral artery insufficiency (VBI) prior to manual therapy interventions have been widely advocated and routinely used by PTs for many years. The initial test consists of having the patient rotate the head to each side while in the sitting position. Terret[20] proposed the following mnemonic for the signs and symptoms associated with VBI—5 Ds And 3 Ns

- Dizziness
- Drop attacks
- Diplopia
- Dysarthria
- Dysphagia
- Ataxia of gait
- Nausea
- Numbness
- Nystagmus

In those cases in which the clinician is to perform cervical mobilizations of grade III–V, the Australian Physiotherapy Association's Protocol for Pre-manipulative Testing of the Cervical Spine continues to be recommended.[21] To test the patency of the vertebrobasilar system, the protocol recommends that the clinician maintains the immediate premobilization position for a minimum of 10 seconds. Others recommend assessing the patient's responses for a further 10 seconds to note any latent response. Following positive responses in the history or initial test, the patient must be handled very carefully.

Intervention Strategies for the Cervical Spine

Studies have reported that interventions for the cervical spine, which have included manual therapy, neck-specific strengthening and stretching exercises, postural re-education, and ergonomic changes at work, are beneficial in reducing neck pain and improving mobility.[15–17] A study by Hoving and colleagues,[22] who used a pragmatic randomized clinical trial to compare the effectiveness of manual therapy (mainly spinal mobilizations), physical therapy (mainly exercise therapy), and continued care by the general practitioner (analgesics, counseling, and education) for cervical pain over a period of 1 year, found high improvement scores for the manual therapy group for all of the outcomes, followed by physical therapy and general practitioner care.

Acute Phase

The goals during the acute phase for this region are as follows:

- *To control pain, inflammation, and muscle spasm*. The usual methods of decreasing inflammation, PRICEMEM (protection, rest, ice, compression, elevation, manual therapy, early motion, and medications prescribed by the physician), are recommended, although elevation is obviously not applicable. Systematic reviews of physical therapy modalities for neck pain report a lack of high-quality evidence of their efficacy and highlight poor methodological quality in many studies.[23] Although passive modalities have their uses in the acute phase, the clinician should remember that they must only be used as an adjunct to a more active program, and with a specific goal in mind, such as to help in the reduction of pain and inflammation. For example, the patient should be weaned off the use of the following modalities as early as possible.
    - *Ultrasound*. Pulsed (at nonthermal levels) ultrasound can be applied to the posterior aspects of the zygapophyseal joints or TMJ to control pain and reduce swelling, or it can be applied to a torn muscle.
    - *Cryotherapy*. Theoretically, ice is the preferred choice in the acute phase; however, ice can often increase pain that arises from trigger points. After several days, the switch can often be made to the use of heat, with its ability to relax musculature and stimulate vasodilation.

The PT may perform grade I and grade II joint mobilization techniques to help provide pain relief.

- *To promote healing*. Soft cervical collars do not rigidly immobilize the cervical spine, and if used judiciously can provide support for the head and neck in the very acute stages.[24] The collar serves a number of functions, among which are the following:
    - Providing support in maintaining the cervical spine erect
    - Reminding the patient that the neck is injured, and thereby preventing the patient from engaging in unexpected or excessive movements
    - Allowing the patient to rest the chin during activities, thereby offsetting the weight of the head
    - Allowing the patient to perform cervical rotations while the weight of the head is offset

  Patients should be weaned off the collar as their recovery progresses (when there is a significant improvement in the ROM and pain levels). In those situations where absolute rest is warranted, the patient is told that rest means just that. Pillows should be adjusted so that the head remains in neutral when sleeping in side-lying or supine position. The patient should be cautioned about prone lying to prevent positions of cervical extension, excessive rotation, and TMJ pressure if these have been found to exacerbate the symptoms.

- *To increase and maintain the newly attained ranges*. Exercise dosage should be determined on an individual basis, depending on the variables of strength, endurance, and irritability. A better response seems to occur when loads are initially very low (based on tolerance) and progressed slowly. Therefore, most of the initial exercises in the acute stage are performed in a non–weight-bearing position, such as supine, or as gravity assisted, and are performed as gentle repetitions, well within the pain-free range.

☑ KEY POINT

Although strengthening exercises have been advocated for the intervention of neck pain,[25] only a few controlled intervention studies have been conducted to examine their benefit. However, in one randomized study, investigators found that a multimodal intervention of postural, manual, psychological, relaxation, and visual training techniques was superior to traditional approaches involving ultrasound and electrical stimulation.[26] Patients returned to work earlier, and they had better results in pain intensity, emotional response, and postural disturbances.[26]

Cervical exercises that can be prescribed early in the intervention, based on the examination findings and plan of care (POC), include those in the following sections.

Head Nod

The primary exercise to recruit the deep cervical flexors, which are the most common muscles to become weak with neck dysfunction, is the head nod[27] exercise (**FIGURE 17.6**). The exercise is performed so that the flexion occurs only at the junction between the head and neck (at the OA joint) and continues segmentally into midcervical flexion. The exercise is initially performed in the upright position (gravity assisted), making sure that no forward movement of the head occurs (thereby changing the exercise into one of eccentric contraction of the cervical extensors), and to reduce the potential of use of the sternocleidomastoid (SCM) muscle. As the patient slowly nods the chin down, the back of the head should be seen to move up toward the ceiling. The patient can be taught to palpate the SCM and scalene muscles during the exercise for any unwanted contractions. The nod is stopped at the point in the range that can be achieved

FIGURE 17.6 The head nod in sitting.

without superficial muscle activity, held for 10 seconds to encourage the endurance function, and is repeated 10 times. Once the patient is able to tolerate the exercise in this position, they can be asked to perform the exercise in supine on an inclined board, thereby reducing the assistance of gravity as the board is tilted progressively backward toward horizontal. Once in supine, the head is positioned in neutral, resting either on a pillow or a small folded towel placed under the occiput; support can be provided for the normal cervical lordosis (**FIGURE 17.7**). Initially, the head nod is performed with no lifting of the head off the surface (the patient can palpate anteriorly to ensure no superficial muscle activity). The exercise is progressed so that the head nod uses the towel roll as a fulcrum and the back of the head may lift just off the bed during the motion. At this time, palpation of the anterior structures is no longer necessary because the superficial muscles must now be active to lift the head

FIGURE 17.7 The head nod in supine.

FIGURE 17.8 The head nod with head lift.

off the bed (**FIGURE 17.8**). However, the head should not lose contact with the towel, nor should the chin poke forward, because this is a sign of excessive anterior translation caused by a relative dominance of the SCM and scalenes. To emphasize contraction of the flexors more unilaterally in those cases of asymmetric weakness, a head nod into a flexion quadrant (e.g., flexion, side bending, rotation to the same side) can be used. The exercise also can be performed in prone over an exercise ball or in the quadruped position (**FIGURE 17.9**). In this position, gravity draws the head forward into a position of upper cervical extension, which is opposed by the head nod motion into upper cervical flexion.

FIGURE 17.9 The head nod in quadruped.

FIGURE 17.10 Return to neutral.

Return to Neutral

The return to neutral exercise[27] is designed to recruit the deep cervical segmental extensors. The patient starts in the forward flexed position (**FIGURE 17.10**) and initiates extension of the thoracic spine first before the movement reaches the lower cervical spine. If the CV region can be maintained in flexion until the end of the motion, the capitis group of the erector spinae muscles will tend to be inhibited. The exercise is progressed by having the patient perform it on all fours, and then isometrically. In cases of asymmetric weakness, the exercise can be made more specific by working into an extension quadrant (e.g., combined extension, side bending, rotation to the same side).

Coupling Activation

The muscles that are primary side benders and rotators can be recruited by exercising into a quadrant position.[27] For both of the following exercises, the patient is told to perform a preset nod to activate the deep stabilizing muscles prior to performing any motion of the head. A foam wedge (**FIGURE 17.11**) with the patient in supine

FIGURE 17.11 Coupling activation.

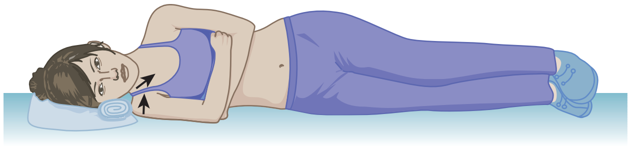


FIGURE 17.12 Coupling activation in sidelying.

can be used to apply resistance to the combined flexion, side bending, and rotation of the cervical spine. These muscles can be trained more specifically and intensely in the side-lying position, with the head supported on a pillow and a towel roll under the neck (**FIGURE 17.12**). As the head is lifted off the pillow, using the towel roll as a fulcrum, the muscles opposite to the side the patient is lying on contract against gravity. The deeper muscles can be emphasized by ensuring that the neck remains in contact with the towel roll, thereby decreasing the amount of translation.

Active Assisted Range of Motion/Active Range of Motion

Care must be taken in teaching these exercises to ensure that the normal movement pattern is performed and that the pattern is reinforced with repetition.[27] The patient is positioned in supine with the head supported on a pillow. The patient is asked to perform gentle, active, small-range and amplitude rotational movements of the neck, first in one direction, then the other up to a maximum comfortable range. To help relieve muscle tension, the exercises can be done in conjunction with breathing.[28] When the patient reaches the easy end of range (at the point where the neck is about to leave its neutral zone and some tissue resistance is first being felt), the patient takes a moderate breath in and then releases it. At the end of the release, the relaxation of the muscles allows a slight increase in range without stressing any tissues and without causing pain. Once the non–weight-bearing ROM can be performed without an exacerbation or recurrence of symptoms, active cervical ROM exercises can be initiated in the sitting, and then standing positions.

Global Strengthening

Global strengthening often begins with submaximal isometric contractions throughout all planes using multi-angle isometrics, including flexion (**FIGURE 17.13** and **FIGURE 17.14**), extension, side bending, and rotation. These exercises usually are performed initially against manual resistance applied by the clinician and then by the patient. Isolated strengthening of weakened muscle secondary to any radiculopathy is important before advancing to the more complex exercises involving multiple muscles. Although these exercises should not cause sharp pain, they may

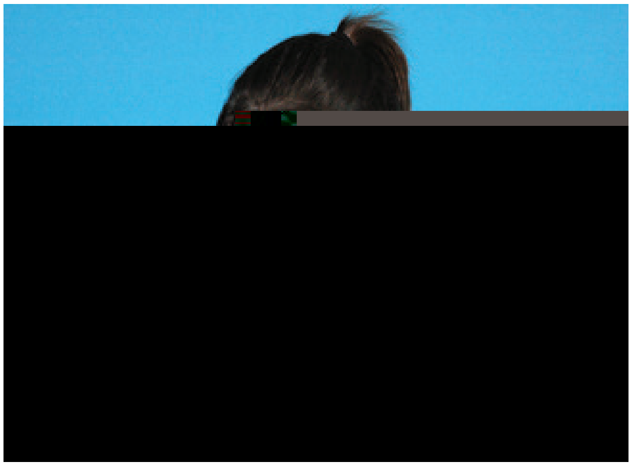


FIGURE 17.13 Multi-angle isometrics—flexion.

FIGURE 17.14 Multi-angle isometrics—flexion.

produce mild delayed-onset muscle soreness. Other movements, such as cervical retraction (**FIGURE 17.15**), cervical protrusion (**FIGURE 17.16**), extension, flexion, rotation (**FIGURE 17.17**), side bending, or a combination of these, can be added to the program, depending on which movements are found to be beneficial during the progression. The weight of the head is gradually introduced to these exercises by gradually moving from the horizontal to vertical position. As with any exercise progression, as the patient's healing progresses

FIGURE 17.15 Cervical retraction.

FIGURE 17.16 Cervical protrusion.

FIGURE 17.17 Cervical rotation.

these exercises are replaced with the more challenging exercises of the functional phase.

During this period, patients are encouraged to take up or resume a regular activity such as walking or anything else that will get them back to a normal mindset about their function, without reinjuring the area.

Subacute Through Chronic Phases

The stabilization of this region must include postural stabilization retraining of the entire spine, including the lumbar stabilization progression. (See Chapter 19.) Cervical and cervicothoracic stabilization exercises can help the patient to (1) gain dynamic control of cervical and cervicothoracic spine forces, (2) eliminate repetitive injury to the motion segments, (3) encourage healing of the injured segment, and (4) possibly alter the degenerative process.[29]

Once the patient is able to achieve a co-contraction of the anterior and posterior muscles of the cervical spine in their resting positions, the next goal is to be able to maintain cervical stabilization during arm motions. Cervical and cervicothoracic stabilization exercises should include those discussed in the following sections.

Upper-Extremity AROM

These exercises consist of initial co-contraction of the cervical musculature (preset nod), which is maintained while the patient performs repetitive motions of the upper extremity (e.g., flexion, abduction, diagonals) in supine and then in various other positions (i.e., quadruped, sitting, standing) while palpating the affected segment for unwanted translation. The pattern of the arm motion, amplitude, and position of the exercises are based on what combination challenges the patient optimally—only those motions in which the segment can be maintained in neutral are performed. Progression includes adding hand weights or lying on a foam roll, which reduces the stability of the base. The same exercises can be progressed by having the patient perform them in a sitting position with the back to the wall to provide feedback about where the head is in space.

☑ KEY POINT

Bilateral arm motions below 90 degrees often are the least challenging. Unilateral, overhead movements place higher demands on the stabilization system.

Functional Retraining

Many of the movement patterns required for functional activities are multiplanar, so it is beneficial to train muscle groups using these movements.[27] The movement patterns chosen for a particular patient depend on the assessment findings—specific weakness or reproduction of pain—and on the requirements of work and leisure activities. Initially, the patient is taught the correct movement pattern by the clinician, who palpates at the affected level as the patient performs the motion against the resistance of the clinician. The recruitment of the muscles about the segment and any excessive translation can be monitored. Concentric or eccentric muscle contractions can be used. Once the patient can perform these movements correctly (without excessive translation and/or pain), the movements are performed using multi-angle isometrics, then short-arc concentric exercises, progressing to full-arc motions, and then to eccentric contractions. Heavy resistance should be avoided because it tends to encourage faulty movement patterns, as do static maximal isometric contractions.

Strength training can progress to manually resisted cervical stabilization exercises in various planes. Cervical proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation (PNF) patterns are ideal for this purpose (FIGURE 17.18 through FIGURE 17.21). Muscle co-contraction of agonist and antagonist can be used for joint stabilization, by increasing joint stiffness and supporting the independent torque-producing

FIGURE 17.18 Cervical PNF; start position.

FIGURE 17.20 Cervical PNF: end position.

FIGURE 17.19 Cervical PNF; mid range position.

FIGURE 17.21 Cervical PNF.

role of the muscles that surround the joint.[30–32] The use of PNF patterns for sport- and work-specific movements introduces a more functional approach. Isokinetic exercises of the neck are not functional and are not recommended as a strengthening tool. Continued efforts must be made to progressively reduce the patient's pain and advance physical function through exercise.[33]

Scapular Retractions

Scapular retractions are initially performed supine, with the glenohumeral joint in external rotation. (See Chapter 20.) The patient is asked to isometrically retract the shoulders against the bed. Once this exercise can be performed without pain, the patient performs the exercise in prone, sitting, or standing without resistance. Resistance, using resistance tubing, is added as tolerated.

☑ KEY POINT

All exercises should be performed without pain, although some degree of postexercise soreness can be expected.

Scapular Stabilizers

The scapular stabilizers (middle and lower fibers of the trapezius, rhomboids, and serratus anterior) should be strengthened (see Chapter 20) using a gradual progression by adding gradual increments of arm load, and by increasing the amount of abduction until segmental control can be maintained in 140 degrees of abduction.[12]

Kinematic Chain Exercises

Strengthening of the entire kinetic chain should always be a consideration and will depend on the physical requirements of the patient. Strengthening exercises for the upper kinetic chain can include lat pull-downs, progressive resisted exercises (PREs) for the middle trapezius and rhomboid, and upper extremity PNF patterns. (See Chapter 20.)

Aerobic Exercise

It is important throughout the rehabilitation process for patients to maintain their level of cardiovascular fitness as much as possible. Aerobic exercise, which increases endurance and the general sense of well-being, should be a part of all exercise programs.[34,35] Cardiovascular conditioning should be started as soon as possible to prevent deconditioning. These exercises also serve as a great warm-up prior to a stretching program.

Intervention Strategies for the Temporomandibular Joint

Despite limited evidence, physical therapy has been used for decades for treating temporomandibular disorders (TMD) using a combination of thermal packs, ultrasound, vapocoolant, manual therapy, biofeedback, patient education, therapeutic exercise and transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation (TENS). Currently, evidence supports the use of conservative, noninvasive, and reversible treatment approaches using a multidisciplinary team. The goals of physical therapy in the treatment of TMD in the acute stage are to decrease pain, enable muscle relaxation, reduce muscular hyperactivity, and reestablish joint mobility.[36]

- Cold is applied to reduce edema, inflammation, and muscle spasm.
- Patient education is provided to teach the patient the rest position for the jaw.
- ROM exercises should be restricted to pain-free movements to allow the rest or immobilization of any painful muscular and articular structures.
- Gentle joint mobilization techniques are used to distract the joint (**FIGURE 17.22**).
- Neuromuscular education techniques can be taught to control premature or excessive translation.

Also, the PT will often prescribe exercises that focus on improving TMJ motion, cervical posture, and abnormal oral parafunctional habits as well as exercises designed to increase cervical muscle strength and ROM. Appropriate exercises during the acute stage include the

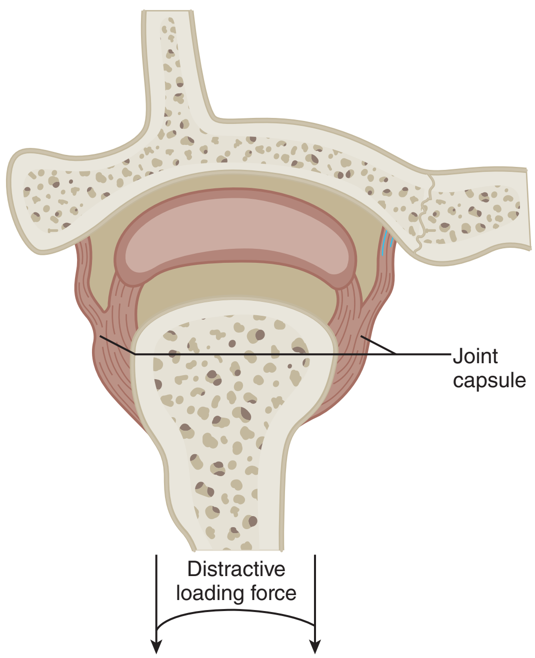


FIGURE 17.22 Gentle joint mobilization techniques are used to distract the joint.

so-called 6 × 6 exercise protocol of Rocabado,[37] which is thought to aid in strengthening, coordination, and the reduction of muscle spasm. The patient should be instructed to perform the following exercises six times each at a frequency of six times per day.

1. *Tongue rest position and nasal breathing.* The patient places the tip of the tongue on the roof of the mouth, just behind the front teeth. Maintaining the tongue in this position, the patient is asked to breathe through the nose and to use the diaphragm muscle for expiration only (no accessory breathing muscles).
2. *Controlled opening.* The patient positions the tongue in the rest position and practices chewing and opening the mouth up to the point when the tongue begins to leave the roof of the mouth.
3. *Rhythmic stabilization.* The patient positions the tongue in the rest position and grasps the chin with one or both hands. The patient then applies a resistance sideways to left deviation and then right deviation. The patient then applies a resistance against mouth closing and opening. Throughout all of these exercises, the patient must maintain the resting position for the TMJ.
4. *The release of cervical flexion.* The patient places both hands behind the neck and interlaces the fingers to stabilize the entire cervical region. The neck is kept upright while the patient performs flexes the chin onto the throat (craniovertebral flexion), which produces a distraction of the occiput from the atlas and helps to counteract the craniovertebral extension produced by the forward head posture.
5. *Longitudinal neck extension.* The patient is asked to glide the neck backward by performing a chin tuck and stretch the head upward in one movement to improve the functional and mechanical relationship of the head to the cervical spine. This exercise needs to be closely monitored to prevent hypermobility of the cervical segments.
6. *Shoulder retraction.* The patient is asked to pull the shoulders back and downward in one motion while squeezing the shoulder blades together creating an exaggerated upright posture. This helps to restore the shoulder girdle to an ideal postural position and to improve stability of the head–neck–shoulder complex.

The patient is advised to eat soft foods, and is discouraged from wide yawning or any other activities that would cause excessive TMJ motion. Patients should also be advised to identify any source(s) of stress and to try to change their lifestyle accordingly.

As the condition improves, the PT may add exercises to include strengthening exercises for the cervicothoracic stabilizers and the scapular stabilizers. Stretching exercises also may be prescribed for the scalenes, trapezius, pectoralis minor, and levator scapulae and the suboccipital extensors. Joint mobilization techniques also may be performed but require an experienced clinician to perform correctly and safely.

In those cases where the patient fails to respond to a conservative intervention, a range of surgical procedures can be used to treat TMD, ranging from TMJ arthrocentesis and arthroscopy to the more complex arthrotomy.

Common Conditions

Some conditions affecting this region are more common than others. While this is not an all-inclusive list, the following information should provide the reader with guidelines for the listed conditions as well as provide help when dealing with similar conditions.

Cervical Strains and Sprains

A cervical strain may be produced by an overload injury to the cervical muscle–tendon unit because of excessive forces. These forces can result in the elongation and tearing of muscles or ligaments, edema, hemorrhage, and inflammation. Many cervical muscles do not terminate in tendons but, instead, attach directly to bone by myofascial tissue that blends into the periosteum.[38] Muscles respond to injury in a variety of ways, including reflex contraction, which further increases the resistance to stretch and serves as a protection to the injured muscle.

A cervical strain may be produced following an injury to the cervical joint capsule and/or muscles (ligaments in the case of a cervical sprain). Pain is the chief complaint. Stiffness, tightness in the upper back or shoulder, and occipital headaches also may occur. Symptoms are typically aggravated by cervical positions that stretch or elongate the involved tissue, or by sustained postural positions, whereas symptoms are typically eased by lying down or supporting the cervical region. Initially, a cervical collar can be prescribed by the physician to reduce muscle guarding. Bed rest, along with analgesics and muscle relaxants, for no more than 2 to 3 days also may be prescribed by the physician for patients with a severe injury. However, in less severe cases, bed rest has not been shown to improve recovery and, when compared with mobilization or patient education, rest tends to prolong symptoms.[39]

Whiplash-Associated Disorders

Whiplash is an acceleration–deceleration mechanism of energy transfer to the head and neck through either blunt impact and/or inertial loading. Despite a great deal of attention, whiplash-associated disorders (WAD), a subset of the cervical sprain/strain diagnosis, remain an enigma and reports on recovery rates over the past 30 years have shown little if any variation.[40]

A lack of thorough understanding of WAD is, in part, a result of the nature of the disease itself. The subjective nature and high prevalence of the symptoms have led to controversy over their cause. These subjective complaints are most often characterized by reports of pain and suffering in the absence of focal physical findings and positive imaging studies. For example, a follow-up study, averaging a review time of nearly 11 years,[41] found that 40 percent of patients were still having intrusive or severe symptoms (12 percent severe and 28 percent intrusive). The same study also found that, in general, the symptoms did not alter after 2 years postaccident.

The debate over the type of clinical manifestations associated with WAD ranges from definable injuries to cervical structures to the condition being more of a psychosomatic, or a Western disorder.[40] While postmortem studies have found that after whiplash injuries, ligamentous injuries are extremely common in the cervical spine,[42] it is difficult to understand how low-impact collisions can cause significant symptoms in some people, while others walk away unhurt from high-impact collisions. Muddying the waters is the fact that in the presence of compensation and litigation, there is always suspicion that the presenting pain and disability may be feigned or exaggerated for financial gain.[40] Malingering is defined as the intentional production of false symptoms or the exaggeration of symptoms that truly exist.[43] Unfortunately, due to the similarity between a malingerer and someone who is seriously hurt, this deception often causes a significant negative response from the clinician toward malingerers and seriously hurt patients alike. This, despite the fact that research has questioned the influence of compensation/litigation on outcomes, and that specific and unique local morphological changes in the neck muscles do occur with chronic whiplash.[44,45]

The amount of injury sustained during a whiplash event appears to be based on a number of factors, including the following:[46,47]

- *Occupant characteristics*. These include age, height, weight, gender, bone mineral density, and preexisting medical and musculoskeletal conditions.
- *Pre-event factors*. These include vehicle specifications, awareness of the impending collision, occupant position, and usage and position of the seatbelt and head restraint.
- *Event-related factors*. These include collision orientation, vehicle dynamics, type of active or passive safety systems, and occupant kinematic response.

Approximately 50 percent of those exposed to a WAD should expect to spontaneously recover within the first 2 to 3 months.[42] The early symptoms of a WAD usually begin in the neck and interscapular area within a few hours of the injury and can develop in those that do not fully recover to include neck swelling, muscle spasms, difficulty moving the neck, cervical radiculopathy, and severe headaches.[42]

Intervention for Cervical Sprains and Strains

In addition to any prescribed anti-inflammatory medications, ice and electrical stimulation are applied to the neck during the first 48 to 72 hours after injury to help control pain and inflammation. At present, there are no randomized controlled trials on the benefits of prescribed muscle relaxants. The patient should receive education about proper resting positions and limitations of activity. Exercises that can be prescribed early in the intervention, based on the examination findings and POC, include those listed in the “Intervention Strategies” section.

At the end of every session, guidelines are provided for safe home exercising by teaching the patient to identify warning signs that could lead to exacerbation or recurrence of symptoms. In the event of an increase of symptoms, the techniques are adjusted by reducing either the amplitude of the movements or the number of movements, or both.

Impaired Posture

Forward head posture is described (in sitting or standing) as the excessive anterior positioning of the head, about a vertical reference line; increased upper cervical spine lordosis and decreased lower cervical spine lordosis; and rounded shoulders with thoracic kyphosis. (See Chapter 7.) Other postural adaptations associated with the forward head posture include protracted scapulae with tight anterior muscles and stretched posterior muscles, jaw protrusion, and the development of a cervicothoracic kyphosis between C4 and T4.[48–50] These adaptations are further perpetuated by the natural cycle of aging of the spine, which involves degeneration of the disk, vertebral wedging, ligamentous calcification, all of which result in excessive flexion of the lower cervical spine, excessive extension of the upper cervical spine, and adaptively shortened cervical flexors (e.g., SCM and scalenes) and posterior suboccipital muscles. The habitual placement of the head anterior to the center of gravity (COG) of the body places undue stress on the temporomandibular joint, the cervical and upper thoracic facet joints (especially at the cervicothoracic junction), and the supporting muscles.[51,52] For each inch that the head is anterior to the COG, the weight of the head is added to the load borne by the cervical structures.[53] For example, the average head weighs 10 pounds. If the chin is 2 inches anterior to the manubrium, 20 pounds is added to the load. If normal motion is undertaken in this poor postural environment, the result may be abnormal strain placed on the joint capsule, ligaments, IVDs, and levator scapulae, upper trapezius, SCM, scalene, and suboccipital muscles. Consequently, patients with a forward head posture can present with head, neck, and TMJ pain, but also mid-back and low-back pain. Few studies have investigated the association between posture and AROM. Hanten and colleagues[54] measured resting head posture and total range between full protraction and retraction in the horizontal plane in subjects with and without neck pain and found that the neck pain group had less range than the standard group. Lee and colleagues[55] investigated associations between subclinical neck pain/discomfort and ROM and physical dimensions of the cervicothoracic spine. Their data suggested that there are early range changes associated with the development of neck pain.

Intervention

It is important to retrain the patient to assume a correct upright and neutral spine position and to be able to consciously activate and hold the supporting muscles in a variety of functional positions.[12] The retraining of the cervicothoracic postural muscles usually begins at the lumbopelvic region, ensuring that the patient does not adopt the chest-out, shoulders-back position, which results in an incorrect thoracolumbar or thoracic lordosis, rather than a correct balance among all of the spinal curves.[12] The coordinated activity of the upper thoracic and scapular muscles is necessary for the maintenance of cervicothoracic posture and for upper limb function. Adaptive shortening of the posterior cervical extensors, scalenes, levator scapulae, upper fibers of the trapezius, and the pectoralis major and minor are common findings,[9,56] as is weakness of the deep, short cervical flexors (upper and mid-cervical), scapular stabilizers (serratus anterior, middle and lower trapezius, and rhomboids), and the upper thoracic erector spinae.[12] To correct the forward head posture (FHP), the head must be brought back over the trunk. Patients are initially positioned with front and side mirror views so they are able to see any postural deviations of the spine, and so they can see their habitual posture.[33] The clinician first helps the patient to find a neutral and balanced position of the lumbar and cervicothoracic spine, by using verbal and gentle manual cues, and then helps the patient to use this position in a series of basic functional movements.[33] For example, the clinician can direct the patient to "lift the sternum up," thereby decreasing the upper to midthoracic kyphosis. Recommended exercises include the following:

- Head nod exercises in supine lying with the head in contact with the floor with the chin tucked. This is progressed to the nod lift-off exercise, which maintains the neck in a tucked position while raising it off the off the floor and holding it for varying lengths of time.
- A chin drop in sitting (return to neutral exercise), initially with assistance, then without.
- Resisted shoulder retraction exercises in standing using resistance tubing. This is progressed to shoulder retraction in prone using weights.
- Unilateral and bilateral pectoralis stretches.

Maintaining the correct posture while incorporating upper extremity motion is the next progression, with exercises initially done with wall support and then freestanding. Then resistance is added to the upper extremity exercises while continuing to maintain the correct posture. Finally, functional activities are performed while maintaining the correct posture.

Cervical Spondylosis

Cervical spondylosis is a chronic degenerative condition of the cervical spine that affects the joint complexes (IVD, facets, and vertebral bodies) of the neck as well as the contents of the spinal canal (nerve roots and/or spinal cord). The characteristics of degenerative joint disease and degenerative disk disease pertain to bony changes, and the two often occur concurrently.[57] Chronic cervical degeneration is the most common cause of progressive spinal cord and nerve root compression. Abnormalities in the osseous and the fibroelastic boundaries of the bony cervical spinal canal affect the availability of space for spinal cord and nerve roots, resulting in a stenosis. Spondylotic changes can occur in the spinal canal and result in myelopathy, or can occur in the lateral recess and foramina, which can cause radiculopathy.

The clinical presentation of a symptomatic egenerative spine is one of a gradual onset of neck or arm symptoms (radiculopathy) or both, that has increased frequency and severity.[57] The pain is often worse when the patient is in certain positions and can interfere with sleep. Morning stiffness of the neck, which gradually improves throughout the day, is a common finding.

Intervention

The conservative intervention for cervical spondylosis without radiculopathy or myelopathy involves the use of electrotherapeutic modalities to control pain and inflammation and increase the extensibility of the connective tissue. These modalities usually include moist heat, electrical stimulation, and ultrasound. Immobilization of the cervical spine may be considered for patients with nerve irritation to limit the motion of the neck and further irritation. In such instances, soft cervical collars are recommended initially. More rigid orthoses (e.g., Philadelphia collar, Minerva body jacket) can significantly immobilize the cervical spine. With the use of any of the braces, the patient's tolerance and compliance are under consideration. The use of the brace should be discontinued as soon as feasible. Molded cervical pillows can better align the spine during sleep and provide symptomatic relief for some patients. Manual techniques may be used to stretch the adaptively shortened tissues. ROM exercises are performed as tolerated. These exercises initially are performed in the pain-free direction and then in the direction of pain. As the patient regains motion, isometric exercises and cervical stabilization exercises are prescribed (see the "Intervention Strategies" section).

Zygapophyseal Joint Dysfunction

Acute cervical joint lock (facet impingement) is a common condition of the cervical spine. The patient with this condition typically reports an onset of unilateral neck pain, or "neck locking," following sudden backward bending, side bending, or rotation of the neck, or pain that followed a sustained head position. The condition is thought to be the result of entrapment of a small piece of synovial membrane (meniscus) by the facet joint.[58] Symptoms of facet joint syndrome in the neck include neck pain, headaches, shoulder pain, and difficulty/pain with rotation of the head.

Intervention

The conservative intervention involves the use of electrotherapeutic modalities to control pain and inflammation. Joint mobilization techniques by the PT, involving combinations of flexion or extension and rotation, with traction superimposed, are applied initially in the pain-free direction and then in the direction of pain. As the patient regains motion, ROM and isometric exercises are prescribed until full ROM is restored, at which time the strengthening exercises are progressed (see the "Intervention Strategies" section).

Thoracic Outlet Syndrome

Thoracic outlet syndrome (TOS) is a clinical syndrome characterized by symptoms attributable to compression of neural or vascular anatomic structures (the brachial plexus and/or the subclavian artery or vein).[59,60] The names used for TOS are based on descriptions of the potential causes for its compression. These names include cervical rib syndrome, scalenus anticus syndrome, hyperabduction syndrome, costoclavicular syndrome, pectoralis minor syndrome, and first thoracic rib syndrome. Symptoms vary from mild to limb threatening and might be ignored by many clinicians because they mimic common but difficult-to-treat conditions such as a tension headache or fatigue syndromes.

The chief complaint is usually one of diffuse arm and shoulder pain, especially when the arm is elevated beyond 90 degrees. Other potential symptoms include pain localized in the neck, face, head, upper extremity, chest, shoulder, or axilla; and upper extremity paresthesias, numbness, weakness, heaviness, fatigability, swelling, discoloration, ulceration, or Raynaud phenomenon.[61] Neural compression symptoms occur more commonly than vascular symptoms.[62] The PT may use a series of special tests to help confirm or refute a diagnosis of TOS, including the following:[63]

- *Adson's vascular test*. The patient is positioned in sitting with the arms placed at 15 degrees of abduction. The clinician palpates the radial pulse. The patient is asked to inhale deeply, and to hold his or her breath. The patient is then asked to tilt the head back and rotate the head so that the chin is elevated and pointed toward the examined side. The test position theoretically increases the scalenus angle and the tension of the anterior and middle scalenes thereby compromising the interscalene triangle.
- *Costoclavicular test.* The patient is positioned sitting straight in an exaggerated military posture and

with both arms at the sides. The clinician assesses the radial pulse in this position. The patient is asked to retract and depress the shoulders while protruding the chest (to reduce the volume of the costoclavicular space). This position is held for 60 seconds. The clinician assesses changes in the radial pulse and asks the patient about the presence of paresthesia.

- *Passive shoulder shrug*. This maneuver has the effect of slackening the soft tissues and the brachial plexus. The patient is seated with the arms folded, and the clinician stands behind. The clinician grasps the patient's elbows and passively elevates the shoulders up and forward. This position is maintained for 30 seconds. Any changes in the patient's symptoms are noted.

Intervention

Common impairments associated with TOS are a muscle length–strength imbalance in the shoulder girdle with tightness in the anterior and medial structures, and weakness in the posterior and lateral structures. The reasons for this imbalance range from faulty postural awareness to poor endurance in the postural muscles to a shallow respiratory pattern characterized by upper thoracic breathing. In addition, there may be poor clavicular and anterior rib mobility. Conservative intervention should be directed toward the cause, and typically focuses on the correction of postural abnormalities of the neck and shoulder girdle, strengthening the weak muscles (i.e., scapular adductors and upward rotators, shoulder external rotators, deep anterior cervical flexor muscles, and thoracic extensors), stretching the adaptively shortened muscles (i.e., scalene, levator scapulae, pectoralis minor, pectoralis major, anterior portion of the intercostals, and short suboccipital muscles), and mobilization of the hypomobile joints of the shoulder complex, clavicle, and first rib.

Cervical Disk Lesions

The term *disk dysfunction* often is used whenever changes in the IVD alter its biomechanical properties (see Chapter 2) and prevent normal function. Cervical disks may become painful as part of the degenerative cascade, from repetitive microtrauma, or from an excessive single load. Cervical radiculopathy is, by definition, a dysfunction involving compression and irritation of the cervical spinal nerve root. Any pathologic condition that increases the size of the surrounding zygapophyseal joint, the UV joint, the IVD, and the pedicle can lead to narrowing or stenosis of the foramen, potentially entrapping the nerve root. Foramen size is also reduced by the movements of extension and ipsilateral side bending and rotation. The most common level of cervical nerve root involvement has been reported at the seventh nerve root (60 percent) and sixth nerve root (25 percent).[60] The capacity of the disk to self-repair is limited by the fact that only the peripheral aspects of the AF receive blood, and a small amount at that. In the acute stages, there is often painful limitation of AROM in all planes, particularly flexion; pain on cough or sneeze; painful cervical muscle contraction resulting from compression loading; and difficulty in maintaining upright postures because of the compression load of the head on the neck.[27]

Intervention

Conservative intervention consists of education about proper resting positions, a cervical collar, and oral corticosteroid "dose packs" and nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) prescribed by the physician.[60] Electrotherapeutic modalities may be useful to help alleviate the inflammatory response and decrease associated muscle spasm. Manual traction techniques may be performed to help decompress the disk and increase intervertebral foramen size. Joint mobilization also may be used by the PT on hypomobile segments.

A cervical and cervicothoracic stabilization exercise progression, as outlined in the "Intervention Strategies" section, forms the cornerstone of the therapeutic exercise progression. To prevent further disk degeneration and to reduce the incidence of recurrence, it is important to correct all postural impairments of the cervical spine, thoracic spine, and shoulder girdle.

Cervical Traction Manual or mechanical traction (see Chapter 10) has long been a preferred intervention throughout the spine with the intent of improving ROM and treating both zygapophyseal joint impairments and disk herniation.[64–69] The efficacy of traction in reducing radicular pain remains conflicted in the literature; however, a clinical prediction rule with the following five variables has recently been developed.[70]

1. Patient reports of peripheralization with lower cervical spine (C4–C7) mobility testing
2. Positive shoulder abduction test
3. Age ≥55
4. Positive upper limb tension test (a test that places neural structures on stretch)
5. Positive neck distraction test

Having at least three out of five predictors present resulted in increasing the likelihood of success with cervical traction from 44 percent to 79.2 percent. If at least four out of five variables were present, the posttest probability of having improvement with cervical traction increased to 94.8 percent.

The patient position and setup for mechanical traction varies according to the findings. (See Chapter 10.) Traction is often applied in conjunction with the application of electrotherapeutic modalities, including moist heat and electrical stimulation over the paraspinal muscles, to aid in the relaxation of the muscles and to assist in the pumping of the edema.[71]

Surgical Intervention In general, the decision to proceed with surgical intervention is made when a patient has significant extremity or myotomal weakness, severe pain, or pain that persists beyond an arbitrary "conservative" intervention period of 2 to 8 weeks.[72]

Acute Torticollis (Acute Wry Neck)

An acute form of torticollis, known as acute wry neck, typically develops overnight in young and middle-aged adults. The precise etiology is not clear, but because most of these patients appear to experience the symptoms shortly after awakening, it may be the result of an injury to the muscles, joints, or ligaments through simply sleeping with the neck in an unusual position. This unusual position may place the involved joints in a position of extreme motion, stretching the structures and increasing the risk of impingement when the joint position is returned to normal.

Patients with this condition present with painful neck spasms. On examination, cervical muscle spasm is visible and palpable. There is a marked limitation in ROM of the neck, and the patient may hold the head in a position of comfort toward the side of the involved muscle.

Intervention

The hanging head method is a simple but effective method for treating acute painful wry neck of spontaneous onset.[73] The technique requires a table with a head-down tilt facility. The patient is positioned in supine at the end of the table and a head-down tilt of about 20 degrees is provided. This position, which is maintained for 5 to 10 minutes, provides a gentle traction force allowing the sternocleidomastoid to relax. Alternatively, gentle traction can be applied manually by the PT. If this treatment is successful, no further intervention is necessary. In the cases where this technique is unsuccessful, the patient is reassured that they have a self-limiting condition, and that the symptoms will usually resolve significantly within 24 to 48 hours, with complete resolution within 2 weeks. Treatment during this period is symptomatic and may include the following:

- Moist heat, massage
- Patient education with regard to maintaining good posture and sleeping with the painful side on a low, firm pillow
- Gentle ROM exercises for the upper limbs and cervical spine
- Cervical collar use, which varies but should be used for only the first 24 hours

The patient's physician may prescribe muscle relaxants and analgesics.

If the symptoms do not resolve significantly after 48 hours, it is important to notify the supervising PT/referring physician to help rule out some of the more serious causes for these signs and symptoms. These include atlantoaxial rotatory displacement, juvenile RA, tumor, and bacterial meningitis.

Temporomandibular Joint Dysfunction

There are three cardinal features of TMD that the PT looks for during the examination, which can be local or remote:

- *Restricted jaw function.* A history of limited mouth opening, which may be intermittent or progressive, is a key feature of TMD. Patients may describe a generalized tight feeling, which could indicate a muscular disorder or capsulitis, or have the sensation that the jaw suddenly "catches" or "locks," which usually is related to mechanical interferences in the joint (internal derangement).[74] Associated signs of an internal derangement include pain and deviation of mandibular movements during opening and closing.
- *Joint noises.* The presence of joint noises (crepitus) of the TMJ may or may not be significant, because joint sounds occur in approximately 50 percent of healthy populations.[75] Some joint sounds, such as "soft" crepitus, are not audible to the clinician, so a stethoscope may be required. "Hard" crepitus, often described as gravelly or grating, is a diffuse sustained noise that occurs during a considerable portion of the opening or closing cycle, or both, and is evidence of a change in osseous contour.[76] Clicking is a brief noise that occurs at some point during opening, closing, or both. Jaw clicking during mouth opening or closing may be suggestive of an internal derangement consisting of an anterior disc displacement with reduction.[77,78]

- *Orofacial pain.* Approximately half of all cases of TMD are masticatory myalgias.[79] Pain should be evaluated carefully in terms of its onset, nature, intensity, site, duration, aggravating and relieving factors, and especially, how it relates to the other features such as joint noise and restricted mandibular movements.[74] Orofacial pain associated with mouth opening or closing, and jaw crepitus are suggestive of osteoarthrosis, capsulitis, or internal derangement consisting of an anterior disk displacement with reduction.[15–17]

☑ KEY POINT

TMJ sounds should be described and related to symptoms. Joint noise is, of itself, of little clinical importance in the absence of pain.

Intervention

Conservative intervention for TMD continues to be the most effective way of managing over 80 percent of patients.[80] Traditional conservative treatments for TMD have included interocclusal appliances, nocturnal alarms, physical therapy, occlusal calibration (also often termed occlusal equilibration), and cognitive-behavioral skills training (CBST).[81] Some authors[82,83] have recommended that the intervention for TMD should be directed at the following factors, which are listed in order of importance to the patient:[84]

- Treatment of symptoms to reduce or eliminate pain or joint noises, or both.
- Treatment of the underlying cause, and to restore normal mandibular and cervical function. Selected exercises usually are performed by the patient on a regular basis to maintain muscle strength as well as joint arthrokinematic mobility in both the TMJ and cervical spine.[85]
- Treatment of the predisposing factor. This is best achieved with a comprehensive approach that addresses the contributing factors of stress, poor posture, depression, and oral parafunctional habits.[75,86] Based on a systematic review of 30 studies examining the effectiveness of exercise, manual therapy, electrotherapy, relaxation training, and biofeedback in the management of TMD, Medlicott and Harris[87] made the following recommendations:
  - Active exercises and manual mobilizations may be effective.
  - Postural training may be used in combination with other interventions because the independent effects of postural training are unknown.
  - Low/mid-laser therapy may be more effective than other electrotherapy modalities.[88]
  - Programs involving relaxation techniques and biofeedback, electromyography training, and proprioceptive reeducation may be more effective than placebo treatment or occlusal splints.
  - Combinations of active exercises, manual therapy, postural correction, and relaxation techniques may be effective.

It is clear from the studies that the TMD-related pain experience is complex and that there is a clear need for further well-designed randomized controlled trials examining physical therapy interventions for TMD that include valid and reliable outcome measures.

Acute Phase

Acute injuries to the TMJ most frequently have a traumatic origin, such as a direct blow to the masticatory structures, or from a sudden locking of the jaw caused by an internal derangement.[16,17,80]

The patient with an acute injury typically demonstrates a capsular pattern of restriction (decreased ipsilateral opening and lateral deviation to the involved side), with pain and tenderness on the same side. There may be ligamentous damage, which will be demonstrated on the stress tests, or muscular damage, which will become apparent on isometric testing.

The usual methods of decreasing inflammation (PRICEMEM) are recommended, although elevation is not applicable with the TMJ. Cold is applied to reduce edema, inflammation, and muscle spasm. The mechanism behind cryotherapy is thought to be a "counter-irritation" and the production of analgesia.[89] The use of ice-filled towels soaked in warm water, applied all around the jaw, may prove beneficial in this phase. The patient should receive instruction on how to obtain the rest position of the TMJ. The rest position can be found by asking the patient to close the mouth so that the lips touch, but the teeth do not, and the tongue is resting gently on the hard palate. Motion of the TMJ should be limited to pain-free movements. Limitation of mandibular function is encouraged to allow rest or immobilization of the painful muscular and articular structures. Very gentle active exercises, well within the pain-free range, should be performed frequently (every hour or so) to help stimulate the mechanoreceptors and modulate pain, as well as improve vascularization.

Initial exercises during the acute stage include the 6 × 6 exercise protocol of Rocabado.[37] Another gentle exercise to increase joint mobility and articulation during this stage is the so-called cork exercise. The size (height) of the cork depends on the available motion. The patient holds the cork between his or her teeth while talking or reading aloud for approximately 2 minutes (**FIGURE 17.23**). The reading or talking exercise is then repeated with the cork removed.

FIGURE 17.23 Cork exercise.

Patient Education Perhaps the most important part of the intervention for TMD is to explain to the patient the cause and nature of the disorder, and to reassure him or her of the benign nature of the condition.[86] A successful self-care program may allow healing and prevent further injury, and it is often enough to control the problem.[90] A typical self-care program includes the following: limitation of mandibular function (rest), a home exercise program, habit awareness and modification, and stress avoidance.[86] The patient is advised to eat soft foods and avoid those that need a lot of chewing, and is discouraged from wide yawning, singing, chewing gum, and any other activities that would cause excessive jaw movement.[86] The patient's sleeping position also must be addressed. If the intrinsic ligaments are injured, the patient should be advised to sleep on the back, with the mouth open and the neck supported by a cervical pillow.[75] Care must be taken to ensure that the patient does not sleep in the prone position, which stresses the cervical spine by extending and rotating it, and compresses the TMJ. Lastly, patients should be advised to identify source(s) of stress and to try to change their lifestyle accordingly.

Functional Phase

Although the interventions for this phase are discussed separately, for optimal success they are best used in combination and are dependent on the patient's needs.

Postural Education Postural education, together with patient education, should form the cornerstone of any physical therapy POC for patients with TMD. Because of the association between TMD and poor posture, the prescribed exercises for TMD include strengthening exercises for the cervicothoracic stabilizers and the scapular stabilizers. (See Chapter 20.) Stretching exercises are prescribed for the scalenes, trapezius, pectoralis minor, and levator scapulae, and the suboccipital extensors. The focus of the postural intervention should be to educate the patient on correct posture of the head, neck, shoulders, and tongue, in order to help minimize symptoms. Often, the focus of the education is to teach the patient mental reminders to reduce the time spent in habitual positions during work and recreation.

Referral for Psychotherapy Recent studies appear to suggest that TMD may be, on occasion, the somatic expression of an underlying psychological or psychiatric disorder such as depression or a conversion disorder.[86,91–96] Thus, in some cases, the PTA may discuss with the PT the need for a referral to a psychiatrist or clinical psychologist.

Trigger Point Therapy Masticatory muscle pain is the one symptom for which there is the best overall evidence that supports various physical therapy interventions.[97] The most common intervention for these masticatory muscle disorders is trigger point therapy, which includes deep massage, soft tissue mobilizations, postural exercises, ultrasound, acupuncture, and trigger point injections by the physician.

Exercise The patient should be encouraged to begin full AROM exercises as early as tolerated. However, if jaw deviation is occurring, the exercises should be performed in a range in which the patient can control the deviation. Excessive mandibular motion is treated by muscle reeducation, with isometrics performed at the desired opening range.

Therapeutic Techniques

A number of techniques exist that can be used to treat the cervical spine based on the goal of treatment. Some of these techniques are performed by the physical therapist assistant (PTA) while others can be performed by the patient as part of a comprehensive home exercise program.

Techniques to Increase Soft Tissue Extensibility

A variety of soft tissue techniques for the cervical region are available to the clinician. The choice of technique depends on the goals of the treatment and the dysfunction being treated.

Pectoralis Minor

The pectoralis minor can be stretched effectively using a corner and placing the hands on the walls (**FIGURE 17.24**). The patient needs to avoid adopting a forward head posture during the stretch. The clinician is cautioned against using this exercise with any patient with shoulder pathology, especially an anterior instability.

Pectoralis Major

The pectoralis major can be specifically stretched if the orientation of its fibers is considered (clavicular and costosternal), by having the patient lie supine and extending the arm off the table in either approximately 140 degrees of shoulder abduction (costosternal fibers; **FIGURE 17.25**) or approximately 90 degrees of abduction (clavicular fibers).

Sternocleidomastoid

The SCM functions to flex and rotate the neck and extend the OA joint. The patient is positioned supine, with the head supported. From this position, the clinician induces side bending of the neck to the contralateral side, and extension of the neck (**FIGURE 17.26**). The clinician stabilizes the shoulder and rotates the patient's head and neck toward the ipsilateral side. To add a hold-relax stretch, the patient can then be asked to attempt to move the head and neck toward the contralateral side, a motion that is resisted by the clinician.

FIGURE 17.24 Corner stretch.

FIGURE 17.25 Stretch of costosternal fibers of pectoralis major.

FIGURE 17.26 Stretch of SCM.

When the patient relaxes, the clinician moves the head and neck further into the range.

Levator Scapulae

The patient is positioned supine, with the head at the edge of the table. The elbow and hand of the side to be treated are placed by the side. The clinician stands at the head of the table and presses his or her hand against the point of the patient's shoulder, fixing it caudally. Using one hand, the clinician then flexes the neck and side flexes the patient's head to the opposite side until resistance is felt (**FIGURE 17.27**). To add a hold-relax stretch, the patient can then be asked to look toward the treated side, a motion that is resisted by gravity. When the patient relaxes, the clinician moves the head into further side bending and flexion.

Upper Trapezius

This procedure is similar to that of the levator scapulae except that the amount of neck flexion is reduced.

FIGURE 17.27 Stretch of levator scapulae.

The patient is positioned supine, with the head at the edge of the table. The scapula is stabilized into depression and downward rotation. The clinician stands at the head of the table and presses his or her hand against the point of the patient's shoulder, fixing it caudally. Using both hands, the clinician then flexes the neck and side bends the patient's head to the opposite side. Rotation to the ipsilateral side is then added until resistance is felt (**FIGURE 17.28**). To add the PNF technique of hold-relax, the patient is then asked to look toward the treated side, a motion that is resisted by the clinician. When the patient relaxes, the clinician moves the head into further flexion, side bending, and rotation.

Posterior Suboccipital Muscle Group

This group includes the rectus capitis posterior major, the rectus capitis posterior minor, the obliquus capitis inferior, and the obliquus capitis superior. This muscle group can be lengthened by passively flexing the head on the neck (**FIGURE 17.29**). The stretch can be localized by supporting the rest of the neck with clasped hands, and further localized by side bending away and rotating toward the tighter side.

FIGURE 17.29 Stretch of posterior suboccipitals.

Hand-Clasp Exercise

AROM in the cervical spine can be increased through patient participation, using the hand-clasp exercise.[98] The patient clasps his or her hands around the posterior aspect of the neck. The motions of flexion (**FIGURE 17.30**), side bending (**FIGURE 17.31**), extension (**FIGURE 17.32**), and rotation (**FIGURE 17.33**) can all be performed.

The patient is cautioned against reproducing sharp pain, while attempting to feel a stretch at the end of the available motion. With a different hand position, cervical extension can be performed in a controlled and safe manner. The fingers are again interlocked and placed behind the neck, but this time with the little fingers placed at the segmental level below the joint restriction. Using the little finger as a fulcrum, the patient extends the cervical spine to the point just shy of pain. This position is held for a few seconds and the neck is returned to the neutral position.

General Soft Tissue Techniques

The theoretical concepts behind soft tissue techniques and the various techniques are described in Chapter 9.

FIGURE 17.28 Stretch of upper trapezius.

FIGURE 17.30 Hand-clasp flexion.

FIGURE 17.31 Hand-clasp sidebending.

FIGURE 17.32 Hand-clasp extension.

FIGURE 17.33 Hand-clasp rotation.

Prone

The patient is positioned prone, with the clinician standing to the side of the patient. The following areas are massaged:

- *Paraspinal gutter.* The clinician uses a thumb to apply a deep massage to the entire length of the paraspinal gutter.
- *Upper trapezius.* The clinician uses the heel of the palm and massages the upper trapezius. The clinician can also use the thumb to knead the upper trapezius muscle along the direction of its fibers (**FIGURE 17.34**).

FIGURE 17.34 Massage to the upper trapezius.

Side Lying

The patient is positioned to be side lying. The following areas are massaged:

- *Scapular distraction.* The patient is in the side-lying position, and the clinician stands facing the patient. Reaching over the back of the patient, the clinician grasps the scapula by sliding the fingers underneath the medial border and manually distracts the scapula away from the patient's back (**FIGURE 17.35**).
- *Scapular rotations.* The patient is in the side-lying position, with the clinician standing to the side of the patient. The clinician takes the patient's arm and rests it on his or her own arm. Reaching over the patient, the clinician grasps the whole shoulder girdle and rotates it in a full circle (**FIGURE 17.36**). This is repeatedly done, producing a rhythmic motion.

Self-Stretches

The patient can be instructed on how to self-stretch a number of muscles at home.

- *Upper trapezius.* The patient is seated with good posture. To stretch the right upper trapezius, the

FIGURE 17.35 Scapular distraction.

FIGURE 17.36 Scapular rotations.

FIGURE 17.38 Self-stretch to right levator scapulae.

patient is asked to use the right upper extremity to grasp the bottom of the table (**FIGURE 17.37**) and lean the head away so that the right shoulder is held in a depressed position. Using the fingers of the left hand, the patient grasps the right aspect of the head. Gentle pressure is applied with the fingers to side bend the head to the right. The side bending continues until a gentle stretch is felt. The stretch is maintained for 30 seconds, and then the patient relaxes. The stretch is repeated 10 times.

- *Levator scapulae.* The patient setup is the same as for the upper trapezius. To stretch the right levator scapula, the patient gently pulls the head and neck forward and to the opposite side, and then rotates the head to the left until the stretch is felt (**FIGURE 17.38**). The position of stretch is held for 30 seconds, and the procedure is repeated 10 times.
- *Anterior and middle scalenes.* The patient is seated on the edge of a chair with the chest positioned superiorly and anteriorly. Using the hand on the side to be stretched, the patient grasps the leg or seat of the chair to stabilize the ribs. The patient then side flexes the head to the opposite side while maintaining the cervical spine in neutral with regard to flexion/extension. A further stretch can be applied by rotating the head toward the hand that is holding the chair and then slightly extending the neck.
- *TMJ stretch.* Tongue depressors can be used to progressively increase mouth opening. The patient is asked to open the mouth as far as is comfortable. A number of tongue depressors are then placed flat in the opening (**FIGURE 17.39**) so the stack fits snugly against both the upper and the lower teeth. By adding one depressor at a time to the stack, a gradual and sustained stretch can be applied to the TMJ and the structures restricting the mouth opening. Normal translation begins after 11 millimeters of opening, or about six tongue depressors. With the tongue depressors in position, a patient can mobilize the mandible actively into protrusion and lateral excursion.

FIGURE 17.37 Self-stretch to the right upper trapezius.

FIGURE 17.39 Tongue depressor stretch for TMJ.

Summary

The majority of the anatomy of the cervical spine and TMJ can be explained with regard to the functions that the head and neck perform on a daily basis. To perform these various tasks, the head must be provided with the ability to perform wide-ranging, detailed, and, at times, very quick motions. These motions allow for precise positioning of the eyes and the ability to respond to a host of postural changes that result from stimulation of the vestibular system.[99] (See Chapter 3.) In addition to providing this amount of mobility, the cervical spine has to protect several vital structures, including the spinal cord and the vertebral and carotid arteries. Because of the close relationship among the neck, thoracic spine, shoulder girdle, and temporomandibular joint, a complete and successful intervention must also deal with impairments found in these regions.

Learning Portfolio

Case Study

Your supervising physical therapist is testing your knowledge about the muscles of the cervical spine and TMJ and asks you the following questions.

1. Name three muscles that produce ipsilateral side bending and contralateral rotation of the cervical spine.
2. Name three muscles that are prime flexors of the cervical spine.
3. Which three muscles work together to produce mouth closing?

It quickly becomes apparent why your supervising physical therapist was asking these questions, because most of the patients on today's schedule have cervical spine or TMJ problems. The prescribed exercise program for your first patient includes strengthening on the deep cervical flexors.

4. Which exercise would you use to help strengthen the deep cervical flexors?

Your next patient, who is in the acute stage of healing following TMJ surgery, has been prescribed the 6×6 exercise protocol of Rocabado by your supervising physical therapist.

5. Describe the six exercises included in the Rocabado protocol and how you would teach each to the patient.

Review Questions

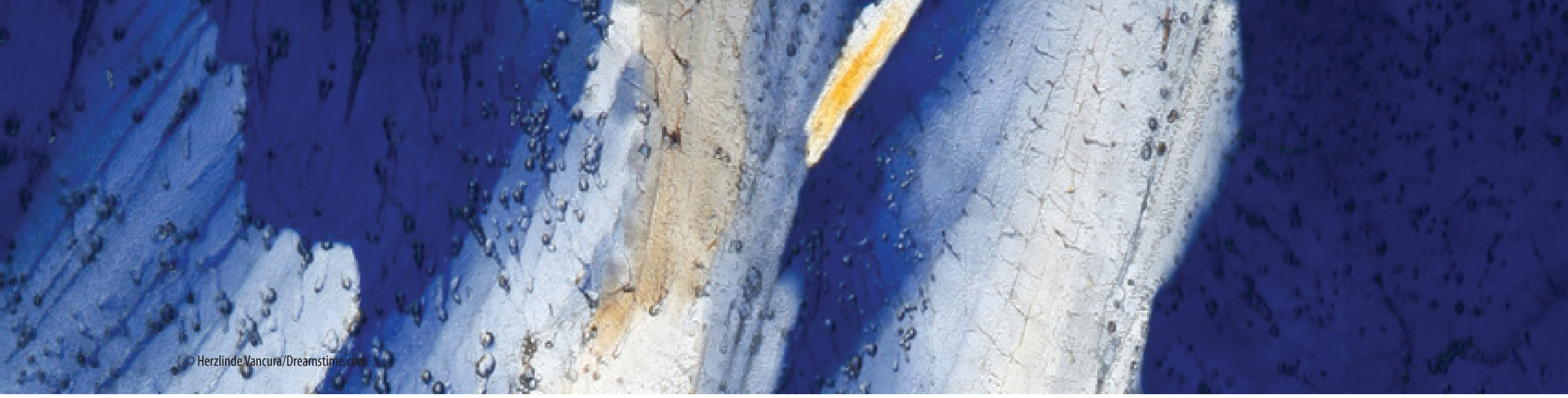
1. What is the function of the uncinate processes (uncovertebral joint)?
2. Which of the following is *not* a suboccipital muscle?
   a. Rectus capitis lateralis
   b. Rectus capitis posterior major
   c. Rectus capitis posterior minor
   d. Obliquus capitis inferior
   e. Obliquus capitis superior
3. What is the action of the sternocleidomastoid?
4. What is the name of the second cervical vertebra?
5. In which plane does the craniocervical region allow the most motion?
6. Which of the following motions decreases the diameter of the intervertebral foramen, flexion or extension?
7. In which plane of motion does side bending of the cervical spine occur?
8. **True or false:** About one-half of the rotation available to the head and neck occurs from motion at the atlantoaxial joint.
9. **True or false:** The craniocervical region typically allows 90 degrees of axial rotation to each side.
10. **True or false:** The TMJ is a synovial, compound-modified ovoid bicondylar joint.
11. Which two muscles are involved with mouth opening?
12. Which muscles are involved with mouth closing?
13. When a patient deviates the jaw laterally to the right, which muscles are being used?
14. Describe the resting position of the TMJ.
15. What is the capsular pattern of the TMJ?

References

1. Maigne J-Y. Cervicothoracic and thoracolumbar spinal pain syndromes. In: Giles LGF, Singer KP, editors. *Clinical Anatomy and Management of the Thoracic Spine*. Oxford: Butterworth-Heinemann; 2000. p. 157–68.
2. Bishop MD, Mintken PE, Bialosky JE, Cleland JA. Patient expectations of benefit from interventions for neck pain and resulting influence on outcomes. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2013; 43:457–65.
3. Patel TK, Weis JC. Acute neck pain in the ED: consider longus colli calcific tendinitis vs meningitis. *The American Journal of Emergency Medicine*. 2017; 35:943.e3–943.e4.
4. Thompson DP, Woby SR. The processes underpinning reductions in disability among people with chronic neck pain. A preliminary comparison between two distinct types of physiotherapy intervention. *Disability and Rehabilitation*. 2017:1–5.
5. Huijbregts PA. Lumbopelvic region: anatomy and biomechanics. In: Wadsworth C, editor. *Current Concepts of Orthopaedic Physical Therapy*. Home Study Course. La Crosse, WI: Orthopaedic Section, APTA, Inc.; 2001.
6. Adams CBT, Logue V. Studies in spondylotic myelopathy 2: the movement and contour of the spine in relation to the neural complications of cervical spondylosis. *Brain*. 1971; 94:569–86.
7. Penning L. *Functional Pathology of the Cervical Spine*. Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins; 1968.
8. Panjabi MM. The stabilizing system of the spine. Part II. Neutral zone and instability hypothesis. *Journal of Spinal Disorders*. 1992; 5:390–6; discussion 7.
9. Janda V. Muscles and motor control in cervicogenic disorders: assessment and management. In: Grant R, editor. *Physical Therapy of the Cervical and Thoracic Spine*. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1994. p. 195–216.
10. Jull GA, Janda V. Muscle and motor control in low back pain. In: Twomey LT, Taylor JR, editors. *Physical Therapy of the Low Back: Clinics in Physical Therapy*. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1987. p. 258–78.
11. Bergmark A. Stability of the lumbar spine. *Acta Orthopaedica Scandinavica*. 1989; 60:1–54.
12. Jull GA. Physiotherapy management of neck pain of mechanical origin. In: Giles LGF, Singer KP, editors. *Clinical Anatomy and Management of Cervical Spine Pain*. London, England: Butterworth-Heinemann; 1998. p. 168–91.
13. Mayoux-Benhamou MA, Revel M, Valle C, et al. Longus colli has a postural function on cervical curvature. *Surgical and Radiologic Anatomy*. 1994; 16:367–71.
14. Conley MS, Meyer RA, Bloomberg JJ, et al. Noninvasive analysis of human neck muscle function. *Spine*. 1995; 20:2505–12.
15. Kondo E, Aoba TJ. Case report of malocclusion with abnormal head posture and TMJ symptoms. *American Journal of Orthodontics and Dentofacial Orthopedics*. 1999; 116:481–93.
16. Ioi H, Matsumoto R, Nishioka M, Goto TK, Nakata S, Nakasima A, et al. Relationship between head posture and dentofacial morphology in patients with TMJ osteoarthritis/osteoarthrosis. *World Journal of Orthodontics*. 2008; 9:329–36.
17. Ioi H, Matsumoto R, Nishioka M, Goto TK, Nakata S, Nakasima A, et al. Relationship of TMJ osteoarthritis/osteoarthrosis to head posture and dentofacial morphology. *Orthodontics and Craniofacial Research*. 2008; 11:8–16.
18. Dutton M. The temporomandibular joint. In: Dutton M, editor. *Dutton's Orthopaedic: Examination, Evaluation and Intervention*, 4th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2016. p. 1340–82.
19. Friedman MH, Weisberg J. Application of orthopedic principles in evaluation of the temporomandibular joint. *Physical Therapy*. 1982; 62:597–603.
20. Terrett AGJ. *Current Concepts in Vertebrobasilar Complications Following Spinal Manipulation*, 2nd ed. Norwalk, IA: Foundation for Chiropractic Education and Research; 2001.
21. Australian Physiotherapy Association. Protocol for pre-manipulative testing of the cervical spine. *The Australian Journal of Physiotherapy*. 1988; 34:97–100.
22. Hoving JL, de Vet HC, Koes BW, Mameren H, Deville WL, van der Windt DA, et al. Manual therapy, physical therapy, or continued care by the general practitioner for patients with neck pain: long-term results from a pragmatic randomized clinical trial. *Clinical Journal of Pain*. 2006; 22:370–7.
23. Gross AR, Aker PD, Goldsmith CH, Peloso P. Physical medicine modalities for mechanical neck disorders. *The Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*. 2000:CD000961.
24. Gennis P, Miller L, Gallagher EJ, et al. The effect of soft cervical collars on persistent neck pain in patients with whiplash injury. *Academic Emergency Medicine*. 1998; 3:568–73.
25. Guthrie RM, Chorba R. Physical therapy treatment of chronic neck pain a discussion and case study: using dry needling and battlefield acupuncture. *Journal of Special Operations Medicine*. 2016; 16:1–5.
26. Provinciali L, Baroni M, Illuminati L, Ceravolo G. Multimodal treatment of whiplash injury. *Scandinavian Journal of Rehabilitation Medicine*. 1996; 28:105–11.
27. Kennedy CN. The cervical spine. In: Hall C, Thein-Brody L, editors. *Therapeutic Exercise: Moving Toward Function*. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2005. p. 582–609.
28. Meadows J. *A Rationale and Complete Approach to the Sub-Acute Post-MVA Cervical Patient*. Calgary, AB: Swodeam Consulting; 1995.
29. Cole AJ, Farrell JP, Stratton SA. Functional rehabilitation of cervical spine athletic injuries. In: Kibler BW, Herring JA, Press JM, editors. *Functional Rehabilitation of Sports and Musculoskeletal Injuries*. Gaithersburg, MD: Aspen; 1998. p. 127–48.
30. Keshner EA, Campbell D, Katz RT. Neck muscle activiation patterns in humans during isometric head stabilization. *Experimental Brain Research*. 1989; 75:335–44.
31. Andersson GBJ, Winters JM. Role of muscle in postural tasks: spinal loading and postural stability. In: Winters JM, Woo SL-Y, editors. *Multiple Muscle Systems*. New York: Springer-Verlag; 1990. p. 375–95.
32. O'Connor JJ. Can muscle co-contraction protect knee ligaments after injury or repair? *The Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery*. 1993; 75-B:41–8.
33. Sweeney TB, Prentice C, Saal JA, Saal JS. Cervicothoracic muscular stabilization techniques. In: Saal JA, editor. *Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation, State of the Art Reviews: Neck and Back Pain*. Philadelphia: Hanley & Belfus; 1990. p. 335–59.
34. Turk DC, Nash JM. Chronic pain: new ways to cope. In: Goleman D, Gurin J, editors. *Mind Body Medicine*. Yonkers, NY: Consumers Union of United States; 1993. p. 111–31.

35. Jette DU, Jette AM. Physical therapy and health outcomes in patients with spinal impairments. *Physical Therapy.* 1996; 76:930–45.
36. Kogawa EM, Kato MT, Santos CN, Conti PC. Evaluation of the efficacy of low-level laser therapy (LLLT) and the microelectric neurostimulation (MENS) in the treatment of myogenic temporomandibular disorders: a randomized clinical trial. *Journal of Applied Oral Science.* 2005; 13:280–5.
37. Rocabado M. Physical therapy for the post-surgical TMJ patient. *Journal of Craniomandibular Disorders.* 1989; 7:75–82.
38. Press JM, Herring SA, Kibler WB. Rehabilitation of musculoskeletal disorders. *The Textbook of Military Medicine.* Washington, DC: Borden Institute: Office of the Surgeon General; 1996.
39. Thoomes-de Graaf M, Schmitt MS. The effect of training the deep cervical flexors on neck pain, neck mobility, and dizziness in a patient with chronic nonspecific neck pain after prolonged bed rest: a case report. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy.* 2012; 42:853–60.
40. Jull G. Whiplash continues its challenge. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy.* 2016; 46:815–7.
41. Gargan MF, Bannister GC. Long term prognosis of soft tissue injuries of the neck. *The Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery.* 1990; 72B:901.
42. Carroll LJ, Holm LW, Hogg-Johnson S, Cote P, Cassidy JD, Haldeman S, et al. Course and prognostic factors for neck pain in whiplash-associated disorders (WAD): results of the Bone and Joint Decade 2000–2010 Task Force on Neck Pain and Its Associated Disorders. *Spine.* 2008; 33:S83–92.
43. LoPiccolo CJ, Goodkin K, Baldewicz TT. Current issues in the diagnosis and management of malingering. *Annals of Medicine.* 1999; 31:166–74.
44. Karlsson A, Leinhard OD, Aslund U, West J, Romu T, Smedby O, et al. An investigation of fat infiltration of the multifidus muscle in patients with severe neck symptoms associated with chronic whiplash-associated disorder. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy.* 2016; 46:886–93.
45. Spearing NM, Connelly LB, Gargett S, Sterling M. Does injury compensation lead to worse health after whiplash? A systematic review. *Pain.* 2012; 153:1274–82.
46. Walton DM, Macdermid JC, Giorgianni AA, Mascarenhas JC, West SC, Zammit CA. Risk factors for persistent problems following acute whiplash injury: update of a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy.* 2013; 43:31–43.
47. Ivancic PC. Mechanisms and mitigation of head and spinal injuries due to motor vehicle crashes. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy.* 2016; 46:826–33.
48. Janda V. *Muscle Function Testing.* London: Butterworths; 1983.
49. Refshauge KM, Bolst L, Goodsell M. The relationship between cervicothoracic posture and the presence of pain. *The Journal of Manual and Manipulative Therapy.* 1995; 3:21–4.
50. Saunders HD, Ryan RS. *Evaluation, Treatment and Prevention of Musculoskeletal Disorders,* Vol 1: Spine, 4th ed. Chaska, MN: The Saunders Group; 2004.
51. De-la-Llave-Rincon AI, Fernandez-de-las-Penas C, Palacios-Cena D, Cleland JA. Increased forward head posture and restricted cervical range of motion in patients with carpal tunnel syndrome. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy.* 2009; 39:658–64.
52. Yoo WG, An DH. The relationship between the active cervical range of motion and changes in head and neck posture after continuous VDT work. *Industrial Health.* 2009; 47:183–8.
53. Cailliet R. *Neck and Arm Pain,* 3rd ed. Philadelphia: FA Davis; 1990.
54. Hanten WP, Lucio RM, Russell JL, Brunt D. Assessment of total head excursion and resting head posture. *Archives of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation.* 1991; 72:877–80.
55. Lee H, Nicholson LL, Adams RD. Cervical range of motion associations with subclinical neck pain. *Spine.* 2004; 29:33–40.
56. White AA, Sahrmann SA. A movement system balance approach to management of musculoskeletal pain. In: Grant R, editor. *Physical Therapy for the Cervical and Thoracic Spine.* Edinburgh: Churchill Livingstone; 1994. p. 339–58.
57. Walsh R, Nitz AJ. Cervical spine. In: Wadsworth C, editor. *Current Concepts of Orthopedic Physical Therapy.* Home Study Course. La Crosse, WI: Orthopaedic Section, APTA, Inc.; 2001.
58. Farrell SF, Osmotherly PG, Cornwall J, Rivett DA. The anatomy and morphometry of cervical zygapophyseal joint meniscoids. *Surgical and Radiologic Anatomy.* 2015; 37:799–807.
59. Vaidya Y, Vaithianathan R. An unusual case of neurogenic thoracic outlet syndrome. *International Journal of Surgery Case Reports.* 2017; 31:139–41.
60. Harrison DE, Bula JM, Gore DR. Roentgenographic findings in the cervical spine in asymptomatic persons: A 10-year follow-up. *Spine.* 2002; 27:1249–50.
61. Thompson JF, Jannsen F. Thoracic outlet syndromes. *British Journal of Surgery.* 1996; 83:435–6.
62. Roos DB. The place for scalenectomy and first-rib resection in thoracic outlet syndrome. *Surgery.* 1982; 92:1077–85.
63. Dutton M. The cervical spine. In: Dutton M, editor. *Dutton's Orthopaedic: Examination, Evaluation and Intervention,* 4th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2016. p. 1256–339.
64. Beurskens AJ, de Vet HC, Koke AJ, et al. Efficacy of traction for nonspecific low back pain: 12-week and 6-month results of a randomized clinical trial. *Spine.* 1997; 22:2756–62.
65. Harris PR. Cervical traction: review of literature and treatment guidelines. *Physical Therapy.* 1977; 57:910–4.
66. Licht S. *Massage, Manipulation and Traction.* Connecticut: E. Licht; 1960.
67. Natchev E. *A Manual on Autotraction.* Stockholm, Sweden: Folksam Scientific Council; 1984.
68. Twomey L. Sustained lumbar traction. An experimental study of long spine segments. *Spine.* 1985; 10:146–9.
69. Zylbergold RS, Piper MC. Cervical spine disorders. A comparison of three types of traction. *Spine.* 1985; 10:867–71.
70. Raney NH, Petersen EJ, Smith TA, Cowan JE, Rendeiro DG, Deyle GD, et al. Development of a clinical prediction rule to identify patients with neck pain likely to benefit from cervical traction and exercise. *European Spine Journal.* 2009; 18:382–91.
71. Reed BV. Effect of high voltage pulsed electrical stimulation on microvascular permeability to plasma proteins: a possible mechanism of minimizing edema. *Physical Therapy.* 1988; 68:491–5.
72. Aldrich F. Posterolateral microdiscectomy for cervical monoradiculopathy caused by posterolateral soft cervical disc sequestration. *Journal of Neurosurgery.* 1990; 72:370–7.
73. Banerjee A. The hanging head method for the treatment of acute wry neck. *Archives of Emergency Medicine.* 1990; 7:125.
74. Dimitroulis G. Temporomandibular disorders: a clinical update. *BMJ.* 1998; 317:190–4.
75. McNeill C. *Temporomandibular Disorders-Guidelines for Classification, Assessment and Management,* 2nd ed. Chicago: Quintessence Books; 1993.

76. Kaplan AS. Examination and diagnosis. In: Kaplan AS, Assael LA, editors. T*emporomandibular Disorders Diagnosis and Treatment*. Philadelphia: WB Saunders; 1991. p. 284–311.
77. Orsini MG, Kuboki T, Terada S, Matsuka Y, Yatani H, Yamashita A. Clinical predictability of temporomandibular joint disc displacement. *Journal of Dental Research.* 1999; 78:650–60.
78. Barclay P, Hollender LG, Maravilla KR, Truelove EL. Comparison of clinical and magnetic resonance imaging diagnosis in patients with disk displacement in the temporomandibular joint. *Oral Surgery, Oral Medicine, Oral Pathology, Oral Radiology, and Endodontics.* 1999; 88:37–43.
79. Marbach JJ, Lipton JA. Treatment of patients with temporomandibular joint and other facial pain by otolaryngologists. *Archives of Otolaryngology.* 1982; 108:102–7.
80. Craane B, Dijkstra PU, Stappaerts K, De Laat A. Randomized controlled trial on physical therapy for TMJ closed lock. *Journal of Dental Research.* 2012; 91:364–9.
81. Gatchel RJ, Stowell AW, Wildenstein L, Riggs R, Ellis E, 3rd. Efficacy of an early intervention for patients with acute temporomandibular disorder-related pain: a one-year outcome study. *Journal of the American Dental Association.* 2006; 137:339–47.
82. Ogus HD, Toller PA. *Common Disorders of the Temporomandibular Joint.* Bristol: John Wright & Son; 1986.
83. Guralnik W. The temporomandibular joint: the dentist's dilemma: Parts I and II. *British Dental Journal.* 1984; 156:315–9 & 53–56.
84. Gray RJ, Quayle AA, Hall CA, Schofield MA. Physiotherapy in the treatment of temporomandibular joint disorders: a comparative study of four treatment methods. *British Dental Journal.* 1994; 176:257–61.
85. Dunn J. Physical therapy. In: Kaplan AS, Assael LA, editors. *Temporomandibular Disorders Diagnosis and Treatment.* Philadelphia: WB Saunders; 1991. p. 455–500.
86. Dimitroulis G, Gremillion HA, Dolwick MF, Walter JH. Temporomandibular disorders. 2. Non-surgical treatment. *Australian Dental Journal.* 1995; 40:372–6.
87. Medlicott MS, Harris SR. A systematic review of the effectiveness of exercise, manual therapy, electrotherapy, relaxation training, and biofeedback in the management of temporomandibular disorder. *Physical Therapy*. 2006; 86:955–73.
88. Kulekcioglu S, Sivrioglu K, Ozcan O, Parlak M. Effectiveness of low-level laser therapy in temporomandibular disorder. *Scandinavian Journal of Rheumatology*. 2003; 32:114–8.
89. Michlovitz SL. The use of heat and cold in the management of rheumatic diseases. In: Michlovitz SL, editor. *Thermal Agents in Rehabilitation*. Philadelphia: FA Davis; 1990. p. 158–74.
90. Hodges JM. Managing temporomandibular joint syndrome. *Laryngoscope*. 1990; 100:60–6.
91. Moss RA, Adams HE. The class of personality, anxiety and depression in mandibular pain dysfunction subjects. *Journal of Oral Rehabilitation*. 1984; 11:233–7.
92. Rugh JD. Psychological components of pain. *Dental Clinics of North America*. 1987; 31:579–94.
93. Cohen S, Rodriguez MS. Pathways linking affective disturbances and physical disorders. *Health Psychology*. 1995; 14:371–3.
94. Gatchel RJ, Garofalo JP, Ellis E, Holt C. Major psychological disorders in acute and chronic TMD: an initial examination. *Journal of the American Dental Association*. 1996; 127: 1365–70, 72, 74.
95. Kight M, Gatchel RJ, Wesley L. Temporomandibular disorders: evidence for significant overlap with psychopathology. *Health Psychology*. 1999; 18:177–82.
96. Korszun A, Papadopoulos E, Demitrack M, et al. The relationship between temporomandibular disorders and stress-associated syndromes. *Oral Surgery, Oral Medicine, Oral Pathology, Oral Radiology, and Endodontics*. 1998; 86:416–20.
97. Clark GT, Adachi NY, Dornan MR. Physical medicine procedures affect temporomandibular disorders: a review. *Journal of the American Dental Association*. 1990; 121:151–61.
98. Erhard RE. Manual therapy in the cervical spine. *Orthopedic Physical Therapy*. Home Study Course. La Crosse, WI: Orthopaedic Section, APTA, Inc.; 1996.
99. Pratt N. *Anatomy of the Cervical Spine*. La Crosse, WI: Orthopaedic Section, APTA, Inc.; 1996.



© Herzlinde Vancura/Dreamstime.com

CHAPTER 18

Thoracic Spine and Rib Cage

CHAPTER OBJECTIVES

At the completion of this chapter, the reader will be able to:

1. Describe the musculoskeletal structures and nerve supply that comprise the thoracic intervertebral segment.
2. Outline the coupled movements of the thoracic spine, and the reactions of the various structures to loading.
3. Define the common pathologies and lesions of this region.
4. Apply a variety of manual techniques to the thoracic spine.
5. Perform an intervention based on patient education, manual therapy, and therapeutic exercise.
6. Evaluate intervention effectiveness to suggest progressions or modifications.
7. Teach an effective home program that includes spinal care and therapeutic exercise.

Overview

There are 12 thoracic vertebrae, each of which is involved in at least six articulations. In the thoracic spine, protection of the thoracic viscera takes priority over segmental spinal mobility. The posterior thoracic muscles, spinous processes, anterior and posterior longitudinal ligaments, vertebral bodies (**FIGURE 18.1**), zygapophyseal and costotransverse joints, pars interarticularis, inferior articular process, intervertebral disk, nerve root, joint meniscus, and dura mater are all capable of producing pain in this region.

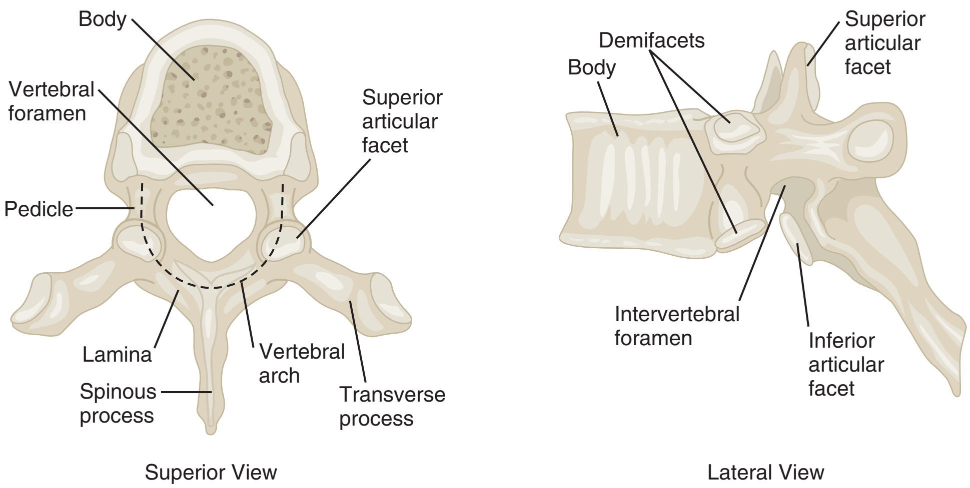


FIGURE 18.1 Thoracic vertebrae.

Anatomy and Kinesiology

The thoracic spinal segments possess the potential for a unique array of movements. However, there is very little agreement in the literature with regard to the biomechanics of the thoracic spine, and most of the understanding is based largely on the ex vivo studies of White,[1] Panjabi et al.,[2,3] and a variety of clinical models.[4,5]

The rib cage (**FIGURE 18.2**) and its articulations make the thoracic region less flexible and more stable than the cervical region. This increased stability/reduced mobility of the thoracic segments has been reported to produce three primary effects:[6,7]

- It influences the motions available in other regions of the spine, as well as the shoulder girdle.
- It increases the potential for postural impairments in this region.[8]
- It provides an important weight-bearing mechanism for the vertebral column.[9] The load-bearing capacity of the spine has been found to be up to three times greater with an intact rib cage.[10,11]

☑ KEY POINT

Although anatomically distinct, the thoracic and lumbar vertebrae typically work together during trunk motion relative to the pelvis and lower extremities.

Muscles

A large number of muscles arise from and insert on the thoracic spine and ribs. Those involved in spinal or extremity motion include those listed in **TABLE 18.1**.

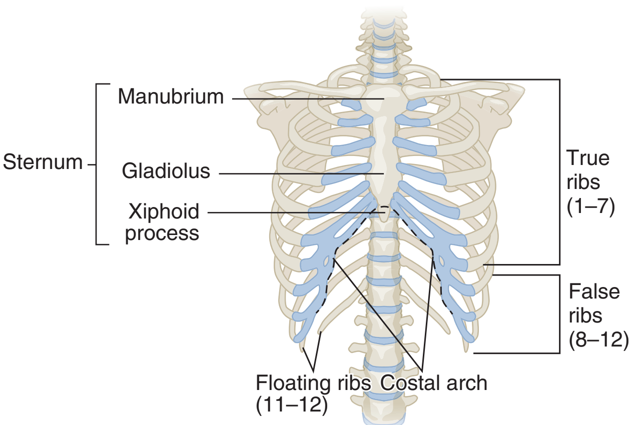


FIGURE 18.2 The rib cage (anterior view).

The muscles of respiration are as follows:

- Primary muscles of inspiration
  - Diaphragm
  - Levator costorum
  - External intercostals
  - Internal intercostals (anterior)
- Accessory muscles of inspiration
  - Scaleni
  - Sternocleidomastoid
  - Trapezius
  - Serratus anterior and posterior and superior and inferior
  - Pectoralis major and minor
  - Latissimus dorsi
  - Subclavius
- Primary muscles of forced expiration
  - Abdominal muscles
    - Internal and external oblique
    - Rectus abdominis
    - Transversus abdominis
  - Internal intercostals (posterior)
  - Transversus thoracis
  - Transverse intercostals (intima)
- Accessory muscles of forced expiration
  - Latissimus dorsi
  - Serratus posterior inferior
  - Quadratus lumborum
  - Iliocostalis lumborum

Thoracic Motions

Motion in all cardinal planes is possible in the thoracic region, but the magnitude depends on the segmental level:

- Flexion and extension are more limited in the upper thoracic region because the facets lie closer to the frontal plane. The range of motion of flexion, coupled with anterior translation, in the thoracic spine is 20 to 45 degrees.[12] Flexion is limited by the posterior longitudinal ligament, ligamentum flavum, interspinous ligament, supraspinous ligament, and capsule ligaments. The range of motion of extension, coupled with posterior translation, is 20 to 45 degrees.[12] The extension is limited by the articular and spinous processes.
- Side bending in the frontal plane remains similar throughout, but increases in the lower thoracic region. Side bending of the thoracic spine is approximately 20 to 40 degrees.[12]
- Rotation about the transverse plane is more limited in the lower thoracic region because the facets lie closer to the sagittal plane. Rotation

TABLE 18.1 Thoracic Muscles Involved in Spinal and Extremity Motions

Spinal muscles	Iliocostalis thoracis	Consists of several muscle straps that link the thoracic vertebrae and sacrum with the lower six or seven ribs. The muscle straps have some tendons, which insert at all angles in the lower six ribs. Its function is to extend the spine when working bilaterally and to side bend the spine ipsilaterally when working in isolation. The muscle receives its nerve supply by the posterior (dorsal) rami of the thoracic nerves.
	Longissimus thoracis	The muscles insert into all of the ribs and the ends of the transverse processes of the upper lumbar vertebrae. The function of the muscle is to extend the spine when working bilaterally and to side bend the spine ipsilaterally when working alone. The muscle is innervated by the posterior (dorsal) rami of the thoracic nerves.
	Spinalis thoracis	The muscle originates from the spinous processes of the upper lumbar and two lower thoracic vertebrae and inserts in the spinous processes of the middle and upper thoracic vertebrae. The function of the muscle is to extend the spine. The muscle is innervated by the posterior (dorsal) rami of the thoracic nerves.
	Semispinalis thoracis	Consists of long straps of muscle that stretch along and surround the vertebrae of the spine These straps of muscle insert in the spinous processes of the first four thoracic and fifth and seventh processes of C6–T4. The function of the muscle is to extend the spine when working bilaterally and to rotate the spine contralaterally when working alone. The semispinalis thoracis is innervated by the posterior (dorsal) rami of the thoracic nerves.
	Multifidus	Runs along the entire spine and lies deep to the erector spinae muscles Originates from the sacrum, sacroiliac ligament, mammillary processes of the lumbar vertebrae, transverse processes of the thoracic vertebrae, and the articular processes of the last four cervical vertebrae The function of the muscle is to extend the spine when working bilaterally and to rotate the spine minimally contralaterally when working alone. The thoracic multifidus is innervated by the posterior (dorsal) rami of the thoracic spinal nerves.
	Rotatores thoracis (longus and brevis)	The rotatores brevis muscle lies just deep to the rotatores longus muscle and both lie beneath the multifidus muscles. Each muscle arises from the transverse process of the vertebra and extends inward to the vertebra above. The rotatores muscles help rotate the appropriate thoracic segment. They rotatores muscles are innervated by the posterior (dorsal) rami of the thoracic spinal nerves.

(continues)

TABLE 18.1 Thoracic Muscles Involved in Spinal and Extremity Motions *(continued)*

	Intertransversarii	Small muscles located between the transverse process of the vertebrae from T10–T11 to T12–L1. The function of the muscle is to side bend the spine ipsilaterally. The muscle is innervated by the posterior (dorsal) rami of the thoracic spinal nerves.
Extremity muscles		The muscles of the thoracic region that act primarily on the extremities include the pectoralis major, latissimus dorsi, and serratus anterior

in the thoracic region is approximately 35 to 50 degrees in each direction.[12]

Respiration

During the rhythmic movements of respiration, the ribs function as levers, with the fulcrum symbolized by the rib angle, the effort arm symbolized by the neck, and the load arm symbolized by the shaft. Due to the comparatively small size of the rib neck, a little movement at the rib neck produces a large degree of movement in the shaft. Although exhalation is typically a passive process, inspiration requires diaphragmatic contraction. Also, in certain disease states, breathing may require the use of the accessory muscles of respiration (i.e., scalene, sternocleidomastoids, pectoralis minor). The chief movement in the upper six ribs during respiration and other motions is one of rotation of the neck of the rib, with only small amounts of superior and inferior motion. In the 7th to 10th ribs, the principal movement is upward, backward, and medial during inspiration with the reverse occurring during expiration.[4]

Because the anterior ends of the ribs are lower than the posterior, when the ribs elevate they move superiorly while the rib neck drops inferiorly. In the ribs 1 through 10, this predominantly results in an anterior elevation (pump handle) of the ribs and, in the middle and lower ribs (excluding the free ribs), it chiefly results in a lateral elevation (bucket handle; **FIGURE 18.3**). The former movement increases the anterior-posterior diameter of the thoracic cavity and the latter increases the transverse diameter. In the 11th and 12th ribs, a caliper (opening and closing) motion, which increases the lateral expansion, occurs. However, the ribs still elevate with bucket handle motion with the caliper motion.

Both kinds of rib motion are fashioned by the action of the diaphragm. The 7th to 10th ribs act to increase the abdominal cavity free space to afford space for the descending diaphragm.

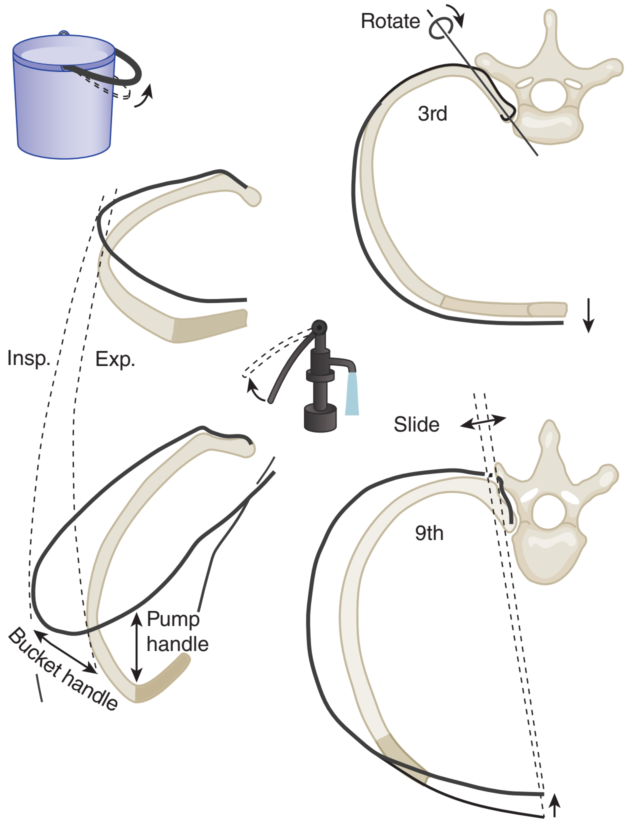


FIGURE 18.3 Bucket and pump handle rib motions.

Examination

The examination of the thoracic spine and ribs performed by the physical therapist (PT) typically follows the outline in **TABLE 18.2**.

Range of Motion

The inclinometer techniques recommended by the American Medical Association are used to measure thoracic motions objectively.[13]

- *Flexion*. The patient is seated. Two inclinometers are used to measure thoracic flexion and both are aligned in the sagittal plane. The center of the

TABLE 18.2 Examination of the Thoracic Spine

Observation and Inspection	
Upper quarter and peripheral joint scan	Temporomandibular joint, shoulder complex, elbow, forearm, and wrist and hand Dermatomes and key muscle tests as appropriate
Examination of movements; active range of motion (AROM) with passive overpressure	Flexion, extension, side bending (right and left), rotation (right and left) Bucket handle and pump handle rib motions Combined movements as appropriate Repetitive movements as appropriate Sustained positions as appropriate
Resisted isometric movements	All AROM directions Rectus abdominis, internal and external obliques, quadratus lumborum, back and hip extensors
Palpation	
Neurological tests as appropriate	Reflexes, key muscle tests, sensory scan, peripheral nerve assessment Neurodynamic mobility tests (straight leg raise, slump test) as appropriate
Joint mobility tests	■ Distraction and compression ■ Flexion and extension of the zygapophyseal joints ■ Rib springing ■ Posteroanterior unilateral vertebral pressure
Special Tests (refer to Special Tests section)	
Diagnostic imaging	As indicated
Stress tests	As appropriate

first inclinometer is placed over the T1 spinous process. The center of the second one is placed over the T12 spinous process. The patient is asked to slump forward as though trying to place the forehead on the knees, and both inclinometer angles are recorded. The thoracic flexion angle is calculated by subtracting the T12 from the T1 inclinometer angle. Normal flexion is approximately 20 to 45 degrees.

- *Extension*. The patient is seated. The clinician places one hand and arm across the upper chest region of the patient and the other hand over the spinous processes of the lower thoracic spine. The patient is guided into a backward slump. Overpressure is applied by the arm across the front of the patient while avoiding any anterior translation occurring at the lumbar spine. Thoracic extension may be measured using the same technique and inclinometer positions as described for flexion. The thoracic extension angle is calculated by subtracting the T12 from the T1 inclinometer angle. The patient should be able to extend approximately 15 to 20 degrees.
- *Rotation*. Rotation is a primary movement of the thoracic spine and a key component of functional activities. The patient is seated and is asked to turn to each side at the waist. Overpressure is applied through both shoulders. Pavelka[14] devised a simple, objective clinical method to measure thoracolumbar rotation using a tape measure that can be used to detect asymmetries during rotation. The tape is placed over the L5 spinous process, wrapped around the trunk, and placed over the jugular notch on the superior aspect of the manubrium. A measurement is taken before and after full trunk rotation. The measurements from each side are then compared.
- *Side bending*. The patient is seated. Using a hand placed against the patient's side, the patient is

asked to side bend the trunk over the clinician's hand. Overpressure is applied through the contralateral shoulder to avoid compression. Side bending can be measured objectively using a tape measure.[15] Two ink marks are placed on the skin of the lateral trunk. The upper mark is made at a point where a horizontal line through the xiphisternum crosses the coronal line. The lower mark is made at the highest point on the iliac crest. The distance between the two marks is measured in centimeters, with the patient standing erect, and again after full ipsilateral side bending. The second measurement is subtracted from the first, and the remainder is used as an index of lateral spinal mobility.

Intervention Strategies

Because of the complexity of this area, interventions for thoracic and rib dysfunctions require a multifaceted and eclectic approach. It is essential that the impairments, functional limitations, and disability found during the examination guide the intervention. The intervention plan for the upper thoracic spine is similar to that of the cervical spine, whereas the approach for the lower thoracic spine is similar to that of the lumbar spine. (See Chapters 17 and 19, respectively.) The approach to the midthoracic region varies and depends on the cause. The thoracic spine is prone to both postural and biomechanical dysfunctions. Fortunately, there are some very useful techniques for the thoracic spine.

Acute/Subacute Phase

In the acute phase of rehabilitation for the thoracic spine, the intervention goals are as follows:

- *Decrease pain, inflammation, and muscle spasm.* Pain relief may be accomplished initially by the use of modalities such as cryotherapy and electrical stimulation, gentle exercises, and occasionally the temporary use of a spinal brace. Thermal modalities—especially continuous ultrasound, with its ability to penetrate deeply—may be used after 48 to 72 hours.
- *Promote healing of tissues.* Ultrasound is the most common clinically used deep-heating modality to promote tissue healing.[16] Manual techniques during this phase may include grade I and II joint mobilizations performed by the PT, massage, and gentle stretching.
- *Increase pain-free range of vertebral and costal motion.* Range of motion (ROM) exercises are initiated at the earliest opportunity. These are performed during the early stages in supine and in the pain-free ranges. Diaphragmatic breathing may also need to be included as part of the treatment plan. Diaphragmatic breathing is best learned in supine, followed by practice during sitting, standing, and activity. The patient is asked to place the hands on the stomach and to relax the belly as much as possible. During the first third of inhalation, the belly should be felt to expand slightly (on its own) in an outward direction as the diaphragm pushes down on the contents of the abdomen. Next, the air should move into the middle portion of the lungs, causing the area of the lower and middle ribs to expand (complete inhalation means filling the lungs forward, sideways, and backward). Because the thoracic spine lies between the shoulder girdle and lumbopelvic complex, correction of movement impairment of these regions may be necessary to improve the movement patterns of the thoracic spine.[17]

The exercises in the following sections are recommended to increase vertebral and costal pain-free motion.

Shoulder Sweep

This exercise is used to mobilize the chest wall and to integrate upper extremity function with thoracic spine and rib cage motion.[5] The patient is positioned supine on the floor or a mat table, with the hips and knees flexed to about 90 degrees (**FIGURE 18.4**). A small pillow may be placed under the patient's head for comfort. The patient is asked to place the hand by the side. While maintaining contact with the floor for as long

FIGURE 18.4 Supine shoulder sweep.

as possible, the patient moves the hand above the head and to the other side of the body, making a large circle around his or her body (refer to Figure 18.4). Manual assistance can be applied to the scapula or rib cage, and deep breathing can be used to move into the restricted ranges.

Thoracic Spine Flexion

The patient is positioned in the quadruped position. The patient arches the thoracic spine as far as is comfortable (**FIGURE 18.5**). This position is held for 30 seconds, after which the patient relaxes. The exercise is repeated 8 to 10 times. The patient also can use deep breathing to increase the stretch, breathing out at the end of the available range. Also, the exercise can be performed over a Swiss ball.

Thoracic Spine Extension

It is advised that the clinician monitor this exercise in case the patient loses his or her balance. The patient sits on a Swiss ball, with his or her feet on the ground. Once the patient has good sitting balance, he or she attempts to lie supine on the ball (**FIGURE 18.6**). The patient is then instructed to move the top of the head toward the floor, in an attempt to fully extend the thoracic spine. This position is held for 30 seconds, after which the patient relaxes. The exercise is repeated 8 to 10 times. This exercise can be made more challenging by having the patient hold a small weight and move his or her hands out to the sides and back again while maintaining balance (**FIGURE 18.7**). If the patient is unable to maintain his or her balance on the Swiss ball, a foam roll may be used (**FIGURE 18.8**). The foam roll also allows the clinician to focus the extension exercise on a specific segment.

FIGURE 18.5 Thoracic spine flexion.

FIGURE 18.6 Thoracic spine extension.

FIGURE 18.7 Thoracic spine extension with rotation.

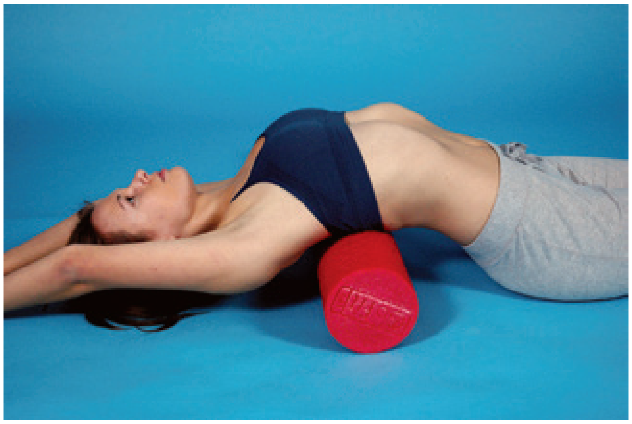


FIGURE 18.8 Thoracic spine extension over foam roll.

Thoracic Spine Rotation

Thoracic spine rotation exercises can be performed in a number of positions including sitting (**FIGURE 18.9**) and kneeling (**FIGURE 18.10**). Thoracic rotation exercises also can be performed in the supine position. The patient lies supine with both knees bent and feet placed

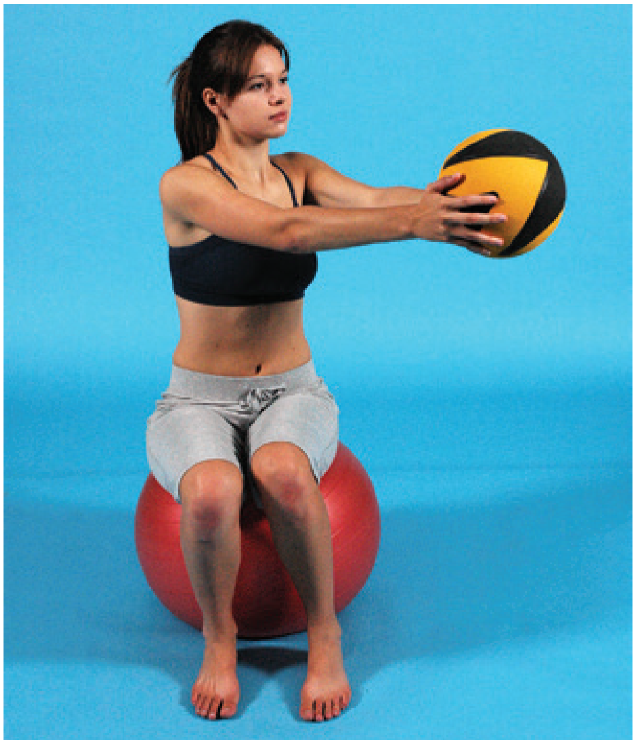


FIGURE 18.9 Thoracic spine rotation in sitting.

FIGURE 18.10 Thoracic spine rotation in kneeling.

on the floor. Keeping the trunk against the floor, the patient lowers the thighs to one side and then the other (**FIGURE 18.11**), as far as is comfortable. This position is held for 30 seconds, after which the patient relaxes. The exercise is repeated 8 to 10 times. To make the exercise more difficult, the arms are abducted to approximately 90 degrees, and one leg is rotated over the other as far as is comfortable (**FIGURE 18.12**).

FIGURE 18.11 Supine thoracic spine rotation.

FIGURE 18.12 Supine thoracic rotation using one leg.

Thoracic Spine Side Bending

The patient kneels to the side of a Swiss ball. The patient is asked to lean sideways over the ball and, with the arm closest to the ball, to attempt to touch the floor on the other side of the ball (**FIGURE 18.13**) without losing balance. This position is held for 30 seconds, after which the patient relaxes. The exercise is repeated 8 to 10 times.

Functional/Chronic Phase

Once the pain and inflammation are controlled, the intervention can progress toward the restoration of full strength, ROM, and normal posture. The goals of this phase are as follows:

- To achieve significant reduction or the complete resolution of the patient's pain
- Restoration of full and pain-free vertebral and costal ROM

FIGURE 18.13 Thoracic spine side bending.

- Full integration of the entire upper and lower kinetic chains
- Complete restoration of respiratory function
- Restoration of thoracic and upper quadrant strength and neuromuscular control

During this phase, the patient learns to initiate and execute functional activities without pain and while dynamically stabilizing the spine in an automatic manner. The exercises prescribed must challenge and enhance muscle performance, while minimizing loading of the thoracic spine and ribs to reduce the risk of injury exacerbation. The aim is to help the patient to (1) gain dynamic control of spine forces, (2) eliminate repetitive injury to the motion segments, (3) encourage healing of the injured segment, and (4) possibly alter the degenerative process.

Once the exercises in the acute/subacute phase can be performed without pain, submaximal isometric exercises are then performed throughout the pain-free ranges. These exercises are progressed as the ROM and strength increase.

Functional Combinations

In appropriate treatment progressions, component impairments are first addressed, followed by integrated movements with relatively simple activities or techniques, progressed to more challenging activities or techniques, and then progressed to complex, integrated functional movement patterns.[17] For example, normal gait includes simultaneous hip flexion and trunk counterrotation to prepare for the complex movement of the swing phase of gait. These combinations can be taught first in supine to address the hip flexion component (**FIGURE 18.14**), and then in side lying combining the hip flexion and trunk rotation (**FIGURE 18.15**).

FIGURE 18.14 Simultaneous hip flexion and trunk counterrotation in supine.

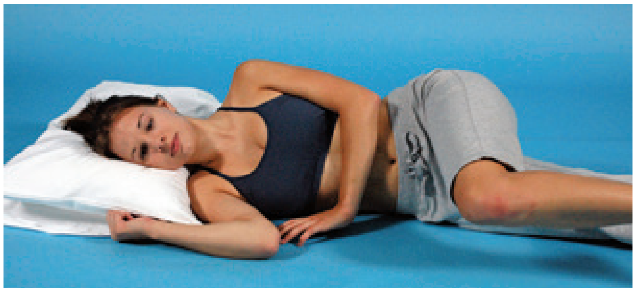


FIGURE 18.15 Simultaneous hip flexion and trunk counterrotation in side lying.

Hypermobility

The general plan for excessive motion (hypermobility) is to stabilize with muscle function while addressing biomechanical factors, such as adjacent hypomobile areas. The patient is instructed to hold the spine in ideal alignment during movements of the upper and lower extremities. Exercises can begin in sitting with the back against the wall or in supine and then progress to the quadruped position over a Swiss ball (**FIGURE 18.16**) followed by standing. Applying an axial load to the thorax and gauging the response can allow the estimation of ideal optimal alignment in sitting or standing.[17] Home exercises can be performed using a

FIGURE 18.16 Quadruped stabilization exercise.

straight back chair for stability and an elastic band or tubing for resistance. The exercises are progressed by adding resistance to the extremities.

Hypomobility

The general plan for reduced motion (hypomobility) is to strengthen the weakened and overstretched muscle group in the shortened range, and to stretch the adaptively shortened muscle groups.[18] Patient-related instruction aimed at correcting posture and movement patterns that perpetuate the length-associated changes is important to prevent recurrence. Treatment of joint restrictions usually requires joint mobilization techniques by the PT, passive stretching, and AROM. It is important to teach the patient functional movement patterns that reinforce the mobility gained by the treatment. Cross-body reaching exercises in sitting and then standing (**FIGURE 18.17**) can be used to promote independent motion of the shoulder joint from the shoulder blade, torso, and hip.

FIGURE 18.17 Cross-body reaching exercise.

Postural Dysfunction

Some authors[19–21] have theorized that postural dysfunctions in this region create an imbalance between agonists and antagonists, producing adaptive shortening and weakness. It is likely that these changes are degenerative in nature, resulting from a change in intervertebral disk height. Postural dysfunctions of the thoracic spine are relatively common. Postural pain is not typically reproducible with the typical physical examination, and the diagnosis is based exclusively on the history of pain following sustained positions or postures. Occasionally, patients with this type of pain may report that their pain is aggravated by stress, fatigue, or changes in the weather.[22]

Abnormal Pelvic Tilting

Good mobility of the pelvis in all directions is important for the thoracic spine. Two postural deviations are associated with pelvic tilting:

1. *Posterior pelvic tilting in the sitting position*. This deviation produces an increase in the flexion of the lumbar and thoracic spine and a forward head posture. This posture is thought to result in a posterior (dorsal) shifting of the thoracic disk, which places a stress on the posterior longitudinal ligament and the dura mater, producing both local and nonsegmental referrals of pain.
2. *Anterior pelvic tilting in the standing position*. This deviation (usually caused by adaptive shortening of the rectus femoris and iliopsoas muscles, and weak abdominals) causes the trunk to lean backward and results in overstretching of the rectus abdominis and a pulling forward of the shoulders, shortening of the posterior neck muscles, and increased extension of the atlantooccipital joint.[23]

Structural Dysfunctions

A number of structural dysfunctions are common to this area, some of which are developmental while others are pathologic or posturally induced.

Kyphosis

The causes of thoracic kyphosis may be either anatomic, resulting from changes in the structure and shape of the spine itself, or postural. Disk height changes commonly are seen in the upper midthoracic segments[24] and may result in an alteration of the kyphotic curve, with subsequent compensatory changes in load bearing and movement. Children may exhibit kyphosis resulting from congenital spinal malformation. In the elderly patient, a kyphotic posture can be acquired from fractures of the anterior aspect of the thoracic vertebral bodies. This is one of the manifestations of osteoporosis. The resultant altered load-bearing patterns may result in a compression of the anterior aspect of the thoracic intervertebral disks and a stretching of the thoracic extensors and the middle and lower trapezius. The posterior ligaments (ligamentum flavum, posterior longitudinal ligament, supraspinous ligament, interspinous ligament, and the capsule ligaments) also are lengthened. Also, the kyphotic posture is associated with adaptive shortening of the anterior longitudinal ligament, the upper abdominals, and the anterior chest muscles. The more common kyphotic deformities include:[25]

- *Dowager's hump.* This deformity (**FIGURE 18.18**) is characterized by a severely kyphotic upper dorsal region, which results from multiple anterior wedge compression fractures in several vertebrae of the middle to upper thoracic spine, usually caused by postmenopausal osteoporosis or long-term corticosteroid therapy.[26]
- *Hump back.* This deformity (**FIGURE 18.19**) is a localized, sharp, posterior angulation, called *gibbus*, produced by an anterior wedging of one of two thoracic vertebrae as a result of infection (tuberculosis), fracture, or congenital bony anomaly of the spine.[27]
- *Round back.* This deformity (**FIGURE 18.20**) is characterized by decreased (20 degrees) pelvic inclination (the angle of inclination is measured as the line between the anterior superior iliac spine [ASIS] and the posterior superior iliac spine [PSIS] and its intersection with the horizontal plane, normally 30 degrees) and excessive kyphosis of the thoracic spine.

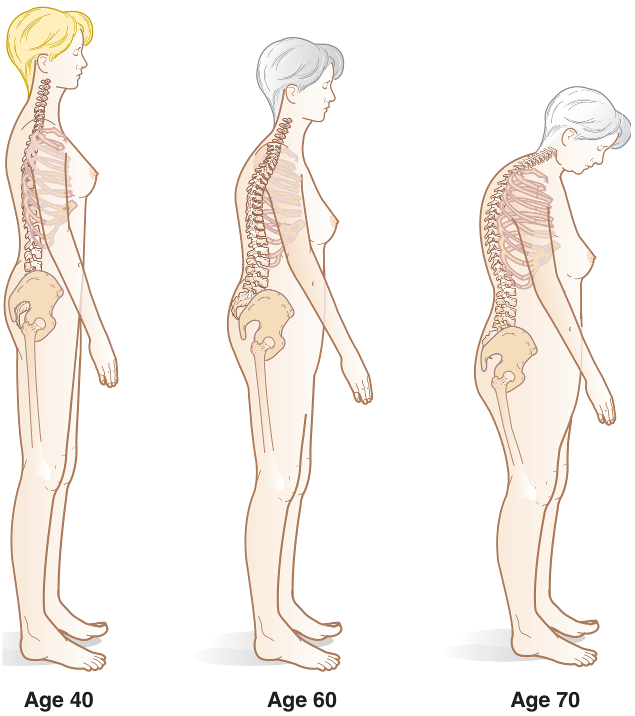


FIGURE 18.18 Dowager's hump.

FIGURE 18.19 Hump back.

© SPL/Photo Researchers, Inc.

Sternal Deformities

Anterior chest deformities include the following:

- *Barrel chest.* In this deformity, a forward- and upward-projecting sternum increases the anteroposterior diameter (**FIGURE 18.21**). The barrel chest results in respiratory difficulty, stretching of the intercostal and anterior chest muscles, and adaptive shortening of the scapular adductor muscles.
- *Pigeon chest.* In this deformity, a forward- and downward-projecting sternum increases the anteroposterior diameter (**FIGURE 18.22**). The pigeon chest results in a lengthening of the upper abdominal muscles and an adaptive shortening of the upper intercostal muscles.
- *Funnel chest.* Pectus excavatum (PE) is a relatively common deformity represented clinically as a posterior projection of the sternum and costal cartilages with the apex at the xiphoid process.[28]

FIGURE 18.20 Round back.

© Dr. M.A. Ansary/Photo Researchers, Inc.

FIGURE 18.22 Pigeon chest.

© Dr. P. Marazzi/Photo Researchers, Inc.

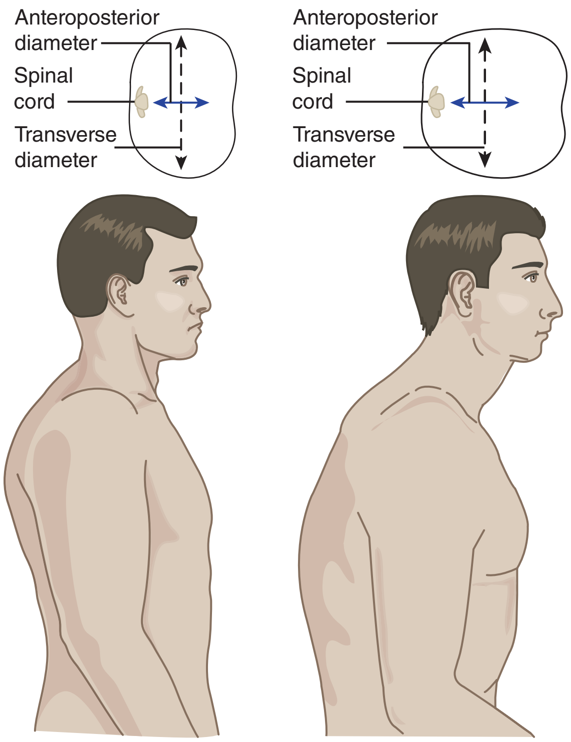


FIGURE 18.21 Normal chest versus barrel chest.

Although the etiology remains unclear, the pathogenesis of PE is currently thought to involve the overgrowth of the costochondral region of the ribs secondary to an outgrowth of the ribs (**FIGURE 18.23**).[28] Associated features and symptoms vary but generally involve respiratory and cardiac abnormalities. Also, PE results in adaptive shortening of the upper abdominals, shoulder adductors, pectoralis minor, and intercostal muscles, and in the lengthening of the thoracic extensors and middle and upper trapezius.

Intervention

Patients with impairments, functional limitations, or disabilities related to muscle imbalance can be treated based on any length-associated strength changes found in the assessment and any positional weakness of one synergist compared with its counterpart or its antagonist muscle group.[17]

FIGURE 18.23 Funnel chest (pectus excavatum).

© Dr P. Marazzi/Science Source.

☑ KEY POINT

Patients with any form of postural dysfunction often benefit from the movement therapies of the Alexander technique, Feldenkrais method, Trager psychophysical integration, Pilates, and tai chi chuan.[29–35]

Muscle Strains

Muscle strains are common in the thoracic region and are characterized by localized pain and tenderness, which is exacerbated with isometric testing or passive stretching of the muscle. Although it is difficult to isolate muscles in this region, the clinician can determine the directions that alleviate the symptoms and those that do not. A gradual strengthening and gentle passive stretching program into the painless directions is initially performed, before progressing as tolerated into the painful directions.

Intercostal Muscles

Injuries to intercostal muscles are mainly caused by trauma after unaccustomed or excessive muscular activity.[36] There may be a specific incident before the onset of pain, such as lifting a heavy object, or symptoms may be of gradual onset with no obvious inciting event.[37] In athletes, a premature return to heavy training after a period of rest or deconditioning may predispose to muscular injuries. Intercostal muscle injuries are more likely in sports in which upper body activity is extreme, such as rowing[37]; however, intercostal pain can occur in the presence of persistent coughing as a result of such conditions as an upper respiratory tract infection.

Diagnosis is based on pain between the ribs that is worse on movement, deep inspiration, or coughing. This pain is associated with tenderness in the same area on palpation. Plain radiographs are normal unless there is underlying lung disease or infection, and diagnosis may be dependent on exclusion of more serious pathology, such as cardiac chest pain, in the absence of a clear history of injury.[37]

Intervention

The intervention for muscle strains is designed to improve muscle performance of underused synergists and address the posture and movement patterns contributing to excessive use.[17] The patient should be instructed to avoid chronic postures of the neck, ipsilateral side bending, and contralateral rotation to avoid overuse of the muscles in the short range.

Rotoscoliosis

Two terms, *scoliosis* and *rotoscoliosis*, are used to describe the lateral curvature of the spine. Scoliosis is the older term and refers to an abnormal side bending of the spine, but gives no reference to the coupled rotation that also occurs. Rotoscoliosis is a more detailed definition, used to describe the curve of the spine by detailing how each vertebra is rotated and side flexed about the vertebra below. For example, with a left lumbar convexity, the L5 vertebra would be found to be side flexed to the right and rotated to the left about the sacrum. The same would be true about the relation between L4 and L5. This rotation, toward the convexity, continues in small increments until the apex at L3. L2, which is above the apex, is right rotated and right side flexed about L3. The small increments of right rotation continue up until the thoracic spine, where the side bending and rotation return to the neutral position. In the thoracic spine, a left convex thoracic scoliosis will produce compensatory right lumbar and right upper thoracic curvatures.

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> A slight lateral curve in the coronal plane is thought to result from right-hand dominance, or the presence of the aorta.[38]

Rotoscoliosis is never normal, although most cases are idiopathic (see Chapter 26), manifesting in the preadolescent years.[39,40] An abnormal lateral thoracic curve is described as being structural or functional, and can produce a fixed deformity or a changeable adaptation, respectively, with the rib hump occurring on the convex side of the curve.

Intervention

Treatment strategies for idiopathic scoliosis are described in Chapter 26.

Compression Fractures of the Spine

Compression fractures of the vertebral body (vertebral fractures) are relatively common in the elderly (due mainly to osteoporosis, trauma, or prolonged corticosteroid use) and range from mild to severe. The signs and symptoms of vertebral fracture include progressive kyphosis of the spine with loss of height, a history of trauma, reports of acute back pain (in the midthoracic to lower thoracic or upper lumbar spine, where most vertebral fractures occur, usually at a grade of 7 out of 10 or greater), pain after bending, lifting, or coughing. More severe fractures can cause significant pain, leading to inability to perform activities of daily living, and a life-threatening decline in the elderly patient who already has decreased reserves. Traditional medical treatment includes bed rest and pain control. Procedures such as vertebroplasty or kyphoplasty can be considered in those patients who do not respond to initial treatment or in those with neurological symptoms or spinal instability. Kyphoplasty and vertebroplasty are two procedures that percutaneously attempt to augment the strength of fractured or weakened vertebrae. Balloon kyphoplasty utilizes a series of orthopaedic balloons that create a void in the fractured vertebra, thereby restoring the vertebral body height, and correcting any angular deformity. The void allows the controlled insertion of cement that stabilizes the fracture. With the vertebroplasty procedure, balloons are not used to restore vertebral body height and no void is created. Instead, the cement is injected into the fractured vertebra to stabilize it. However, two trials[41,42] published in 2009 found that vertebroplasty is not effective at relieving pain or deformity and has been associated with more cement leakage than with kyphoplasty.

Intervention

PTs and physical therapist assistants (PTAs) can help patients prevent compression fractures by treating predisposing factors, identifying high-risk patients, and educating patients and the public about measures to prevent falls. The intervention should include the following:

- A therapeutic exercise program designed to limit pain and promote mobility. Spinal flexion exercises should be avoided due to the increased risk of spinal wedging or compression fractures.[43] Instead, gentle spinal extension or isometric exercises may be more appropriate to prevent the progression of deformities from osteoporosis.[43]
- Electrotherapeutic and thermal modalities also may be used to help control pain and reduce stiffness.
- Patient education should be provided to address avoidance of forward flexion of the trunk to prevent extending the deformity, and to explain postural awareness.
- The patient should be evaluated for an assistive device to assist with activities of daily living.
- Deep breathing exercises should be performed to maintain or enhance pulmonary function.

Techniques to Increase Soft Tissue Extensibility

A variety of soft tissue techniques for the thoracic region are available to the clinician. The choice of technique depends on the goals of the treatment and the dysfunction being treated.

Manual Stretch into Extension

The patient is positioned supine, and the clinician stands at the head of the bed. The patient elevates both arms over the head and reaches around the back of the

FIGURE 18.24 Manual stretch into extension.

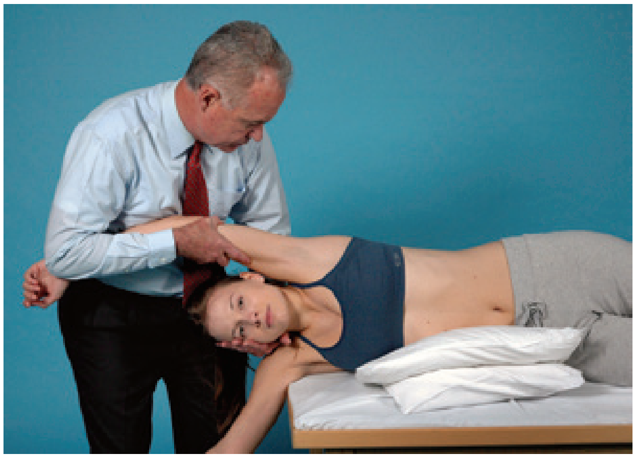


FIGURE 18.25 Bucket handle stretch.

clinician's thighs. By having the patient hold a towel in this position, the clinician can place both of his or her hands under the patient's rib cage and pull the rib cage in an anterior and cranial direction, thereby encouraging thoracic extension (**FIGURE 18.24**). A belt wrapped around the patient at the correct level can make this technique more specific. The patient can use deep breathing to increase the stretch, breathing out at the end of the available range.

Bucket Handle Stretch

The patient is positioned side lying. The clinician fully abducts the patient's uppermost arm, grasping it above the elbow. The arm is taken into hyperabduction, thereby fully expanding the rib cage on the uppermost side (**FIGURE 18.25**). The patient can use deep breathing to increase the stretch, breathing out at the end of the available range. The patient can also lie over the top of a pillow to enhance the stretch.

Summary

The thoracic spine serves as an intermediate zone between the lumbosacral region and the cervical spine. Although historically the thoracic spine has not enjoyed the same attention as other regions of the spine, it can be a substantial source of local and referred pain. The thoracic spine is the most rigid part of the spine, and protection of the thoracic viscera takes priority over segmental spinal mobility in this area. Because each thoracic vertebra is involved in at least six articulations, establishing the specific cause of thoracic dysfunction may not always be immediately possible. This task is made more difficult because of the inaccessibility of most of these joints.[44] The optimal function of the thoracic region requires full and symmetrical cardinal plane motion as well as combined motions.[17] Also, the goal should be full thoracic spine and rib motion during breathing.[17]

Learning Portfolio

Case Study

Your supervising physical therapist asks you to measure the thoracic extension on the patient using bubble goniometers/inclinometers.

1. Describe how and where you would place the bubble goniometers and how you would calculate the patient's range of motion for thoracic extension.

You are then asked to suggest an exercise progression to increase the patient's thoracic extension.

2. Describe the progression you would suggest.

Your next patient has been determined to have an increased anterior pelvic tilt.

3. What muscles are typically weak and what muscles are typically adaptively shortened in a patient with an increased anterior pelvic tilt?

Another patient on your schedule has rotoscoliosis documented as a left convex thoracic scoliosis.

4. In which direction would you expect the lumbar spine and the upper thoracic spine to compensate in terms of the direction of curves?

Before seeing your last patient of the day, who has been diagnosed with compression fracture of the vertebra in the thoracic spine, your supervising physical therapist cautions you about which direction of spinal motion to avoid while treating this patient.

5. Which direction of spinal motion should be avoided in the presence of a vertebral compression fracture?

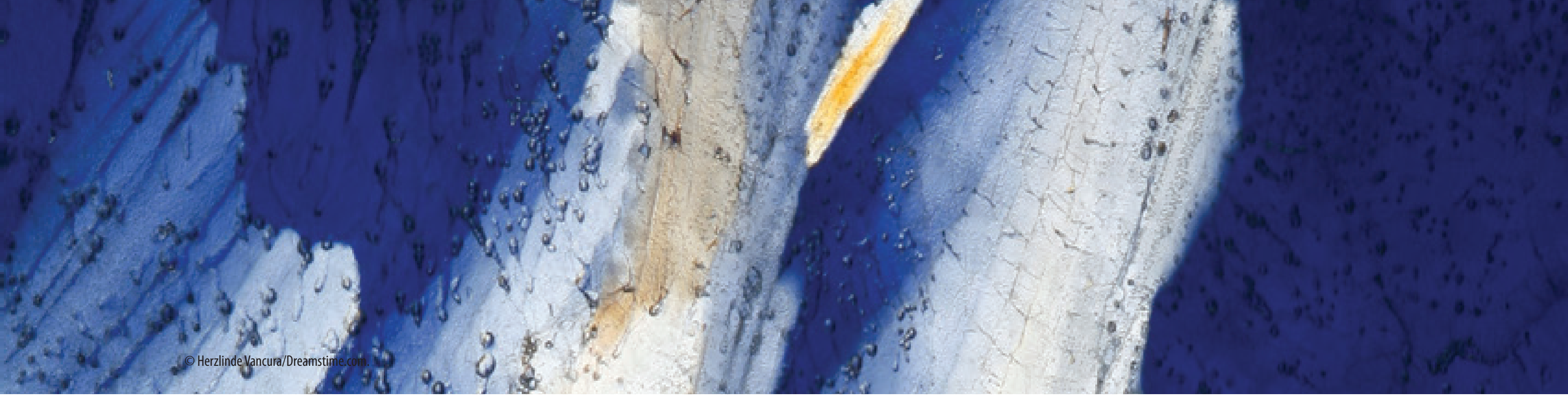
Review Questions

1. Which motion in the thoracic spine is the least limited: flexion, side bending, or rotation?
2. Which muscle is primarily involved with inspiration?
3. Anterior elevation (pump handle motion) is seen most predominantly in which region of the thoracic spine?
4. Which muscle groups are involved with producing an anterior pelvic tilt?
5. **True or false:** Normal gait includes simultaneous hip flexion and trunk counterrotation to prepare for the complex movement of the swing phase of gait.
6. **True or false:** Expiration is normally a passive process.
7. **True or false:** Rotoscoliosis refers primarily to a frontal plane deviation in the thoracolumbar regions and is named by the convex side of the spinal curve.
8. **True or false:** The thoracic spine is prone to postural dysfunctions.
9. Which deformity is characterized by a decreased (20 percent) pelvic inclination and excessive kyphosis?
10. Describe the characteristics of a pigeon chest deformity.

References

1. White AA. An analysis of the mechanics of the thoracic spine in man. *Acta Orthopaedica Scandinavica*. 1969; 127 (Suppl):8–92.
2. Panjabi MM, Hausfeld JN, White AA. A biomechanical study of the ligamentous stability of the thoracic spine in man. *Acta Orthopaedica Scandinavica*. 1981; 52:315–26.
3. Panjabi MM, Brand RA, White AA. Mechanical properties of the human thoracic spine. *The Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery*. 1976; 58A:642–52.
4. Lee DG. Biomechanics of the thorax. In: Grant R, editor. *Physical Therapy of the Cervical and Thoracic Spine*. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1988. p. 47–76.
5. Flynn TW. Thoracic spine and chest wall. In: Wadsworth C, editor. *Current Concepts of Orthopedic Physical Therapy.* Home Study Course. La Crosse, WI: Orthopaedic Section, APTA, Inc.; 2001.
6. Refshauge KM, Bolst L, Goodsell M. The relationship between cervicothoracic posture and the presence of pain. *The Journal of Manual and Manipulative Therapy*. 1995; 3:21–4.
7. Edmondston SJ, Singer KP. Thoracic spine: anatomical and biomechanical considerations for manual therapy. *Manual Therapy*. 1997; 2:132–43.
8. Raine S, Twomey LT. Attributes and qualities of human posture and their relationship to dysfunction or musculoskeletal pain. *Critical Reviews in Physical and Rehabilitation Medicine*. 1994; 6:409–37.
9. Singer KP, Malmivaara A. Pathoanatomical characteristics of the thoracolumbar junctional region. In: Giles LGF, Singer KP, editors. *Clinical Anatomy and Management of the Thoracic Spine*. Oxford: Butterworth-Heinemann; 2000. p. 100–13.
10. Andriacchi T, Schultz A, Belytschko T, Galante J. A model for studies of mechanical interactions between the human spine and rib cage. *Journal of Biomechanics*. 1974; 7:497–505.
11. Shea KG, Schlegel JD, Bachus KN, et al., editors. *The Contribution of the Rib Cage to Thoracic Spine Stability*. International Society for the Study of the Lumbar Spine. 1996; Vermont.
12. White AA, Punjabi MM. *Clinical Biomechanics of the Spine*, 2nd ed. Philadelphia, PA: J.B. Lippincott Company; 1990.
13. American Medical Association. *Guides to the Evaluation of Permanent Impairment*, 5th ed. Cocchiarella L, Andersson GBJ, editors. Chicago: American Medical Association; 2001.
14. von Pavelka K. Rotationsmessung der wirbelsaule. *A Rheumaforschg*. 1970; 29:366.
15. Moll JMH, Wright V. Measurement of spinal movement. In: Jayson MIV, editor. *The Lumbar Spine and Back Pain*. New York: Grune and Stratton; 1981. p. 93–112.
16. Prentice WE. Using therapeutic modalities in rehabilitation. In: Prentice WE, Voight ML, editors. *Techniques in Musculoskeletal Rehabilitation*. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2001. p. 289–303.
17. Landel R, Hall C, Moffat M, Rusnack-Smith S. The thoracic spine. In: Hall C, Thein-Brody L, editors. *Therapeutic Exercise: Moving Toward Function*. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2005. p. 610–42.
18. Cole AJ, Farrell JP, Stratton SA. Functional rehabilitation of cervical spine athletic injuries. In: Kibler BW, Herring JA, Press JM, editors. *Functional Rehabilitation of Sports and Musculoskeletal Injuries*. Gaithersburg, MD: Aspen; 1998. p. 127–48.
19. Orloff HA, Rapp CM. The effects of load carriage on spinal curvature and posture. *Spine*. 2004; 29:1325–9.
20. O'Sullivan PB, Grahamslaw KM, Kendell M, et al. The effect of different standing and sitting postures on trunk muscle activity in a pain-free population. *Spine*. 2002; 27:1238–44.

21. Kisner C, Colby LA. The spine and posture: structure, function, postural impairments, and management guidelines. In: Kisner C, Colby LA, editors. *Therapeutic Exercise Foundations and Techniques*, 5th ed. Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2002. p. 383–406.
22. Corrigan B, Maitland GD. *Practical Orthopaedic Medicine*. Boston: Butterworth; 1985.
23. Ellis JH, Martel W, Lillie JH, Aisen AM. Magnetic resonance imaging of the normal craniovertebral junction. *Spine*. 1991; 16:105.
24. Crawford R, Singer KP, editors. *Normal and Degenerative Anatomy of the Thoracic Intervertebral Discs*. Proceedings of Manipulative Physiotherapists Association of Australia: 9th Biennial Conference; 1995; Gold Coast.
25. Wiles P, Sweetnam R. *Essentials of Orthopedics*. London: J.A. Churchill; 1965.
26. Deyo RA, Rainville J, Kent DL. What can the history and physical examination tell us about low back pain? *JAMA*. 1992; 268:760–5.
27. Bland JH. Diagnosis of thoracic pain syndromes. In: Giles LGF, Singer KP, editors. *Clinical Anatomy and Management of the Thoracic Spine*. Oxford: Butterworth-Heinemann; 2000. p. 145–56.
28. Dean C, Etienne D, Hindson D, Matusz P, Tubbs RS, Loukas M. Pectus excavatum (funnel chest): a historical and current prospective. *Surgical and Radiologic Anatomy*. 2012; 34:573–9.
29. Brennan R. *The Alexander Technique: Natural Poise for Health*. New York: Barnes & Noble Books, Inc.; 1991.
30. Buchanan PA, Ulrich BD. The Feldenkrais method: a dynamic approach to changing motor behavior. *Research Quarterly for Exercise and Sport*. 2001; 72:315–23.
31. Lake B. Acute back pain: treatment by the application of Feldenkrais principles. *Australian Family Physician*. 1985; 14:1175–8.
32. Watrous I. The Trager approach: an effective tool for physical therapy. *Physical Therapy Forum*. 1992:22–5.
33. Witt P. Trager psychophysical integration: an additional tool in the treatment of chronic spinal pain and dysfunction. *Trager Journal*. 1987; 2:4–5.
34. Witt P, Parr C. Effectiveness of Trager psychophysical integration in promoting trunk mobility in a child with cerebral palsy, a case report. *Physical and Occupational Therapy in Pediatrics*. 1988; 8:75–94.
35. Blum CL. Chiropractic and pilates therapy for the treatment of adult scoliosis. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*. 2002; 25:E3.
36. Morgan-Hughes J. Painful disorders of muscle. *British Journal of Hospital Medicine*. 1979; 360:362–5.
37. Gregory PL, Biswas AC, Batt ME. Musculoskeletal problems of the chest wall in athletes. *Sports Medicine*. 2002; 32:235–50.
38. Ombregt L, Bisschop P, ter Veer HJ, et al. *A System of Orthopaedic Medicine*. Ombregt L, editor. London: WB Saunders; 1995.
39. Bradford S. Juvenile kyphosis. In: Bradford DS, Lonstein JE, Moe JH, Ogilvie JW, Winter RB, editors. *Moe's Textbook of Scoliosis and Other Spinal Deformities*. Philadelphia, PA: W.B. Saunders; 1987. p. 347–68.
40. McKenzie RA. Manual correction of sciatic scoliosis. *New Zealand Medical Journal*. 1972; 76:194–9.
41. Kallmes DF, Comstock BA, Heagerty PJ, Turner JA, Wilson DJ, Diamond TH, et al. A randomized trial of vertebroplasty for osteoporotic spinal fractures. *The New England Journal of Medicine*. 2009; 361:569–79.
42. Buchbinder R, Osborne RH, Ebeling PR, Wark JD, Mitchell P, Wriedt C, et al. A randomized trial of vertebroplasty for painful osteoporotic vertebral fractures. *The New England Journal of Medicine*. 2009; 361:557–68.
43. Cahoj PA, Cook JL, Robinson BS. Efficacy of percutaneous vertebral augmentation and use of physical therapy intervention following vertebral compression fractures in older adults: a systematic review. *Journal of Geriatric Physical Therapy*. 2007; 30:31–40.
44. Singer KP, Edmondston SJ. Introduction: the enigma of the thoracic spine. In: Giles LGF, Singer KP, editors. *Clinical Anatomy and Management of Thoracic Spine Pain*. Oxford: Butterworth-Heinemann; 2000.


© Herzlinde Vancura/Dreamstime.com

CHAPTER 19

Lumbar Spine and Sacroiliac Joint

CHAPTER OBJECTIVES

At the completion of this chapter, the reader will be able to:

1. Describe some associated occupational, psychosocial, and environmental factors that can be used to help predict the development of a complicated course of lumbopelvic pain.
2. Describe the structures that comprise the lumbar intervertebral segment.
3. Describe the structures and biomechanics of the sacroiliac joint.
4. Outline the various coupled movements of the lumbar spine and the reactions of the different structures to loading.
5. Describe the common pathologies and dysfunctions of this region.
6. Describe intervention strategies based on the established goals.
7. Design an intervention based on patient education, manual therapy, and therapeutic exercise.
8. Instruct a patient on sound body mechanics.
9. Evaluate intervention effectiveness to suggest progressions or modifications.
10. Perform an effective home program, including spinal care, and instruct the patient in this program.

Overview

Usually, low back pain (LBP) is classified as specific and nonspecific. Specific LBP is defined as symptoms caused by a specific pathophysiological mechanism, such as an inflammatory disease (e.g., ankylosing spondylitis), osteoporosis, infection, rheumatoid arthritis, fracture, herniated disk, or tumor. Nonspecific LBP is based on the exclusion of specific pathology and is defined as symptoms without a clear specific course. Nonspecific LBP includes 90 percent of all patients with LBP. Over the past century, LBP has become increasingly problematic, receiving a growing amount of attention and concern due to the burdens placed on health systems and social-care systems.[1,2] Some associated occupational, psychosocial, and environmental factors can be used to help predict the development of a complicated course of LBP.[3–6] These include the following:

- *Age older than 40 or 50 years.* The relationship between chronic lumbopelvic pain and age over 40 or 50 years, with a decrease of occurrence over 60 years, is considered as a fact in many reviews.[7–10] The reason is the presence of a degenerative process and the accumulation of spinal damage associated with increasing age.

- *Physical and psychosocial workload.* Some studies that examined the relationship between physical and psychosocial load at work and the occurrence of lumbopelvic pain concluded that both work-related physical factors of flexion and rotation of the trunk and lifting at work, and low job satisfaction are risk factors for absence resulting from lumbopelvic pain.[6,7] Physical loading on the back has commonly been implicated as a risk factor for lumbopelvic pain and, in particular, for work-related lumbopelvic pain. Certain occupations and certain work tasks seem to have a higher risk of lumbopelvic pain.[7] For example, repeated lifting of heavy loads is considered a risk factor for lumbopelvic pain, especially if combined with side bending and twisting.[4] A study of static work postures found that there was an increased risk of lumbopelvic pain if the work involved a predominance of sitting,[11] although the increased risk is unlikely due to increased intradiskal pressure.[12] A study by Xu and colleagues[13] found mining, quarrying, and construction work, and manufacturing and machine operation work significantly increased the risks of LBP. Although knowledge is incomplete, a growing body of historical evidence indicates that exposure to vibration and jolting in workers who operate tractors, excavators, bulldozers, forklift trucks, armored vehicles, lorries, helicopters, and many other vehicles and machines may cause an increased risk of lumbopelvic pain.[14–18]
- *Smoking.* In some epidemiological studies (mostly those of cross-sectional design), smoking has been associated with lumbopelvic pain.[19–22] Several possible pathophysiological mechanisms have been proposed to explain the association. It has been suggested that smoking accelerates degeneration by impairing the blood supply to the vertebral body and nutrition of the intervertebral disk (IVD).[23] Smoking increases coughing activity, which causes an increase in intradiskal pressure.
- *Obesity.* There are several hypotheses relating to a link between obesity and lumbopelvic pain. Increased mechanical demands resulting from obesity have been suspected of causing lumbopelvic pain through excessive wear and tear,[24–26] although intriguingly, a very small population study found that obesity does not increase the risk of chronic LBP when genetics are considered.[27] Limitations in a number of studies may explain the inconsistent results when looking at the impact of obesity on LBP, such as the use of a cross-sectional design, limitations in the measures used to assess obesity (e.g., body mass index [BMI]), and poor adjustment for confounders (e.g., genetics and physical activity).[27]
- *Comorbidity.* Comorbidity may slow or interfere with normal recovery from back pain and may affect an individual's general sense of health, leading to a decreased self-perception of capability.[28]

Given the numerous causes and types of lumbopelvic pain, it is imperative that any clinician handling the low back have a clear understanding and knowledge of the anatomy and biomechanics of this region. Although this knowledge is not the single determinant of a successful approach to lumbopelvic pain, it does provide a concrete framework on which to build. Various approaches to diagnose and manage lumbopelvic pain have arisen, leading to an exponential increase in healthcare costs.[29,30]

☑ KEY POINT

Trunk strength, aerobic conditioning, flexibility, and postural education have all been found to have a major preventive effects on the occurrence and recurrence of back injuries.[31–33] Thus, physical therapy, with its emphasis on the restoration of functional motion, strength, and flexibility, must be the cornerstone of both the intervention and the preventive processes in lumbopelvic pain.

Anatomy of the Lumbar Spine

The lumbar spine consists of five lumbar vertebral bodies that are distinct from the thoracic bodies by the absence of rib facets (**FIGURE 19.1**). The L1–L3 vertebrae have a similar structure, and the L4–L5 vertebrae have a similar structure.

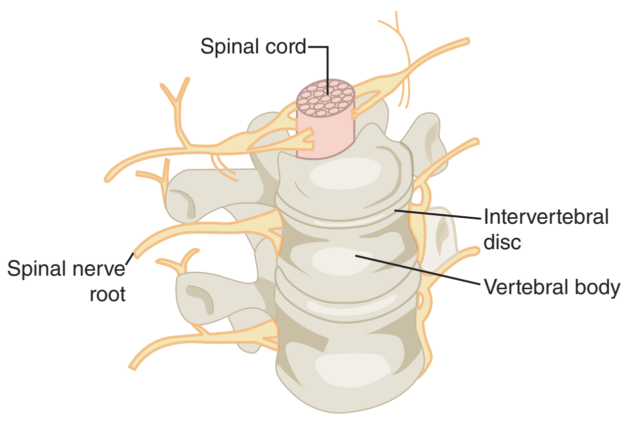


FIGURE 19.1 Lumbar spine.

Ligaments

The primary ligamentous supports for the lumbar spine are the anterior longitudinal ligament, the posterior longitudinal ligament, the attachments of the annulus fibrosis, the facet joints, and the interosseous ligaments between the spinous processes.

Vertebrae

The characteristics of the lumbar spine vertebrae are outlined in **TABLE 19.1**. The zygapophyseal joints (articular facets) of the lumbar spine are heavier than those of the thoracic or cervical spine. The superior facets face medially, whereas the inferior facets face laterally. The angle that each zygapophyseal joint makes concerning the sagittal plane determines the amount of resistance offered to motion in the sagittal and transverse planes. The more the joint is oriented in the frontal plane, the more it resists sagittal plane (posterior-anterior) motion, but the less it can resist transverse plane (rotation) motion.[34] The zygapophyseal joints adopt a more frontal plane as they move from L1 to L5. At the lumbosacral junction (L5–S1), the point at which the weight of the entire trunk and upper body is transferred to the pelvis, the base of the sacrum is inclined forward about 40 degrees from the horizontal plane. This alignment is referred to as the sacro-horizontal angle and serves to prevent the whole lower spine from translating anteriorly relative to the sacrum. Excessive anterior translation of the lumbar spine relative to the base of the sacrum is called anterior spondylolisthesis (see "Common Conditions" later in this chapter).

TABLE 19.1 Characteristics of the Lumbar Vertebrae

Structure	Characteristic
Pedicles	Project from the upper portion of the vertebral body
Spinous process	Primarily horizontal in orientation; the posterior inferior border projects below the upper level of the spinous process below
Laminae	Thick; project below the pedicles
Transverse processes	Long and thin with a slant that is both upward and backward

Intervertebral Disk

The lumbar IVD, commonly referred to as the interbody joint, is approximately cylindrical, its shape being determined by the integrity of its outer wall, the annulus fibrosis (AF). The AF consists of approximately 10 to 12 (often as many as 15 to 25) concentric sheets (lamellae) of predominantly type I collagen tissue, held together by proteoglycan gel. (See Chapter 2.)

☑ KEY POINT

The IVD contains the aggrecans of glycosaminoglycans (GAGs), which imbibe water through the so-called Gibbs-Donnan mechanism on a diurnal basis. More water is absorbed when the spine/IVD is unloaded, such as during sleep.

Each lamella has an alternating orientation of collagen fibers such that the fibers in adjacent lamellae are at 90 degrees to each other. This orientation effectively resists compression, but horizontal translation and rotation are resisted by only a portion of the fibers.[35] Although the number of annular layers decreases with age, there is a gradual thickening of the remaining layers.[36] Contained within the AF is the nucleus pulposus (NP), which is composed of a semifluid mass of mucoid material. (See Chapter 2.) The IVD is essentially avascular except the outer AF.[35]

☑ KEY POINT

Although the IVD bears most of the compressive load of the spine in the neutral position and in the very early ranges of flexion and extension, the zygapophyseal joints bear up to 25 percent of the compressive load in the mid-ranges of extension. The contribution of the zygapophyseal joints becomes more significant during prolonged weight bearing, in the presence of IVD space narrowing, or if lumbar extension is combined with rotation.

Kinesiology of the Lumbar Spine

The movement of the lumbar spine is largely restricted to flexion and extension with a small degree of rotation and side bending occurring. Motions at the lumbar spine joints can occur in three cardinal planes: sagittal (flexion and extension), coronal (side bending), and transverse (rotation). The amount of segmental motion at each vertebral segment varies. Most of the flexion and extension occurs in the lower segmental levels, whereas most of the side bending occurs in the mid-lumbar area. Rotation, which occurs with side bending as a coupled motion, is negligible and occurs most at the lumbosacral junction. The pelvis and hips augment trunk motion by movement of the pelvis over the femoral heads. The amount of range available in the lumbar spine decreases with age.

Flexion

The flexion-extension range of the lumbar spine that occurs between vertebral segments is approximately 12 degrees in the upper lumbar spine, increasing by 1 to 2 degrees per segment to reach a maximum motion of 20 to 25 degrees between L5 and S1. During lumbar flexion (**FIGURE 19.2**), the inferior zygapophyseal joint of the superior vertebra moves upward, producing a stretching of the interspinous ligament between the two spinous processes. A slight amount of anterior sagittal translation also occurs. During lumbar flexion in standing, which is normally initiated by the abdominal muscles, the entire lumbar spine leans forward, and there is a posterior sway of the pelvis as the hips flex. Bending the trunk forward requires adequate flexibility in the muscles and other soft tissues in both the hip and low back regions. (See "Lumbopelvic Rhythm" in Chapter 23.)

☑ KEY POINT

Flexion of the lumbar spine also can occur with a posterior pelvic tilt. The posterior pelvic tilt, a short-arc posterior rotation of the pelvis around the hip joint, with the trunk held upright and stationary, can be performed voluntarily. Alternatively, it may occur as a result of weak paraspinal extensor muscles or adaptively shortened hamstring and gluteal muscles, with a subsequent lengthening of the hip flexors and back extensors. A patient with lateral spinal stenosis may be taught therapeutic exercises that promote a posterior pelvic tilt because such a posture flexes the lumbar spine and thereby widens the intervertebral foramen.

Extension

Extension movements of the lumbar spine produce converse movements of those that occur in flexion (**FIGURE 19.3**). Theoretically, true extension of the lumbar spine is pathologic, and depends on one's definition—pure extension involves a posterior roll and glide of the vertebrae and a posteroinferior motion of the zygapophyseal joints, but not necessarily a change in the degree of lordosis.[37] During lumbar extension, the inferior zygapophyseal joint of the superior vertebra moves downward, impacting with the lamina below and producing a buckling of the interspinous ligament between the two spinous processes.

☑ KEY POINT

An anterior pelvic tilt, a short arc anterior rotation of the pelvis about the hip joints with the trunk held upright and stationary, increases the lumbar lordosis and results in an anterior motion of the vertebrae and their associated structures. An anterior pelvic tilt can be accentuated in patients with adaptively shortened hip flexors/rectus femoris, weak abdominals (particularly the transversus abdominus), weak hip extensors, lengthened hamstrings, and adaptively shortened erector spinae, or in athletic individuals such as gymnasts and dancers. A patient with a posterior disk herniation may be instructed to hold his or her pelvis in a more anteriorly tilted position to help prevent a posterior migration of the NP and to limit or prevent pressure on the nearby neural elements.

Side Bending

Side bending of the spine (**FIGURE 19.4**) is a coupled movement involving rotation. How this is achieved, except at L5–S1 where ipsilateral coupling is known to occur, has been the subject of debate for many years, and it is difficult to ascertain how an impaired segment would behave compared to a healthy one.

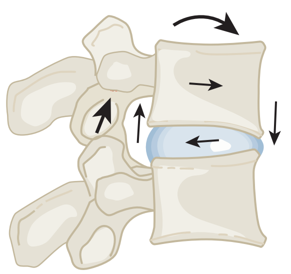


FIGURE 19.2 Lumbar spine flexion.

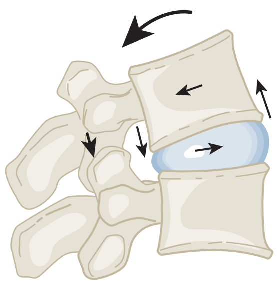


FIGURE 19.3 Lumbar spine extension.

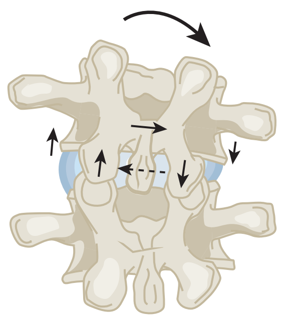


FIGURE 19.4 Lumbar spine side bending.

Axial Rotation

The axis of rotation passes through the aspect of the IVD and vertebral body. Axial rotation of the lumbar spine amounts to approximately 13 degrees to both sides. The greatest amount of segmental rotation, about 5 degrees, occurs at the L5–S1 segment.

The ipsilateral joint does not normally gap during axial rotation. Abnormal gapping has been found to occur in segments with degenerative or traumatic instability.

Axial Loading (Compression)

Even when lifting moderately sized objects, large compression forces can occur in the spine. In intradiskal pressure studies and electromyographic measurements of trunk muscles, in conjunction with mathematical models, investigators have estimated the compressive load on the lumbar spine to reach 1,000 Newtons during standing and walking. The compressive load on the lumbar spine is substantially higher in many lifting activities.

☑ KEY POINT

Intradiskal pressure (pressure within the disk) changes according to position or activity:[38,39]

- *Lying supine*. Disk pressure is equal to 25 percent of body weight.
- *Lying supine with both knees flexed*. Disk pressure is equal to 35 percent of body weight.
- *Side lying*. Disk pressure is equal to 75 percent of body weight.
- *Seated in a flexed position*. Disk pressure is equal to 825 percent of body weight.
- *Standing*. Disk pressure is equal to 100 percent of body weight.
- *Standing and bending forward*. Disk pressure is equal to 150 percent of body weight.
- *Bending forward in a flexed posture and lifting*. Disk pressure is equal to 2,750 percent of body weight.

☑ KEY POINT

Correct lifting techniques allow the forces on the low back to be shared by muscles of the trunk, legs, and arms. When instructing the patient on correct lifting techniques, the following points should be considered:

- Whenever possible, use the assistance of a mechanical device or additional people for the lifting task.
- The load being carried should be held as close to the body as possible.
- During any lifting, the lumbar spine should be held in as close to a neutral lordotic posture as possible.
- During the lift, the hip and knee extensor muscles must be fully utilized.
- Avoid twisting during lifting.
- Minimize the vertical and horizontal distances that the load must be lifted.

Anatomy of the Sacroiliac Joint

The sacroiliac joint (SIJ) is a true diarthrodial joint that joins the sacrum to the pelvis (innominate) by way of the iliac bones. Each right and left innominate bone is created by the blending of three bones: the ilium, ischium, and pubis. The iliac crest is the palpable ridge of bone that marks the superior border of the ilium. The anterior aspect of the iliac crest ends at the anterior superior iliac spine (ASIS). The posterior aspect of the iliac crest ends at the posterior superior iliac spine (PSIS). The ischium is located on the posteroinferior aspect of the innominate. The ischial tuberosity, the bone on which people sit, serves as the proximal attachment for three of the four hamstring muscles. Including the hamstrings, 35 muscles attach to the sacrum, ilium, or both (**TABLE 19.2**). The pubis is composed primarily of two rami (arms), the superior and inferior pubic ramus. The muscles that attach to the pubis are listed in **TABLE 19.3**. At the SIJ, hyaline cartilage on the sacral side moves against fibrocartilage on the iliac side. The joint is generally L-shaped with two lever arms that interlock at the second sacral level. The joint contains numerous ridges and depressions, and the sacrum is wedged anteroposteriorly, which allows it to provide resistance to vertical and horizontal translation, indicating its function is for stability more than motion. Stability is additionally provided by the presence of generously sized ligaments.[40,41] Stability of the pelvic girdle is important, because it must transmit

TABLE 19.2 Muscles That Attach to the Sacrum, Ilium, or Both

Latissimus dorsi	Gluteus medius
Erector spinae	Gluteus maximus
Semimembranosus	Quadratus femoris
Semitendinosus	Superior gemellus
Biceps femoris	Gracilis
Sartorius	Iliacus
Inferior gemellus	Adductor magnus
Multifidus	Rectus femoris
Obturator internus	Quadratus lumborum
Obturator externus	Pectineus
Piriformis	Psoas minor
Tensor fascia lata	Adductor brevis
External oblique	Adductor longus
Internal oblique	Levator ani
Transversus abdominis	Sphincter urethrae
Rectus abdominis	Superficial transverse perineal ischiocavernosus
Pyramidalis	Coccygeus
Gluteus minimus	

forces from the weight of the head, trunk, and upper extremities downward and forces from the lower extremities upward.

Posterior Muscle System

The thoracolumbar fascia (TLF) and its muscular attachments (transversus abdominis, internal oblique, gluteus maximus, latissimus dorsi, erector spinae, and biceps femoris) play an important role in stabilization of the lumbopelvic region.[40,41] These attachments suggest that the hip, pelvic, and leg muscles interact with the arm and spinal muscles through the TLF.

TABLE 19.3 Muscles That Attach to Pubis

Adductor magnus
Adductor longus
Adductor brevis
Pectineus
Gracilis
Obturator externus
Rectus abdominis
Levator ani

Anterior Muscle System

One of the most important muscle groups contributing to the mobility and stability of the lumbopelvic region is the abdominal wall mechanism. The abdominal wall consists of the following, listed from superficial to deep:

- *Rectus abdominis.* A paired muscle running vertically on each side of the anterior wall of the abdomen, separated by a midline band of connective tissue called the linea alba.
- *Internal and external obliques.* Working synergistically, these muscles provide an anterior oblique sling and, together with the posterior oblique sling (the TLF and associated structures), assist in stabilization of the lumbar spine and pelvis.
- *Transversus abdominis.* Has attachments to the TLF, the sheath of the rectus abdominis, the diaphragm, the iliac crest, and the lower six costal surfaces. The transversus abdominis activates before the onset of movement in persons without lumbopelvic pain, but this function is lost in those with lumbopelvic pain.[42] Current theory suggests that this muscle is a key background stabilizing muscle for the lumbar spine and that the emphasis of specific exercises for the abdominal wall should involve specific recruitment of this muscle instead of general strengthening or endurance.[34]

☑ **KEY POINT**

The *lumbar multifidus* is considered to have the greatest potential to provide dynamic control to the motion segment, particularly in its neutral zone. The *transversus abdominis* is primarily active in providing rotational and lateral control to the spine while maintaining adequate levels of intra-abdominal pressure and imparting tension to the TLF. The *deep erector spinae* have a reduced lever arm for spine extension but are in line to provide a dynamic counterforce to the anterior shear force imparted to the lumbar spine from gravitational force.

Because of the close relationship between the passive anatomic restraints of the lumbar spine and the muscles that control it, it would seem logical to assume that any pain-provoking injury or condition (e.g., muscle strain, ligament sprain, disk herniation) could alter the structural integrity of the lumbopelvic complex. Growing evidence is emerging to support this hypothesis.[43] Various studies have demonstrated that coordinated patterns of muscle recruitment are essential between the global and local system muscles of the trunk to compensate for the changing demands of daily life and to ensure that the dynamic stability of the spine is preserved.[44–46] Some studies have highlighted the importance of motor control to coordinate muscle recruitment during functional activities and to ensure that mechanical stability is maintained.[44,45] For example, in standing and walking, the pelvic girdle is stabilized on the femur by the coordinated action of the ipsilateral gluteus medius and minimus and by the contralateral adductor muscles. Indirectly, by maintaining a relationship among the hip, pelvis, and lumbar spine in the frontal plane, the gluteus medius, gluteus minimus, and adductors contribute to lumbar spine stability.

The scientific literature reports varying disruptions in patterns of recruitment and co-contraction within and between different muscle synergies.[44] Studies also have described subtle changes or shifts in the pattern of abdominal muscle activation, and righting responses in subjects with chronic lumbopelvic pain.[47,48] These changes in the activation patterns result in altered patterns of synergistic control or coordination of the trunk muscles.[49,50] These subtle shifts in the patterns of muscle recruitment can result in some muscles being relatively underused, whereas other muscles dominate, which, in turn, can increase the size of the neutral zone, thereby increasing the potential for injury. In addition to pain, generalized changes to the trunk musculature such as a loss of strength, endurance, and muscle atrophy are also believed to produce changes in the neural control system, affecting the timing of patterns of co-contraction.

Kinesiology of the Sacroiliac Joint

The pelvis is the connecting link between the spine and the lower extremities. The motions at the lumbar spine mostly occur around the sagittal plane and comprise flexion and extension, whereas the motions occurring at the hip joint occur in three planes and include the one motion that the lumbar spine does not tolerate well (i.e., rotation). Thus, the pelvic area must function to absorb the majority of the lower extremity rotation, particularly during bipedal gait.

Sacral Motion

There are two primary motions of the sacrum—nutation and counternutation. According to the anatomic-biomechanic model based on the work of Vleeming,[51] Snijders,[52] Lee,[53] and Hides, Richardson, and Jull,[54] when the sacrum nutates, or flexes, relative to the innominate, a small linear glide occurs between the two L-shaped articular surfaces of the sacroiliac joint.[55] The shorter of the two lengths, level with S1, lies in a vertical plane, whereas the longer length, spanning S2 to S4, lies in an anteroposterior plane (**FIGURE 19.5**).

During sacral nutation (**FIGURE 19.6**), the sacrum glides inferiorly down the short length and posteriorly

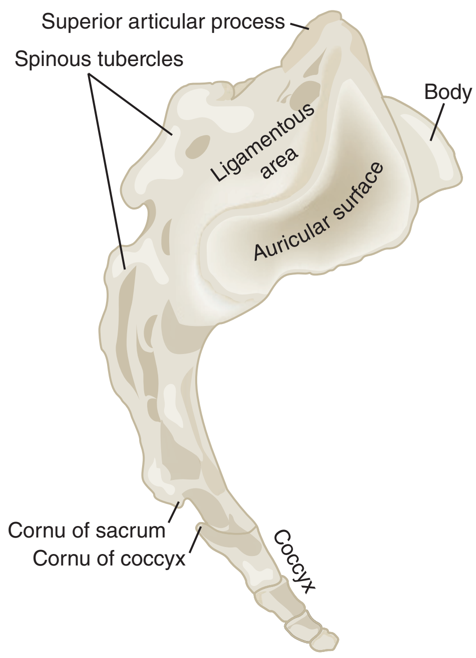


FIGURE 19.5 The L-shaped articular surface of the sacroiliac joint.

Courtesy of Nikita Vizniak, Professional Health Systems.

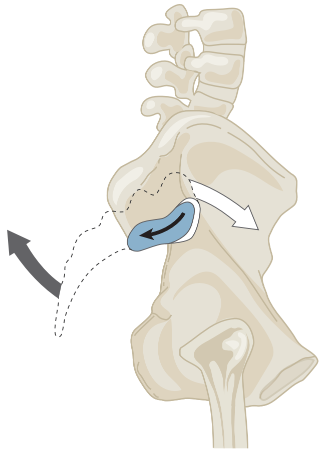


FIGURE 19.6 Sacral nutation.

Dutton M: *Manual Therapy of the Spine an Intergrated Approach*. New York, McGraw-Hill Publication Division, 2002.

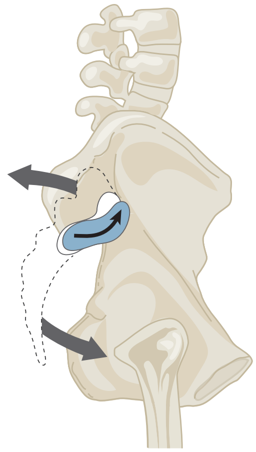


FIGURE 19.7 Sacral counternutation.

Dutton M: *Manual Therapy of the Spine an Intergrated Approach*. New York, McGraw-Hill Publication Division, 2002.

along the long length. A number of factors resist this motion:

1. The wedge shape of the sacrum
2. The ridges and depressions of the two articular surfaces
3. The friction coefficient of the two joint surfaces
4. The integrity of the posterior (dorsal), interosseous, and sacrotuberous ligaments, supported by the muscles that insert into the ligaments

During sacral counternutation, or extension (**FIGURE 19.7**), the sacrum glides anteriorly along the longer length and superiorly up the shorter length. This motion is resisted by the posterior (dorsal) sacroiliac ligament,[55] which is supported by the contraction of the multifidus.

Innominate Motion

Innominate motion is induced by hip and spine motion, as in extension of the lower extremity or during trunk motion when bending forward at the waist. When the innominate rotates anteriorly (**FIGURE 19.8**), it theoretically glides in the direction of the short length of the *L* and posteriorly along the longer length of the *L* of the sacroiliac joint, and in the same way as the motion that occurs during counternutation of the sacrum. When the innominate rotates posteriorly (**FIGURE 19.9**), it theoretically glides along the longer length of the *L* and superiorly up the short length of the *L* of the sacroiliac joint, the same way as the motion that occurs during nutation of the sacrum. That is, when the innominate anteriorly rotates, the sacrum counternutates; when the innominate posteriorly rotates, the sacrum nutates.

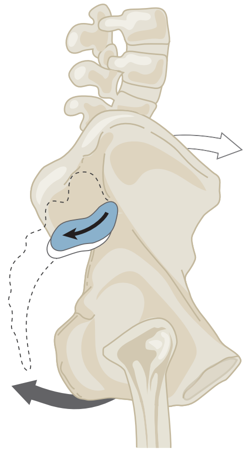


FIGURE 19.8 Anterior rotation of the innominate.

Dutton M: *Manual Therapy of the Spine an Intergrated Approach*. New York, McGraw-Hill Publication Division, 2002.

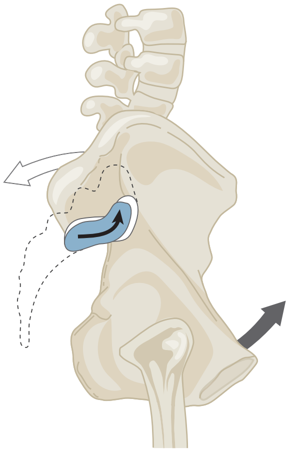


FIGURE 19.9 Posterior rotation of the innominate.

Dutton M: *Manual Therapy of the Spine an Intergrated Approach*. New York, McGraw-Hill Publication Division, 2002.

The direction of the innominate rotation depends on the initiating movement.

- During open-chain hip flexion, the ipsilateral innominate posteriorly rotates while the sacrum rotates to the same side as the flexed femur.

The posterior rotation of the innominate positions the ASIS in an upward position. If the femur is extended, the ipsilateral innominate anteriorly rotates and the sacrum rotates to the contralateral side to the extended femur.

- During an anterior pelvic tilt on a relatively fixed femur (closed-chain), an anterior rotation of the innominate occurs. The converse holds true for posterior rotation. Thus, during a posterior pelvic tilt, the innominate posteriorly rotates (refer to Figure 20-9).

☑ KEY POINT

There is little agreement, either among disciplines or even within disciplines, about the biomechanics of the pelvic complex. The results from abundant studies on mobility of the sacroiliac joint have led to a variety of different hypotheses and models of pelvic mechanics.

Forward Bending

During closed-chain forward bending at the waist, a combination of anterior and external rotation of both innominates results in the approximation and superior motion of both PSISs, while the sacrum nutates due to the compression effect of the innominates. After about 60 degrees of forward bending, the innominates continue to rotate anteriorly, but the sacrum no longer nutates.[53] If the sacrum remains nutated throughout forward bending, the sacroiliac joint remains compressed and stable. However, if the sacrum is forced into an early counternutation, as in individuals with tight hamstrings, less compression occurs, thereby increasing the dependence on the dynamic stabilization provided by muscles and thus increasing the potential for sacroiliac joint injury.[53]

Backward Bending

Backward bending at the waist, or extension of the spine, involves a combination of an anterior displacement of the pelvic girdle and an inferior motion of both posterosuperior iliac spines. A slight posterior innominate rotation occurs and the sacrum remains nutated.

Side Bending

During right side bending, the right innominate rotates anteriorly, and the sacrum right side bends. The motion of the innominate during side bending likely results from ground reaction forces.[56] As side bending to the right occurs, the right leg takes more weight and so is compressed. This downward body weight force, together with the upward ground reaction force, results in an anterior rotation (extension) of the innominate, causing a slight flexion of the hip. This hip flexion, together with the flattening of the foot and hyperextension of the knee, actually allows the leg to shorten in response to these compressive forces. It is interesting that in non–weight bearing, anterior innominate rotation results in a leg length increase, whereas in weight bearing, an anterior rotation produces a leg length decrease. In fact, it is the same mechanism in both cases.[56] In non–weight bearing, the anterior rotation of the innominate pushes the femur downward. Because there is no resistance under the foot and no force to flex the hip, the leg can lengthen. In weight bearing, ground reaction forces push the innominate superiorly because of the inability of the leg to lengthen during the side bending.

Trunk Rotation

During axial rotation of the trunk to the left, the right innominate rotates anteriorly while the left innominate rotates posteriorly. Simultaneously, counternutation of the sacrum occurs at the right sacroiliac joint, and nutation occurs at the left sacroiliac joint. The motion of the innominates during trunk rotation allows the sacrum to rotate osteokinematically while maintaining a more or less vertical orientation.

Pelvic Tilt

The degree of pelvic tilt, which is measured as the angle between the horizontal plane and a line connecting the ASIS with the PSIS, varies from 5 to 12 degrees in normal individuals.[57] Both a low ASIS in women and a structurally flat back in men can cause structural variations in pelvic alignment, which can be misinterpreted as acquired postural impairments. Actively anteriorly tilting the pelvis is created by force couples involving the hip flexor muscles and erector spinae (low back extensors) in an action that is similar to the push and pull of one's hands when turning a steering wheel—the erector spinae muscles pull upward at the same time the hip flexors pull downward.[58]

Pelvic Stabilization

In upright positions, the sacroiliac joint is subjected to considerable shear force because the bulk of the upper body must be transferred to the lower limbs via the ilia. The body has two mechanisms to overcome this shear force: one is dependent on the shape and structure of the joint surfaces of the sacroiliac joints (form closure), which is wedge shaped with a high coefficient of friction; the other involves generation of compressive forces across the sacroiliac joint via muscle contraction (force closure).[59]

Form Closure

Form closure refers to a state of stability within the pelvic mechanism, with the degree of stability dependent on its anatomy. No extra forces are needed to maintain the stable state of the system.[52] The following anatomic structures are proposed to assist with form closure:

- *The congruity of the articular surfaces and the friction coefficient of the articular cartilage.* Both the roughness of the cartilage and the opposite grooves and ridges increase the friction coefficient and thus contribute to form closure by resisting against horizontal and vertical translations. In contrast, the joint surfaces of infants are very planar. However, between the ages of 11 and 15 years, ridges and humps begin to form. By the third decade, the superficial layers of the fibrocartilage are fibrillated, and crevice formation and erosion has begun. By the fourth and fifth decades, the articular surfaces increase irregularity and coarseness, and the wedging is incomplete.
- *The integrity of the ligaments.*

Force Closure

Force closure requires intrinsic and extrinsic forces to keep the sacroiliac joint stable.[52] These dynamic forces involve the myofascial system, the neurological system, and gravity. Together, these components produce a self-locking mechanism for the sacroiliac joint. Critical to the functioning of the self-locking mechanism is the ability of the sacrum to nutate, because nutation of the sacrum winds up most of the SIJ ligaments, particularly the interosseous and posterior (dorsal) ligaments.[52,60,61] These latter ligaments lie posterior to the joint and approximate the posterior iliac bones when placed under tension.[60]

Just as nutation of the sacrum augments the self-locking mechanism, counternutation of the sacrum, which occurs during activities such as sacral sitting, the end range of forward bending, long sitting, and hip hyperextension, reduces the self-locking mechanism.[60]

In two separate kinetic analyses of the pelvic girdle, Vleeming and colleagues[60,62] identified a number of muscles that resist translational forces and that are especially relevant to the force closure mechanism: the erector spinae, gluteus maximus, latissimus dorsi, and biceps femoris.[60,62] Two other muscle groups, an “inner muscle unit” and an “outer muscle unit” also play a major role.[47,53,54] The inner muscle unit consists of the following:

- The muscles of the pelvic floor (Hemborg and colleagues[63] have demonstrated that the pelvic floor muscles coactivate with the transversus abdominis during lifting tasks.)
- Transversus abdominis
- Multifidus
- Diaphragm

The outer muscle unit consists of four systems:[53]

- *The posterior oblique system (latissimus dorsi, gluteus maximus, and TLF).* The gluteus maximus, which blends with the thoracodorsal fascia, and the contralateral latissimus dorsi work together to aid force closure of the sacroiliac joint posteriorly by approximating the posterior aspects of the innominates. This oblique system is a significant contributor to load transference through the pelvic girdle during the rotational activities of gait.
- *The deep longitudinal system (erector spinae, deep lamina of the TLF, sacrotuberous ligament, and biceps femoris).* This system serves to counteract any anterior shear or sacral nutation forces as well as to facilitate compression through the sacroiliac joints.
- *The anterior oblique system (external and internal obliques, contralateral adductors of the thigh, and the intervening anterior abdominal fascia).* The oblique abdominals, acting as phasic muscles, initiate movements[47] and play a role in all movements of the trunk and upper and lower extremities, except when the legs are crossed.[64]
- *The lateral system (gluteus medius–minimus and contralateral adductors of the thigh).* The lateral system functions to stabilize the pelvic girdle on the femoral head through a coordinated action during gait.

Weakness or insufficient recruitment and/or unbalanced muscle function within the lumbar/pelvic/hip region can reduce the force closure mechanism, which can result in compensatory movement strategies.[65] These compensatory movement strategies and/or patterns of muscle imbalances may produce a sustained counternutation of the sacrum, thereby “unlocking” the form closure mechanism and rendering the SIJ vulnerable to injury. This unlocked position of the pelvis also may increase shear forces at the lumbar spine and cause an abnormal loading of the lumbar disks. Mechanical pain resulting from sacroiliac joint dysfunction may manifest as sacral pain but also may refer pain distally. Sacroiliac joint problems can refer pain to the PSIS, iliac fossa, medial buttock, and superior lateral and posterior thigh.[66] Pain also may be referred to the sacrum from a distant structure, including the contralateral sacrospinalis muscle, the ipsilateral interspinous ligaments of L3 to S2, and the L4 to L5 facet joints.[66] In general, unilateral pain with no referral below the knee may be caused by the sacroiliac joint, whereas irritation of a spinal nerve may cause radicular symptoms below the knee.[67] Pubic symphysis dysfunction characteristically results in localized pain, or groin pain, which is intensified by activities involving the hip adductor or rectus abdominis muscles.

The following findings are likely to be present with a sacroiliac joint dysfunction:[68–70]

- A history of sharp pain that awakens the patient from sleep upon turning in bed
- Pain with walking, ascending or descending stairs, rising to stand from a sitting position, or hopping or standing on the involved leg
- Pain with a straight leg raise at or near the end of range
- Pain and sometimes limitation on extension and ipsilateral side bending of the trunk

Examination of the Lumbopelvic Complex

The examinations performed by the physical therapist (PT) for the lumbar spine and SIJ are summarized in **TABLE 19.4** and **TABLE 19.5**. The evidence-based special tests of the lumbar spine and SIJ are outlined in **TABLE 19.6**.

Goniometry

Range of motion of the lumbar spine is best measured using two bubble goniometers (**FIGURE 19.10** through **FIGURE 19.15**). To measure lumbar flexion, two inclinometers are used, aligned in the sagittal plane. The center of the first inclinometer is placed over the T12 spinous process at the thoracolumbar junction to assess the total flexion measure. The center of the second one is placed over the sacrum, midway

TABLE 19.4 Examination of the Lumbar Spine

Observation and Inspection	
Lower quarter and peripheral joint scan	Hip, knee, ankle, and foot Dermatomes and key muscle tests as appropriate
Examination of movements; active range of motion (AROM) with passive overpressure	Flexion, extension, side bending (right and left), rotation (right and left) Combined movements as appropriate Repetitive movements as appropriate Sustained positions as appropriate Sacroiliac joint movement testing
Resisted isometric movements	All AROM directions Rectus abdominis, internal and external obliques, quadratus lumborum, back and hip extensors
Palpation	
Neurological tests as appropriate	Palpation of bony prominences and superficial structures
Joint mobility tests	Reflexes, key muscle tests, sensory scan, peripheral nerve assessment Neurodynamic mobility tests (straight leg raise, slump test, prone knee flexion)
	■ Side glides ■ Anterior and posterior glides ■ Traction and compression
Special Tests (refer to Table 19.6)	As indicated
Diagnostic imaging	As appropriate

TABLE 19.5 Examination of the Sacroiliac Joint

Observation and Inspection	
Lower quarter and peripheral joint scan	Hip, knee, ankle, and foot Dermatomes and key muscle tests as appropriate
Examination of movements; AROM with passive overpressure	Flexion, extension, side bending (right and left), rotation (right and left) of lumbar spine Flexion, extension, adduction and abduction, internal and external rotation of the hip Combined movements as appropriate Repetitive movements as appropriate Sustained positions as appropriate Sacroiliac joint movement testing
Resisted isometric movements	Hip flexion, extension, internal and external rotation, abduction and adduction
Palpation	
Neurological tests as appropriate	Palpation of bony prominences and superficial structures
Joint mobility tests	Reflexes, key muscle tests, sensory scan, peripheral nerve assessment
	■ Hip and lumbar spine mobility ■ Anterior and posterior compression of SIJ
Special Tests (refer to Table 19.6)	As indicated
Diagnostic imaging	As appropriate

TABLE 19.6 Evidence-Based Special Tests of the Lumbar Spine and SIJ

Name of Test	Brief Description	Positive Findings	Evidence-Based
Two-stage treadmill test[a]	Patient ambulates on a level and inclined (15 degrees) treadmill for 10 minutes. A 10-minute rest period sitting upright in a chair follows each test.	Positive for lumbar spinal stenosis if symptoms are reproduced based on time to onset of symptoms and prolonged recovery after level walking.	Sensitivity: 0.68–0.82 Specificity: 0.83–0.68
Segmental hypomobility testing[b]	Assessment of AROM, abnormality of segmental motion (AbAROM), passive accessory intervertebral motion (PAIVM), and passive physiological intervertebral motion (PPIVM).	Presence of hypomobility with any of the tests.	*AROM* Sensitivity: 0.75 Specificity: 0.60 *AbAROM* Sensitivity: 0.43 Specificity: 0.88 *PAIVM* Sensitivity: 0.75 Specificity: 0.35 *PPIVM* Sensitivity: 0.42 Specificity: 0.89

TABLE 19.6 Evidence-Based Special Tests of the Lumbar Spine and SIJ *(continued)*

Name of Test	Brief Description	Positive Findings	Evidence-Based
Straight leg raise for detecting disk herniations[c]	Performed with the patient supine, the knee fully extended, and the ankle in neutral dorsiflexion. The clinician then passively flexes the hip while maintaining the knee extension to the point where pain or paresthesia is experienced in the back or lower limb. Various sensitizing maneuvers (dorsiflexion of the ankle and flexion of the cervical spine) are then added.	Positive if the sensitizing maneuvers exacerbate the symptoms.	Sensitivity: 0.91 Specificity: 0.26
Crossed straight leg raise for detecting disk herniation[c]	The clinician performs a straight leg raise on the uninvolved lower extremity.	Reproduction of the patient's symptoms in the involved extremity.	Sensitivity: 0.29 Specificity: 0.88
Bicycle test of van Gelderen	The patient is appropriately positioned on a bicycle and asked to pedal against resistance.	A patient with lateral spinal stenosis tolerates this position well. A patient with intermittent claudication of the lower extremities typically experiences an increase in symptoms with continued exercise, regardless of the position of the spine. A patient with intermittent cauda equina compression typically has an increase of symptoms with an increase in lumbar lordosis.	Sensitivity: unknown Specificity: unknown
Patrick test (SIJ pain provocation test)[d]	The patient's hip is flexed, abducted, and externally rotated by placement of the lateral malleolus on the knee of the contralateral leg. The pelvis is stabilized, and overpressure is applied to the medial aspect of the knee.	Positive if buttock and groin pain is reproduced.	Sensitivity: 0.66 Specificity: 0.51
Posterior gapping of the SIJ (Compression test)[e]	Patient side lying. Firm downward pressure is applied by the clinician to the contralateral ilium.	Positive for ankylosing spondylitis if pain over the sacrum or into the buttocks is provoked.	Sensitivity: 0.69 Specificity: 0.69
Anterior gapping of the SIJ (Distraction test)[d]	The patient is positioned in supine. The clinician applies cross-over pressure to both anterior superior iliac spines.	Positive if there is a production or increase in familiar symptoms.	Sensitivity: 0.23 Specificity: 0.81

(continues)

TABLE 19.6 Evidence-Based Special Tests of the Lumbar Spine and SIJ *(continued)*

Name of Test	Brief Description	Positive Findings	Evidence-Based
Gaenslen test (SIJ dysfunction)[c]	Patient supine with both legs extended. The leg being tested is passively brought into full knee flexion, while the opposite hip remains in extension. Overpressure is then applied to the flexed extremity.	Positive if pain is reproduced.	Sensitivity: 0.21 Specificity: 0.72
Long sitting test[f]	Patient supine. Clinician palpates inferior border of medial malleoli and makes a determination of symmetry. Patient assumes the long sitting position and the clinician again records symmetry of the malleoli.	Positive for iliosacral dysfunction if asymmetric malleoli lengths reverse from supine to long sit.	Sensitivity: 0.44 Specificity: 0.64
Thigh thrust[e]	The patient is positioned in supine with hip flexed 90 degrees and slightly adducted. The clinician cups the sacrum with one hand and with the other applies a posteriorly directed force to the femur.	Positive for sacroiliac joint dysfunction if familiar symptoms are reproduced or increased.	Sensitivity: 0.88 Specificity: 0.69
Sacral thrust test[e]	The patient is positioned in prone. The clinician applies a force vertically downward to the center of the sacrum.	A positive test for SIJ dysfunction is the production or increase in the familiar symptoms.	Sensitivity: 0.63 Specificity: 0.75
Mennell's test[d]	The patient is positioned in side lying, involved side down, with the involved side hip and knee flexed toward the abdomen. The clinician puts one hand over the ipsilateral buttock and iliac crest and the other hand grasps the semiflexed ipsilateral knee and lightly forces the leg into extension.	Positive test for SIJ dysfunction is the production or increase of familiar symptoms.	Sensitivity: 0.66 (right), 0.45 (left) Specificity: 0.80 (right), 0.86 (left)
Gillet test[f]	The patient is standing with feet spread 12 inches apart. The clinician palpates the S2 spinous process with one hand and the posterior superior iliac spine (PSIS) with the other. The patient then flexes the hip and knee on the side being tested.	Positive for SIJ dysfunction if the PSIS fails to move in a posteroinferior direction relative to S2.	Sensitivity: 0.08 Specificity: 0.93

TABLE 19.6 Evidence-Based Special Tests of the Lumbar Spine and SIJ *(continued)*

Name of Test	Brief Description	Positive Findings	Evidence-Based
Standing flexion test[f]	The patient is standing. The clinician palpates the inferior slope of the PSIS. The patient is asked to forward bend completely.	Positive for sacroiliac hypomobility if one PSIS moves more cranially than the contralateral side.	Sensitivity: 0.17 Specificity: 0.79
Sitting flexion test[f]	The patient is positioned in sitting. The clinician palpates the inferior aspect of each PSIS. The patient is asked to bend forward as far as possible.	Positive for sacroiliac joint dysfunction if inequality of PSIS movement is found.	Sensitivity: 0.09 Specificity: 0.93

a. Fritz JM et al: Preliminary results of the use of a two-stage treadmill test as a clinical diagnostic tool in the differential diagnosis of lumbar spinal stenosis. *J Spinal Discord* 10:410–6, 1997.
b. Abbot J, Mercer S: Lumbar segmental hypomobility: criterion-related validity of clinical examination items (a pilot study). *NZJ Physiother,* 31:3–9, 2003.
c. Devillé WL et al: The test of Lasègue: systematic review of the accuracy in diagnosing herniated discs. *Spine* (Phila Pa 1976) 25:1140–7, 2000.
d. Ozgocmen S et al: The value of sacroiliac pain provocation tests in early active sacroiliitis. *Clin Rheumatol* 27:1275–82, 2008.
e. Laslett M et al: Diagnosis of sacroiliac joint pain: validity of individual provocation tests and composites of tests. *Man Ther* 10:207–18, 2005.
f. Levangie PK: Four clinical tests of sacroiliac joint dysfunction: the association of test results with innominate torsion among patients with and without low back pain. *Phys Ther* 79:1043–57, 1999.

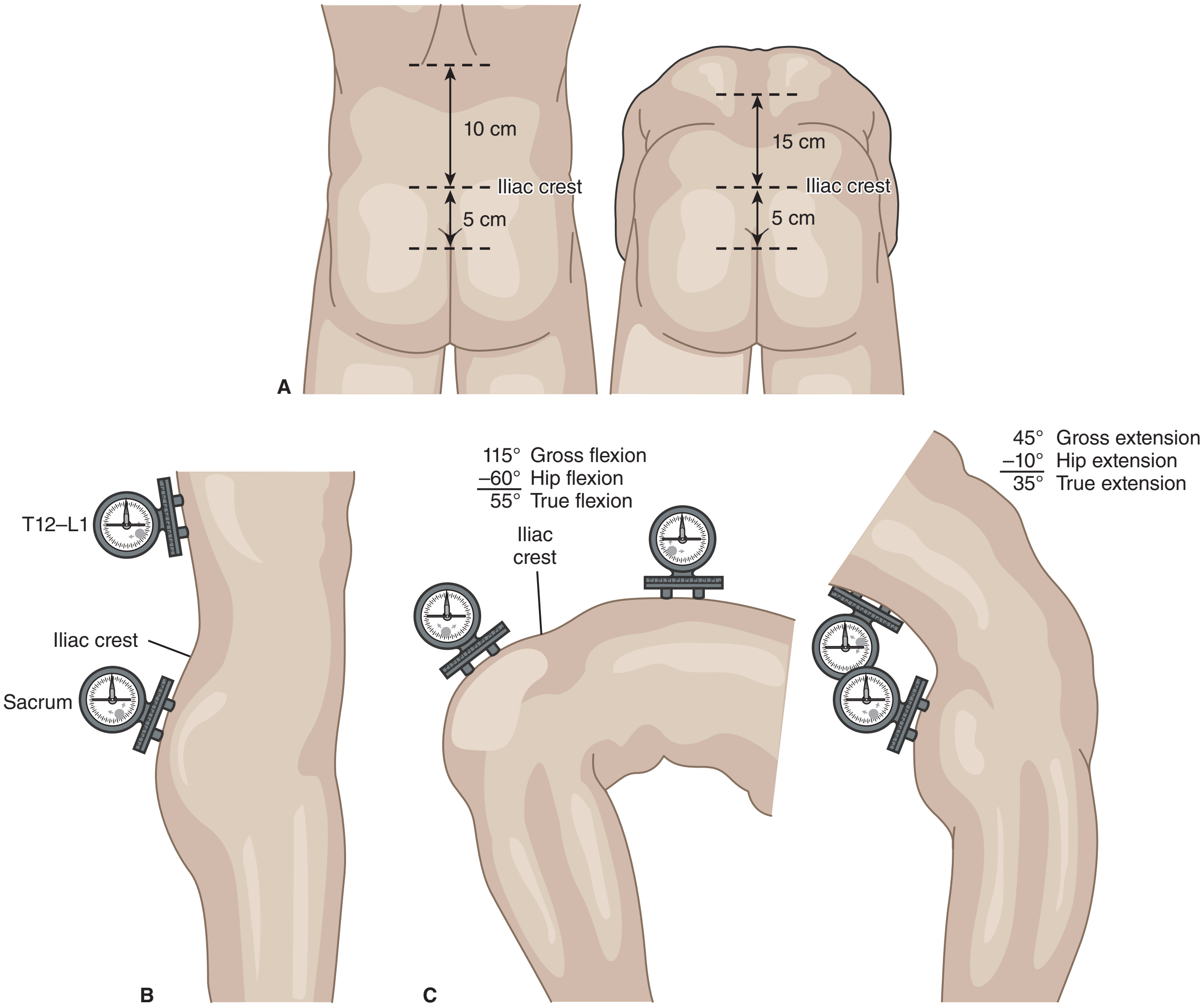


FIGURE 19.10 Goniometer placement for lumbar flexion and extension and range of motion calculation.

FIGURE 19.11 Lumbar ROM: start position for flexion/extension.

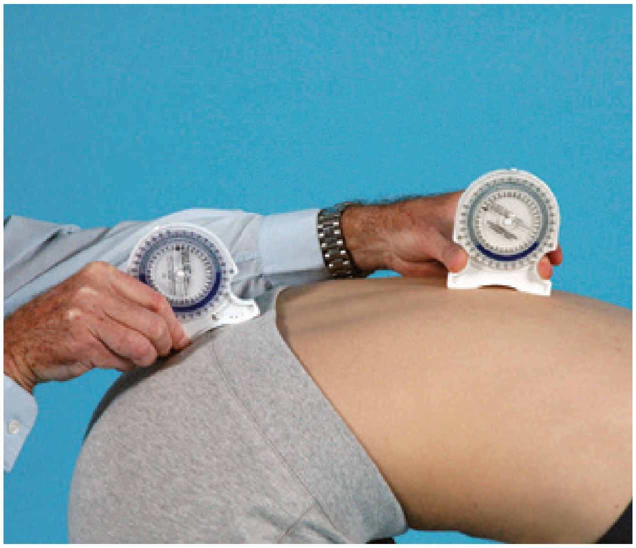


FIGURE 19.12 Lumbar ROM: flexion.

FIGURE 19.13 Lumbar ROM: extension.

FIGURE 19.14 Lumbar ROM: start position for side bending.

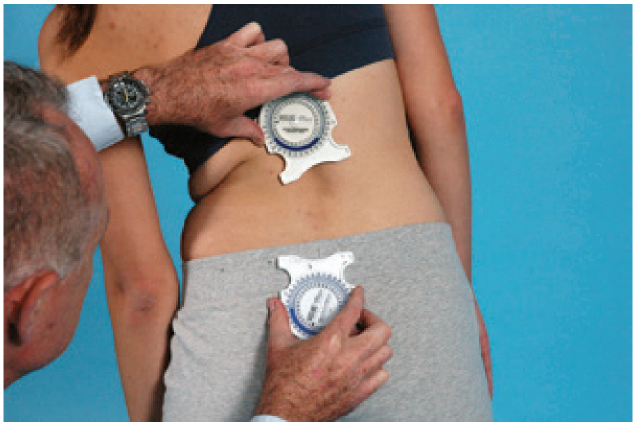


FIGURE 19.15 Lumbar ROM: end position for side bending.

between the PSISs to assess motion at the sacroiliac joints and hip joints. The patient is asked to flex the trunk as far as possible, and both inclinometer angles are recorded. The lumbar flexion angle is calculated by subtracting the sacral (hip) from the T12 inclinometer angle. The difference in motion represents the lumbar flexion measure. The patient is then asked to bend backward, and the difference in motion is the lumbar extension measure. A similar process is used for side bending, with the inclinometer aligned in the frontal plane and the patient is asked to bend to each side.

Currently, there are four primary classification systems for the low back, each of which attempt to match treatments to subgroups of patients using a clinically driven decision-making process:

1. The McKenzie mechanical diagnosis and classification model[71]
2. The Sahrmann movement system impairment (MSI)[72]
3. The O'Sullivan mechanism-based classification system[73]

4. The treatment-based classification (TBC) system designed by Delitto et al.,[74] which has undergone several revisions.

The chosen classification system will depend on the training of the PT. However, because none of these classification systems is comprehensive enough to treat all types of LBP, a combination is the recommended approach.

The McKenzie examination approach used by the PT attempts to categorize the dysfunction into one of three syndromes: postural, dysfunction, or derangement.

- *Postural syndrome.* The symptoms of the postural syndrome tend to be related to posture and become evident in sustained positions.
- *Dysfunction syndrome.* The symptoms of the dysfunction syndrome tend to be associated with movement and become apparent in the difficulty or inability of the patient to accomplish end range of movement, most frequently in the extremes of flexion and extension.
- *Derangement syndrome.* McKenzie classifies derangement of the lumbar spine into seven categories by the location of symptoms and the presentation of fixed antalgias responsive to end-range loading in directions other than that of which complaints are caused.[71]

Derangements that are considered to be *anterior* require strategies containing a flexion component, whereas those that are considered to be *posterior* involve strategies incorporating an extension component. In most cases, these may be conducted within the sagittal plane, but flexion and extension strategies may, in other cases, be combined with coronal or transverse motions for the best mechanical and symptomatic responses.[75] The theoretical model of the derangement syndrome involves the concept of displacement of the NP/annulus. Sahrmann's MSI classification model describes a number of movement impairment syndromes that can present in the lumbar spine as a result of an imbalance of strength and flexibility. The intervention for each of the syndromes involves a correction of these imbalances. The MSI assesses the patient's ability to maintain a stable lumbopelvic region while performing lower and upper limb movement tests.[76] During each movement tests, the clinician makes a judgment about the timing and magnitude of lumbopelvic region movement and the effect of the movement on LBP symptoms. Tests that are symptomatic are immediately followed by standardized modifications to determine the role of lumbopelvic movement on the patient's symptoms.[76] This modification involves minimizing or restricting lumbar movement during the test movement and encouraging movement in other joints to accomplish the movement goal. If the modification demonstrates an improvement in LBP symptoms, the initially identified lumbopelvic movement is deemed to be an important contributor to the person's LBP symptoms.[76,77] The MSI classification model recognizes a number of syndromes:

- *Flexion syndrome.* This syndrome, characterized by lumbar flexion motions that are more flexible than hip flexion motions, is typically found in the 8 to 45-year-old age range and results in pain with positions or motions associated with lumbar flexion. These symptoms are thought to result from adaptive shortening of the gluteus maximus, hamstrings, or rectus abdominis.
- *Extension syndrome.* This syndrome, characterized by lumbar extension motions that are more flexible than hip extension motions is typically found in patients older than 55 years of age. The symptoms are increased with positions or motions associated with an increase in lumbar lordosis. It is thought that the symptoms aggravated because of adaptive shortening of the hip flexors and lumbar paraspinals and weakness of the external oblique muscles.
- *Lumbar rotation.* This syndrome is characterized by pain that is unilateral or greater on one side. The pain is increased with rotation to one side. It is thought that the symptoms are produced when one segment of the lumbar spine rotates, side bends, glides, or translates more easily than the segment above or below it. Consequently, this syndrome is associated with spinal instability.
- *Lumbar flexion with rotation.* This syndrome is characterized by pain that is unilateral or greater on one side. The symptoms are increased with the combined motion of lumbar flexion and rotation.
- *Lumbar extension with rotation.* This syndrome is characterized by pain that is unilateral or greater on one side. The symptoms are increased with the combined motion of lumbar extension and rotation.

O'Sullivan classifies instabilities according to directional patterns of clinical instability, although he admits that these classifications have not been scientifically validated.[33]

- *Flexion pattern.* The flexion pattern, which is the most common pattern, is characterized by complaints of central back pain that is aggravated by flexion–rotational movements, and an inability to sustain semiflexed positions. Functional activities, such as squatting, sitting, and sit to stand, reveal an inability to control a neutral lordosis.

- *Extension pattern*. The extension pattern, which is characterized by complaints of central back pain, is aggravated during extension–rotational movements, and an inability to sustain positions such as overhead activities, running, and swimming.
- *Recurrent lateral shift pattern*. The lateral shift is usually unidirectional, occurs recurrently, and is associated with unilateral LBP. The lateral shift is accentuated when standing on the foot ipsilateral to the shift.
- *Multidirectional pattern*. This pattern is the most serious and debilitating of the patterns because all weight-bearing positions are normally painful and locking of the spine frequently occurs with positions of sustained flexion, rotation, and extension.

Perhaps the simplest classification system to implement is the revised 2015 TBC. Using this system, once the patient has been determined to be appropriate for physical therapy, the patient is placed into one of three rehabilitation approaches:[78]

1. *Symptom modulation*. The intervention for these patients focuses on techniques that modulate their symptoms, including manual therapy, directional preference exercises, traction, or immobilization.
2. *Movement control*. The intervention for these patients focuses on techniques to improve the quality of the patient's movement system to enhance flexibility, muscle activation, and motor control.
3. *Functional optimization*. The intervention for these patients focuses on techniques to maximize their physical performance for higher levels of physical activities or sports performance.

General Intervention Strategies

The optimal intervention for patients with acute lumbopelvic pain remains largely enigmatic, and some clinical studies have failed to find consistent evidence for improved intervention outcomes with many intervention approaches.[79] The decision whether to treat the low back and SIJ separately or in combination is largely based on training. Because the two joints work in conjunction with each other, this text advocates treating them together. It is essential that the impairments, functional limitations, and disability found during the examination guide the intervention, and that the intervention should be dynamic and should direct the responsibility of the rehabilitative process toward the patient. The recommendations concerning bed rest for common, acute lumbopelvic pain have changed over the years.[80] The most recent guidelines (2000), based on the results of several randomized studies, advise avoiding bed rest to the extent possible.[81] A study by Rozenberg and colleagues[82] found that for patients with acute lumbopelvic pain, normal activity is at least equivalent to bed rest. These authors recommended that prescriptions for bed rest, and thus for sick leaves, should be limited in cases when the physical demands of the job are similar to those for daily life activities.[82]

In the past decade, meta-analyses of the results of randomized clinical trials have provided various degrees of support for the efficacy of specific, nonsurgical physical interventions (that may be delivered by physical therapy) for the management of spine disorders. Some studies have reported that intensive exercise reduces pain and improves function in patients with chronic lumbopelvic pain.[83–87] Also, exercise programs that combine aerobic conditioning with the specific strengthening of the back and legs can reduce the frequency of recurrence of lumbopelvic pain.[84]

Acute Phase

The goals of the acute phase are as follows:

- Decrease pain, inflammation, and muscle spasm.
- Promote healing of tissues.
- Increase pain-free range of vertebral and sacral motion.
- Regain soft tissue extensibility.
- Regain neuromuscular control.
- Initiate postural education.
- Promote correct body mechanics.
- Educate the patient about activities to avoid and positions of comfort.
- Allow progression to the functional phase.

The exercises described in the following sections can be used for the vast majority of lumbopelvic conditions. In the early phases of rehabilitation, muscle activation is encouraged using one of three exercises, each with its own stabilization activity of the abdominal and multifidus muscles:

- *Posterior pelvic tilt*. The posterior pelvic tilt (**FIGURE 19.16**) primarily activates the rectus abdominis, which is used mainly for dynamic trunk flexion activity.

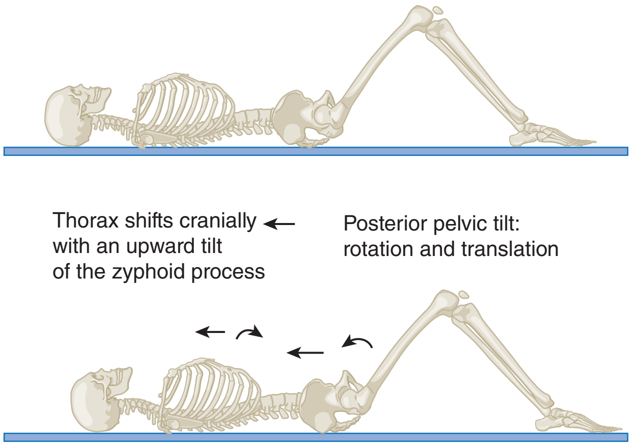


FIGURE 19.16 Posterior pelvic tilt.

Courtesy of Dr. Robert Burgess, Huggins Back Bay Rehabilitation.

- *Abdominal bracing exercise.* This exercise has been shown to activate the oblique abdominal muscles.
- *Drawing-in exercise.* The patient, positioned in hook lying (with knees 70–90 degrees and feet resting on the floor), quadruped, prone, or the semi-reclined position (based on comfort), is asked to take a relaxed breath in and out and then draw the waistline in (toward the spine) without taking a breath (**FIGURE 19.17**).[88] The contraction must be performed in a slow and controlled manner. Assessment of optimal recruitment of the transversus abdominis can be done through palpation just distal to the ASIS and lateral to the rectus abdominis (see Figure 19.17), or with the use of biofeedback.[88] When performed correctly, the clinician should feel flat tension of the muscle, rather than a bulge if the internal oblique contracts, and should see no substitute patterns (no movement of the pelvis, no flaring or depression of the lower ribs, no inspiration or lifting of the rib cage, no bulging out of the abdominal wall, and no increased pressure through the feet).[54,89,90] Once the technique is successfully learned, the patient is encouraged to perform the exercise while in the sitting and standing positions.[54,88–90]

> ☑ **KEY POINT**
>
> The drawing-in maneuver has been shown to result in more preferential activation of the multifidi and transversus abdominis than the abdominal bracing and posterior pelvic tilt exercises, and is therefore recommended.

The patient should now be taught how to activate the multifidus. This is performed in prone or side lying. The clinician uses the thumb or index finger to palpate immediately lateral to the spinous processes of the lumbar spine, and the patient is asked to bulge the muscle out against the palpating digits (**FIGURE 19.18**). Once the multifidus and the drawing-in techniques are mastered, they are performed during lower and upper extremity open-chain activities to improve muscular endurance,[45,91] and the progression to global stabilization occurs.

In general, the global stabilization exercises begin in the recumbent position and progress to sitting. However, the position used should be based on the findings from the clinical examination that minimize symptom reproduction. For example, the quadruped position has a significantly higher center of gravity (COG) and smaller base of support (BOS) than the prone position, making it a more challenging position. All of the following exercises are superimposed on the neutral spine (midrange or functional position) and the drawing-in maneuver, making sure the patient maintains control while applying the extremity motions. If the patient cannot control the position using muscle control, pillows or supports are used.

FIGURE 19.17 Drawing-in exercise.

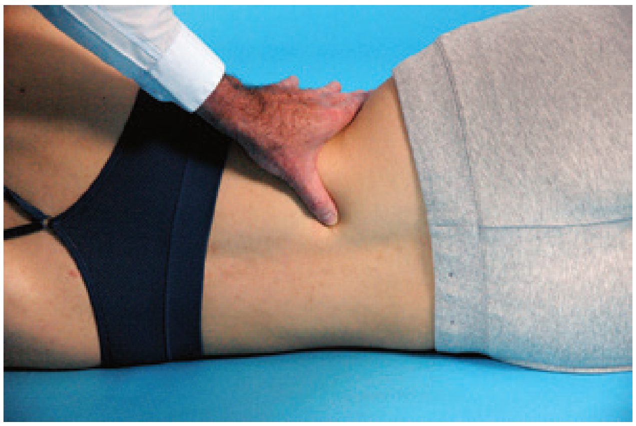


FIGURE 19.18 Multifidus activation.

Emphasis on Abdominals[92]

Bent-Leg Fallout The patient is positioned in supine hook lying (knees at 90 degrees of flexion) and is asked to separate the knees while preventing pelvic rotation (**FIGURE 19.19**).

Progressive Limb Loading From the supine hook-lying position the patient is asked to:

1. Lift one of the legs to 90 degrees of hip and knee flexion (**FIGURE 19.20**).
2. Slide the heel of one leg to extend the knee (**FIGURE 19.21**).
3. Lift the straight leg to 45 degrees (**FIGURE 19.22**).

The exercise is then repeated using the other leg.

The exercise progression then follows a series of levels of increasing difficulty while performing the same three methods of progressive limb-loading:

- The opposite leg is held at 90 degrees of hip flexion using both upper extremities (**FIGURE 19.23**).
- The opposite leg is held at 90 degrees of hip flexion with no upper extremity assistance (**FIGURE 19.24**).
- Both legs perform the series of progressive limb loading simultaneously (**FIGURE 19.25**).

At this stage, external resistance in the form of weights, elastic resistance, or pulleys can be added for strengthening.

FIGURE 19.19 Bent-leg fall out.

FIGURE 19.20 Progressive limb loading 1.

FIGURE 19.21 Progressive limb loading 2.

FIGURE 19.22 Progressive limb loading 3.

FIGURE 19.23 Progressive limb loading 4.

FIGURE 19.24 Progressive limb loading 5.

Emphasis on the Trunk Extensors

The following exercises are performed with the patient in prone:[92]

- Extend one lower extremity (**FIGURE 19.26**).
- Extend both lower extremities (**FIGURE 19.27**).
- Lift the head, arms, and lower extremities (**FIGURE 19.28**).

For patients with limited lumbar extension or those with increased symptoms with lumbar extension, a small pillow can be placed under the hips in prone for the starting position, and the patient can lift the upper and lower extremities to the neutral position of the lumbar spine.

At this stage, external resistance in the form of weights, elastic resistance, or pulleys can be added for strengthening. The following exercises are performed in the quadruped position (**FIGURE 19.29**) and include the following progression:

- Flex one upper extremity (**FIGURE 19.30**).
- Extend one lower extremity by sliding it along the exercise mat and then raising (**FIGURE 19.31**).
- Flex one upper extremity and extend the contralateral lower extremity (**FIGURE 19.32**).

FIGURE 19.25 Progressive limb loading 6.

FIGURE 19.26 Prone single leg raise.

FIGURE 19.27 Prone double leg raise.

FIGURE 19.28 Lifting the head, arms, and lower extremities.

FIGURE 19.29 Quadruped.

FIGURE 19.30 Quadruped and upper extremity flexion.

FIGURE 19.31 Quadruped and lower extremity extension.

FIGURE 19.32 Quadruped upper extremity flexion and lower extremity extension.

Functional/Chronic Phase

The goals of this phase are as follows:

- To achieve significant reduction or a complete resolution of the patient's pain
- Restoration of full and pain-free vertebral range of motion
- Full integration of the entire upper and lower kinetic chains
- Complete restoration of respiratory function
- Restoration of thoracic and upper quadrant strength and neuromuscular control

Emphasis on the Lateral Stabilizers

These exercises are performed in the side-lying position and include the following progression:

- Side plank with hips on bed (**FIGURE 19.33**)
- Side plank (**FIGURE 19.34**). This exercise has been shown to produce a very high recruitment of the psoas major and quadratus lumborum and may improve their coactivation.[93] These muscles play a role in stabilizing the spine and controlling segmental spinal movements.
- Side plank with arm extended (**FIGURE 19.35**)
- Side plank with hip abduction (**FIGURE 19.36**)

FIGURE 19.33 Side plank with hips on bed.

FIGURE 19.34 Side plank.

FIGURE 19.35 Side plank with arm extended.

- Side plank with inward roll (**FIGURE 19.37** and **FIGURE 19.38**)

Progression

All of the following exercises are superimposed on the neutral spine (midrange or functional position) and the drawing-in maneuver, making sure the patient maintains control while performing the exercises:

- *Bridging*. The patient is positioned supine, with the arms by the sides. The patient is asked to keep the knees bent and feet flat, and to lift the buttocks from

FIGURE 19.36 Side plank with hip abduction.

FIGURE 19.37 Side plank with inward roll: start position.

FIGURE 19.38 Side plank with inward roll: end position.

the floor (**FIGURE 19.39**). The exercise can be made more challenging by having the patient squeeze a ball with their thighs while performing the bridge (**FIGURE 19.40**). Some variations use a Swiss ball:

- Bridging with feet on a Swiss ball, knees bent (**FIGURE 19.41**)
- Bridging with feet on a Swiss ball, knees straight (**FIGURE 19.42**)
- Bridging with shoulders on a Swiss ball (**FIGURE 19.43**)

- *Wall slides.* With the back against a wall, the patient is asked to perform a squat and then return to standing while maintaining the neutral zone throughout the exercise. This exercise can be

FIGURE 19.39 Bridging.

FIGURE 19.40 Bridging with medicine ball.

FIGURE 19.41 Bridging on Swiss ball.

FIGURE 19.42 Bridging with feet on a Swiss ball, knees straight.

FIGURE 19.43 Bridging with shoulders on a Swiss ball.

modified by placing a medicine ball between the patient's knees (**FIGURE 19.44**).

- *Forward lunge.* While maintaining the neutral zone throughout the exercise, the patient is asked to step forward with one leg and lower the opposite knee toward the ground (**FIGURE 19.45**). Hand weights, elastic resistance (**FIGURE 19.46**), or dumbbells can be used to make the exercise more challenging.
- *Backward lunge.* While maintaining the neutral zone throughout the exercise, the patient is asked to step backward with one leg and lower the same knee to the ground before returning to the starting position. Hand weights, elastic resistance, or dumbbells can be used to make the exercise more challenging.

FIGURE 19.44 Wall slide with medicine ball.

FIGURE 19.45 Lunge.

FIGURE 19.46 Resisted lunge.

Advanced Techniques

All of the following exercises are superimposed on the neutral spine (midrange or functional position) and the drawing-in maneuver, making sure the patient maintains control while performing the exercises:

- *Curl-up.* The patient is positioned supine, with the legs bent at the knees and the feet flat on the floor. The arms are folded across the chest or kept by the side (**FIGURE 19.47**). While concentrating on curling the upper trunk as much as possible, the patient is asked to perform an abdominal hollowing and then to raise the head and shoulders off the bed by about 30 to 45 degrees (see Figure 20-46). After holding this position for 2 to 3 seconds, the patient returns to the initial position. The muscles strengthened with this exercise include the rectus abdominis and the internal and external obliques.[94]
- *Hip thrusts.* The patient is positioned supine, with the hips and knees flexed to approximately 90 degrees and the arms by the sides (**FIGURE 19.48**). From this position, the patient is asked to perform a posterior pelvic tilt and lift the pelvis off the bed, while maintaining the hip and knee positions. Once the patient is able to do this exercise independently, the exercise can be performed with the hips flexed to 90 degrees and the knees extended (**FIGURE 19.49**).
- *Rotational partial sit-up.* The patient is asked to lift the chin toward the chest. The patient is then asked to attempt to lift the right shoulder up from the table, while twisting the trunk to the left and touching the outside of the opposite knee (**FIGURE 19.50**), before slowly lowering the shoulder to the table.
- *Reverse curl-up.* The patient is positioned supine, with the legs bent at the knees and the feet flat on the floor. The arms are by the sides. The patient is asked to raise the feet off the bed until the thighs are vertical (**FIGURE 19.51**); this is the start position.

FIGURE 19.47 Curl-up.

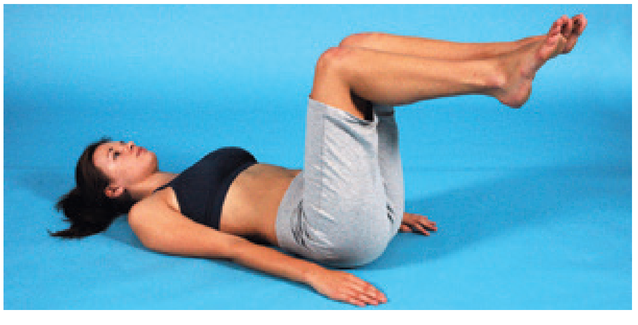


FIGURE 19.48 Supine with hips and knees at 90 degrees.

FIGURE 19.49 Hip thrusts.

FIGURE 19.50 Rotational sit-up.

FIGURE 19.51 Reverse curl-up: start position.

From this position, the patient is asked to raise the pelvis up and toward the shoulders, keeping the knees bent tightly, until the knees are as close to the chest as possible (**FIGURE 19.52**). The patient is allowed to push down on the bed with the hands. After holding this position for 2 to 3 seconds, the patient returns to the start position.

- *Superman.* The patient is positioned prone, with the arms overhead and knees straight. The patient is asked to raise both arms and legs toward the ceiling while also raising the head from the table (**FIGURE 19.53**).
- *Prone plank.* This exercise (**FIGURE 19.54**) can be made more challenging by asking the patient to raise one upper extremity at a time, one lower extremity at a time, or opposite upper extremity and lower extremity simultaneously.
- *Prone lying on a Swiss ball, hands touching floor.* This can be progressed to push-ups with legs on a Swiss ball and to walking in circles around the Swiss ball using only the hands (**FIGURE 19.55**).
- *Rhythmic stabilization.* The patient is positioned in quadruped with unilateral hip extension. The clinician applies perturbations to the patient, while the patient attempts to resist using a variety of points of contact (**FIGURE 19.56** and **FIGURE 19.57**)

FIGURE 19.52 Reverse curl-up: end position.

FIGURE 19.53 Superman.

FIGURE 19.54 Prone plank.

FIGURE 19.55 Prone lying on a Swiss ball, hands touching floor.

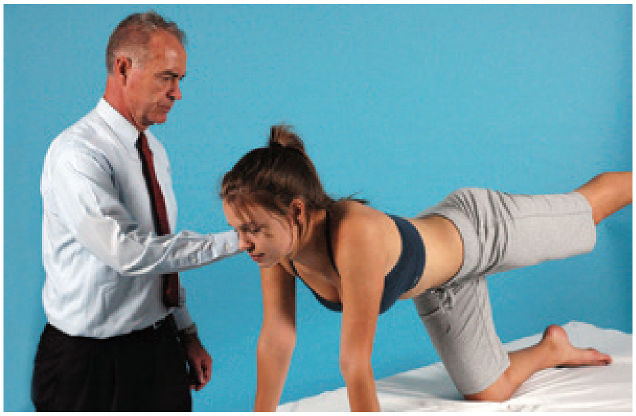


FIGURE 19.56 Rhythmic stabilization in quadruped.

FIGURE 19.57 Rhythmic stabilization in quadruped with increased challenge to the patient.

FIGURE 19.58 Rhythmic stabilization in quadruped while weight bearing through two extremities.

FIGURE 19.59 D1 upper extremity into flexion: start position.

and positions (**FIGURE 19.58**). This exercise can be progressed by raising both an upper extremity and the contralateral lower extremity.

- *Proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation (PNF).* A variety of PNF patterns can be applied with manual resistance to help strengthen the lumbar stabilizers. The upper extremity patterns (**FIGURE 19.59** through **FIGURE 19.62**), lower extremity patterns (**FIGURE 19.63** through **FIGURE 19.66**), and trunk patterns (**FIGURE 19.67** and **FIGURE 19.68**) can all be used.

☑ KEY POINT

Several important principles must be applied to the exercise progressions. These include multiplanar and dynamic exercises, balance and proprioception drills (progression from a stable surface to a labile surface), power exercises (plyometrics), sport-specific skills as appropriate, and motor programming to integrate the lower and upper kinetic chains.[10]

FIGURE 19.60 D1 upper extremity into flexion: end position.

FIGURE 19.61 D1 upper extremity into extension: start position.

FIGURE 19.62 D1 upper extremity into extension: end position.

FIGURE 19.63 D1 lower extremity into flexion: start position.

FIGURE 19.64 D1 lower extremity into flexion: end position.

FIGURE 19.65 D1 lower extremity into extension: start position.

FIGURE 19.66 D1 lower extremity into extension: mid position.

In addition to addressing core stabilization, muscle imbalances also must be addressed in terms of flexibility because poor flexibility may cause excessive stresses to be borne by the lumbar motion segments. For example, adaptively shortened hip flexors and rectus femoris muscles can cause increased anterior shearing of the lumbar spine. Occasionally, stretching both the anterior and the posterior thigh muscles is beneficial. However, most of the time, only one

FIGURE 19.67 Lower trunk pattern moving into extension to the left: start position.

FIGURE 19.68 Lower trunk pattern moving into extension to the left: end position.

should be stretched, and the decision is based on the diagnosis:

- The patient with spinal stenosis or a painful extension hypomobility, and who responds well to lumbar flexion exercises, should be taught how to stretch the hip flexors and rectus femoris while protecting the lumbar spine from excessive lordosis.
- The patient with a painful flexion hypomobility or IVD herniation, and who responds well to lumbar extension exercises, should be taught how to stretch the hamstrings while protecting the lumbar spine from flexing.

Stretches should be applied and then taught. The goal of stretching is to perform the technique while maintaining the pelvis in its neutral zone, to avoid excessive anterior or posterior pelvic tilting.

The intervention program is only as good as the concomitant home exercise program, and the clinician must continually monitor the home exercise program, evaluating the patient's knowledge of the exercises and upgrading the program when appropriate.

Common Conditions

Low Back Pain

LBP is typically categorized using biomedical and structural beliefs that attempt to determine the type of structure damaged and the presence of any biomechanical faults. Structural damage includes diagnoses such as disk herniation, scoliosis, spondylolisthesis, or lateral spinal stenosis. The most commonly cited biomechanical fault is zygapophyseal dysfunction. However, in many cases of LBP it is extremely difficult to determine which structure is involved or whether a biomechanical fault is present. These conditions are often labeled as strains or sprains of the lumbar spine instead of a specific diagnosis. A strain involves an injury to a muscle or tendon, whereas a sprain involves an injury to a ligament. It is likely that these two injuries do not occur in isolation. Strains/sprains may occur anywhere in the lumbar spine, but the most commonly occur around the lumbopelvic junction. This type of injury typically occurs when bending forward and twisting while lifting and moving an object. The patient will report a sudden acute episode that caused the problem, or they will give a history of a chronic repetitive stress or sustained position that caused the gradual onset of pain that got progressively worse with continuing activity. The pain is typically local to the structure that has been injured and is often described as a sore pain that gets sharp in response to certain movements or postures. If the cause of LBP is structural, one would expect healing to occur in a linear fashion and over a predictable period. However, that is not often the case and there is growing evidence that LBP is a multidimensional disorder and that persistent LBP is not an accurate measure of local tissue pathology or damage alone.[95] Rather, it is best seen as a protective mechanism produced by the neuro-immune-endocrine systems in response to an individual's perceived level of danger, threat, or disruption to homeostasis.[96] This interplay between multiple systems and factors explains why it is very difficult to categorize or subgroup people with LBP to target treatment.[97] The challenge for the clinician is to consider the relative contribution of modifiable versus nonmodifiable factors associated with the disorder to target care.[96] In those cases where nonmodifiable factors outnumber the modifiable factors, additional multidisciplinary care is necessary.

Intervention

There is evidence suggesting that therapeutic exercise is effective in the treatment of nonspecific back pain,[98–101] although there is insufficient evidence to conclude with absolute certainty which theoretical mechanism of lumbar stabilization would be most beneficial in the management of patients with segmental lumbar instability.[102] Judicious use of the exercise progressions outlined in the "General Intervention Strategies" section earlier in this chapter can be used with these conditions based on the patient's stage of healing.

Clinical Spinal Instability

There is considerable controversy regarding what, exactly, constitutes clinical spinal instability. The biomedical definition is when there is radiographic evidence of increased translation or angulation of a spinal segment during flexion–extension or side bending in patients with LBP. Clinical instability can be defined as LBP in the absence of radiographic findings.[103,104] The following may indicate the presence of instability and its relevance to the presenting complaints of the patient:[44]

- Pain that is most commonly described as recurrent, constant, catching, locking.
- Repeated unprovoked episode(s) of feeling unstable or giving way, following a minor provocation.
- Inconsistent symptomatology. The most frequently reported aggravating postures are prolonged standing, sustained sitting, and semi-flexed postures.[105] The most common aggravating movements are typically sudden, unexpected movements, lifting, forward bending, returning in an upright position from forward bending, and sneezing.[105]
- Minor aching for a few days after a sensation of giving way.
- Consistent clicking or clunking noises.
- Protracted pain (with full range of motion [ROM]).
- Skin creases posteriorly or on the abdomen (spondylolisthesis).
- Spinal angulation on full ROM.
- Inability to recover normally from full ROM, commonly flexion.
- Excessive active range of motion (AROM). Active spinal movement, commonly reveals good ranges of spinal mobility but with aberrant quality of motion commonly associated with a sudden acceleration, hesitation, or lateral movement within the midrange of spinal motion.[44]

Intervention

Instability of the spine is perhaps the most difficult of the motion impairments to treat, which makes prevention extremely important. The intervention involves the removal of any abnormal stresses from the joint and to progress as quickly as tolerated to exercises that will enhance dynamic stabilization and segmental control of the spine. The aim of these exercises is to improve the dynamic stability role of the segmental muscles during functional postures and movements in conjunction with the global muscles.[105] It must be remembered that, while stressing the low back tissues may enhance their health, too much loading can be detrimental, so choosing the optimal exercise requires judgment based on clinical experience and scientific evidence.[106] Training should begin in non–weight-bearing positions depending on patient response, in prone lying, in the quadruped position (has a significantly higher COG and smaller BOS than the prone position), or in supine lying before progressing to weight-bearing postures (see the exercise progression in "General Intervention Strategies"). Initially, the exercises prescribed by the PT are those that were found to provide relief during the examination. Usually, either flexion or extension movements demonstrate benefit. Contractions initially are held for 5 seconds and gradually are increased to 60 seconds. Training is performed a minimum of once a day for 10 to 15 minutes, with emphasis on proper co-contraction of the local muscle system. Depending on the severity of the condition, this range may be small initially, permitting only upper or lower extremity motions and gentle isometrics of the spinal muscles.

Disk Herniation

Three main types of lumbar disk injury are recognized: herniation, protrusion, and prolapse (**FIGURE 19.69**).

Herniation

This is a general term used when there is any change in the shape of the annulus that causes it to bulge beyond its normal perimeter.

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> The patient with a contained injury to the IVD is likely to report more pain in the morning. The NP is more swollen because it has imbibed more fluid during the night, and the compressive weight through the spine as the patient gets out of bed increases intradiskal pressure because of this added volume.

Recent attention has been given to the internal disruption of the NP in a herniation. In this condition, the NP becomes inflamed and invaginates itself between the annular layers.

Compression of the disk during sitting and bending increases the pain, because the nociceptive structures within the AF are placed on increased stretch.

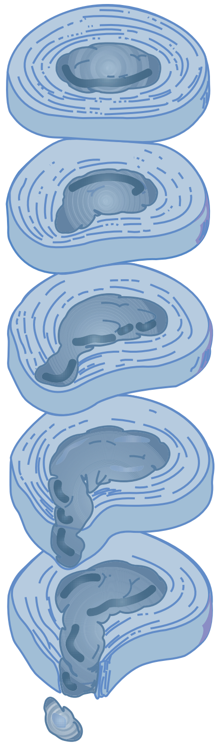


FIGURE 19.69 Disk injuries. **A.** Normal. **B.** Herniation. **C.** Protrusion. **D.** Prolapse (extrusion). **E.** Prolapse (sequestration).

© 1993 American Academy of Orthopedic Surgeons. *Reprinted from the Journal of the American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons*, Volume 1 (1), pp 33-40 with permission.

Protrusion

With a protrusion, the nuclear material bulges outward through the tear to strain, but not escape from, the outer AF or the posterior longitudinal ligament (Figure 16.69). Once a tear to the periphery is opened for the NP, it would seem logical that further stresses can force it to migrate through the tear. However, under normal conditions, the nuclear material is intrinsically cohesive and does not herniate through the AF, even if the AF fibers are weakened by a radial incision. The most common levels of protrusion are the segments between the fourth and fifth lumbar vertebrae and between the fifth lumbar vertebra and the sacrum, although a protrusion may occur at any level.

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> Centralization of symptoms is the progressive retreat of the most distal extent of referred or radicular pain toward the lumbar spine midline. Peripheralization of symptoms indicates movement in the opposite direction. Centralization of the symptoms normally indicates improvement in the patient's condition.

Prolapse

The migrating nuclear material escapes contact with the disk entirely and becomes a free fragment in the vertebral canal and epidural space (refer to Figure 16-69). Two types of disk prolapse exist:

- *Extrusion.* Extension of nuclear material beyond the confines of the posterior longitudinal ligament or above and below the disk space, as detected on MRI, but still in contact with the disk.[71]
- *Sequestration.* The extruded nucleus has separated from the disk and moved away from the prolapsed area.[71]

The clinical signs and symptoms vary depending on the degree and direction of the protrusion as well as the spinal level of the lesion:

- Posterior or posterolateral protrusions are the most common. With a small posterior or posterolateral protrusion, there may be pressure against the posterior longitudinal ligament or against the dura mater or its extensions around the nerve roots. In such cases, the patient may describe a severe midline back ache or pain spreading across the back into the buttock and thigh. A large posterior protrusion may cause spinal cord signs (cauda equina syndrome), which results in loss of bowel control, saddle anesthesia, and numbness in the legs. Cauda equina syndrome is considered a medical emergency so the supervising PT or physician must be notified immediately. A large posterolateral protrusion may cause partial cord or nerve root signs.
- An anterior protrusion may cause pressure against the anterior longitudinal ligament, resulting in back pain with no neurological symptoms.

As part of its unnatural history, the disk may or may not travel through each stage of herniation sequentially. It is also worth remembering that symptoms from a disk lesion may shift if integrity of the annular wall remains because the hydrostatic mechanism is still intact.

Intervention

The natural history of radiculopathy and disk herniation is not quite as favorable as for simple LBP, but it is still excellent, with approximately 50 percent of patients recovering in the first 2 weeks and 70 percent recovering in 6 weeks.[107] Complete bed rest is not recommended.[108,109]

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> Intervention focuses on a return to normal activities as soon as possible, patient education and involvement, and therapeutic exercises.

The McKenzie program can be valuable to the overall intervention strategy and, if centralization of pain occurs, a good response to physical therapy can be anticipated.[110] The physical examination component of the McKenzie method involves a comprehensive assessment of the patient, performed in the neutral, flexed, and extended positions of the spine, to gauge the responses, reactions, or effects of spinal loading, and for the presence of the centralization phenomenon. The same maneuvers are repeated with the trunk in the neutral position, shifted toward the side of pathology, and away from pathology. The end-range exercises theoretically move the NP away from the side of compression loading, with flexion exercises moving the NP posteriorly and extension exercises moving the NP anteriorly.[71] The midrange exercises are thought to be better suited for patients with symptoms of neural compression. The McKenzie approach uses physical signs, symptom behavior, and their relation to end-range lumbar test movements to determine appropriate classification and intervention.

Lateral Pelvic Shift

Patients with disk-related LBP commonly present with a pelvic shift or list when acute sciatica is present. In these cases, the patient may list away from the side of the sciatica, producing a so-called sciatic scoliosis. The lateral pelvic shift is perhaps the most commonly encountered. Determining the presence of a lateral shift deformity may help speed up the recovery from a derangement by first correcting the lateral shift deformity.[71] The direction of the list, although still controversial, is believed to result from the relative position of the disk herniation to the spinal nerve. Theoretically, when the disk herniation is lateral to the nerve root, the patient may deviate the spine away from the side of the irritated nerve, which has the effect of drawing the nerve root away from the disk fragment. When the herniation is medial to the nerve root, the patient may lean toward the side of the lesion, in an attempt to decompress the nerve root. It is also theorized that this is a protective position resulting from the following:

- Irritation of a zygapophyseal joint
- Irritation of a spinal nerve or its dural sleeve, caused by disk herniation and the resulting muscle spasm
- Spasm of the quadratus lumborum muscle and, occasionally, the iliacus muscle
- The size of the disk protrusion

To determine the relevance of the shift, a side-glide test sequence is used by the PT with the patient in standing, side lying, or prone. The side-glide test sequence is performed by manually correcting the shift by pushing the pelvis into its correct position (**FIGURE 19.70**).[71] If the side-glide produces either a centralization or peripheralization of the patient's symptoms, the test is considered positive for a relevant lateral shift. Also, for a lateral shift to be significant, the patient must exhibit an inability to self-correct past midline when asked to shift in the direction opposite the shift. It is important to remember that any relevant lateral shift must be corrected, using side-glides, before the patient attempts the McKenzie extension exercises. A lateral shift that is not deemed to be relevant or to be a deformity, per McKenzie's criteria, may be treated with only sagittal plane movements (e.g., extension principles).[71]

Once the centralizing position/motion is identified from examination, the patient is instructed to perform these maneuvers repetitively or sustain certain positions for specific periods throughout the day. Theoretically, the McKenzie program is designed to reduce the disk herniation by altering the position/shape of the NP/annulus using restricted end-range extension loading for a prolonged period and then to maintain the reduction and aid recovery of function. In cases of radiculopathy, the goal is to decrease radiating symptoms into the limb and, thus, to centralize the pain using specific maneuvers or positions, such as the lateral shift correction. The McKenzie positions and movements typically involve a series of active and passive movements performed at the beginning, middle, and end ranges of trunk flexion, extension, and combinations of side bending and rotation called *side gliding*.[71] The patient's response to the examination determines a classification and the direction of preference for therapeutic exercise, with the direction chosen being based on the ability of a position or movement to centralize the patient's symptoms. As mentioned previously, the three major classifications or syndromes are *postural, dysfunction*, and *derangement*. Interventions are based on the type of syndrome diagnosed by the PT.

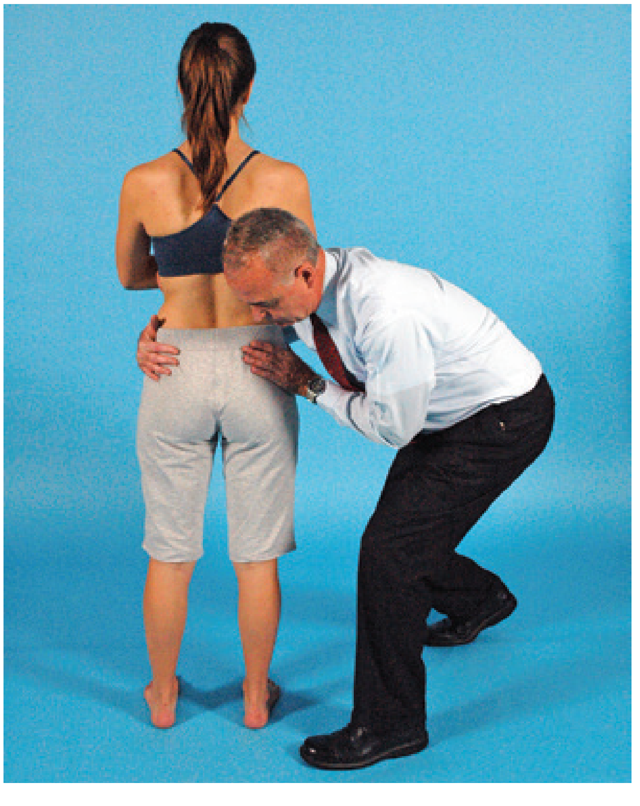


FIGURE 19.70 Side-glide test.

Postural Syndrome The postural syndrome is generally not affected by mechanical maneuvers performed by the clinician or the patient, so the focus of the intervention is to isolate and subsequently instruct the patient to avoid the offending position(s). The "slouch/overcorrect" maneuver is taught to the patient. The patient should sit on the edge of the chair and allow the lumbar spine to slouch into a fully flexed position and allow the head and chin to protrude. He or she must then smoothly move into a fully erect sitting position, achieving a maximal lumbar lordosis, with the head held directly over the spine and with a retracted chin.[75] This postural motion should be repeatedly performed from the position of "poor" (slouch) posture to the overcorrect position.

Dysfunction Syndrome The symptoms related to the dysfunction syndrome tend to be related to movement and become apparent in the difficulty or inability of the patient to accomplish end range of movement, most frequently in the extremes of flexion and extension. The intervention goal for the dysfunction syndrome is the restoration of function or movement of the adaptively shortened tissue using frequent repetition of restricted end-range exercises. To achieve the lengthening of adaptively shortened soft tissues, the stretches need to be performed daily every 2 to 3 hours. This usually needs to be continued for a 4- to 6-week period or until the patient can fully stretch without any end-range pain. The following instructions must be given to the patient:[75]

- Stretch in the direction of movement loss and end-range pain.
- Allow elongation without microtrauma.
- Pain produced by stretching must stop shortly after release of stress. (Persisting pain afterward indicates overstretching.)
- Peripheralization of symptoms should never occur.
- Stretching must be strong enough to reproduce discomfort or some pain.

- The stretches must be performed regularly during the day (15 times every 2 hours).

Derangement Syndrome The intervention goal for the derangement syndrome is to reduce the derangement by altering the position/shape of the NP/annulus using restricted end-range loading for a prolonged period and then to maintain the reduction and aid the recovery of function.[75] Mechanical treatment is dependent on the mechanical diagnosis for derangements. The sequential extension progression advocated by McKenzie, following correction/self-correction (**FIGURE 19.71**) of any lateral deviation, is initiated once the patient is able to tolerate prone lying. The sequence involves prone on elbows (**FIGURE 19.72**), prone push-up (**FIGURE 19.73**), extension in standing (**FIGURE 19.74**), and prone strengthening of the lumbar extensors with arms bent (**FIGURE 19.75**) and arms straight (**FIGURE 19.76**). The goal of treatment is to prevent and treat any peripheralization

FIGURE 19.71 Self-correction for lateral shift.

FIGURE 19.72 Prone on elbows.

FIGURE 19.73 Prone push-up.

FIGURE 19.74 Extension in standing.

FIGURE 19.75 Prone strengthening: arms bent.

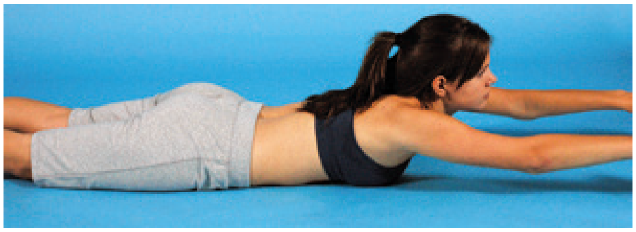


FIGURE 19.76 Prone strengthening: arms straight.

of symptoms, with the focus on the centralization of symptoms, and the patient is educated to discontinue any activities/exercises that cause peripheralization.

In addition, the patient is instructed in a lumbar stabilization program, in which neutral zone mechanics are practiced in various positions to decrease stress to the lumbosacral spine. Lumbar stabilizing exercises have been recommended to improve lumbar function in patients with low back injury and to improve their activities of daily living. It is theorized that these types of exercise may strengthen the stabilizer muscles, which control and limit the free movement of one vertebra on the other, thereby accelerating the recovery process of the herniated disk. The lumbar stabilization exercise progression is described in the "General Intervention Strategies" section earlier in this chapter.

Surgical Intervention

The indications for surgical treatment of symptomatic lumbar disk disease include the following:[111]

- A patient with cauda equina syndrome
- A patient demonstrating progressive neurological deficit (increased peripheralization of symptoms, increased weakness) during a period of observation
- A patient with persistent sciatic pain, despite conservative management, for a period of 6 to 12 weeks

There are three common surgical options:

- *Diskectomy (also called open discectomy)*. The surgical removal of herniated disk material that is impinging a nerve root or the spinal cord. Before the disk material is removed, the lamina from the affected vertebra may be removed (laminotomy or laminectomy)
- *Microdiskectomy*. Requires only a tiny incision to remove only that portion of the disk that is impinging on the spinal nerve root. The recovery time for this particular surgery is usually much less than is required for traditional lumbar surgery. Numerous variations exist.
- *Percutaneous diskectomy*. An instrument is introduced through a needle and placed into the center of the disk where a series of channels are created to remove tissue from the nucleus. Tissue removal from the nucleus acts to decompress the disk and relieve the pressure exerted by the disk on the nearby nerve root.

Degenerative Spinal Stenosis

Degenerative spinal stenosis (DSS) is defined as narrowing of the spinal canal (central stenosis), nerve root canal, or foramen (lateral stenosis).

Central stenosis is characterized by a narrowing of the spinal canal around the the cal sac containing the cauda equina (**FIGURE 19.77**). The causes for this type of stenosis include facet joint arthrosis and hypertrophy, thickening and bulging of the ligament enslaving them, bulging of the IVD, and spondylolisthesis.

Lateral stenosis is characterized by encroachment of the spinal nerve in the lateral recess of the spinal canal or in the intervertebral foramen (**FIGURE 19.78**). Initially the depth of the canal that constituted narrowing was identified as an

FIGURE 19.77 Central stenosis. The darkened area above the triangular shape is the sign compression.

© Living Art Enterprises, LLC/Photo Researchers, Inc.

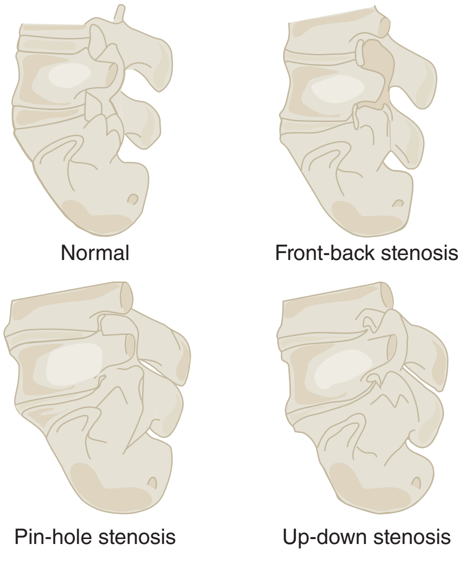


FIGURE 19.78 Lateral stenosis.

anteroposterior measurement, but more recently the lateral width of the spinal canal has been studied.[112] The causes for this type of stenosis include facet joint hypertrophy, loss of IVD height, IVD bulging, and spondylolisthesis. This type is more commonly encountered by the orthopaedic physical therapist assistant (PTA).

A compression of the nerve within the canal may result in a limitation of the arterial supply or claudication resulting from the compression of the venous return. Neurogenic claudication, also referred to as pseudoclaudication, may result in nerve root ischemia and symptomatic claudication. Neurogenic claudication is manifested as poorly localized pain, paresthesias, or cramping of one or both lower extremities, which is brought on by walking and relieved by sitting. Compressive loading of the spine also can exacerbate symptoms, such as those that occur with walking. Central stenosis can result in symptoms related to cauda equina compression. Most of the compression occurs when the canal is at its narrowest diameter, with relief occurring when the diameter increases. During the physical examination, the PT may use different positions of the lumbar spine while the patient is using a stationary bike to help the clinician to differentiate neurogenic from vascular claudication:[113,114]

- Cycling increases symptoms in vascular claudication due to the increased demand for blood supply.
- Cycling increases symptoms of neurogenic claudication with an erect lumbar spine during cycling.
- Cycling decreases symptoms of neurogenic claudication with the lumbar spine flexed as patients with this condition are far more comfortable leaning forward or sitting, which flexes the spine more than walking.

☑ KEY POINT

The compression of the foraminal contents in the canal may occur more often with certain movements or changes in posture as follows:

- The length of the canal is shorter in lumbar lordosis than kyphosis.
- Extension and, to a lesser degree, side bending of the lumbar spine toward the involved side produces a narrowing of the canal.
- Flexion of the lumbar spine reverses the process, returning both the venous capacity and the blood flow to the nerve.

Intervention

Conservative The therapeutic exercise progression is based on the underlying impairments, and should include the following:

- Postural education with an emphasis on teaching the patient to maintain a posterior pelvic tilt when standing.
- Hip flexor, rectus femoris, and lumbar paraspinal stretching. There is some controversy as to whether the hamstrings should be stretched because lengthening of these muscles may allow the pelvis to rotate anteriorly, resulting in an increased lordosis and further stenosis.
- Lumbar (core) stabilization exercises targeting the abdominals and gluteals.
- Aerobic conditioning.
- Modified Williams flexion exercises. The goal of some of these exercises is to temporarily widen the intervertebral foramina and gap the zygapophyseal (facet) joints, thereby reducing nerve root compression. There are also strengthening exercises for the abdominal muscles (in order to lift the pelvis from the front) and strengthening exercises for the gluteal muscles (to pull the back of the pelvis down) with the long-term aim of producing a natural posterior tilt/flattening of the lordosis. These exercises are:
    - Trunk flexion or crunch (**FIGURE 19.79**)
    - Posterior pelvic tilt (refer to Figure 19.16)
    - Trunk flexion or bilateral/single knee to chest (**FIGURE 19.80**)

FIGURE 19.79 Trunk flexion.

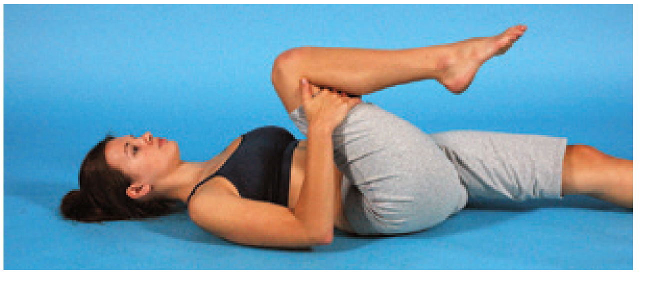


FIGURE 19.80 Single knee to chest.

- Iliotibial band stretch (see Chapter 23)
- Stand to squat or stand to sit (**FIGURE 19.81**)

Medical Permanent relief in lateral recess stenosis has been reported with an injection of local anesthetic around the nerve root. When injections fail, surgical decompression of the nerve root is often indicated.

Zygapophyseal Joint Dysfunction

Facet joint syndrome (FJS) is a term used to describe a pain-provoking dysfunction of the zygapophyseal joint.[115] This pain is the result of a lesion to the joint and its pain-sensitive structures. The etiology of FJS may be trauma-related, degenerative, or systemic. The clinical characteristics of FJS include the following:

- *Pain.* In the acute stage, there is pain and muscle guarding with all motions. In the later stages of healing, the pain is related to periods of immobility or excessive activity.
- *Impaired mobility.* This can manifest as either a hypomobility or a hypermobility/instability. Spinal extension is the motion most commonly affected, especially when combined with side bending or rotation.

Intervention

The conservative intervention for a zygapophyseal dysfunction can include specific joint mobilizations performed by the PT, postural education, and the exercise progression outlined in the "General Intervention Strategies" section.

FIGURE 19.81 Stand to squat.

Spondylolysis

Spondylolysis is a defect of the pars interarticularis of the spine, which lies between the superior and inferior articular facets of the vertebral arch. The actual defect in the pars covers a broad range of etiologies, from stress fracture to a traumatic bony fracture with separation.[116] Patients with bilateral pars defects can progress to spondylolisthesis (see next section). The exact cause of spondylolysis is unclear, but it is likely related to congenital, acquired (repeated microtrauma), or developmental causes. Spondylolysis is commonly asymptomatic, making diagnosis extremely difficult. Those patients with symptoms often have pain with extension and/or rotation of the lumbar spine.

> ☑ **KEY POINT**
>
> Spondylosis refers to degenerative osteoarthritis of the joints between the center of the spinal vertebrae and/or neural foraminae. If severe enough, it may cause pressure on nerve roots with subsequent sensory and/or motor disturbances, such as pain, paresthesia, or muscle weakness in the limbs.

Intervention

Initial therapeutic management of a patient with spondylolysis is conservative. Based on some studies,[105,117,118] the physical therapy intervention should strive to correct any muscle imbalances (adaptively shortened hip flexors), increase trunk muscle strength, and educate the patient to avoid activities involving excessive impact or lumbar hyperextension. Bracing also may be advocated. Surgical intervention is indicated only after patients have failed conservative management.

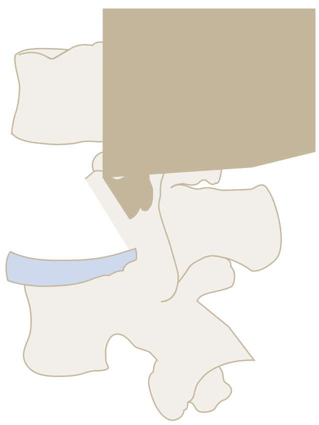
Spondylolisthesis

Spondylolisthesis, a diagnostic term that identifies anterior slippage and inability to resist the shear forces of a vertebral segment in relation to the vertebral segment immediately below it, usually occurs in the lumbar spine, with the most common site being L5–S1. Under normal conditions, any anterior slippage of the vertebra is resisted by the bony block of the posterior facets, by an intact neural arch and pedicle, and, in the case of the L5 vertebra, by the iliolumbar ligament.

> ☑ **KEY POINT**
>
> Frequently, spondylolisthesis leads to spinal instability—the inability of the spine to maintain its normal pattern of displacement when placed under physiological load.

The period of most rapid slipping is between the ages of 10 and 15 years, with no more slipping occurring after the age of 20.[119,120] Newman[121] historically described five groups represented by this deformity, based on etiology, which are still used today:

1. *Congenital spondylolisthesis.* This condition results from dysplasia of the fifth lumbar and sacral arches and zygapophyseal joints (**FIGURE 19.82**).
2. *Isthmic spondylolisthesis*. This condition is caused by a defect in the pars interarticularis, which can be an acute fracture, a stress fracture, or an elongation of the pars (**FIGURE 19.83**). In more advanced slips, there is a palpable soft tissue depression immediately above the L5 spinous process on passing the fingers down the lumbar



Intervention

The intervention for spondylolisthesis depends on the severity of the slip and the symptoms and ranges from conservative to surgical. The symptoms, if they do occur, usually begin in the second decade; however, there is often no correlation with the degree of slip and the level of symptoms.

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> A common clinical manifestation of spondylolisthesis is increased lumbar and hamstring muscular tone, which may be associated with a compensatory response secondary to ineffective stabilization of the painful spinal segment.[125]

Conservative Conservative intervention is more likely to be successful in the case of a limited slip and sparse clinical findings. Such an approach includes pelvic positioning (usually posteriorly) initially to provide symptomatic relief, followed by an active lumbar stabilization program while avoiding extension past neutral, and stretching of the rectus femoris and iliopsoas muscles to decrease the degree of anterior pelvic tilting.

Surgical The goals of surgery are to remove pressure on spinal nerves (i.e., decompression) and to provide stability to the lumbar spine. In most cases of spondylolisthesis, the lumbar decompression procedure is performed in conjunction with a spinal fusion. Many patients will require a ready-made or custom-molded brace postoperatively to be worn for 3 to 6 months.

Rectus Abdominis Strain

Rectus abdominis strains usually occur when the muscle is strongly contracting, as it is being moved into a stretched and lengthened position. These strains are common in such sports as tennis, wrestling, pole vaulting, weight lifting, and soccer, or in activities that involve heavy lifting. Abdominal strains are likely the result of inadequate abdominal strength and/or incorrect technique. It may be difficult to differentiate this condition from an inflammation of one of the internal abdominal organs, so a physician should be consulted whenever there is any doubt.

Intervention

These are difficult injuries to heal. Although mild strains may take only 2 to 3 weeks to heal, premature return to play can create large muscle ruptures, leading to hernia formation in the abdominal wall. Conservative intervention involves rest, ice, and compression during the acute phase, progressing to heat and gentle stretching, a graded resistive exercise program, and specific instructions on proper warm-up and cool-down. Training and retraining of the rectus abdominis should include half sit-ups, done slowly with the knees bent, to eliminate compensation by the iliopsoas.

Summary

The lumbar region is specialized for two important and interrelated functions. First, the lumbosacral junction and sacroiliac joints must transfer large forces from body weight and activated muscle through the pelvis to the lower extremities.[126] Second, the lumbar spine must interact mechanically with the pelvis and hip joints to maximize the movements of the trunk. A limitation in either region can increase the range of motion demands on the other, which may exceed the physical tolerance of a structure and result in injury.[126] Pain with limited mobility anywhere within the lumbar region can originate from many sources, including torn ligaments, muscle tears, herniated disks, nerve root compression, joint inflammation, or a combination of these.

Learning Portfolio

Case Study

You are observing a physical therapist performing a lumbar spine examination. During the examination, the patient is asked to ride a stationary bicycle, and while riding it, to sit up straight and then bend forward.

1. What is the purpose of this test and how is the physical therapist using it to help differentiate the causes of the patient's symptoms?

The patient you are currently treating has a lumbar disk protrusion at the L4–L5 level. In addition to teaching the patient a home exercise program, you also want to educate the patient on positions to adopt and positions to avoid to help in the healing process.

2. Which positions will you advise the patient to avoid and which positions will you encourage the patient to adopt? Why?

Your supervising physical therapist asked you to monitor the patient whose symptoms are aggravated by any motion that produces a sacral nutation.

3. What lumbar spine and hip motions will you avoid so as not to provoke the patient's symptoms?

Your student physical therapist assistant asks you to describe the differences between force closure and form closure of the sacroiliac joint.

4. How would you describe the differences between these two, and what would be the different approaches to each?

Because a patient of your supervising physical therapist arrived late, she asks you to measure the range of motion of the patient as part of a reevaluation using bubble goniometers/inclinometers.

5. Describe the different methods you would use to measure lumbar flexion and extension in terms of the goniometer placement and calculating the range of motion.

Review Questions

1. What is the central fluid-filled portion of the intervertebral disk called?
2. The lumbar spine has the most motion in which plane of motion?
3. Which motion of the lumbar spine results in a posterior migration of the nucleus pulposus of an intervertebral disk?
4. **True or false:** An anterior pelvic tilt decreases the lumbar lordosis.
5. What is the term used to describe anterior slippage, or translation, of one vertebra relative to another?
6. **True or false:** A posterior pelvic tilt requires activation of the abdominal muscles.
7. **True or false:** A patient with lateral spinal stenosis is typically prescribed McKenzie extension exercises.
8. Which activity can produce disk pressure that is equal to 2,750 percent of body weight?
9. **True or false:** When lifting a heavy object, the hip and knee extensor muscles must be fully utilized.
10. **True or false:** The term *sacral nutation* is used to describe sacral flexion.
11. When teaching a group of workers with no history of back injury to lift heavy objects off the floor, the physical therapist assistant should instruct them to:
    a. Stoop down to the object before trying to lift it.
    b. Keep the lumbar spine flexed during the lift.
    c. Increase the lordotic posture to increase stability when lifting.
    d. Keep objects as far away from the center of gravity as possible.

References

1. Fritz JM, Kim J, Dorius J. Importance of the type of provider seen to begin health care for a new episode low back pain: associations with future utilization and costs. *Journal of Evaluation in Clinical Practice*. 2016; 22:247–52.
2. Hanney WJ, Masaracchio M, Liu X, Kolber MJ. The influence of physical therapy guideline adherence on healthcare utilization and costs among patients with low back pain: a systematic review of the literature. *PloS One*. 2016; 11:e0156799.
3. Horn KK, Jennings S, Richardson G, Vliet DV, Hefford C, Abbott JH. The patient-specific functional scale: psychometrics, clinimetrics, and application as a clinical outcome measure. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2012; 42:30–42.
4. Aghilinejad M, Tavakolifard N, Mortazavi SA, Kabir Mokamelkhah E, Sotudehmanesh A, Mortazavi SA. The effect of physical and psychosocial occupational factors on the chronicity of low back pain in the workers of Iranian metal industry: a cohort study. *Medical Journal of the Islamic Republic of Iran*. 2015; 29:242.
5. Machado GC, Ferreira PH, Maher CG, Latimer J, Steffens D, Koes BW, et al. Transient physical and psychosocial activities increase the risk of nonpersistent and persistent low back pain: a case-crossover study with 12 months follow-up. *The Spine Journal*. 2016; 16:1445–52.
6. Yang H, Haldeman S, Lu ML, Baker D. Low back pain prevalence and related workplace psychosocial risk factors: a study using data from the 2010 National Health Interview Survey. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*. 2016; 39:459–72.
7. Plouvier S, Chastang JF, Cyr D, Bonenfant S, Descatha A, Goldberg M, et al. Occupational biomechanical exposure

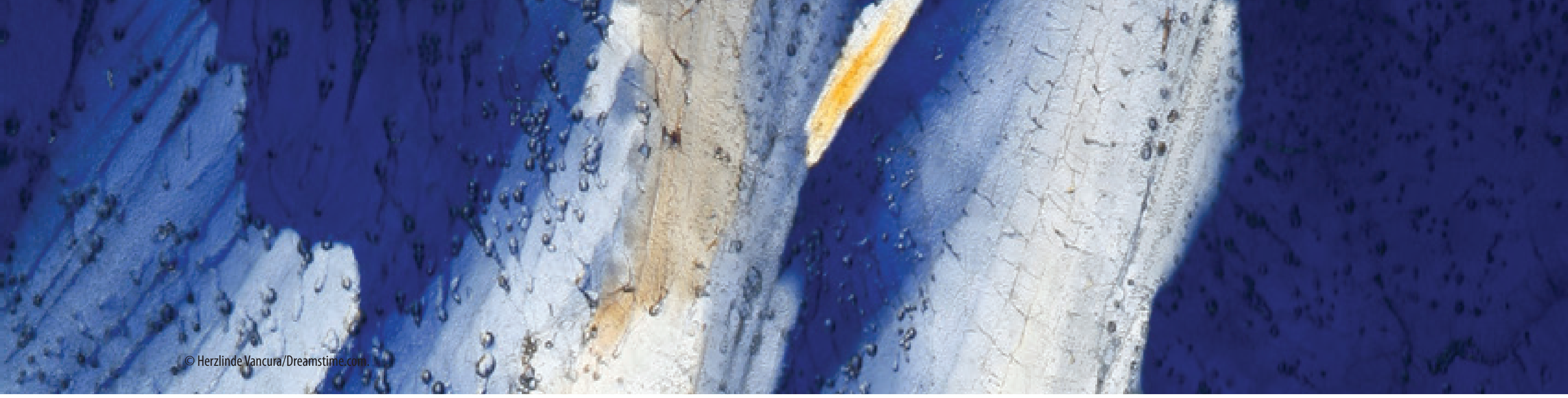
predicts low back pain in older age among men in the Gazel Cohort. *International Archives of Occupational and Environmental Health*. 2015; 88:501–10.
8. da Silva RA, Vieira ER, Carvalho CE, Oliveira MR, Amorim CF, Neto EN. Age-related differences on low back pain and postural control during one-leg stance: a case-control study. *European Spine Journal*. 2016; 25:1251–7.
9. Kienbacher T, Kollmitzer J, Anders P, Habenicht R, Starek C, Wolf M, et al. Age-related test-retest reliability of isometric trunk torque measurements in patiens with chronic low back pain. *Journal of Rehabilitation Medicine*. 2016; 48:893–902.
10. Wang YX, Wang JQ, Kaplar Z. Increased low back pain prevalence in females than in males after menopause age: evidences based on synthetic literature review. *Quantitative Imaging in Medicine and Surgery*. 2016; 6:199–206.
11. Lis AM, Black KM, Korn H, Nordin M. Association between sitting and occupational LBP. *European Spine Journal*. 2007; 16:283–98.
12. Claus A, Hides J, Moseley GL, Hodges P. Sitting versus standing: does the intradiscal pressure cause disc degeneration or low back pain? *Journal of Electromyography and Kinesiology*. 2008; 18:550–8.
13. Xu Y, Bach E, Orhede E. Occupation and risk for the occurrence of low-back pain (LBP) in Danish employees. *Occupational Medicine*. 1996; 46:131–6.
14. Kelsey JL. An epidemiological study of the relationship between occupations and acute herniated lumbar intervertebral discs. *International Journal of Epidemiology*. 1975; 4:197–205.
15. Backman AL. Health survey of professional drivers. *Scandinavian Journal of Work, Environment and Health*. 1983; 9:30–5.
16. Bongers PM, Boshuizen HC, Hulshof CTJ, et al. Back disorders in crane operators exposed to whole-body vibration. *International Archives of Occupational and Environmental Health*. 1988; 60:129–37.
17. Bongers PM, Hulshof CTJ, Dijkstra L, et al. Back pain and exposure to whole body vibration in helicopter pilots. *Ergonomics*. 1990; 33:1007–26.
18. Pietri F, Leclerc A, Boitel L, et al. Low-back pain in commercial drivers. *Scandinavian Journal of Work, Environment and Health*. 1992; 18:52–8.
19. Shiri R, Karppinen J, Leino-Arjas P, Solovieva S, Viikari-Juntura E. The association between smoking and low back pain: a meta-analysis. *The American Journal of Medicine*. 2010; 123:87 e7–35.
20. Green BN, Johnson CD, Snodgrass J, Smith M, Dunn AS. Association between smoking and back pain in a cross-section of adult americans. *Cureus*. 2016; 8:e806.
21. Schmelzer AC, Salt E, Wiggins A, Crofford LJ, Bush H, Mannino DM. Role of stress and smoking as modifiable risk factors for nonpersistent and persistent back pain in women. *The Clinical Journal of Pain*. 2016; 32:232–7.
22. Paksarian D, Cui L, Angst J, Ajdacic-Gross V, Rossler W, Merikangas KR. Stability and change in reported age of onset of depression, back pain, and smoking over 29 years in a prospective cohort study. *Journal of Psychiatric Research*. 2017; 88:105–12.
23. Miranda H, Viikari-Juntura E, Martikainen R, et al. Individual factors, occupational loading, and physical exercise as predictors of sciatic pain. *Spine*. 2002; 27:1102–9.
24. Wilson Zingg R, Kendall R. Obesity, vascular disease, and lumbar disk degeneration: associations of comorbidities in low back pain. *Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation Journal*. 2016; 9(4):398–402.
25. Zarghami A, Nazari P. Obesity: an inevitable risk factor in evaluation of low back pain. *Journal of Back and Musculoskeletal Rehabilitation*. 2016; 30(2):393–94.
26. Zhang TT, Liu Z, Liu YL, Zhao JJ, Liu DW, Tian QB. Obesity as a risk factor for low back pain: a meta-analysis. *Clinical Spine Surgery*. 2016.
27. Dario AB, Loureiro Ferreira M, Refshauge K, Luque-Suarez A, Ordonana JR, Ferreira PH. Obesity does not increase the risk of chronic low back pain when genetics are considered. A prospective study of Spanish adult twins. *The Spine Journal*. 2017; 17:282–90.
28. Nordin M, Hiebert R, Pietrek M, et al. Association of comorbidity and outcome in episodes of nonspecific low back pain in occupational populations. *Journal of Occupational and Environmental Medicine*. 2002; 44:677–84.
29. Hanscom DA, Brox JI, Bunnage R. Defining the role of cognitive behavioral therapy in treating chronic low back pain: an overview. *Global Spine Journal*. 2015; 5:496–504.
30. Deyo RA, Mirza SK, Turner JA, Martin BI. Overtreating chronic back pain: time to back off? *Journal of the American Board of Family Medicine*. 2009; 22:62–8.
31. Bodack MP, Monteiro M. Therapeutic exercise in the treatment of patients with lumbar spinal stenosis. *Clinical Orthopaedics and Related Research*. 2001; 384:144–52.
32. Danielsen J, Johnsen R, Kibsgaard S, et al. Early aggressive exercise for postoperative rehabilitation after discectomy. *Spine*. 2000; 25:1015–20.
33. O'Sullivan PB. Lumbar segmental 'instability': clinical presentation and specific stabilizing exercise management. *Manual Therapy*. 2000; 5:2–12.
34. Hall C. Therapeutic exercise for the lumbopelvic region. In: Hall C, Thein-Brody L, editors. *Therapeutic Exercise: Moving Toward Function*. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2005. p. 349–401.
35. Bogduk N, Twomey LT. Anatomy and biomechanics of the lumbar spine. In: Bogduk N, Twomey LT, editors. *Clinical Anatomy of the Lumbar Spine and Sacrum*, 3rd ed. Edinburgh: Churchill Livingstone; 1997. p. 2–53; 71–76; 81–152.
36. Tsuji H, Hirano N, Ohshima H, et al. Structural variation of the anterior and posterior anulus fibrosus in the development of the human lumbar intervertebral disc: a risk factor for intervertebral disc rupture. *Spine*. 1993; 18:204–10.
37. Oxland TR. Fundamental biomechanics of the spine: what we have learned in the past 25 years and future directions. *Journal of Biomechanics*. 2016; 49:817–32.
38. Nachemson AL. Intradiscal pressure. *Journal of Neurosurgery*. 1995; 82:1095.
39. Sato K, Kikuchi S, Yonezawa T. In vivo intradiscal pressure measurement in healthy individuals and in patients with ongoing back problems. *Spine*. 1999; 24:2468–74.
40. Kraan GA, Smit TH, Hoogland PV, Snijders CJ. Lumbar extraforaminal ligaments act as a traction relief and prevent spinal nerve compression. *Clinical Biomechanics*. 2010; 25:10–5.
41. Troyer KL, Puttlitz CM. Nonlinear viscoelasticty plays an essential role in the functional behavior of spinal ligaments. *Journal of Biomechanics*. 2012; 45:684–91.
42. Hodges PW, Richardson CA. Altered trunk muscle recruitment in people with low back pain: A motor control

evaluation of transversus abdominis. *Archives of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation*. 1999; 80:1005–12.
43. O'Sullivan PB, Dankaerts W, Burnett AF, Farrell GT, Jefford E, Naylor CS, et al. Effect of different upright sitting postures on spinal-pelvic curvature and trunk muscle activation in a pain-free population. *Spine*. 2006; 31:E707–12.
44. O'Sullivan PB. 'Clinical instability' of the lumbar spine: Its pathological basis, diagnosis and conservative management. In: Boyling JD, Jull GA, editors. *Grieve's Modern Manual Therapy: The Vertebral Column*. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 2004. p. 311–31.
45. Stanford ME. Effectiveness of specific lumbar stabilization exercises: A single case study. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*. 2002; 10:40–6.
46. McGill SM, Cholewicki J. Biomechanical basis for stability: an explanation to enhance clinical utility. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2001; 31:96–100.
47. Richardson C, Jull G. Muscle control-pain control. What exercises would you prescribe? *Manual Therapy*. 1995; 1:2–10.
48. Hides JA, Richardson CA, Jull GA. Multifidus muscle recovery is not automatic after resolution of acute, first-episode low back pain. *Spine*. 1996; 21:2763–9.
49. O'Sullivan P, Twomey L, Allison G. Altered patterns of abdominal muscle activation in chronic back pain patients. *The Australian Journal of Physiotherapy*. 1997; 43:91–8.
50. Edgerton V, Wolf S, Levendowski D, Roy R. Theoretical basis for patterning EMG amplitudes to assess muscle dysfunction. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise*. 1996; 28:744–51.
51. Vleeming A, Mooney V, Dorman T, Snijders C, Stoeckart R. *Movement, Stability and Low Back Pain*. Edinburgh: Churchill Livingstone; 1997.
52. Snijders CJ, Vleeming A, Stoeckart R, et al. Biomechanics of the interface between spine and pelvis in different postures. In: Vleeming A, Mooney V, Dorman T, Snijders C, Stoeckart R, editors. *Movement, Stability and Low Back Pain*. Edinburgh: Churchill Livingstone; 1997. p. 103.
53. Lee DG. *The Pelvic Girdle: An Approach to the Examination and Treatment of the Lumbo-Pelvic-Hip Region*, 2nd ed. Edinburgh: Churchill Livingstone; 1999.
54. Richardson CA, Jull GA, Hodges P, Hides J. *Therapeutic Exercise for Spinal Segmental Stabilization in Low Back Pain*. London: Churchill Livingstone; 1999.
55. Vleeming A. The function of the long dorsal sacroiliac ligament: its implication for understanding low back pain. *Spine*. 1996; 21:556.
56. Meadows JTS. *Manual Therapy: Biomechanical Assessment and Treatment, Advanced Technique*. Calgary: Swodeam Consulting, Inc.; 1995.
57. Kroll PG, Arnofsky S, Leeds S, Peckham D. The relationship between lumbar lordosis and pelvic tilt angle. *Journal of Back and Musculoskeletal Rehabilitation*. 2000; 1:21–5.
58. Jackson-Manfield P, Neumann DA. Structure and function of the hip. In: Jackson-Manfield P, Neumann DA, editors. *Essentials of Kinesiology for the Physical Therapist Assistant*. St. Louis, MO: Mosby Elsevier; 2009. p. 227–71.
59. Snijders CJ, Vleeming A, Stoeckart R, et al. Biomechanical modelling of sacroiliac joint stability in different postures. *Spine*. 1995; 9:419–32.
60. Vleeming A, Snijders CJ, Stoeckart R, Mens JMA. The role of the sacroiliac joints in coupling between spine, pelvis, legs and arms. In: Vleeming A, Mooney V, Dorman T, Snijders C, Stoeckart R, editors. *Movement, Stability and Low Back Pain*. Edinburgh: Churchill Livingstone; 1997. p. 53.
61. Franke BA. Formative dynamics: The pelvic girdle. *The Journal of Manual and Manipulative Therapy*. 2003; 11:12–40.
62. Vleeming A, Pool-Goudzwaard AL, Stoeckart R, Snijders CJ. The posterior layer of the thoracolumbar fascia: its function in load transfer from spine to legs. *Spine*. 1995; 20:753–8.
63. Hemborg B, Moritz U, Lowing H. Intra-abdominal pressure and trunk muscle activity during lifting. IV. The causal factors of the intra-abdominal pressure rise. *Scandinavian Journal of Rehabilitation Medicine*. 1985; 17:25–38.
64. Snijders CJ, Slagter AHE, van Strik R, et al. Why leg-crossing? The influence of common postures on abdominal muscle activity. *Spine*. 1995; 20:1989–93.
65. Lee DG. Instability of the sacroiliac joint and the consequences for gait. In: Vleeming A, Mooney V, Dorman T, Snijders C, Stoeckart R, editors. *Movement, Stability and Low Back Pain*. Edinburgh: Churchill Livingstone; 1997. p. 231.
66. Bogduk N. On the definitions and physiology of back pain, referred pain, and radicular pain. *Pain*. 2009; 147:17–9.
67. Mechelli F, Preboski Z, Boissonnault WG. Differential diagnosis of a patient referred to physical therapy with low back pain: abdominal aortic aneurysm. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2008; 38:551–7.
68. Carlson SW, Magee S, Carlson WO. An algorithm for the evaluation and treatment of sacroiliac joint dysfunction. *South Dakota Medicine*. 2014; 67:445–9, 51.
69. Eskander JP, Ripoll JG, Calixto F, Beakley BD, Baker JT, Healy PJ, et al. Value of examination under fluoroscopy for the assessment of sacroiliac joint dysfunction. *Pain Physician*. 2015; 18:E781–6.
70. Jonely H, Brismee JM, Desai MJ, Reoli R. Chronic sacroiliac joint and pelvic girdle dysfunction in a 35-year-old nulliparous woman successfully managed with multimodal and multidisciplinary approach. *The Journal of Manual and Manipulative Therapy*. 2015; 23:20–6.
71. McKenzie RA, May S. *The Lumbar Spine: Mechanical Diagnosis and Therapy*, 2nd ed. Waikanae, NZ: Spinal Publication; 2003.
72. Sahrmann SA. *Diagnosis and Treatment of Movement Impairment Syndromes*. St Louis: Mosby; 2002.
73. O'Sullivan P. Diagnosis and classification of chronic low back pain disorders: maladaptive movement and motor control impairments as underlying mechanism. *Manual Therapy*. 2005; 10:242–55.
74. Delitto A, Erhard RE, Bowling RW. A treatment-based classification approach to low back syndrome: identifying and staging patients for conservative management. *Physical Therapy*. 1995; 75:470–89.
75. Heffner SL, McKenzie R, Jacob G. McKenzie protocols for mechanical treatment of the low back. In: Morris C, editor. *Low Back Syndromes: Integrated Clinical Management*. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2006. p. 611–22.
76. Van Dillen LR, Sahrmann SA, Norton BJ, Caldwell CA, McDonnell MK, Bloom N. The effect of modifying patient-preferred spinal movement and alignment during symptom testing in patients with low back pain: a preliminary report. *Archives of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation*. 2003; 84:313–22.
77. Van Dillen LR, Sahrmann SA, Norton BJ, Caldwell CA, Fleming D, McDonnell MK, et al. Effect of active limb movements on symptoms in patients with low back pain. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2001; 31:402-13; discussion 14–8.

78. Alrwaily M, Timko M, Schneider M, Stevans J, Bise C, Hariharan K, et al. Treatment-based classification system for low back pain: revision and update. *Physical Therapy*. 2016; 96:1057–66.
79. van Tulder MW, Koes BW, Bouter LM. Conservative treatment of acute and chronic nonspecific low back pain: a systematic review of randomized controlled trials of the most common interventions. *Spine*. 1997; 22:2128–56.
80. Burton AK, Waddell G. Clinical guidelines in the management of low back pain. *Baillere's Clinical Rheumatology*. 1998; 12:17–35.
81. Abenhaim L, Rossignol M, Valat J-P, et al. The role of activity in the therapeutic management of back pain. Report of the International Paris Task Force on back pain. *Spine*. 2000; 25(Suppl 4S):1S–33S.
82. Rozenberg S, Delval C, Rezvani Y, et al. Bed rest or normal activity for patients with acute low back pain: a randomized controlled trial. *Spine*. 2002; 27:1487–93.
83. Navalgund A, Buford JA, Briggs MS, Givens DL. Trunk muscle reflex amplitudes increased in patients with subacute, recurrent LBP treated with a 10-week stabilization exercise program. *Motor Control*. 2013; 17:1–17.
84. Bade M, Cobo-Estevez M, Neeley D, Pandya J, Gunderson T, Cook C. Effects of manual therapy and exercise targeting the hips in patients with low-back pain: a randomized controlled trial. *Journal of Evaluation In Clinical Practice*. 2017: 23(4):734–40.
85. Coulombe BJ, Games KE, Neil ER, Eberman LE. Core stability exercise versus general exercise for chronic low back pain. *Journal of Athletic Training*. 2017; 52:71–2.
86. Gomes-Neto M, Lopes JM, Conceicao CS, Araujo A, Brasileiro A, Sousa C, et al. Stabilization exercise compared to general exercises or manual therapy for the management of low back pain: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Physical Therapy in Sport*. 2017; 23:136–42.
87. Paungmali A, Joseph LH, Patraporn S, Pirunsan U, Uthaikhup S. Lumbopelvic core stabilization exercise and pain modulation among individuals with chronic nonspecific low back pain. *Pain Practice*. 2017. doi: 10.1111/papr.12552
88. Brukner P, Khan K. Core stability. In: Brukner P, Khan K, editors. *Clinical Sports Medicine*, 3rd ed. Sydney: McGraw-Hill; 2007. p. 158–73.
89. Hodges P, Richardson C. Inefficient muscular stabilisation of the lumbar spine associated with low back pain: a motor control evaluation of transversus abdominis. *Spine*. 1996; 21:2540–650.
90. Hodges PW, Richardson CA. Delayed postural contraction of transversus abdominis in low back pain associated with movement of the lower limb. *Journal of Spinal Disorders*. 1998; 11:46–56.
91. Hagins M, Adler K, Cash M, et al. Effects of practice on the ability to perform lumbar stabilization exercises. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 1999; 29:546–55.
92. Kisner C, Colby LA. The spine: exercise interventions. In: Kisner C, Colby LA, editors. *Therapeutic Exercise Foundations and Techniques*, 5th ed. Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2002. p. 439–80.
93. Imai A, Okubo Y, Kaneoka K. Evaluation of psoas major and quadratus lumborum recruitment using diffusion-weighted imaging before and after 5 trunk exercises. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2017; 47:108–14.
94. Lehman GJ, McGill SM. Quantification of the differences in electromyographic activity magnitude between the upper and lower portions of the rectus abdominis muscle during selected trunk exercises. *Physical Therapy*. 2001; 81:1096–101.
95. O'Sullivan P. It's time for change with the management of non-specific chronic low back pain. *British Journal of Sports Medicine*. 2012; 46:224–7.
96. O'Sullivan P, Caneiro JP, O'Keeffe M, O'Sullivan K. Unraveling the complexity of low back pain. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2016; 46:932–7.
97. Rabey M, Beales D, Slater H, O'Sullivan P. Multidimensional pain profiles in four cases of chronic non-specific axial low back pain: an examination of the limitations of contemporary classification systems. *Manual Therapy*. 2015; 20:138–47.
98. Hides JA, Jull GA, Richardson CA. Long-term effects of specific stabilizing exercises for first-episode low back pain. *Spine*. 2001; 26:E243–8.
99. van der Velde G, Mierau D. The effect of exercise on percentile rank aerobic capacity, pain, and self-rated disability in patients with chronic low-back pain: a retrospective chart review. *Archives of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation*. 2000; 81:1457–63.
100. Bentsen H, Lindgarde F, Manthorpe R. The effect of dynamic strength back exercise and/or a home training program in 57-year-old women with chronic low back pain. Results of a prospective randomized study with a 3-year follow-up period. *Spine*. 1997; 22:1494–500.
101. Nelson BW, O'Reilly E, Miller M, Hogan M, Wegner JA, Kelly C. The clinical effects of intensive, specific exercise on chronic low back pain: a controlled study of 895 consecutive patients with 1-year follow up. *Orthopedics*. 1995; 18:971–81.
102. Cleland J, Schulte C, Durall C. The role of therapeutic exercise in treating instability-related lumbar spine pain: a systematic review. *Journal of Back and Musculoskeletal Rehabilitation*. 2002; 16:105–15.
103. Long DM, BenDebba M, Torgenson W. Persistent back pain and scitica in the United States: patient characteristics. *Journal of Spinal Disorders*. 1996; 9:40–58.
104. Boden SD, Wiesel SW. Lumbosacral segmental motion in normal individuals. Have we been measuring instability properly? *Spine*. 1990; 15:571–6.
105. O'Sullivan P, Twomey LT, Allison GT. Evaluation of specific stabilizing exercise in the treatment of chronic low back pain with radiologic diagnosis of spondylolysis or spondylolisthesis. *Spine*. 1997; 22:2959–67.
106. McGill SM. Low back exercises: evidence for improving exercise regimes. *Physical Therapy*. 1998; 78:754–65.
107. Weinstein JN. A 45-year-old man with low back pain and a numb left foot. *JAMA*. 1998; 280:730–6.
108. Vroomen PC, de Krom MC, Slofstra PD, Knottnerus JA. Conservative treatment of sciatica: a systematic review. *Journal of Spinal Disorders*. 2000; 13:463–9.
109. Vroomen PC, de Krom MC, Wilmink JT, Kester AD, Knottnerus JA. Lack of effectiveness of bed rest for sciatica. *New England Journal of Medicine*. 1999; 340:418–23.
110. Laslett M, Oberg B, Aprill CN, McDonald B. Centralization as a predictor of provocation discography results in chronic low back pain, and the influence of disability and distress on diagnostic power. *The Spine Journal*. 2005; 5:370–80.
111. Ito T, Takano Y, Yuasa N. Types of lumbar herniated disc and clinical course. *Spine*. 2001; 26:648–51.
112. Huijbregts PA. Lumbopelvic region: aging, disease, examination, diagnosis, and treatment. In: Wadsworth C, editor. *Current Concepts of Orthopaedic Physical Therapy.*

Home Study Course. La Crosse, WI: Orthopaedic Section, APTA, Inc.; 2001.

113. Postacchinia F, Perugia D. Degenerative lumbar spondylolisthesis. Part I: Etiology, pathogenesis, pathomorphology, and clinical features. *Italian Journal of Orthopaedics and Traumatology*. 1991; 17:165–73.
114. Dyck P, Doyle JB. "Bicycle test" of van Gelderen in diagnosis of intermittent cauda equina compression syndrome. *Journal of Neurosurgery*. 1977; 46:667–70.
115. Wu J, Du Z, Lv Y, Zhang J, Xiong W, Wang R, et al. A new technique for the treatment of lumbar facet joint syndrome using intra-articular injection with autologous platelet rich plasma. *Pain Physician*. 2016; 19:617–25.
116. Thein-Nissenbaum J, Boissonnault WG. Differential diagnosis of spondylolysis in a patient with chronic low back pain. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2005; 35:319–26.
117. McNeely ML, Torrance G, Magee DJ. A systematic review of physiotherapy for spondylolysis and spondylolisthesis. *Manual Therapy*. 2003; 8:80–91.
118. Spratt KF, Weinstein JN, Lehmann TR, Woody J, Sayre H. Efficacy of flexion and extension treatments incorporating braces for low-back pain patients with retrodisplacement, spondylolisthesis, or normal sagittal translation. *Spine*. 1993; 18:1839–49.
119. Baker JF, Errico TJ, Kim Y, Razi A. Degenerative spondylolisthesis: contemporary review of the role of interbody fusion. *European Journal of Orthopaedic Surgery and Traumatology*. 2017; 27:169–80.
120. Zhu R, Niu WX, Zeng ZL, Tong JH, Zhen ZW, Zhou S, et al. The effects of muscle weakness on degenerative spondylolisthesis: a finite element study. *Clinical Biomechanics*. 2017; 41:34–8.
121. Newman PH. The etiology of spondylolisthesis. *The Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery*. 1963; 45B:39–59.
122. Guigui P, Ferrero E. Surgical treatment of degenerative spondylolisthesis. *Orthopaedics and Traumatology, Surgery and Research*. 2017; 103:(Suppl. 1):S11–20.
123. Randall RM, Silverstein M, Goodwin R. Review of pediatric spondylolysis and spondylolisthesis. *Sports Medicine and Arthroscopy Review*. 2016; 24:184–7.
124. Clark P, Letts M. Trauma to the thoracic and lumbar spine in the adolescent. *Canadian Journal of Surgery*. 2001; 44:337–45.
125. Cook C, Cook A, Fleming R. Rehabilitation for clinical lumbar instability in a female adolescent competitive diver with spondylolisthesis. *The Journal of Manual and Manipulative Therapy*. 2004; 12:91–9.
126. Jackson-Manfield P, Neumann DA. Structure and function of the vertebral column. In: Jackson-Manfield P, Neumann DA, editors. *Essentials of Kinesiology for the Physical Therapist Assistant*. St. Louis, MO: Mosby Elsevier; 2009. p. 177–225.


© Herzlinde Vancura/Dreamstime.com

CHAPTER 20

Shoulder Complex

CHAPTER OBJECTIVES

At the completion of this chapter, the reader will be able to:

1. Describe the anatomy of the joints, ligaments, muscles, blood, and nerve supply that comprise the region.
2. Describe the biomechanics of the shoulder complex, including the open- and close-packed positions, muscle force couples, and static and dynamic stabilizers.
3. Describe the relationship between muscle imbalance and functional performance of the shoulder.
4. Summarize the various factors that can cause shoulder dysfunction.
5. Describe and demonstrate intervention strategies and techniques based on clinical findings and established goals by the physical therapist.
6. Evaluate the intervention effectiveness to determine progress and recommend modifications as needed.
7. Plan an effective home program, and instruct the patient in its use.

Overview

The shoulder complex is composed of four articulations between the sternum, humerus, scapula, and clavicle (**FIGURE 20.1** and **FIGURE 20.2**) and the surrounding soft tissue structures that connect them. The joints of the shoulder complex are composed of three synovial joints (the glenohumeral [GH] joint, the acromioclavicular [AC] joint, and the sternoclavicular [SC] joint) and two functional articulations (suprahumeral/subacromial and scapulothoracic). The shoulder girdle has only one bony attachment to the axial skeleton via the SC joint.

Anatomy and Kinesiology

The blend of high mobility and low stability of the shoulder complex make this region a challenge for the clinician. Therefore, a sound knowledge of the anatomy and kinesiology is essential.

Sternoclavicular Joint

The SC joint represents the articulation between the medial end of the clavicle, the clavicular notch of the manubrium of the sternum, and the cartilage of the first rib, which forms the floor of the joint. The articulating surfaces of the SC joint are covered with fibrocartilage. Some confusion seems to exist about the classification of the SC joint—it is classified as a ball and socket joint, a plane joint, and a saddle joint. The SC joint is angulated slightly upward approximately 20 degrees in a posterior and lateral direction. The clavicle presents with an irregularly shaped surface to the meniscus and this lateral part of the joint acts as an ovoid articulation.[1] The SC joint allows motion in all three cardinal planes and is supported by a network of ligaments (TABLE 20.1), an articular disk, and a joint capsule. The motions at this joint include elevation and depression, protraction and retraction, and axial rotation (TABLE 20.2).

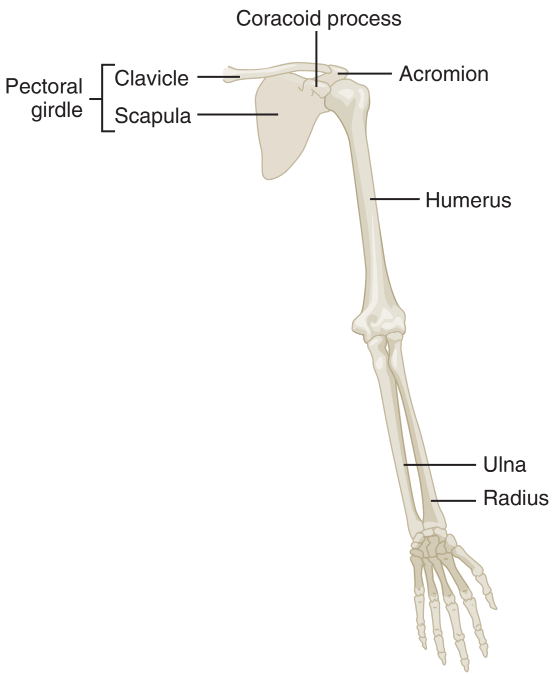


FIGURE 20.1 Bones of the upper extremity.

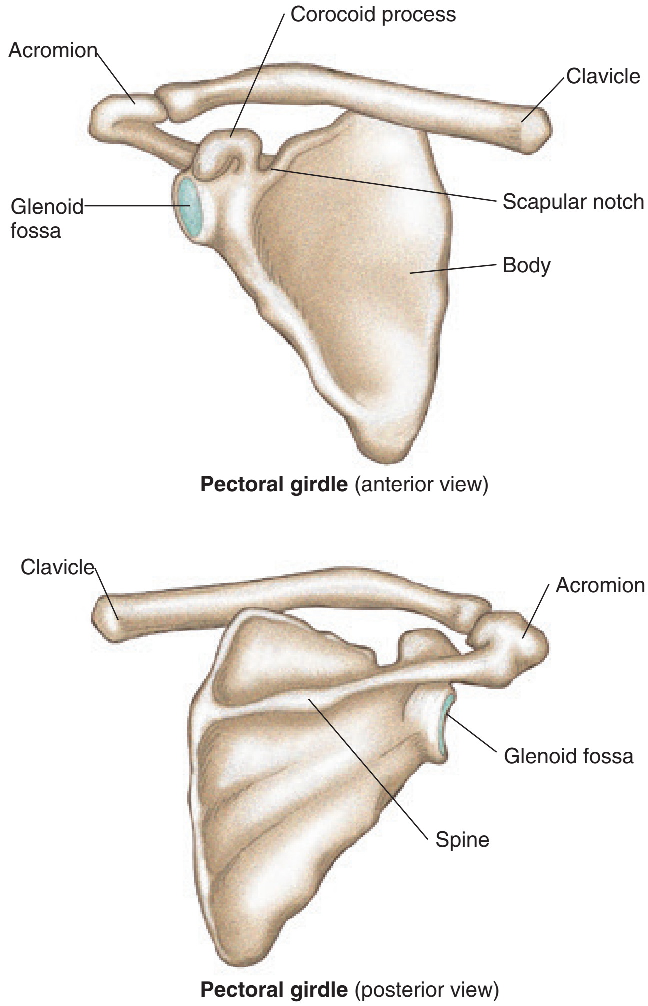


FIGURE 20.2 The scapula and clavicle.

TABLE 20.1 Ligaments of the Shoulder

Ligament	Description and Function
Clavicular Ligaments	
Coracoclavicular ligament	Comprised of the conoid and trapezoid ligaments, it both reinforces the connection between the coracoid process, and stabilizes the acromioclavicular (AC) joint.
Acromioclavicular ligament	Runs between the acromion process and the clavicle. Reinforces the connection between the acromion and the clavicle.
Sternoclavicular Ligaments	
Sternoclavicular ligament	Composed of anterior and posterior ligaments. Reinforces the connection between the sternum and the clavicle.

TABLE 20.1 Ligaments of the Shoulder *(continued)*

Ligament	Description and Function
Interclavicular ligament	Connects the superior-medial sternal ends of each clavicle with the capsular ligaments and the upper sternum. Strengthens the articular capsule and restricts downward forces.
Costoclavicular ligament	The strongest of the sternoclavicular ligaments. Reinforces the connection between the first rib and the clavicle and restricts superior forces.
Glenohumeral Ligaments	A series of capsular thickenings that limit excessive motion of the humeral head by reinforcing the connection between the glenoid fossa and the humerus.
Inferior glenohumeral ligament	Extends from the inferior edge of the glenoid cavity to the inferior aspect of the anatomic neck of the humerus. Parts include the anterior band, axillary pouch, and posterior band. Provides anterior stabilization, especially during abduction of the arm.
Middle glenohumeral ligament	Strongest of the GH ligaments. Passes from the medial edge of the glenoid cavity to the lower part of the lesser tubercle of the humerus. Limits external rotation at 45 degrees of abduction.
Superior glenohumeral ligament	Runs from glenoid rim to the anatomic neck. Works in conjunction with the coracohumeral ligament to prevent posterior and inferior instability.
Coracohumeral ligament	A broad ligament that reinforces the upper part of the capsule of the shoulder joint. Extends from the lateral end of the coracoid process and inserts on either side of the greater and lesser tuberosities. Provides anterior support by tightening with flexion and provides passive stability when the arm is dependent.
Transverse humeral ligament	Traverses the bicipital groove. Stabilizes the long head of the biceps muscle in the intertubercular groove.
Intrinsic Ligaments of the Scapula	
Superior transverse scapular ligament	Attached at one end to the base of the coracoid process, and at the other to the medial end of the scapular notch. Strengthens the connection between the coracoid process and the medial border of the scapular notch.
Inferior transverse scapular ligament	An inconstant fibrous band that passes from the lateral border of the spine of the scapula to the posterior margin of the glenoid cavity. Supports the connection between the lateral aspect of the root of the spine of the scapula and the glenoid fossa margin.
Coracoacromial ligament	Runs from the coracoid process to the anteroinferior aspect of the acromion, with some of its fibers extending to the AC joint. Reinforces the connection between the coracoid process and the acromion, stabilizing the joint.

TABLE 20.2 Movements of the Acromioclavicular and Sternoclavicular Complex

Motion	Range of Motion	Motion Limited By	Muscles Involved	Peripheral Nerves Involved
Protraction (sagittal plane: clavicle glides posteriorly, acromion glides anteriorly)	The distal clavicle moves approximately 10 cm.	Anterior SC ligament, costoclavicular ligament (posterior portion), anterior capsule of the SC joint	Serratus anterior, pectoralis minor	Long thoracic, lateral and medial pectoral
Retraction (transverse plane: clavicle glides anteriorly, acromion glides posteriorly)	Distal clavicle moves approximately 3 cm.	Posterior SC ligament, costoclavicular ligament (anterior portion), posterior capsule of the SC joint	Trapezius, rhomboids	Spinal accessory, dorsal scapular
Elevation (frontal plane: clavicle glides superiorly, only slight angular motion occurs at AC joint)	The distal clavicle moves approximately 10 cm.	Costoclavicular ligament, inferior capsule of the SC joint	Upper trapezius, levator scapulae	Spinal accessory, directly via C3–C4 and dorsal scapular
Depression (frontal plane: clavicle glides inferiorly, only slight angular motion occurs at AC joint)	Distal clavicle moves approximately 3 cm.	Interclavicular ligament, SC ligament, articular disk of SC joint, superior capsule of SC joint	Serratus anterior (lower portion), pectoralis minor	Long thoracic, lateral and medial pectoral
Rotation (transverse plane)	30 degrees at AC joint, then 30 degrees at SC joint.	SC: anterior and posterior SC ligament, interclavicular ligament, costoclavicular ligament AC: acromioclavicular ligament, coracoclavicular ligament (conoid [limits backward rotation], trapezoid [limits forward rotation])	Upper trapezius, serratus anterior (lower portion)	Spinal accessory, long thoracic

- *Elevation and depression.* Near-frontal plane movements about a near-anterior posterior axis of rotation, allowing approximately 45 degrees of clavicular elevation and 10 degrees of depression.
- *Protraction and retraction.* Occur in the horizontal plane about the vertical axis of rotation, allowing approximately 15 to 30 degrees of clavicular motion in either direction.
- *Axial rotation.* During abduction or flexion of the shoulder, the clavicle rotates posteriorly about its longitudinal axis. As the shoulder is abducted, the coracoclavicular ligament becomes tight and spins the clavicle posteriorly. As the shoulder is extended, or adducted back to its rest position, the clavicle rotates anteriorly.

The SC joint is not controlled by muscles and therefore lacks a particular capsular pattern. One possibility, seen clinically, is pain at the extreme ranges of motion, especially full arm elevation and horizontal adduction.

Scapulothoracic Articulation

This articulation is functionally a joint, but it lacks the anatomic characteristics of a true synovial joint. A lack of ligamentous support at this "joint" transfers the function of stability fully to the muscles that attach the scapula to the thorax. An altered position of the scapula and an abnormal motion at this joint have both been linked with shoulder complex dysfunction.[2,3] Motions at this joint are described according to the movement of the scapula relative to the thorax.

- *Elevation, depression, protraction (abduction), and retraction (adduction).* These motions are typically seen with clavicular motions at the SC joint and when the humerus moves, or during shoulder shrugging.
- *Upward and downward rotation.* These motions are seen with clavicular motions at the SC joint and rotation at the AC joint, and with motions of the humerus.
- *Winging and tipping.* These motions are seen with motions of the AC joint and motions of the humerus. Winging normally occurs with horizontal adduction of the humerus, whereas forward tipping of the scapula occurs in conjunction with internal rotation and extension of the humerus, as when reaching behind the back.

Because the scapulothoracic joint is not a true joint, it does not have a close-packed position or a capsular pattern.

☑ KEY POINT

An important bony landmark of the scapula is the coracoid process, medial to which run the major blood vessels and brachial plexus. The coracoid serves as a muscular attachment for the pectoralis minor, the short head of the biceps, and the coracobrachialis.

Acromioclavicular Joint

The AC joint is a gliding or plane joint, formed by the acromion and the lateral end of the clavicle. When viewed from above, the clavicle is convex anteriorly in the medial two-thirds and convex posteriorly in the lateral one-third. The clavicle serves as the lever by which the upper extremity acts on the torso, and as an attachment site for many soft tissues.[1] These include a series of ligaments (refer to Table 20.1), and the pectoralis major, sternocleidomastoid (SCM), deltoid, and trapezius muscles. The AC joint serves as the main articulation that suspends the upper extremity from the trunk, and is the joint about which the scapula moves. The joint has a thin capsule lined with synovium, which is strengthened inferiorly and superiorly by capsular ligaments. Superiorly, the AC ligament gives support to the capsule and serves as the primary restraint to posterior translation and posterior axial rotation at the joint.[4] The motions available at this joint occur in all three planes and include upward and downward rotation, rotation in the horizontal plane, and rotation in the sagittal plane (see Table 20.2). These relatively slight motions are essential during movements between the scapula and humerus. Similar to the SC joint, which is not controlled by muscles, the AC joint lacks a true capsular pattern. However, clinical evidence suggests that the capsular pattern for the AC joint is pain at the extremes of range of motion (ROM), especially horizontal adduction and full elevation.

Glenohumeral Joint

At the GH joint, an incongruous, ball-and-socket (spheroidal) joint, the convex humeral head articulates with the concave glenoid of the scapula, allowing for 3 degrees of freedom. The design of this joint (small shallow glenoid fossa, large surplus joint capsule) makes it relatively unstable, so the joint must rely on the static stability provided by a number of structures including a rim of tissue called the labrum, which surrounds the glenoid; the GH ligaments (superior, middle, inferior); the coracohumeral ligament; the coracoacromial ligament; the coracoclavicular ligaments (see Table 20.1); and the joint capsule. It also must rely on the dynamic stability afforded by the muscular dynamic stabilizers, in particular the rotator cuff muscles (supraspinatus, infraspinatus, teres minor, and subscapularis), the biceps tendon, and the muscles of scapular motion (**TABLE 20.3** and **TABLE 20.4**; **FIGURE 20.3** through **FIGURE 20.5**). Approximate available ranges of motion at the GH joint are listed in **TABLE 20.5**. Up to 12 bursae have been identified throughout the shoulder region. Because bursae receive a rich sensory innervation from mechanoreceptors and nociceptors, they have the potential to contribute to shoulder pain substantially.[5] Cyriax,[6] describes the capsular pattern for the GH joint as external rotation (ER) being the most limited, abduction the next most limited, and internal rotation (IR) the least limited in a 3:2:1 ratio, respectively. However, this pattern only appears to be consistent with adhesive capsulitis of the shoulder. IR, rather than ER or abduction, appears to be the most limited motion in conditions with selected capsular hypomobility.[7]

☑ KEY POINT

With the shoulder in roughly 90 degrees of abduction, movement of the humerus toward the midline in the horizontal plane is considered horizontal adduction. Horizontal abduction is regarded as any movement away from the midline in the horizontal plane.

TABLE 20.3 Muscles of the Shoulder Complex According to Their Actions on the Glenohumeral Joint and Scapula

Action	Muscles	Action	Muscles
Glenohumeral flexors	Coracobrachialis Short and long head of the biceps brachii Pectoralis major (clavicular head) Anterior deltoid	Scapular upward rotators	Serratus anterior Upper trapezius Lower trapezius
Glenohumeral extensors	Triceps (long head) Posterior deltoid Pectoralis major Teres major Latissimus dorsi	Scapular protractors	Serratus anterior Pectoralis minor
Glenohumeral abductors	Supraspinatus Anterior and middle deltoid	Scapular downward rotators	Rhomboids Pectoralis minor Levator scapula
Glenohumeral adductors	Pectoralis major Latissimus dorsi Teres major Coracobrachialis	Scapular retractors	Rhomboids Middle trapezius
Glenohumeral internal rotators	Pectoralis major Subscapularis Latissimus dorsi Teres major	Glenohumeral flexors	Coracobrachialis Short and long head of the biceps brachii Pectoralis major (clavicular head) Anterior deltoid
Glenohumeral external rotators	Infraspinatus Posterior deltoid Teres minor	Glenohumeral extensors	Triceps (long head) Posterior deltoid Pectoralis major Teres major Latissimus dorsi
Scapular abductors/ protractors	Pectoralis minor Serratus anterior (upper fibers)	Glenohumeral abductors	Supraspinatus Anterior and middle deltoid
Scapular adductors/ retractors	Levator scapulae Rhomboids Middle trapezius (upper and lower trapezius assist)	Glenohumeral adductors	Pectoralis major Latissimus dorsi Teres major Coracobrachialis
Scapular elevators	Upper trapezius Levator scapulae Rhomboids	Glenohumeral internal rotators	Pectoralis major Subscapularis Latissimus dorsi Teres major
Scapular depressors	Lower trapezius Latissimus dorsi Pectoralis minor Subclavius	Glenohumeral external rotators	Infraspinatus Posterior deltoid Teres minor

TABLE 20.3 Muscles of the Shoulder Complex According to Their Actions on the Glenohumeral Joint and Scapula *(continued)*

Action	Muscles	Action	Muscles
Scapular adductors/ retractors	Levator scapulae Rhomboids Middle trapezius (upper and lower trapezius assist)	Scapular abductors/ protractors	Pectoralis minor Serratus anterior (upper fibers)
Scapular elevators	Upper trapezius Levator scapulae Rhomboids	Scapular upward rotators	Serratus anterior Upper trapezius Lower trapezius
Scapular depressors	Lower trapezius Latissimus dorsi Pectoralis minor Subclavius	Scapular protractors	Serratus anterior Pectoralis minor
Scapular downward rotators	Rhomboids Pectoralis minor Levator scapula		
Scapular retractors	Rhomboids Middle trapezius		

TABLE 20.4 Shoulder Girdle Muscle Function and Innervation

Muscle	Origin	Insertion	Peripheral Nerve	Nerve Root (Contributing Levels)	Motions
Pectoralis major	Anterior surface of the sternal half of the clavicle; anterior surface of the sternum	Intertubercular groove of humerus	Pectoral	Clavicular head: C5 and C6 Sternocostal head: C7, C8, and T1	Adduction, horizontal adduction, and internal rotation Clavicular fibers: Forward flexion Sternocostal fibers: Extension
Pectoralis minor	Ribs 3–5	Medial border and superior surface of coracoid process of scapula	Medial pectoral	C8–T1	Stabilizes scapula by drawing it anteriorly and inferiorly against thoracic wall
Latissimus dorsi	Spinous processes of inferior six thoracic vertebrae, thoraco-lumbar fascia, iliac crest, and inferior three ribs	Floor of intertubercular groove of humerus	Thoracodorsal	C7 (C6, C8)	Adduction, extension, and internal rotation

(continues)

TABLE 20.4 Shoulder Girdle Muscle Function and Innervation *(continued)*

Muscle	Origin	Insertion	Peripheral Nerve	Nerve Root (Contributing Levels)	Motions
Teres major	Dorsal surface of inferior angle of scapula	Medial lip of intertubercular groove of humerus	Subscapular	C5–C8	Adduction, extension, horizontal abduction, and internal rotation
Teres minor	Superior part of lateral border of scapula	Inferior facet on greater tuberosity of humerus	Axillary	C5 (C6)	Horizontal abduction (also a weak external rotator)
Deltoid	Lateral one-third of clavicle, acromion, and spine of scapula	Deltoid tuberosity of humerus	Axillary	C5 (C6)	Anterior: Forward flexion, horizontal adduction Middle: Abduction Posterior: Extension, horizontal abduction
Supraspinatus	Supraspinatus fossa	Superior facet on greater tuberosity of humerus	Suprascapular	C5 (C6)	Abduction
Subscapularis	Subscapularis fossa	Lesser tuberosity of humerus	Upper and lower subscapular	C5–C8	Adduction and internal rotation
Infraspinatus	Infraspinatus fossa	Middle facet on greater tuberosity of humerus	Suprascapular	C5 (C6)	Abduction, horizontal abduction, and external rotation
Serratus anterior	External surfaces of lateral parts of ribs one through eight	Anterior surface of the medial border of scapula	Long thoracic	C5–C7	Protracts and rotates scapula and holds it against thoracic wall
Levator scapula	Posterior tubercles of transverse processes of C1–C4	Superior part of medial border of scapula	Dorsal scapular	C4–C5	Elevates scapula and tilts glenoid cavity inferiorly by rotating scapula
Rhomboids	Ligamentum nuchae and spinous processes of C7–T5	Medial border of scapula from level of spine to inferior angle	Dorsal scapular	C4–C5	Retracts scapula and rotates it to depress glenoid cavity

TABLE 20.4 Shoulder Girdle Muscle Function and Innervation *(continued)*

Muscle	Origin	Insertion	Peripheral Nerve	Nerve Root (Contributing Levels)	Motions
Coracobrachialis	Tip of coracoid process of scapula	Middle medial border of humerus	Musculocutaneous	C5–C6	Horizontal flexion and adduction of humerus at shoulder
Biceps brachii	Tip of coracoid and supraglenoid tubercle of scapula	Radial tuberosity and lacertus fibrosus	Musculocutaneous	C5–C6	Flexes arm and supinates forearm
Trapezius	Spinous processes of cervical and thoracic vertebrae	Scapula and acromion	Spinal accessory, branches of ansa cervicalis	CN XI	Elevates, retracts, and rotates scapula

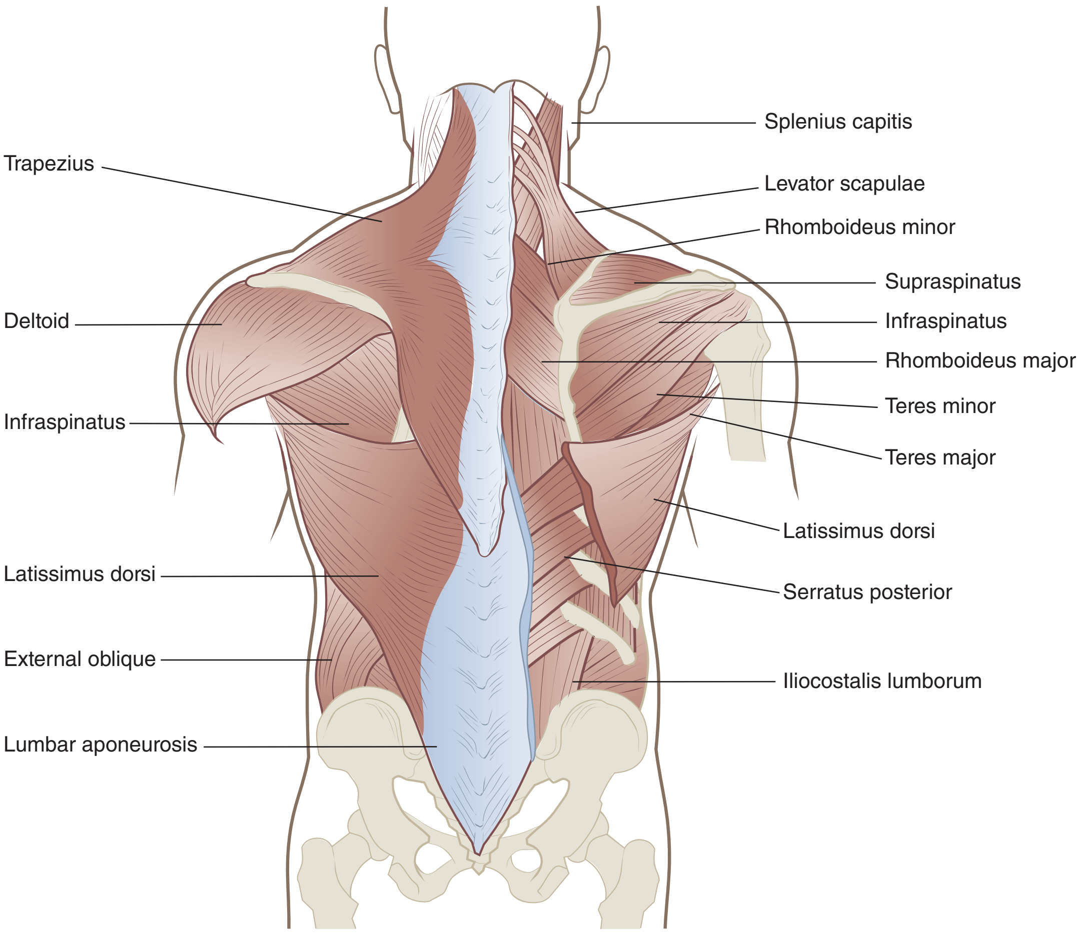


FIGURE 20.3 Muscles of the shoulder and posterior trunk.

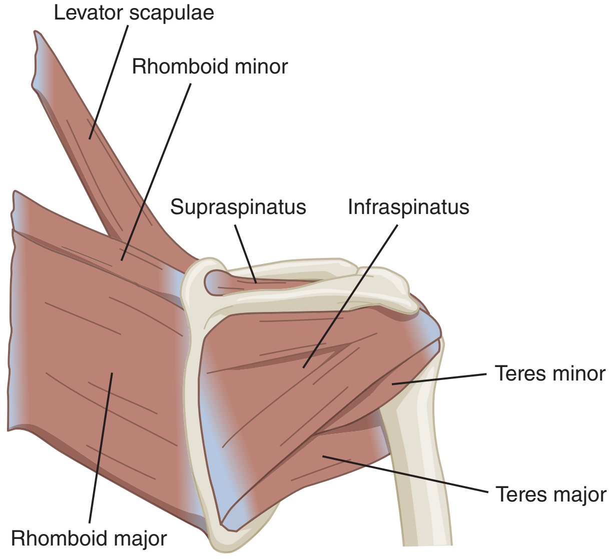


FIGURE 20.4 Key muscles of the posterior shoulder.

Coracoacromial Arch

The coracoacromial arch (**FIGURE 20.6**) is formed by the anteroinferior aspect of the acromion process, coracoacromial ligament, and inferior surface of the AC joint.[4] During overhead motion in the plane of the scapula, the supraspinatus tendon—the region of the cuff most involved in overuse syndromes of the shoulder—can pass directly underneath the coracoacromial arch. If the arm is elevated while internally rotated, the supraspinatus tendon passes under the coracoacromial ligament, whereas if the arm is externally rotated, the tendon passes under the acromion itself.[1]

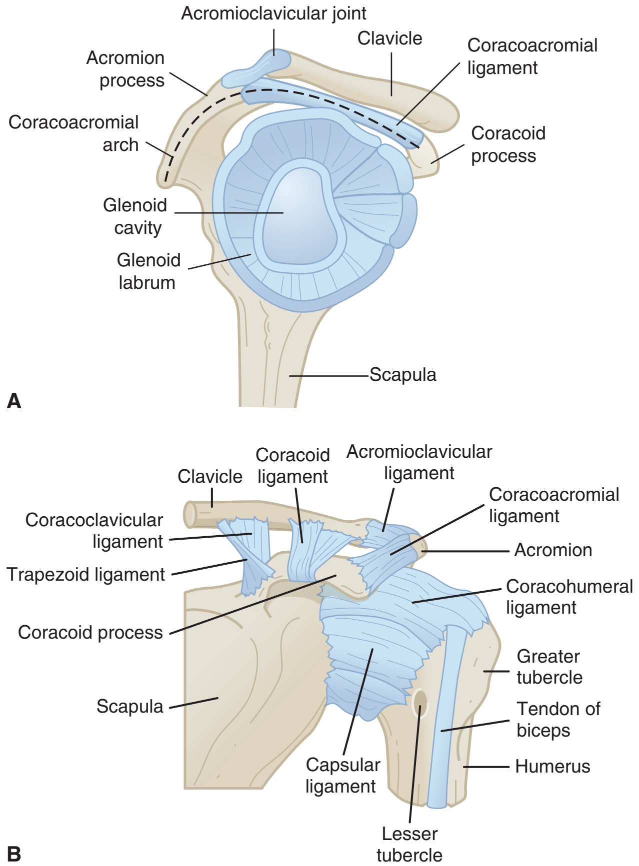


FIGURE 20.5 Ligaments of the **A.** AC and **B.** GH joints.

Suprahumeral/Subacromial Space

As the name suggests, the suprahumeral space is an area located on the superior aspect of the GH joint (**FIGURE 20.7**). The boundaries of the space are formed by the following:

- The greater tuberosity of the humeral head, inferiorly
- The coracoid process, anteromedially
- The coracoacromial arch, superiorly

The structures that are located within the suprahumeral space include the following (from inferior to superior)

- The head of the humerus
- The long head of the biceps tendon (intra-articular portion)
- The superior aspect of the joint capsule
- The supraspinatus and upper margins of the subscapularis and infraspinatus
- The subdeltoid–subacromial bursae
- The inferior surface of the coracoacromial arch

☑ KEY POINT

Elevating the arm decreases the distance between the acromion and the humerus, with the space at its narrowest between 60 and 120 degrees of scaption (the plane of motion that the scapula moves in). Muscle imbalances or capsular contractures can cause an increase in superior translation of the humeral head, further narrowing the space.

The Scapulohumeral Rhythm

The synchronized motion that occurs between the glenoid cavity and the humerus during arm elevation is referred to as *scapulohumeral rhythm*. Proper rhythm involves a rotation of the scapula during arm elevation, which serves to significantly decrease the shearing effect between the humeral head and the glenoid, thus increasing stability. By allowing the glenoid to stay centered under the humeral head, the strong tendency for a downward dislocation of the humerus is resisted and the glenoid is maintained within a physiologically allowable range. At full abduction, the glenoid completely supports the

TABLE 20.5 Movements of the Glenohumeral Joint, Normal Ranges, Kinematics, and Potential Causes of Pain

Motion	Range Norms (Degrees)	Kinematics	Possible Source of Pain
Flexion and extension	Flexion: 0–120 Extension: 0–45	Motions occur in the sagittal plane about a medial-lateral axis of rotation, during which the humeral head spins on the glenoid fossa about a relatively fixed axis. The full 180 degrees of shoulder flexion is obtained by incorporating approximately 60 degrees of upward rotation of the scapula.	Flexion: ▪ Suprahumeral impingement ▪ Stretching of glenohumeral, acromioclavicular, and sternoclavicular joint capsules ▪ Triceps tendon if elbow flexed Extension: ▪ Stretching of GH joint capsule ▪ Severe suprahumeral impingement ▪ Biceps tendon if elbow extended
Internal and external rotation	Internal: 0–80 External: 0–90	Motions occur in the horizontal plane about a vertical (longitudinal) axis of rotation. Internal rotation results in the anterior surface of the humerus rotating medially, toward the midline, whereas external rotation results in the anterior surface of the humerus rotating laterally, away from the midline.	Internal: ▪ Anterior GH instability External: ▪ Suprahumeral impingement ▪ Posterior GH instability
Abduction	Abduction: 0–120	Motions occur in the frontal plane about an anterior-posterior axis of rotation. Normally, the GH joint allows approximately 120 degrees of abduction; a full 80 degrees of shoulder abduction normally occurs by combining 60 degrees of upward scapularrotation with the abduction of the GH joint. During abduction, the complex head of the humerus rolls superiorly while simultaneously sliding inferiorly. The reverse occurs during adduction.	▪ Suprahumeral impingement ▪ Stretching of GH, acromioclavicular, and sternoclavicular joint capsule

humerus. If the scapula cannot be controlled, the glenoid cannot be positioned correctly to allow for the optimal length–tension relationships within the shoulder complex.[4]

An early study by Inman[8] determined that a 2:1 ratio existed between the motion occurring at the GH joint and scapula, respectively. This means that for every 2 degrees of GH abduction, the scapula must simultaneously upwardly rotate approximately 1 degree. For example, if the shoulder is abducted to 90 degrees, only about 60 degrees of motion occurs from GH abduction; the additional 30 degrees is achieved through upward rotation of the scapula. At 180 degrees of elevation, the GH joint has contributed approximately 120 degrees, with the other 60 degrees coming from the upward rotation

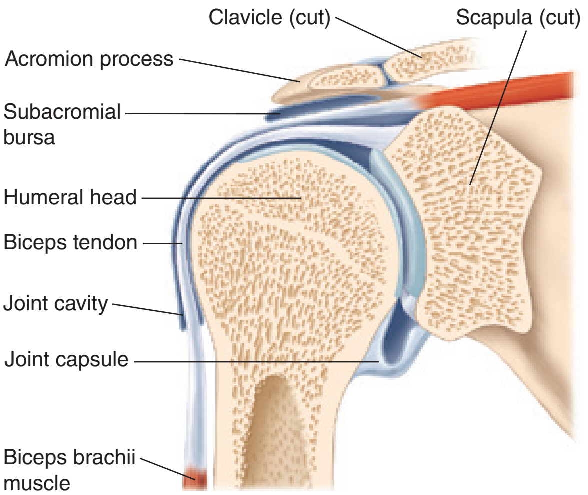


FIGURE 20.6 The coracoacromial arch.

of the scapula. In addition to the GH and scapular motions, full elevation requires a combination of 30 degrees of clavicular elevation at the SC joint with 30 degrees of AC joint upward rotation. Loss of any of these functional components decreases the amount of scapular rotation and thus the ROM of the upper extremity.

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> It is worth noting that the scapulohumeral rhythm has been found to change with external loading of the arm, with increasing ratios of humeral elevation to scapular rotation occurring, depending on which of the five phases is assessed. As high a ratio as 4:3:1 has been noted.[9]

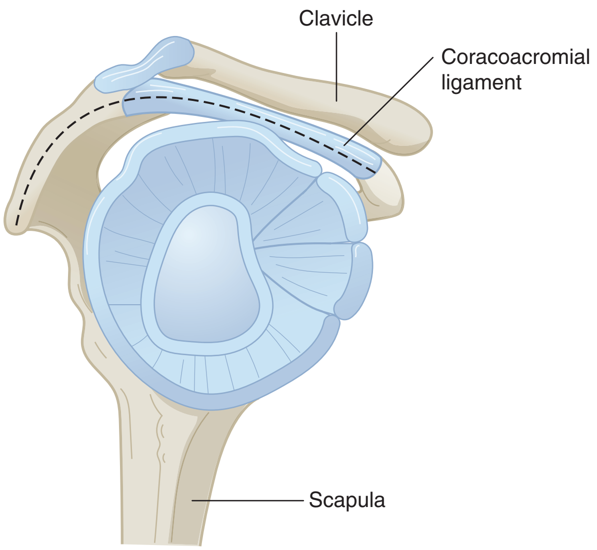


FIGURE 20.7 The suprahumeral space.

Muscle Function During Shoulder Motions

The muscles of the shoulder complex can be divided into three anatomic groups: (1) thoracoscapular (rhomboids, levator scapulae, serratus anterior, and the trapezius muscles); (2) thoracohumeral (latissimus dorsi and pectoralis major); and (3) scapulohumeral (supraspinatus, infraspinatus, teres minor, subscapularis [rotator cuff], and deltoid).

Elevators of the Scapulothoracic Joint

The upper trapezius, levator scapulae, and, to a lesser extent, the rhomboids are responsible for elevating the scapula and supporting proper scapulothoracic posture—a slightly retracted and slightly elevated position with the glenoid fossa facing slightly upward.[10] Weakness or paralysis of the upper trapezius, over time, will likely lead to a depressed and downwardly rotated scapula, increasing the potential for subluxation of the GH joint.[10] Levator scapulae dysfunction often occurs with poor posture, specifically the forward head posture. (See Chapter 7.)

Depressors of the Scapulothoracic Joint

The depressors of the scapulothoracic joint include the lower trapezius, latissimus dorsi, pectoralis minor, and subclavius. The reverse action of two of these depressors (latissimus dorsi and lower trapezius) can be used to efficiently elevate the trunk during such activities as crutch walking, pushing up from sitting to standing, ambulation with a walker, or while transferring to a bed or wheelchair.[10]

Upward Rotators and Protractors of the Scapula

During the first 30 degrees of upward rotation of the scapula, the upper and lower divisions of the trapezius muscle and the serratus anterior muscle are considered the principal upward rotators of the scapula. Together these muscles form two force couples—one formed by the upper trapezius and the upper serratus anterior muscles and the other by the lower trapezius and lower serratus anterior muscles. A *force couple* is defined as two forces that act in opposite directions to rotate a segment around its axis of motion. Weakness or complete paralysis of the serratus anterior or trapezius muscles results in the scapula being rotated downward by the contracting deltoid and supraspinatus as humeral abduction or flexion is attempted. These two muscles then reach active insufficiency, and functional elevation of the arm cannot be reached, even though there may be normal passive

ROM and normal strength in the shoulder abductor and flexor muscles.[4]

Scapular protraction occurs primarily as a result of the force generated by the serratus anterior, and it is used in activities such as forward reaching and pushing. A classic sign of serratus anterior weakness is scapular winging, when the medial border of the scapula lifts away from the rib cage during resisted shoulder abduction or during a standard push-up.

☑ KEY POINT

Although the serratus has been found to be the most efficient upward rotator of the scapula during abduction, the trapezius appears to be more critical than the serratus for controlling the scapula during the initial phases of abduction.[4] The lower trapezius contributes during the later phase of shoulder abduction by preventing tipping of the scapula and assisting in the stabilization of the scapula through eccentric control of the scapula during upward scapular rotation.[4]

Downward Rotators and Retractors of the Scapula

The primary downward rotators of the scapula include the rhomboids and pectoralis minor. Also, the latissimus dorsi can assist with downward rotation. The primary scapular retractors are the rhomboids and the middle trapezius, although all three parts of the trapezius muscles can assist with protraction.

Muscles of the GH Joint

The main muscles that are used in conjunction with the GH joint are the group of muscles known as the rotator cuff. The rotator cuff (RC) muscles comprise the anterior (subscapularis) and posterior (i.e., attaching to the posterior surface of the scapula; supraspinatus, infraspinatus, and teres minor) muscles. The RC muscles provide internal and external rotation torque at the shoulder and also provide functional shoulder joint stability. The RC muscles are recruited at significantly different activity levels, depending on the movement performed: shoulder flexion (greater posterior RC muscle activation) or shoulder extension (greater anterior RC muscle activation).[5] This suggests that counterbalancing humeral head translation resulting from shoulder flexor, extensor, and abductor muscle activity is an important function of the RC.[5]

Internal Rotation The primary internal rotators of the GH joint are the teres major, pectoralis major, subscapularis, latissimus dorsi, and anterior deltoid.

External Rotation The primary external rotators of the GH joint are the teres minor, infraspinatus, and posterior deltoid. The relatively small muscle mass of this group produces the smallest torque of any muscle group of the shoulder.

Abduction The prime muscles that abduct the GH joint are the anterior and middle deltoid, and the supraspinatus muscles.[4]

- *Deltoid.* Most of the force of the deltoid muscle causes upper translation of the humerus and, if unopposed, can lead to impingement of the soft tissues in the suprahumeral space. The combined effect of the short rotator muscles (infraspinatus, teres minor, and subscapularis) produce a stabilizing compression and then a translation of the humerus in the glenoid.[11]
- *Supraspinatus.* The supraspinatus muscle has a significant superior stabilizing, compressive, and slight upward translation effect on the humerus. The horizontal line of pull of the supraspinatus allows it to be an important initiator of abduction.[11] During abduction of the GH joint, contraction of the horizontally oriented supraspinatus produces a compression force directly into the glenoid fossa, which stabilizes the humeral head against the fossa during its superior roll. Also, the three other rotator cuff muscles provide an inferiorly directed force to counteract the tendency of the deltoid to pull the humerus superiorly, which would jam or impinge the humeral head superiorly against the coracoacromial arch.[10] Because of the tangential vector of deltoid contraction, the tendency for superior translation of the humeral head is greatest between 60 and 90 degrees of elevation.[4] Thus, repetitive overhead activities place a high demand on the rotator cuff to counteract this tendency. Also, repetitive overhead activities bring the greater tuberosity and supraspinatus insertion into close proximity to the coracoacromial arch.

Flexion Elevation of the arm through flexion is performed primarily by the anterior deltoid, pectoralis major, coracobrachialis, and long head of the biceps brachii.[4]

Adduction The primary adductors of the GH joint are the teres major, latissimus dorsi, and pectoralis major, which work together with the scapula downward rotators to produce adduction of the shoulder.

Extension The primary extensors of the GH joint are the latissimus dorsi, teres major, pectoralis major, posterior deltoid, and long head of the triceps.

☑ KEY POINT

The muscles that perform shoulder flexion also perform horizontal adduction, and the muscles that perform shoulder extension also perform horizontal abduction. This is because, regarding axes of rotation and lines of pull, the seemingly different actions are the same motions, just turned sideways.[10]

Examination

The physical therapist's examination of the shoulder complex typically follows the outline in **TABLE 20.6**.

Range of Motion

Both the passive and active physiological ranges of motion can be measured using a goniometer (**TABLE 20.7**), which has been shown to have a satisfactory level of intraobserver reliability.[12–14]

The evidence-based special tests for the shoulder complex are described in **TABLE 20.8** through **TABLE 20.11**.

General Intervention Strategies

Some principles can be used to guide the clinician in the conservative rehabilitation of shoulder injuries:

- Rehabilitate the shoulder according to the stage of healing and degree of irritability. The degree of irritability can be determined by inquiring about the vigor, duration, and intensity of the pain. Greater irritability is associated with very acutely inflamed conditions. The characteristic sign for an acute inflammation of the shoulder is pain at rest, which is described as diffuse and often referred from the site of the primary condition. Pain above the elbow indicates less severity than does pain below the elbow. Chronic conditions usually have low irritability, but have an associated loss of active range of motion (AROM) and passive range of motion (PROM).
- Rehabilitate the shoulder in scapular planes rather than in the straight planes of flexion,

TABLE 20.6 Examination of the Shoulder

I. History
II. Observation and inspection
III. Upper quarter scan as appropriate
IV. Examination of movements: Active range of motion with passive overpressure of the following movements:
  - Elevation (forward flexion, abduction, scaption)
  - Adduction, extension, horizontal adduction and abduction, circumduction, external rotation, and internal rotation
  - Scapulohumeral rhythm
V. Resisted isometric movements
  - Elevation
  - Extension
  - Adduction
  - Abduction
  - External rotation
  - Internal rotation
  - Elbow flexion
  - Elbow extension
VI. Palpation
VII. Neurological tests as appropriate (reflexes, nerve root, and peripheral nerve assessment)
VIII. Joint mobility tests
  - Glenohumeral joint
    - Distraction
    - Inferior glide of the humeral head
    - Posterior glide of the humeral head
    - Anterior glide of the humeral head
  - Sternoclavicular joint
    - Superior glide of the clavicle on the sternum
    - Inferior glide of the clavicle on the sternum
    - Posterior glide of the clavicle on the sternum
    - Anterior glide of the clavicle
  - Acromioclavicular joint
    - Compression/distraction
    - Anterior glide of the clavicle on the acromion
    - Posterior glide of the clavicle
  - Scapulothoracic joint
    - Rotation of the scapula
    - Elevation of the scapula
    - Depression of the scapula
    - Retraction of the scapula
    - Protraction of the scapula
    - Distraction of the scapula from the thoracic wall
IX. Special tests (refer to Table 20.7)
X. Diagnostic imaging (if any)

TABLE 20.7 Goniometric Techniques for the Glenohumeral Joint

Joint	Motion	Axis	Stationary Arm	Movable Arm	Normal Ranges (Degrees)	End Feel
Glenohumeral	Flexion	Acromion process	Mid-axillary line of the thorax	Lateral midline of the humerus using the lateral epicondyle of the humerus for reference	0–180	Firm; tissue stretch/ capsular
	Extension	Acromion process	Mid-axillary line of the thorax	Lateral midline of the humerus using the lateral epicondyle of the humerus for reference	0–40	Firm; tissue stretch
	Abduction	Anterior aspect of the acromion process	Parallel to the midline of the anterior aspect of the sternum	Medial midline of the humerus	0–180	Firm; tissue stretch/ capsular
	Adduction	Anterior aspect of the acromion process	Parallel to the midline of the anterior aspect of the sternum	Medial midline of the humerus	90–0	Firm; tissue stretch/ capsular
	Internal rotation	Olecranon process	Parallel or perpendicular to the floor	Ulna using the olecranon process and ulnar styloid for reference	0–80	Firm; tissue stretch/ capsular
	External rotation	Olecranon process	Parallel or perpendicular to the floor	Ulna using the olecranon process and ulnar styloid for reference	0–90	Firm; tissue stretch/ capsular

TABLE 20.8 Evidence-Based Special Tests for the Shoulder Complex

Name of Test	Brief Description	Positive Finding	Sensitivity	Specificity
Hornblower's sign[a]	The patientis seated. The clinician places the patient's arm in 90 degrees of scaption and asks the patient to externally rotate against resistance.	Positive for infraspinatus or teres minor tear if the patient is unable to externally rotate the shoulder.	1.0	0.93
Empty can test for supraspinatus tendon tears[b]	The patient's arm is positioned in the scaption plane—internal rotation and approximately 90 degrees of shoulder flexion. Manual resistance is then applied by the clinician in a direction toward the floor.	Positive for supraspinatus tear if pain, weakness, or both is reproduced.	Pain 0.63 Weakness 0.77 Both 0.89	0.55 0.68 0.50
Dropping sign for infraspinatus degeneration[a]	The patientis seated. The clinician places the patient's shoulder in 0 degrees of abduction and 45 degrees of external rotation with elbow flexed to 90 degrees. The patient is asked to hold position when clinician releases forearm.	Positive for infraspinatus degeneration if patient is unable to hold position and arm returns to 0 degrees of external rotation.	1.00	1.00
Palm up test (speed test) for biceps tendon tear[c]	Patient elevates humerus to 60 degrees with elbow extended and forearm supinated. The patient holds this position while the clinician applies resistance against elevation.	Positive if pain is elicited.	0.63	0.35
Combined tests[d]	Clinician tests for supraspinatus and external rotator weakness, and impingement sign.	Positive for subacromial impingement if weakness is found in the supraspinatus and external rotators, and there is a positive impingement sign.	Not applicable	0.00
Trans-deltoid palpation (rent test)[e]	The patient is seated with the arm by the side. The clinician palpates the anterior margin of the acromion through the deltoid. The clinician then passively extends the patient's arm and internally and externally rotates to palpate the rotator cuff tendons.	Positive for rotator cuff tear if the clinician palpates eminence or rent.	0.957	0.968

TABLE 20.8 Evidence-Based Special Tests for the Shoulder Complex *(continued)*

Name of Test	Brief Description	Positive Finding	Sensitivity	Specificity
Lift-off test for subscapularis tendon	The patient is seated with the arm internally rotated so that the posterior surface of the hand rests on the lower back. The patient is asked to actively lift the hand away from the back.	Positive for subscapularis weakness/subacromial impingement if the patient is unable to lift the hand away from the back.	0.89[6] 0.89[7]	1.00[f] 0.36[g]
Supraspinatus test[g]	The patient is standing; shoulders abducted to 90 degrees in the scapular plane and internal rotation of the humerus. Clinician applies isometric resistance.	Positive if weakness or pain is detected.	1.00	0.53
Combined tests[h]	The clinician performs supraspinatus and infraspinatus manual muscle tests, and palpation.	Positive for rotator cuff involvement if weakness is detected and pain is elicited with palpation.	0.91	0.75
Neer impingement sign for rotator cuff tear	The patient is seated. The clinician stabilizes the scapula with one hand and forces the patient's arm into maximal elevation with the other hand.	Positive for rotator cuff tear if pain is produced.	0.84[i] 0.33[g] 0.39[i] 0.93[k] 0.00[l] 0.89[m] 0.89[c]	0.51[i] 0.61[g] 1.0[i] — — — 0.31[c]
Neer impingement sign for subacromial bursitis	*See above.*	Positive for subacromial bursitis if pain is produced.	0.75[i]	0.48[i]
Hawkins impingement sign for rotator cuff tear	The patient's arm is passively flexed to 90 degrees and forcefully moved into internal rotation.	Positive for rotator cuff tear if pain is produced.	0.88[i] 0.44[g]	0.43[i] 0.53[g]
Hawkins-Kennedy test for subacromial impingement	The patient's arm is passively flexed to 90 degrees and forcefully moved into internal rotation.	Positive for subacromial impingement if pain is reproduced.	0.80[l] 0.78[l] 0.62[g] 0.87[m] 0.92[c]	0.76[l] 1.00[l] 0.69[g] — 0.25[c]
Horizontal adduction	The clinician flexes shoulder to 90 degrees and then adducts it horizontally across the body.	Positive for an AC lesion if pain is reproduced at the AC joint.	0.82[c]	0.28[c]
Speed test (for subacromial impingement)	The patient elevates the humerus to 60 degrees with the elbow extended and forearm supinated. The patient holds this position while the clinician applies resistance against elevation.	Positive if pain is elicited.	0.69[c]	0.56[c]

(continues)

TABLE 20.8 Evidence-Based Special Tests for the Shoulder Complex *(continued)*

Name of Test	Brief Description	Positive Finding	Sensitivity	Specificity
Speed test for biceps or superior labrum anterior and posterior (SLAP)	*See above.*	Positive if pain is elicited.	0.90[n]	0.14[n]
Yergason test	The patient's elbow is flexed to 90 degrees with the forearm in pronation. The patient is then instructed to actively supinate the forearm against resistance.	Positive for subacromial impingement if pain is elicited.	0.37[c]	0.86[c]
Painful arc	The patient is instructed to perform straight plane abduction of the arm throughout full ROM.	Positive if pain occurs between 60 and 100 degrees of abduction.	0.33[c]	0.81[c]
Internal rotation resisted strength test	The patient is standing. The clinician positions the patient's arm in 90 degrees of abduction and 80 degrees of external rotation. The clinician applies resistance against external rotation, then internal rotation in the same position.	The test is positive for intra-articular disease if the patient exhibits greater weakness in internal rotation when compared with external rotation, and for impingement syndrome if there is greater weakness with external rotation.	0.88[o]	0.96[o]
Anterior apprehension test[p]	The patient is positioned in supine. The clinician passively abducts and externally rotates the humerus.	Positive for shoulder instability if it elicits complaints of pain or instability.	0.62	0.42
Gilcreest test: Palm up test for biceps long head	Patient is asked to elevate arm with elbow extended and forearm supinated against resistance applied by the clinician.	Positive if patient feels pain at anterior aspect of arm along course of biceps brachii.	0.63[m]	0.35[m]
Yocum test	Patient is seated or standing and is asked to place hand of involved shoulder on contralateral shoulder and raise the elbow.	Positive for subacromial impingement if pain is elicited.	0.78[m]	—

Data from (a) Walch G, Boulahia A, Calderone S, et al: The "dropping" and "hornblower's" signs in evaluation of rotator-cuff tears. *J Bone Joint Surg Brit* 80:624–8, 1998; (b) Itoi E, Tadato K, Sano A, et al: Which is more useful, the "full can test" or the "empty can test" in detecting the torn supraspinatus tendon? *Am J Sports Med* 27:65–8, 1999; (c) Calis M, Akgun K, Birtane M, et al: Diagnostic values of clinical diagnostic tests in subacromial impingement syndrome. *Ann Rheum Dis* 59:44–7, 2000; (d) Murrell GA, Walton JR: Diagnosis of rotator cuff tears. *Lancet* 357:769–70, 2001; (e) Wolf EM, Agrawal V: Transdeltoid palpation (the rent test) in the diagnosis of rotator cuff tears. *J Shoulder Elbow Surg* 10:470–3, 2001; (f) Gerber C, Krushell RJ: Isolated rupture of the tendon of the subscapularis muscle: Clinical features in 16 cases. *J Bone Joint Surg* 73B:389–94, 1991; (g) Ure BM, Tiling T, Kirschner R, et al: The value of clinical shoulder examination in comparison with arthroscopy. A prospective study. *Unfallchirurg* 96:382–6, 1993; (h) Lyons AR, Tomlinson JE: Clinical diagnosis of tears of the rotator cuff. *J Bone Joint Surg Br* 74:414–15, 1992; (i) MacDonald PB, Clark P, Sutherland K: An analysis of the diagnostic accuracy of the Hawkins and Neer subacromial impingement signs. *J Shoulder Elbow Surg* 9:299–301, 2000; (j) Bak K, Faunl P: Clinical findings in competitive swimmers with shoulder pain. *Am J Sports Med* 25:254–60, 1997; (k) Post M, Cohen J: Impingement syndrome: A review of late stage II and early stage III lesions. *Clin Orth Rel Res* 207:127–32, 1986; (l) Rupp S, Berninger K, Hopf T: Shoulder problems in high level swimmers—impingement, anterior instability, muscular imbalance. *Int J Sports Med* 16:557–62, 1995; (m) Leroux JL, Thomas E, Bonnel F, et al: Diagnostic value of clinical tests for shoulder impingement. *Rev Rheum* 62:423–8, 1995; (n) Bennett WF: Specificity of the Speed's test: Arthroscopic technique for evaluating the biceps tendon at the level of the bicipital groove. *Arthroscopy* 14:789–96, 1998; (o) Zaslav KR: Internal rotation resistance strength test: A new diagnostic test to differentiate intra-articular pathology from outlet (Neer) impingement syndrome in the shoulder. *J Shoulder Elbow Surg* 10:23–27, 2001; and (p) Oh JH, Kim JY, Kim WS, et al: The evaluation of various physical examinations for the diagnosis of type II superior labrum anterior and posterior lesion. *Am J Sports Med* 36:353–9, 2008.

TABLE 20.9 Diagnostic Test Properties for Labral Injuries

Name of Test	Brief Description	Positive Finding	Sensitivity	Specificity
SLA Prehension test	The patient is standing or seated and is asked to move the humerus into horizontal adduction, internal rotation, and elbow extension. The test is repeated with the patient bringing the humerus into external rotation.	Positive if pain is produced with arm in internal rotation to a greater extent than in external rotation.	0.88[a]	—
Crank test	The patient is supine while the clinician elevates the humerus to 160 degrees in the scapular plane. An axial load is applied to the humerus while the shoulder is internally and externally rotated.	Positive if pain is elicited.	0.91[b]	0.93[b]
Biceps load test for SLAP lesions in dislocators	The patient is supine. Clinician grasps the wrist and elbow. The arm is abducted to 90 degrees with the elbow flexed to 90 degrees and the forearm supinated. The clinician externally rotates the arm until the patient becomes apprehensive, at which time external rotation is stopped. The patient is asked to flex the elbow against the clinician's resistance.	Positive if patient's apprehension remains or pain is produced.	0.91[c]	0.97[c]
Biceps load test II	The patient is supine with the clinician grasping the wrist and elbow. The arm is elevated 120 degrees and fully externally rotated with the elbow held at 90 degrees of flexion and the forearm supinated. The clinician then resists elbow flexion by the patient.	Positive if resisted elbow flexion causes pain.	0.90[d]	0.97[d]
Anterior slide test	The patient is standing or sitting with hands on hips, thumbs facing posteriorly. The clinician stabilizes the scapula with one hand and, with the other hand on the elbow, applies an anteriorly and superiorly directed force through the humerus. The patient is asked to push back against the force.	Positive if pain or click is elicited in the anterior shoulder.	0.78[e]	0.92[e]
Active compression test	The patient is standing. The patient is asked to flex the arm to 90 degrees with the elbow in full extension. The patient then adducts the arm 10 degrees and internally rotates the humerus. The clinician applies a downward force to the arm as the patient resists. The patient then fully supinates the arm, and the procedure is repeated.	Positive if pain or painful clicking in the area of the GH joint is elicited with the first maneuver and reduced with the second maneuver.	1.00[f]	0.985[f]

(continues)

TABLE 20.9 Diagnostic Test Properties for Labral Injuries *(continued)*

Name of Test	Brief Description	Positive Finding	Sensitivity	Specificity
Pain provocation test for superior labrum	The patient is sitting. The shoulder is abducted 90 degrees to 100 degrees and externally rotated by the clinician. Performed with forearm pronation and supination.	Positive if pain is provoked or is more severe in the pronated position.	1.00[g]	0.90[g]
Speed test for biceps or SLAP lesion	The patient is standing with arm in full elevation and forearm supination, elbow extended. The clinician applies resistance against elevation.	Positive if pain is produced.	0.90[h]	0.14[h]
Bicipital groove tenderness[i]	The clinician gently presses the biceps groove with the shoulder adducted 10 degrees.	Positive for labral tear if pain is reproduced.	0.27	0.66
Biceps palpation[j]	Point tenderness of the biceps tendon in the biceps groove 3–6 cm below anterior acromion.	Positive for labral tear if pain is reproduced.	0.53	0.54
O'Brien test[i]	The patient stands and flexes the arm to 90 degrees with the elbow in full extension. The patient then adducts the arm 10 degrees and internally rotates the humerus. The clinician applies a downward force to the arm as the patient resists. The patient then fully supinates the arm and the procedure is repeated.	Positive for labral tear if pain is elicited with the first maneuver and reduced with the second maneuver.	0.63	0.53
Compression rotation test[i]	The patient is supine with the arm abducted to 90 degrees and the elbow flexed to 90 degrees. The clinician applies an axial force to the humerus. The humerus is circumducted and rotated.	Positive for a labral tear if pain or clicking is elicited.	0.61	0.54

Data from (a) Berg EE, Ciullo JV: A clinical test for superior glenoid labral or "SLAP" lesions. *Clin J Sport Med* 8:121–3, 1998; (b) Liu SH, Henry MH, Nuccion SL: A prospective evaluation of a new physical examination in predicting glenoid labral tears. *Am J Sports Med* 24:721–5, 1996; (c) Kim SH, Ha KI, Han KY: Biceps load test: A clinical test for superior labrum anterior and posterior lesions (SLAP) in shoulders with recurrent anterior dislocations. *Am J Sports Med* 27:300–3, 1999; (d) Kim SH, Ha KI, Ahn JH, et al: Biceps load test II: A clinical test for SLAP lesions of the shoulder. *Arthroscopy* 17:160–4, 2001; (e) Kibler WB: Specificity and sensitivity of the anterior slide test in throwing athletes with superior glenoid labral tears. *Arthroscopy* 11:296–300, 1995; (f) O'Brien SJ, Pagnani MJ, Fealy S, et al: The active compression test: a new and effective test for diagnosing labral tears and acromioclavicular abnormality. *Am J Sports Med* 26:610–13, 1998; (g) Mimori K, Muneta T, Nakagawa T, et al: A new pain provocation test for superior labral tears of the shoulder. *Am J Sports Med* 27:137–42, 1999; (h) Bennett WF: Specificity of the Speed's test: Arthroscopic technique for evaluating the biceps tendon at the level of the bicipital groove. *Arthroscopy* 14:789–96, 1998; (i) Oh JH, Kim JY, Kim WS, et al: The evaluation of various physical examinations for the diagnosis of type II superior labrum anterior and posterior lesion. *Am J Sports Med* 36:353–9, 2008; (j) Gill HS, El Rassi G, Bahk MS, et al: Physical examination for partial tears of the biceps tendon. *Am J Sports Med* 35:1334–40, 2007; and (k) Walsworth MK, Doukas WC, Murphy KP, et al: Reliability and diagnostic accuracy of history and physical examination for diagnosing glenoid labral tears. *Am J Sports Med* 36:162–8, 2008.

TABLE 20.10 Diagnostic Test Properties for GH Instability

Name of Test	Brief Description	Positive Finding	Sensitivity	Specificity
Shoulder relocation test (no force on humerus at start position)	The patient is supine with the GH joint at the edge of the table. The clinician places the shoulder in 90 degrees of abduction and 90 degrees of elbow flexion and then externally rotates the shoulder.	The test is considered positive if there is either pain or apprehension.	0.30 for pain[a]	0.58 for pain[a]
Shoulder relocation test (anterior-directed force on humerus at start position)	The patient is supine with the GH joint at the edge of the table. The clinician places the shoulder in 90 degrees of abduction and 90 degrees of elbow flexion and then externally rotates the shoulder and applies an anteriorly directed force on the humerus.	The test is considered positive if there is either pain or apprehension.	0.57 for apprehension[a] 0.54 for pain[a] 0.68 for apprehension[a]	1.0 for apprehension[a] 0.44 for pain[a] 1.0 for aprehension[a]
Anterior release test for anterior instability	The patient is supine with arm in 90 degrees of abduction and external rotation while the clinician applies a posterior force over the humeral head. The clinician quickly releases the posterior force.	The test is considered positive if there is either pain or apprehension.	0.92[b]	0.89[b]
Load and shift[c]	The patient is supine. The clinician grasps the patient's elbow with one hand and the proximal humerus with the other hand. The arm is placed in 90 degrees of abduction in the scapular plane. The clinician attempts to shift the humeral head in anterior, posterior, and inferior directions.	The amount of laxity is graded from 0 to 3, with 0 indicating little or no movement and 3 indicating that the humeral head can be dislocated off the glenoid and remains so when the pressure is released.	Anterior: 0.5 Posterior: 0.14 Inferior: 0.08	Anterior: 1.00 Posterior: 1.00 Inferior: 1.00

Data from (a) Speer KP, Hannafin JA, Altchek DW, et al: An evaluation of the shoulder relocation test. *Am J Sports Med* 22:177–83, 1994; (b) Gross ML, Distefano MC: Anterior release test: A new test for occult shoulder instability. *Clin Orth Rel Res* 339:105–8, 1997; and (c) Tzannes A, Murrell GA: Clinical examination of the unstable shoulder. *Sports Med* 32:447–57, 2002.

TABLE 20.11 Diagnostic Utility of Multitest Regimens Consisting of Cross-Body Adduction Stress, Active Compression, and Acromioclavicular Resisted Extension Test for Detecting AC Joint Lesions

	Accuracy	Sensitivity	Specificity
≥ 1 positive test	0.75 (237/315)	0.00 (16/16)	0.74 (221/299)
≥ 2 positive tests	0.89 (279/315)	0.81 (13/16)	0.89 (266/299)
3 positive tests	93 (294/315)	0.25 (4/16)	0.97 (290/299)

Data from Chronopoulos E, Kim TK, Park HB, et al: Diagnostic value of physical tests for isolated chronic acromioclavicular lesions. *Am J Sports Med* 32:655–61, 2004; and Powell JW, Huijbregts PA: Concurrent criterion-related validity of acromioclavicular joint physical examination tests: A systematic review. *J Man Manip Ther* 14:E19–29, 2006.

extension, and abduction, as exercises performed in the scapular plane are more functional. One author[15] has proposed a motion pathway to help restore the three-dimensional motion required at the shoulder while minimizing the secondary morbidities that are often the product of over-aggressive therapeutic intervention. This "Z route" motion is designed to restore the static (capsular) and dynamic (humeral depressive strength) components of mid- and end-range elevation while also restoring the inferior translation of the greater tubercle as the external rotation occurs through the process of elevation restoration. The Z route is described using four points in space as the patient's humerus takes the most direct route from one point to the next. A description of the Z route follows, using the right upper extremity:[15]

1. The patient is positioned supine with the right upper extremity positioned in up to 90 degrees of glenohumeral abduction and maximal external rotation in the frontal plane, and with the elbow flexed to 90 degrees (**FIGURE 20.8**).
2. Keeping the elbow flexed to 90 degrees, the patient moves the right upper extremity from the abducted position to a position of forward flexion of 90 degrees (**FIGURE 20.9**).
3. Keeping the elbow flexed to 90 degrees, the patient moves the right upper extremity from the forward flexed position of 90 degrees to one of 120 degrees elevation just anterior to the scapular plane (10 o'clock position for the right upper extremity) (**FIGURE 20.10**).
4. Maintaining the previous position of the upper extremity, the patient rolls onto his or her left side and then progressively elevates the right upper extremity in the frontal plane, and once accomplished, in the sagittal plane (**FIGURE 20.11**).

Progression through the various stages of the Z route (**FIGURE 20.12**) continues as long as there is no excess anterior/superior migration of the humeral head, or excess lateral migration of the scapula, both of which can be either visually observed or palpated.[15]

- Short lever arms should be used with exercises initially, thereby decreasing the torque at the shoulder. (See Chapter 2.) This can be achieved by flexing

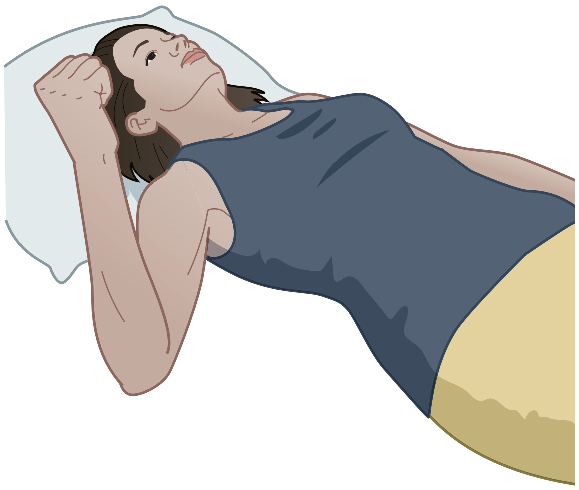


FIGURE 20.8 Position 1: Maximally tolerated abduction.

FIGURE 20.9 Position 2: 90 degrees flexion in sagittal plane.

the elbow or by exercising with the arm closer to the body.

- Obtain a stable scapular platform as early as possible. This involves normalizing the relationship between the scapulothoracic upward rotators and the glenohumeral abductors.
- Achieve the close-packed position (full arm elevation) at the earliest opportunity. By definition, the close-packed position of the shoulder is that position which provides the joint with the maximum amount of passive stability.
- Reproduce the forces and loading rates that will approach the patient's functional demands as the rehabilitation progresses. Activities and arm positions that increase or decrease symptoms are helpful in guiding treatment.

Acute Phase

In addition to maintaining or improving general cardiovascular fitness, the goals of the acute phase include the following:

FIGURE 20.10 Position 3: 120 degrees abduction toward the frontal plane.

FIGURE 20.11 Position 4: Movement overhead anterior to the scapular plane.

- *Reduce pain and swelling, control inflammation, and protect the injury site.* The reduction of pain and the control of swelling are extremely important. Pain and swelling can both inhibit normal muscle function and control. Pain, swelling, and inflammation are minimized by using the principles of PRICEMEM (protection, rest, ice, compression, elevation, manual therapy, early motion, and medication). Icing for 20 to 30 minutes, three to four times per day, concurrent with nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) or aspirin prescribed by the physician, can aid in reducing pain and swelling.

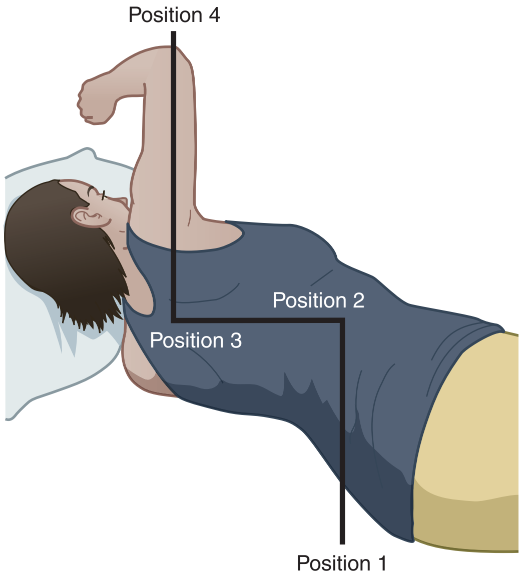


FIGURE 20.12 Synopsis of the three points inverted concerning the right shoulder.

- *Improve postural awareness.* Due to the close relationships between the cervical spine and scapula, it is important to encourage postural awareness and correction techniques. (See Chapter 7.)
- *Begin regaining pain-free ROM in the entire kinetic chain.* Early passive and then active assisted exercises are performed in all planes of shoulder movement to nourish the articular cartilage and assist in collagen tissue synthesis and organization. These exercises are initiated in pain-free arcs, below 90 degrees of abduction. Recommended ROM exercises for the acute phase include the Codman's or other pendulum exercises (**FIGURE 20.13**), passive shoulder flexion (**FIGURE 20.14**), abduction, external rotation (**FIGURE 20.15**), internal rotation (**FIGURE 20.16**), and elbow flexion and extension, progressing to active assisted ROM (AAROM) exercises using a wand or cane (**FIGURE 20.17** and **FIGURE 20.18**). Over-the-door pulley exercises are performed later in the acute phase as tolerated. Care must be taken when prescribing pulley exercises in the presence of impingement or adhesive capsulitis because the exercise can reinforce poor scapulohumeral motion.
- *Retard muscle atrophy and minimize detrimental effects of immobilization and activity restriction.* Jobe and Pink[16] felt that the order of strengthening in the rehabilitation process is important. They advocate strengthening the GH "protectors" (RC muscles) and scapular "pivoters" (levator scapulae, serratus anterior, middle trapezius, and rhomboids) initially because of the role they play in providing stability, and then the humeral "positioners" (deltoid) and the humeral "propellers" (latissimus dorsi and pectoralis major) are introduced. Active exercise can be performed in standing, sitting, or lying. To begin strengthening the shoulder rotators, the face-lying shoulder rotation exercise can be performed, where the patient lies prone close to the edge of the bed so the upper portion (humerus)

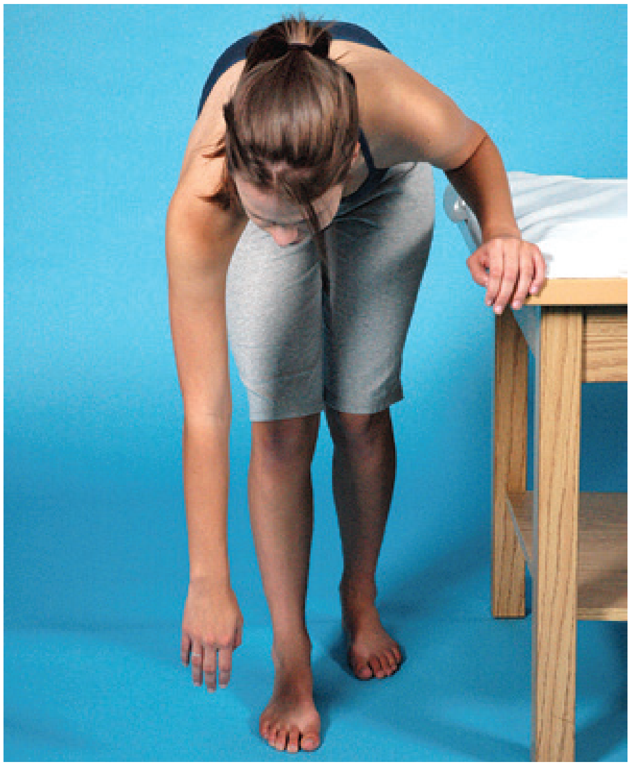


FIGURE 20.13 Codman's pendulum exercise.

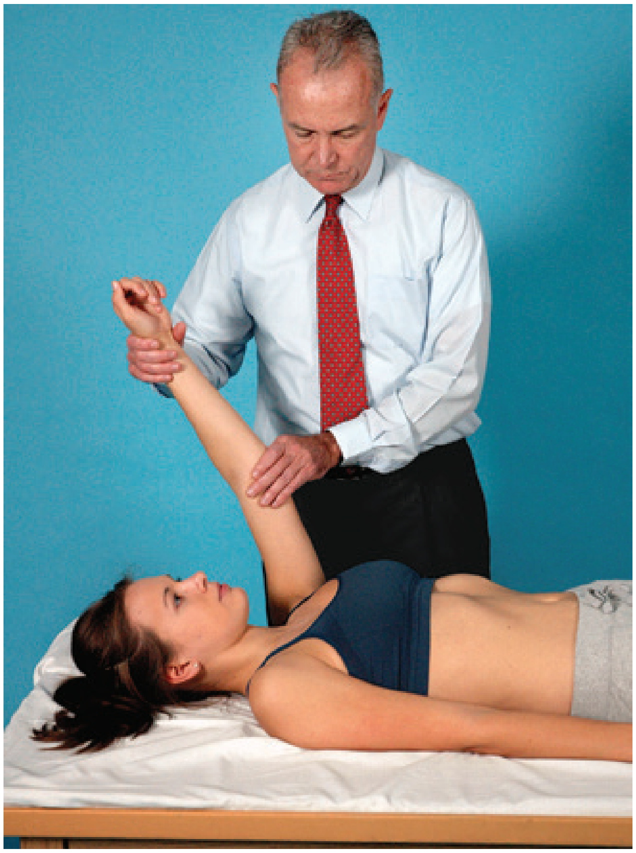


FIGURE 20.14 Passive shoulder flexion.

FIGURE 20.15 Passive shoulder external rotation.

FIGURE 20.16 Passive shoulder internal rotation.

FIGURE 20.17 Active assisted shoulder external rotation.

FIGURE 20.18 Active assisted shoulder abduction.

of the involved arm is supported by a pillow with the shoulder near 90 degrees abduction and the elbow flexed to 90 degrees. The patient then performs AROM into external rotation and internal rotation while making sure to keep the upper arm resting on the pillow. Light weights can be added and progressed as tolerated (**FIGURE 20.19**). Strengthening exercises at the shoulder in standing or sitting are introduced as tolerated using submaximal isometric exercises, with the arm positioned below 90 degrees of abduction and 90 degrees of flexion. Elbow flexion and extension progressive resistance exercises (PREs) are introduced as appropriate. Specific scapular rehabilitation exercises are typically initiated with the isometric exercises, such as the scapular retraction (**FIGURE 20.20**). Patterns of scapular retraction and protraction are started in single planes and then progress to elevation and depression of the entire scapula. It is important to remember that to improve backward reaching, the patient must first learn correct retraction procedures. To begin strengthening the middle and lower trapezius, a series of face-lying arm lifts can be performed:

- Prone arm lifts with elbows flexed (**FIGURE 20.21**)
- Prone arm lifts with elbows extended (**FIGURE 20.22**)
- Prone arm lifts with arms overhead (**FIGURE 20.23**)

Chronic/Functional Phase

The functional phase addresses any tissue overload problems and functional biomechanical deficits. The criteria for progression to this stage include the following:[11]

FIGURE 20.19 Face-lying exercise into-external rotation.

FIGURE 20.20 Scapular retraction.

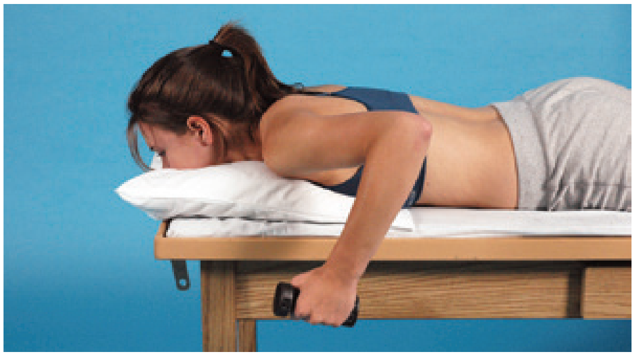


FIGURE 20.21 Prone arm lifts with elbows flexed.

FIGURE 20.22 Prone arm lifts with elbows extended.

FIGURE 20.23 Prone arm lifts with arms overhead.

- Minimal discomfort when the shoulder is unsupported; arm swing is comfortable during ambulation.
- Patient demonstrates nearly complete, pain-free PROM of the shoulder (full mobility of the scapula, at least 150 degrees of shoulder elevation, full rotation).
- Pain-free active elevation of the arm well above the level of the shoulder in the supine position.
- Pain-free, active external rotation of the shoulder to about 45 degrees.
- At least fair (3/5) and preferably good (4/5) muscles testing grade of shoulder musculature.

The goals of the functional phase include the following:

- *Attain full range of pain-free motion.* The ROM exercises are progressed as tolerated. In cases where capsular restrictions are limiting the ROM, the patient can perform external rotation and internal rotation stretches (**FIGURE 20.24**).
- *Restore normal joint arthrokinematics.* Normal joint kinematics are restored as joint mobilization techniques are performed.
- *Improve muscle strength and neuromuscular control to within normal limits, and restore normal muscle force couples.* Specific exercises can be given to the rotator cuff muscles in the form of the empty can exercise (**FIGURE 20.25**) and the full can exercise (**FIGURE 20.26**). In addition to continuing the strengthening of the GH protectors and scapular pivoters, strengthening of the humeral positioners (deltoid) and the humeral propellers (latissimus dorsi and pectoralis major) begins, as well as strengthening of the serratus anterior. The serratus anterior can be strengthened using a

FIGURE 20.24 Towel stretch.

FIGURE 20.25 Empty can exercise.

FIGURE 20.26 Full can exercise.

FIGURE 20.27 Push-up in kneeling.

FIGURE 20.28 Push-up.

FIGURE 20.29 Weight bearing through a medicine ball.

FIGURE 20.30 Elbow prop.

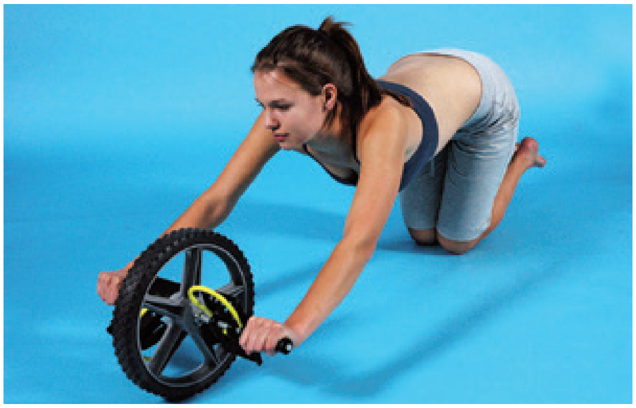


FIGURE 20.31 Dynamic weight bearing.

progression that starts in the quadruped position and is progressed through prone push-ups while kneeling (**FIGURE 20.27**), and finally into the full push-up (**FIGURE 20.28**). Other weight-bearing exercises (**FIGURE 20.29** through **FIGURE 20.32**), plyometric exercises (**FIGURE 20.33**), and sport-specific activities (**FIGURE 20.34** through **FIGURE 20.36**) can be introduced if appropriate.

FIGURE 20.32 Triceps lift.

FIGURE 20.34 Functional drill for an athlete.

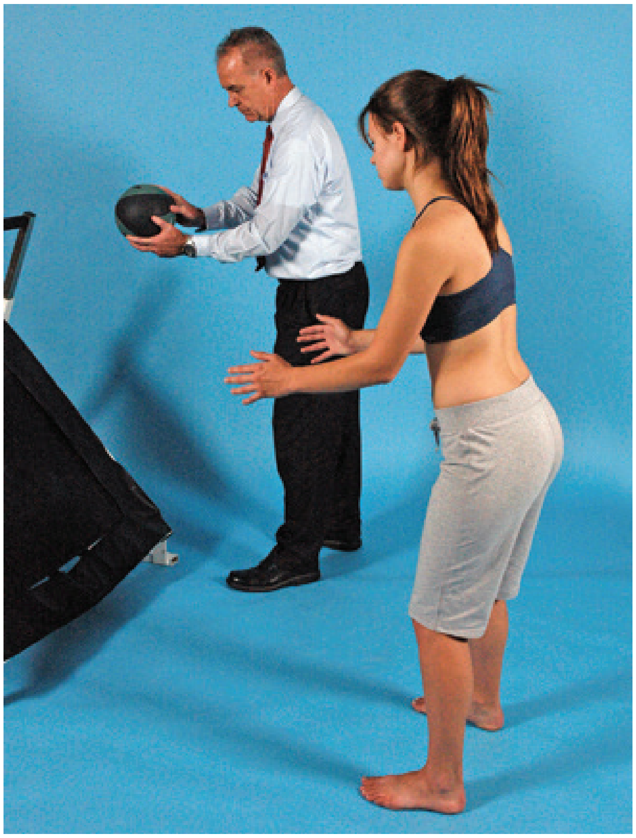


FIGURE 20.33 Plyometric drill.

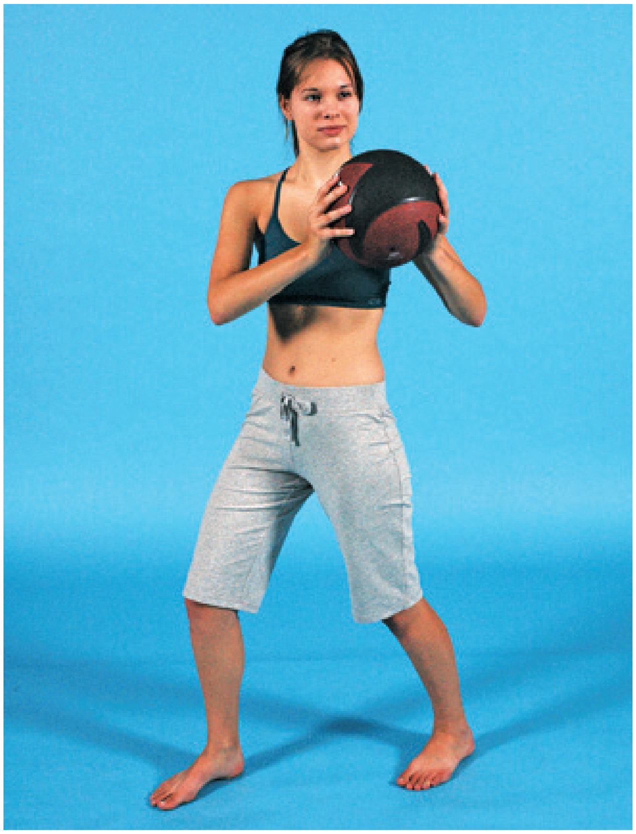


FIGURE 20.35 Sport-specific exercise.

FIGURE 20.36 Sport-specific exercise.

Common Conditions

The common conditions that can affect the shoulder include those that relate to poor biomechanics due to weakness, trauma, repetitive overhead activities, or overuse.

Scapular Dyskinesis

Scapular dyskinesis is an alteration in the normal position or motion of the scapula during scapulohumeral movements. Scapular dyskinesis appears to be an unclear response to shoulder dysfunction because no specific pattern of dyskinesis is associated with a specific shoulder diagnosis.[17] It should be suspected in patients with a shoulder injury and can be identified and classified by specific physical examination. There are three types of scapular dyskinesis:

- Type I is characterized by a prominence of the inferior medial scapular border.
- Type II has the entire medial border protruding.
- Type III has a superior translation of the entire scapula and prominence of the supeior medial border.

Once the physical therapist (PT) identifies all the factors involved in the dysfunction of the shoulder, the treatment is aimed at restoring normal scapular position and movement.

Intervention

The intervention progression described in the "General Intervention Strategies" section earlier in this chapter can be used for this condition.

Rotator Cuff Tendinopathy

RC tendinopathy refers to pain and weakness, most commonly experienced with movements of shoulder external rotation and elevation, as a consequence of excessive load on RC tissues.[5] RC tendinopathy is commonly referred to as subacromial impingement syndrome (SIS) but acromial irritation may not be the primary cause of symptoms.[18] It was Neer[19,20] that proposed that 95 percent of RC pathology was caused by irritation from the overlying acromion and who introduced the term SIS. The causes of RC tendinopathy appears to be multifactorial and include intrinsic, extrinsic, or combined mechanisms. The extrinsic mechanisms potentially involve attrition of the RC tendons due to an increase in the superior translation with active elevation that results in encroachment of the coracoacromial arch and produces a compression of the suprahumeral structures against the anteroinferior aspect of the acromion and coracoacromial ligament. Repetitive compression of these structures, coupled with other predisposing factors such as variations in the shape of the acromion, and poor posture, all contribute. The intrinsic mechanisms include aging, genetics, vascular changes, muscle fatigue, and altered loading.[5] Two main types of conditions that can lead to RC tendinopathy have been recognized:[21,22]

- *Primary* refers to the intrinsic degenerative process in the intrinsic structures and occurs when the superior aspect of the rotator cuff is compressed and abraded by the surrounding bony and soft tissues due to a decreased subacromial space.
- *Secondary* results from GH instability and/or tensile overload of the rotator cuff resulting in poor control of the humeral head during overhead activities. This condition is found in both older and younger individuals with varying levels of activity, although patients in this group are usually younger than 35 years, and have a traumatic anterior instability, posterior defect of the humeral head, and damage to the posterior glenoid labrum.

One type of impingement is worth mentioning:

- *Internal glenoid impingement.* Also called posterior-superior glenoid impingement (PSGI) or posterior impingement. PSGI is a very common cause of posterior shoulder pain in the throwing or overhead athlete, and is commonly misdiagnosed as RC tendinopathy. PSGI is caused by the impingement of the posterior edge of the supraspinatus and the anterior edge of the infraspinatus against the posterior-superior-glenoid and glenoid labrum. The mechanism of injury is shoulder extension, abduction, and external rotation.

Other factors that are thought to play a role in RC tendinopathy include the following:

- *The amount of vascularization to the cuff.* The area of the supraspinatus just proximal to its insertion has been found to be markedly under-vascularized with relation to the remainder of the cuff. The classic work of Rathburn and Macnab[23] noted a consistent zone of poor vascularization near the tuberosity attachment of the supraspinatus when the arm was adducted; with the arm in abduction, however, there was almost complete filling of vessels to the point of insertion. They suggested that some of the previous data, which suggested hypovascularity, was, in fact, due to this artifact of positioning. Other arm positions, such as raising the arm above 30 degrees, have been shown to increase intramuscular pressure in the supraspinatus muscle to such an extent that they may impair normal blood perfusion. Although it is possible that sustained isometric contractions, prolonged adduction of the arm, or increases in subacromial pressure[24] may reduce the microcirculation, it is unlikely that frequent abduction or elevation of the arm would produce selective avascularity of the supraspinatus or biceps tendon.
- *The correct functioning of the dynamic stabilizers.* If the dynamic stabilizers (RC muscles) are weak or injured, increased translation occurs between the humeral head and glenoid labrum.
- *The condition of the AC joint.* Degenerative changes of the AC joint, including narrowing of the joint space and the formation of inferior osteophytes, also can accompany impingement syndrome.
- *The position of the arm during activities.* The arm position adopted during work activities may contribute significantly to the development of subacromial impingement.
- *Poor endurance of scapular pivoters.* Sustained or repetitive overhead activity requires endurance from the scapular pivoters (levator scapulae, serratus anterior, middle trapezius, and rhomboids) to maintain appropriate scapular rotation. Fatigue of the scapular pivoters may lead to or contribute to relative subacromial impingement because of poor or asymmetric scapular rotation. Secondary impingement can occur because of serratus anterior dysfunction, resulting in the forward and downward movement of the coracoacromial arch. This reduces available freedom for the rotator cuff and greater tuberosity as the shoulder is flexed forward. Scapular lag from dysrhythmic scapulothoracic motion also can contribute to subacromial impingement because the acromion fails to rotate with the humerus, thereby producing a relative decrease in the acromiohumeral interval.
- *Capsular tightness.* Capsular tightness appears to be a common mechanical problem in primary impingement syndrome and has been reported to occur at all but the superior portions of the capsule.[25–27] Individuals who have poor posture, avoid painful overhead activity, or are predisposed to motion imbalances because of their work or sport can develop capsular tightness. During the period of pain avoidance or unbalanced movement, the capsular connective tissue may lose the ability to lengthen due to decreased critical fiber distance and abnormal collagen fiber cross-linking. This, in turn, can lead to capsular tightness, joint stiffness, painful or limited function, and an earlier onset or greater degree of subacromial compression, particularly in elevated planes of movement.[25–27] This is particularly true with a posterior capsular contracture, which commonly coexists with SIS and RC disease. Posterior capsular contracture may add to the abnormal subacromial contact by producing an anterosuperior translation during active elevation.[25–27] Any tightness of the posterior capsule also can cause a decrease in internal rotation of the GH joint, which leads to an increase in the anterior and superior migration of the humeral head. In contrast, tightness of the anteroinferior capsule results in limited external rotation, preventing the greater tuberosity from sufficient external rotation to "clear" the coracoacromial arch. Thus, the restoration of capsular mobility is an important component in the rehabilitation process.
- *Age.* The age of the patient appears to be an important etiological factor in the development of subacromial impingement in association with repetitive motion. In the absence of repetitive motion as a mitigating factor, SIS is more common after the third decade of life and is uncommon in individuals younger than 30 years.[28,29] Also, there is a normal age-related increase in asymptomatic RC defects.[29]

Once the PT has performed the patient interview, a careful screening for health-related systemic conditions, and obtained completed pain, quality of life, and disability questionnaires and measurements of impairments, the physical examination begins. The examination begins with an assessment of the influence of pain, restricted movement, instability, and weakness. Assessment of impairment is typically followed by special orthopaedic tests designed to assess the structural integrity of the RC. Once the PT has determined the aggravating movements, activities, or postures that reproduce the symptoms an intervention plan is created.

The primary intervention for treating RC tendinopathy is active exercise therapy to relieve pain, reduce muscle spasm, promote tendon healing, restore normal shoulder movement patterns, and ultimately, improve function. Initially, the approach may include relative rest, which consists of advice/strategies to reduce/modify activities of the involved limb to avoid pain exacerbation. Some evidence-based exercise protocols have been developed. For example, one study[30] concluded that RC eccentric strengthening exercises and eccentric/concentric exercises for the scapular stabilizers reduced the need for arthroscopic subacromial decompression. The recommended intervention for SIS begins with scapular setting exercises and postural education before following the progression as outlined in the "General Intervention Strategies" section earlier in this chapter.

Rotator Cuff Repair

The patient with a symptomatic, RC–deficient GH joint poses a complex problem for the orthopaedic team, and several surgical options are available, depending on the presentation. There are two broad categories of RC tears, defined by the depth of the tendon tear: partial thickness and full thickness tears, either of which may require surgical management. The indications for a RC repair are persistent pain that interferes with activities of daily living (ADLs), work, or sports; patients who are unresponsive to a 4- to 6-month period of conservative care; or active young patients (younger than 50 years of age) with an acute full-thickness tear.[31] Three of the more common repair techniques are the open RC repair, the mini-open (arthroscopically assisted), and the arthroscopic repair.

- *Traditional open RC repair.* The open technique involves a vertical incision over the anterior shoulder. The deltoid is divided to allow access to the RC and subacromial space. An anterior and inferior acromioplasty is performed, and the RC is inspected because the method of repair is dependent on the extent of the tear. The coracoacromial ligament, an important structure in restraining upward migration of the humerus, is not resected unless major tightness is present or exposure is needed.
- *Mini-open.* There are two variations of this type of procedure, both of which involve arthroscopic subacromial decompression and a deltoid splitting approach.
- *Arthroscopic repair.* The role of arthroscopy in the treatment of RC lesions is evolving. The procedure has advanced remarkably over the past 2 decades,[32] from its original use as a diagnostic tool to an effective treatment option for patients with stage II impingement and acromioclavicular joint arthritis. In the past, arthroscopic techniques were reserved for small or moderately sized partial- or full-thickness tears of the supraspinatus or infraspinatus. Recently, repair of full-thickness RC tears using an arthroscopic technique has been described. The advantages of arthroscopic repair appear to include smaller skin incisions, GH joint inspection, treatment of intra-articular lesions, avoidance of deltoid detachment, less soft tissue dissection, and less pain.

☑ KEY POINT

Subacromial decompression procedures are used to remove the cause of the impingement of the humeral head and the undersurface of the acromion, thereby allowing freer movement. These procedures can include removal of the subacromial bursa (bursectomy), coracoacromial ligament resection, anterior acromioplasty, excision of the outer end of the clavicle, acromionectomy, osteotomies of the glenoid or acromion, and combinations of these procedures. Also, other procedures may be required, including capsular tightening, repair of the biceps brachii (long head), or labral reconstruction.

Regardless of the technique chosen, open or arthroscopic, the speed of the postsurgical rehabilitation remains unchanged because the limiting factor—tendon-to-bone healing—remains constant. Also, the speed of the progression is a factor of the status of the deltoid muscle, the size of the tear, and the ability to move the shoulder without injuring the tissues.

Postsurgical Rehabilitation

Following the surgery, there are many factors that influence decisions about the position and duration of immobilization, the selection and application of exercises, and the rate of progression of each patient's postoperative rehabilitation program.[11] The goals of postoperative RC rehabilitation are to protect the repair, promote healing, gradually restore motion and strength, and return the individual to normal functioning.[33] The success of shoulder rehabilitation relies on several key factors: endurance training of the RC, and protection of the cuff musculature from adverse forces, restoring normal flexibility of the joint capsule, ensuring correct thoracic posture, and scapular positioning for optimal scapulohumeral rhythm.[34]

Traditional protocols typically involve some period of immobilization in a sling, depending on many variables: the size, thickness, quality, location, shape, and chronicity of the tear; the surrounding cuff muscle quality; the age of the patient; the health characteristics and comorbidities of the patient; the patient's goal; the patient's access to care; the surgeons rehabilitation philosophy and experience; the surgical repair fixation technique used; the quality and density of bone; the mechanism of cuff failure; and the postoperative stability of the repair.[34–36] Typically, the arm is protected in a sling or on a small abduction pillow. A sling may be preferred if the tension on the repair is minimal or none with the arm at the side. Approximate periods of immobilization in a sling, at the discretion of the surgeon, are as follows:

- *Small tears:* 1–3 weeks
- *Medium tears:* 3–6 weeks
- *Large and massive tears:* 6–8 weeks

An abduction orthosis is recommended if the tension through the repair site is minimal or none with the arm in 20 to 40 degrees of abduction. Approximate periods of immobilization in the orthosis, at the discretion of the surgeon, are as follows:

- *Small tears:* 6 weeks
- *Medium tears:* 6 weeks
- *Large and massive tears:* 8 weeks

Prolonged immobilization is not recommended as it can have long-term negative effects such as joint stiffness and fibrosis, muscular atrophy, fatty degeneration and infiltration, and impaired return to normal functioning.[37] Depending on the surgeon, a continuous passive motion machine (CPMM) may be prescribed to prevent the degenerating effects of immobilization, provide nourishment to the articular cartilage, and assist in collagen synthesis and organization. Remobilization of an immobilized tendon results in acceleration of collagen synthesis and the enzymes that promote cross-link formation.[34] Interestingly, manual PROM exercises have been found to be more cost-effective and to yield results similar to those of a CPMM. The degree of movement permitted during the first 6 weeks is guided by the stability of the operative repair and the surgeon's preference. External rotation motion beyond neutral is usually restricted for the first 4 weeks. Some postsurgical protocols call for seated pulley AAROM exercises on day 1 postoperatively although this can run the risk of re-tear.[38] In a single case study, Burmaster et al. achieved good results using low-stress aquatic exercises post surgically with a patient with a repaired full-thickness medium-sized tear. The protocol used numerous controlled motion/buoyancy assisted motion techniques in addition to land-based manual physical therapy treatments. Once the early protective phase is over, the rehabilitation progression can follow the progression described in the "General Intervention Strategies" section earlier in this chapter.

☑ KEY POINT

Recommendations for the safest position of the shoulder in which to begin isometric training of the glenohumeral musculature following repair are inconsistent. The physical therapist assistant (PTA) should always check with the supervising PT or surgeon.

Glenohumeral Instability

Instability is the abnormal symptomatic motion of the GH joint that affects normal joint kinematics and results in pain, subluxation, or dislocation of the shoulder. In the early years of life, the GH joint remains fairly stable due to the active mechanisms stabilizing the joint. However, if the person begins to decondition with time, the dynamic mechanisms become unable to support the joint. The joint becomes involved in a self-perpetuating cycle of more instability, less use, more shoulder dysfunction, and more instability. In addition to shoulder capsular redundancy, underlying causes of GH instability can include genetic, biochemical (collagen), and biomechanical factors.[39] Characteristic of this pattern is the complaint of the shoulder "slipping" or "popping out" during overhead activities.

Instability of the shoulder can be classified by frequency, magnitude, direction, and origin.[40] The frequency of occurrence is classified as acute or chronic. Acute traumatic instability with dislocation of the shoulder is the most striking variety and often requires immediate manipulative reduction. Shoulder instability also is classified according to the direction of the subluxation. These instabilities can be unidirectional (anterior, posterior, or inferior), bidirectional, or multidirectional. Posterior instability results either from avulsion of the posterior glenoid labrum from the posterior glenoid or a stretching of the posterior capsuloligamentous structures.

Anterior Instability

Anterior instability of the GH joint is the most common direction of instability. Anterior instability occurs when the abducted shoulder is repetitively placed in the anterior apprehension position of external rotation and horizontal abduction. Such individuals may have pain with overhead movements due to an inability to control their laxity using their muscles. They may develop enough instability directed superiorly that they present with impingement-like symptoms (instability–impingement overlap), especially in positions of abduction and external rotation. Unilateral dislocations occurring from acute traumatic events can cause secondary lesions, including the Bankart lesion and the Hill-Sachs lesion (**FIGURE 20.37**).

- The Bankart lesion is an avulsion of the anteroinferior labrum from the glenoid rim and requires surgical stabilization (*t*raumatic, *u*nidirectional instability with *B*ankart lesion requiring *s*urgery, or TUBS).
- The Hill-Sachs lesion is a compression fracture on the posterior humeral head at the site where the humeral head impacted the inferior glenoid rim.

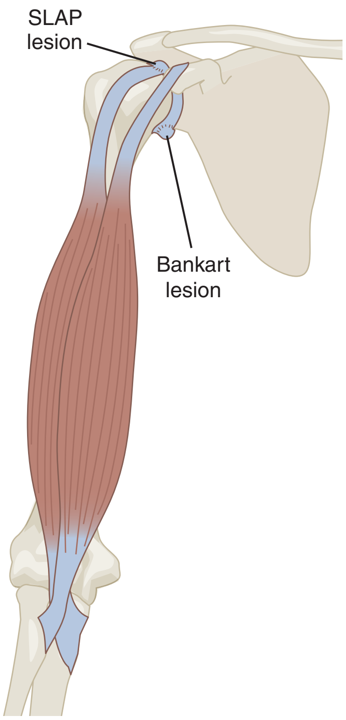


FIGURE 20.37 Bankart lesion. Also showing Hill-Sachs lesion.

Chronic recurrent dislocations of the shoulder can lead to degenerative arthritis. An older person who dislocates a shoulder is likely to have concurrently torn the RC. Lesser traumatic injuries can cause subluxation of the shoulder to such a degree that recurrent subluxation rather than dislocation becomes a source of dysfunction.

The mechanism for a subluxation or recurrent dislocation usually involves a fall on an outstretched hand (FOOSH) injury, whereby the arm is forced into abduction, extension, and external rotation.

Posterior Instability

Posterior instabilities are rare, and comprise approximately 2 percent of all shoulder dislocations.[41] Posterior dislocations are often associated with seizure, electric shock, diving into a shallow pool, or motor vehicle accidents. Patients who have symptoms with the arm in a forward flexed, adducted position, such as when pushing open heavy doors, have a posterior instability pattern. These dislocations are classified as subacromial (posterior and inferior to the acromion process), subglenoid (posterior and inferior to the glenoid rim), and subspinous (medial to the acromion and inferior to the scapular spine), with the former being the more common for posterior dislocations.[40] The classic sign for a posterior dislocation is a loud clunk as the shoulder is moved from a forward flexed position to an abducted and externally rotated position (due to the relocation of the posteriorly subluxed humerus, a positive finding often associated and confused with an anterior dislocation).

Inferior Instability

Inferior dislocations are uncommon. Inferior instability is elicited by carrying heavy objects at one's side (e.g., grocery bag, a suitcase), or by hyperabduction forces that cause a levering of the humeral neck against the acromion. Inferior subluxation is common after CNS injury secondary to weakness of the shoulder girdle and the scapular stabilizers.

Multidirectional Instability

Multidirectional instability is symptomatic GH instability in more than one direction (anteriorly, inferiorly, and posteriorly). Multidirectional instability is often described using the abbreviation AMBRII (*a* traumatic onset of *m*ultidirectional instability that is accompanied by *b*ilateral laxity or hypermobility. *R*ehabilitation is the primary course of intervention to restore GH stability. However, if an operation is necessary, a procedure such as a capsulorrhaphy is performed to tighten the *i*nferior capsule and the rotator *i*nterval).

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> It is commonly believed that females have more joint laxity than males, a fact propagated by the medical literature and medical training.[39] However, with the exception of a few articles, there are inadequate data to confirm this view.

SLAP Lesions

SLAP lesions are defined as *s*uperior *l*abral lesions that are both *a*nterior and *p*osterior. Individuals performing overhead movements may develop a "dead arm" syndrome[42] in which they have a painful shoulder. The main problem is usually a tear of the superior labrum, the so-called SLAP lesion.[43] The lesion can also result from a FOOSH injury, sudden deceleration or traction forces, such as catching a falling heavy object, a motor vehicle accident (e.g., drivers who have their hands on the wheel and sustain a rear-end impact), or chronic anterior and posterior instability.

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> The superior aspect of the labrum is more mobile and prone to injury due to its close attachment to the long head of the biceps tendon.[40]

SLAP lesions can be classified into four main types[44] by signs and symptoms as follows:

- *Type I.* This type involves a fraying and degeneration of the edge of the superior labrum. The patient loses the ability to horizontally abduct and externally rotate with the forearm pronated without pain.[45]
- *Type II.* This type involves a pathologic detachment of the labrum and biceps tendon anchor, resulting in a loss of the stabilizing effect of the labrum and the biceps.[46]
- *Type III.* This type involves a vertical tear of the labrum, similar to the bucket-handle tear of the meniscus, although the remaining portions of the labrum and biceps are intact.[40]
- *Type IV.* This type involves an extension of the bucket-handle tear into the biceps tendon, with portions of the labral flap and biceps tendon displaceable into the GH joint.[40]

Maffet and colleagues[47] have suggested expanding the classification scale to a total of seven categories, adding descriptions for types V through VII as follows:

- *Type V.* This type is characterized by the presence of a Bankart lesion of the anterior capsule that extends into the anterior superior labrum.
- *Type VI.* This type involves a disruption of the biceps tendon anchor with an anterior or posterior superior labral flap tear.
- *Type VII.* This is described as the extension of a SLAP lesion anteriorly to involve the area inferior to the middle GH ligament.

Conservative Approach

The general conservative approach for all forms of GH instability following the period of immobilization includes the following:

- *Avoidance of provocative positions (those that reproduce the mechanism of dislocation).* While avoiding these positions, the principles of PRICEMEM are followed and active motion exercises are prescribed for the elbow (without compromising the shoulder), wrist, and hand. Submaximal isometrics for the shoulder can be initiated while the arm is maintained in the sling and immobilizer.
- *Scapular stability exercises.* These can be started early, and in this early stage the control of the scapula position can be aided by taping the scapula in a retracted or elevated position, or by the use of a figure-8 collar, both of which help to normalize the scapular muscle firing pattern.[48]
- *Closed-chain exercises.* These exercises, normally performed with the hand stabilized on a wall or object, simulate normal functional patterns and reorganize and reestablish normal motor firing patterns. All of the movements of the scapula and shoulder are coupled and are predictable based on arm position. Closed-chain exercises should involve integration of all of the joints in the appropriate kinetic chain with the specific scapular maneuvers of elevation, depression, retraction, and protraction.
- *Early exercises to rehabilitate scapulohumeral rhythm.* These include modified push-ups, and progress to facilitation patterns that include hip extension, trunk extension, and scapular retraction.[49] Clock exercises, in which the scapula is rotated in elevation/depression and retraction/protraction, also develop coordinated patterns for scapular control.[49]

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> Positions to avoid following an anterior shoulder subluxation include shoulder abduction and external rotation.

Open-chain exercises follow the isometric and gentle closed-chain activities as the former exercises are more strenuous.[48] The criteria to progress to this phase include full, nonpainful ROM, no palpable tenderness, and uninterrupted progression of shoulder strength. While performing the open-chain exercises, care must be taken to avoid the provocative positions of abduction and external rotation. Typical open-chain exercises include PNF patterns/diagonals, upright rows, and external rotation and scapular retraction activities, as well as machine exercises consisting of lat pull-downs.[48] Weight-bearing exercises through the upper extremities are introduced once the patient has regained sufficient strength in motion, as deemed by the supervising PT.

Surgical Intervention

When the GH joint subluxes or dislocates, either traumatically or atraumatically, significant capsular stretching can occur. Capsular stretching, in turn, can result in GH joint laxity or instability, depending on the severity. To regain shoulder stability, these lesions may require surgical repair, with the aim of alleviating pain while permitting the ROM and strength to return to premorbid levels. Surgical intervention is reserved for patients who remain symptomatic or disabled following the conservative intervention, or those whose instability is so gross that conservative intervention is not deemed appropriate.

Some surgical procedures exist for instability of the shoulder, including the following:

- *Bankart.* The Bankart repair involves an open or arthroscopic reattachment of the torn joint capsule to the glenoid. During the repair, an anterior capsulolabral reconstruction is performed to reattach the labrum to the surface of the glenoid lip. The proposed advantages of arthroscopic stabilization over the traditional open repairs include smaller skin incisions, a more complete inspection of the GH joint, the ability to treat intra-articular lesions, access to all areas of the GH joint for repair, less soft tissue dissection, and maximum preservation of external rotation.
- *Capsulorrhaphy.* This technique, which can be performed using either an open or arthroscopic approach, involves tightening the capsule to reduce capsular redundancy and overall capsule volume. The type of procedure used is tailored to the direction of instability, although most procedures are performed because of anterior instability.
- *Electrothermally assisted capsulorrhaphy.* The electrothermally assisted capsulorrhaphy (ETAC) or thermal assisted capsular shift (TACS) is a procedure designed to treat shoulder instability. The thermal capsulorrhaphy technique applies thermal energy, laser, or radiofrequency to the capsular tissues. Ultimately, this shrinks (denatures) the collagen, which tightens the entire anterior and inferior capsule. To resolve posterior instability, the surgeon introduces the thermal capsulorrhaphy probe posteriorly, directly heating the tissue of the posterior capsule. One of the advantages of this procedure is that the patient is often permitted to perform active AROM within 3 days of the surgery.[50,51] Whether this translates into better outcomes has yet to be determined.
- *SLAP lesion repair.* An arthroscopic repair that involves debridement of the torn portion of the superior labrum, abrasion of the bony surface of the superior glenoid, and reattachment of the labrum and biceps tendon with tacks and suture anchors. An anterior stabilization procedure also may be performed as appropriate.

☑ KEY POINT

The Bristow procedure, no longer in favor, involved the surgical repositioning of the tip of the coracoid process (as well as the attached coracobrachialis and the short head of the biceps) to the anterior glenoid rim to form a bony block.

Acute Phase Rehabilitation The goals of the postsurgical rehabilitation process are to restore functional flexibility and to strengthen the RC muscles and scapular stabilizers while protecting the healing capsule and other tissues involved. The rehabilitation program depends primarily on the procedure that was performed and on the surgeon's preferences. There is typically a period of immobilization (ranging from 1 to 3 weeks to as long as 6 to 8 weeks) in a sling or shoulder immobilizer with the position of immobilization determined by the direction of instability prior to the surgery.

- Following the procedure for a recurrent anterior or anteroinferior instability, the shoulder is immobilized in a sling or splint in adduction or varying degrees of abduction and in internal rotation with the arm slightly anterior to the frontal plane of the body.
- Following the procedure for posterior or posteroinferior instability, the upper extremity is supported in an orthosis, and the shoulder is immobilized in neutral rotation to 10 to 20 degrees of external rotation, 20 to 30 degrees of abduction, elbow flexed, and the arm positioned at the side or sometimes with the shoulder in slight extension.

During the period of immobilization, the patient can perform active elbow, wrist, hand, and finger exercises, and pain-free submaximal isometric exercises for the shoulder. With the supervising PT's permission, electrical stimulation can be used for edema reduction, muscle re-education, and pain control. A progressive cardiovascular program is initiated, using a walking program or a stationary bike. The time at which the immobilizer may be temporarily removed for exercises varies significantly and depends on a number of factors determined by the surgeon. There are also a number of precautions that must be taken based on the procedure:[11]

- Following an anterior glenohumeral stabilization procedure and/or Bankart repair, care must be taken to limit external rotation, horizontal abduction, and extension during the first 6 weeks. Forward flexion is progressed more cautiously following arthroscopic stabilization as compared to an open stabilization.
  - Following a bony procedure, passive or assisted ROM is delayed for 6 to 8 weeks to allow time for bone healing.
  - Following a procedure that involved subscapularis detachment and repair, no active or assisted internal rotation is permitted for 4 to 6 weeks.
  - The patient should be advised to avoid functional activities that place stress on the anterior aspect of the capsule for about 4 to 6 weeks. For example, activities that require external rotation, especially if combined with horizontal abduction, should be avoided as should upper extremity weight-bearing, particularly if the shoulder is extended.
- Following a procedure that involved thermally assisted capsular tightening, ROM exercises should be performed with extreme caution for the first 4 to 6 weeks; additional precautions depend on the direction of instability.
- Following a posterior stabilization procedure and/or reverse Bankart repair, all shoulder exercises are postponed, or arm elevation is limited to 90 degrees, internal rotation is limited to neutral or no more than 15 to 20 degrees, and horizontal adduction is restricted to neutral for up to 6 weeks postoperatively.
- Following SLAP lesion repair, progression in cases where the biceps tendon was detached is more cautious than when the biceps remains intact.
  - Passive or assisted elevation of the arm is limited to 60 degrees for the first 2 weeks and to 90 degrees at weeks 3 to 4 postoperatively.
  - Passive assisted humeral rotation is performed in the plane of the scapula for the first 2 weeks (external rotation to only neutral or up to 15 degrees, and internal rotation to 45 degrees); during weeks 3 to 4, external rotation is progressed to 30 degrees and internal rotation to 60 degrees.
  - The patient is educated to avoid positions that create tension in the biceps, such as elbow extension with shoulder extension, and abduction combined with maximum external rotation, during the first 4 to 6 weeks postoperatively.

To help achieve the restoration of shoulder mobility, pendulum exercises (nonweighted) are performed for the first 2 weeks postoperatively. In addition, self-assisted ROM wand exercises for the GH joint are performed, initially within protected ranges as early as 2 weeks or as late as 6 weeks postoperatively. Shoulder elevation exercises are begun in the supine position to help stabilize the scapula, and the humeral rotation exercises are performed with the arm supported in the shoulder in a slightly abducted and flexed position.

- *Anterior stabilization.* Gradually progress to near complete ROM by 6 to 8 weeks, except for external rotation and extension and horizontal abduction past neutral.
- *Posterior stabilization.* Gradually progress to near complete ROM by 6 to 8 weeks, taking care with forward flexion, horizontal abduction, and internal rotation.

Multiple-angle, low-intensity isometric (muscle setting) exercises are usually initiated as early as the first week or by 3 to 4 weeks postoperatively. The criteria for progression beyond this phase include a well-healed incision, progress in ROM (active elevation to within 20 to 30 degrees compared with the uninvolved side, and the rotation to approximately 50 to 60 percent of the uninvolved side), and minimal pain.

Subacute Phase Rehabilitation This phase typically begins 6 to 8 weeks postoperatively and continues until approximately 12 to 16 weeks. The following resistive exercises can generally be initiated with an emphasis on internal and external rotation:

- The supraspinatus is exercised actively in isolation using the so-called empty can position (internal rotation of the shoulder, thumb pointing to the floor, and abduction of the shoulder to 90 degrees while maintaining a position of 30 degrees anterior to the midfrontal plane).
- Horizontal abduction is initiated and is typically performed actively in the prone position, whereas horizontal adduction begins 1 week later and is performed in supine.
- Deltoid strengthening and shoulder proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation (PNF) patterns are

introduced based on the patient's tolerance and within the postsurgical range limitations.

- Internal and external rotation strengthening exercises are performed within permitted ranges with the arm at the side. Using an axillary roll emphasizes the teres minor muscle; omission of the roll emphasizes the infraspinatus muscle.
- Active shoulder extension is performed in the prone position.
- Resisted exercises are added to the elbow and wrist.
- Gentle hands-and-knees rocking is initiated and progressed to gentle three-point rocking. Progressive upper extremity weight bearing is added as tolerated.
- The stretching phase of the program is initiated, taking care to observe the restrictions imposed by the surgery. For anterior instability repairs, external rotation is typically limited to –15 degrees compared with the uninvolved side, and internal rotation is limited similarly for posterior instability repairs. In fact, it is a good idea to allow the patient to achieve the last 15 degrees of each motion at his or her own speed, rather than risk overstretching the capsule too early and possibly compromising the repair.

Eccentric cuff exercises involving internal rotation, abduction, external rotation, adduction, and shoulder flexion are initiated and progressed based on patient tolerance. Functional activities are introduced as tolerated.

Frozen Shoulder/Adhesive Capsulitis

In 1945, Neviaser coined the term *adhesive capsulitis* to describe his findings of a chronic inflammatory process at surgery and autopsy in patients treated for a painful, stiff shoulder.[52] Significant evidence exists in support of the hypothesis that the underlying pathologic changes in adhesive capsulitis are synovial inflammation with subsequent reactive capsular fibrosis, making adhesive capsulitis an inflammatory and a fibrosing condition, dependent on the stage of the disease.[53,54]

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> Factors associated with adhesive capsulitis include the following:[55–57]
>
> - Female gender
> - Age older than 40 years
> - Trauma
> - Diabetes
> - Prolonged immobilization
> - Thyroid disease
> - Stroke or myocardial infarction
> - Certain psychiatric conditions
> - The presence of autoimmune diseases

Nash and Hazelman[58] have described the concept of primary and secondary adhesive capsulitis.

Primary Adhesive Capsulitis

With primary adhesive capsulitis (PAC), the pathogenesis maybe a provoking chronic inflammation in the musculotendinous or synovial tissue such as the RC, biceps tendon, or joint capsule. PAC, which usually occurs between the ages of 40 and 60 years, is characterized by a progressive and painful loss of active and passive shoulder motion, particularly external rotation, which causes the individual to limit the use of the arm gradually. Difficulties are reported with putting on a jacket or coat, putting objects in back pockets, or hooking garments in the back. Inflammation and pain can cause muscle guarding of the shoulder muscles, without true fixed contracture of the joint capsule. Disuse of the arm results in a loss of shoulder mobility, whereas continued use of the arm through pain can lead to the development of subacromial impingement.[59] Over a period of weeks, compensatory movements of the shoulder girdle develop in order to minimize pain.[59] With time, there is resolution of pain and the individual is left with a stiff shoulder with severe limitation of function.

Secondary or Idiopathic Adhesive Capsulitis

Zuckerman and Cuomo[60] defined idiopathic adhesive capsulitis as a condition characterized by significant restriction of both active and passive shoulder motion that occurs in the absence of a known intrinsic shoulder disorder.

Stages of Progression

Neviaser[52] suggests that adhesive capsulitis passes through three stages based on pathologic changes in the synovium and subsynovium.[40]

- *Freezing*. Patients present with intense pain even at rest. A capsular pattern of motion (loss of external rotation and abduction) is present by 2 to 3 weeks after the onset, as is a more subtle loss of internal rotation and adduction. In this early stage, the majority of motion loss is secondary to the painful synovitis, rather than a true capsular contraction. These acute symptoms may last 10 to 36 weeks.
- *Frozen*. This stage is characterized by pain only with movement. Patients often report a history of an extremely painful phase that has resolved, resulting in a relatively pain-free but stiff shoulder. The motion loss reflects a loss of capsular volume and the response to the painful synovitis. The patient

demonstrates a loss of motion in all planes and pain in all parts of the range. There may be evidence of atrophy of the RC, biceps, deltoid, and triceps brachii. This stage lasts 4 to 12 months.
- *Thawing*. This stage is characterized by the slow, steady recovery of some of the lost ROM resulting from capsular remodeling in response to the use of the arm and shoulder. Although many people feel less restricted in this phase, objective measurement shows only minor improvement.[54]

Common impairments and functional limitations associated with the various stages of adhesive capsulitis include the following:

- Pain, which can occur on motion or at rest and disturb sleep during acute flares
- Inability to reach overhead, behind the head, and behind the back, leading to difficulties dressing, reaching, self-grooming, and eating
- Decreased joint play and ROM
- General muscle weakness and guarded shoulder motions with substitute scapular motions
- Limited ability to sustain repetitive activities

Intervention

Conventional management for adhesive capsulitis includes patient advice, medical intervention (analgesics, NSAIDs, steroid injection), and a wide variety of physical therapy methods.[61] Pajareya and colleagues[61] performed a randomized controlled trial of 122 patients to study the effectiveness of a combination of physical therapy techniques and ibuprofen versus ibuprofen alone. The physical therapy intervention (three times per week for 3 weeks) included shortwave diathermy, joint mobilizations, and passive GH stretching exercises up to the patient's tolerance. At 3 weeks it was concluded that the treatment group demonstrated more beneficial effects than the group using ibuprofen alone.[61]

The primary goal of conservative intervention is based on the stage of healing:[53,54,62]

- *Acute/freezing*. Maximum protection through immobilization in a sling and intermittent periods of passive or assisted motion within all pain-free/protected ranges of motion, including the pendulum exercise. The exercises are progressed to include AROM using correct joint and muscle mechanics, and gentle (pain-free) muscle setting exercises to all muscle groups of the shoulder and elbow. For example, if the deltoid is overactive, the humeral head may be held superiorly, making it difficult and/or painful to abduct the shoulder because the greater tuberosity impinges on the coracoacromial arch. Emphasis should be placed on developing control of the weak musculature before progressing to strengthening functional patterns of motion. The trust and confidence of the patient is necessary during this stage, and it is important to ensure that no harm is caused or that the clinician does not indicate any frustration. A sample rehabilitation protocol for adhesive capsulitis is outlined in **TABLE 20.12**.
- *Subacute/frozen*. The application of controlled tensile stresses to produce elongation of the restricting tissues. The ROM exercises for the shoulder and scapular motions are progressed to the point of pain. As a general guideline, the patient with capsular restriction and low irritability may require aggressive soft tissue and joint mobilization, whereas patients with high irritability may require pain-easing manual therapy techniques. During this stage, the patient can be taught some self-stretches, including those in **FIGURE 20.38** though **FIGURE 20.40**. During the arm elevation exercises, the patient should be taught to avoid hiking the shoulder. The muscle setting exercises introduced during the acute phase are progressed to include protected weight bearing, such as leaning on the hands against the wall or table. These exercises stimulate co-contraction of the RC and scapular stabilizing muscles. Once tolerated, these exercises can be progressed to include gentle rocking forward/backward and side to side.
- *Chronic/thawing*. Return to function. The goals during this phase are to increase ROM and progress to strengthening exercises (refer to Table 20.12).

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> Complex regional pain syndrome type I is a potential complication after shoulder injury or immobility. Therefore, special attention should be given to the hand, with additional exercises, such as having the patient repetitively squeeze a ball or other soft object.[11]

Sternoclavicular Joint Sprain

The SC joint is less involved with osteoarthritis or mechanical conditions than is the AC joint.[63] The joint can sustain sprains, dislocations, or physeal injuries, usually secondary to a FOOSH with the arm in either a flexed and adducted position, or an extended

TABLE 20.12 Rehabilitation Protocol for Adhesive Capsulitis

Freezing Phase	Intervention
Therapeutic exercises	Controlled, pain-free PROM exercises. The focus is on stretching at ROM limits. No restrictions on the passive range, but PTA and patient have to communicate to avoid injuries. Initially, the focus is on forward flexion and external and internal rotation with the arm at the side and the elbow at 90 degrees. AAROM exercises. AROM exercises. A home exercise program should be instituted from the beginning. ■ Patients should perform their ROM exercises three to five times per day. ■ A sustained stretch of 15–30 seconds at the end of the ROM exercises should be part of all ROM routines.
Therapeutic modalities	Ice, nonpulsed ultrasound, electrical stimulation.
Frozen Phase	**Intervention**
Therapeutic exercises	AROM exercises. Rotator cuff strengthening—three times per week, 8–12 repetitions for three sets. Closed-chain isometric strengthening with the elbow flexed to 90 degrees and the arm at the side: ■ External rotation ■ Abduction ■ Forward flexion Progress to open-chain strengthening: ■ Internal rotation ■ External rotation ■ Abduction ■ Forward flexion Strengthening of scapular stabilizers. Closed-chain strengthening exercises: ■ Scapular retraction (rhomboideus, middle trapezius) ■ Scapular protraction (serratus anterior) ■ Scapular depression (latissimus dorsi, trapezius, serratus anterior) ■ Shoulder shrugs (trapezius, levator scapulae) Deltoid strengthening. Home maintenance exercise program; ROM exercises two times perday.
Thawing Phase	**Intervention**
Therapeutic exercises	Stretching and strengthening exercises are progressed as the joint tissue tolerates. By this time, the patient should be actively involved in self-stretching and strengthening, so emphasis during treatment is on correct mechanics, safe progressions, and exercise strategies for return to function. If the patient is involved in repetitive heavy lifting, exercises are progressed to replicate these demands.

FIGURE 20.38 Stretch into ER using weight.

FIGURE 20.39 Stretch into IR using weight.

FIGURE 20.40 Capsular stretch.

and adducted position. The joint also can be injured through motor vehicle accidents and sports. The well-developed interarticular meniscus can be torn and can lead secondarily to degenerative changes. Irritation of this joint may also occur in inflammatory conditions, such as rheumatoid arthritis or repetitive microtrauma. Infection of this joint usually indicates a systemic source, such as bacterial endocarditis. SC sprains are graded according to severity.[64]

- *Type I:* Sprain of SC ligament
- *Type II:* Subluxation, partial tear of capsular ligaments, disk, or costoclavicular ligaments
- *Type IIA:* Anterior subluxation; this is the most common grade
- *Type IIB:* Posterior subluxation; these have the potential to result in circulatory vessel compromise, nerve tissue impingement, and difficulty swallowing
- *Type IIIA:* Anterior dislocation
- *Type IIIB:* Posterior dislocation
- *Type IV:* Habitual dislocation (rare)

SC dislocations, although rare, are frequently delayed in their diagnosis. Any trauma to the shoulder girdle may cause an SC dislocation, which is more common and more obvious when it occurs in the anterior direction.

The common impairments associated with these injuries include the following:[11]

- Pain localized to the involved structure
- Painful arc with shoulder elevation
- Pain with shoulder horizontal adduction or abduction
- Hypomobility (if sustained posture or immobility is involved) or hypermobility (if trauma or overuse is involved)

Intervention

The conservative intervention involves the following:[11]

- Placing the arm in a sling to support the weight of the arm
- Transverse frictional massage to the capsule or ligaments
- Progressive ROM to the shoulder (PROM, then AAROM, then AROM)

Acromioclavicular Joint Sprain

Disorders of the AC joint are commonly seen in the athletic population. Injuries to this joint can be categorized as either acute traumatic or chronic injuries. The majority of traumatic injuries occur from a fall onto the shoulder with the arm adducted at the side. The chronic disorder may be atraumatic or posttraumatic, with the former being attributed to generalized osteoarthritis, inflammatory arthritis, or mechanical problems of the meniscus of this joint. Injuries to the AC joint were originally classified by Tossy and colleagues[65] and Allman[66] as incomplete (grades I and II) and complete (grade III). This classification has been expanded to include six types of injuries based on the direction and amount of displacement (**TABLE 20.13**).

TABLE 20.13 Classification of AC Injuries, Description, Clinical Findings, and Recommended Interventions

Type	Description	Clinical Findings	Recommended Interventions
I	Isolated sprain of acromioclavicular ligaments with intact coracoclavicular ligaments, and deltoid and trapezoid muscles.	Include tenderness and mild pain at the AC joint, high (160–180 degrees) painful arc, and pain with resisted horizontal adduction.	Transverse frictional massage (TFM), ice, and pain-free AROM.
II	The AC ligament is disrupted and there is a sprain of the coracoclavicular ligament.	A wider AC joint gap with possible slight vertical separation when compared to the normal shoulder. In addition, the coracoclavicular interspace may be slightly increased, but the deltoid and trapezoid muscles remain intact. There is moderate to severe local pain and tenderness in the coracoclavicular space. PROM is painful in all end ranges but especially with horizontal adduction. Resisted abduction and adduction are also often painful.	Initiate with ice and pain-free AROM/PROM.
III	The AC joint is dislocated and the shoulder complex displaced inferiorly. The AC ligament is disrupted and the coracoclavicular interspace is 25–100 percent greater than the normal shoulder due to coracoclavicular ligament disruption. In addition, the deltoid and trapezoid muscles are usually detached from the distal end of the clavicle.	Clinical findings include the arm is held in an adducted position by the patient and there is an obvious gap visible between the acromion and clavicle. AROM is all painful, but PROM is painless if done carefully.	Initiate with ice and pain-free AROM/PROM.
IV	The AC ligament is disrupted and the AC joint is dislocated with the clavicle anatomically displaced posteriorly into or through the trapezius muscle. The deltoid and trapezoid muscles are detached from the distal end of the clavicle. In addition, the coracoclavicular ligaments are completely disrupted. Although the coracoclavicular interspace may be displaced, it may appear normal.	A posteriorly displaced clavicle.	Surgery is indicated.

(continues)

TABLE 20.13 Classification of AC Injuries, Description, Clinical Findings, and Recommended Interventions *(continued)*

Type	Description	Clinical Findings	Recommended Interventions
V	The AC and coracoclavicular ligaments are disrupted. The AC joint is dislocated and there is gross disparity between the clavicle and the scapula (300–500 percent greater than normal). Also, the deltoid and trapezoid muscles are detached from the distal end of the clavicle.	Tenderness over the entire lateral half of the clavicle.	Surgery is indicated.
VI	The AC ligaments are disrupted, and the coracoclavicular ligaments are completely disrupted. The AC joint is dislocated, and the clavicle is anatomically displaced inferior to the clavicle or the coracoid process. Also, the deltoid and trapezoid muscles are detached from the distal end of the clavicle. Often accompanied by clavicle or upper rib fracture and/or brachial plexus injury.	The coracoclavicular interspace is reversed with the clavicle being inferior to the acromion or the coracoid process. The superior aspect of the shoulder is flatter than the opposite side.	Surgery is indicated.

- Types I–III and V all involve inferior displacement of the acromion from the clavicle. They differ in the severity of injury to the ligaments and the amount of resultant displacement.
- Types I and II usually result from a fall or a blow to the point on the lateral aspect of the shoulder, or a FOOSH, producing a sprain.
- Types III and IV usually involve a dislocation (commonly called AC separation) and a distal clavicle fracture, both of which commonly disrupt the coracoclavicular ligaments. Also, damage to the deltoid and trapezius fascia, and rarely the skin, can occur. Type IV injuries are characterized by posterior displacement of the clavicle.
- Type VI injuries have a clavicle inferiorly displaced into either a subacromial or subcoracoid position.

Pain with AC sprains is typically reproduced at the end range of passive elevation, passive external and internal rotation, and passive horizontal adduction, across the chest. This cross-arm test compresses the AC joint and is highly sensitive for AC joint pathology. The ROM available depends on the stage of healing and severity. In the very acute stage, the range may be limited by pain, whereas the less acute stage will be painful at the end of the range in full elevation or horizontal adduction.

The common impairments associated with these injuries include the following:[11]

- Pain localized to the involved structure
- Painful arc with shoulder elevation
- Pain with shoulder horizontal adduction or abduction
- Hypomobility (if sustained posture or immobility is involved) or hypermobility (if trauma or overuse is involved)

Intervention

The intervention for these patients depends on the severity of the injury and the physical demands of the patient.

- *Types I and II.* These patients will usually recover full painless function with conservative and medical (NSAIDs and analgesics) intervention. Ice should be used judiciously. Most physicians prescribe a sling for 1 to 2 weeks. Gentle ROM exercises and functional rehabilitation are started immediately after the period of immobilization, followed by isometric exercises to those muscles with clavicular attachments. The exercises are progressed to PREs for the muscles that attach to the clavicle and the scapular pivoters. A graduated return to full activity is important. Most patients will be back to full sports participation within 12 weeks, although they may have a slight cosmetic deformity.

- *Type III.* The intervention for type III injuries is controversial. The natural history of this injury with conservative intervention suggests that patients have no long-term difficulty with pain or loss of function. There is a reported high complication rate with attempts at surgical stabilization. Once the sling is removed, pendulum exercises can be initiated. PROM in the extremes of motion is avoided for the first 7 days, but the goal should be for full PROM after 2 to 3 weeks. A graduated resistance exercise program is initiated once pain is improved and AROM is full. These exercises should emphasize strengthening of the deltoid and upper trapezius muscles and promote dynamic stabilization of the shoulder complex. Full return to sport is expected by 6–12 weeks. If patients are still functionally limited after more than 3 months, a secondary reconstructive procedure may be necessary.
- *Types IV, V, and VI.* These more unusual types of displacement all require surgical intervention. The more severe displacement and injury includes damage to the deltoid and trapezius muscle and fascia. Failure to reduce these and repair them may lead to chronic pain and dysfunction. The postsurgical progression involves gaining pain-free ROM prior to advancing to exercises to regain strength, manual techniques to normalize arthrokinematics, and functional training to improve neuromuscular control of the shoulder complex.

Clavicle Fractures

Fractures of the clavicle usually result from a FOOSH, a fall or blow to the point of the shoulder, or less commonly from a direct blow.

Patients with a clavicle fracture demonstrate guarded shoulder motions and have difficulty elevating the arm beyond 60 degrees. A clavicular deformity is usually observable. There also is exquisite tenderness to palpation or percussion (bony tap) over the fracture site. Horizontal adduction is painful. The diagnosis is confirmed by radiograph.

Intervention

The intervention for clavicle fractures includes approximation of the fracture ends followed by immobilization with a sling and figure-8 strap for 6–8 weeks. Using pain as a guide, AROM and PROM exercises for the shoulder can be initiated 1 week after the fitting of the figure-8 strap. Joint mobilizations are started immediately after the period of immobilization, and strengthening exercises for the deltoid and upper trapezius muscles are prescribed when appropriate.

Proximal Humeral Fractures

A proximal humeral fracture is the most common fracture of the humerus and typically results from a direct blow to the anterior, lateral, or posterolateral aspect of the humerus, or a FOOSH injury. Like hip fractures, proximal humerus fractures represent a major morbidity in the elderly population. Proximal humeral fractures involve the proximal third of the humerus. These fractures are classified based on severity:

- *Nondisplaced.* The majority of proximal humeral fractures are stable with no significant displacement of the fracture.
- *Displaced.* These types of fractures include the following:
    - Greater tuberosity fractures
    - Lesser tuberosity fractures
    - Surgical neck fractures
    - Anatomic head fractures
    - Three-part fractures (One tuberosity is displaced and retracted by its attached RC musculature. The humeral head and the other tuberosity remain attached and are subluxated or dislocated.)
    - Four-part fractures (Detachment of both tuberosities and dislocation of the humeral head from the glenoid.)

Because proximal humeral fractures may result from a fall in the clinic, the PTA needs to be aware of the common findings with this type of fracture:

- *Complaints of pain and loss of function of the involved extremity.* In general, unstable fractures are much more painful and often may require surgical stabilization to allow for adequate pain relief.
- *Swelling and ecchymosis about the shoulder and upper arm.* The presence of extensive ecchymosis may become visible 24 to 48 hours following injury.

☑ KEY POINT

The axillary nerve is the most common nerve injured in a proximal humerus fracture.

Intervention

Rehabilitation of humerus fractures depends on the severity and complexity of the initial fracture, patient compliance, medical comorbidities, and the means used to secure fixation of the fracture site.

Nondisplaced This type is typically treated conservatively, with an emphasis on controlling distal edema and stiffness, and early motion at the shoulder to prevent the development of arthrofibrosis (frozen shoulder) secondary to prolonged immobilization. The arm is usually immobilized in a sling until pain and discomfort subsides, often after 2 weeks. AROM exercises for the wrist and hand are initiated immediately. Typically, passive and active assisted exercises for the shoulder can be initiated about 1 week after injury. Clinical unity of the fracture usually occurs after 1 to 4 weeks.

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> Injury to the blood supply of the proximal humerus has been implicated in the development of avascular necrosis. If the medial tuberosity of the humerus is spared by the fracture, the anterior circumflex humeral artery vessel, which supplies the humeral head, will be spared.

Once clinical unity has been established, gentle AROM exercises are initiated for the shoulder and elbow. At this point, full PROM exercises to the shoulder and elbow are performed, with PREs typically initiated at 6 to 8 weeks.

Displaced If left untreated, displaced fractures have a greater likelihood than nondisplaced fractures of producing limited function. Operative treatment of proximal humerus fractures includes either closed reduction with percutaneous fixation, open reduction and internal fixation (ORIF), or proximal humeral head replacement. The more complex fractures also require prolonged periods of immobilization to allow for bony healing. Once the patient has been managed by an orthopaedic surgeon, and the immobilization device has been removed, the PT will perform an examination. One focus of this examination will be to determine whether a concurrent neurovascular injury occurred.

The intervention goals in proximal humerus fractures are to allow bone and soft tissue healing to maximize function of the upper extremity while minimizing risk. The physical therapy intervention includes the following:

- Gentle ROM exercises, which may begin after 7 to 10 days if the fracture is stable. Submaximal isometrics are initiated for the upper arm muscles, RC, and scapular stabilizers.
- More aggressive PROM and AAROM can begin once bony union has occurred. The fracture is typically healed by the eighth week. As with the rehabilitation of any shoulder condition, the goal should be to achieve a correct scapulohumeral rhythm as compared to the uninvolved side. As healing permits, the rehabilitation program includes functional shoulder activities and resistance exercises.

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> Clinical unity can be tested by the PT or physician by having the patient stand with the involved arm at their side with the elbow flexed. The clinician places one hand on the humeral head, and then gently rotates the humerus with the other. Clinical unity (usually at around 6 weeks) is established when the fracture fragments move in unison and the movement is free of crepitation. Clinical unity can be confirmed by radiograph.

Total Shoulder Arthroplasty

A total shoulder arthroplasty (TSA), or replacement, is a surgical option for elderly patients with shoulder arthropathy. Shoulder arthropathy occurs as a result of the superior translation of the humerus in the rotator cuff deficient shoulder. Other patients who may require a TSA include those with bone tumors, rheumatoid arthritis, Paget's disease, avascular necrosis of the humeral head, fracture dislocations, and recurrent dislocations. The main indication for surgical intervention is unremitting pain, rather than decreased motion, and a failure of conservative measures. A pseudo-paralysis often can occur with shoulder arthropathy secondary to pain and weakness that occurs at the GH joint. Additional considerations include patient age, loss of function, activity level, job requirements, and general health.

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> A course of shoulder stretching before a prosthetic arthroplasty may improve postsurgical function. The key muscles to address include the RC, deltoid, trapezius, rhomboids, serratus anterior, latissimus dorsi, teres major, and pectoralis major and minor.

Four types of replacement components traditionally have been used:

1. *Unconstrained.* This is the most widely used component due to its anatomic design. It consists of a shallow glenoid component combined with a stemmed humeral component. Although this type provides the greatest freedom of shoulder motion, it provides little inherent stability.
2. *Semiconstrained.* This type involves the use of a larger glenoid component that is hooded or cup-shaped with a head–neck angle of 60 degrees, which reportedly permits increased ROM while providing some stability.
3. *Reverse.* This type, referred to as rTSA, consists of a concave humeral socket that slides on a glenoid component that is a base plate with a glenosphere. This configuration moves the center of rotation medially and inferiorly, creating a mechanical advantage for the deltoid muscles, which become more able to compensate for the lacking RC during shoulder elevation.
4. *Constrained.* This type, rarely used because of the high rate of associated complications, was designed for patients who had severe deterioration of the RC but with a functioning deltoid. The glenoid and humeral components were coupled and fixed to bone.

☑ KEY POINT

A hemireplacement arthroplasty (hemiarthroplasty) in which one surface, the humeral head, is replaced, is often used when the articular surface and underlying bone of the humeral head have deteriorated but the glenoid fossa is reasonably intact, as seen with necrosis of the head of the humerus.

Fixation of the prosthetic components is achieved with a press-fit, bio-ingrowth, or cement. The type of fixation depends on the component, the underlying pathology, and the quality of bone stock. Although surgical techniques vary, most involve the dissection of the subscapularis or a RC repair, or a combination of both. Also, the procedure may include capsular plication and tightening in cases of chronic glenohumeral subluxation or dislocation, and anterior acromioplasty if there is a history of impingement syndrome. In the operating room, before closing the incision, the surgeon determines the extent of shoulder ROM available, particularly elevation and external rotation that does not place undue stress on periarticular soft tissues or compromise GH joint stability.[11] The patient is usually placed in a sling or an elastic shoulder immobilizer following the operation which positions the humerus in adduction, internal rotation, and slight forward flexion. An abduction splint may be issued if a RC repair is performed, and is worn for 6 to 8 weeks, according to the surgeon's instructions. The shoulder immobilizer is worn between exercise sessions and at night.

☑ KEY POINT

The amount of external rotation and active internal rotation that the patient can perform in the first 4 to 6 weeks is limited to motion parameters that are achieved at the time of surgery. Typically, the only motions not allowed in the early weeks are active internal rotation and active and passive external rotation beyond 35 to 40 degrees, but the PTA should always refer to the surgeon's protocol and PT's plan of care.

The final outcome following shoulder arthroplasty will depend on many factors including the quality of the soft tissue (especially the status of the rotator cuff), the quality of the bone, the type of implant and fixation used, the patient's expectations, and the quality of the rehabilitation program. Only the surgeon knows the extent of soft tissue damage and repair, and the guidelines communicated to the clinician must be strongly adhered to. The goal of the postoperative rehabilitation process is to decrease pain and improve functional status while providing greater joint stability to the patient.

Intervention

Improvements in the surgical approach have allowed the rehabilitation process to occur sooner after surgery. However, the rate of progression of the rehabilitation program is influenced by the pre- and postoperative integrity of the RC mechanism. In cases where there is an intact RC prior to shoulder arthroplasty, patients can be progressed more rapidly than those patients with a coexisting RC deficiency. The patient is advised to place a pillow under the humerus, positioning it in slight forward flexion, whenever he or she is lying supine. For a patient with an intact RC, therapeutic exercise is typically initiated 24 to 48 hours after the surgery and is usually performed twice daily until the PROM is at 140 degrees of passive forward flexion and scapular plane elevation, and 30 to 40 degrees of external rotation (humerus positioned in neutral to 30 degrees of abduction). These exercises may be delayed for approximately 3 weeks if subscapularis reattachment or lengthening was performed. Sometimes, a CPMM is prescribed by the physician. For a patient with an unconstrained TSR and sufficient postoperative static and dynamic shoulder stability, the goal of the conclusion of rehabilitation is to achieve AROM equal to intraoperative ROM—ideally 140 to 150 degrees of shoulder elevation and 45 to 50 degrees of external rotation. For a patient with a more constrained TSR, a deficient RC mechanism, or capsuloligamentous laxity, intraoperative ROM is typically less, and therefore postoperative goals focus more on developing dynamic stability and less on shoulder mobility.[11] The postoperative protocol outlined in **TABLE 20.14** can be used as a guideline for patients who are RC deficient, and the protocol outlined in **TABLE 20.15** can be used as a guideline for a patient without preoperative RC deficiency; however, the PTA must always use the surgeon's protocol.

TABLE 20.14 Rehabilitation Protocol Following Shoulder Arthroplasty (Rotator Cuff Deficient)

Phase 1	**Intervention**
Increase ROM of involved shoulder while maintaining ROM and strength of elbow, wrist, and hand	Continuous passive motion/PROM: ■ *Forward flexion:* 0–90 *degrees* ■ *External rotation at 30 degrees abduction:* 0–20 degrees ■ *Internal rotation at 30 degrees abduction:* 0–30 degrees Pendulum exercises AROM of elbow and wrist Gripping exercises Pulley exercises (second week)
Initiate strengthening of involved shoulder	Isometric exercises for abductors and external/internal rotators Active assisted motion exercises (as tolerated)
Phase 2 (5–8 weeks)	**Intervention**
Increase ROM of involved shoulder	AAROM exercises into flexion, external rotation, and internal rotation Pulley exercises Pendulum exercises AROM exercises
Increase strength of involved shoulder	Thera-tubing exercises into internal and external rotation (4–6 weeks) Biceps and triceps PREs using dumbbells
Phase 3 (8–12 weeks)	**Intervention (as appropriate)**
Increase ROM of involved shoulder	PROM: ■ *Flexion:* 0–120 degrees ■ *External rotation at 90 degrees abduction:* 30–40 degrees ■ *Internal rotation at 90 degrees abduction:* 45–55 degrees
Increase strength of involved shoulder Strength level 4/5: full external and internal rotation abduction	Thera-tubing exercises for external and internal rotation Dumbbell strengthening: abduction, supraspinatus, flexion Stretching exercises using cane: flexion, external rotation, and internal rotation

Data from Cohen BS, Romeo AA, Bach BR: Shoulder injuries, in Brotzman SB, Wilk KE (eds): *Clinical Orthopaedic Rehabilitation*. Philadelphia, Mosby, 2003, pp. 125–250.

TABLE 20.15 Rehabilitation Protocol Following Shoulder Arthroplasty (Non–Rotator Cuff Deficient)

Acute Protection Phase	**Intervention**
Begins on the first postoperative day and extends for up to 6 weeks. The emphasis is on patient education, pain control, and initiation of ROM exercises within ranges noticed during surgery. In addition, it is important to maintain mobility in the adjacent joints (neck and scapula) and in the involved upper extremity.	Continuous passive motion/supine PROM: ■ *Forward flexion (in the plane of the scapula and with the elbow flexed):* 0–90 degrees. The arm should be resting on a folded towel. ■ *External rotation at 30* degrees *(no more than 45* degrees*) abduction:* 0–20 degrees. ■ *Internal rotation at 30* degrees *(until the forearm rests on the chest) abduction:* 0–30 degrees. Later during this phase, the exercises are progressed to self-assisted ROM into elevation and rotation in the supine position, and then the sitting position Pendulum exercises Shoulder rolls and postural education AROM of elbow, wrist, and hand Gripping exercises Pulley exercises (second week)
Initiate strengthening of involved shoulder.	Gentle muscle setting exercises for abductors and external/internal rotators Active assisted motion exercises (as tolerated) using the uninvolved hand, and later using a wand or a cane
Subacute Protection Phase	**Intervention**
Criteria to advance to this phase are ROM of at least 90 degrees of passive elevation, at least 45 degrees of external rotation, and at least 70 degrees of internal rotation in the plane of the scapula with minimal pain. In addition, the patient should be able to perform most waist-level activities of daily living without pain.	Progress PROM into AAROM exercises in the following directions: flexion, external rotation, and internal rotation Gradually transition to AROM exercises and then pain-free, low-intensity resisted isometrics of the shoulder muscles, including the subscapularis or any other repaired muscle tendon units Pulley exercises Pendulum exercises
Increase strength of involved shoulder.	Thera-tubing/lightweight exercises into internal and external rotation (4–6 weeks) and from 0 to 90 degrees of shoulder elevation. Biceps and triceps PREs using dumbbells
Chronic Protection Phase	**Intervention (as appropriate)**
Usually begins around 12 to 16 weeks postoperatively and typically extends for several more months. The emphasis during this phase is to restore full AROM for functional activities in the presence of adequate stability of the GH joint.	PROM: ■ *Flexion:* 0–140 degrees ■ *External rotation at least 60 degrees, abduction:* 120 degrees ■ *Internal rotation at least 70 degrees, adduction:* 45–55 degrees
Increase strength of involved shoulder to a strength level of 4/5 in the RC muscles.	Pain-free thera-tubing/lightweight exercises for external and internal rotation Dumbbell strengthening: abduction, supraspinatus, flexion End range stretching exercises using cane: flexion, external rotation, and internal rotation

Data from Cohen BS, Romeo AA, Bach BR: Shoulder injuries, in Brotzman SB, Wilk KE (eds): *Clinical Orthopaedic Rehabilitation*. Philadelphia, Mosby, 2003, pp. 125–250.

Therapeutic Techniques

A number of therapeutic techniques can be used to assist the patient. These include manual techniques and self-stretches.

Scapular Assist

This technique is designed to apply manual assistance to the scapula during arm elevation. This is a good technique to gain ROM during the period when the scapular controllers are being strengthened but have not reached the point where they are able to work independently. The clinician stands behind the patient. The scapula is stabilized with one hand and, as the patient raises the arm, the scapular motion is assisted by applying a compressive force over the scapula with one hand while stabilizing the AC joint with the other hand **(FIGURE 20.41)**.

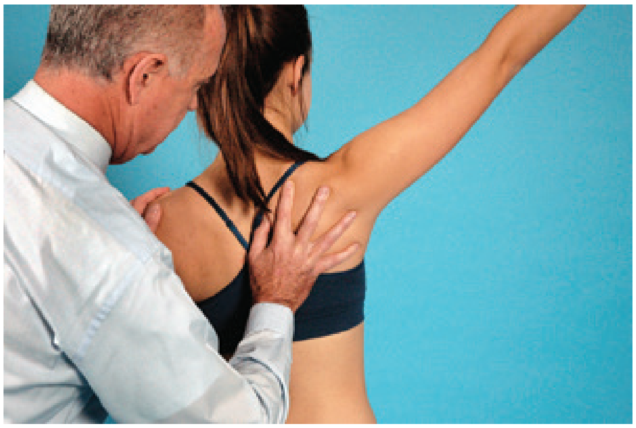


FIGURE 20.41 Scapular assist.

Rhythmic Stabilization

The patient is positioned in supine. The patient raises the involved arm to approximately 90 degrees of flexion and is asked to hold this position (**FIGURE 20.42**) while the clinician applies a series of controlled alternating isometric contractions of the agonist and antagonist muscles to stimulate movement of the agonist, and develop stability, while monitoring scapular muscle activity.

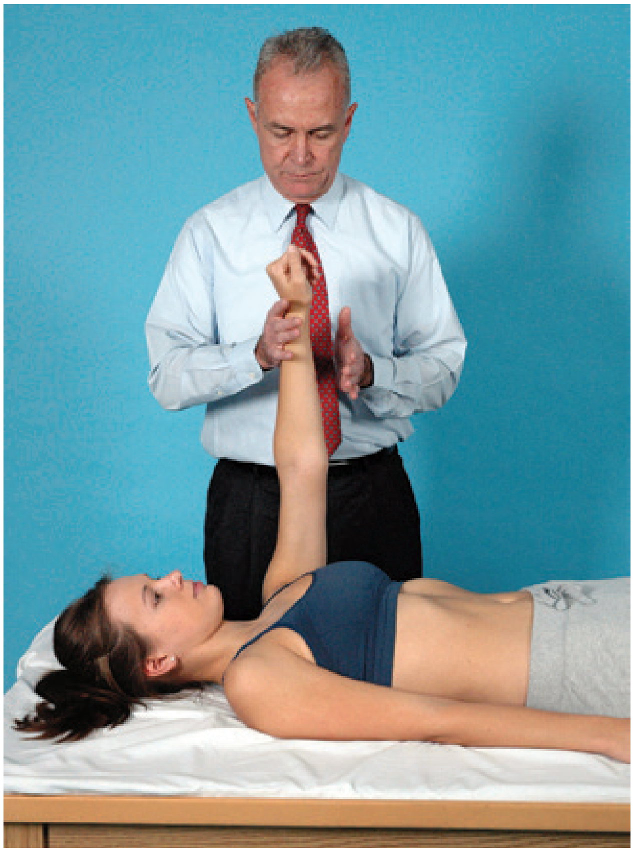


FIGURE 20.42 Rhythmic stabilization.

Restricted Scapulothoracic Motion

The patient is positioned in sidelying with the lower most arm over the end of the table. The clinician stands in front of the patient. Using one hand, the clinician grasps the inferior and medial border of the uppermost scapula. The other hand grasps the anterior aspect of the shoulder. The clinician gently brings both hands toward each other, lifting the scapula. This position is held until the muscles are felt to relax (**FIGURE 20.43**). Once the muscle relaxation has occurred, the clinician moves the scapula into the PNF patterns for the scapula:

- Elevation with protraction
- Elevation with retraction
- Depression with retraction (**FIGURE 20.44**)
- Depression with protraction

At the end range of each of these diagonals, the patient is asked to maintain the position by isometrically holding the scapula. The patient is then asked to resist the clinician as he or she attempts to return the scapula to the start position.

FIGURE 20.43 Scapular relaxer.

FIGURE 20.44 Depression with retraction.

Self-Stretches

The "Saw" This exercise can be used to stretch the anterior capsule when motion above 90 degrees is restricted. The patient can be positioned in standing or sitting. While maintaining the arm in approximately 90 degrees of elbow flexion, the patient is asked to perform a sawing motion as though cutting through the wood (**FIGURE 20.45**).

Wall Walking Wall walking can be used when attempting to regain full range elevation. Clock exercises are a variation of wall walking. The hand is moved to the various positions on an imaginary clock face on the wall, ranging from 8 o'clock, through 12 o'clock, to 4 o'clock. This allows for rotation of the humerus through varying degrees of flexion or abduction to replicate RC activity. This exercise is first performed against a fixed surface such as a wall or a countertop, and then can be moved to a moveable surface such as a ball or some other moveable implement.

FIGURE 20.45 The "saw" exercise.

Pulleys Pulley exercises are commonly used as an active assisted exercise to help regain full overhead motion. However, it is recommended that pulley exercises not be used until the patient has at least 120 degrees of elevation, and then only after ensuring that the patient's scapula is able to upwardly rotate to prevent mechanical impingement.

Wall Corner Stretch This stretch is used to increase the flexibility of the anterior joint capsule, pectoralis major and minor, anterior deltoid, and coracobrachialis. The patient stands in a corner and places both hands on the wall, level with the shoulders. (Refer to Figure 17.24 in Chapter 17.) The stretch is applied by moving the trunk toward the wall, while keeping it perpendicular to the floor. The exercise can be modified to stretch one shoulder by performing the exercise in a doorway.

Horizontal Abductors The horizontal abductors (posterior deltoid, infraspinatus, teres minor, rhomboids, and middle trapezius) and the posterior joint capsule are stretched by having the patient pull the arm across the front of the body (**FIGURE 20.46**). This exercise should be used with caution for those patients with an impingement syndrome or AC dysfunction.

FIGURE 20.46 Stretch into horizontal adduction.

Inferior Capsule The inferior capsule stretch is performed by placing the arm in the fully elevated overhead position.

Pectoralis Minor The pectoralis minor can be stretched by asking the patient to clasp his or her hands behind the head in sitting (**FIGURE 20.47**). From this position, the patient attempts to move the elbows in a posterior direction. Initially, the clinician can monitor the exercise to ensure that the stretch is occurring in the correct region.

Transverse Frictional Massage (TFM)

The techniques used in transverse frictional massage are described in Chapter 9.

Biceps

The patient is positioned to expose the biceps tendon. The clinician stands at the patient's side and supports the arm (**FIGURE 20.48**). The clinician places his or her thumb on the biceps tendon and alternately applies a medial and lateral glide motion to the tendon to create gentle friction.

FIGURE 20.47 Pectoralis minor stretch.

Supraspinatus

The supraspinatus tendon is located just distal to the anterolateral corner of the acromion. The clinician locates the painful location using the thumb (**FIGURE 20.49**). The massage is applied perpendicular to the tendon at the point of relative hypovascularity, which is located approximately 1 centimeter proximal to its insertion on the greater tuberosity of the humerus.

Joint Mobilizations

The following techniques can be used with the appropriate grade of mobilization based on the intent of the treatment. (See Chapter 9.)

- Grade I and II oscillations are used for pain and graded depending on the stage of healing.
- Grade III–V techniques are used to increase range.

Distraction of the GH Joint

The clinician palpates and stabilizes the shoulder girdle and the anterior thorax. With the other hand, the clinician gently grasps the proximal third of the humerus. The clinician distracts the GH joint perpendicular to the plane of the glenoid fossa (30 degrees off the sagittal plane; **FIGURE 20.50**).

Inferior Glide of the GH Joint

The clinician stabilizes the GH joint with one hand and gently grasps proximal to the patient's elbow with the other. The humerus is glided inferiorly at the GH joint, parallel to the superoinferior plane of the glenoid fossa.

FIGURE 20.48 TFM of the biceps.

FIGURE 20.49 TFM of the supraspinatus.

FIGURE 20.50 Distraction of the GH joint.

Anterior Glide of the GH Joint

The patient is positioned in supine (**FIGURE 20.51**) or prone (**FIGURE 20.52**). One of the clinician's hands supports the patient's elbow and the other hand is placed proximal to the humeral head. From this position, the clinician glides the humerus anteriorly at the GH joint, parallel to the anteroposterior plane of the glenoid fossa.

FIGURE 20.51 Inferior glide of the GH joint.

FIGURE 20.52 Anterior glide of the GH joint.

Inferior Glide of the Sternoclavicular Joint

With the thumb placed along the superior aspect of the length of the clavicle, the clinician applies an inferior glide to the SC joint (**FIGURE 20.53**).

Superior Glide of the Sternoclavicular Joint

Using one hand, the clinician grasps the medial end of the clavicle on the superior and inferior aspect and applies a superior glide to the SC joint (**FIGURE 20.54**).

Passive Distraction of the Scapulothoracic Joint

The patient is positioned in side lying (**FIGURE 20.55**). The clinician stands in front of the patient. Using both hands, the clinician grasps around the borders of the scapula. The clinician gently brings both hands together, lifting the scapula off the thoracic wall.

FIGURE 20.53 Inferior glide of the sternoclavicular joint.

FIGURE 20.54 Superior glide of the sternoclavicular joint.

FIGURE 20.55 Passive distraction of the scapulothoracic joint.

Summary

The shoulder is one of the most complex joints in the body. Complete movement at the shoulder girdle involves an intricate interaction among the GH, AC, SC, scapulothoracic, upper thoracic, costal, and sternomanubrial joints, and the lower cervical spine. Within the joints of the shoulder complex, there appear to be no well-defined points within the range where one joint's motion ends and another's begins. Rather, they all blend into a smooth harmonious movement during elevation. Due to this multi-joint arrangement, and the fact that so many muscles must behave in a coordinated fashion during functional movements, dysfunction of the shoulder is relatively common. Therefore, to effectively treat the shoulder, a sound knowledge of its anatomy and kinesiology is essential.

Learning Portfolio

Case Study

You are treating a 24-year-old male patient with a diagnosis of left rotator cuff tendinopathy who is complaining about functional limitations.

1. List five functional limitations that are commonly described by patients with a rotator cuff tendinopathy and how you would help the patient improve these functional limitations.

The patient informs you that he wants to start swimming again.

2. Which swimming strokes would you advise the patient to avoid so as not to exacerbate his symptoms?

You are teaching your student physical therapist assistant about the various shoulder muscles.

3. Which muscles are considered to be the glenohumeral internal rotators?
4. Which muscles are innervated by the suprascapular nerve?

You ask your student to measure the glenohumeral flexion range of motion on a patient.

5. Describe the correct placement of the axis, stationary and movable arm you would expect to see.

A new physical therapist asks you to set up a postsurgical shoulder patient on an upper body ergometer. You know from experience that the patient's surgeon believes that the upper body ergometer is detrimental to his patients.

6. How would you tackle the situation?

Review Questions

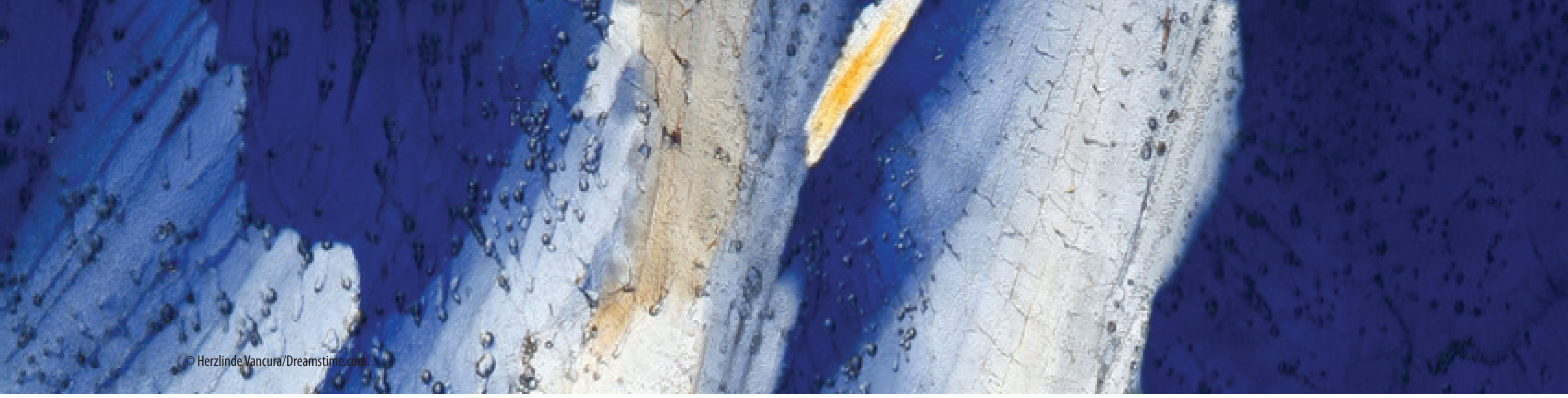
1. Which four joints make up the shoulder complex?
2. Name the two major ligaments of the acromioclavicular joint.
3. In addition to flexing the shoulder and flexing the elbow, what other function does the biceps perform?
4. Which muscles are capable of producing external rotation at the glenohumeral joint?
5. A brachial plexus injury in the upper portion of the plexus produces winging of the scapula. Weakness of which of the following muscles would produce the winging observed?
   a. Long head of the triceps
   b. Supraspinatus
   c. Deltoid
   d. Serratus anterior

6. Which of the following muscles has the most important function as a downward rotator of the scapula?
   a. Levator scapulae
   b. Upper trapezius
   c. Pectoralis major
   d. Rhomboid major
7. Which of the following muscles does not attach to the humerus?
   a. Teres major
   b. Pectoralis major
   c. Pectoralis minor
   d. Supraspinatus
8. Define the terms *shoulder dislocation* and *shoulder separation*.
9. All of the following are signs and symptoms of a shoulder dislocation, *except*:
   a. The injured shoulder is held in a flexed position.
   b. The head of the humerus can be palpated.
   c. There is localized pain in the area of injury.
   d. There is a definite sensation of crepitus.
10. Which of the following is frequently injured as a complication of shoulder dislocations?
    a. Axillary artery
    b. Radial artery
    c. Axillary nerve
    d. Radial nerve
11. Which is the only joint that directly attaches the upper extremity to the thorax?
12. The tendons of which muscles attach to the greater tuberosity of the humerus?
13. Which joint is damaged in a shoulder separation?
14. What is a common complication of a proximal humerus fracture?
15. Which of the following muscles is an important stabilizer of the scapula?
    a. Levator scapulae
    b. Latissimus dorsi
    c. Serratus anterior
    d. Deltoid
16. Your first patient of the day has been referred with a prescription stating *Stable humeral neck fracture. Begin functional mobility*. After the examination you decide the best initial intervention for this patient is:
    a. Pendulum exercises
    b. Shoulder isometrics
    c. Manual proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation
    d. Modalities to control pain
17. Which of the following muscles are most important for crutch walking?
    a. Anterior deltoid and biceps
    b. Middle deltoid and triceps
    c. Posterior deltoid and subscapularis
    d. Latissimus dorsi and lower trapezius
18. A 32-year-old patient has a left shoulder injury following a throwing injury. The patient had his upper extremity in an abducted, flexed, and externally rotated position when he felt a sharp pain in his shoulder as he was throwing a baseball. Initial intervention should focus on which of the following?
    a. Pendulum exercises
    b. AROM focused on abduction and external rotation
    c. Strengthening of the rhomboids and lower trapezius
    d. Strengthening of the rotator cuff muscles
19. You are treating a patient who has a diagnosis of right shoulder adhesive capsulitis with accessory motion dysfunction and noted loss of proper scapulohumeral rhythm. The intervention most likely to help achieve proper scapulohumeral rhythm of the shoulder complex is to:
    a. Strengthen the parascapular muscles and stretch the glenohumeral structures
    b. Protect joint biomechanics with immobilization
    c. Strengthen the glenohumeral joint at end range
    d. Manually stretch to achieve normal internal and external rotation at the glenohumeral joint
20. A patient presents with limited shoulder abduction secondary to adhesive capsulitis. The supervising physical therapist determines that grade 2 and 3 joint mobilization techniques will assist in promoting the return of normal joint accessory motion and shoulder abduction. Taking into consideration the articular surfaces of the glenohumeral joint, the direction that would be most appropriate for mobilization would be:
    a. Inferior glide of the humerus on the scapula
    b. Superior glide of the humerus on the scapula
    c. Anterior glide of the scapula on the humerus
    d. Posterior glide of the humerus on the scapula

References

1. Standring S, Gray H. *Gray's Anatomy: The Anatomical Basis of Clinical Practice*, 40th ed. St. Louis, MO: Churchill Livingstone Elsevier; 2008.
2. McClure P, Greenberg E, Kareha S. Evaluation and management of scapular dysfunction. *Sports Medicine and Arthroscopy Review*. 2012; 20:39–48.
3. Shimpi AP, Bhakti S, Roshni K, Rairikar SA, Shyam A, Sancheti PK. Scapular resting position and gleno-humeral movement dysfunction in asymptomatic racquet players: a case-control study. *Asian Journal of Sports Medicine*. 2015; 6:e24053.
4. Neumann DA. Shoulder complex. In: Neumann DA, editor. *Kinesiology of the Musculoskeletal System: Foundations for Physical Rehabilitation*. St. Louis: Mosby; 2002. p. 91–132.
5. Lewis J, McCreesh K, Roy JS, Ginn K. Rotator cuff tendinopathy: navigating the diagnosis-management conundrum. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2015; 45:923–37.
6. Cyriax J. *Examination of the Shoulder. Limited Range Diagnosis of Soft Tissue Lesions*. 8th ed. London: Balliere Tindall; 1982.
7. Davies GJ, DeCarlo MS. Examination of the shoulder complex. In: Bandy WD, editor. *Current Concepts in the Rehabilitation of the Shoulder: Sports Physical Therapy Section*. Home Study Course; 1995.
8. Inman T, Saunders JR, Abbott LC. Observations on the function of the shoulder joint. *The Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery*. 1944; 26:1–18.
9. McQuade KJ, Smidt GL. Dynamic scapulohumeral rhythm: the effects of external resistance during elevation of the arm in the scapular plane. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 1998; 27:125–33.
10. Jackson-Manfield P, Neumann DA. Structure and function of the shoulder complex. In: Jackson-Manfield P, Neumann DA, editors. *Essentials of Kinesiology for the Physical Therapist Assistant.* St. Louis, MO: Mosby Elsevier; 2009. p. 51–89.
11. Kisner C, Colby LA. The shoulder and shoulder girdle. In: Kisner C, Colby LA, editors. *Therapeutic Exercise Foundations and Techniques*. 5th ed. Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2002. p. 481–556.
12. Boone DC, Azen SP, Lin C-M, Spence C, Baron C, Lee L. Reliability of goniometric measurements. *Physical Therapy*. 1978; 58:1355–60.
13. Mayerson NH, Milano RA. Goniometric measurement reliability in physical medicine. *Archives of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation*. 1984; 65:92–4.
14. Riddle DL, Rothstein JM, Lamb RL. Goniometric reliability in a clinical setting: shoulder measurements. *Physical Therapy*. 1987; 67:668–73.
15. Buisman T. Utilization of a three-dimensional mobility progression, "The Z Route," in shoulder rehabilitation. *Orthopaedic Physical Therapy Practice*. 2015; 27:150–2.
16. Jobe FW, Pink M. Classification and treatment of shoulder dysfunction in the overhead athlete. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 1993; 18:427–31.
17. Kibler WB, McMullen J. Scapular dyskinesis and its relation to shoulder pain. *The Journal of the American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons*. 2003; 11:142–51.
18. Braman JP, Zhao KD, Lawrence RL, Harrison AK, Ludewig PM. Shoulder impingement revisited: evolution of diagnostic understanding in orthopedic surgery and physical therapy. *Medical and Biological Engineering and Computing*. 2014; 52:211–9.
19. Neer CS, II. Anterior acromioplasty for the chronic impingement syndrome in the shoulder: a preliminary report. *The Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery American Volume*. 1972; 54:41–50.
20. Neer C. Impingement lesions. *Clinical Orthopaedics*. 1983; 173:71–7.
21. Mohr KJ, Moynes Schwab DR, Tovin BJ. Musculoskeletal pattern F: impaired joint mobility, motor function, muscle performance, and range of motion associated with localized inflammation. In: Tovin BJ, Greenfield B, editors. *Evaluation and Treatment of the Shoulder: An Integration of the Guide to Physical Therapist Practice*. Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2001. p. 210–30.
22. d'Hespeel CG. Current concepts: rehabilitation of patients with shoulder impingement and tight posterior capsule. *Orthopaedic Practice*. 2004; 16:9–13.
23. Rathburn JB, Macnab I. The microvascular pattern of the rotator cuff. *The Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery British Volume*. 1970; 52:540–53.
24. Sigholm G, Styf J, Korner L, Herberts P. Pressure recording in the subacromial bursa. *Journal of Orthopaedic Research*. 1988; 6:123–8.
25. Warner JJ, Johnson D, Miller M, Caborn DN. Technique for selecting capsular tightness in repair of anterior-inferior shoulder instability. *Journal of Shoulder and Elbow Surgery*. 1995; 4:352–64.
26. Yoneda M, Nakagawa S, Mizuno N, Fukushima S, Hayashida K, Mae T, et al. Arthroscopic capsular release for painful throwing shoulder with posterior capsular tightness. *Arthroscopy*. 2006; 22:801 e1–5.
27. Nakagawa S, Yoneda M, Mizuno N, Hayashida K, Yamada S, Sahara W. Influence of posterior capsular tightness on throwing shoulder injury. *Knee Surgery, Sports Traumatology, Arthroscopy*. 2013; 21:1598–602.
28. Cho HJ, Morey V, Kang JY, Kim KW, Kim TK. Prevalence and risk factors of spine, shoulder, hand, hip, and knee osteoarthritis in community-dwelling Koreans older than age 65 years. *Clinical Orthopaedics and Related Research*. 2015; 473:3307–14.
29. Raz Y, Henseler JF, Kolk A, Riaz M, van der Zwaal P, Nagels J, et al. Patterns of age-associated degeneration differ in shoulder muscles. *Frontiers in Aging Neuroscience*. 2015; 7:236.
30. Holmgren T, Bjornsson Hallgren H, Oberg B, Adolfsson L, Johansson K. Effect of specific exercise strategy on need for surgery in patients with subacromial impingement syndrome: randomised controlled study. *BMJ*. 2012; 344:e787.
31. Gartsman GM. Arthroscopic rotator cuff repair. *Clinical Orthopaedics and Related Research*. 2001; 390:95–106.
32. Norberg FB, Field LD. Repair of the rotator cuff: mini-open and arthroscopic repairs. *Clinics in Sports Medicine*. 2000; 19:77–99.
33. Ghodadra NS, Provencher MT, Verma NN, Wilk KE, Romeo AA. Open, mini-open, and all-arthroscopic rotator cuff repair surgery: indications and implications for rehabilitation. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2009; 39:81–9.
34. Burmaster C, Eckenrode BJ, Stiebel M. Early Incorporation of an evidence-based aquatic-assisted approach to arthroscopic rotator cuff repair rehabilitation: prospective case study. *Physical Therapy*. 2016; 96:53–61.

35. Cuff DJ, Pupello DR. Prospective randomized study of arthroscopic rotator cuff repair using an early versus delayed postoperative physical therapy protocol. *Journal of Shoulder and Elbow Surgery*. 2012; 21:1450–5.
36. Kraeutler MJ, Reynolds KA, Long C, McCarty EC. Compressive cryotherapy versus ice: a prospective, randomized study on postoperative pain in patients undergoing arthroscopic rotator cuff repair or subacromial decompression. *Journal of Shoulder and Elbow Surgery*. 2015; 24:854–9.
37. Galatz LM, Charlton N, Das R, Kim HM, Havlioglu N, Thomopoulos S. Complete removal of load is detrimental to rotator cuff healing. *Journal of Shoulder and Elbow Surgery*. 2009; 18:669–75.
38. Galatz LM, Ball CM, Teefey SA, Middleton WD, Yamaguchi K. The outcome and repair integrity of completely arthroscopically repaired large and massive rotator cuff tears. *The Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery American Volume*. 2004; 86-A:219–24.
39. Brown GA, Tan JL, Kirkley A. The lax shoulder in females. Issues, answers, but many more questions. *Clinical Orthopaedics and Related Research*. 2000; 372:110–22.
40. Brody LT. Shoulder. In: Wadsworth C, editor. *Current Concepts of Orthopedic Physical Therapy*. Home Study Course. La Crosse, WI: Orthopaedic Section, APTA; 2001.
41. Rouleau DM, Hebert-Davies J, Robinson CM. Acute traumatic posterior shoulder dislocation. *The Journal of the American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons*. 2014; 22:145–52.
42. Burkhart SS, Morgan CD, Kibler WB. Shoulder injuries in overhead athletes: the "dead arm" revisited. *Clinics in Sports Medicine*. 2000; 19:125–58.
43. Burkhart SS. A 26-year-old woman with shoulder pain. *JAMA*. 2000; 284:1559–67.
44. Morgan CD, Burkhart SS, Palmeri M, Gillespie M. Type II SLAP lesions: three subtypes and their relationship to superior instability and rotator cuff tears. *Arthroscopy*. 1998; 14:553–65.
45. Berg EE, DeHoll D. Radiography of the medial elbow ligaments. *Journal of Shoulder and Elbow Surgery*. 1997; 6:528–33.
46. Urban WP, Babom DNM. Management of superior labral anterior posterior lesions. *Operative Techniques in Orthopaedics*. 1995; 5:223.
47. Maffet MW, Gartsman GM, Moseley B. Superior labrum-biceps tendon complex lesions of the shoulder. *The American Journal of Sports Medicine*. 1995; 23:93–8.
48. Kibler BW. The role of the scapula in athletic shoulder function. *The American Journal of Sports Medicine*. 1998; 26:325–37.
49. Kibler BW. Closed kinetic chain rehabilitation for sports injuries. *Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation of North America*. 2000; 11:369–84.
50. Wong KL, Williams GR. Complications of thermal capsulorrhaphy of the shoulder. *The Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery*. 2001; 83-A:Suppl 2 Pt :151–5.
51. Anderson K, Warren RF, Altchek DW, et al. Risk factors for early failure after thermal capsulorrhaphy. *The American Journal of Sports Medicine*. 2002; 30:103–7.
52. Neviaser JS. Adhesive capsulitis of the shoulder:study of pathological findings in periarthritis of the shoulder. *The Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery*. 1945; 27:211–22.
53. Brue S, Valentin A, Forssblad M, Werner S, Mikkelsen C, Cerulli G. Idiopathic adhesive capsulitis of the shoulder: a review. *Knee Surgery, Sports Traumatology, Arthroscopy*. 2007; 15(8):1048–54.
54. Manske RC, Prohaska D. Diagnosis and management of adhesive capsulitis. *Current Reviews in Musculoskeletal Medicine*. 2008; 1:180–9.
55. Lamplot JD, Lillegraven O, Brophy RH. Shoulder activity level in patients with idiopathic adhesive capsulitis. *Journal of Shoulder and Elbow Surgery*. 2017.
56. Miyazaki AN, Santos PD, Silva LA, Sella GD, Carrenho L, Checchia SL. Clinical evaluation of arthroscopic treatment of shoulder adhesive capsulitis. *Revista Brasileira de Ortopedia*. 2017; 52:61–8.
57. Schröder S, Meyer-Hamme G, Friedemann T, Kirch S, Hauck M, Plaetke R, et al. Immediate pain relief in adhesive capsulitis by acupuncture-a randomized controlled double-blinded study. *Pain Medicine*. 2017.
58. Nash P, Hazelman BD. Frozen shoulder. *Bailliere's Clinical Rheumatology*. 1989; 3.
59. Hannafin JA, Chiaia TA. Adhesive capsulitis. A treatment approach. *Clinical Orthopaedics and Related Research*. 2000; 372:95–109.
60. Zuckerman JD, Cuomo F. Frozen shoulder. In: Matsen FA III, Fu FH, Hawkins RJ, editors. *The Shoulder: A Balance of Mobility and Stability*. Rosemont, Illinois: American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons; 1993. p. 253–67.
61. Pajareya K, Chadchavalpanichaya N, Painmanakit S, Kaidwan C, Puttaruksa P, Wongsaranuchit Y. Effectiveness of physical therapy for patients with adhesive capsulitis: a randomized controlled trial. *Journal of the Medical Association of Thailand*. 2004; 87:473–80.
62. Maricar N, Shacklady C, McLoughlin L. Effect of Maitland mobilization and exercises for the treatment of shoulder adhesive capsulitis: a single-case design. *Physiotherapy Theory and Practice*. 2009; 25:203–17.
63. Daigneault J, Cooney LM, Jr. Shoulder pain in older people. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society*. 1998; 46:1144–51.
64. Winkel D, Matthijs O, Phelps V. *Pathology of the Shoulder: Diagnosis and Treatment of the Upper Extremities*. Maryland, MD: Aspen; 1997. p. 68–117.
65. Tossy JD, Mead MC, Simond HM. Acromioclavicular separations: Useful and practical classification for treatment. *Clinical Orthopaedics*. 1963; 28:111–9.
66. Allman FL, Jr. Fractures and ligamentous injuries of the clavicle and its articulation. *The Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery*. 1967; 49A:774–84.


© Herzlinde Vancura/Dreamstime.com

CHAPTER 21

Elbow and Forearm Complex

CHAPTER OBJECTIVES

At the completion of this chapter, the reader will be able to:

1. Describe the anatomy of the elbow complex.
2. Describe the biomechanics of the elbow complex, including the open- and close-packed positions, and the static and dynamic stabilizers.
3. Describe the relationship between the joints and functional performance of the elbow.
4. Summarize the various causes of elbow dysfunction.
5. Describe and demonstrate intervention strategies and techniques based on clinical findings and established goals by the physical therapist.
6. Evaluate the intervention effectiveness to determine progress and recommend modifications as needed.
7. Plan an effective home program, and instruct the patient in its use.

Overview

The elbow complex is the central link in the kinetic chain of the upper extremity and serves as the intersection for three bones: the humerus, the radius, and the ulna. Functionally, the elbow joint behaves as a constrained hinge, coordinating movements of the upper extremity and facilitating the execution of activities of daily living in areas such as hygiene, dressing, and cooking. The forearm complex permits pronation and supination, motions that rotate the palm upward (supination) or downward (pronation).

Anatomy and Kinesiology

The elbow is composed of three articulations (**FIGURE 21.1**) but is also influenced by a more distal joint:

- *Humeroulnar joint.* The olecranon of the ulna articulates around the trochlea of the humerus. The trochlea is externally rotated 3 to 8 degrees from a line connecting the medial and lateral epicondyles, resulting in external rotation of the arm when the elbow is flexed 90 degrees. The trochlea is usually tilted to 4 degrees of valgus in males and 8 degrees of valgus in females, thus creating

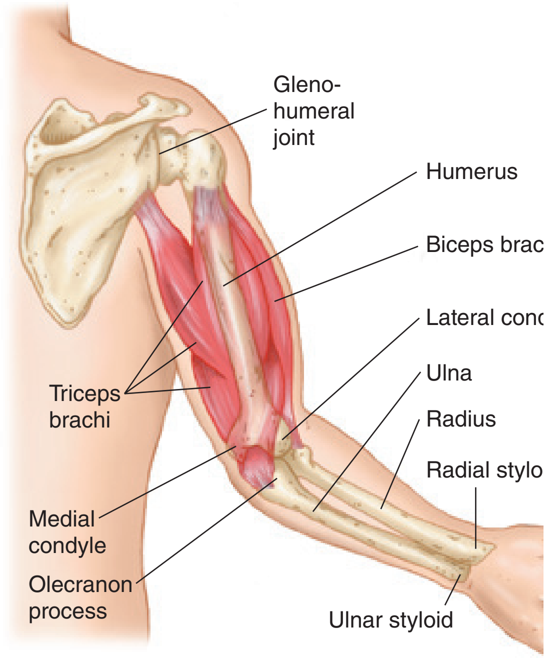


FIGURE 21.1 Bony anatomy of the elbow and forearm.

the so-called *carrying angle* of the elbow. A normal carrying angle for men is 10 degrees and is 13 degrees of valgus in women. Any difference in the carrying angle of the elbow is obvious when the elbow is in extension.

☑ KEY POINT

An increased carrying angle is called cubitus valgus. Cubitus varus, or "gunstock deformity," is the term used to describe a decreased carrying angle. The most common causes of an altered carrying angle are past trauma or epiphyseal growth disturbances. For example, a cubitus valgus can be caused by a lateral epicondylar fracture, whereas a cubitus varus is frequently the result of a supracondylar fracture.

- The motions that occur at this joint involve impure flexion and extension. The range of flexion-extension is from 0 to 5 degrees beyond extension (hyperextension) to 145 to 150 degrees of flexion. Full active extension in the healthy elbow is some 5 to 10 degrees short of that obtainable by forced extension, due to passive muscular restraints (biceps, brachialis, and supinator). Passive flexion is limited by soft tissue approximation, bony structures (the head of the radius against the radial fossa, and the coronoid process against the coronoid fossa), tension of the posterior capsular ligament, and passive tension in the triceps. Passive extension is limited by the impact of the olecranon process on the olecranon fossa, and tension on the ulnar collateral ligament and anterior capsule. An appreciation and awareness of these end feels can better determine the reason for a joint's lack of motion (or excessive motion). The humeroulnar joint provides most of the structural stability to the elbow as a whole.

☑ KEY POINT

The resting, or open-packed, position for the humeroulnar joint is 70 degrees of flexion with 10 degrees of forearm supination. The close-packed position is full extension and maximum forearm supination. The capsular pattern is much more limitation in flexion than extension.

- *Humeroradial joint.* The concave head of the radius articulates with the capitulum, which is the convex articular surface of the distal humerus, just lateral to the trochlea. The motions that can occur at this uniaxial hinge joint include flexion and extension of the elbow. Some supination and pronation also occur at this joint due to a spinning of the radial head (in association with the proximal radioulnar joint [the third articulation of the elbow] and the distal radioulnar joint [see Chapter 22]).

☑ KEY POINT

The resting, or open-packed, position of the humeroradial joint is extension and forearm supination. The close-packed position is approximately 90 degrees of elbow flexion and 5 degrees of supination. There is no actual capsular pattern at this joint.

- *Proximal radioulnar joint.* The proximal or superior radioulnar joint is a uniaxial pivot joint that works in association with the distal or inferior radioulnar joint to form a bicondylar joint. (See Chapter 22.) The proximal radioulnar joint is formed between the periphery of the convex radial head and the fibrous osseous ring formed by the concave radial notch of the ulna (which lies distal to the trochlear notch) and the annular ligament (**FIGURE 21.2**). An interosseous membrane located between the radius and ulna helps distribute forces (especially compressive forces) throughout the forearm and provides muscle attachment. At the proximal radioulnar joint, one axis of motion exists, permitting pronation and supination.

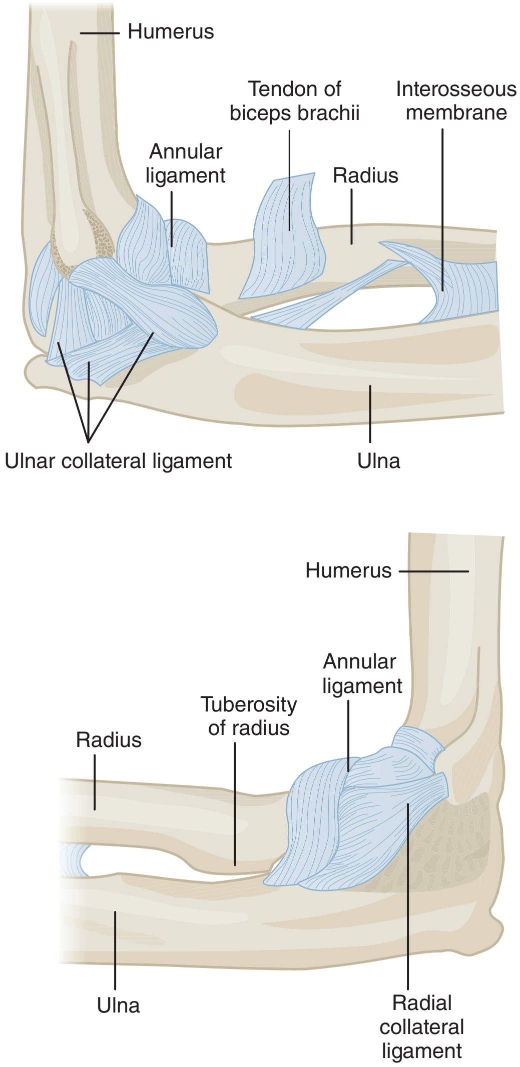


FIGURE 21.2 Elbow ligamentous structures.

- Pronation and supination involve the articulations at the elbow as well as the distal radioulnar joint and the radiocarpal articulation. (See Chapter 22.) Therefore, a restriction at any of these joints will restrict pronation and supination. There are approximately 0 to 85 degrees of supination and 0 to 75 degrees of pronation available. With the humerus fixed and the forearm free to move, pronation and supination at the proximal radioulnar joint involve the movement of the radius only (the radial head spins in place in the direction of the moving thumb), with the ulna staying essentially stationary. The arthrokinematics of pronation are essentially the same as supination, except that they occur in reverse directions. In full pronation, the shaft of the radius is rotated across the shaft of the ulna, producing a position of relative stability of the forearm.

- *Distal radioulnar joint.* Although not physically part of the elbow complex, the distal radioulnar joint can influence motion at the elbow. (See Chapter 22.)

☑ KEY POINT

Both the humeroulnar and the humeroradial articulations provide approximately 50 percent of the overall stability of the elbow, with the humeroulnar contributing the most.[1] Ligaments and muscles supply additional support. The flexor and pronator muscles, which originate at the medial epicondyle, provide additional static and dynamic support to the medial elbow, with the flexor carpi ulnaris (FCU) and flexor digitorum superficialis (FDS) being the most effective in this regard.[1]

☑ KEY POINT

Most activities of daily living require a 100 degrees arc of flexion and extension of the elbow, specifically between 30 degrees and 130 degrees, as well as 100 degrees of forearm rotation equally divided between pronation and supination.[1] However, because active internal and external rotation at the shoulder is functionally linked with active pronation and supination of the forearm, a combination of shoulder and forearm rotation can allow the hand to rotate nearly 360 degrees in space, rather than the 170 to 180 degrees by pronation and supination alone.[2] For this reason, the PTA must ensure that no substitute motions are occurring at the shoulder when clinically testing the range of motion (ROM) into pronation and supination.

Ligaments

Support for the elbow complex is provided through strong ligaments (**TABLE 21.1** and Figure 21.2).

Medial (Ulnar) Collateral Ligament

The fan-shaped medial collateral ligament (MCL) is functionally the most important ligament in the elbow for providing stability against valgus stress, particularly in the range of 20 to 130 degrees of flexion and extension,[3] with the humeroradial joint functioning as a secondary stabilizer to valgus loads. In full elbow extension, the valgus stability of the elbow is provided equally by the MCL, the joint capsule, and the joint relationships.[1] Anatomically, there are three distinct

TABLE 21.1 Articular and Ligamentous Contributions to Elbow Stability

Stabilization	Elbow Extended	Elbow Flexed 90 Degrees
Valgus stability	Anterior capsule MCL and bony articular (proximal half of sigmoid notch) *equally divided*	MCL provides 55 percent (primary restraint)
Varus stability	Anterior capsule Joint articulation (primary restraint) LCL	Joint articulation (primary restraint) Anterior capsule LCL
Anterior displacement	Anterior joint capsule Trochlea-olecranon articulation (minimal)	
Posterior displacement	Anterior capsule Radial head against capitellum Coracoid against trochlea	
Distraction	Anterior capsule (primary restraint) LCL MCL Triceps, biceps, brachial, brachioradialis, forearm muscles	LCL 10 percent MCL (primary restraint) Capsule

MCL, medial collateral ligament; LCL, lateral collateral ligament.
Data from Sobel J, Nirschl RP: Elbow injuries, in Zachazewski JE, Magee DJ, Quillen WS (eds): *Athletic Injuries and Rehabilitation*. Philadelphia, WB Saunders, 1996, pp. 543–83.

components of the MCL: anterior bundle, transverse bundle, and posterior bundle. The various bundles of the ligaments are taut in different ranges of motion, providing medial support to the elbow against valgus stresses and limiting end-range elbow extension while keeping the joint surfaces in approximation.

Lateral (Radial) Collateral Ligament

The lateral, or radial, collateral ligament (LCL) consists of the annular ligament, a fan-like ligament that originates from the lateral humerus at the center of the trochlea and capitellum, and the accessory collateral ligament. The LCL provides stability to the lateral aspect of the elbow against varus forces and prevents posterior translation of the radial head. Secondary restraints of the lateral elbow consist of the bony articulations, the joint capsule, and the extensor muscles with their fascial bands and intermuscular septa.

Annular Ligament

The annular ligament functions to maintain the relationship between the head of the radius and the humerus and ulna.

Muscles

The movements of the elbow complex, produced by muscle action, include flexion and extension of the elbow and pronation and supination of the forearm. The muscles of the elbow and forearm are listed in **TABLE 21.2**.

Elbow Flexors

The prime movers of elbow flexion are the biceps, brachialis, and brachioradialis (**TABLE 21.3** and **FIGURE 21.3**). The pronator teres, flexor carpi radialis (FCR), FCU, and extensor carpi radialis longus (ECRL) muscles are considered to be weak flexors of the elbow.[4] Most elbow flexors, and essentially all the major supinator and pronator muscles, have their distal attachments on the radius.[1] Whether the brachioradialis is considered a pronator or a supinator depends entirely on the position of the forearm at the start of the muscle contraction. Contraction of these muscles, therefore, pulls the radius proximally against the humeroradial joint. The combined efforts of all the elbow flexors can create large amounts of elbow flexion torque. The interosseous membrane transfers a component of this muscle force to the radius and the ulna, thereby

TABLE 21.2 Muscles of the Elbow and Forearm: Their Actions, Nerve Supply, and Nerve Root Derivation

Muscles	Origin/Insertion	Nerve Supply	Nerve Root Derivation	Action
Triceps	Three heads of origin: The long head arises from the infraglenoid tuberosity of the scapula. The lateral head arises from the posterior and lateral surface of the humerus. The medial head arises from the lower posterior surface of the humerus. Inserts on the superoposterior surface of the olecranon and deep fascia of the forearm.	Radial	C7–C8	Elbow extension
Anconeus	Arises from the lateral epicondyle of the humerus and inserts on the lateral aspect of the olecranon and posterior surface of the ulna.	Radial	C7–C8, (T1)	Assists with elbow extension
Brachialis	Originates from the lower two-thirds of the anterior surface of the humerus. Inserts on the ulnar tuberosity and the coronoid process.	Musculocutaneous	C5–C6, (C7)	Elbow flexion
Biceps brachii	The short head: arises from the tip of the coracoid process of the scapula. The long head: arises from the supraglenoid tuberosity of the scapula. Has two insertions: (1) a common tendinous insertion at the radial tuberosity and (2) by the lacertus fibrosus (bicipital aponeurosis).	Musculocutaneous radial	C5–C6	Elbow flexion and supination of the forearm
Brachioradialis	Arises from the proximal two-thirds of the lateral supracondylar ridge of the humerus/lateral intermuscular septum. Inserts on the lateral border of the styloid process on the distal aspect of the radius.	Radial	C5–C6, (C7)	Pronator or supinator
Supinator	Originates from the lateral epicondyle of the humerus, LCL, the AL, the supinator crest, and the ulnar fossa. Inserts on the superior third of the anterior and lateral surface of the radius.	Posterior interosseous (radial)	C5–C6	Supinates the forearm in any elbow position
Pronator quadratus	Runs from the most distal quarter of the anterior ulna to the distal quarter of the anterior radius.	Anterior interosseous (median)	C8, T1	Pronation of the forearm

(continues)

TABLE 21.2 Muscles of the Elbow and Forearm: Their Actions, Nerve Supply, and Nerve Root Derivation *(continued)*

Muscles	Origin/Insertion	Nerve Supply	Nerve Root Derivation	Action
Pronator teres	Two heads of origin: The humeral head arises from the medial epicondylar ridge of the humerus and common flexor tendon. The ulnar head arises from the medial aspect of the coronoid process of the ulna. Inserts on the anterolateral surface of the midpoint of the radius.	Median	C6–C7	
Flexor carpi radialis	Arises from the common flexor tendon on the medial epicondyle of the humerus. Inserts on the base of the second and third metacarpal bones.	Median	C6–C7	Pronates the forearm. Weak flexor of the elbow
Flexor carpi ulnaris	Two heads of origin: The humeral head arises from the common flexor tendon on the medial epicondyle of the humerus. The ulnar head arises from the medial margin of the olecranon of the ulna and the proximal three-fifths of the posterior ulnar shaft. It inserts on the pisiform, hamate, and fifth metacarpal bones.	Ulnar	C7–C8	Ulnar deviation of the wrist and assists with elbow flexion

LCL, lateral collateral ligament; AL, annular ligament.

TABLE 21.3 Muscles of the Elbow and Forearm

Action	Muscles Acting	Peripheral Nerve Supply	Nerve Root Deviation
Elbow flexion	Brachialis Biceps brachii Brachioradialis Pronator teres Flexor carpi ulnaris	Musculocutaneous Musculocutaneous Radial Median Ulnar	C5–C6, (C7) C5–C6 C5–C6, (C7) C6–C7 C7–C8
Elbow extension	Triceps Anconeus	Radial Radial	C7–C8 C7–C8, (T1)
Forearm supination	Supinator Biceps brachii	Posterior interosseous (radial) Musculocutaneous	C5–C6 C5–C6
Forearm pronation	Pronator quadratus Pronator teres Flexor carpi radialis	Anterior interosseous (median) Median Median	C8, T1 C6–C7 C6–C7

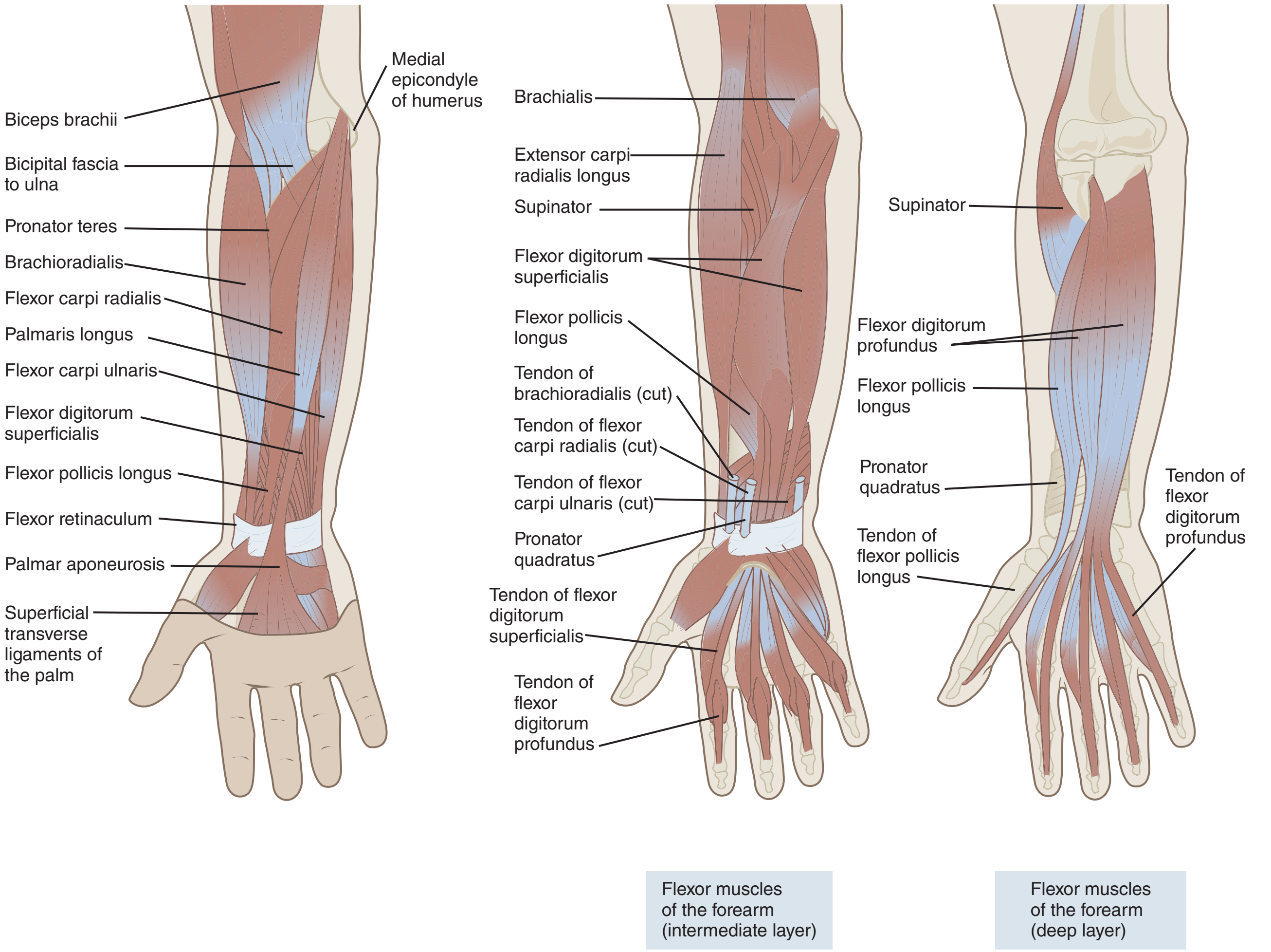


FIGURE 21.3 Flexor muscles of the forearm.

dissipating some of the force.[1] The reverse action of the elbow flexors can be used in a closed-chain perspective by bringing the upper arm closer to the forearm, such as when performing a pull-up.[2]

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> The brachialis is often referred to as the "workhorse" of elbow flexion because its distal attachment to the ulna (and not the radius like the biceps) prevents any influence on the muscle's length or force-producing capability, whether the forearm is pronated or supinated.

Elbow Extensors

Two muscles extend the elbow: the triceps and the anconeus (**FIGURE 21.4**).

- *Triceps brachii.* The triceps brachii has three heads of origin. Like the biceps, it is a two-joint muscle. All three heads of the triceps can extend the elbow, and the long head, which crosses the shoulder, can also perform shoulder extension. The triceps has its maximal force in movements that combine both elbow extension and shoulder extension. The medial head of the triceps is the workhorse of elbow extension, with the lateral and long head recruited during heavier loads.[1] During strong contractions of the triceps, for example, a push-up, which involves a combination of elbow extension and shoulder flexion as the triceps strongly contracts to extend the elbow, the shoulder simultaneously flexes by action of the anterior deltoid, which overpowers the shoulder extension torque of the long head of the triceps.[2]
- *Anconeus.* It has been suggested that in addition to assisting with elbow extension, the anconeus functions to stabilize the ulna in all directions (except valgus) and to pull the subanconeus bursa and the joint capsule out of the way during extension, thus avoiding impingement.[5] The anconeus has

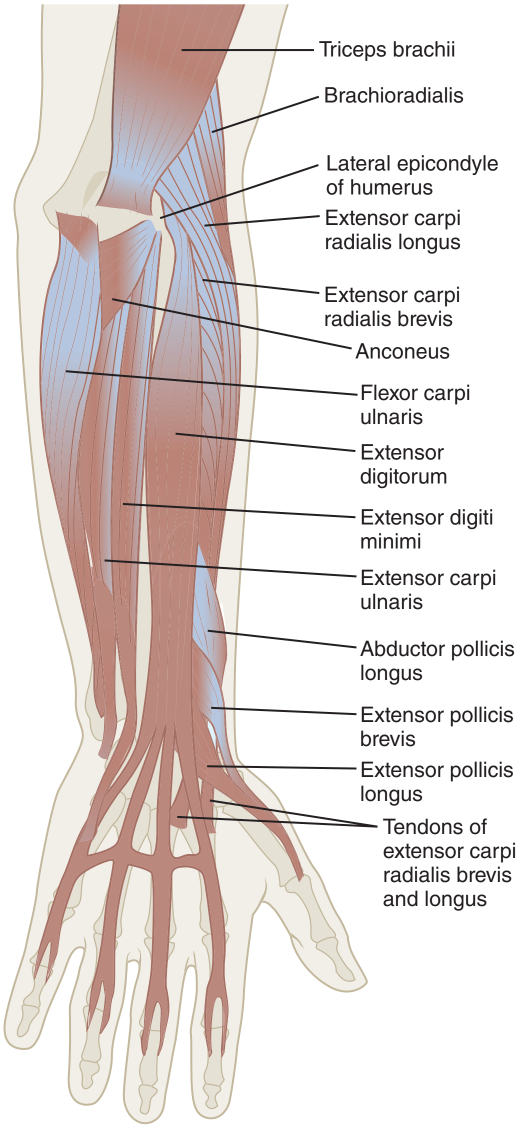


FIGURE 21.4 Extensor muscles of the forearm.

also been found to help stabilize the elbow during forearm pronation and supination.[6]

Forearm Pronators

There are two primary pronators:

- *Pronator teres.* The pronator teres has two heads of origin: a humeral head and an ulnar head. The humeral head arises from the medial epicondylar ridge of the humerus and common flexor tendon, whereas the ulnar head arises from the medial aspect of the coronoid process of the ulna. The pronator teres inserts on the anterolateral surface of the midpoint of the radius. The muscle functions predominantly to pronate the forearm, but can also assist with elbow flexion.[5]
- *Pronator quadratus.* The pronator quadratus is the main pronator of the forearm, in addition to assisting with elbow flexion.

The secondary pronators include the following:

- *Flexor carpi radialis.* The flexor carpi radialis, a forearm muscle, acts to flex and radially deviate the hand.
- *Palmaris longus.* This is a small tendon between the flexor carpi radialis and the flexor carpi ulnaris, although it is not always present. It arises from the medial epicondyle of the humerus by the common flexor tendon, from the intermuscular septa between it and the adjacent muscles, and from the antebrachial fascia. The palmaris longus muscle is the most popular for use in tendon grafts for the wrist due to the length and diameter of the palmaris longus tendon and the fact that it can be used without producing any functional deficits.

☑ KEY POINT

Muscles that supinate or pronate the forearm must meet at least two requirements:[2]

- The muscles must originate on the humerus or ulna, or both, and insert on the radius or hand.
- The muscles must have a line of force that intersects (versus parallels) the axis of rotation of the forearm joints.

Forearm Supinators

There are two forearm supinators:

- *Biceps.* In addition to being an elbow flexor, the biceps assist with supination. The combined action of elbow flexion and forearm supination provided by the biceps is important in bringing the palm of the hand toward the face, such as when eating. The effectiveness of the biceps as a supinator is greatest when the elbow is flexed to 90 degrees, placing the biceps tendon at a 90-degree angle to the radius. In contrast, with the elbow flexed only 30 degrees, much of the rotational efficiency of the biceps is lost.[2]
- *Supinator.* The supinator muscle is a relentless forearm supinator, similar to the brachialis with elbow flexion. The supinator functions to supinate the forearm in any elbow position, while the previously mentioned ECRL and extensor carpi

radialis brevis (ECRB) work as supinators during fast movements and against resistance.

☑ KEY POINT

Many muscles that act on the wrist and hand are attached on the distal portion (medial and lateral epicondyles) of the humerus, which allows the movement of the fingers and wrist when the forearm is in either pronation or supination.

Nerve Supply

The elbow has complex innervation (refer to Table 21.2). In general, the musculocutaneous nerve innervates most of the elbow flexors (except the brachioradialis and pronator teres), the radial nerve innervates all of the muscles that extend the elbow, and the median nerve supplies all of the pronators of the forearm.

The Cubital Tunnel

The cubital tunnel is a fibro-osseous canal, through which the ulnar nerve passes and in which the nerve can be compressed. The volume of the cubital tunnel is greatest with the elbow held in extension and the least in full elbow flexion. Some factors have been associated with a decrease in the size of the cubital tunnel: space-occupying lesions, bulging of the MCL, osteoarthritis, rheumatoid arthritis, heterotopic bone formation, or trauma to the nerve. Patients with systemic conditions such as diabetes mellitus, hypothyroidism, alcoholism, and renal failure also may have a decreased tunnel diameter.

The Cubital Fossa

The cubital fossa (**FIGURE 21.5**) represents the triangular space, or depression, located over the anterior surface of the elbow joint, and which serves as an "entrance" to the forearm, or antebrachium. The boundaries of the fossa are as follows:

- *Lateral.* Brachioradialis and ECRL muscles
- *Medial.* Pronator teres muscle
- *Proximal.* An imaginary line that passes through the humeral condyles
- *Floor.* Brachialis muscle

The contents of the fossa include the following:

- The tendon of the biceps brachii, which lies as the central structure in the fossa.

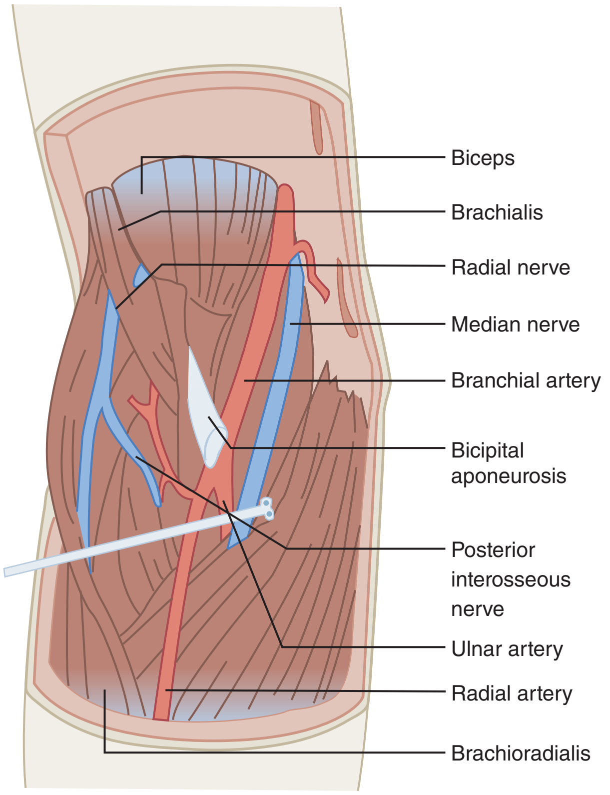


FIGURE 21.5 The cubital fossa.

- The median nerve, which runs along the lateral edge of the pronator teres muscle, running between the two heads of the muscle. Entrapment of the median nerve may occur between the heads of the pronator teres muscle, mimicking carpal tunnel syndrome.(See Chapter 22.)
- The brachial artery, which enters the fossa just lateral to the median nerve and just medial to the biceps brachii tendon.
- The radial nerve, which runs along the medial edge of the brachioradialis and ECRL muscles, is vulnerable to injury here.
- The median cubital or intermediate cubital cutaneous vein crosses the surface of the fossa.

Bursae

There are numerous bursae in the elbow region, which include the following:

- *Olecranon bursa.* The main bursa of the elbow complex, which lies posteriorly between the skin and the olecranon process.
- *Deep intratendinous bursa and deepsubtendinous bursa.* These are present between the triceps tendon and olecranon.
- *Bicipitoradial bursa.* This separates the biceps tendon from the radial tuberosity.

Examination of the Elbow Complex

The physical therapist's examination of the elbow complex typically follows the outline in **TABLE 21.4**.

Goniometry

Both the passive and active physiological ranges of motion can be measured using a goniometer (**TABLE 21.5**), which has been shown to have a satisfactory level of intraobserver reliability.[7–9]

The evidence-based special tests for the elbow are outlined in **TABLE 21.6**.

Intervention Strategies

Due to the unique orientation of the elbow complex, the clinician is faced with a host of clinical challenges to rehabilitate the injured elbow successfully. It is important that the elbow can move freely and painlessly throughout its available motion. Throughout all phases of rehabilitation and exercise, training should be within physiological limits for tissue healing. Therefore, relative rest is sometimes advised during painful periods.

TABLE 21.4 Examination of the Elbow

I. History.
II. Observation and inspection.
III. Upper quarter scan as appropriate.
IV. Examination of movements. Active ROM with a passive overpressure of the following movements:
   - Flexion and extension of the elbow
   - Pronation and supination of the forearm
   - Wrist flexion and extension
V. Resisted isometric movements as follows:
   - Elbow flexion and extension
   - Pronation and supination of the forearm
   - Wrist flexion and extension
   - Radial and ulnar deviation of the wrist
VI. Palpation.
VII. Neurological tests as appropriate (reflexes, sensory scan, peripheral nerve assessment).
VIII. Joint mobility tests:
   - Distraction/compression of the ulnohumeral joint
   - Medial and lateral glide of the ulnohumeral joint
   - Distraction of the radiohumeral joint
   - Anterior and posterior glide of the radial head
   - Anterior and posterior glide of the proximal radioulnar joint
   - Anterior and posterior glide of the distal radioulnar joint
IX. Special tests, including functional testing (refer to Table 21.6).
X. Diagnostic imaging.

TABLE 21.5 Goniometric Techniques for the Elbow and Forearm

Joint	Motion	Axis	Stationary Arm	Movable Arm	Normal Ranges (Degrees)	End Feel
Elbow	Flexion	Lateral epicondyle of the humerus	Lateral midline of the humerus using the center of the acromion process for reference	Lateral midline of the radius using the radial head and radial styloid process for reference	0–150	Soft tissue approximation
	Extension	Lateral epicondyle of the humerus	Lateral midline of the humerus using the center of the acromion process for reference	Lateral midline of the radius using the radial head and radial styloid process for reference	0–5	Bone to bone

TABLE 21.5 Goniometric Techniques for the Elbow and Forearm *(continued)*

Joint	Motion	Axis	Stationary Arm	Movable Arm	Normal Ranges (Degrees)	End Feel
Forearm	Pronation	Lateral to the ulnar styloid process	Parallel to the anterior midline of the humerus	Posterior aspect of the forearm, just proximal to the styloid process of the radius and ulna	0–75	Tissue stretch
	Supination	Medial to the ulnar styloid process	Parallel to the anterior midline of the humerus	Anterior aspect of the forearm, just proximal to the styloid process of the radius and ulna	0–85	Tissue stretch

TABLE 21.6 Evidence-Based Special Tests for the Elbow Complex

Name of Test	Brief Description	Positive Findings	Evidence-Based
Elbow extension test[a]	With the patient seated with the arms supinated, the patient flexes his or her shoulders to 90 degrees and then extends both elbows.	Positive for bony or joint injury if the involved elbow has less extension than the contralateral side.	Sensitivity: 0.96 Specificity: 0.48
Pressure provocative test[b]	The patient's elbow is positioned in 20 degrees of flexion and forearm supination. The clinician applies pressure to the ulnar nerve just proximal to the cubital tunnel for 60 seconds.	Positive for cubital tunnel syndrome if the patient reports symptoms in the distribution of the ulnar nerve.	Sensitivity: 0.89 Specificity: 0.98
Moving valgus stress test[c]	The patient's shoulder is abducted to 90 degrees with maximal external rotation. The clinician maximally flexes the elbow and applies a valgus stress and then quickly extends the elbow to 30 degrees.	If the patient experiences maximal medial elbow pain between 120 degrees and 70 degrees of elbow flexion, the test is considered positive.	Sensitivity: 1.0 Specificity: 0.75

Data from (a) Appelboam A, Reuben AD, Benger JR, et al: Elbow extension test to rule out elbow fracture: Multicentre, prospective validation and observational study of diagnostic accuracy in adults and children. *BMJ* 337:a2428, 2008; (b) Novak CB, Lee GW, Mackinnon SE, et al: Provocative testing for cubital tunnel syndrome. *J Hand Surg [Am]* 19:817–20, 1994; and (c) O'Driscoll SW, Lawton RL, Smith AM: The "moving valgus stress test" for medial collateral ligament tears of the elbow. *Am J Sports Med* 33:231–9, 2005.

Acute Phase

In addition to maintaining general fitness and getting the patient to be independent with a home exercise program, the goals of the acute phase of elbow rehabilitation include the following:

- *Decrease pain and inflammation.* The principles of PRICEMEM (*p*rotection, *r*est, *i*ce, *c*ompression, *e*levation, *m*anual therapy, *e*arly motion, and *med*ication) are applied as appropriate. The elbow may need to be immobilized using a splint.
- *Protect the injury site and promote healing.* Early passive and then active assisted exercises are performed in all planes of shoulder, elbow, and wrist motions, to nourish the articular cartilage and assist in collagen tissue synthesis and organization. Provoking activities, such as strong or repetitive gripping are avoided. The formation of an elbow flexion contracture must also be avoided. One of the most common causes of joint contracture at the elbow is scar formation at the anterior capsule, and at the insertion site of the brachialis. This scarring can be minimized with joint mobilizations to the humeroulnar and humeroradial joints. The anterior capsule can also be stretched using long-duration, low-intensity stretching to produce a plastic response of the collagen tissue. This can be accomplished by positioning the patient in supine, with a towel roll placed posterior and slightly proximal to the elbow joint, and the forearm hanging over the edge of the bed (**FIGURE 21.6**). A light weight (2–4 pounds) is placed in the hand or around the wrist, and the elbow is extended as far as is comfortable. This procedure becomes an important component of the patient's home exercise program.
- *Restore pain-free ROM in the entire kinetic chain.* As the available range at the elbow occurs at the humeroulnar, humeroradial, and proximal and distal radioulnar joints, restrictions or laxities at any of these joints can affect the eventual outcome of the rehabilitative process. The ROM exercises begin with passive range of motion (PROM), progressing to active assisted range of motion (AAROM), and then active range of motion (AROM) based on patient tolerance.
- Hold-relax and passive stretching techniques can be used to elongate the adaptively shortened muscle to the end of range. Also, the patient can be taught some self-stretches (see the "Therapeutic Techniques" section later in this chapter).
- *Retard muscle atrophy and minimize detrimental effects of immobilization and activity restriction.* Patients are initially instructed to perform submaximal isometric exercises at multiple angles for the elbow flexors and extensors, the forearm supinators and pronators, and the wrist flexors and extensors as appropriate.

FIGURE 21.6 Passive elbow extension.

Chronic/Functional Phase

The functional phase addresses any tissue overload problems and functional biomechanical deficits. The goals of the functional phase include the following:

- *Improve neuromuscular control.* Once full range of pain-free motion has been achieved, the patient's strengthening program is progressed to using dumbbells or surgical tubing through pain-free ranges. Initially, low-intensity resistance with multiple repetitions are used for muscular endurance, with progression to more intense resistance to strengthen the muscles in preparation for functional demands.[10] Any unused or underused part of the extremity or trunk should be incorporated into the training program, and exercises simulating the desired activity are progressed from slow, controlled motions to high speed with low resistance to improve timing.[10] Co-contraction of the muscles around the elbow can be produced with closed-chain exercises, such as with the push-up, and quadruped exercises. (See Chapter 20.)
- *Improve muscle strength to within normal limits (WNL).* Exercises to increase strength should include the following:
    - Concentric exercises for the wrist flexors and extensors (see Chapter 22), elbow flexors (**FIGURE 21.7**) and extensors (**FIGURE 21.8** through **FIGURE 21.10**), and radial and ulnar

FIGURE 21.7 Elbow flexor strengthening.

FIGURE 21.8 Strengthening exercise for elbow extensors: triceps press start position.

FIGURE 21.9 Strengthening exercise for elbow extensors: triceps press end position.

FIGURE 21.10 Strengthening exercise for elbow extensors using elastic resistance.

deviators (see Chapter 22), performed at varying speeds.

- Mechanical resistance using a small bar or hammer with asymmetrically placed weight for strengthening the pronators (**FIGURE 21.11**) and supinators (**FIGURE 21.12**).
- The broom-handle exercise, a recommended exercise for the wrist flexors and extensors. A weight is tied to a rope or piece of string approximately 3 feet in length, which is then tied to a broom handle or dowel. The broom handle is held out in front of the patient with the palms down (for wrist extensors;

FIGURE 21.11 Strengthening exercise for forearm pronators.

FIGURE 21.12 Strengthening exercise for forearm supinators.

FIGURE 21.13 Wrist extensor strengthening.

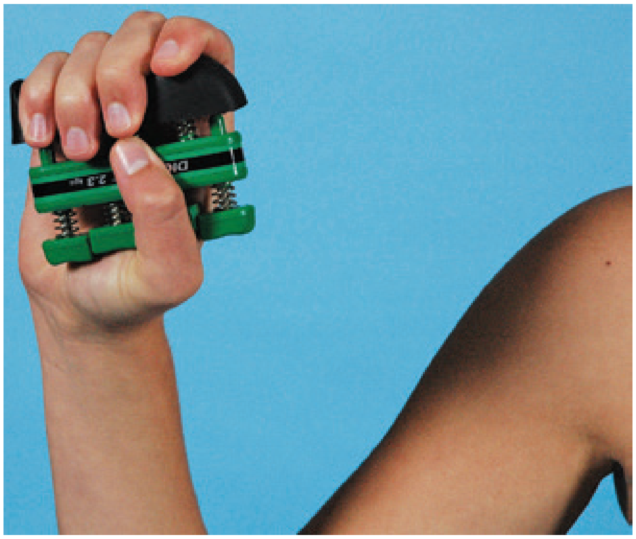


FIGURE 21.14 Grip strengthening.
Gripmaster.

FIGURE 21.13) or palms up (for wrist flexors). The patient then rolls the string onto the handle/dowel to raise and then lower the weight.

- Tennis ball squeezes or Gripmaster Digiflex (FIGURE 21.14) to improve grip strength (once symptoms have subsided).
- Exercises to increase the strength in opposing muscles, such as the flexors of the wrist and digits (see Chapter 22), to balance the force couple.
- Incorporation of the entire upper kinetic chain. Examples of such exercises include the lateral step-up using the hand (FIGURE 21.15), where the patient moves the hand from the floor to the step while applying as much weight as tolerated through the arm, and weight shifting and joint loading (FIGURE 21.16). (See also upper kinetic chain exercises in Chapter 20.) Caution should be used with shoulder external rotation exercises because of the potential for valgus stress to the elbow. Stability at the shoulder and the elbow is extremely important for those patients returning to overhead sports, and it can be addressed using proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation (PNF) patterns with increasing resistance (FIGURE 21.17). Also, PNF exercises can be prescribed that incorporate the trunk and upper kinetic chain (FIGURE 21.18).
- Once the functional tests are pain-free, an eccentric strengthening program based on the

FIGURE 21.15 Lateral step-up.

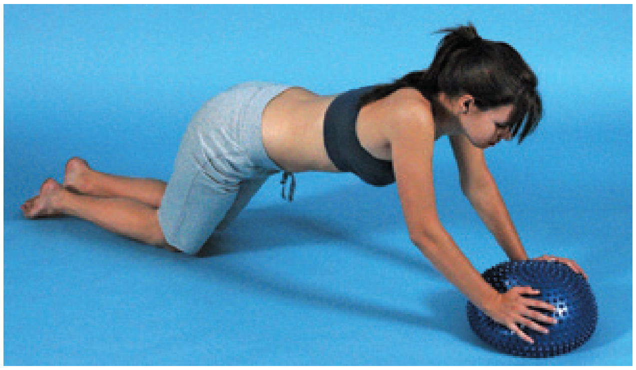


FIGURE 21.16 Weight shifting and joint loading.

principles of healing can be initiated. These exercises are an essential component of the rehabilitation program with conditions such as medial or lateral epicondylitis. Cryotherapy should be used immediately following these exercises.

- *Increase muscular endurance.* Endurance is developed over time, as the patient becomes able to tolerate more repetitions and sustained activities. If endurance is not developed and the muscle–tendon unit becomes fatigued, the muscular portion can no longer absorb the stresses and the tendon absorbs greater stresses.

FIGURE 21.17 PNF exercise for the upper kinetic chain.

FIGURE 21.18 Exercise incorporating the trunk and upper kinetic chain.

There should be a gradual transition back to strenuous activities requiring elbow and forearm power. In such cases, plyometrics that closely simulate the anticipated demands should be added to the program. In order to return to strenuous activities, the minimum requirements are that the elbow has full, pain-free ROM; no pain or tenderness on physical examination; and adequate muscle strength, power, and endurance that is 70 percent of the uninvolved side.[11]

Common Conditions

The common conditions that can affect the elbow include those that relate to poor biomechanics due to weakness, trauma, repetitive activities involving the wrist and hand, or overuse.

Tendon Ruptures

Tendon ruptures around the elbow require significant forces.

Biceps Tendon Rupture

The biceps brachii may be injured either at the musculotendinous junction or the radial tuberosity, being avulsed partially or completely. These distal injuries account for 3 to 10 percent of all biceps tendon ruptures, with the remainder occurring at the shoulder.[12] Avulsions of the biceps tendon at the elbow occur almost exclusively in males. Most typically, it affects the dominant elbow of a muscular male in his fifth decade of life.[12] Clinical findings vary depending on whether the rupture is partial or complete. The history may include a report of either a sharp, tearing-type pain coincident with an acute injury or swelling and activity-related pains in the antecubital fossa from chronic injury.[12] The physical examination may reveal ecchymosis in the antecubital fossa (and sometimes also in the distal ulnar part of the arm), a palpable defect of the distal biceps, loss of strength of elbow flexion and grip, but especially a loss of forearm supination strength. In active individuals, primary repair of the acute tendon avulsion is the treatment of choice. If not repaired, significant loss of elbow flexion and supination strength can be expected.

Triceps Tendon Rupture

Triceps tendon ruptures usually occur with a deceleration force during extension or an uncoordinated contraction of the triceps muscle against the flexing elbow. As with rupture of the biceps tendon, the physical findings depend on whether the avulsion is partial or complete. Loss of elbow extension strength, inability to extend overhead against gravity, and a tendon defect are findings if the tear is complete.[12]

Intervention for Tendon Ruptures

Surgical repair is the treatment of choice in acute complete ruptures. A partial injury may be treated conservatively with immobilization for about 3 weeks, followed by a gradual progression of ROM and strengthening.

Overuse Injuries

Chronic overuse injuries are the result of multiple microtraumatic events that cause disruption of the internal structure of the tendon and produce tendinopathy.

Bicipital Tendinopathy

Bicipital tendinopathy is an overuse injury resulting from repetitive hyperextension of the elbow with pronation, or repetitive flexion combined with stressful pronation-supination. The condition is common in weightlifters, bowlers, gymnasts, and those involved in heavy lifting. Typically, there are complaints of pain located at the anterior aspect of the distal part of the arm. There is tenderness to palpation of the distal biceps belly, the musculotendinous portion of the biceps, or the bicipital insertion of the radial tuberosity. Other findings include pain on resisted elbow flexion and supination, and pain with passive shoulder and elbow extension.

The rehabilitation focuses on strength, endurance, and flexibility of the flexor/supinator mechanism (see the "Intervention Strategies" section earlier in this chapter) and on strengthening the shoulder stabilizers. (See Chapter 20.) In addition, electrotherapeutic and thermal modalities, transverse friction massage, trigger point treatment, and specific elbow joint mobilizations can be used.

Triceps Tendinopathy

Triceps tendon overload injury results from repetitive extension. The patient reports tenderness localized to the triceps insertion at the olecranon, which is aggravated with resisted elbow extension. The initial stages of the intervention emphasize the principles of PRICEMEM. Therapeutic exercises emphasize strength of the elbow extensor mechanism. Closed-chain exercises are particularly effective. Additional emphasis is placed on shoulder strength and scapular stabilization exercises. (See Chapter 20.)

Brachialis Strain

A strain to the brachialis is relatively rare but can occur from overuse in activities such as heavy lifting. The brachialis is also prone to myositis ossificans, a pathologic bone formation, because it is likely to hemorrhage when injured. If myositis ossificans is suspected due to signs and symptoms, including a painless, enlarging mass, the PT should be notified and therapy placed on hold.

As in the lesion of the biceps, the pain is felt on the anterior aspect of the distal part of the arm. There is palpable tenderness in the muscle belly of the brachialis, at the level of the musculotendinous junction of the biceps. Resisted supination is not painful, although resisted elbow flexion with the forearm pronated is.

Epicondylitis

Defined literally, epicondylitis suggests an inflammation at one of the epicondyles of the elbow. Two types of epicondylitis are commonly described: tennis elbow (lateral epicondylitis) and golfer's elbow (medial epicondylitis; see the following sections). Both types of tendinopathy are common in persons who frequently overuse the upper arm, particularly with activities that involve rotation of the arm with flexion and extension. However, lateral epicondylitis has been found to be considerably more common than medial epicondylitis.

Lateral Elbow Tendinopathy Lateral elbow tendinopathy (LET), more commonly known as tennis elbow, represents a pathologic condition of the common extensor muscles at their origin on the lateral humeral epicondyle. Although the terms *epicondylitis* and *tendonitis* are commonly used to describe LET, histopathologic studies have demonstrated that tennis elbow is often not an inflammatory condition; rather, it is a degenerative condition, a tendinosis. Specifically, the condition involves the tendons of the muscles that control wrist extension and radial deviation resulting in pain on the lateral side of the elbow with contraction of these muscles.

LET affects between 1 and 3 percent of the population, and occurs most commonly between the ages 35 and 50 years of age with a mean age of 45.[13] Over 25 conditions have been suggested as causes of tennis elbow including periostitis, infection, bursitis, fibrillation of the radial head, radioulnar joint disease, annular ligament lesion, nipped synovial fringe, calcific tendinitis, neurogenic (alterations in nociceptive processing and impairment in sensory and motor function) causes, osteochondritis dissecans, and radial nerve entrapment.[14]

Whatever the source of the symptoms, LET is usually the result of overuse but can be traumatic in origin. Whereas macrotramatic injuries can be explained by excessive forces overwhelming tissue tensile strength, overuse injuries are somewhat more controversial in their pathogenesis. The tendons involved in locomotion and ballistic performance, which transmit loads under elastic and eccentric conditions, are susceptible to injury. Some tendons, such as those that wrap around a convex surface or the apex of a concavity, those that cross two joints, those with areas of scant vascular supply, and those that are subjected to repetitive tension, are particularly vulnerable to overuse injuries.[14] Occupations or sports that involve repetitive grasping, with the wrist positioned in extension, place the elbow particularly at risk (manual workers, and tennis players) because it is the wrist extensors that must contract during grasping activities to stabilize the wrist.[12]

Diffuse achiness and morning stiffness are common complaints.[14] Occasionally the pain is experienced at night and the patient may report frequent dropping of objects, especially if they are carried with the palm facing down.

The exact location of the pain is revealed by palpation, and tenderness is usually found over the ECRB and ECRL, especially at the lateral epicondyle. In the pronated forearm, the ECRB tendon runs over the radial head. In most cases, the tendon felt is, in fact, the common tendon of the ECRB and the extensor digitorum. Sometimes, two tendons are palpated; the medial one is the ECRB. A number of tests are designed to provoke pain in the affected tendon by loading. These resisted tests typically reproduce symptoms with resisted wrist extension and radial deviation with the elbow extended, resisted extension of the index finger or middle finger, and having the patient grip an object. Typically, the physical therapist (PT) will also assess elbow, wrist, and forearm ROM, as well as accessory motion of the radioulnar, radiohumeral, and humeroulnar joints to determine if there are any articular or musculotendinous restrictions. If elbow instability is suspected, the PT can use some special tests, including the posterolateral rotary drawer test and tabletop relocation test. The PT also may assess the cervical and thoracic spine and radial nerve function, especially if the patient has complained of neck pain, diffuse pain, or paresthesia. Radial nerve neurodynamic testing is outlined in Chapter 9. Finally, the PT may include an analysis of posture and movement within the whole kinetic chain to identify potential risk factors that may be modifiable through rehabilitation.

Intervention for Lateral Elbow Tendinopathy The lack of agreement in the literature regarding the pathogenesis of LET has led to a proliferation of interventions, both medical and surgical. Recent literature has demonstrated a trend toward treatment of the cervical and thoracic spine with this disorder. A retrospective study by Cleland and colleagues[15] demonstrated that patients receiving manual therapy techniques directed at the cervical spine achieved similar success rates as a group who received treatment solely directed at the elbow; however, they achieved this success in significantly fewer visits ($p = 0.01$). A more recent pilot clinical trial by Cleland et al.[16] that compared the outcomes of 10 patients with lateral epicondylalgia who were randomly assigned to receive localized treatment or localized treatment plus manual therapy to the cervicothoracic spine found that the latter group demonstrated greater improvement in all outcome measures as compared to the localized treatment group. Although promising, replication of these results is needed in a large-scale randomized clinical trial with a control group and a longer-term follow-up before any meaningful conclusions can be drawn.

The patient may be prescribed an orthotic device as a treatment strategy; many different types of braces and other orthotic devices are available. The chief type is a band or strap around the muscle belly of the wrist extensors. Theoretically, binding the muscle with a clasp, band, or brace should limit expansion and thereby decrease the contribution to force production by muscle fibers proximal to the band.[17] Counterforce bracing has been shown to provide the following:[18]

- Beneficial effect on the force couple imbalances and altered movements associated with tennis elbow
- Decreased elbow angular acceleration
- Decreased electromyographic activity

However, contrary to popular belief, tennis-elbow braces have been shown to have little effect in vibrational dampening.[19] The results from a study by Struijs and colleagues[17] would tend to indicate that brace treatment might be useful as an initial therapy.

Cyriax recommended the Mill's manipulation to treat true tennis elbow, a thrust technique by the PT that is intended to maximally stretch the ECRB tendon, to try to pull apart the two surfaces of the painful scar.

Johnson[20] recommended an exercise regimen consisting of progressive resistance exercise to the wrist extensors, with the elbow flexed to 90 degrees and also with the elbow straight. This should be performed as a 10-repetition maximum, morning and night. Gradually, the weight must be increased so that the 10-repetition maximum is always maintained. Pain will be increased for the first 1 to 3 weeks, but by the fifth or sixth weeks, the elbow pain will be better. An ice pack or heating pad can be a mitigating modality during the painful period.[20]

Wilk and Andrews[21] recommend the guidelines outlined in **TABLE 21.7**.

If the symptoms are not controlled with the measures just described, a local injection of corticosteroid by the physician may be helpful.

Surgical Intervention for Lateral Elbow Tendinopathy Surgery is indicated if the symptoms do not resolve despite correctly performed nonoperative treatments lasting 6 months.[12] The goals of operative treatment of tendinopathy of the elbow are to resect pathologic material, to stimulate neovascularization by producing focused local bleeding, and to create a healthy scar while doing the least possible structural damage to surrounding tissues. Postoperatively, a carefully guided resistance-based rehabilitation program is recommended (**TABLE 21.8**).

Medial Elbow Tendinopathy

Medial elbow tendinopathy (MET) primarily involves the common flexor origin, specifically the FCR and the origin of the pronator teres. To a lesser extent, the palmaris longus, FCU, and FDS may also be involved.

The mechanism for MET is not usually related to direct trauma, but rather to overuse. This commonly occurs for three reasons:

- The flexor–pronator tissues fatigue in response to repeated stress, particularly with activities involving repetitive flexing of the fingers and thumb, and flexing and pronating of the wrist.
- There is a sudden change in the level of stress that predisposes the elbow to medial ligamentous injury, such as repetitive throwing/pitching.
- The ulnar collateral ligament fails to stabilize the valgus forces sufficiently.

Similar to LET, MET usually begins as a microtear. The microtear in medial tendinopathy frequently occurs at the interface between the pronator teres and FCR origins with subsequent development of fibrotic and inflammatory granulation tissue.[22] Chronic symptoms result from a loss of extensibility of the tissues,

TABLE 21.7 Conservative Rehabilitation for Lateral Epicondylitis

Phase 1	Intervention
Increase flexibility	Stretches into: ■ Wrist extension–flexion ■ Elbow extension–flexion ■ Forearm supination–pronation
Decrease inflammation/pain	Cryotherapy Phonophoresis Iontophoresis (with an anti-inflammatory such as dexamethasone)
Promote tissue healing	Avoid painful movements (such as gripping) Friction massage
Phase 2	**Intervention**
Improve flexibility	Continue flexibility exercises
Increase muscular strength and endurance	Emphasize concentric–eccentric strengthening Initiate shoulder strengthening (if deficiencies are noted)
Increase functional activities and return to function	Use counterforce brace Continue use of cryotherapy after exercise or function Initiate gradual return to stressful activities Gradually reinitiate previously painful movements
Phase 3	**Intervention**
Improve muscular strength and endurance	Continue strengthening exercises (emphasize eccentric–concentric) Continue to emphasize deficiencies in shoulder and elbow strength
Gradually return to high-level sport activities	Gradually diminish use of counterforce brace Use cryotherapy as needed Equipment modifications (grip size, string tension, and playing surface)

Data from Wilk KE, Andrews JR: Elbow injuries, in Brotzman SB, Wilk KE (eds): *Clinical Orthopaedic Rehabilitation*. Philadelphia, Mosby, 2003, pp. 85–123.

TABLE 21.8 Rehabilitation Protocol Following Lateral Epicondylitis Surgery

Phase 1	Intervention
Protect surgical site	Extremity positioned in a sling (sling removed at 2–4 weeks)
Control inflammation and edema	Cryotherapy
Maintain ROM	Gentle (pain-free) passive/active assisted hand, wrist, elbow, and active shoulder ROM exercises
Phase 2 (weeks 2–4)	**Intervention**
Increase ROM	Continue progression of ROM exercises
Initiate strengthening	Active motion Submaximal isometrics Shoulder and scapular strengthening: manual D1 and D2 PNF with patient supine
Phase 3 (weeks 5+)	**Intervention**
Strengthening	PREs with weights or Theraband Return to sport at weeks 8–12
Functional training	Modified activities (task-specific functional training at weeks 8–12)
Scar formation	Gentle massage along and against fiber orientation

ROM, range of motion; PRE, progressive resistive exercise; PNF, proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation.
Data from Wilk KE, Andrews JR: Elbow injuries, in Brotzman SB, Wilk KE (eds): *Clinical Orthopaedic Rehabilitation*. Philadelphia, Mosby, 2003, pp. 85–123.

leaving the tendon unable to attenuate tensile loads. The symptoms are typically reported to be exacerbated with either resisted wrist flexion and pronation or passive wrist extension and supination.[22]

Intervention Conservative intervention for MET, which is similar to that of LET, has been shown to have high success rates.[22] The intervention for this condition initially involves rest, activity modification, and local modalities. Complete immobilization is not recommended, even in the acute phase, because it eliminates the stresses necessary for maturation of new collagen tissue, resulting in healed tissue that is not strong enough to withstand the stresses associated with a return to activity. However, the patient may need to stop activities that produce tension overload. Once the acute phase has passed, the focus is to restore the ROM and correct imbalances of flexibility and strength. The strengthening program is progressed to include concentric and eccentric exercises of the flexor–pronator muscles. Splinting or the use of a counterforce brace may be a useful adjunct.[22]

Medial (Ulnar) Collateral Ligament Sprain (Medial Valgus Stress Overload)

The most common mechanisms of MCL insufficiency are a chronic attenuation of valgus and external rotation forces,[23] as seen in the tennis serve or in the baseball throwing pitch, and posttraumatic, usually after a fall on an outstretched hand (FOOSH injury).[3] Associated injuries after trauma may include fractures of the radial head, olecranon, or medial humeral epicondyle. MCL injury also can occur during surgery for cubital tunnel syndrome. Irritation of the ulnar nerve, with symptoms of ulnar neuritis, may be present secondary to inflammation of the ligamentous complex. The most common complaint from the patient is medial elbow pain at the ligament's origin, or at the insertion site if there is an acute avulsion.[3] As the primary restraint to valgus stress is the anterior bundle of the MCL, the physical examination by the PT focuses on palpation of the course of the MCL.[3] Valgus stress testing of the elbow also is performed (refer to Table 21.6).

Conservative Approach The intervention for early symptoms of MCL injury includes rest and activity modification or restriction for about 2–4 weeks, ROM exercises, physical therapy modalities, and NSAIDs prescribed by the physician.[22]

Strengthening and stretching of the FCU, pronator teres, and flexor digitorum superficialis are initiated once the acute inflammatory stage has subsided; they are performed in the pain-free mid-range of motion. Emphasis is placed on isometric exercises of the forearm flexors, ulnar deviators, and pronators, in order to enhance their role as secondary stabilizers of the medial joint. In addition, strengthening of the shoulder and elbow muscles may help prevent or minimize injury and may facilitate rehabilitation. For those returning to sports, a well-supervised throwing and conditioning program is initiated, as appropriate, at approximately 3 months, once the athlete has regained full ROM and strength.[22]

Surgical Intervention The anterior oblique band of the ulnar collateral ligament is particularly vulnerable to microtearing, attenuation, weakening, and eventual rupture in those involved in heavy manual labor. Reconstruction of this ligament centers on the restoration of the anterior oblique band of the ulnar collateral ligament with the use of an autologous free tendon graft. Additional considerations include patient age, activity level, job requirements, general health, and general integrity of the uninvolved elbow.[24]

The surgical repair or reconstruction can be performed with or without ulnar nerve transposition. The palmaris longus tendon is the most frequently used graft for elbow reconstruction, although the plantaris and toe extensor tendons can also be used.[23] The surgical procedure in which a ligament in the medial elbow is replaced with a tendon from elsewhere in the body is also known as the Tommy John surgery. The postsurgical rehabilitation begins immediately with the patient's involved upper extremity immobilized in a brace to protect against valgus stress. Active ROM of the shoulder (taking care with external rotation because this motion produces valgus stress on the elbow), hand, and wrist begins immediately. Following the period of immobilization, forearm and elbow ROM exercises are begun, and by the third week postoperatively, ROM of the elbow should approach 20 to 110 degrees. At this time, concentric and eccentric exercises are used for the wrist, and submaximal isometrics are used for elbow flexion and extension. By 4 to 6 weeks, elbow ROM should be 0 to 130 degrees. At this time, concentric and eccentric exercises are introduced for elbow flexion and extension and are progressed as tolerated. In addition, forearm pronation and supination resistance exercises are introduced. Functional training begins around 2 to 4 months postsurgery, although a return to heavy manual labor or sport takes approximately 12 months.

Pathologic Bone Formation

Pathologic bone formation about the elbow occurs in several distinct forms, which include heterotopic ossification, and myositis ossificans:

- Heterotopic ossification (HO) is defined as the formation of mature lamellar bone in nonosseous tissues.
- Myositis ossificans (MO) refers to HO that forms in inflammatory muscle. Although MO and HO are radiographically and histologically similar, these processes are distinguished by their anatomic locations.

Because most cases of pathologic bone formation about the elbow consist of MO and HO, ectopic ossification is the most appropriate descriptive term for this process. Ossification about the elbow can result from a variety of factors, although direct elbow trauma and aggressive PROM following trauma are common causes.[25] Posttraumatic elbow ectopic ossification typically begins to form 2 weeks after trauma. Plain radiographs establish the diagnosis of ectopic ossification, define its location, and show its maturity as early as within 2 weeks. Even with focused intervention, including static and dynamic splinting and frequent active and PROM exercises, elbow motion may diminish. The intervention of choice is an aggressive, active and active-assisted motion program to combat the progressive loss of motion. Ideally, patients who have a risk factor for ectopic ossification should be treated prophylactically with chemotherapeutic agents and/or low-dose external beam radiation.

Olecranon Bursitis

Because of its location, the olecranon bursa is easily bruised through direct trauma or is irritated through repetitive grazing and weight bearing, causing bursitis.

Acute bursitis presents as a swelling over the olecranon process that can vary in size from a slight distension to a mass as large as 6 centimeters in diameter.[26] An inflamed bursa can occasionally become infected, requiring differentiation between septic and nonseptic bursitis.

Pain and swelling can be gradual as in the chronic cases, or sudden as in acute injury or an infection.[26] Redness and heat suggest infection, whereas exquisite tenderness indicates trauma or infection as the underlying cause. Patients often note a decreased ROM or an inability to don a long-sleeved shirt.

Intervention

Although simple posttraumatic bursitis can be treated with the principles of PRICEMEM, an infected bursa needs prompt medical attention. If the patient is experiencing significant pain or discomfort with movement of the elbow, a sling helps to reduce these symptoms and calm the joint.[26]

Supracondylar Fractures

Supracondylar fractures are caused by direct trauma to the arm or shoulder or by axial loading transmitted through the elbow. The fracture pattern produced is related to the degree of elbow flexion and the direction and magnitude of the force applied. Indications for surgery are to prevent further injury, restore anatomy, and provide an optimal environment for healing.

Intervention

The choice of operative exposure depends on the fracture pattern and surgeon preference. The chevron olecranon osteotomy allows for stable fixation and early ROM. Following the procedure, a posterior long-arm splint is applied with the elbow at 60–90 degrees of flexion, depending on the amount of swelling. At 10 to 14 days postoperatively the sutures are removed; if the wound is stable, the patient is placed in a hinged elbow orthosis and protected AROM is allowed. Passive, then active assisted ROM is allowed to the point of discomfort, not pain. The orthosis is worn until both clinical and radiographic evidence of fracture union is present, at approximately 6 to 12 weeks postoperatively; after this, orthosis use is discontinued.

☑ KEY POINT

One of the serious complications arising from supracondylar fractures is *Volkmann's ischemic contracture*, which occurs as the result of increased tissue fluid pressure within a fascial muscle compartment that reduces capillary blood perfusion below a level necessary for tissue viability. Clinical findings include the following:[27]

- A swollen and tense tender compartment
- Severe pain, exacerbated by passive stretch of the forearm muscles
- Sensibility deficits
- Motor weakness or paralysis

However, there is no absence of radial and ulnar pulses at the wrist.

Intercondylar Fractures

The intercondylar fracture of the distal end of the humerus is one of the most difficult of all fractures to manage. Recommendations for treatment have ranged widely, from essentially no treatment to operative reduction and extensive internal fixation. Typically occurring following high-energy injury, intercondylar fractures can lead to significant functional impairment. Much of the difficulty encountered with these fractures lies in the complex anatomy of the elbow joint and the high potential for articular comminution. Operative intervention for distal humerus fractures is based on many factors, including fracture type, intra-articular involvement, fragment displacement, bone quality, joint stability, and soft tissue quality and coverage. In addition, individual factors, such as patient age, overall health condition, functional extremity demands, and patient compliance, are all considered.

Conservative Approach

Nonoperative treatment depends on the fracture type. Casting and immobilization can be used for nondisplaced fractures, particularly with medial, lateral, and supracondylar process fractures (extra-articular and extracapsular).

- Medial epicondylar fractures are typically immobilized for 7 days, with the elbow flexed at 90 degrees, the forearm pronated, and the wrist flexed at 30 degrees, to relax the common flexor–pronator muscle group.
- Lateral epicondylar fractures are typically immobilized with the elbow in 90 degrees of flexion, the forearm in supination, and the wrist extended slightly to relax the extensor muscles.

Surgical Intervention

The rehabilitation for an intercondylar fracture is similar to that for a supracondylar fracture:

- A period of immobilization to avoid all stress to the involved arm
- A general conditioning program during the period of immobilization and active exercises prescribed for the wrist, hand, and shoulder
- Active ROM exercises for elbow flexion and extension, and forearm pronation/supination once prescribed by the physician and supervising PT
- Initiation of strength training once stable union of the fracture has been established

Radial Head Fractures and Dislocations

Radial head fractures and dislocations are traumatic injuries that require adequate treatment to prevent disability from stiffness, deformity, posttraumatic arthritis, nerve damage, or other serious complications.[28] Radial head fractures and dislocations may be isolated just to the radial head (and neck) and the lateral elbow (and proximal forearm), or they may be part of a combined complex fracture injury pattern, involving the other structures of the elbow, distal humerus, or forearm and wrist. Radial head fractures and dislocations are typically as a result of trauma, usually from a FOOSH with the force of impact transmitted up the hand through the wrist and forearm to the radial head, which is forced into the capitellum. The wrist, especially the distal radioulnar joint, may be damaged simultaneously.

Monteggia Fracture

Monteggia fracture–dislocations are a special type of radial head injury, involving a combination of a fracture of the ulna and a dislocation of the proximal end of the radius. Instead of the radial head dislocation, the radial head or neck may be fractured as an equivalent injury. These lesions typically result from a direct blow to the forearm or a FOOSH injury with the arm positioned in either hyperextension or hyperpronation. Although relatively rare, these fractures can present with serious problems and poor functional outcomes if mismanaged. The complications include damage to the posterior branch of the radial nerve, anterior interosseous nerve (AIN), and ulnar nerve as well as nonunion and poor AROM.

Essex–Lopresti Fracture

This type of fracture is defined as a fracture of the radial head with proximal radius migration and disruption of the distal radioulnar joint and interosseous membrane, which typically results from a FOOSH injury.

Intervention

Radial head fractures present several challenges during the rehabilitative process, because the radial head is a secondary stabilizer for valgus forces at the elbow and resists longitudinal forces along the forearm. Compromise of the medial (ulnar) collateral ligament makes the radial head a more important stabilizer of the elbow. A successful outcome for this condition correlates directly with accuracy of anatomic reduction, restoration of mechanical stability that allows early motion, and attention to the soft tissues. Treatment options for radial head fractures or dislocations include closed reduction with casting or early motion or open reduction with internal fixation (ORIF), replacement, or resection. Closed reduction and casting often have associated high rates of stiffness, and closed reduction and early motion may still have high rates of nonunion and malunion in comminuted or unstable fractures, resulting in generally poor functional results. Open treatment (including internal fixation, replacement, or excision depending on the fracture) is associated with better long-term function.

☑ KEY POINT

For Monteggia fracture–dislocations, the optimum treatment includes ORIF of the ulna diaphyseal fracture. Following the surgery, the elbow is immobilized for about 4 weeks in 90 to 120 degrees of elbow flexion, after which AROM exercises for elbow flexion and forearm supination are initiated. AROM into extension beyond 90 degrees begins 4 to 6 weeks postoperatively.

Using the Mason classification, the fracture is type I if it is undisplaced, type II if a single fragment is displaced, and type III if it is comminuted. Type I (nondisplaced) is generally treated nonoperatively. Type II may be treated nonoperatively if the displacement is minimal. Type III fractures usually require operative intervention but may occasionally be treated closed with early motion if the radial head is not reconstructible. If a mechanical block to motion is present, then nonsurgical treatment cannot be used.

Use of a splint or a sling for 3 days is indicated in type I fractures, with active elbow flexion exercises being initiated immediately. As much early mobilization as the patient can tolerate is the key to a favorable outcome. Strengthening, initially involving isometric exercises, begins at 3 weeks and progresses to concentric exercises at 5 to 6 weeks. Heavy resistance is not performed until after 8 weeks or when adequate healing is demonstrated on radiographs.

Fractures with radial head surface involvement of more than 30 percent, fracture fragment displacement, and type III characteristics require management by an orthopaedic surgeon.[26]

Rehabilitation following elbow fractures that undergo internal fixation usually lasts for 12 weeks. Immediately following the immobilization of elbow fractures, active and passive motion exercises are initiated. The goal is to achieve 15 to 105 degrees of motion by the end of week 2. Isometric exercises for elbow flexion and extension and forearm pronation/supination are started within the first week. Active assisted pronation/supination exercises do not begin until week 6. Concentric exercises are given for the shoulder and the wrist and hand. Joint mobilizations, which, if needed, begin in the second week, are used to help regain elbow extension.

By the third week, the patient should be performing lightweight concentric exercises for elbow flexion and extension, and beginning at week 7, eccentric and plyometric exercises are prescribed. At about the same time, neuromuscular reeducation exercises and functional training exercises are added.

☑ KEY POINT

For Essex–Lopresti fractures, conservative intervention involves rest from throwing or impact-loading stress, with a short period of splint immobilization in a Muenster cast sometimes being necessary. Gentle AROM for forearm rotation is initiated about 6 weeks after surgery and immobilization. The exercise progression is based on clinical findings and patient tolerance.

Olecranon Fracture

An olecranon process fracture is not uncommon due to its subcutaneous position, and may be caused by either a high- or a low-energy injury. The high-energy mechanism is usually a fall backward onto the elbow or a FOOSH injury, which produces passive elbow flexion with the forearm in a supinated position. Recognition of an avulsion fracture involving the triceps is through loss of active extension; a palpable gap, pain, and swelling at the fracture site, and a large hematoma developing into diffuse ecchymosis.

Intervention

The goals of olecranon fracture treatment must be customized based on the needs of the patient. In active young individuals, restoration of the articular surface, preservation of strength and power, restoration of stability, and prevention of joint stiffness are important. In older patients, minimization of morbidity is the most important goal.

Nondisplaced fractures with intact extensor mechanisms may be treated nonoperatively. Three weeks of casting usually is sufficient. The elbow can be placed at any degree of flexion. The focus of the intervention for minimally displaced fractures is to allow restoration of the articular surfaces and maintenance of triceps function while allowing early ROM. The elbow is immobilized in a posterior splint or elbow immobilizer, with the elbow flexed at 90 degrees for 6 to 8 weeks (sometimes for as little as 3 weeks). Pronation and supination are started at 2 to 3 days, and easy flexion and extension motions begin at 2 weeks. Early ROM exercise is performed in mid-ranges, specifically avoiding full flexion for up to 2 months. Protected immobilization should continue until there is evidence of union (approximately 6 weeks). Muscle strengthening is not emphasized until bone healing is visualized radiographically to ensure healing of the olecranon. Patients may return to work involving the vigorous use of the extremity at 3 to 4 months postoperatively. Resistance exercises are avoided for up to 3 months.

All other fractures require ORIF or excision of the bone fragments with repair of the extensor mechanism. Rehabilitation following surgery is dependent on the extent of the surgery and the length of the immobilization, although the emphasis on regaining early motion remains the same. The ROM exercises start at around 10 days.

Elbow Dislocation

Posterior elbow displacement is much more common than anterior displacement. With posterior displacements, the ulna is displaced posteriorly in relation to the distal humerus. Posterior displacements can be further subdivided into three types: posterior-lateral (most common) lateral, and posterior-medial (least common). Elbow subluxations and dislocations can be associated with fractures and neurovascular injuries (median, ulnar, and radial nerves; brachial artery) about the elbow. Three other conditions have been associated with elbow dislocations:

- Compartment syndrome may develop in the forearm fascia or biceps tendon due to substantial swelling. Symptoms include the presence of persistent pain, particularly with passive finger and wrist extension of the dislocated arm.
- Ectopic calcification, such as myositis ossificans.
- Ulnar collateral ligament (anterior oblique band) involvement.

Intervention

Isolated posterior elbow dislocations are managed using closed reduction and immobilization. Early ROM exercises in stable, reduced elbow dislocations have been shown to be associated with an improved outcome.[29] However, immobilization of the affected elbow for longer than 3 weeks in patients following an elbow dislocation has been associated with loss of ROM compared with patients who start early ROM exercises.[29]

☑ KEY POINT

The most common sequela after elbow dislocation is a loss (5 to 15 degrees) of extension.

A sample protocol for the conservative intervention following an elbow dislocation is outlined in **TABLE 21.9**.

TABLE 21.9 Conservative Intervention Following an Elbow Dislocation

Phase 1 (1–4 days)	**Intervention**
Protection of injury site	Immobilization of elbow at 90 degrees of flexion in a well-padded posterior splint for 3–4 days Avoid valgus stresses to the elbow
Initiation of ROM	Avoid any PROM (patient to perform AROM when the posterior splint is removed and replaced with a hinged elbow brace or sling)
Strengthening of uninvolved areas	Begin light gripping exercises (putty or tennis ball)
Control of inflammation and edema	Use cryotherapy and high-voltage galvanic stimulation
Phase 2 (days 5–14)	**Intervention**
Protection of injury site	Replace the posterior splint with a hinged elbow brace initially set at 15–90 degrees
Range of motion	Wrist and finger AROM in all planes. Active elbow ROM (*avoid valgus stress*)—flexion-extension-supination-pronation
Strengthening	Multi-angle flexion isometrics Multi-angle extension isometrics (avoid valgus stress) Wrist curls/reverse wrist curls Light biceps curls Shoulder exercises (avoid external rotation of shoulder, because this places valgus stress at the elbow); the elbow is stabilized during shoulder exercises

TABLE 21.9 Conservative Intervention Following an Elbow Dislocation *(continued)*

Phase 3 (weeks 2–8)	Intervention
Protection of injury site	Hinged brace settings 0 degrees to full flexion
Strengthening	Progressive resistive exercise progression of elbow and wrist exercises Initiation of gentle low-load, long-duration stretching around 5–6 weeks for the patient's loss of extension Gradual progression of weight with curls, elbow extensions, and so on Sport-specific exercises and drills initiated as appropriate External rotation and internal rotation exercises of the shoulder may be incorporated at 6–8 weeks Interval throwing program initiated at around 8 weeks (in the asymptomatic patient) No return to play until strength is 85 to 90 percent of the uninvolved limb

Data from Wilk KE, Andrews JR: Elbow injuries, in Brotzman SB, Wilk KE (eds): *Clinical Orthopaedic Rehabilitation*. Philadelphia, Mosby, 2003, pp. 85–123.

Surgical intervention is reserved for patients with signs of neurovascular compromise, associated fractures, or nonreducible dislocations.

Therapeutic Techniques

A number of therapeutic techniques can be used to assist the patient. These include manual techniques and self-stretches.

Techniques to Increase Soft Tissue Extensibility

An increase in flexibility is achieved through a routine stretching program that may be instituted early in the course of treatment, with emphasis on stretching not only the elbow, but also the entire hand, forearm, and shoulder complex. Stretching should follow the application of local heat, such as that afforded by ultrasound or transverse friction massage. Patients should be taught how to perform these techniques on themselves at the earliest opportunity.

In each of the following techniques, the left arm is being treated and the stretch is maintained for approximately 30 seconds:

- *Biceps.* The patient stands by a table and places the back of the hand on the tabletop with the forearm pronated. The elbow is gradually extended and the forearm is moved into further pronation (**FIGURE 21.19**).
- *Elbow and wrist flexors.* The patient is positioned in standing. A stretching strap is secured to the patient's foot and grasped by the hand of the involved side. Maintaining the forearm in a supinated position and the elbow extended as far as possible, the patient raises their arm out to the side (**FIGURE 21.20**) until a stretch is felt.
- *Wrist and finger extensors.* Stretching of the ECRB is always combined with stretching of the ECRL and extensor digitorum and is indicated in all types of tennis and golfer's elbow. The patient is positioned in sitting with the elbow flexed 90 degrees, the forearm pronated, and the wrist flexed. The patient uses the right hand to grasp his or her left hand and position the wrist in maximal flexion and maximal forearm pronation

FIGURE 21.19 Biceps stretch.

FIGURE 21.20 Elbow and wrist flexor stretch with strap.

FIGURE 21.21 Wrist and finger extensor stretch.

(**FIGURE 21.21**). The elbow is then brought very slowly into extension.

- *Stretch for golfer's elbow.* The function of the long wrist flexors is flexion of the elbow, pronation of the forearm, and flexion of the wrist. The patient sits on a chair, with the elbow slightly flexed, the forearm supinated, and the wrist extended (**FIGURE 21.22**). The patient uses the right hand to

FIGURE 21.22 Golfer's elbow stretch (start and end positions).

bring the wrist and fingers into as much extension as possible. While holding the wrist in maximal extension, the patient very slowly extends the elbow. As soon as pain or muscle guarding occurs, the motion is stopped and the elbow is brought slightly back into more flexion. If the pain disappears after a few seconds, the elbow can be brought farther into extension.

- *Weight-bearing wrist flexor stretch.* This stretch is performed by asking the patient to position the hand palm side down on a table and to position the elbow in slight flexion, the wrist in neutral radial-ulnar deviation (**FIGURE 21.23**). Being careful to avoid pain and muscle splinting, the patient slowly straightens the elbow. The stretch should be held for approximately 40 seconds. At this point, the patient can gently pull the fingers up from the table to stretch the flexor muscles of the palm. Against very slight resistance, performed by the other hand, the arm is then brought back to the original position. This stretching procedure is repeated 6 to 10 times. The exercise can be modified by placing the wrist in maximal ulnar

FIGURE 21.23 Weight-bearing wrist flexor stretch.

deviation or radial deviation, and/or the forearm in maximal pronation or supination.

Transverse Frictional Massage

The techniques used in transverse frictional massage (TFM) are described in Chapter 9.

The Biceps

The patient is positioned to expose the biceps tendon. The clinician stands at the patient's side and supports the arm. The clinician places his or her thumb on the biceps tendon and alternately applies a medial and lateral glide motion to the tendon to create gentle friction (refer to Figure 20.48).

Insertion Tendinopathy of the Triceps

Transverse friction massage is indicated for lesions in the musculotendinous junction (rare), the tendon, or the teno-osseous insertion of the triceps. Insertion tendinopathy of the triceps can occur as a result of chronic abuse or macrotrauma. Objective findings for this condition typically include pain with resisted elbow extension.

The patient is positioned with the upper arm supported. The clinician is positioned at the patient's involved side. Palpation confirms the exact site of the lesion. With one hand, the clinician holds the patient's elbow in slightly more than 90 degrees of flexion. The thumb of the other hand is placed at the site of the lesion (**FIGURE 21.24**). Static stretching of the triceps is combined with the transverse friction, while taking care at the teno-osseous insertion to avoid friction over the ulnar or radial nerve or bursa.

FIGURE 21.24 TFM of the triceps.

Medial Humeral Epicondyle (Golfer's Elbow)

To determine the most painful site of the lesion, the clinician palpates the anterior plateau of the medial humeral epicondyle. The patient sits with the elbow extended and the forearm supinated. Using one hand, the clinician grasps the patient's forearm just distal to the elbow and holds the elbow in extension. The tip of the thumb is positioned in slight flexion over the treatment site (**FIGURE 21.25**). The massage is applied perpendicular to the tendon.

Lateral Epicondyle (Tennis Elbow)

The patient is positioned with the upper arm adducted, with the elbow in approximately 80 degrees of flexion, and the forearm in pronation. The tendon of the ECRB is located and TFM is performed by moving the thumb in a medial-to-lateral direction over the tendon (**FIGURE 21.26**).

FIGURE 21.25 TFM of medial epicondyle.

FIGURE 21.26 TFM of lateral epicondyle.

Selective Joint Mobilizations

The theoretical concepts behind joint mobilizations are described in Chapter 9.

- *Proximal radioulnar glide.* The patient is positioned in sitting with the elbow and forearm resting comfortably on the table. Using the index fingers and thumbs of both hands, the clinician grasps the radial head and applies a glide in the anterior direction, and then the posterior direction (**FIGURE 21.27**). Anterior glides increase flexion, while posterior glides increase extension.
- *Inferior humeroulnar glide.* The patient is positioned supine with the arm resting on the table and the elbow flexed to about 90 degrees. Using one hand, the clinician stabilizes the distal end of the humerus. Using the other hand, the clinician grasps the forearm and applies an inferior glide (**FIGURE 21.28**).
- *Inferior humeroradial glide.* The patient is positioned supine with the arm resting on the table. Using one hand, the clinician stabilizes the distal end of the humerus. Using the other hand, the clinician grasps the radius and applies a longitudinal traction force in an inferior direction (**FIGURE 21.29**).

FIGURE 21.27 Proximal radioulnar glide.

FIGURE 21.28 Inferior humeroulnar glide.

FIGURE 21.29 Inferior humeroradial glide.

Summary

The elbow complex, located between the shoulder and the hand, contributes highly to the overall function of the upper extremity. Forces that are transmitted between the hand and shoulder must be stabilized at the elbow through muscular action and static restraints, while simultaneously allowing ample mobility to adjust the functional length of the arm and place the hand in a position of function. Although the structure of the four joints at the elbow and forearm complex allows for both mobility and stability, the elbow joint is a common place for overuse and traumatic injuries. A working knowledge of anatomy and kinesiology of the elbow joint is a minimal requirement to provide effective treatment.

Learning Portfolio

Case Study

You are treating a patient with a diagnosis of lateral elbow tendinopathy. The patient is a manual laborer, and you are educating him on activities to avoid so as not to exacerbate his symptoms.

1. Which type of wrist and hand activity is most likely to exacerbate the patient's symptoms?

As part of the patient's treatment plan of care, you see that transverse frictional massage of the extensor carpi radialis brevis (ECRB) and extensor carpi radialis longus (ECRL) is listed.

2. What anatomic landmark would you use to locate the origin of the ECRB to apply the massage?

Later in the day, you are treating a patient with myositis ossificans and the treatment plan of care calls for increasing range of motion.

3. Which type of range of motion exercise, passive range of motion, active assisted range of motion, or active range of motion should you avoid and why?

You have been asked to perform a joint mobilization of the humeroulnar joint.

4. Describe the joint surfaces of the humeroulnar joint regarding concavity and convexity.
5. Describe how you would increase elbow extension at the humeroulnar joint regarding the direction of mobilization of the ulna on the humerus.

Review Questions

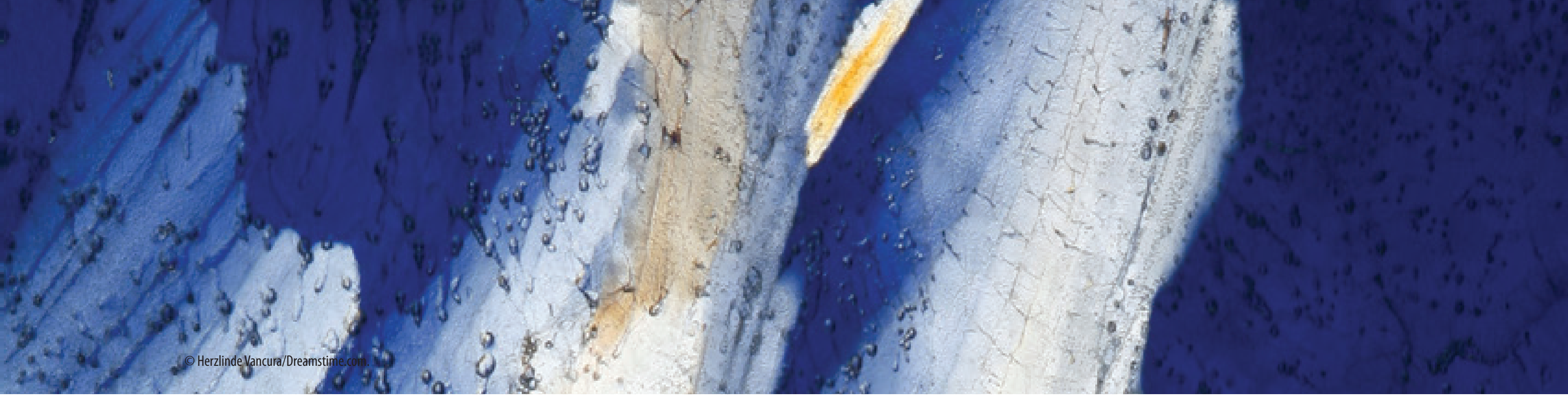
1. What is the close-packed position of the humeroulnar joint?
2. What is the resting position of the humeroulnar joint?
3. What is the resting position of the proximal radioulnar joint?
4. Injury to the radial nerve will likely result in significant weakness of which elbow action?
5. How many degrees of freedom are there at the humeroulnar joint?
6. What is the normal cubitus valgus angle at the elbow?
7. Which two elbow flexors have their distal attachment on the radius?
8. On which bone is the trochlea found?
9. Using the anatomic position as a reference, is the radius medial or lateral to the ulna?
10. **True or false:** The biceps brachii and the brachialis are both innervated by the musculocutaneous nerve.
11. A patient presents with lateral elbow pain that has persisted for several months as a result of repetitive use of power tools. The patient complains of aching in the forearm and sharp pain when gripping an object tightly. The supervising physical therapist completed the examination and recommended a treatment program addressing chronic lateral epicondylitis (tennis elbow). The most appropriate treatment protocols for this patient would be:
    a. Heat therapy prior to activities, practice using power tools with review of proper ergonomic positioning and body mechanics, and cryotherapy postactivities
    b. Cryotherapy, cross-friction massage followed by electrical stimulation, then flexibility exercises
    c. Cryotherapy prior to activities, practice using power tools with review of proper ergonomic positioning and body mechanics, and heat therapy postactivities
    d. Heat therapy, then ultrasound followed by strengthening activities
12. A patient has muscle weakness in elbow flexion; however, pronation and supination strength of the forearm is normal. Which of the following muscles requires strengthening in this case?
    a. Brachialis
    b. Biceps brachii
    c. Brachioradialis
    d. Coracobrachialis
13. A patient has rheumatoid arthritis in her elbows and is having difficulty tolerating the

long hours required at her desk job. Initial physical therapy treatment would include which of the following?

a. Use of heat or cold modalities and joint protection
b. Use of cold and avoidance of active elbow flexion
c. Application of topical analgesics and light resistance strengthening
d. Splinting in 90 degrees of flexion and isometric exercise at 80 percent effort

References

1. Neumann DA. Elbow and forearm complex. In: Neumann DA, editor. *Kinesiology of the Musculoskeletal System: Foundations for Physical Rehabilitation*. St. Louis: Mosby; 2002. p. 133–71.
2. Jackson-Manfield P, Neumann DA. Structure and function of the elbow and forearm complex. In: Jackson-Manfield P, Neumann DA, editors. *Essentials of Kinesiology for the Physical Therapist Assistant*. St. Louis, MO: Mosby Elsevier; 2009. p. 91–122.
3. Cohen MS, Bruno RJ. The collateral ligaments of the elbow: anatomy andclinical correlation. *Clinical Orthopaedics and Related Research*. 2001; 1:123–30.
4. Ryan J. Elbow. In: Wadsworth C, editor. *Current Concepts of Orthopedic Physical Therapy*. Home Study Course. La Crosse, WI: Orthopaedic Section, APTA; 2001.
5. Standring S, Gray H. *Gray's Anatomy: The Anatomical Basis of Clinical Practice* 40th ed. St. Louis, MO: Churchill Livingstone Elsevier; 2008.
6. Funk DA, An KA, Morrey BF, Daube JR. Electromyographic analysis of muscles across the elbow joint. *Journal of Orthopaedic Research*. 1987; 5:529–38.
7. Boone DC, Azen SP, Lin C-M, Spence C, Baron C, Lee L. Reliability of goniometric measurements. *Physical Therapy*. 1978; 58:1355–60.
8. Mayerson NH, Milano RA. Goniometric measurement reliability in physical medicine. *Archives of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation*. 1984; 65:92–4.
9. Riddle DL, Rothstein JM, Lamb RL. Goniometric reliability in a clinical setting: shoulder measurements. *Physical Therapy*. 1987; 67:668–73.
10. Kisner C, Colby LA. The elbow and forearm complex. In: Kisner C, Colby LA, editors. *Therapeutic Exercise Foundations and Techniques*, 5th ed. Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2002. p. 557–87.
11. Wilk KE, Arrigo C, Andrews JR. Rehabilitation of the elbow in the throwing athlete. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 1993; 17:305–17.
12. Kandemir U, Fu FH, McMahon PJ. Elbow injuries. *Current Opinion in Rheumatology*. 2002; 14:160–7.
13. Ali M, Lehman TA. Lateral elbow tendinopathy: a better term than lateral epicondylitis or tennis elbow. *The Journal of Hand Surgery*. 2009; 34:1575; author reply 6.
14. Nirschl RP. The epidemiology and health care burden of tennis elbow: a population-based study. *Annals of Translational Medicine*. 2015; 3:133.
15. Cleland J, Whitman JM, Fritz J. Effectiveness of manual physical therapy to the cervical spine in the management of lateral epicondylalgia: A retrospective analysis. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2004; 34:713–24.
16. Cleland JA, Flynn TW, Palmer JA. Incorporation of manual therapy directed at the cervicothoracic spine in patients with lateral epicondylalgia: a pilot clinical trial. *The Journal of Manual and Manipulative Therapy*. 2005; 13:143–51.
17. Struijs PA, Kerkhoffs GM, Assendelft WJ, Van Dijk CN. Conservative treatment of lateral epicondylitis: brace versus physical therapy or a combination of both—a randomized clinical trial. *American Journal of Sports Medicine*. 2004; 32:462–9.
18. Forbes A, Hopper D. The effect of counterforce bracing on grip strength in tennis players with painful elbows. *The Australian Journal of Physiotherapy*. 1990; 36:259–65.
19. Chiumento AB, Bauer JA, Fiolkowski P. A comparison of the dampening properties of tennis elbow braces. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise*. 1997; 29:123.
20. Johnson EW. Tennis elbow. Misconceptions and widespread mythology. *American Journal of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation*. 2000; 79:113.
21. Wilk KE, Andrews JR. Elbow Injuries. In: Brotzman SB, Wilk KE, editors. *Clinical Orthopaedic Rehabilitation*. Philadelphia: Mosby; 2003. p. 85–123.
22. Chen FS, Rokito AS, Jobe FW. Medial elbow problems in the overhead-throwing athlete. *The Journal of the American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons*. 2001; 9:99–113.
23. Azar FM, Andrews JR, Wilk KE, Groh D. Operative treatment of ulnar collateral ligament injuries of the elbow in athletes. *American Journal of Sports Medicine*. 2000; 28:16–23.
24. Thompson WH, Jobe FW, Yocum LA, Pink MM. Ulnar collateral ligament reconstruction in athletes: muscle-splitting approach without transposition of the ulnar nerve. *Journal of Shoulder and Elbow Surgery*. 2001; 10:152–7.
25. Viola RW, Hastings H, 2nd. Treatment of ectopic ossification about the elbow. *Clinical Orthopaedics and Related Research*. 2000:65–86.
26. Onieal M-E. Common wrist and elbow injuries in primary care. *Lippincott's Primary Care Practice Musculoskeletal Conditions*. 1999; 3:441–50.
27. Hovius SE, Ultee J. Volkmann's ischemic contracture. Prevention and treatment. *Hand Clinics*. 2000; 16:647–57.
28. Rabin SI. Radial Head Fractures. Available at: http://wwwemedicinecom/orthoped/topic276htm. 2005.
29. Geertsen SS, Lundbye-Jensen J, Nielsen JB. Increased central facilitation of antagonist reciprocal inhibition at the onset of dorsiflexion following explosive strength training. *Journal of Applied Physiology*. 2008; 105:915–22.


© Herzlinde Vancura/Dreamstime.com

CHAPTER 22

Wrist and Hand

CHAPTER OBJECTIVES

At the completion of this chapter, the reader will be able to:

1. Describe the anatomy of the joints, ligaments, muscles, blood, and nerve supply that comprise the region.
2. Describe the biomechanics of the wrist and hand complex, including the open- and close-packed positions, muscle force couples, and the static and dynamic stabilizers.
3. Summarize the various causes of wrist and hand dysfunction.
4. Describe and demonstrate intervention strategies and techniques based on clinical findings and established goals by the physical therapist.
5. Evaluate the intervention effectiveness to determine progress and recommend modifications as needed.
6. Plan an effective home program, and instruct the patient in its use.

Overview

The human wrist joint is a complex arrangement of eight small bones and numerous ligaments that form a mobile yet stable link from the powerful forearm to the hand. To effectively treat hand problems, the clinician must have a sound understanding of both the anatomy and kinesiology.

Anatomy

The distal forearm and hand have three major articulations:

- The distal radioulnar joint
- The radiocarpal joint
- The midcarpal joint

Distal Radioulnar Joint

The distal radioulnar joint (DRUJ) is a double pivot joint that unites the distal radius and ulna and an articular disc (**FIGURE 22.1**), and it functions to transmit the loads from the hand to the forearm. An articular disc, known as the triangular fibrocartilaginous complex (TFCC), assists in binding the distal radius and is the main stabilizer of the DRUJ. It improves joint congruency and cushions against compressive forces.

Radiocarpal (Wrist) Joint

The radiocarpal (wrist) joint is composed of the distal concave surface of the radius and ulna, which articulate with the adjacent articular disk (TFCC), which in turn articulates with the convex articular surfaces

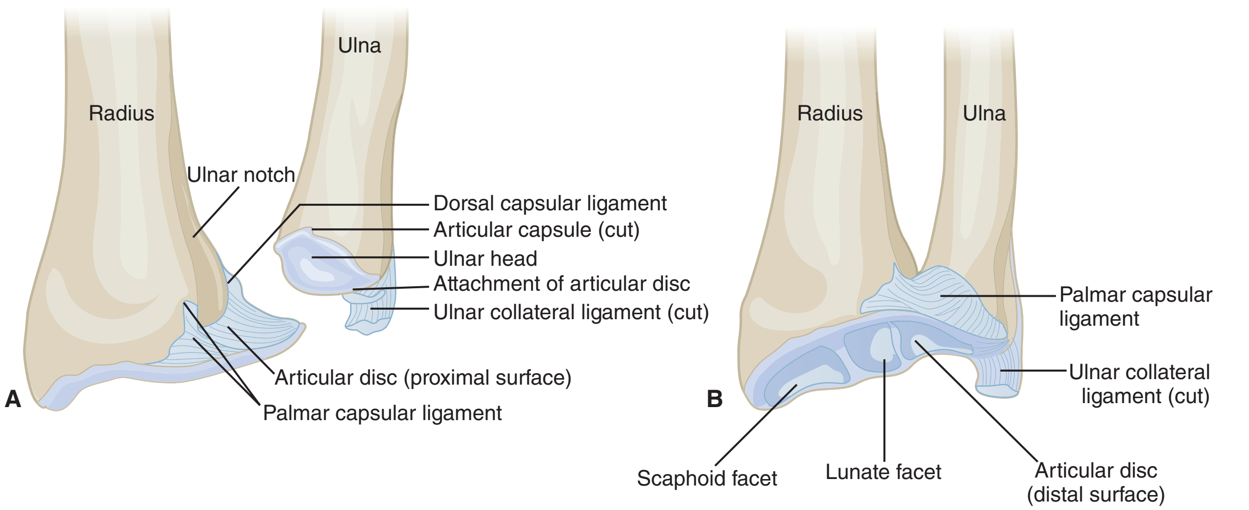


FIGURE 22.1 The distal radioulnar joint.

of the scaphoid and the lunate. The distal end of the ulna expands slightly laterally into a curved head, and medially into the ulnar styloid process. The ulnar styloid process is approximately one-half inch shorter than the radial styloid process, resulting in more available ulnar deviation than radial deviation.[1] There are eight carpal bones, which lie in two transverse rows (**FIGURE 22.2**). The proximal row contains (lateral to medial) the scaphoid (navicular), lunate, triquetrum, and pisiform (a sesamoid bone that develops within the tendon of the flexor carpi ulnaris). The distal carpal row, which articulates with the bases of five metacarpals, holds the trapezium, trapezoid, capitate, and hamate.

☑ KEY POINT

- The precarious blood supply to the scaphoid bone predisposes a person to aseptic necrosis after fracture to the proximal aspect of this bone.[2]
- The lunate is the most commonly dislocated carpal bone.
- With its central position, the capitate serves as the keystone of the proximal transverse arch, the latter of which is essential to the prehensile activity of the hand.

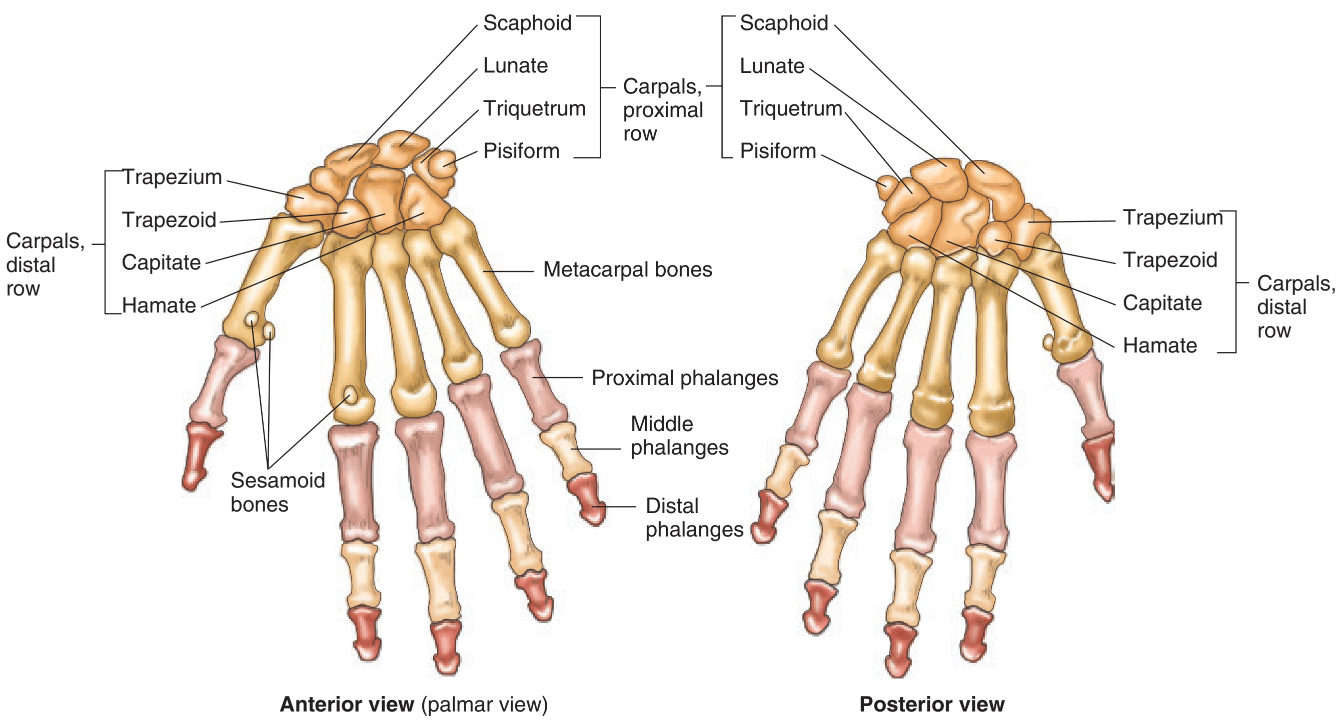


FIGURE 22.2 Bones of the hand.

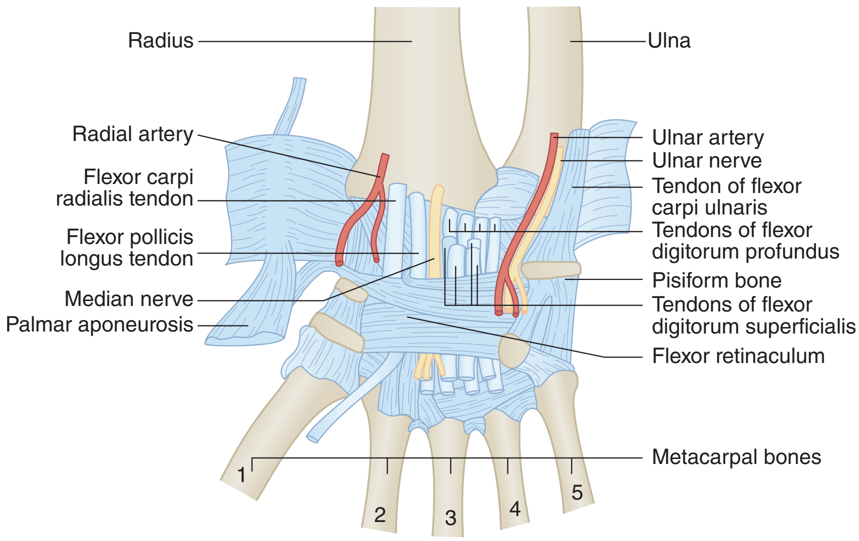


FIGURE 22.3 Ligaments of the anterior aspect of the wrist.

The major ligaments of the wrist (**FIGURE 22.3** and **FIGURE 22.4**) include the following (**TABLE 22.1**):

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> When relaxed, the palmar surface of the hand adopts a natural arched curvature. This concavity is supported by three arch systems: two transverse and one longitudinal.

Midcarpal Joint

The midcarpal joint lies between the proximal and distal rows of carpal bones. It is referred to as a *compound* articulation because each row has both a concave and a convex segment.

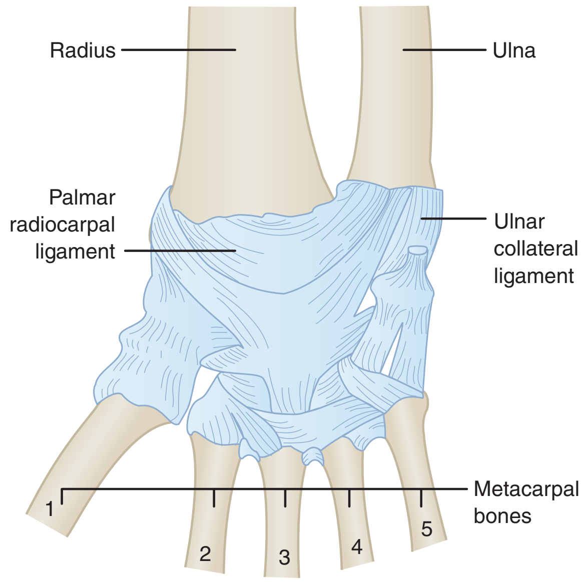
Antebrachial Fascia

The antebrachial fascia is a dense connective tissue "bracelet" that encases the forearm and maintains the relationships of the tendons that cross the wrist.

Extensor Retinaculum

Where the tendons cross the wrist, a ligamentous structure called a retinaculum prevents the tendons from "bow-stringing" when the tendons turn a corner at the wrist.[3] The tunnel-like structures formed by the retinaculum and the underlying bones are called *fibro-osseous compartments*. There are six fibro-osseous compartments, or tunnels, on the dorsum of the wrist (**FIGURE 22.5**). The compartments, from lateral to medial, contain the following tendons:

- Abductor pollicis longus (APL) and extensor pollicis brevis (EPB)
- Extensor carpi radialis longus (ECRL) and extensor carpi radialis brevis (ECRB)
- Extensor pollicis longus (EPL)



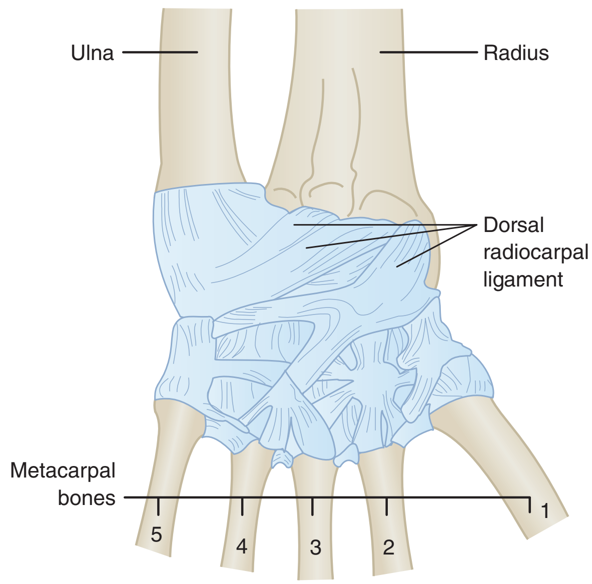


FIGURE 22.4 Ligaments of the posterior aspect of the wrist.

TABLE 22.1 Major Ligaments of the Wrist and Hand

Joint	Ligament	Function
Wrist	Extrinsic palmar	Provides the majority of the wrist stability
	Intrinsic	Serves as rotational restraints, binding the proximal carpal row into a element of rotational stability
	Interosseous	Binds the carpal bones together
	Triangular fibrocartilage complex (TFCC)	Suspends the distal radius and ulnar carpus from the distal ulna Provides a continuous gliding surface across the entire distal face of the radius and ulna for flexion-extension and translational movements Provides a flexible mechanism for stable rotational movements of the radiocarpal unit around the ulnar axis Cushions the forces transmitted through the ulnocarpal axis
	Dorsal radiocarpal ligament	Resists extremes of wrist flexion
	Radial collateral ligament	Resists extremes of ulnar deviation
	Palmar radiocarpal ligament	Resists extremes of wrist extension
	Ulnar collateral ligament	Resists extremes of radial deviation
Fingers	Volar and collateral interphalangeal	Prevents displacement of the interphalangeal joints

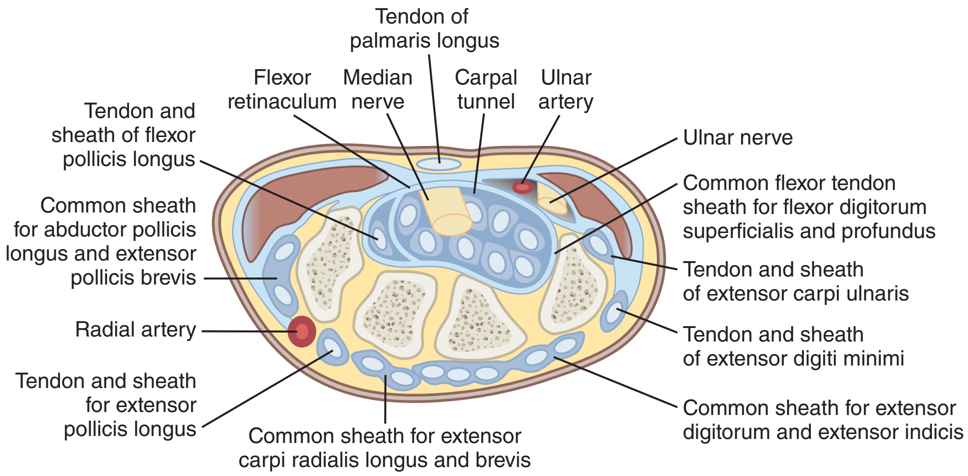


FIGURE 22.5 The six fibro-osseous compartments of the dorsal wrist.

- Extensor digitorum and extensor indicis
- Extensor digiti minimi (EDM)
- Extensor carpi ulnaris (ECU)

☑ KEY POINT

The mnemonic 2 2 1 2 1 1 can be used to remember the number of tendons in each compartment.

Flexor Retinaculum

The flexor retinaculum (**FIGURE 22.6**) spans the area between the pisiform, hamate, scaphoid, and trapezium. It transforms the carpal arch into a tunnel, through which pass the median nerve and some of the tendons of the hand. Distally it attaches to the hook of the hamate and the tubercle of the trapezium. Proximally, the retinaculum attaches to the tubercle of the scaphoid and the pisiform. The tendons that pass *deep* to the flexor retinaculum include the following:

- Flexor digitorum superficialis (FDS)
- Flexor digitorum profundus (FDP)
- Flexor pollicis longus (FPL)
- Flexor carpi radialis (FCR)

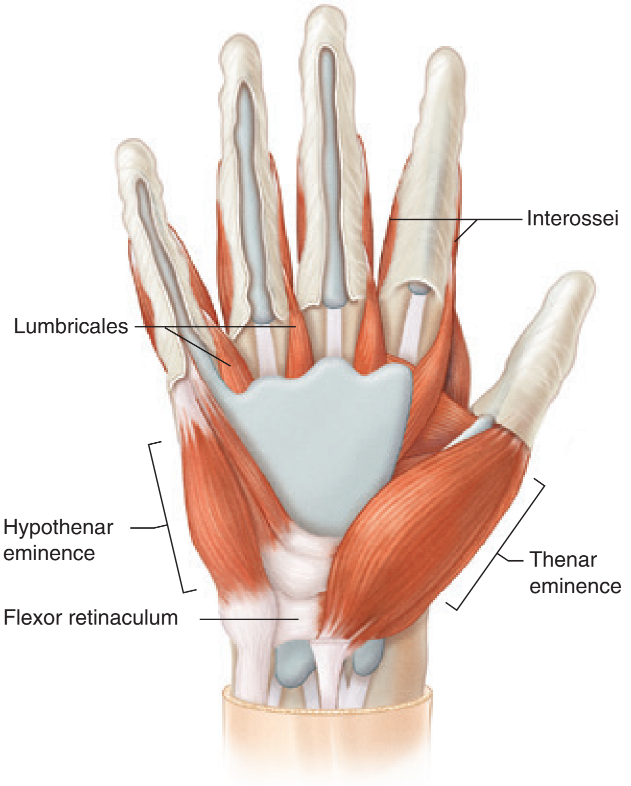


FIGURE 22.6 The flexor retinaculum.

Structures that pass *superficial* to the flexor retinaculum include the following:

- Ulnar nerve and artery
- Tendon of the palmaris longus
- Sensory branch (palmar branch) of the median nerve

Carpal Tunnel

The carpal tunnel serves as a channel for the median nerve and nine flexor tendons. The roof of the tunnel is formed by the flexor retinaculum (transverse carpal ligament). The palmar radiocarpal ligament and the palmar ligament complex form the floor of the canal. The ulnar and radial borders are formed by carpal bones (trapezium and hook of hamate, respectively). Within the tunnel, the median nerve divides into a motor branch and distal sensory branches.

Tunnel of Guyon

The tunnel of Guyon is a depression superficial to the flexor retinaculum, located between the hook of the hamate and the pisiform bones. The tunnel serves as a passageway for the ulnar nerve and artery into the hand.

Metacarpophalangeal Joints of the Second to Fifth Digits

The metacarpophalangeal (MCP) joints of digits 2–5 allow flexion/extension and abduction/adduction associated with a slight degree of axial rotation.

- Approximately 90 degrees of flexion is available at the second MCP. The amount of available flexion progressively increases toward the fifth MCP.
- Active extension at these joints is 25 to 30 degrees; up to 90 degrees is obtainable passively.
- Approximately 20 degrees of abduction/adduction can occur in either direction, with more being available in extension than in flexion.[1]

The joint capsule of these joints is relatively loose and redundant, endowed with collateral ligaments, which pass posterior to the joint axis for flexion/extension of the MCP joints. Although lax in extension, these collateral ligaments become taut in approximately 70 to 90 degrees of flexion of the MCP joint.

Carpometacarpal Joints of the Second to Fifth Digits

The carpometacarpal (CMC) joints progress in mobility from the second to the fifth digit.

First Carpometacarpal Joint

The thumb is the most important digit of the hand regarding function, and the sellar (saddle-shaped) CMC joint is the most important joint of the thumb. Motions that occur at this joint include flexion/extension, adduction/abduction, and opposition (all of which contain varying amounts of flexion, internal rotation, and palmar adduction).

Metacarpophalangeal Joint of the Thumb

Unlike the MCP joints of the fingers, the MCP joint of the thumb is a hinge joint. Approximately 75 to 80 degrees of flexion is available at this joint. The extension movement, as well as the abduction and adduction motions, are negligible.

Interphalangeal Joints

Adjacent phalanges articulate in hinge joints that allow motion in only the sagittal plane, producing flexion and extension. The congruency of the interphalangeal (IP) joint surfaces contributes greatly to finger joint stability.

- *Proximal interphalangeal (PIP) joints.* Approximately 110 degrees of flexion and 0 degrees of extension
- *Thumb interphalangeal joint.* Approximately 90 degrees of flexion and 25 degrees of extension
- *Distal interphalangeal (DIP) joints.* Approximately 90 degrees of flexion and 25 degrees of extension

Palmar Aponeurosis

The palmar aponeurosis is located just deep to the subcutaneous tissue. It is a dense fibrous structure continuous with the palmaris longus tendon and fascia covering the thenar and hypothenar muscles.

☑ KEY POINT

Dupuytren's contracture is a fibrotic condition of the palmar aponeurosis that results in nodule formation or scarring of the aponeurosis, and which may ultimately cause finger flexion contractures (see "Common Conditions" later in this chapter).

Anatomic Snuff Box

The anatomic snuffbox (**FIGURE 22.7**) is characterized by a depression on the dorsal surface of the hand at the base of the thumb, just distal to the radius. The tendons of the APL and EPB form the radial border of the snuffbox, while the tendon of the EPL forms the ulnar border. Along the floor of the snuffbox are the deep branch of the radial artery and the tendinous insertion of the ECRL. Underneath these structures are the scaphoid and trapezium bones.

☑ KEY POINT

Tenderness with palpation in the anatomic snuffbox suggests a scaphoid fracture, but also can present in minor wrist injuries or other conditions.

Muscles of the Wrist and Forearm

The muscles of the forearm (**FIGURE 22.8** and **FIGURE 22.9**), wrist, and hand (**FIGURE 22.10** and **TABLE 22.2**) can be subdivided into the 19 intrinsic muscles that arise and insert within the hand and the 24 extrinsic muscles that originate in the forearm and insert within the hand. The three peripheral nerves that supply the skin and muscles of the wrist and hand are the median, ulnar, and radial nerves.

FIGURE 22.7 Anatomic snuffbox.

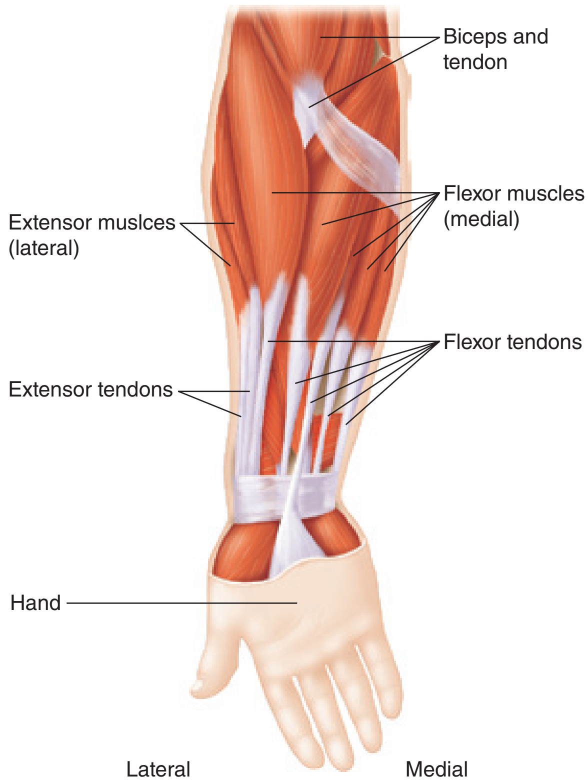


FIGURE 22.8 Muscles of the forearm.

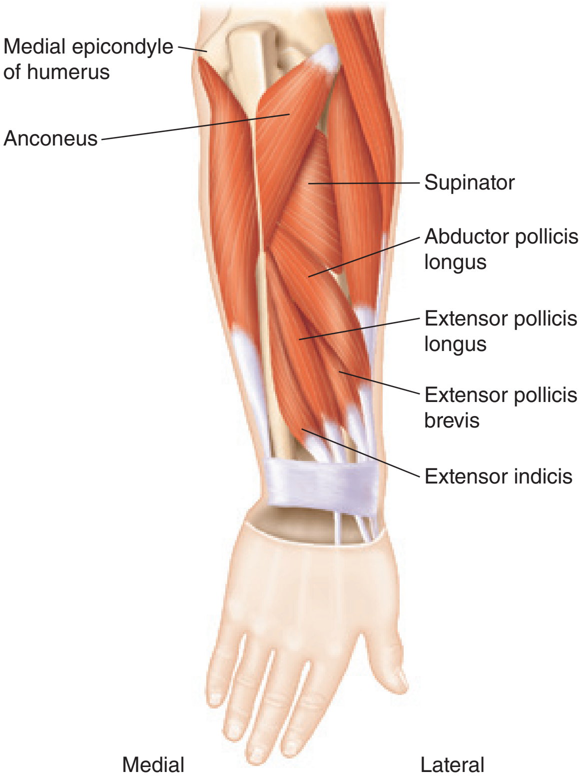


FIGURE 22.9 Muscles of the forearm.

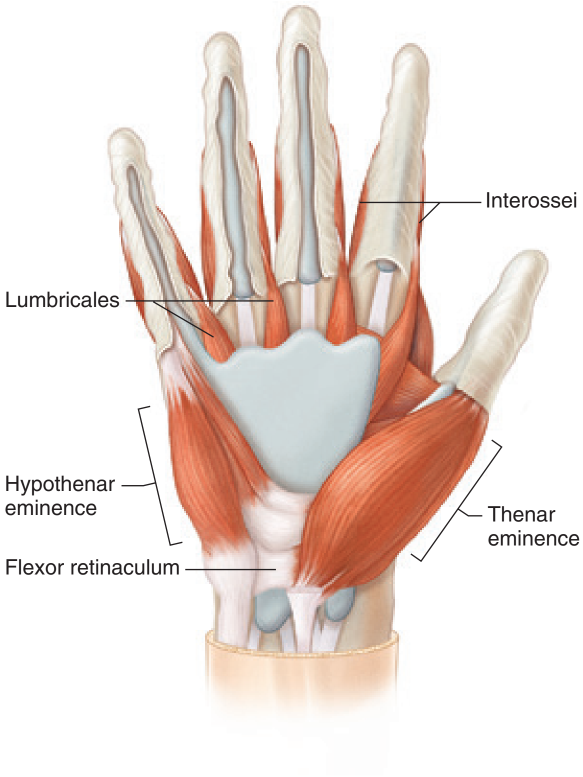


FIGURE 22.10 Muscles of the hand.

TABLE 22.2 Muscles of the Wrist and Hand: Their Actions and Nerve Supply

Action	Muscles	Nerve Supply
Wrist extension	Extensor carpi radialis longus Extensor carpi radialis brevis Extensor carpi ulnaris	Radial Posterior interosseous Posterior interosseous
Wrist flexion	Flexor carpi radialis Flexor carpi ulnaris	Median Ulnar
Ulnar deviation of wrist	Flexor carpi ulnaris Extensor carpi ulnaris	Ulnar Posterior interosseous
Radial deviation of wrist	Flexor carpi radialis Extensor carpi radialis longus Abductor pollicis longus Extensor pollicis brevis	Median Radial Posterior interosseous Posterior interosseous
Finger extension	Extensor digitorum communis Extensor indicis Extensor digiti minimi	Posterior interosseous Posterior interosseous Posterior interosseous

(continues)

TABLE 22.2 Muscles of the Wrist and Hand: Their Actions and Nerve Supply *(continued)*

Action	Muscles	Nerve Supply
Finger flexion	Flexor digitorum profundus	Anterior interosseous, lateral two digits; ulnar, medial two digits
	Flexor digitorum superficialis	Median
	Lumbricals	First and second, median; third and fourth, ulnar
	Interossei	Ulnar
	Flexor digiti minimi	Ulnar
Abduction of fingers	Dorsal interossei	Ulnar
	Abductor digiti minimi	Ulnar
Adduction of fingers	Palmar interossei	Ulnar
Thumb extension	Extensor pollicis longus	Posterior interosseous
	Extensor pollicis brevis	Posterior interosseous
	Abductor pollicis longus	Posterior interosseous
Thumb flexion	Flexor pollicis brevis	Superficial head: median; deep head: ulnar
	Flexor pollicis longus	Anterior interosseous
	Opponens pollicis	Median
Abduction of thumb	Abductor pollicis longus	Posterior interosseous
	Abductor pollicis brevis	Median
Adduction of thumb	Adductor pollicis	Ulnar
Opposition of thumb	Opponens pollicis	Median
Thumb flexion	Flexor pollicis brevis	Superficial head: median
Opposition of little finger	Opponens digiti minimi	Ulnar

Kinesiology

The movements of the forearm, wrist, and hand are a function of a close relationship between the proximal and distal radioulnar joints and the joints of the wrist.

Pronation and Supination

Approximately 75 degrees of forearm pronation are available, and approximately 85 degrees of forearm supination are available. Maximal congruency of the DRUJ occurs at mid-range of motion, although the joint is not considered to be truly locked in this position. The open-packed position is 10 degrees supination. The proximal and distal radioulnar joints are intimately related biomechanically, with the function and stability of both joints dependent on the configuration of, and the distance between, the two bones.

Movement of the Hand on the Forearm

Two major factors influence the motion that occurs between the hand and the forearm:

- *Morphology.* Due to the morphology of the wrist, movement at this joint complex involves a coordinated interaction among some articulations, including the radiocarpal joint, the proximal row of carpals, and the distal row of the carpals. Because the concave trapezium and trapezoid slide in a posterior direction on the scaphoid, and the complex capitate and hamate slide in an anterior direction on the lunate and triquetrum during wrist extension and radial deviation, the resulting motion is a supination twist of the distal row on the proximal row.[4] Conversely, a pronation twist occurs during flexion and ulnar deviation as the trapezium and trapezoid slide anteriorly and the capitate and hamate slide posteriorly.[4]

- *Length-tension.*[5] The position of the wrist controls the length of the extrinsic muscles of the digits, so as the fingers or thumb flex, the wrist must be stabilized by the wrist extensor muscles to prevent the FDP and FDS, or the FPL, from simultaneously flexing the wrist. As the grip becomes stronger, synchronous wrist extension lengthens the extrinsic flexor tendons across the wrist and maintains a more favorable overall length of the musculotendinous unit for a stronger contraction. During strong finger or thumb extension, the wrist flexor muscles stabilize or flex the wrist so the extensor digitorum communis, extensor indices, EDM, or EPL muscles can function more efficiently.

☑ KEY POINT

Wrist extension is accompanied by a slight radial deviation, and supination, of the forearm. Wrist flexion is accompanied by a slight ulnar deviation, and pronation, of the forearm.

Functional Use of the Hand

The hand serves many important functions that allow us to interact with others and the environment. In addition to providing a wealth of sensory information, the hand grasps objects. A loss of grip is a measurable factor used in the determination of permanent disability by compensation boards in some states. The grip is typically divided into the following stages:[1]

- The opening of the hand.
- Positioning and closing of the fingers to grasp an object and adapt to the object's shape.
- Controlled approach and purposeful closing of the fingers and/or palm. The amount of force used is a factor of the weight, surface characteristics, and delicateness of the object.
- Maintenance and stabilization of the grip.
- The release of the object.

Hand functions have been further categorized by adding the terms *grasp* and *prehension*, which are used to describe functions of power or precision.

Power Grasp

The power grasp involves the use of force to stabilize an object in the hand. Power grasps include the fist, cylindrical, ball, hook (see the "General Intervention Strategies" section later in this chapter), pincer, and pliers grasps. The strength and power of a grasp come from a combination of the following:

- Thumb adduction
- Isometric flexion
- An approximation of the thenar and hypothenar eminences
- Intact function of the ulnar side of the hand

Participation of the intrinsic muscles follows specific patterns in the various power grasps.

Precision Grasp

In the precision grasp, the muscles primarily function to provide exact control of finger and thumb position, so the position of the handled object can be changed to suit the purpose of the function. Due to the higher levels of sensory input required during these tasks, the areas with the most sensory receptors are used. A number of precision grasps are recognized:

- *Pulp-to-pulp pinch.* The pad of the thumb is opposed to the pad of one or more fingers.
- *Lateral prehension.* The palmar aspect of the thumb presses against the radial aspect of the first phalanx of the index finger.
- *Tip prehension.* The extreme tip of the thumb pad is opposed to the tip of the index or middle finger.
- *Three-fingered pinch.* Involves the thumb, index finger, and middle finger, as in sprinkling herbs.
- *Five-fingered pinch.* Uses all five fingers, as in picking up a face towel.

The radial side of the hand and the MCP joints are involved more in the precision or prehensile types of grasps.

Flexion and Extension Movements of the Wrist

Wrist movements occur around a combination of three functional axes: frontal, sagittal, and longitudinal (or vertical). In a neutral wrist position, the scaphoid contacts the radius, and the lunate contacts the radius and disc.

The movements of flexion and extension of the wrist are shared between the radiocarpal articulation and the intercarpal articulation, in varying proportions:[6–9]

- During wrist flexion, most of the motion occurs in the midcarpal joint (60 percent or 40 degrees versus 40 percent or 30 degrees at the radiocarpal joint) and is associated with slight ulnar deviation and pronation of the forearm.

- During wrist extension, most of the motion occurs at the radiocarpal joint (approximately 65 percent or 40 degrees versus approximately 35 percent or 20 degrees at the midcarpal joint) and is associated with slight radial deviation and supination of the forearm.

Frontal Lateral Movements of the Wrist

There is a physiological ulnar deviation at rest, easily demonstrated clinically and radiographically. The amount of deviation available is approximately 40 degrees of ulnar deviation and 15 degrees of radial deviation.

Radial Deviation

Radial deviation occurs primarily between the proximal and distal rows of the carpal bones. Radial deviation is limited by the impact of the scaphoid onto the radial styloid and ulnar collateral ligament (UCL). The APL and EPB are best suited to produce radial deviation of the wrist.

Ulnar Deviation

Ulnar deviation occurs primarily at the radiocarpal joint and is limited by the radial collateral ligament.[9] Although ulnar deviation brings the triquetrum into contact with the disc on the ulnar side, the lack of direct ulnar-triquetral articulation permits a greater range of ulnar deviation. The muscle with the best biomechanical advantage to produce ulnar deviation of the wrist in pronation is the ECU.

> ☑ **KEY POINT**
>
> The position of the wrist in flexion or extension influences the tension of the long or "extrinsic" muscles of the digits. Neither the flexors nor the extensors of the fingers are long enough to allow a maximal range of motion (ROM) at the wrist and the fingers simultaneously.

The open-packed and close-packed positions of the wrist and hand articulations, in addition to the capsular patterns of each joint, are described in **TABLE 22.3**.

TABLE 22.3 The Open-Packed and Close-Packed Positions and Capsular Patterns for the Articulations of the Wrist and Hand

Joint	Open-Packed	Close-Packed	Capsular Pattern
Distal radioulnar	10 degrees of supination	5 degrees of supination	Minimal to no limitation with pain at the end ranges of pronation and supination
Radiocarpal (wrist)	Neutral with slight ulnar deviation	Extension	Equal limitation of flexion and extension
Intercarpal	Neutral or slight flexion	Extension	None
Midcarpal	Neutral or slight flexion with ulnar deviation	Extension with ulnar deviation	Equal limitation of flexion and extension
Carpometacarpal	*Thumb:* Midway between abduction and adduction and midway between flexion and extension *Fingers:* Midway between flexion and extension	*Thumb:* Full opposition *Fingers:* Full flexion	*Thumb:* Abduction then extension *Fingers:* Equal limitation in all directions
Metacarpophalangeal	Slight flexion	*Thumb:* Full opposition *Fingers:* Full flexion	Flexion then extension
Interphalangeal	Slight flexion	Full extension	Flexion, extension

Thumb Movements

Thumb flexion and extension occur around an anteroposterior axis in the frontal plane that is perpendicular to the sagittal plane of finger flexion and extension. In this plane, the metacarpal surface is concave and the trapezium surface is convex. Flexion occurs with an internal conjunct rotation of the metacarpal. Extension occurs with an external conjunct rotation of the metacarpal. A total range of 50–70 degrees is available at the CMC joint.

Thumb abduction and adduction occur in the sagittal plane, which is perpendicular to the frontal plane of finger abduction and adduction, around a medial-lateral (frontal) axis. During thumb abduction and adduction, the convex metacarpal surface moves on the concave trapezium. Abduction occurs with a conjunct internal rotation. Adduction occurs with a conjunct external rotation. A total range of 40 to 60 degrees is available.

Opposition of the thumb involves a wide arc motion composed of sequential palmar abduction and flexion from the anatomic position, accompanied by internal rotation of the thumb. Retroposition of the thumb returns the thumb to the anatomic position, a motion that incorporates elements of adduction with extension and external rotation of the metacarpal.

Examination

The physical therapist's examination of the wrist and hand typically follows the outline in **TABLE 22.4**.

Range of Motion

Both the passive and active physiological ranges of motion can be measured using a goniometer (**TABLE 22.5**), which has been shown to have a satisfactory level of intraobserver reliability.[10–12]

A number of evidence-based special tests also can be used at the wrist and hand (**TABLE 22.6**).

TABLE 22.4 Examination of the Forearm, Wrist, and Hand

I. History.
II. Observation and inspection.
III. Upper quarter scan as appropriate.
IV. Examination of movements. Active range of motion with passive overpressure of the following movements:
- Forearm pronation and supination
- Wrist flexion and extension
- Wrist radial deviation and ulnar deviation
- Finger flexion and extension (MCP, PIP, and DIP joints)
- Finger abduction and adduction
- Thumb flexion, extension, abduction, and adduction
- Opposition of the thumb and little finger

V. Resisted isometric movements:
- Forearm pronation and supination
- Wrist flexion and extension
- Wrist radial deviation and ulnar deviation
- Finger flexion and extension (MCP, PIP, and DIP joints)
- Finger abduction and adduction
- Thumb flexion, extension, abduction, and adduction
- Opposition of the thumb and little finger

VI. Palpation.
VII. Neurological tests as appropriate (reflexes, sensory scan, peripheral nerve assessment).
VIII. Joint mobility tests:
- Distraction of the radiohumeral joint
- Anterior and posterior glide of the radial head
- Anterior and posterior glide of the proximal radioulnar joint
- Anterior and posterior glide of the distal radioulnar join
- Long-axis extension at the wrist and fingers (MCP, PIP, and DIP joints)
- Anteroposterior glide at the wrist and fingers (MCP, PIP, and DIP joints)
- Side glide at the wrist and fingers (MCP, PIP, and DIP joints)
- Anteroposterior glides of the intermetacarpal joints
- Rotation of the MCP, PIP, and DIP joints
- Individual carpal bone mobility

IX. Special tests, including functional testing (refer to Table 22.6).
X. Diagnostic imaging.

TABLE 22.5 Goniometric Techniques for the Wrist and Hand

Joint	Motion	Axis	Stationary Arm	Movable Arm	Normal Ranges (Degrees)	End Feel
Wrist	Flexion	Lateral aspect of the wrists over the triquetrum	Lateral midline of the ulna using the olecranon and ulnar styloid process for reference	Lateral midline of the fifth metacarpal	0–80	Firm
	Extension	Lateral aspect of the wrists over the triquetrum	Lateral midline of the ulna using the olecranon and ulnar styloid process for reference	Lateral midline of the fifth metacarpal	0–60	Firm or hard
	Radial deviation	Over the middle of the dorsal aspect of the wrist over the capitate	Dorsal midline of the forearm using the lateral epicondyle of the humerus for reference	Dorsal midline of the third metacarpal	0–20	Firm or hard
	Ulnar deviation	Over the middle of the dorsal aspect of the wrist over the capitate	Dorsal midline of the forearm using the lateral epicondyle of the humerus for reference	Dorsal midline of the third metacarpal	0–30	Firm
Thumb	Carpometacarpal flexion	Over the palmar aspect of the first carpometacarpal joint	Ventral midline of the radius using the ventral surface of the radial head and radial styloid process for reference	Ventral midline of the first metacarpal	CMC: 45–50; MCP: 50–55; IP: 85–90	Soft
	Carpometacarpal extension	Over the palmar aspect of the first carpometacarpal joint	Ventral midline of the radius using the ventral surface of the radial head and radial styloid process for reference	Ventral midline of the first metacarpal	MCP: 0; IP: 0–5	Firm
	Carpometacarpal abduction	Over the lateral aspect of the radial styloid process	Lateral midline of the second metacarpal using the center of the second metacarpal or phalangeal joint for reference	Lateral midline of the first metacarpal using the center of the first metacarpal or phalangeal joint for reference	60–70	Firm

TABLE 22.5 Goniometric Techniques for the Wrist and Hand *(continued)*

Joint	Motion	Axis	Stationary Arm	Movable Arm	Normal Ranges (Degrees)	End Feel
	Carpometacarpal abduction	Over the lateral aspect of the radial styloid process	Lateral midline of the second metacarpal using the center of the second metacarpal or phalangeal joint for reference	Lateral midline of the first metacarpal using the center of the first metacarpal or phalangeal joint for reference	30	Soft
Fingers	Metacarpophalangeal flexion	Over the dorsal aspect of the metacarpophalangeal joint	Over the dorsal midline of the metacarpal	Over the dorsal midline of the proximal phalanx	Flexion: MCP: 85–90; PIP: 100–115; DIP: 80–90 Extension: MCP: 30–45; PIP: 0; DIP: 20 Abduction:20–30 Adduction: 0	Firm/hard
	Metacarpophalangeal extension	Over the dorsal aspect of the metacarpophalangeal joint	Over the dorsal midline of the metacarpal	Over the dorsal midline of the proximal phalanx		Firm/hard
	Metacarpophalangeal abduction	Over the dorsal aspect of the metacarpophalangeal joint	Over the dorsal midline of the metacarpal	Over the dorsal midline of the proximal phalanx		Firm/hard
	Metacarpophalangeal adduction	Over the dorsal aspect of the metacarpophalangeal joint	Over the dorsal midline of the metacarpal	Over the dorsal midline of the proximal phalanx		Firm/hard
	Proximal interphalangeal flexion	Over the dorsal aspect of the proximal interphalangeal joint	Over the dorsal midline of the proximal phalanx	Over the dorsal midline of the middle phalanx		Firm/hard
	Proximal interphalangeal extension	Over the dorsal aspect of the proximal interphalangeal joint	Over the dorsal midline of the proximal phalanx	Over the dorsal midline of the middle phalanx		Firm/hard

(continues)

TABLE 22.5 Goniometric Techniques for the Wrist and Hand *(continued)*

Joint	Motion	Axis	Stationary Arm	Movable Arm	Normal Ranges (Degrees)	End Feel
	Distal interphalangeal flexion	Over the dorsal aspect of the proximal interphalangeal joint	Over the dorsal midline of the middle phalanx	Over the dorsal midline of the distal phalanx		Firm/hard
	Distal interphalangeal extension	Over the dorsal aspect of the proximal interphalangeal joint	Over the dorsal midline of the middle phalanx	Over the dorsal midline of the distal phalanx		Firm/hard

TABLE 22.6 Evidence-Based Tests for the Wrist and Hand

Name of Test	Brief Description	Positive Findings	Evidence-Based
Scaphoid fracture test[a]	Clinician exerts passive overpressure into ulnar deviation of the wrist while forearm is pronated.	Positive if the patient reports pain in the anatomic snuffbox.	Sensitivity: 1.0 Specificity: 0.34
Longitudinal compression of thumb[b]	Clinician holds the patient's thumb and applies a long axis compression through the metacarpal bone into the scaphoid.	Positive for a scaphoid fracture if the patient reports pain in the anatomic snuffbox.	Sensitivity: 0.98 Specificity: 0.98
Tinel sign[c]	The clinician taps the median nerve at the wrist 4–6 times.	Positive for carpal tunnel syndrome if the patient reports pain or paresthesias in the distribution of the median nerve.	Sensitivity: 0.68 Specificity: 0.90
Phalen's test[c]	The patient is asked to hold the wrist in complete flexion with the elbow extended and the forearm pronated for 60 seconds.	Positive for carpal tunnel syndrome if symptoms are reproduced.	Sensitivity: 0.68 Specificity: 0.91
Carpal compression test[d]	The patient is seated with the elbow flexed to 30 degrees, the forearm supinated, and the wrist in neutral. The clinician places both thumbs over the transverse carpal ligament and applies 6 pounds of pressure for a maximum of 30 seconds.	Positive for carpal tunnel syndrome if the patient experiences exacerbation of symptoms in the median nerve distribution.	Sensitivity: 0.64 Specificity: 0.30

TABLE 22.6 Evidence-Based Tests for the Wrist and Hand *(continued)*

Name of Test	Brief Description	Positive Findings	Evidence-Based
Scaphoid shift (Watson) test[e]	The patient's elbow is stabilized on the table with the forearm in slight pronation. With one hand, the clinician grasps the radial side of the patient's wrist with the thumb on the palmar prominence of the scaphoid. With the other hand, the clinician grasps the patient's hand at the metacarpal level to stabilize the wrist. The clinician maintains pressure on the scaphoid tubercle and moves the patient's wrist into ulnar deviation with slight extension, then radial deviation with slight flexion. The clinician releases pressure on the scaphoid while the wrist is in radial deviation and flexion.	Positive for instability of the scaphoid if the scaphoid shifts or the patient's symptoms are reproduced when the scaphoid is released.	Sensitivity: 0.69 Specificity: 0.66
Ballottement (Reagan's) test[e]	The clinician stabilizes the patient's lunate bone between the thumb and index finger of one hand, while the other hand moves the pisotriquetral complex in a palmar and dorsal direction.	The test is positive for instability of the lunotriquetral joint if the patient's symptoms are reproduced or excessive laxity of the joint is revealed.	Sensitivity: 0.64 Specificity: 0.44

Data from (a) Powell JM, Lloyd GJ, Rintoul RF: New clinical test for fracture of the scaphoid. *Can J Surg* 31:237–8, 1988; (b) Waeckerle JF: A prospective study identifying the sensitivity of radiographic findings and the efficacy of clinical findings in carpal navicular fractures. *Ann Emerg Med* 16:733–7, 1987; (c) Ahn DS: Hand elevation: A new test for carpal tunnel syndrome. *Ann Plast Surg* 46:120–4, 2001; (d) Wainner RS, Fritz JM, Irrgang JJ, et al: Development of a clinical prediction rule for the diagnosis of carpal tunnel syndrome. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil* 86:609–18, 2005; and (e) LaStayo P, Howell J: Clinical provocative tests used in evaluating wrist pain: a descriptive study. *J Hand Surg* 8:10–17, 1995.

General Intervention Strategies

Due to the integrated nature of the wrist and hand in functional activities, the rehabilitation is organized around a common framework for most wrist and hand pathologies.

Acute Phase

The goals of the acute phase include the following:

- *Maintain or improve general fitness.* The overall cardiovascular fitness of each patient is important, especially in cases where an injury may impact function and overall activity level in the extremity.
- *Provide independence with a home exercise program.* At the earliest opportunity, the patient must become independent with the home exercise program.
- *Maintain pain-free ROM and strength in the rest of the kinetic chain.* Because the wrist and hand require the normal function of the rest of the upper kinetic chain, exercises must be designed to incorporate elbow, shoulder, and trunk exercises at the earliest opportunity.
- *Improve patient comfort by decreasing pain and inflammation.* This can be accomplished using the principles of PRICEMEM (protection, rest, ice, compression, elevation, manual therapy, early motion, and medication prescribed by the physician).
- *Protect the injury site to allow healing.* Movement is the activity necessary to maintain joint mobility and gliding tendon function. Range of motion exercises are introduced as early as tolerated. These may be passive, active assisted, or active, as appropriate and based on patient tolerance. If protected motion is necessary, it can be provided with taping, bracing, splinting, or, in extreme cases, casting. Protected range of motion exercises are performed to mobilize joints and tendons selectively, while minimizing stress on repairing structures. As their name suggests, protected range of motion exercises are accomplished by placing the repaired structure in a protected position,

while adjacent tissues are carefully mobilized. An example of a protective exercise can be seen following a radial nerve injury, where the protective active motion exercises include MCP joint flexion, and then PIP and DIP joint flexion with the MCP joint maintained in extension.

- *Control and then eliminate edema.* One of the most significant problems the PTA faces with a hand-injured patient is the control and elimination of edema. Edema can increase the risk of infection, decrease motion, and inhibit arterial, venous, and lymphatic flow. Methods to control edema include cryotherapy, elevation of the extremity and hand above the level of the heart, active exercise, retrograde massage, intermittent compression, continuous compression wrapping, and contrast baths.
- *Provide scar management, if appropriate.* Scar tissue management focuses on the control of stresses placed on healing tissues. Early active and passive motion provides controlled stress, encouraging optimal remodeling of scar tissue. Methods to control scarring include the use of thermal agents, transverse friction massage (see Chapter 9), mechanical vibration, compressive techniques, and splinting. Although it is not within the scope of this text to provide comprehensive detail with regard to splinting (entire texts are devoted to the subject), the physical therapist assistant (PTA) needs to be aware of the purposes of splinting as well as some of the options available. The general purposes of a splint are to:
  - *Immobilize/stabilize.* Splinting is especially useful for immobilizing or stabilizing mobile joints so the corrective exercise force can be directed to the stiff joint or adherent tendon.
  - *Protect.* Static splints maintain joints in one position to promote healing and minimize friction.
  - *Correct deformity or dysfunction.* Splints can maintain or reestablish normal tissue length, balance, and excursion.
  - *Substitute for dysfunctional tissue.* This thereby enhances function.
- *Provide exercise. Dropout splints* block joint motion in one direction but allow motion in another. *Articulated splints* contain at least two static components and are connected in such a way as to allow motion in one plane at a joint. *Dynamic splints* are used to provide active resistance in the direction opposite to their line of pull to increase muscle strength, as well as to apply a corrective passive stretch to tendon adhesions and joint contractures. *Static-progressive* splints involve the use of inelastic components, such as hook-and-loop tapes, Dacron line, turnbuckles, and screws, to allow progressive changes in joint position as passive range of motion (PROM) changes without changing the structure of the splint. *Serial static splints* differ from static progressive splints in that they require the clinician to remold the splint to accommodate increases in mobility.
- *Retard muscle atrophy and minimize the detrimental effects of immobilization and activity restriction.*[13–18] Therapeutic exercises are performed with the goal of adequate soft tissue rebalancing of the wrist to restore the alignment of the extensor and flexor tendons as near to normal as possible, and to prevent scarring or soft tissue contractures by influencing the physiological process of collagen formation. Passive range of motion exercises are performed through the available ROM to maintain joint and soft tissue mobility, or a passive stretch can be applied at the end range of motion to lengthen pathologically shortened soft tissue structures, thereby increasing motion. Depending on the focus of the intervention, the passive/active range of motion exercises may include the following:
  - MP flexion and extension (**FIGURE 22.11**)
  - PIP flexion and extension (**FIGURE 22.12**)
  - DIP flexion and extension (**FIGURE 22.13**)

FIGURE 22.11 MP flexion and extension.

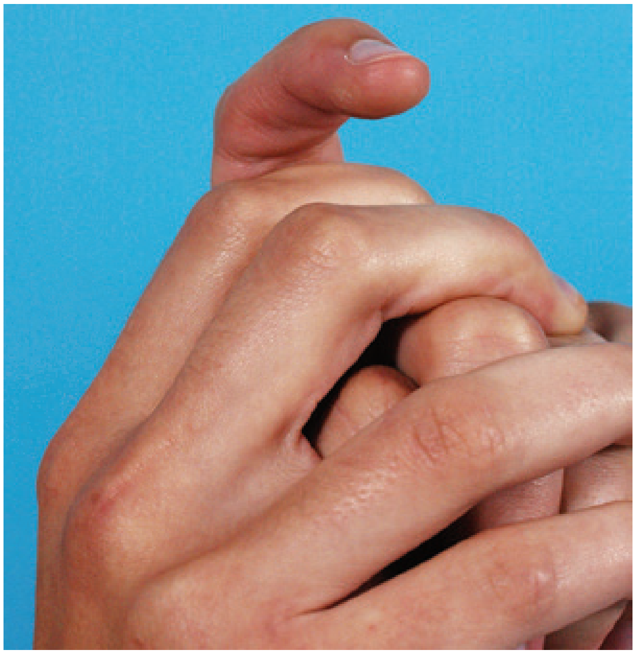


FIGURE 22.12 PIP flexion and extension.

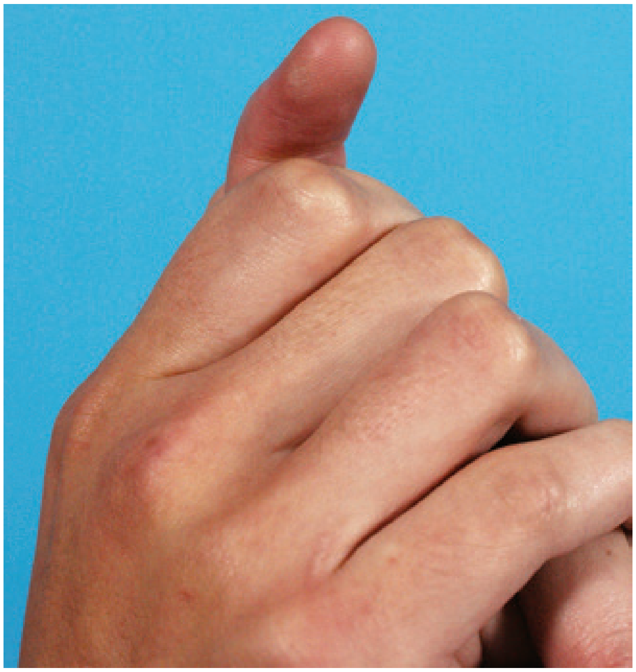


FIGURE 22.13 DIP flexion and extension.

Active range of motion (AROM) exercises are performed throughout the available range. Active exercises should include specific and composite exercises. Composite exercises, which reproduce normal functional activities, include fisting and thumb opposition to each digit in addition to exercises involving the wrist, elbow, and shoulder. Passive overpressure should be applied as appropriate. Fast ballistic movements are discouraged when active exercises are used to restore mobility in the presence of increasing tissue resistance. Examples of AROM exercises include the following:

- Wrist and finger flexion and extension; thumb opposition, flexion, extension, abduction, and adduction (**FIGURE 22.14**); wrist ulnar (**FIGURE 22.15**) and

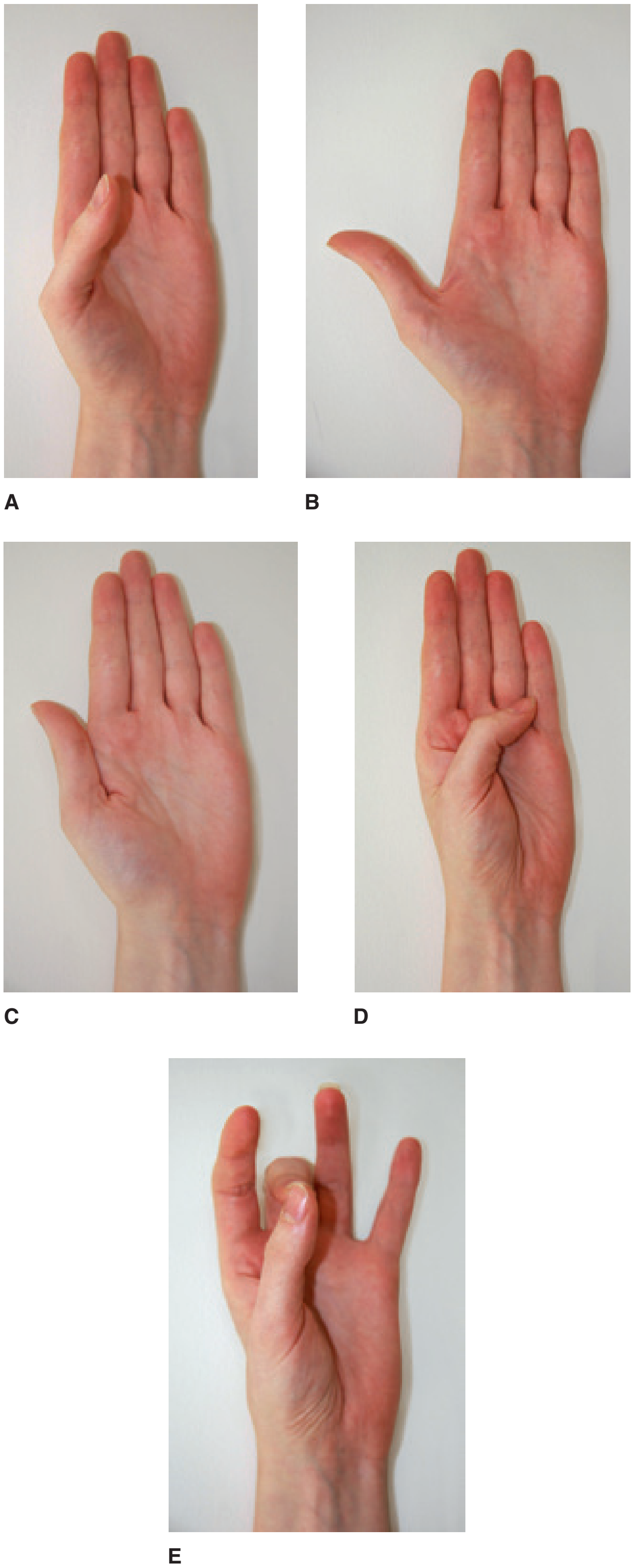


FIGURE 22.14 Active thumb motions. **A.** Abduction. **B.** Extension. **C.** Flexion. **D.** Hyperflexion. **E.** Opposition.

radial deviation (FIGURE 22.16); and finger adduction and abduction. The wrist and hand muscles are usually exercised as a group if their strength is similar. If one muscle is weaker, the clinician should exercise that muscle in isolation, in a similar fashion as that used when isolating the muscle for manual muscle testing.

- Active exercises of forearm pronation and supination (FIGURE 22.17 and FIGURE 22.18), and elbow flexion and extension.

FIGURE 22.15 Active ulnar deviation with passive overpressure.

FIGURE 22.16 Active radial deviation with passive overpressure.

FIGURE 22.17 Active forearm pronation with passive overpressure.

FIGURE 22.18 Active forearm supination with passive overpressure.

AROM exercises are progressed to submaximal isometrics and muscle co-contractions. Isometric exercise allows for strengthening early in the rehabilitative process, without the stress to joints and soft tissue produced by other forms of exercise. These early strengthening exercises are performed initially in the available pain-free ranges and are gradually progressed so that they are performed throughout the entire range.

Functional/Chronic Phase

The functional phase of rehabilitation usually commences when normal wrist positions and co-contractions of the wrist flexors and extensors can be performed. The goals of the functional phase include the following:

- *Attain full range of pain-free motion*. The AROM exercises, initiated during the acute phase, are progressed until the patient demonstrates that they have achieved the maximum range anticipated.
- *Restore normal joint kinematics*. Normal joint arthrokinematics are restored by performing joint mobilization techniques.
- *Improve muscle strength to within normal limits and restore normal muscle force couple relationships*. Specific exercises for the wrist and hand include the following:
  - Progressive resistive exercises (PREs) into pronation and supination. (See Chapter 21.)
  - Resisted exercises into radial (FIGURE 22.19 and FIGURE 22.20) and ulnar (FIGURE 22.21 and FIGURE 22.22) deviation.
  - Resisted exercises into wrist extension (FIGURE 22.23) and flexion (same position except palm up).
  - Hand and finger dexterity exercises (FIGURE 22.24 and FIGURE 22.25).

FIGURE 22.19 Radial deviation PRE: start position.

FIGURE 22.20 Radial deviation PRE: end position.

FIGURE 22.21 Ulnar deviation PRE: start position.

FIGURE 22.22 Ulnar deviation PRE: end position.

FIGURE 22.23 PRE for wrist extensors.

FIGURE 22.24 Finger dexterity exercise.

FIGURE 22.25 Finger dexterity exercise.

FIGURE 22.26 Tip-to-tip grasp.

- Power and prehension grasp activities (**FIGURE 22.26** through **FIGURE 22.29**).
- Passive stretching of the wrist into flexion (**FIGURE 22.30** and **FIGURE 22.31**), extension (**FIGURE 22.32** and **FIGURE 22.33**), radial deviation (refer to Figure 22.16), and ulnar deviation (refer to Figure 22.15).

FIGURE 22.27 Thumb tip to lateral index finger grasp.

FIGURE 22.28 Hook grasp.

FIGURE 22.29 Ball grasp.

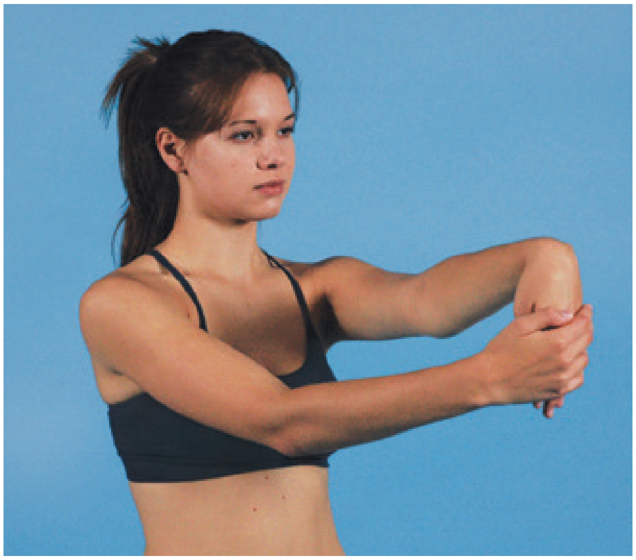


FIGURE 22.30 Bilateral wrist extensor stretch.

FIGURE 22.31 Bilateral wrist extensor stretch.

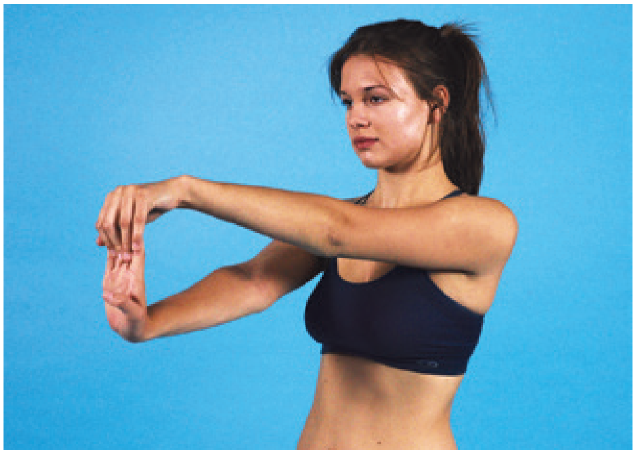


FIGURE 22.32 Wrist flexor stretch.

FIGURE 22.33 Bilateral wrist flexor stretch.

Resisted exercises can be performed using gripping with light resistive putty, a washcloth or sponge, or a hand exerciser. (See Chapter 21.) Care must be taken with gripping or squeezing exercises because they typically restrict the use of the full ROM. Resisted exercises also can be performed using elastic resistance (**FIGURE 22.34**), a soup can, or dumbbells.

Wrist extension can be performed in pronation to work against gravity or in neutral forearm rotation to eliminate gravity. This exercise encourages the involvement of the ECRL, ECRB, and ECU. MCP flexion can be employed to eliminate any contribution from the ECU, thereby isolating the wrist musculature. Wrist flexion can be performed in supination to work against gravity or in neutral forearm rotation to eliminate gravity. Wrist flexion works the FCU and FCR. Proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation (PNF) patterns of the upper extremity

FIGURE 22.34 PRE using elastic tubing.

Thera-Band.

are performed actively and then with resistance. (See Chapters 20 and 21.) These patterns incorporate the conjunct rotations involved with finger, hand, and wrist motions. Modified push-ups encourage full wrist extension, and full push-ups require full, or close to full, wrist extension.

Common Conditions

A number of common conditions that affect the wrist and hand are described here and in **TABLE 22.7**.

Peripheral Nerve Entrapment

Peripheral nerve entrapments are common in the forearm and wrist. Neurogenic syndromes are typically incomplete, presenting with no severe motor or sensory deficits, but in the usual case they are accompanied by a history of pain or vague sensory disturbances. As a result, nerve injuries can often be overlooked as a source of acute, or more commonly chronic, symptomatology. Loss of vibration sensibility has been suggested as an early indicator of peripheral compression neuropathy. The intervention for

TABLE 22.7 Common Causes of Wrist and Hand Pain

Condition	Mechanism of Injury	Symptoms Aggravated By	AROM
Carpal tunnel syndrome	Gradual overuse Wide variety of factors	Repetitive activities of wrist	Full and pain free
Wrist extensor tendonitis	Repetitive or prolonged activities, forceful exertion, awkward and static postures, vibration, and localized mechanical stress	Sustained positioning of wrist in flexion	Pain with wrist and finger flexion
Wrist flexor tendonitis	Forceful gripping, rapid wrist movements, and moving the wrist and fingers to the extremes of range	Activities involving wrist extension	Pain with wrist and finger extension
OA of the first CMC joint	Repetitive trauma Strong gripping	Repetitive use of thumb	Mid-limitation of all thumb movements
Trigger finger	Disproportion between the flexor tendon and its tendon sheath	Finger flexion/extension	Decreased finger extension Clicking or jerking with movements
De Quervain's tenosynovitis	Repetitive finger–thumb gripping combined with radial deviation	Overuse, repetitive tasks that involve overexertion of the thumb	Decreased ulnar deviation Decreased thumb flexion
Dupuytren's contracture	Multifactorial (alcohol, diabetes, epilepsy, smoking, and trauma)	Pain initially with the ring and little finger extension	Decreased finger extension
Thumb ulnar collateral ligament injury	Forced hyper abduction and/or hyperextension stress of the thumb MCP joint	Extension of the thumb	Usually unremarkable
Wrist sprain	Trauma (FOOSH injury)	Taking weight through the hand	Pain with extremes of all ranges

OA, osteoarthritis; CMC, carpometacarpal; FOOSH, fall on an outstretched hand; MCP, metacarpophalangeal; AROM, active range of motion.

nerve compression can be surgical or conservative, depending on the severity. Conservative intervention for mild compression involves the application of a protective splint and patient education to avoid positions and postures that could compromise the injured nerve.

Median Nerve

Median nerve compression, as it passes through the carpal tunnel, is a cause of chronic wrist pain and functional impairment of the hand. Carpal tunnel syndrome (CTS) is the most common compression neuropathy. Although it occurs in all age groups, CTS more commonly occurs between the fourth and sixth decades. Compression of the nerve in the carpal tunnel is compounded by an increase in synovial fluid pressure and tendon tension, which decreases the available volume. CTS may result from a wide variety of factors, several of which can easily be remembered using the mnemonic PRAGMATIC:

- *P*regnancy secondary to fluid retention.
- *R*hematoid arthritis.
- *A*rthritis degenerative.
- *G*rowth hormone abnormalities (e.g., acromegaly).
- *M*etabolic (e.g., gout, diabetes, myxoedema, etc.).
- *A*myotrophy. Neuralgic amyotrophy is the most likely diagnosis in patients who suddenly develop arm pain, followed within a few days by arm paralysis in the distribution of single or multiple nerves or extending over multiple myotomes.
- *T*rauma (repetitive or direct). The majority of CTS cases are related to repetitive and cumulative trauma in the workplace. Frequent repetitive wrist flexion and extension or motions that cause repeated palmar trauma may be a factor in the development of CTS. Forceful and repetitive contraction of the finger flexors also can provoke CTS, as demand for tendon lubrication overwhelms the ability of the sheath to respond, producing an inflammatory reaction. Acute wrist trauma also has been associated with CTS. A FOOSH injury or other trauma can cause a palmar subluxation of the lunate or a distal radius fracture.
- *I*diopathic.
- *C*ollagen disorders. The incidence of CTS in patients with polyarthritis is high and usually is seen in association with a flexor tenosynovitis.

Other causes include renal dysfunction, diabetes, and infection. An experienced PT most reliably makes the diagnosis of CTS after a review of the patient's history and a physical examination. The clinical features of this syndrome include intermittent pain and paresthesias in the median nerve distribution of the hand, which can become persistent as the condition progresses. Muscle weakness and paralysis can occasionally occur. The symptoms are typically worse at night, exacerbated by strenuous wrist movements, and can be associated with morning stiffness. The pain may radiate proximally into the forearm and arm. The physical assessment by the PT focuses on an examination of the motor and sensory functions of the hand as compared to the uninvolved hand.

Conservative Approach The conservative intervention for mild cases of CTS typically includes the use of splints, activity modification, exercise, diuretics, and nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) prescribed by the physician.

- *Splints*. The rationale for splints was originally based on observations that CTS symptoms improve with rest and worsen with activity. Splints during the day are helpful only if they do not interfere with normal activity. Rigid splints have been found to be superior to flexible ones in controlling carpal tunnel pressure, although the softer flexible ones enhance compliance. However, prescription parameters for the type of splint are not standardized, with some advocating neutral positioning, and some recommending 10 to 20 degrees of wrist extension. The length of time for wearing the splint is also undetermined, with some recommending day and night use, while others instruct patients to wear the brace at night and during activities stressful to the wrist. Still others recommend only night use. Night splints appear to help reduce the nocturnal symptoms by preventing excessive wrist flexion, although one study found that night splints did not significantly reduce intracarpal pressure when compared to controls who did not wear them.
- *Joint mobilization*. If there is restricted joint mobility, the carpals can be mobilized for increased carpal tunnel space.
- *Activity modification*. Ergonomic modifications can help reduce the incidence of CTS and alleviate symptoms in the already symptomatic patient. Patient education is important to avoid sustained pinching or gripping, repetitive wrist motions, and sustained positions of full wrist flexion. Patients also should be instructed to observe areas with decreased sensitivity to avoid tissue injury.
- *Exercise*. Isolated tendon excursion exercises for the finger flexor tendons and nerve gliding of the median nerve exercises are performed. These include isolated tendon gliding of the FDS and FDP

of each digit (FIGURE 22.35 through FIGURE 22.38). The exercises likely have a positive effect by facilitating venous return or edema dispersion in the median nerve. After a period of approximately 4 to 5 weeks, AROM of the wrist, hand, and fingers and gentle resistance exercise can be introduced.

FIGURE 22.35 Isolated tendon excursion exercise for the finger flexor tendons.

FIGURE 22.36 Isolated tendon excursion exercise for the finger flexor tendons.

FIGURE 22.37 Isolated tendon excursion exercise for the finger flexor tendons.

FIGURE 22.38 Isolated tendon excursion exercise for the finger flexor tendons.

> ☑ **KEY POINT**
>
> Contrast baths can be used in 10-minute sessions to assist in the reduction of inflammation and edema.

Surgical Intervention Patients with CTS who do not improve with conservative measures often are referred for surgical decompression of the carpal tunnel. Various surgical techniques are available for the carpal tunnel release; however, there has been considerable discussion about which method is most effective. The technique can be endoscopic or open, with the former being used more commonly recently. The advantages of the endoscopic technique are that it offers decreased scar formation and the ability to avoid an incision directly over the carpal tunnel between the thenar and hypothenar muscles, which is a sensitive region of the hand.[19]

Whichever technique is used, a carpal tunnel release generally involves a division of the transverse carpal ligament, thereby increasing the tunnel volume and reducing the compression of the median nerve. In the presence of thenar muscle atrophy, constant loss of sensibility along the median nerve distribution, and severe pain, an internal neurolysis may be performed in addition to the carpal tunnel release.

Following carpal tunnel release procedures, a bulky dressing is applied immediately after surgery which is changed to a smaller dressing after several days. The patient may be fitted with a splint to keep the wrist in slight extension but leaving the MCP and IP joints free. If used, the splint remains in place for approximately 10 days. It has been proposed that the positioning of the splint may be associated with differential outcomes, although studies have demonstrated no significant difference in outcome between patients treated with and without immobilization after surgery.

Once the sutures are removed after 10 to 14 days, the patient can progress to AROM exercises of the wrist including extension, radial deviation, and ulnar deviation. Wrist flexion is usually avoided until at least 3 weeks after the surgery to prevent bowstringing of the flexor tendons through the healing carpal ligament. Strengthening of the forearm, elbow, and shoulder girdle is initiated on the 28th day after surgery.

By the third to sixth week, the patient should be performing gentle strengthening with a foam ball or therapeutic putty, and isometrics in the neutral wrist position, for wrist extension and flexion.

The patient performs sensory retraining through scar desensitization once the surgical incision is closed. This can include manual self-massage of the scar or the use of a mini-vibrator, gripping of different textured materials, and rubbing the scar with different textured materials. Fluidotherapy and rice gripping also can be used.

The following soft tissue techniques are advocated:

- Soft tissue mobilization of the thenar eminence
- Gentle friction massage to reduce scar adhesion to tendons, skin, and nerves following suture removal, usually after 2 weeks
- Manual lymphatic drainage using a light retrograde massage

Ulnar Nerve

Entrapment of the ulnar nerve at the wrist can occur at Guyon's canal. The clinical features of an ulnar nerve entrapment at the wrist include the following:

- A claw hand caused by the unopposed action of the extensor digitorum (ED) communis in the fourth and fifth digits.
- An inability to extend the second and distal phalanges of any of the fingers.
- A failure to adduct or abduct the fingers, or to oppose all the fingertips, as in making a cone with the fingers and thumb.
- A failure to adduct the thumb.
- A loss of sensation on the ulnar side of the hand, the ring finger, and most markedly, over the entire little finger. The posterior (dorsal) ulnar aspect of the hand should be normal because that is innervated by the posterior (dorsal) cutaneous branch.

Atrophy of the interosseous spaces (especially the first) and of the hypothenar eminence can occur in long-standing cases.

Conservative Intervention The same guidelines as outlined for carpal tunnel syndrome (CTS) should be used with an emphasis on modifying the provoking activity, avoiding pressure to the base of the palm of the hand, and the provision of rest with a brace that allows the patient to perform functional activities using the fingers and thumb while firmly supporting the wrist (cock-up splint.)

Tendinopathy

Tendinitis is a traditional term used to describe an inflammation of the tendon or tendon–muscle attachment, whereas *tenosynovitis* involves an inflammation of the tendon sheath. Because the histological presence of inflammation remains a controversial subject when discussing tendon pathology, tendinopathy, which is a less specific label, is more appropriate until more is known about the actual pathology. Because the majority of muscles entering the wrist and hand have long tendons, surrounded by tendon sheaths, tenosynovitis is quite common in this region. Most commonly, the tendons of the APL and EPB are involved (De Quervain's disease—see details later in this section). There are, however, some uncommon locations and types of tendinopathy. Tenosynovitis is frequently seen in inflammatory rheumatic diseases, diabetes mellitus, or hypothyroid conditions.

Extensor Pollicis Longus Tendinopathy

This condition is rare except in rheumatoid arthritis (RA), but occurs when the EPL muscle extends into a tight third compartment. Overuse (drummer boy palsy), direct trauma, forced wrist extension, and distal radius fractures may cause EPL tendonitis, which presents with the clinical signs and symptoms of decreased thumb flexion, pain, swelling, and crepitus at Lister's tubercle.

Extensor Indicis Proprius Syndrome

An increase in muscle size of the extensor indices, caused by swelling or hypertrophy from repetitive exercise, may cause stenosis of the fourth posterior (dorsal) compartment, and resultant tenosynovitis. A simple test of resistance applied to active index finger extension while holding the wrist in a flexed position is a reliable provocative test to reproduce the pain.

Extensor Carpi Ulnaris Tendonitis

ECU tendonitis, a tenosynovitis of the sixth posterior (dorsal) compartment, usually presents as chronic dorsoulnar wrist pain, which is aggravated with forearm supination and ulnar deviation, which causes the tendon to sublux palmarly.

Flexor Carpi Ulnaris Tendinopathy

The FCU is the most common wrist flexor tendon to become painful and is often associated with repetitive trauma and racquet sports. The clinical signs and symptoms include pain and swelling localized just proximal to the pisiform, which is aggravated with wrist flexion and ulnar deviation.

Flexor Carpi Radialis Tendinopathy

FCR tendinopathy usually develops due to stenosis and tenosynovitis in the FCR fibro-osseous tunnel within the transverse metacarpal ligament. FCR tendinopathy usually produces localized pain and swelling, and painful deviation of the wrist. It frequently coexists with other conditions, including fracture or arthritis around the CMC joint of the thumb.

De Quervain's Disease

De Quervain's disease[20] is a progressive stenotic tenosynovitis that affects the tendon sheaths of the first posterior (dorsal) compartment of the wrist, resulting in a thickening of the extensor retinaculum, a narrowing of the fibro-osseous canal, and an eventual entrapment and compression of the tendons, especially during radial deviation. Although originally thought of as an active inflammatory condition, recent histological studies have found that the disorder is characterized by degeneration and thickening of the tendon sheath. In most circumstances, the first posterior (dorsal) compartment is a single compartment, which contains the tendons and synovial sheaths of the APL and the EPB tendons. These tendons allow the thumb to abduct, extend, and grip objects. Overuse, repetitive tasks that involve overexertion of the thumb or radial and ulnar deviation of the wrist, and arthritis are the most common predisposing factors because they cause the greatest stresses on the structures of the first posterior (dorsal) compartment. Such activities include painting, scraping wallpaper, hammering, golfing, fly fishing, typing, sewing, knitting, and cutting. Frequently, patients report a gradual and insidious onset of a dull ache over the radial aspect of the wrist, made worse by turning doorknobs or keys. Patients may also note a "creaking" in the wrist as the tendon moves. Observation of the wrist may reveal a localized swelling and tenderness in the region of the radial styloid process. The Finkelstein test is often used to help confirm the diagnosis. The patient is asked to tuck the thumb into a closed fist (**FIGURE 22.39**) and then to ulnarly deviate the hand

FIGURE 22.39 Finkelstein test: start position.

(**FIGURE 22.40**). The test is considered positive if this maneuver reproduces the patient's pain.

Intervention The typical intervention for tendon injuries can be broken down into two phases:

- *Protection phase.* Usually involves splinting related joints to rest the involved tendon, applying transverse friction massage while the tendon is in an elongated position (if the tendon is in a sheath), use of multi-angle muscle setting techniques in the pain-free positions followed by pain-free ROM, and instruction in tendon gliding exercises to prevent adhesions.
- *Controlled motion and return to function phase.* Involves a progression of the intensity of massage, exercises, and stretching techniques; an assessment of the functional activity provoking the symptoms; and integration of the entire upper kinetic chain.

Surgical intervention commonly involves a tendon sheath release. The postsurgical rehabilitation plan of care closely parallels the care provided following a carpal tunnel release.

Intersection Syndrome

Intersection syndrome is a tenosynovitis of the radial wrist extensors (ECRL and ECRB) where they cross under the more obliquely oriented APL and EPB. It also can be located over the mid-dorsum of the distal forearm, approximately a hand's breadth proximal to the wrist joint. At this site, there is no actual tenosynovium; rather, the tendons are aligned by peritenon. The cause of intersection syndrome is typically repetitive wrist flexion and extension, and the condition is common in rowers, weightlifters, and canoeists. Although similar to de Quervain's, differentiation is made by the PT using the pain distribution. With the intersection syndrome, the pain is located over the distal forearm, 4 to 8 centimeters proximal to Lister's tubercle (a small, mast-like protuberance in the center of the distal radius that is identified by palpating the distal radius while the patient flexes the wrist). Symptoms are exacerbated by wrist flexion and extension and by resisted wrist extension. Intervention, in addition to NSAIDs prescribed by the physician, involves the following:

- Splint immobilization of the wrist and thumb, with the wrist in 15 to 20 degrees of extension
- Iontophoresis/phonophoresis
- Deep transverse friction massage followed by exercises for stretching and strengthening
- Patient education to emphasize the importance of avoiding repetitive wrist flexion and extension in combination with a power grip

FIGURE 22.40 Finkelstein test: end position.

Digital Flexor Tendonitis and Trigger Digits

Painful snapping or triggering of the fingers and thumb is due to a disproportion between the flexor tendon and its tendon sheath. The condition is more common in the fibrous flexor sheath of the thumb or ring or middle finger. The etiology of this condition is unknown, although it shows a predilection for patients with diabetes, young children, and menopausal women. Trigger finger commonly coexists with rheumatic changes of the hand and may be the earliest sign of RA. In the absence of connective tissue disease, most cases are idiopathic. The first sign is usually the trigger phenomenon—pain on digital motion, with or without associated triggering or locking. (The joint "locks" or "snaps" into flexion when the patient actively flexes that joint; the patient frequently has to manually move the joint back into extension or it will remain flexed.) The base of the affected finger is often tender. Over time, the condition becomes very painful, and digital motion may be limited or absent, especially in the PIP joint. Conservative intervention involves the fitting of a hand-based MP flexion block splint for the involved digit only, with only the MP joint only being immobilized in full extension, for up to 6 weeks. This immobilization theoretically alters the mechanical forces and encourages maximal differential tendon gliding. The patient should be advised to eliminate such provocative movements as repetitive grasping or the use of tools that apply pressure over the area.

Medical intervention usually involves one or a series of steroid injections, with surgical release of the trigger finger being reserved for the recalcitrant cases.

Dupuytren Contracture (Palmar Fasciitis)

Dupuytren disease, an active cellular process in the fascia of the hand, is characterized by the development of nodules in the palmar and digital fascia. These nodules occur in specific locations along longitudinal tension lines. The appearance of the nodules is followed by the formation of tendon-like cords, which are due to the pathologic change in normal fascia. The thickening and shortening of the fascia causes contracture (**FIGURE 22.41**), which behaves similarly to the contracture and maturation of wound healing.[21] The contractures form at the MCP joint, the PIP joint, and occasionally the DIP joint. The etiology of Dupuytren's disease is thought to be multifactorial. There is a higher incidence in the alcoholic population, the diabetic population, and the epileptic population.[21,22] Dupuytren's disease can be classified into three biological stages:

- *First stage*. The first stage is the proliferative stage, characterized by an intense proliferation of myofibroblasts (the cells believed to generate the contractile forces responsible for tissue contraction) and the formation of nodules.
- *Second stage*. The second, involutional stage is represented by the alignment of the myofibroblasts along the lines of tension.
- *Third stage*. During the third, residual stage, the tissue becomes mostly acellular and devoid of myofibroblasts, and only thick bands of collagen remain.

The disease is usually bilateral, with one hand being more severely involved. However, there appears to be no association with hand dominance. The patient may have one, two, or three rays involved in the more severely affected hand. The most commonly involved digit is the little finger, which is involved in approximately 70 percent of patients.

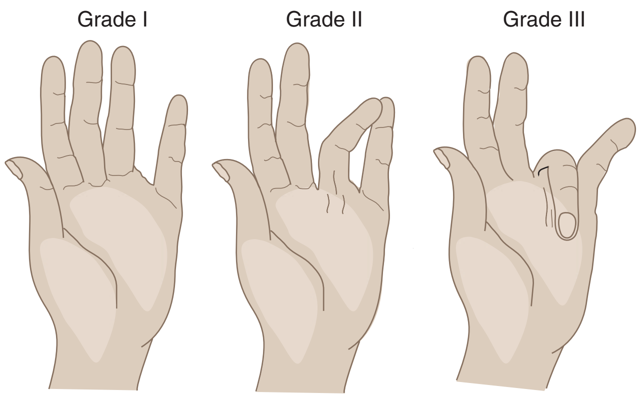


FIGURE 22.41 Dupuytren disease.

Image reprinted with permission from Medscape.com, 2011.

Intervention

Conservative interventions have not yet proven to be clinically useful or of any long-term value in the treatment of established Dupuytren contractures. The goal of surgical care is to excise or incise the diseased fascia. This treatment does not cure the disease but is meant to prevent progression to severe debilitating joint contractures.[21] Postoperatively, the hand is maintained in the original dressing and splint and strictly elevated for 2 days. Scar management and splinting are an important part of the postoperative management. The initial static dorsal forearm splint is positioned to provide slight MCP joint flexion of 10 to 20 degrees with PIP joint extension to allow maximal elongation of the wound.[21] Active, active-assisted, and passive exercises are usually initiated at the first treatment session. Rehabilitation is a gradual process of increasing activity and decreasing splinting to achieve optimal restoration of movement: restoration of preoperative flexion and maintenance of the extension gained at the time of surgery. The splint may be removed several times daily beginning on postoperative day 2 to allow AROM and PROM of the digits. Activity may be increased as tolerated, and heat applied prior or during (whirlpool) therapy may improve tissue elasticity and patient comfort.

> ☑ **KEY POINT**
>
> Silastic pads, stretching, and scar massage are useful adjuncts to promote scar softening and maturation.

The PTA should regularly record objective measurements of function to monitor progress, facilitate communication with the hand surgeon, and encourage patient compliance. The patient should be instructed to perform the following simple exercises at regular intervals every day:

- Opening and closing the hand
- Thumb–fingers opposition
- Full flexion of the PIP joints
- Flexion of each finger at the distal palmar crease
- Finger adduction/abduction
- Elbow, wrist, and hand motions

After about 6 weeks, patients should wear the splint nightly for an additional 3 to 6 months, at the discretion of the supervising PT and hand surgeon, to maintain extension and prevent scar contracture. The patient can expect to return to normal activities within 2 to 3 months.

Tendon Ruptures

Tendon ruptures can occur anywhere along the route of the tendon, including at the wrist, in the palm of the hand, or along the finger.

Flexor Tendon

One of the main purposes of the hand is to grasp; therefore, the loss of flexor tendons imposes a catastrophic functional loss. Most flexor tendon ruptures occur silently after prolonged inflammatory tenosynovitis, although the causes can be traumatic. When all nine flexor tendons to the digits have ruptured, little can be done. Single tendon ruptures are more common, and the FPL tendon is the most vulnerable to attrition rupture where it crosses the scaphotrapezial joint, and where local synovitis can create a sharp spike of bone that abrades against this spur and ruptures during use. The FDP tendon to the index finger is also at risk from this bony spur. The indications for surgical repair are normally based on the level of functional loss.

Mallet Finger Deformity

Mallet finger deformity (**FIGURE 22.42**) is a traumatic disruption of the terminal tendon of the extensor hood, resulting in a loss of active extension of the DIP joint. This is one of the most common hand injuries sustained by the athletic population and is especially common in the baseball catcher and football receiver. The deformity usually results from the delivery of a longitudinal force to the tip of the finger. The sudden acute flexion force that is produced results in a rupture of the extensor tendon just proximal to its insertion into the third phalanx, or a fracture at the base of the distal phalanx. The primary goal of treatment is to promote healing of the tendon so as to maximize function and ROM of the involved DIP joint. Conservative intervention involves 6 weeks of immobilization of the DIP joint, during which time the patient is instructed on exercises for all of the noninvolved joints of the upper extremity. During the sixth to eighth weeks, active exercises are initiated for the involved DIP joint with the patient performing gentle active DIP flexion to 20 degrees to avoid excessive stretching of the healing tendon. In subsequent weeks, active flexion is progressed in 5 to 10 degrees increments.

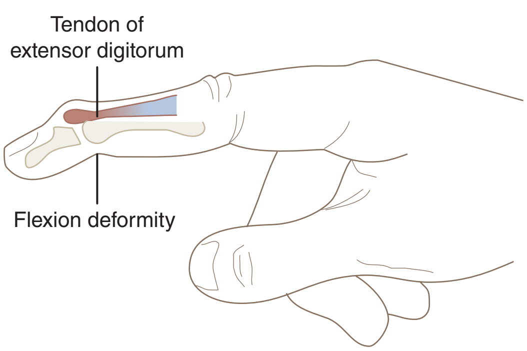


FIGURE 22.42 Mallet finger.

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> During the rehabilitation process for mallet finger, the clinician should monitor for an extensor lag (inability to actively extend the DIP joint). If an extensor lag develops, active flexion exercises are terminated and splinting of the joint in 0 degrees of extension to 10 degrees of hyperextension is resumed for an additional 2 to 4 weeks before active exercises are reinitiated. It is recommended that the patient continues to wear the splint between exercise sessions, at night, and when competing.

Mallet deformities with an associated large fracture fragment are typically treated with 6 weeks of immobilization following open reduction and internal fixation (ORIF), usually with K-wires. Closed reduction is used for other types, followed by 6 weeks of continuous posterior (dorsal) splinting of the DIP in 0 degrees of extension to 15 degrees of hyperextension. The PIP joint should be free to move. If splinted, the splint is removed once per day, while simultaneously holding the DIP joint in extension to allow air to reach the palmar aspect of the middle and distal phalanx. Following the period of immobilization, the splint or fixators are removed and the terminal tendon is evaluated. If the tendon is unable to maintain extension of the DIP joint, a splint is reapplied and the tendon is retested periodically. Once the tendon has healed sufficiently to perform active extension of the DIP, AROM exercises to 20 to 35 degrees are initiated to the DIP joint. Gentle PREs using putty or a hand exerciser are initiated at week 8. Usually, the splint is discontinued at 9 weeks if the DIP extension remains at 0 to 5 degrees and there is no extensor lag. Unrestricted use usually occurs after 12 weeks.

Rupture of the Terminal Phalangeal Flexor (Jersey Finger)

The rupture of the FDP tendon from its insertion on the distal phalanx (Jersey finger) is often misdiagnosed as a sprained or "jammed" finger because there is no characteristic deformity associated with it.

The injury is typically caused by forceful passive extension while the FDP muscle is contracting. A common example is in football, when the flexed finger is caught in a jersey while the athlete is attempting to make a tackle, hence the term *jersey finger*. Although this condition can occur in any finger, the most commonly injured is the ring finger. The injury usually occurs with forced passive extension of a flexed finger. The intervention can involve doing nothing, if function is not seriously affected, or surgical reattachment of the tendon, which requires a 12-week course of rehabilitation.

Swan Neck Deformity

The swan neck deformity is one of the most frequently encountered deformities of the fingers. When it occurs in the thumb it is referred to as a zigzag deformity. The deformity, which is the least functional of all of the deformities that exist within the hand, is characterized by a flexion deformity at the DIP and hyperextension of the PIP joint. The deformity results from destruction of the oblique retinacular ligament of the extensor mechanism, which subsequently leads to posterior (dorsal) displacement of the lateral bands of the extensor mechanism, and an increased extensor force across the PIP joint with a resulting hyperextension of the PIP joint. The resultant loss of function includes an inability to bring the tips of the fingers into a grasp position. The intervention for a swan neck deformity depends on the status of the PIP joint and its related anatomic structures. If there is no loss of PIP joint flexion, the condition can be treated conservatively with a silver ring splint to correct the PIP hyperextension. Otherwise, surgical intervention is required.

Boutonnière Deformity

Boutonnière deformity, which results from deformity or disruption of the central extensor tendon at the PIP joint (**FIGURE 22.43**), can manifest acutely following trauma, but most cases are found weeks following the injury or as the result of progressive arthritis. (See Chapter 5.) The PIP of the finger is flexed, and the DIP joint is hyperextended. The basis of conservative management for tendon rupture with no associated avulsion fracture is splinting. A variety of techniques have been described, all requiring a minimum of 4 weeks (preferably 6 weeks) of immobilization of the PIP in extension to be effective. The DIP is not immobilized so the patient is able to perform both passive and active DIP flexion during this time.

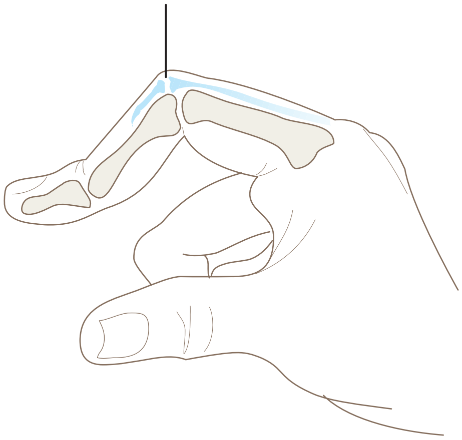


FIGURE 22.43 Boutonnière deformity.

Wrist Sprains

Wrist sprains are more common than wrist fractures, with the most common wrist sprain resulting from a downward force to the wrist exceeding its normal ROM. In ligament injuries, the injury usually is to the middle of the ligament.

In the common presentation of a wrist injury, forced movement of the joint is followed immediately by intense pain that subsides and then returns. Swelling occurs within 1 to 2 hours of the injury. The degree of joint swelling indicates the degree of injury. Ecchymosis develops in severe injuries in 6 to 12 hours.

Conservative Approach

Conservative intervention includes immobilization of the wrist, depending on the degree of the sprain, to avoid exacerbating the injury. Custom splints made from casting material allow for proper hand and wrist contouring and should cover the palm, allowing the fingers to move freely, and extend to about midforearm. Cocking the wrist up about 10 degrees places the wrist in a position of rest.

Slight sprains should remain splinted for 3 to 5 days. Icing for 20 to 30 minutes, three to four times per day, concurrent with NSAIDs prescribed by the physician, can aid in reducing pain and swelling. More severe sprains take longer to recover but should be removed from the splint in 3 to 5 days to avoid stiffness. During the period of immobilization, the shoulder, elbow, and fingers of the upper extremity are exercised with active motion and resistance exercises, taking care to apply no stress to the healing ligaments.

After splint removal, a rehabilitation program of wrist curls without weights should be started. Until the pain and swelling subside, wrist curls can be done in water to reduce muscle effort.

Surgical Intervention

The integrity of the carpal relationship depends on the stability provided by both the interosseous ligaments and the midcarpal ligaments. This relationship ensures that the carpal bones move as a unit. Conversely, disruption of this relationship allows abnormal independent motion of one or two carpal bones. The surgical intervention for carpal instability is complex and usually specific to the type of instability. Options include closed reduction with percutaneous pinning and ORIF. During the period of immobilization, the shoulder, elbow, wrist, and fingers of the involved side should be exercised with active pain-free motion progressing to resistance exercises (**TABLE 22.8**).

Distal Radius Fractures

Fracture of the distal radius is the most common wrist injury for all age groups. The older patient usually sustains an extra-articular metaphyseal fracture, whereas the younger patient experiences the more complicated intra-articular fracture.

Colles' Fracture

Colles' fracture can be defined as a complete fracture of the distal radius with a posterior (dorsal) displacement of the distal fragment (**FIGURE 22.44**). The typical mechanism of injury is a FOOSH injury. Management of this fracture requires an accurate reduction of the fracture and maintenance of the normal length of the radius. The method of reduction, as well as the position of immobilization, is quite variable. In most cases, closed reduction and a cast are effective. In other cases, ORIF is necessary. Loss of full rotation of the forearm is a common sequelae of this fracture. Occasionally, patients with distal radius fractures will be prescribed physical therapy during the period of immobilization so that exercises for the shoulder, elbow, and fingers can be performed throughout the involved upper extremity. Upon the removal of the immobilization device (after between 4 and 6 weeks), AROM exercises are initiated. Joint mobilization of the wrist and carpal bones may be performed if the PT found joint mobility tests to be positive for joint limitation. Functional exercises for the wrist and hand are begun early in the rehabilitation program and include gripping and squeezing exercises. Usually by the sixth to eighth week more aggressive stretching and strengthening can begin.

TABLE 22.8 Rehabilitation Protocol Following Surgery for Ligament Injury

Phase 1	Intervention
Protection of surgical site	Immobilization, protection, rest
Control of pain, inflammation, and swelling	Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs Ice packs
Maintenance of uninvolved areas	Shoulder, elbow, and hand AROM and resistance exercise General conditioning
Phase 2	**Intervention**
Protection of surgical site	Gradual reduction in immobilization
Initiation of ROM	AAROM
Strengthening exercises	Resistance exercises for the hand and fingers Submaximal isometric wrist exercises Continuation of shoulder, elbow, and hand exercises together with general conditioning
Phase 3	**Intervention**
Protection of surgical site	Functional splint for protection
Strengthening exercises	Active motion Concentric, eccentric resistance Hand and finger resistance exercise

Smith's Fracture

A Smith's fracture, sometimes called a reverse Colles' fracture, is a complete fracture of the distal radius with palmar displacement of the distal fragment (refer to Figure 22.44). The usual mechanism for this type of fracture is a fall on the back of a flexed hand. Smith's fractures are classified into three types:

- *Type I.* This is a transverse fracture through the distal radial shaft.

FIGURE 22.44 Colles' fracture.

Courtesy of Kevin G. Shea, MD, Intermountain Orthopaedics, Boise, Idaho.

- *Type II*. This is an oblique fracture through the distal shaft starting at the posterior (dorsal) articulating lip.
- *Type III*. This type (also referred to as a reverse Barton's fracture, see next section) is an oblique fracture beginning farther down on the articular surface of the radius.

Customary management for a Smith's fracture is with closed reduction and long-arm casting in supination for 3 weeks, followed by 2 to 3 weeks in a short-arm cast. Types II and III are frequently unstable, however, and thus require an ORIF.

Barton's Fracture

A Barton's fracture involves a posterior (dorsal) or volar articular fracture of the distal radius, resulting in a subluxation of the wrist. The mechanism of injury for this type of fracture usually includes some form of direct and violent injury to the wrist, or a sudden pronation of the distal forearm on a fixed wrist. Seventy percent of these fractures occur in young men. Once the fracture has been reduced, an above-elbow cast is applied for 4 weeks, followed by a forearm cast for a further 3 weeks, with the wrist in ulnar deviation. Other techniques include performing an ORIF, with 16 weeks being the average healing time.

Buckle Fracture

A buckle fracture is an incomplete, undisplaced fracture of the distal radius commonly seen in children. The fracture is treated with a cast, ORIF, or external fixation. The fracture site is immobilized for 6 weeks if cast, 8 weeks with an external fixator, or 2 weeks if an ORIF with plate and screws is performed. If the fracture is nondisplaced, rehabilitation may last 2 to 6 weeks, whereas displaced fractures typically require 8 to 12 weeks.

Intervention

Successful treatment of a fracture of the distal radius must take into account maintaining the integrity of the soft tissues by not relying on tight casts or restricting the gliding structures that control the hand, while restoring anatomic alignment of the bones (**TABLE 22.9**).

TABLE 22.9 Intervention-Based Classification of Distal Radius Fractures

Type	Description	Management
Non-operative	Undisplaced, stable	Immobilization - Splinting or casting. Sugar tong splint followed by cast with the wrist in a neutral position for 4–6 weeks
	Displaced, stable	Fracture manipulated under anesthesia and then splinted in a position to minimize the risk of re-displacement.
	Stable	Splinted, then casted
	Unstable, reducible	Reduction of fracture is indicated if non-surgical management is predicted to be successful, and radiographic imaging demonstrates measurements outside the acceptable limits
Operative	Intra-articular, displaced	Bridging external fixation or ORIF (open reduction internal fixation)

The wrist should not be distracted or placed in a flexed position, because these abnormal positions diminish the mechanical advantage of the extrinsic tendons, increase pressure in the carpal canal, exacerbate carpal ligament injury, and contribute to stiffness. With all of the distal radius fractures, rehabilitation can begin while the fracture is immobilized and involves AROM of the shoulder in all planes, elbow flexion and extension, and finger flexion and extension. The finger exercises must include isolated MCP flexion, composite flexion (full fist), and intrinsic minus fisting (MCP extension with IP flexion). If a fixator or pins are present, pin site care should be performed according to the physician's preference. Following the period of immobilization, an immobilization capsular pattern will initially be present. Extension and supination are commonly limited and need to be mobilized. AROM exercises of wrist flexion and extension and ulnar and radial deviation are initiated. Wrist extension exercises are performed with the fingers flexed, especially at the MCP joints. PROM is performed according to the physician's preference, either immediately or after 1 to 2 weeks. The AROM exercises of the wrist and forearm are progressed to strengthening exercises, using light weights and tubing. Putty can be used to increase grip strength if necessary.

Plyometrics and neuromuscular reeducation exercises are next, followed by return to function or sports activities.

Fractured Scaphoid

Of all the wrist injuries encountered in the emergency department, fracture of the scaphoid is one of the most commonly missed.[23,24] This is unfortunate, given that the scaphoid is the most commonly fractured carpal bone due to its location.

> ☑ **KEY POINT**
>
> Accurate early diagnosis of scaphoid fracture is critical, because the morbidity associated with a missed or delayed diagnosis is significant, and can result in long-term pain, loss of mobility, and decreased function.

The degree of morbidity associated with scaphoid fractures is related to its scant blood supply, which results in a high incidence of delayed healing or nonunion, and the fact that scaphoid fractures are inherently unstable.

> ☑ **KEY POINT**
>
> Although a fracture can occur in any part of the scaphoid, the common areas are at the waist and at the proximal pole.

Classically, the injury results from a FOOSH, with the wrist pronated. Patients typically complain of posterior (dorsal) wrist pain and have tenderness over the anatomic snuffbox. Even with appropriate radiographs, fractures of the scaphoid can be subtle and difficult to visualize.[24]

Intervention

Conservative management of a scaphoid fracture is controversial. There is no agreement on the optimum position for immobilization. Current management is immobilization in a long-arm or short-arm thumb spica cast, with the wrist position and length of immobilization being dependent on the location of the fracture:

- *Proximal pole.* Immobilization is for 16 to 20 weeks in a long- or short-arm thumb spica, with the wrist in slight extension and radial deviation.
- *Central third.* Immobilization is for 6 weeks in a long-arm thumb spica, followed by a further 6 weeks in a short-arm thumb spica. Some physicians advocate splinting the wrist in radial deviation and mild flexion for 6 weeks. After 6 weeks, if healing is evident on radiographs, a short-arm thumb spica cast is applied for 2 to 4 weeks. If after 6 weeks the fracture line seems greater or the fracture appears displaced, evaluation for possible surgery is in order.
- *Distal third.* Immobilization is for 6 to 8 weeks in a short-arm thumb spica.
- *Tuberosity.* Immobilization is for 5 to 6 weeks in a long- or short-arm thumb spica.

A suggested protocol to use for scaphoid fracture treated with ORIF is outlined in **TABLE 22.10**.

Chronic pain, loss of motion, and decreased strength from prolonged immobilization or early arthritis are common following a scaphoid fracture. Following the removal of the splint, a capsular pattern of the wrist (an equal limitation of flexion and extension) will dominate. Also, there will be a painful weakness of the thumb and/or wrist extension/radial deviation, and compression of the first metacarpal on the scaphoid will be painful. AROM exercises for wrist flexion and extension and radial and ulnar deviation are initiated as early as possible after the splint removal, with PROM to the same motions beginning after 2 weeks. A wrist and thumb immobilization splint can be fabricated to wear between exercises and at night for comfort and protection.

TABLE 22.10 Conservative Intervention for Scaphoid Fracture Treated with ORIF

Time Frame	Recommended Intervention
0–21 days	Elevation and application of compressive dressing of the arm to assist in edema control AROM and PROM of digits consisting of blocking and composite exercises, except the thumb AROM and AAROM exercises to the elbow and shoulder
4 weeks-7 weeks	Continue fingers, elbow, and shoulder exercises as above At 6 weeks if fracture appears radiographically healed, cast or splint is removed for gentle AROM exercises of the wrist and thumb
8 weeks - 12 weeks	Advance therapeutic exercises with gentle AROM of the wrist and thumb exercises Begin grip strengthening with use of silicone putty at 10 weeks Advance as tolerated to progressive resistive exercises (PREs) for all joints May use wrist splint for protection for all activities

ORIF, open reduction and internal fixation; MCP, metacarpophalangeal; PIP, proximal interphalangeal; DIP, distal interphalangeal; AROM, active range of motion; AAROM, active-assisted range of motion. Data from Brotzman SB, Calandruccio JH, Jupiter JB: Hand and wrist injuries, in Brotzman SB, Wilk KE (eds): *Clinical Orthopaedic Rehabilitation*. Philadelphia, Mosby, 2003, pp. 1–83.

At about the same time as the PROM exercises, gentle strengthening exercises are begun with 1- to 2-pound weights or putty. Over a period of several weeks, the exercise program is progressed to include weight-bearing activities, plyometrics, open and closed-chain exercises, and neuromuscular reeducation, before finally progressing to functional and sport-specific exercises and activities.

The most common complication of scaphoid fracture is nonunion. Missed and therefore untreated scaphoid fractures often progress to nonunions. Because of the precarious nature of the blood supply and potential for movement at the fracture line, nonunion can occur in 8 to 10 percent of cases. The rate of nonunion varies with the actual fracture site. Nonunion complicates up to 20 to 30 percent of proximal-third fractures, and 10 to 20 percent of middle-third fractures.[24] Nonunion of distal-third fractures is relatively rare.

Ulnar Collateral Ligament Sprain of the Thumb

A UCL injury, also known as *gamekeeper's thumb*, *skier's thumb*, and *breakdancer's thumb*, involves injury to the UCL of the MCP joint of the thumb and is the most common ligament injury of the hand.

☑ KEY POINT

The MCP joint of the thumb is primarily stabilized by the UCL. The origin of this ligament is on the ulnar aspect of the metacarpal head, whereas the insertion of the UCL is located distally on the proximal phalanx.

The most common cause of UCL injury is an acute abducting (radially directed) force upon the thumb, but the injury may also result from a combination of torsion, abduction, and hyperextension at the first MCP joint. The patient typically complains of pain or tenderness on the ulnar aspect of the MCP joint.

☑ KEY POINT

The PT can test the stability of the joint by applying an abduction stress with the thumb in full extension, and then in full flexion, which stresses the accessory collateral ligament and the UCL, respectively. An angulation of greater than 35 degrees or 15 degrees greater than the uninvolved side indicates instability and the need for surgical intervention.

Intervention

For the purposes of intervention, these injuries can be divided into two categories:

- *Grade I and II sprains.* The majority of the ligament remains intact. The intervention for grade I and II tears is immobilization in a thumb spica cast for 3 weeks, with additional protective splinting for 2 weeks. Thumb spica splints, which are forearm-based splints fabricated from a palmar or radial approach, are designed to immobilize the wrist, CMC, and MCP joints of the thumb, thereby permitting the radial wrist extensors and the proximal thumb to rest. The splint is worn at all times except for removal for hygiene and exercise. AROM of flexion and extension begins at 3 weeks and progresses to strengthening exercises by 8 weeks, taking care not to apply any abduction stress to the MCP joint during the first 2 to 6 weeks.
- *Grade III tears and displaced bony avulsions.* These injuries are treated with surgery and

immobilization. Postsurgical rehabilitation involves wearing a thumb spica cast or splint for 3 weeks, with an additional 2 weeks of splinting, except during the exercises of active flexion and extension. Otherwise the exercise progression is the same as for the grade I and II sprains.

Radial collateral sprains are classified and treated in a similar manner.

Metacarpal Fractures

Injury to the metacarpals is the result of either direct or indirect trauma. The nature and direction of the applied force determine the exact type of fracture or dislocation, with the specific injury patterns as follows:

- *CMC injuries*. Metacarpal base fractures and dislocations of the CMC joint commonly result from an axial load or other stress on the hand with the wrist flexed.
- *Metacarpal shaft and neck injuries*. Typically, metacarpal shaft fractures are produced by torsion, axial loading, or direct trauma. Metacarpal neck fractures, the most common metacarpal fractures, usually result from striking a solid object with a clenched fist. A Bennett's fracture is a fracture dislocation of the proximal first metacarpal.
- *Metacarpal head injuries*. Metacarpal head (boxer's) fractures are intra-articular injuries and result from axial loading or direct trauma.
- *MCP dislocations*. These result from forced hyperextension of the digits. Dorsal MCP dislocations are the most frequent dislocations.

Intervention

Treatment of metacarpal fractures and dislocations is primarily nonoperative. The goals of nonoperative management are to obtain alignment and stability and to begin motion of the fingers and wrist as soon as possible. Following a closed reduction of the fracture or dislocation, a forearm-based splint/cast is then applied. Generally, the wrist is placed in 20 to 30 degrees of extension; the MCP joints are immobilized in 70 to 90 degrees of flexion, with the dorsal aspect of the splint extending to the IP joints and the volar aspect ending at the distal palmar crease. Throughout the immobilization period, the patient is instructed on AROM exercises for the shoulder, elbow, and fingers of the involved upper extremity. After approximately 3 to 5 weeks, the splint/cast is removed and AROM exercises of the hand are initiated per the physician's instructions. Hand PREs are initiated based on healing and patient tolerance.

Although closed management of these injuries is typical, certain fractures and dislocations require ORIF to ensure satisfactory restoration of function and cosmesis. Once the cast is removed, AROM exercises of the hand are initiated per the physician's instructions. Hand PREs are initiated based on healing and patient tolerance.

Finger Fractures

Phalangeal fractures represent approximately 50 percent of fractures of the hand and wrist and are more common than metacarpal or carpal fractures. These fractures can be divided into base, shaft, and neck and head fractures. Unstable displaced articular fractures require surgical intervention.

Intervention

Conservative intervention of the more stable fractures involves closed reduction in as near normal a position as possible with an appropriate cast or splint:

- *Distal phalanx fractures*. A protective splint is worn for 2 to 4 weeks until the fracture site is nontender. AROM begins at 2 to 4 weeks, or earlier if the fracture is stable enough. PROM begins at 5 to 6 weeks. PREs normally begin at 7 to 8 weeks.
- *Middle phalanx fractures*. If nondisplaced, these fractures are splinted in the intrinsic plus position for approximately 3 weeks. In the intrinsic plus position, the MCP joints are flexed at 60 to 70 degrees and the IP joints are fully extended. The wrist is held in extension at 10 degrees less than maximal. Buddy splinting, the taping of a neighboring finger to the involved finger, may also be an option. AROM is initiated when pain and edema subside. PROM begins at 4 to 6 weeks, with PREs normally beginning at 6 to 8 weeks.
- *Proximal phalanx fractures*. Nondisplaced extra-articular fractures are splinted with buddy tape. AROM is initiated immediately, with PROM being initiated at 6 to 8 weeks. Nondisplaced intra-articular fractures are splinted in the intrinsic plus position for 2 to 3 weeks. AROM begins at 2 to 3 weeks, with PROM being initiated at 4 to 8 weeks. PREs normally begin at clinical union (8 to 12 weeks).

Complex Regional Pain Syndrome

The term *complex regional pain syndrome* (CRPS), formerly known as *reflex sympathetic dystrophy* (RSD), refers to a classification of disorders that can occur even after minor injury to a limb. It is a major cause of disability. CRPS can occur in any of the extremities.

> ☑ **KEY POINT**
>
> CRPS, originally termed *causalgia*, has since been referred to by a number of names, including posttraumatic osteoporosis, Sudeck's atrophy, transient osteoporosis, algoneurodystrophy, shoulder–hand syndrome, gardenalic rheumatism, neurotrophic rheumatism, reflex neurovascular dystrophy, and reflex sympathetic dystrophy (RSD).

There are three variants of CRPS, previously thought of as stages, and patients are likely to have one of the following three types of disease progression:

- *Type one*. Characterized by severe, burning pain at the site of the injury. Signs and symptoms include muscle spasm, joint stiffness, restricted mobility, and rapid hair and nail growth. Vasospasm (constriction of the blood vessels) that affects the color and temperature of the skin can also occur.
- *Type two*. Characterized by more intense pain, an increase in the spread of the swelling, diminishing hair growth, and the nails becoming cracked, brittle, grooved, and spotty. Associated osteoporosis becomes severe and diffuse, the joints thicken, and the muscles atrophy.
- *Type three*. Characterized by irreversible changes in the skin and bone. The pain becomes unrelenting and may involve the entire limb. There is marked muscle atrophy, severe limited mobility of the affected area, and flexor tendon contractions (contractions of the muscles and tendons that flex the joints). Occasionally the limb is displaced from its normal position, and marked bone softening and thinning is more dispersed.

Intervention

The most effective intervention for CRPS is disputed; however, most agree that the intervention requires a team approach, in which physical therapy plays a pivotal role, and that the earlier the intervention is instituted, the better the prognosis. Immobilization and overprotecting the affected limb may produce or exacerbate demineralization, vasomotor changes, edema, and trophic changes. Topical capsaicin may be helpful, as are NSAIDs prescribed by the physician.

Physical therapy is the first line of intervention, whether it be the sole intervention or performed immediately following a sympathetic nerve block to reduce hypersensitivity and pain.[25]

> ☑ **KEY POINT**
>
> The most important rule is to minimize pain while employing physical therapy. When excessive pain is created, sympathetically mediated pain may worsen.[25] It is vital to not reinjure the region or aggravate the problem with aggressive physical rehabilitation.

The patient's involved limb must be elevated as often as possible and actively mobilized several times per day.[25] Recovery from muscle dysfunction, swelling, and joint stiffness requires appropriate physical activity and exercise, and pressure and motion are necessary to maintain joint movement and prevent stiffening.[25] The progression should occur slowly and gently with strengthening, AAROM, and AROM exercises.

Active stress loading exercises, such as scrubbing and carrying, should also be incorporated:

- *Scrubbing*. Scrubbing is performed with the patient in quadruped for upper extremity involvement and in elevated sitting or standing for lower extremity involvement. For upper extremity involvement, the patient holds a scrub brush with the affected hand.[26] For lower extremity involvement, a long Velcro strap can assist in fastening the brush to the bottom of the affected foot.[26] Modifications can be made to enhance performance or compliance. For example, upper extremity scrubbing may be done standing at a table or counter.[26] Persons with limited wrist extension may benefit from using a handled brush.
- *Carrying*. Small objects are carried in the hand on the affected side, progressing to a handled bag loaded with increasingly heavier weight. The lower extremity can be loaded in a variety of ways. Walking is an important loading technique if care is taken to ensure weight bearing through the affected leg during gait. Increased weight bearing can be accomplished by having the patient carry a weighted object or bag on the affected side. Loading also can be facilitated by engaging the patient in activities that promote weight shifting and balance (e.g., ball toss) or by placing the nonaffected foot onto a small footstool during static standing tasks.

Sensory threshold techniques should be used, including fluidotherapy (see Chapter 10), vibration desensitization, transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation (TENS), contrast baths, and desensitization (using light and heavy pressure of various textures over the sensitive area).

Affected joints should be rested and elevated to counteract the vascular stasis, but the joint also should be mobilized gently several times per day. Physical therapy is advised as long as the patient works within his or her pain threshold.[25] Complete rest to the affected region, particularly immobilization in a cast, should be avoided.

Therapeutic Techniques

A number of therapeutic techniques can be used to assist the patient. These include exercises and manual techniques.

To Improve Hand Dexterity

The patient is asked to practice touching the thumb to each of the fingers (**FIGURE 22.45**), first in one direction and then another.

To Improve Hand Strength

The patient is asked to perform hand squeezing exercises using Theraputty (**FIGURE 22.46**).

FIGURE 22.45 Hand dexterity exercise.

FIGURE 22.46 Hand strengthening with Theraputty.

Joint Mobilizations

The techniques for the wrist and hand have much in common—using a pinch grip of the index finger and thumb of one hand, the clinician palpates and stabilizes the proximal bone of the joint to be mobilized. With a pinch grip of the index finger and thumb of the other hand, the clinician palpates and then mobilizes the distal bone.

- *DRUJ (anterior/posterior glides).* Using one hand, the clinician stabilizes the ulna and with the other hand glides the radius in a posterior and an anterior direction (**FIGURE 22.47**). Alternatively, the clinician can stabilize the radius and mobilize the ulna.
- *Radiocarpal joint anterior glide.* The patient sits at the end of the table, with his or her wrist at the edge of the table, palm facing downward. The clinician uses one hand to stabilize the radius and ulna. Using the other hand, the clinician performs an anterior glide in a downward direction (**FIGURE 22.48**). This joint mobilization is designed to increase wrist extension.
- *Radiocarpal joint posterior glide.* The patient sits at the end of the table, with his or her wrist at the edge of the table, palm facing upward. The clinician uses one hand to stabilize the radius and ulna. Using the other hand, the clinician performs

FIGURE 22.47 Distal radioulnar joint (anterior/posterior glides).

a posterior glide in a downward direction (**FIGURE 22.49**). This joint mobilization is designed to increase wrist flexion.

- *Radiocarpal joint ulnar glide.* The patient sits at the end of the table, with his or her wrist at the edge of the table, thumb side uppermost. The clinician uses one hand to stabilize the radius and ulna. Using the other hand, the clinician performs a posterior glide in a downward direction (**FIGURE 22.50**). This joint mobilization is designed to increase radial deviation.

FIGURE 22.48 Radiocarpal joint anterior glide.

FIGURE 22.49 Radiocarpal joint posterior glide.

FIGURE 22.50 Radiocarpal joint ulnar glide.

- *Radiocarpal joint radial glide.* The patient sits at the end of the table, with his or her wrist at the edge of the table, little finger uppermost. The clinician uses one hand to stabilize the radius and ulna. Using the other hand, the clinician performs a posterior glide in a downward direction (**FIGURE 22.51**). This joint mobilization is designed to increase ulnar deviation.
- *CMC joint anterior/posterior glide.* Using both hands, the clinician cradles the patient's hand. Using the index fingers of both hands to stabilize the proximal segment (distal row of the carpals) on the palmar side of the patient's hand, the clinician superimposes one thumb on top of the other and supplies the mobilizing force at the proximal end of the specific metacarpal in a downward direction (**FIGURE 22.52**).

FIGURE 22.51 Radiocarpal joint radial glide.

FIGURE 22.52 Carpometacarpal joint anterior/posterior glide.

- *Intercarpal glides*. Using the same technique as the previous, the clinician stabilizes the proximal row of carpals with the index fingers and mobilizes the specific carpal in a downward direction using both thumbs (**FIGURE 22.53**).
- *First CMC (trapeziometacarpal) joint—ulnar (medial) and radial glide*. The clinician applies a glide in an ulnar direction through the thenar eminence toward the radial aspect of the patient's metacarpal (**FIGURE 22.54**). The ulnar glide is used to improve trapeziometacarpal joint flexion. To improve trapeziometacarpal joint extension, the clinician applies a glide in a radial direction through the thenar eminence toward the ulnar aspect of the patient's metacarpal.
- *Distal and PIP joint glides*. Using a pinch grip of the index finger and thumb of one hand, the clinician stabilizes the distal end of the most proximal phalanx. Using the other hand, the clinician grasps the proximal end of the most distal phalanx. The PIP joint (**FIGURE 22.55**) and DIP joint (**FIGURE 22.56**) can then be distracted, or glided anteriorly or posteriorly. The anterior glide improves the ability of the joint to move into flexion, whereas posterior glide improves the ability of the joint to move into extension.

FIGURE 22.53 Intercarpal joint glides.

FIGURE 22.54 First CMC (trapeziometacarpal) joint: ulnar (medial) and radial glide.

Courtesy of Mark Dutton.

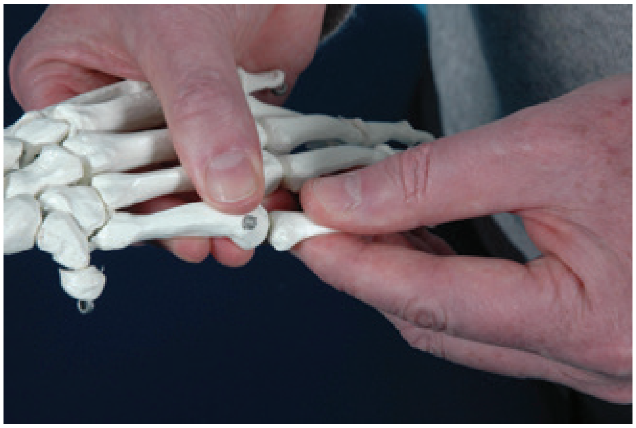


FIGURE 22.55 PIP joint glide.

Courtesy of Mark Dutton.

FIGURE 22.56 DIP joint glide.

Courtesy of Mark Dutton.

Summary

The wrist joint is composed of two separate joints: the radiocarpal joint and the midcarpal joint. Working with an extensive array of ligaments, the primary muscles of the wrist effectively stabilize and mobilize the wrist for a variety of different functions.

When functioning normally, the 19 bones and 19 joints of the hands produce remarkably diverse functions. However, an injured hand can dramatically reduce the overall function of the entire upper limb. Injuries to the hand are common because the hand is used to explore and interact with the environment, placing it at potential risk.

Learning Portfolio

Case Study

Your supervising physical therapist is testing you about your knowledge of the wrist and hand and is asking you to name the contents of the six fibro-osseous compartments of the dorsal wrist.

1. From the medial collateral, name the contents of each of the six fibro-osseous compartments.
2. What is the significance of the anatomic snuffbox?
3. What are the three main wrist extensors?
4. What is the open- and closed-packed position of the radiocarpal joint?

Later in the day, you are observing the physical therapist examine a patient's wrist and hand. The physical therapist asks the patient to hold the wrist in complete flexion with the elbow extended and the forearm pronated for 60 seconds.

5. What is the name of this test, and what diagnosis is it being used to help determine?

Review Questions

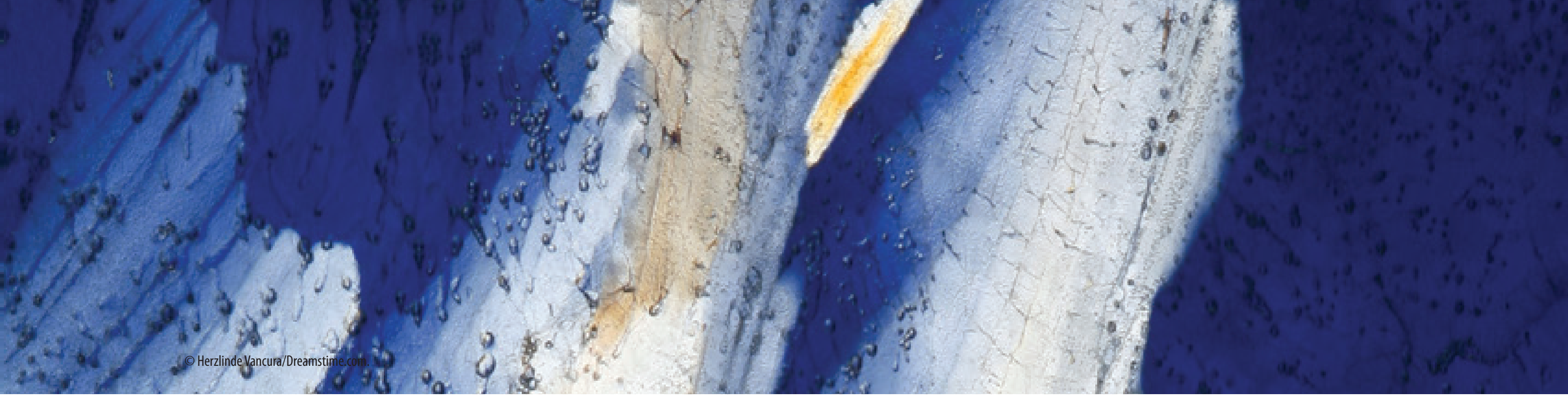
1. What is the triangular fibrocartilage complex?
2. What is a Colles' fracture?
3. Which carpal bone is the most commonly fractured?
4. A fracture to the scaphoid can cause what complication?
5. What motions do the lumbricals perform?
6. The flexor digitorum profundus muscle is primarily a flexor of which joints?
7. While palpating a patient's wrist and hand you elicit tenderness on a line between the radial tubercle and the base of the third metacarpal. Which bones are probably affected?
   a. Scaphoid and capitate
   b. Capitate and hamate
   c. Trapezium and scaphoid
   d. Trapezium and trapezoid
8. Atrophy of the muscles of the thenar eminence would indicate injury to which nerve?
   a. Musculocutaneous
   b. Median
   c. Radial
   d. Ulnar
9. You are treating a patient who demonstrates an inability to fully flex the index finger and middle finger, thumb opposition is lost, and the sensory deficit includes the lateral one-half of the ring finger, the middle and index finger, and the thumb. Which nerve do you suspect is involved?
   a. Ulnar nerve
   b. Radial nerve
   c. Median nerve
   d. None of the above
10. An injury to which part of the brachial plexus would cause weakness of the biceps, coracobrachialis, and finger flexors?
11. Which of the following muscles is not supplied by the median nerve?
   a. Flexor carpi radialis
   b. Flexor digitorum superficialis
   c. Flexor pollicus longus
   d. Abductor pollicus longus
12. All of the following muscles have an action at the wrist, *except*:
   a. Flexor carpi radialis
   b. Extensor carpiulnaris
   c. Flexor carpi ulnaris
   d. Extensor digitorum communis
13. You are reading a plan of care for a 74-year-old patient with the diagnosis of rheumatoid arthritis. The clinical presentation of this patient will most closely follow:
   a. Complaints of morning stiffness; nodules over bony prominences; joints of the cervical spine, hand, and elbow involved
   b. Complaints of morning stiffness; Herberden's nodules; joints of the hand, knee, and hip involved
   c. Complaints of pain with weight bearing; ulnar drift and subluxation of the wrist joint; joints of the wrist and hand, elbow, and cervical spine involved
   d. Complaints of stiffness following periods of rest; deformities of interphalangeal joints; joints of the lumbar spine, hips, and knees involved

14. A patient who has rheumatoid arthritis would more likely benefit from which of the following?
    a. Cock-up splint
    b. Airplane splint
    c. Dynamic wrist extension splint
    d. Milwaukee brace

15. Following removal of a cast for a fracture of the distal third of the radius, a patient now has limited wrist extension. To increase wrist extension, gentle stretching can be initiated by which of the following?
    a. Pronating the forearm and extending the wrist while allowing the fingers to flex
    b. Supinating the forearm and extending the wrist and fingers
    c. Supinating the forearm and extending the wrist while allowing the fingers to flex
    d. Pronating the forearm and extending the wrist and fingers

References

1. Neumann DA. Wrist. In: Neumann DA, editor. *Kinesiology of the Musculoskeletal System: Foundations for Physical Rehabilitation*. St. Louis: Mosby; 2002. p. 172–93.
2. Al-Nahhas S. Towards evidence based emergency medicine: best BETs from the Manchester Royal Infirmary. BET 2: do wrist splints need to have a thumb extension when immobilising suspected scaphoid fractures? *Emergency Medicine Journal*. 2011; 28:1075–6.
3. Standring S, Gray H. *Gray's Anatomy: The Anatomical Basis of Clinical Practice*, 40th ed. St. Louis, MO: Churchill Livingstone Elsevier; 2008.
4. Austin NM. The wrist and hand complex. In: Levangie P, Norkin C, editors. *Joint Structure and Function: A Comprehensive Analysis*. Philadelphia: F.A. Davis Company; 2005. p. 305.
5. Kisner C, Colby LA. The wrist and hand. In: Kisner C, Colby LA, editors. *Therapeutic Exercise Foundations and Techniques*, 5th ed. Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2002. p. 589–642.
6. Kijima Y, Viegas SF. Wrist anatomy and biomechanics. *The Journal of Hand Surgery*. 2009; 34:1555–63.
7. Majors BJ, Wayne JS. Development and validation of a computational model for investigation of wrist biomechanics. *Annals of Biomedical Engineering*. 2011; 39:2807–15.
8. Moritomo H. The distal interosseous membrane: current concepts in wrist anatomy and biomechanics. *The Journal of Hand Surgery*. 2012; 37:1501–7.
9. Altman E. The ulnar side of the wrist: clinically relevant anatomy and biomechanics. *Journal of Hand Therapy*. 2016; 29:111–22.
10. Boone DC, Azen SP, Lin C-M, Spence C, Baron C, Lee L. Reliability of goniometric measurements. *Physical Therapy*. 1978; 58:1355–60.
11. Mayerson NH, Milano RA. Goniometric measurement reliability in physical medicine. *Archives of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation*. 1984; 65:92–4.
12. Riddle DL, Rothstein JM, Lamb RL. Goniometric reliability in a clinical setting: shoulder measurements. *Physical Therapy*. 1987; 67:668–73.
13. Booth FW. Physiologic and biochemical effects of immobilization on muscle. *Clinical Orthopaedics and Related Research*. 1987; 219:15–21.
14. Eiff MP, Smith AT, Smith GE. Early mobilization versus immobilization in the treatment of lateral ankle sprains. *American Journal of Sports Medicine*. 1994; 22:83–8.
15. Akeson WH, Amiel D, Mechanic GL, Woo SL, Harwood FL, Hamer ML. Collagen cross-linking alterations in the joint contractures: changes in the reducible cross-links in periarticular connective tissue after 9 weeks immobilization. *Connective Tissue Research*. 1977; 5:15–9.
16. Akeson WH, Amiel D, Abel MF, et al. Effects of immobilization on joints. *Clinical Orthopaedics*. 1987; 219:28–37.
17. Akeson WH, Amiel D, Woo SL-Y. Immobility effects on synovial joints: the pathomechanics of joint contracture. *Biorheology*. 1980; 17:95–110.
18. Woo SL-Y, Matthews J, Akeson WH, Amiel D, Convery R. Connective tissue response to immobility: a correlative study of biochemical and biomechanical measurements of normal and immobilized rabbit knee. *Arthritis and Rheumatism*. 1975; 18:257–64.
19. Trumble TE, Gilbert M, McCallister WV. Endoscopic versus open surgical treatment of carpal tunnel syndrome. *Neurosurgery Clinics of North America*. 2001; 12:255–66.
20. de Quervain F. Uber eine Form von chronischer Tendovaginitis. *Cor-Bl f Schweiz Aertze*. 1895; 25:389–94.
21. Saar JD, Grothaus PC. Dupuytren's disease: an overview. *Plastic and Reconstructive Surgery*. 2000; 106:125–36.
22. Yi IS, Johnson G, Moneim MS. Etiology of Dupuytren's disease. *Hand Clinics*. 1999; 15.
23. Ring D, Jupiter JB, Herndon JH. Acute fractures of the scaphoid. *The Journal of the American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons*. 2000; 8:225–31.
24. Perron AD, Brady WJ, Keats TE, Hersh RE. Orthopedic pitfalls in the ED: scaphoid fracture. *American Journal of Emergency Medicine*. 2001; 19:310–6.
25. Dunn D. Chronic regional pain syndrome, type 1: Part I. *AORN Journal*. 2000; 72:421–4, 6, 8–32, 35, 37–42, 44–49, 52–58.
26. Phillips ME. OT treatment for complex regional pain syndrome. *OT Practice*. 2001; August 20.


© Herzlinde Vancura/Dreamstime.com

CHAPTER 23

Hip Joint Complex

CHAPTER OBJECTIVES

At the completion of this chapter, the reader will be able to:

1. Describe the anatomy of the joints, ligaments, muscles, blood, and nerve supply that comprise the region.
2. Describe the biomechanics of the hip complex, including the open- and close-packed positions, muscle force couples, and the static and dynamic stabilizers.
3. Describe the relationship between muscle imbalance and functional performance of the hip.
4. Summarize the various causes of hip dysfunction.
5. Describe and demonstrate intervention strategies and techniques based on clinical findings and established goals by the physical therapist.
6. Evaluate the intervention effectiveness to make suggestions to the physical therapist to modify an intervention as needed.
7. Teach an effective home program, and instruct the patient in its use.

Overview

Due to its location, design, and function, the hip joint transmits truly impressive loads, both tensile and compressive. Loads of up to eight times body weight have been demonstrated in the hip joint during jogging, with potentially greater loads present during vigorous athletic competition.[1] Fortunately, the structures about the hip are uniquely adapted to transfer such forces.

Anatomy

The anatomy of the hip provides this complex with a fine balance between mobility and stability. Any imbalance between these two variables can leave the hip joint and surrounding tissues prone to soft tissue injuries, impingement syndromes, and joint dysfunctions.

Bones

The hip joint is the articulation between the rounded head of the femur and the acetabulum of the pelvis (**FIGURE 23.1**). Three bones—the ilium, ischium, and pubis—fuse to form each of the two innominate bones (**FIGURE 23.2**). The two innominate bones form an anatomic ring with the pelvis.

Acetabulum

The acetabulum of the innominate is formed at the point where the ilium, ischium, and pubis converge. The acetabulum encloses the head of the femur at the

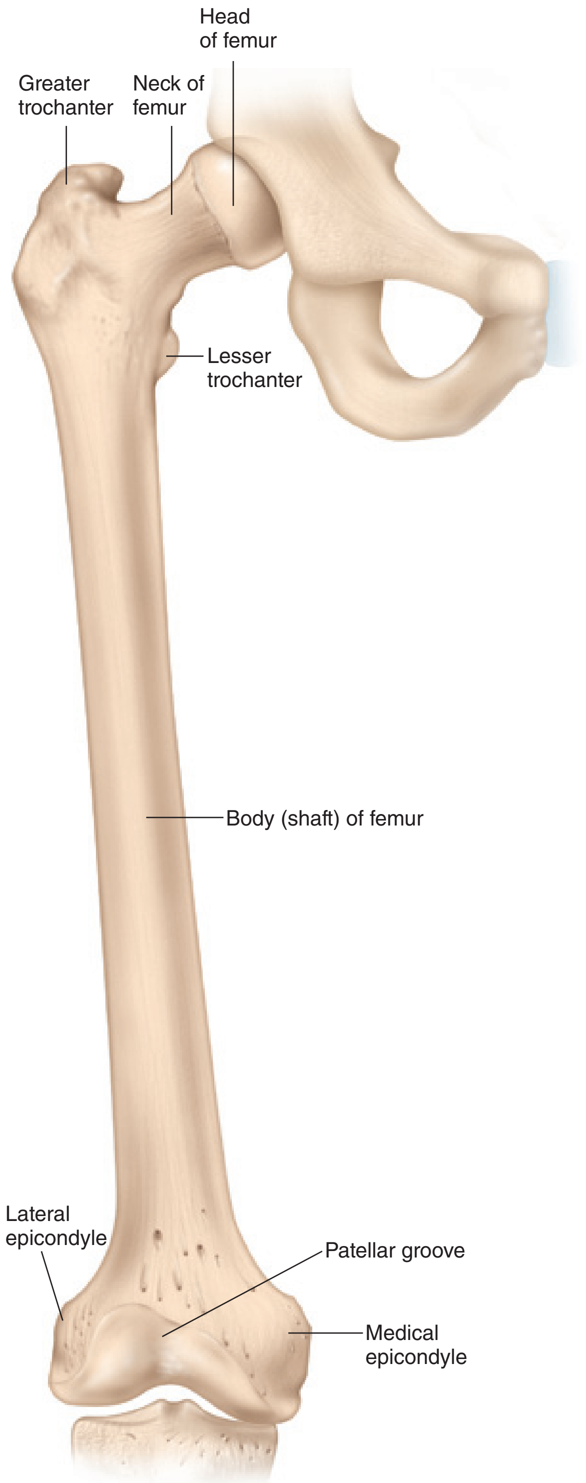


FIGURE 23.1 Skeletal anatomy of the hip joint.

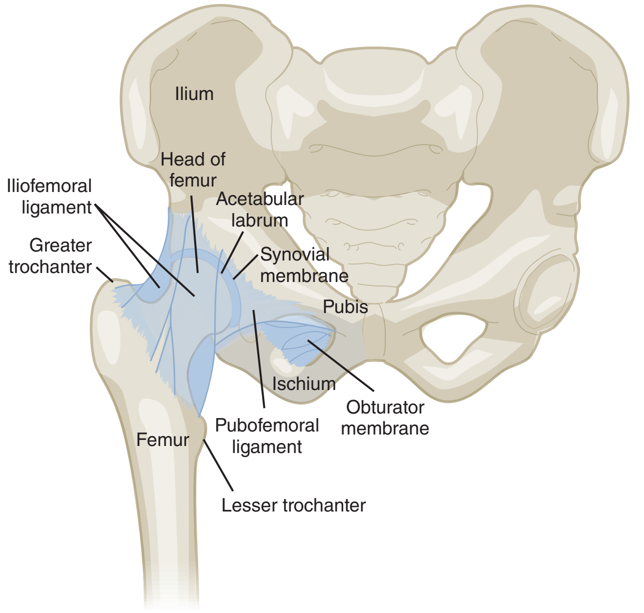


FIGURE 23.2 The hip and pelvis.

hip joint. The superior surface of the acetabulum, the lunate surface, is heavily lined with articulate cartilage and is the only part of the acetabulum that normally contacts the femoral head. The acetabular labrum, a ring of fibrocartilage that surrounds the outer rim of the acetabulum, deepens the acetabulum and increases articular congruence by creating a partial vacuum.

Proximal Femur

The femur is the longest bone in the body. The proximal aspect of the femur is composed of a head, neck, and shaft. The proximal shaft of the femur and the femoral neck have a plentiful blood supply from the medial circumflex femoral artery and its branches. The vascular supply to the femoral head is tenuous and provided largely by two sources:

- Branches of the medial and lateral circumflex femoral arteries
- The artery of the ligament of the head of the femur (foveal artery), a branch of the obturator artery, which is typically present within the ligament of the head of the femur

A loss of blood supply to the femoral head can lead to avascular necrosis (AVN). AVN may occur after hip fracture in about 65 to 85 percent of patients.[2]

Muscles

The hip joint is surrounded by a large number of muscles (**FIGURE 23.3**), which enable the joint to move through a wide range of motion (ROM), but which are prone to strains. The hip actions and muscles are outlined in **TABLE 23.1**.

Hip Flexors

The hip flexors are used for a variety of everyday functional activities such as advancing the lower extremity during running and lifting the leg to go upstairs.[3] Efficient performance of these hip flexion

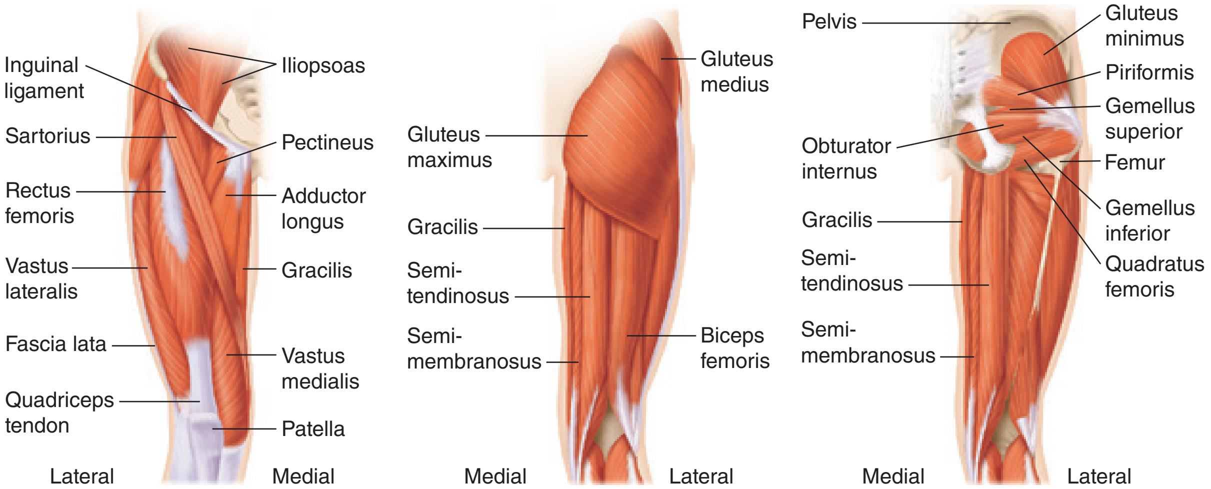


FIGURE 23.3 Muscles of the thigh.

activities is highly dependent on the stabilizing forces provided by the abdominal muscles.[3]

Iliopsoas The iliopsoas muscle, formed by the iliacus and psoas major muscles, is the most powerful of the hip flexors. This muscle also functions as a weak adductor and external rotator of the hip. The iliopsoas attaches to the hip joint capsule, thus affording it some support. It is worth remembering that any muscle with the potential to flex the hip has the same potential to anteriorly tilt the pelvis because, from a closed-chain perspective, an anterior pelvic tilt is hip flexion.[3]

Rectus Femoris The reflected head of the rectus femoris attaches to the hip capsule; therefore, an injury to it can cause a capsular adhesion of the hip. The rectus femoris combines movements of flexion at the hip and extension at the knee. It functions more effectively as a hip flexor when the knee is flexed, as when a person kicks a ball.

Tensor Fascia Latae The tensor fascia latae (TFL) arises from the outer lip of the iliac crest and the lateral surface of the anterior superior iliac spine (ASIS). Over the flattened lateral surface of the thigh, the fascia latae thickens to form a strong band, the iliotibial tract.[4] (See Chapter 24.) When the hip is flexed, the TFL is anterior to the greater trochanter and helps maintain the hip in flexion by counteracting the backward pull of the gluteus maximus. As the hip extends, the TFL moves posteriorly over the greater trochanter to assist in hip extension. The TFL also assists in abducting and internally rotating the hip.

Sartorius The sartorius muscle is the longest muscle in the body. The sartorius is responsible for flexion, abduction, external rotation of the hip, and some degree of knee flexion.

Hip Extensors

The powerful hip extensors are used for functional activities involving upward and forward propulsion of the body such as for jumping, running, stair climbing, and transitioning from sitting to standing. With the femur well stabilized, activation of a force couple between the hip extensors and abdominal muscles can also posteriorly tilt the pelvis.[3]

Gluteus Maximus The gluteus maximus is the largest and most important hip extensor and external rotator of the hip. The muscle consists of a superficial and deep portion. The larger, superficial portion of this muscle inserts at the proximal part of the iliotibial band (ITB), while the deep portion inserts into the gluteal tuberosity of the femur. The inferior gluteal nerve, which innervates the muscle, is located on the deep portion. The gluteus maximus is usually active only when the hip is in flexion, as during stair climbing or cycling, or when extension of the hip is resisted.[4] In addition to extending the hip, the gluteus maximus can also perform the last 20 or 30 degrees of knee extension, provided the foot is in firm contact with the ground, by thrusting the hips forward to move the line of gravity and hence the femur forward, producing an extension movement at the knee. The use of such proximal musculature to help extend the knee is a valuable substitution technique for those with knee

TABLE 23.1 Muscles Acting Across the Hip Joint

Muscle	Origin	Insertion	Innervation	Action
Adductor brevis	External aspect of the body and inferior ramus of the pubis	By an aponeurosis to the line from the greater trochanter of the linea aspera of the femur	Obturator nerve, L3	Hip adduction; assists with hip flexion
Adductor longus	Pubic crest and symphysis	Through an aponeurosis to the middle third of the linea aspera of the femur	Obturator nerve, L3	Hip adduction and flexion; assists with hip internal rotation
Adductor magnus	Inferior ramus of the pubis, ramus of the ischium, and inferolateral aspect of the ischial tuberosity	Through an aponeurosis to the linea aspera and adductor tubercle of the femur	Obturator nerve and tibial portion of the sciatic nerve, L2–L4	Hip adduction; assists with hip internal rotation (posterior head), hip extension (anterior head)
Biceps femoris (long head)	Arises from the sacrotuberous ligament and posterior aspect of the ischial tuberosity	Via a tendon, on the lateral aspect of the head of the fibula, the lateral condyle of the tibial tuberosity, the lateral collateral ligament, and the deep fascia of the leg	Tibial portion of the sciatic nerve, S1	Hip extension; assists with hip adduction and external rotation
Gemelli (superior and inferior)	Superoposterior surface of the spine of the ischium, inferior-upper part of the tuberosity of the ischium	Superoinferior-medial surface of the greater trochanter	Sacral plexus, L5–S1	Hip external rotation
Gluteus maximus	Posterior gluteal line of the ilium, iliac crest, aponeurosis of the erector spinae, dorsal surface of the lower part of the sacrum, side of the coccyx, sacrotuberous ligament, and intermuscular fascia	Iliotibial tract of the fascia lata, gluteal tuberosity of the femur	Inferior gluteal nerve, S1–S2	Hip extension; assists with hip adduction (posterior fibers)
Gluteus medius	Outer surface of the ilium between the iliac crest and the posterior gluteal line, anterior gluteal line, and fascia	Lateral surface of the greater trochanter	Superior gluteal nerve, L5	Hip abduction; assists with hip extension, external rotation (posterior fibers), internal rotation (anterior fibers)

TABLE 23.1 Muscles Acting Across the Hip Joint *(continued)*

Muscle	Origin	Insertion	Innervation	Action
Gluteus minimus	Outer surface of the ilium between the anterior and inferior gluteal lines, and the margin of the greater sciatic notch	A ridge laterally situated on the anterior surface of the greater trochanter	Superior gluteal nerve, L5	Hip abduction; assists with external rotation (posterior fibers), internal rotation (anterior fibers)
Gracilis	The body and inferior ramus of the pubis	The anterior-medial aspect of the shaft of the proximal tibia, just proximal to the tendon of the semitendinosus	Obturator nerve, L2	Hip adduction; assists with hip flexion, internal rotation
Iliacus	Superior two-thirds of the iliac fossa, upper surface of the lateral part of the sacrum	Fibers converge with tendon of the psoas major to lesser trochanter	Femoral nerve, L2	Hip flexion and external rotation
Obturator externus	Rami of the pubis, ramus of the ischium, medial two-thirds of the outer surface of the obturator membrane	Trochanteric fossa of the femur	Obturator nerve, L4	Assists with hip adduction and external rotation
Obturator internus	Internal surface of the anterolateral wall of the pelvis, and obturator membrane	Medial surface of the greater trochanter	Sacral plexus, S1	Assists with hip external rotation
Pectineus	Pecten pubis	Along a line leading from the lesser trochanter to the linea aspera	Femoral or obturator or accessory obturator nerves, L2	Hip flexion and adduction; assists with hip internal rotation
Piriformis	Anterior sacrum, gluteal surface of the ilium, capsule of the sacroiliac joint, and sacrotuberous ligament	Upper border of the greater trochanter of the femur	Sacral plexus, S1	Hip external rotation (at less than 60 degrees hip flexion) and hip internal rotation (at 90 degrees hip flexion)
Psoas major	Transverse processes of all the lumbar vertebrae, bodies, and intervertebral disks of the lumbar vertebrae	Lesser trochanter of the femur	Lumbar plexus, L2–L3	Hip flexion and external rotation

(continues)

TABLE 23.1 Muscles Acting Across the Hip Joint *(continued)*

Muscle	Origin	Insertion	Innervation	Action
Quadratus femoris	Ischial body next to the ischial tuberosity	Quadrate tubercle on femur	Nerve to quadratus femoris	Hip external rotation
Rectus femoris	By two heads, from the anterior inferior iliac spine, and a reflected head from the groove above the acetabulum	Base of the patella	Femoral nerve, L3–L4	Hip flexion
Sartorius	Anterior superior iliac spine and notch below it	Upper part of the medial surface of the tibia in front of the gracilis	Femoral nerve, L2–L3	Hip flexion; assists with hip abduction, and external rotation
Semimembra-nosus	Ischial tuberosity	Posterior-medial aspect of the medial condyle of the tibia	Tibial nerve, L5–S1	Hip extension and internal rotation
Semitendinosus	Ischial tuberosity	Upper part of the medial surface of the tibia behind the attachment of the sartorius and below that of the gracilis	Tibial nerve, L5–S1	Hip extension and internal rotation
Tensor fasciae latae	Outer lip of the iliac crest and lateral surface of the anterior superior iliac spine	Iliotibial tract	Superior gluteal nerve, L4–L5	Hip flexion and abduction

extensor paralysis or a prosthetic leg who lack true knee extensors.[3]

Hamstrings The hamstrings muscle group, which have a common origin on the lateral aspect of the ischial tuberosity, consists of the biceps femoris, the semimembranosus, and the semitendinosus. (See Chapter 24.) All three muscles of the hamstring complex (except for the short head of the biceps) work with the posterior adductor magnus and the gluteus maximus to extend the hip. The hamstrings also flex the knee and weakly adduct the hip. The long head of the biceps femoris aids in external rotation of the thigh and leg; the more medial semimembranosus and semitendinosus muscles assist with internal rotation of the thigh and leg. When the hamstrings contract, their forces are exerted at both the hip and knee joints simultaneously, although they can move only one of these joints at any one time. Both the extensibility and maximal force generated by the hamstrings are highly dependent on the position of the hip.

- *Extensibility.* Adaptive shortening of the hamstrings is a common occurrence, and in extreme cases can produce either a knee flexion contracture or an extreme posterior pelvic tilt and flattened lumbar spine, which increases the likelihood of a posterior herniated intervertebral disk. Due to these potential stresses, it is important that the physical therapist assistant (PTA) stabilize the pelvis while stretching the hamstrings to avoid posteriorly tilting the pelvis and overstretching the connective tissue in the lumbar region.

- *Maximal force generated.* Most functional activities of the lower extremity combine the motions of either hip flexion and knee flexion, or hip extension and knee extension. For example, when climbing a hill, the combination of hip flexion and knee flexion is used, followed by hip extension and knee extension. A similar combination is used during running.

In upright running, which can be a key aggravating factor in athletic populations, the hamstrings contract eccentrically to decelerate knee extension in the terminal swing phase with peak force occurring in late swing, and a second peak reported in early stance.[5] Energy storage in the late swing to early stance stretch/shorten cycle is likely to be a major contributor to hamstring origin overuse injury, and the eccentric/concentric transition is associated with higher hamstring loads.[6] An individual's running style can also negatively impact the hamstrings. For example, running with a forward trunk lean, over striding, or hill running all put extra stress through the hamstrings.

Adductor Magnus: Extensor Head The extensor head portion of the adductor magnus is sometimes considered functionally as a hamstring due to its anatomic alignment.

Hip Abductors

The most frequent demands placed on the hip abductors occur while walking. (See Chapter 7.) In addition, the hip abductors can hike the hip when working concentrically and can lower the pelvis when working eccentrically.

Gluteus Medius The gluteus medius is the main abductor of the hip and a primary stabilizer of the hip and pelvis. Due to its shape and function, the gluteus medius is known as the deltoid of the hip. On the deep surface of this muscle is located the superior gluteal nerve and the superior and inferior gluteal vessels. The muscle can be divided into two functional parts: an anterior portion and a posterior portion. The anterior portion works to flex, abduct, and internally rotate the hip. The posterior portion extends and externally rotates the hip. The muscle also provides pelvic support during one-legged stance, and functions as a decelerator of hip adduction.

Gluteus Minimus The gluteus minimus is a rather thin muscle situated between the gluteus medius muscle and the external surface of the ilium. In addition to abducting the hip, it is a major internal rotator of the femur. During internal rotation, it receives assistance from the TFL, semitendinosus, semimembranosus, and gluteus medius.

The TFL is also considered a hip abductor.

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> The attachments of the gluteus medius and gluteus minimus to the greater trochanter of the femur significantly increase the internal moment arm of these muscles for abduction. This makes such activities as single limb support during gait based more on the moment arm length and less on muscle force.[3]

Hip External Rotators

The external rotators express their primary function when the lower limb is in contact with the ground. For example, during cutting motions while running, the necessary rotation of the pelvis is performed by this muscle group. In addition to the gluteus maximus, the hip external rotators include the following muscles.

Piriformis The piriformis is the most superior of the external rotators of the hip. The piriformis is an external rotator of the hip at less than 60 degrees of hip flexion. At 90 degrees of hip flexion, the piriformis reverses its muscle action, becoming an internal rotator and abductor of the hip. The piriformis, with its close association with the sciatic nerve, can be a common source of buttock and leg pain.

Obturator Internus The obturator internus is normally an external rotator of the hip and an internal rotator of the ilium, but becomes an abductor of the hip at 90 degrees of hip flexion.[7]

Obturator Externus The obturator externus, named for its location external to the pelvis, is an adductor and external rotator of the hip.[4]

Gemelli The superior and inferior gemelli muscles are considered accessories to the obturator internus tendon. The superior gemellus is the smaller of the two. Both the gemelli function as minor external rotators of the hip.[4]

Quadratus Femoris The quadratus femoris muscle is a flat, quadrilateral muscle, located between the inferior gemellus and the superior aspect of the adductor magnus. The quadratus femoris is an external rotator of the hip.

Hip Adductors

The adductors of the hip are found on the medial aspect of the joint. The primary function of this muscle group is to create an adduction torque, bringing the lower extremity toward the midline.[3] This adduction torque can also bring the pubis symphysis region of the pelvis closer to the femur.[3] From the anatomic position, the adductors are also considered hip flexor muscles.

Adductor Magnus The adductor magnus is the most powerful adductor, and it is active to variable amounts in all hip motions except abduction. In addition, regardless of the position of the hip, the extensor head of the adductor magnus is a powerful hip extensor. Due to its size, the adductor magnus is less likely to be injured than the other hip adductors.

Adductor Longus During resisted adduction, the adductor longus is the most prominent muscle of the adductors and forms the medial border of the femoral triangle. The adductor longus can function as either a hip flexor or a hip extensor, depending on the position of the hip, which affects the line of pull of the muscle, placing it either posterior to the medial-lateral axis of the hip (extensor) or anterior to the medial-lateral axis of the hip (flexor).[3] The adductor longus also assists with external rotation, extension, and internal rotation in other positions. The adductor longus is commonly strained.

Adductor Brevis The adductor brevis, which is the smallest and shortest of the three short adductor muscles, occupies the middle layer of the adductors, just deep to the adductor longus. The adductor brevis assists with hip adduction and hip flexion.

Gracilis The gracilis is the most superficial and medial of the hip adductor muscles. It is also the longest. The gracilis functions to adduct and flex the thigh, and flex and internally rotate the leg.

Pectineus The pectineus is an adductor, flexor, and internal rotator of the hip. Like the iliopsoas, the pectineus attaches to and supports the joint capsule of the hip.

Ligaments

The femur is held in the acetabulum by five separate ligaments (**TABLE 23.2**).

- The iliofemoral ligament attaches to the anterior inferior iliac spine of the pelvis and the intertrochanteric line of the femur. By limiting the range of hip extension, this ligament, with the assistance of the pubofemoral ligament, allows maintenance of the upright posture and reduces the need for contraction of the hip extensors in balanced stance. The ligament is also thought to limit external rotation, and the superior portion tightens with hip adduction.
- The pubofemoral ligament originates at the superior ramus of the pubis, also attaching to the intertrochanteric line of the femur. Its fibers tighten in extension and abduction, and reinforce the joint capsule along the medial surface.
- The ischiofemoral ligament connects the ischium to the greater trochanter of the femur. This ligament, which tightens with internal rotation of the hip, is more commonly injured than the other hip ligaments. When the hip is flexed, the ligament serves to limit hip adduction.

TABLE 23.2 Major Ligaments of the Spine and Lower Quadrant

Joint	Ligament	Function
Hip	Ligamentum teres	Transports nutrient vessels to the femoral head
	Iliofemoral (Y ligament)	Strongest of the hip ligaments; limits hip extension, external rotation, and the superior portion tightens with hip adduction
	Ischiofemoral	Limits anterior displacement of the femoral head and internal rotation of the hip
	Pubofemoral	Limits hip extension and abduction of the hip
	Transverse acetabular ligament	Consists of the labrum covering the acetabular notch
	Femoral head ligament	Joins the femoral head with the transverse ligament and acetabular notch

Most people can stand for long periods of time using only minimal amounts of muscular energy about the hip. This is because of the relationship between the ligaments of the hip and the line of gravity, the latter of which, when standing in the full upright posture, normally travels just posterior to the medial-lateral axis of rotation of the hips. Due to this arrangement, gravity provides a passive extension torque at the hip, which if not opposed by the hip ligaments that tighten in hip extension, would cause a backward bending of the pelvis over the femurs.[3] This balancing act between the tension in the stretched ligaments and the action of gravity is so effective that it can enable an individual with paralysis of the lower extremities to stand with the aid of crutches and braces at the knees and ankles.[3]

Kinesiology

The hip joint is classified as an unmodified ovoid (ball and socket) joint. This organization permits motion in three planes: sagittal (flexion and extension around a transverse axis), frontal (abduction and adduction around an anterior-posterior axis), and transverse (internal and external rotation around a vertical axis), with all three of the axes passing through the center of the femoral head. During these motions, the convex femoral head slides in the direction of the osteokinematic motion. In addition to providing mobility, the hip joint permits a great deal of stability. Most activities involving the hip incur a combination of mobility and stability stresses, but, providing there are no biomechanical imbalances, the hip joint and surrounding tissues deal with these stresses efficiently and effectively.

☑ KEY POINT

Motions about the hip can occur in one of two ways:

- By rotating the femur relative to a stationary or otherwise fixed pelvis (e.g., straight-leg raise)
- By rotating the pelvis relative to a fixed or stationary femur (e.g., bending forward at the waist)

Motions about the hip joint can occur independently; however, the extremes of motion require motion at the lumbar spine and pelvis. End range hip flexion is associated with a posterior rotation of the ilium bone. The end range of hip extension is associated with an anterior rotation of the ilium. Hip abduction and adduction are associated with a lateral tilt of the pelvis.

In the anatomic position, the orientation of the femoral head causes the contact force between the femur and acetabulum to be high in the anterior-superior region of the joint.[1] Because the anterior aspect of the femoral head is somewhat exposed in this position, the joint has more flexibility in flexion than in extension. The hip joints allow six basic motions. Hip flexion averages 110 to 120 degrees, extension 10 to 15 degrees, abduction 30 to 50 degrees, and adduction 25 to 30 degrees. Hip external rotation averages 40 to 60 degrees and internal rotation averages 30 to 40 degrees (**TABLE 23.3**).

☑ KEY POINT

A hip flexion contracture is a limitation of passive hip extension caused by a lack of extensibility of the muscles or ligaments of the hip. Hip flexion contractures are more common in sedentary individuals or those confined to a wheelchair. The hip flexed posture prevents the hip from dissipating the compression forces that act through it, creating abnormal wear and tear on the joint.

The most stable position of the hip is the normal standing position: hip extension, slight abduction, and slight internal rotation. The commonly cited open-packed (resting) positions of the hip are between 10 and 30 degrees of flexion, 10 and 30 degrees of abduction, and 0 and 5 degrees of external rotation. According to Cyriax,[8,9] the capsular pattern of the hip is a marked limitation of flexion, abduction, and internal rotation. Kaltenborn[10] considered the

TABLE 23.3 Normal End Feels at the Hip

Motion	End Feel
Flexion	Tissue approximation or tissue stretch
Extension	Tissue stretch
Abduction	Tissue stretch
Adduction	Tissue approximation or tissue stretch
External rotation	Capsular stretch
Internal rotation	Capsular stretch

capsular pattern at the hip to be extension more limited than flexion, internal rotation more limited than external rotation, and abduction more limited than adduction. Bijl and colleagues[11] analyzed the validity of Cyriax's concept of the capsular pattern in the diagnosis of osteoarthritis (OA) of hip and knee in 200 patients and concluded that the capsular pattern cannot be regarded as a valid test for the diagnosis of OA of the hip or knee.

Most studies indicate a total hip joint reaction force of three times body weight when standing on one leg. This total force is created by the body weight itself and the contraction force of the hip abductor muscles (which generates a force two times body weight). These large forces are tolerated well in the healthy hip, but in a person with painful OA in the hip, these forces can aggravate the joint and lead to further inflammation and degeneration. To offset these joint reaction forces, the patient can be given a cane to hold in the hand opposite the painful hip. The cane serves to reduce the demands on the hip abductor muscles of the involved hip and thereby reduces the compression forces through the involved hip.

Lumbopelvic Rhythm

Bending forward at the waist requires a coordinated movement among the lumbar spine, pelvis, and hips. As the head and upper trunk initiate flexion, the pelvis shifts posteriorly to maintain the center of gravity over the base of support. The trunk continues to forward bend, being controlled by the extensor muscles of the spine, until approximately 45 degrees, at which point the posterior ligaments become taut and the facets of the zygapophyseal joints approximate. Once all of the vertebral segments are at the end of the range and stabilized by the posterior ligaments and facets, the pelvis begins to rotate forward (anterior pelvic tilt), being controlled eccentrically by the gluteus maximus and hamstring muscles. The pelvis continues to anteriorly rotate until the full length of the muscles is reached. The return to the upright position begins with the hip extensor muscles rotating the pelvis posteriorly through reverse muscle action, then the back-extensor muscles extending the spine from the lumbar region upward. An assessment of the lumbopelvic rhythm can alert the clinician to the primary area of a particular limitation. During normal forward bending, the patient should be able to touch his or her toes without bending the knees and with a flattening of the lordosis. However, if the hamstrings are adaptively shortened, toe touching cannot be accomplished even with a flattening of the lordosis. If the tightness is located in the low back, as the patient bends forward, no flattening of the lordosis occurs, and the patient is unable to touch the toes even with good hamstring flexibility.

Collum/Inclination Angle

The frontal plane angle between the femoral shaft and the neck is called the collum/inclination angle. This angle is approximately 125 degrees (**FIGURE 23.4**), but can vary with body types. The collum angle has an important influence on the hips. In a tall person the collum angle is larger; the opposite is true with a shorter individual. An increase in the collum angle causes the femoral head to be directed more superiorly in the acetabulum, and is known as coxa valga. Coxa valga has the following effects at the hip joint:

- It changes the orientation of the joint reaction force from the normal vertical direction to one that is almost parallel to the femoral shaft.[12] This lateral displacement of the joint reaction force reduces the weight-bearing surface, resulting in an increase in stress applied across joint surfaces not specialized to sustain such loads.
- It shortens the moment arm of the hip abductors, placing them in a position of mechanical disadvantage. This causes the abductors to contract more vigorously to stabilize the pelvis, producing an increase in the joint reaction force.
- It increases the overall length of the lower extremity, affecting other components in the kinetic chain (genu varum).

If the collum angle is reduced, it is known as coxa vara. The mechanical effects of coxa vara are, for the most part, the opposite of those found in coxa valga:

- It changes the orientation of the joint reaction force. The more horizontal position of the proximal

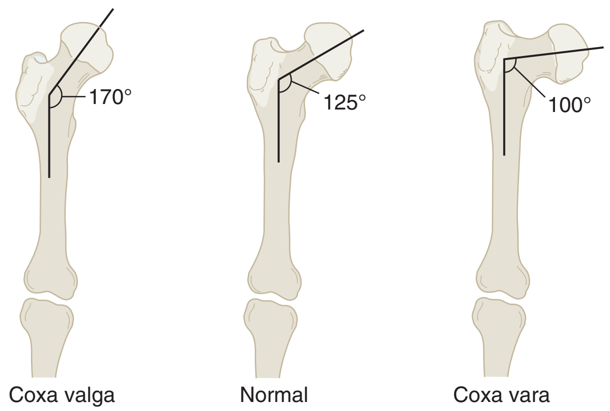


FIGURE 23.4 Collum angle.

femoral physis increases not only the resultant shear force component of the hip articulation, but also the net medial compressive force on the metaphyseal bone of the femoral neck.

- It lengthens the movement arm of the hip abductors, placing them in a position of mechanical disadvantage.
- It decreases the overall length of the lower extremity, affecting other components in the kinetic chain (genu valgum).

Anteversion/Retroversion

Femoral alignment in the transverse plane also influences the mechanics of the hip joint.

☑ KEY POINT

Version is the normal angular difference between the transverse axis of each end of a long bone. The terms *femoral anteversion* and *femoral retroversion* refer to the relationship between the neck of the femur and the femoral shaft, ending in the femoral condyles, that dictates the position of the femoral head when the knee is pointing straight ahead.

Anteversion (**FIGURE 23.5**) is defined as the anterior position of the axis through the femoral condyles. Retroversion is defined as a femoral neck axis that is parallel or posterior to the condylar axis. The normal range for femoral alignment in the transverse plane in adults is 15 degrees of anteversion.

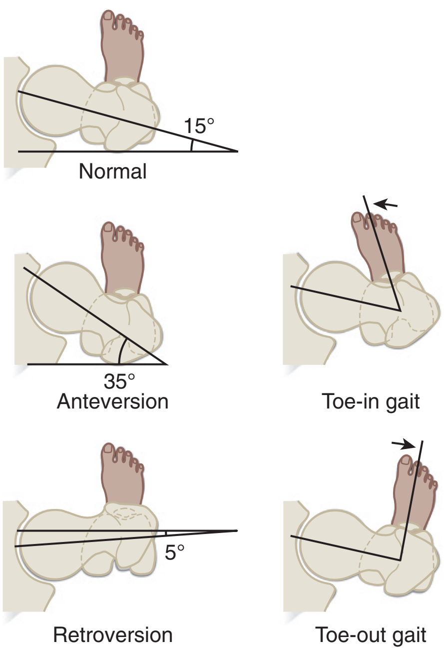


FIGURE 23.5 Femoral anteversion and retroversion.

Excessive anteversion directs the femoral head toward the anterior aspect of the acetabulum when the femoral condyles are aligned in their normal orientation, producing a relatively shorter leg. Subjects with excessive anteversion usually have more hip internal rotation ROM than external rotation, and they gravitate to the typical "frog-sitting" (W-sitting) posture as a position of comfort. There is also associated genu valgum and in-toeing while weight bearing.

Excessive retroversion (refer to Figure 23.5) directs the femoral head toward the posterior aspect of the acetabulum when the femoral condyles are aligned in their normal orientation, producing a relatively longer leg. Subjects with excessive anteversion usually have more hip external rotation ROM than internal rotation. There is also associated out-toeing while weight bearing.

Examination

Given that the hip region is also a common source of symptom referral from other regions, a physical therapist's (PT's) examination of the hip rarely occurs in isolation, and almost always involves an assessment of the lumbar spine, pelvis, and knee joint complex. The PT's examination of the hip typically follows the outline in **TABLE 23.4**.

Range of Motion

Both the passive and active physiological ranges of motion can be measured using a goniometer (**TABLE 23.5**), which has been shown to provide a satisfactory level of intraobserver reliability.[13–15]

The evidence-based special tests of the hip are outlined in **TABLE 23.6**.

Other special tests commonly used by PTs include the following:

Craig Test. The Craig test is used to assess femoral anteversion/retroversion. With the patient positioned in prone with the knee flexed to 90 degrees, the clinician rotates the hip through the full ranges of hip internal and external rotation while palpating the greater trochanter and determining the point in the range at which the greater trochanter becomes the most prominent laterally. If at this point the angle is greater than 8 to 15 degrees in the direction of internal rotation, when measured from the vertical and long axis of the tibia, the

TABLE 23.4 Examination of the Hip Joint

I. History.
II. Observation and inspection.
III. Upper quarter scan as appropriate.
IV. Examination of movements. Active range of motion (AROM) with passive overpressure of the following movements:
- Hip flexion, extension, abduction, adduction, internal rotation, and external rotation
- Knee flexion and extension

V. Resisted isometric movements:
- Hip flexion, extension, abduction, adduction, internal rotation, and external rotation
- Knee flexion and extension

VI. Palpation.
VII. Neurological tests as appropriate (reflexes, sensory scan, peripheral nerve assessment).
VIII. Joint mobility tests:
- Lateral distraction
- Quadrant (scour) test

IX. Special tests (refer to Table 23.6).
X. Diagnostic imaging.

TABLE 23.5 Goniometric Techniques for the Hip

Joint	Motion	Axis	Stationary Arm	Movable Arm	Normal Ranges (Degrees)	End Feel
Hip	Flexion	Over the lateral aspect of the hip joint using the greater trochanter of the femur for reference	Lateral midline of the pelvis	Lateral midline of the femur using the lateral epicondyle for reference	0–125	Soft tissue approximation or firm
	Extension	Over the lateral aspect of the hip joint using the greater trochanter of the femur for reference	Lateral midline of the pelvis	Lateral midline of the femur using the lateral epicondyle for reference	0–30	Firm, capsular
	Abduction	Over the anterior superior iliac spine (ASIS) of the extremity being measured	Aligned with an imaginary horizontal line extending from one ASIS to the other ASIS	Anterior midline of the femur using the midline of the patella for reference	0–40	Firm, capsular

TABLE 23.5 Goniometric Techniques for the Hip *(continued)*

Joint	Motion	Axis	Stationary Arm	Movable Arm	Normal Ranges (Degrees)	End Feel
	Adduction	Over the ASIS of the extremity being measured	Aligned with an imaginary horizontal line extending from one ASIS to the other ASIS	Anterior midline of the femur using the midline of the patella for reference	0–20	Soft or firm
	Internal rotation	Anterior aspect of the patella	Perpendicular to the floor or parallel to the supporting surface	Anterior midline of the lower leg using the crest of the tibia and a point midway between the two malleoli for reference	0–40	Firm
	External rotation	Anterior aspect of the patella	Perpendicular to the floor or parallel to the supporting surface	Anterior midline of the lower leg using the crest of the tibia and a point midway between the two malleoli for reference	0–50	Firm

TABLE 23.6 Evidence-Based Special Tests of the Hip Joint Complex

Name of Test	Brief Description	Positive Findings	Evidence-Based
Internal rotation-flexion-axial compression maneuver[a]	The patient is supine. Clinician flexes and internally rotates the hip, then applies an axial compression force through the femur.	Provocation of pain is considered positive for an acetabular labrum tear.	Sensitivity: 0.75 Specificity: 0.43
Thomas test (acetabular labrum tear)[a]	The patient is supine. Clinician extends involved extremity from the flexed position.	Provocation of pain is considered positive for an acetabular labrum tear.	Sensitivity: 0.25 Specificity: not provided

(continues)

TABLE 23.6 Evidence-Based Special Tests of the Hip Joint Complex *(continued)*

Name of Test	Brief Description	Positive Findings	Evidence-Based
Flexion-adduction test[b]	The patient is supine with hip flexed to 90 degrees and in neutral rotation. The hip is then allowed to adduct.	Provocation of pain is considered positive for hip disease.	Demonstrated that the test possessed diagnostic utility (sensitivity) for detecting the involved extremity but should not be used in isolation
Positive Trendelenburg test[c]	The patient is standing. The patient lifts one foot off the ground at a time and tries to elevate the pelvis.	Positive if the patient is unable to elevate his or her pelvis on the nonstance side and hold the position for at least 30 seconds.	Sensitivity: 0.23 Specificity: 0.94
Patrick's test[d] (FABER, figure-4 test)	With the patient supine, the clinician flexes, abducts, and externally rotates the involved hip so the lateral ankle is placed just proximal to the contralateral knee. While stabilizing the anterior superior iliac spine, the involved leg is lowered toward the table to end range.	Positive for hip dysfunction if it reproduces the patient's symptoms.	Sensitivity: 0.60 Specificity: 0.18
Scour (quadrant) test[e]	With the patient supine, the clinician passively flexes the symptomatic hip to 90 degrees and then moves the knee toward the opposite shoulder and applies an axial load to the femur.	Positive test if it causes lateral hip pain or groin pain.	Sensitivity: 0.62 Specificity: 0.75
Patellar pubic percussion test[f]	With the patient supine, the clinician percusses (taps) one patella at a time while auscultating the pubic symphysis with a stethoscope.	A positive test for suspected hip fracture is a diminution of the percussion note on the involved side.	Sensitivity: 0.94 Specificity: 0.96

Data from (a) Narvani AA, Tsiridis E, Kendall S, et al: A preliminary report on prevalence of acetabular labrum tears in sports patients with groin pain. *Knee Surg Sports Traumatol Arthrosc* 11:403–8, 2003; (b) Woods D, Macnicol M: The flexion-adduction test: An early sign of hip disease. *J Pediatr Orthop B* 10:180–5, 2001; (c) Woodley SJ, Nicholson HD, Livingstone V, et al: Lateral hip pain: Findings from magnetic resonance imaging and clinical examination. *J Orthop Sports Phys Ther* 38:313–28, 2008; (d) Martin RL, Irrgang JJ, Sekiya JK: The diagnostic accuracy of a clinical examination in determining intra-articular hip pain for potential hip arthroscopy candidates. *Arthroscopy* 24:1013–18, 2008; (e) Sutlive TG, Lopez HP, Schnitker DE, et al: Development of a clinical prediction rule for diagnosing hip osteoarthritis in individuals with unilateral hip pain. *J Orthop Sports Phys Ther* 38:542–50, 2008; and (f) Adams SL, Yarnold PR: Clinical use of the patellar-pubic percussion sign in hip trauma. *Am J Emerg Med* 15:173–5, 1997.

femur is considered to be in anteversion.[16–19] One study[19] showed this test to be accurate to within 4 degrees of intraoperative measurements, for the assessment of femoral anteversion/retroversion and was more accurate than radiographic measurement techniques.

Thomas Test and Modified Thomas Test. The original Thomas test was designed to test the flexibility of the iliopsoas complex. Neither the original test nor the suggested variations have ever been substantiated for reliability, sensitivity, or specificity.

The original test involves positioning the patient in supine, with one knee being held flexed to the chest at the point where the lumbar spine is felt to flex. The clinician assesses whether the thigh of the extended leg maintains full contact with the surface of the bed (**FIGURE 23.6**). If the thigh is raised off the surface of the table, the test is positive and indicates a decrease in flexibility in the rectus femoris or iliopsoas muscles or both. In the modified version of this test, the patient is positioned in sitting at the end of the bed. From this position, the patient is asked to lie back, while bringing both knees against the chest. Once in this position, the patient is instructed to perform a posterior pelvic tilt. While one hip is held in maximum hip flexion by the patient's hands, the tested limb is lowered over the end of the bed toward the floor (**FIGURE 23.7**).

If normal, the thigh should remain parallel with the bed, in neutral rotation, and neither abducted nor adducted, with the lower leg being perpendicular to the thigh and in neutral rotation. There should be 100 to 110 degrees of knee flexion present with the thigh in line with the table. The following deductions can be made:

- If the thigh is raised compared to the table, a decrease in the flexibility of the iliopsoas muscle complex should be suspected.
- If, with the application of overpressure into hip extension, the amount of knee extension increases, the rectus femoris is adaptively shortened.

FIGURE 23.6 Thomas test: part I.

FIGURE 23.7 Thomas test: part II.

- If attempts to correct the hip position result in an increase in the external rotation of the thigh, the decrease in flexibility lies with the iliopsoas.
- If an increase into further knee flexion produces an increase in hip flexion (the thigh rises higher off the bed), the rectus femoris is implicated.

It must be remembered when interpreting the results of this test that the criteria are arbitrary and have been shown to vary between genders and limb dominance and to depend on the types and the levels of activity undertaken by the individual.[20]

Ely's Test. This test is designed to assess the flexibility of the rectus femoris. The patient is positioned in prone, and the knee is passively flexed by the clinician (**FIGURE 23.8**). If the rectus is tight, the hip will flex on the same side and the pelvis will be observed to rotate anteriorly early in the range of knee flexion. The contralateral side is tested for comparison. No diagnostic accuracy studies have been performed to determine the sensitivity and specificity of this test.

Ober Test. The Ober test is used extensively to evaluate the flexibility of the TFL. The patient is placed in the side lying position, and with the hip extended and abducted and the knee flexed to 90 degrees. The clinician releases the proximal part of the tested leg and allows it to drop passively (**FIGURE 23.9**). The test is considered positive for adaptive shortening of the TFL when the leg fails to lower, although no diagnostic accuracy studies have been performed to determine the sensitivity and specificity of this test.

90–90 Straight-Leg Raise. Hamstring length can be assessed with the patient positioned in supine and

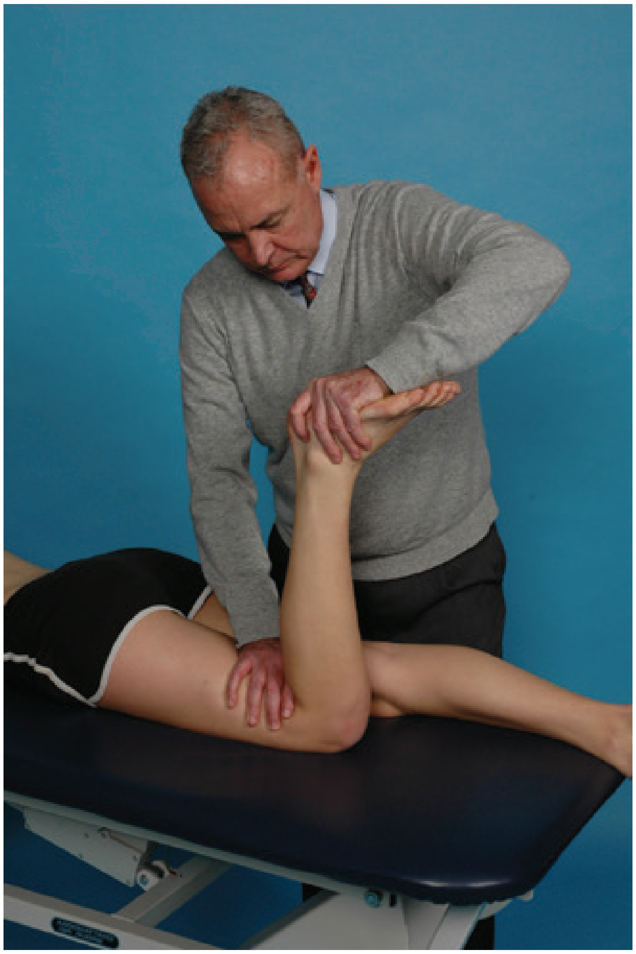


FIGURE 23.8 Ely's test.

the tested leg flexed at the hip and knee to 90 degrees. From this position, the patient is asked to extend the knee of the involved side without extending the hip (**FIGURE 23.10**). A measurement of knee motion can be taken at the first resistance barrier.

FIGURE 23.9 Ober test.

FIGURE 23.10 90–90 Straight-leg raise.

General Intervention Strategies

The hip joint and surrounding tissues are prone to soft tissue injuries, impingement syndromes, muscle imbalances of strength and flexibility, and joint dysfunctions. The hip joint and surrounding tissues are also an area of symptom referral from other regions. The intervention of the hip joint must take into account the influences that the lumbar spine, pelvis, and lower extremities can have on this area. It is imperative that the clinician views the hip as part of a kinetic chain extending from the foot to the lumbar spine. A dysfunction in any part of this kinetic chain can have either a direct or an indirect effect on hip function and symptoms.

Acute Phase

The goals of the acute phase include the following:

- *Protection of the injury site and promotion of healing.* The promotion and progression of healing may involve decreasing the weight-bearing function of the hip through rest and modification of activity, or by using an assistive device. Assistive devices such as crutches or canes may be necessary to offset the load through the hip joint and promote a symmetric gait pattern. Some patients may need to use a walker for maximum functional ambulation and safety.
- *Promotion of pain-free ROM in the entire kinematic chain.* According to patient tolerance, the PT may attempt to remove any other stresses to the hip joint, such as joint restrictions in the

lumbar spine or sacroiliac joint, by using joint mobilizations.

- *Improvement of patient comfort by decreasing pain and inflammation.* During the acute phase, the principles of PRICEMEM (*p*rotection, *r*est, *i*ce, *c*ompression, *e*levation, *m*anual therapy, *e*arly motion, and *m*edication) are applied as appropriate. Elevation of the hip joint usually is not applicable or possible.
- *Maintaining general fitness.* Cardiovascular fitness can be maintained during this phase using an upper body ergometer. If tolerated, a stationary bicycle can be used.
- *Retardation of muscle atrophy and minimization of detrimental effects of immobilization and activity restriction.* The approach during this phase may depend on the specific tissue involved:
  - Contractile tissue lesions are treated with rest, gentle friction massage, gentle isometric exercises, pain-free ROM exercises, and appropriate modalities.
  - Articular lesions are best treated with positioning in the open-packed position (flexion, abduction, and external rotation) and grades I and II joint mobilizations.

Functional Phase

The patient progresses to the functional stage once there is minimal pain and when the ROM is equal to that of the uninvolved limb. The goals of the functional phase include the following:

- *Attaining full range of pain-free motion and restoring normal joint kinematics.* A progressive stretching program is initiated for those muscles that are prone to adaptive shortening. These include the hip flexors (**FIGURE 23.11** and **FIGURE 23.12**) and rectus femoris (**FIGURE 23.13**), piriformis (**FIGURE 23.14** and **FIGURE 23.15**), hamstrings (**FIGURE 23.16** and **FIGURE 23.17**), and TFL and ITB (**FIGURE 23.18**). Self-stretching is taught to the patient. The AROM exercises, initiated during the acute phase, are progressed until the patient demonstrates that they have achieved the maximum range anticipated.
- *Improving neuromuscular control.* These activities usually are performed in weight bearing, provided there are no contraindications (pain or instability) to weight bearing and resistance. Wherever possible, active exercises are performed within a functional context. For example,

FIGURE 23.11 Left hip flexor stretch in standing.

FIGURE 23.12 Left hip flexor stretch in supine.

FIGURE 23.13 Right hip flexor and rectus femoris stretch.

FIGURE 23.14 Supine piriformis stretch.

FIGURE 23.17 Standing hamstring stretch.

FIGURE 23.15 Standing piriformis stretch.

FIGURE 23.16 Supine hamstring stretch.

FIGURE 23.18 Right ITB and TFL stretch.

simultaneous contraction of hip extensors and abductors in weight bearing is the normal coactivation pattern used in early stance-phase gait. Exercises and balance training in standing can be used to reinforce this pattern. Initially, the balance exercises are performed with double limb support and then progressed to single-leg support.

- *Restoration of normal gait mechanics as appropriate.* Once the static weight-bearing exercises in double limb support can be performed, gait activities are introduced. Gait involves the integration of the entire lower kinetic chain. Dysfunctions of gait (see Chapter 7) are typically related to biomechanical alterations occurring during the swing and/or stance phases of gait.[21] Such dysfunctions include pain on weight bearing or movement, joint range restrictions, functional muscle weakness, leg length discrepancy, or deformity. Gait-training procedures for the stance phase involve the use of manual contacts at the pelvis to guide and stretch and to apply joint approximation or resistance. These exercises promote the development of appropriate patterns of neuromuscular control. Variable surfaces can be used for weight-shift practice (**FIGURE 23.19**). Unilateral stance activities may also be performed (**FIGURE 23.20** and **FIGURE 23.21**).

FIGURE 23.20 Unilateral weight-bearing exercise.

FIGURE 23.19 Weight shifting.

Fitterfirst.

FIGURE 23.21 Unilateral weight-bearing exercise.

The essential components of normal swing-phase gait to develop are:

- Forward rotation of the pelvis on swing-phase flexion of the hip
- Pelvic drop of approximately 5 degrees on the side of the swing limb
- Flexion of the hip to a maximum of 30 degrees (activation of hip flexors) with kinematic knee flexion and dorsiflexion

Active hip flexion with adduction, knee flexion, and dorsiflexion in standing simulates the normal swing phase of gait and promotes balance control in weight bearing on the contralateral stance leg.[21] Neuromuscular reeducation exercises for the hip are prescribed to emphasize specific movement patterns and sequencing of muscle contractions. These exercises demand a high level of control and coordination.[22,23] Ambulation activities can be used initially, progressing to more difficult unilateral extremity exercises.

One can improve muscle strength to within normal limits and restore normal muscle force couple relationships. The following exercises are recommended during this phase:

- Quadruped exercises incorporating rocking forward and backward (**FIGURE 23.22**) help to stretch the joint capsule and apply joint compression.
- Lunging (**FIGURE 23.23**), squatting (**FIGURE 23.24**), and hip straddles (**FIGURE 23.25**) simulate weight bearing while increasing ROM and stretching the capsule.
- Open-chain exercises using cuff weights or tubing may be used to develop strength and endurance of all of the hip musculature (**FIGURE 23.26** through **FIGURE 23.31**). The exercises are initially performed using concentric contractions and then advanced to eccentric contractions.

FIGURE 23.22 Quadruped exercise with backward rocking.

FIGURE 23.23 Lunge.

FIGURE 23.24 Squat.

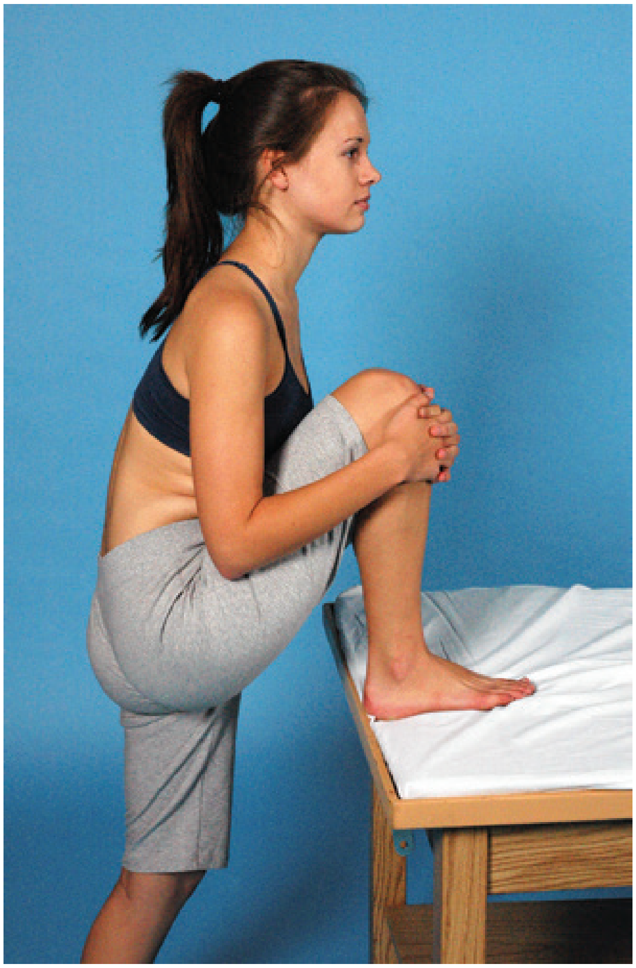


FIGURE 23.25 Straddle.

FIGURE 23.26 Resisted hip adduction.
Reproduced with permission from MediCordz® safety bungee by NZ Manufacturing Inc., USA. Visit, www.ncordz.com.

FIGURE 23.27 Resisted hip abduction.

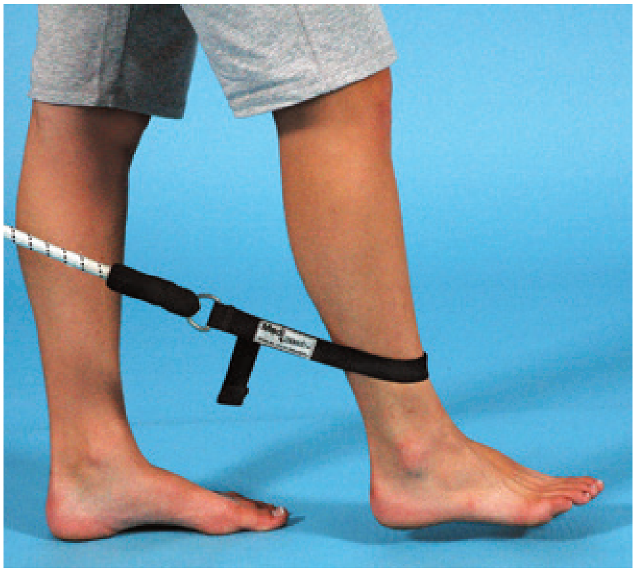


FIGURE 23.28 Resisted hip flexion.
Reproduced with permission from MediCordz® safety bungee by NZ Manufacturing Inc., USA. Visit, www.ncordz.com.

FIGURE 23.29 Resisted hip extension.

FIGURE 23.30 Resisted internal rotation in sitting.

- Bridging utilizes body weight as a resistance force to the hip extensors and abductors. A variety of bridging exercises exist, from the traditional (where the patient lies supine with the hips and knees flexed and the feet resting on the table and then raises the trunk until it is parallel with the thighs) (**FIGURE 23.32**) to the more difficult unilateral bridging exercises (**FIGURE 23.33**). Manually applied resistance can be superimposed on the pelvis or thighs to generate maximal muscular tension in the contracting muscles.
- Strengthening of the gluteus medius muscle is often an important component of the hip rehabilitation program. The gluteus medius can be strengthened in side lying, with the upper leg in slight hip extension and external rotation (**FIGURE 23.34**), or in standing with the pelvic drop exercise (**FIGURE 23.35**). The pelvic drop exercise involves standing on a step with the involved leg and lowering the uninvolved leg off the step while keeping both knees locked.
- The stationary bicycle is used to increase lower extremity strength, endurance, and range during repetitive reciprocal movements of the lower extremities. Stationary bicycling is also effective for increasing ROM at the hip joint. The stationary

FIGURE 23.31 Resisted external rotation in sitting.

FIGURE 23.32 Bridging.

FIGURE 23.33 Unilateral bridging.

FIGURE 23.34 Gluteus medius strengthening.

FIGURE 23.35 Pelvic drop.

bicycle is a convenient mode of exercise for home use; however, the use of vigorous protocols should be carefully monitored for cardiac effects, especially in light of the fact that both blood pressure and heart rates increase markedly during this type of exercise.

- Pool walking, swimming, and kicking also may be incorporated.
- A multihip machine can be introduced as the hip muscles become stronger. Likewise, task-oriented exercise programs (work hardening) should be instituted for the patient who intends to resume a type of employment that requires a predetermined level of work performance.

Common Conditions

The common conditions that can affect the hip joint complex include those that relate to poor biomechanics due to weakness or adaptive shortening, trauma, repetitive activities, or overuse.

Hip Flexion Contracture

A hip flexion contracture is a limitation of passive hip extension caused by a lack of extensibility of the muscles or ligaments of the hip. Whether mild or severe, hip flexion contractures are relatively common impairments in persons with compromised mobility, particularly those who spend a great deal of time sitting or in an otherwise hip-flexed position. A hip-flexed position produces a relative anterior pelvic tilt. Over time, a slackened ligament or muscle will adapt to its shortened position and eventually remain shortened, and the long-term effects of the hip flexion contracture can destabilize the hip and have a negative impact on the lumbar spine and the lower kinetic chain. For example, when a person with a hip flexion contracture attempts to stand upright, the line of gravity shifts anterior to the medial lateral axis of rotation, which in turn disables the passive standing mechanism, and results in the need for continuous activation of the hip and back extensor muscles to maintain an upright position. Also, the compression forces from weight bearing are directed to regions of the hip that are not anatomically designed to dissipate these large forces, creating increased wear and tear on the joint. In an attempt to maintain an upright posture, one of three mechanisms can occur:

- *The lower spine must compensate through overextension*. This results in increased lordosis of the lumbar spine, adaptive shortening of the low back extensor muscles, and an increase in the wear and tear on the lumbar facet joints.

- *The trunk must flex*. Instead of increasing the lordosis, the patient adopts a stooped position (round back).
- *The knee joint must flex*. When the knees are slightly flexed, the compensation at the lumbar spine is less noticeable.

In addition to disturbing posture, hip flexion contractures can have an adverse effect on gait. If the contracture is severe enough, the patient can adopt a knee-flexed, ankle-plantar flexed, and trunk-flexed gait, in which velocity is slowed and high energy costs are imposed.

Intervention

The intervention is based on the severity. If the physician determines that the contracture is amenable to physical therapy, a progressive stretching program is initiated, emphasizing a low load prolonged stretch. Almost all hip flexion contractures include the rectus femoris, sartorius, TFL (ITB), and the soft tissues of the anterior compartment of the hip. Of these, the TFL, the rectus femoris, and the sartorius muscles are the joint muscles particularly responsible for the hip flexion contracture. Prevention is the key and can include the following:

- Prone lying, placing the hips in a neutral or extended position
- Strengthening of the hip extensors to move the hip out of the flexed position into extension and to shift the muscular strength bias of the hip toward extension
- Patient education: encourage standing versus sitting, lying flat, and avoidance of sleeping with pillows under the knees
- Regular stretching of the hip flexors through a home exercise program

Osteoarthritis

OA is defined as focal loss of articular cartilage with variable subchondral bone reaction. OA is common and disabling among older patients around the world.[24] The two clinical sequelae of OA that are most relevant to epidemiological studies are joint pain and functional impairment. The start of symptomatic hip OA is usually insidious, although in a few cases pain starts abruptly. Individual risk factors, which may be associated with a generalized susceptibility to the disorder, include obesity, a family history, and hypermobility. The pain may be felt in the area of the buttock, groin, thigh, or knee and varies in character from a dull ache to sharp stabbing pains. The discomfort is generally related to activity, and exercise may induce bouts of pain that last for several hours. As the disease process progresses, the patient begins to have difficulty climbing stairs with the involved leg and may have difficulty putting on socks or stockings. In advanced disease, a decline in the participation of even mild recreational activities occurs and the patient may complain of severe pain that is present at night or during rest. Stiffness of the hip is usual, particularly after inactivity, and can be the presenting feature.

Conservative Approach

Systematic reviews have concluded that exercise reduces pain and disability in patients with hip OA. Weigl and colleagues[25] showed that strengthening exercises, flexibility, relaxation, and endurance training decreased pain and improved physical function in patients with OA.[26] Studies by van Baar and colleagues[27] showed that exercise improved function and reduced pain in patients with hip OA, but later found that the beneficial effect of exercise declined over time.[26,28] Based on the this research, the intervention goals for hip OA include relieving symptoms, minimizing disability and handicap, and reducing the risk of disease progression. Interventions in the earlier stages include the following:

- *Education and empowerment.* Advising patients about what they can do for themselves is of immense value.
    - Joint protection strategies, including assistive devices for ambulation and modifying chairs and toilet seats to provide an elevated surface. A simple cane can reduce loading on a hip by 20 to 30 percent. In most cases, it will be most beneficial if the cane is held on the unaffected side of the body. Many people with arthritis of the spine or legs are more comfortable wearing athletic shoes or other shoes with good shock-absorbing properties than they are in regular footwear. Shock-absorbing insoles, which are available in sports and shoe shops, may be helpful.
    - Activities to avoid, including those activities associated with high stress through the hip joint (kneeling, squatting). Contact sports and activities such as jogging, which can cause repetitive high impact loading of the hip, are probably best avoided. Patients need to learn an appropriate balance and intersperse periods of activity with rest.

- Promotion of a healthy lifestyle (e.g., weight reduction). Although there is no evidence for the involvement of any dietary factor in the etiopathogenesis of hip OA, it is possible that obesity may accelerate progression or cause more pain. A reduction in weight can significantly improve a patient's symptoms, increase mobility, and improve health status.
- *Modalities for muscle relaxation, pain relief, and anti-inflammation.* Depending on the cause, a variety of modalities can be employed. Thermotherapy is typically used to enhance muscle relaxation and decrease chronic pain whereas acute pain and inflammation respond better to cryptherapy.
- *Modification of activities of daily living and self-care.* This is one of the most important components. Patients are often frightened that use will "wear out" a damaged hip joint and need "permission" to use it. Evidence suggests that although the affected joint will benefit from regular loading to help maintain its integrity, prolonged or heavy activity may cause further damage.
- *Maintaining full range of hip movement, if possible.* In addition to specific frequent exercises for hip ROM, recreations such as swimming or cycling may help. Aquatic therapy can be particularly beneficial for this group of patients.

The patient should be advised to engage in adequate warm-ups before exercising and to pay attention to and respect the limitations of their body and not exercise if in discomfort.

Other measures include the following:

- Manual techniques to mobilize the joint and passive stretches of the capsule, particularly distractive techniques, are helpful to maintain mobility.[29] Following these distractions, a fairly vigorous stretching program into flexion, abduction, and external rotation should be initiated. The FABER position, or cross-legged sitting, is ideal for this, and patients should be encouraged to adopt this position regularly.
- Strengthening exercises are performed for the trunk stabilizers and the major muscle groups of the hip region, especially the gluteus medius.

Medical Intervention

The medical intervention for OA includes:

- Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs)
- Corticosteroid injections
- Topical analgesics
- Surgical joint replacement (total hip arthroplasty and hemiarthroplasty are described later in the chapter)

Muscle Strains

Muscle strains at the hip can occur insidiously or be incurred traumatically. First- and second-degree muscle strains are frequent injuries. The adductors, iliopsoas, rectus abdominis, gluteus medius, and hamstring muscles are commonly involved.

Adductors

The hip adductor muscles, including the gracilis; pectineus; and adductor longus, brevis, and magnus, are the most frequent cause of groin region pain, with the adductor longus being the most commonly injured. There are a number of causative factors for an adductor strain, including a muscular imbalance of the combined action of the muscles stabilizing the hip joint that results from fatigue or an abduction overload. Adductor strains are associated with jumping, running, and twisting activities, particularly when external rotation of the affected leg is an added component of the activity. Soccer players involved with forceful kicking that is stopped by an opponent's foot or by a sliding tackle with an abducted leg are particularly vulnerable to an adductor strain. The signs and symptoms of an adductor strain are easily recognizable:

- Twinging or stabbing pain in the groin area with quick starts and stops
- Edema or ecchymosis several days postinjury
- Pain with passive abduction or manual resistance to hip adduction when tested in different degrees of hip flexion (0 degrees [gracilis], 45 degrees [adductor longus and brevis], and 90 degrees [if combined with adduction, pectineus])
- Possibly a palpable defect in severe ruptures
- Muscle guarding

Intervention Conservative intervention involves the principles of PRICEMEM in the acute stage. This is followed by heat applications, hip adductor isometrics, and gentle stretching during the subacute stage, progressing to a graded resistive program, including concentric and eccentric exercises, proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation (PNF) diagonal motions to promote balance, strength, and flexibility around the joint, and then a gradual return to full activity. Also, the clinician should examine the patient's technique in the required activity, because poor technique can overload and fatigue the adductors.

Iliopsoas

As the strongest flexor of the hip, the iliopsoas is one of the more frequently strained muscles of this region. The mechanism of injury is forced extension of the hip while it is actively flexed. Clinical findings include:

- Complaints of pain with attempts at acceleration and high-stepping activities
- Increased pain with resisted flexion, adduction, and external rotation

Intervention Conservative intervention involves rest and ice during the acute phase, progressing to prone lying, heat, a graded resistive exercise program, and specific instructions on proper warm-up and cool-down. Recovery from this condition can be lengthy, and recurrences are frequent.

Quadriceps

Strains of the quadriceps most commonly involve the rectus femoris and occur during sports involving sprinting, jumping, or kicking. Typically, the patient complains of local pain and tenderness in the anterior thigh, which may be gradual in onset or experienced suddenly during an explosive muscle contraction. Grade I strains result in pain with resisted active contraction and with passive stretching. Grade II strains cause significant pain with passive and unopposed active stretching. Complete tears of the rectus femoris are rare and are usually associated with a palpable defect when the muscle is contracted.

Intervention During the initial period following injury, the principles of PRICEMEM are applied. Pain-free stretching and soft tissue mobilization are instituted early to preserve ROM. Straight-leg raises are initiated in the supine position and are progressed to long sitting. Short arc quad sets in pain-free ranges are expanded to full range as tolerated. Closed-kinetic-chain exercises at submaximal weight are initiated in short arcs and progressed to full range. Both concentric and eccentric exercises are performed. Attention must be given to hip flexor and hamstring strength and flexibility to ensure correct muscular balance.

Hamstrings

The hamstrings are the most commonly strained muscles of the hip, especially in running sports. The location of hamstring tendon pathology may vary—midportion or insertional/proximal. A hamstring tear is typically partial and commonly takes place during the eccentric phase of muscle usage, when the muscle develops tension while lengthening. Most strain injuries of a muscle/tendon occur near the musculotendinous junction. The most commonly injured hamstring muscle is the biceps femoris. Strain is most likely to occur in the hamstrings during two stages of the running cycle: late forward swing and takeoff (toe-off). The etiology of a hamstring strain is multifactorial involving load-related extrinsic and intrinsic factors. These include:

- *A prior hamstring injury.* There is a strong correlation between a history of prior hamstring injury and recurrence. This is likely because the initial injury results in a loss of extensibility and a loss of eccentric strength.
- *Lumbar degenerative joint disease.* Lumbar pain and injury result in restricted ROM and decreased hamstring extensibility. Also, lumbar pain has been shown to decrease proprioception and neuromuscular control of the lower extremities. It is presumed that muscles and tendons are more susceptible to injury as they age, but it is not clear why injuries to soft tissues with an L5 and S1 nerve supply have such a strong correlation with advancing age, whereas there is little or no correlation between age and the soft tissue injuries with an L2–L4 nerve supply. Anecdotally, it would appear that the lumbar nerve roots of L5 and S1, which supply the hamstring and calf muscles, are more likely to be affected by age-related spinal degeneration than the nerve supply of the quadriceps muscles (L2, L3, and L4).[30]
- *Biomechanical inadequacies.* This can include excessive anterior pelvic tilt, leg length inequality, and anatomic arrangement:
  - *Anterior pelvic tilt.* A common finding is anterior tilt of the innominate bone on the injured side that increases tension in the hamstrings and causes a lengthened position of their origin and insertion. This altered pelvic position also can contribute to decreased hamstring strength.
  - *Leg length inequality.* The shorter leg can develop overly tight hamstrings.
  - *Anatomic arrangement.* One factor that makes hamstring muscles so susceptible to injury is their anatomic arrangement. Being a biarticular muscle group means they are more prone to adaptive shortening and also can be subjected to large length changes during certain activities. During everyday movements, such as walking, squatting, and sitting, flexion of the hip and knee occur together, with opposing effects on hamstring length.

However, in running and kicking, in particular, the knee is extended, and the hip flexed, bringing hamstrings to long lengths where the risk of muscle tears becomes significant. Antagonists to prime movers, muscles that are used to control or resist motion, are also at a greater risk of injury than the prime movers themselves. While decelerating the body, these muscles will contract while being rapidly lengthened (eccentric contraction).

- *Poor posture.* Adaptive shortening of the hip flexors and the erector spinae, weak/inhibited gluteal and abdominal muscles, an increased anterior pelvic tilt, and a hyperlordosis of the spine all place the hamstrings in a more lengthened resting position.
- *Muscle imbalance.* Muscle imbalance is a term used to describe either:
  - The relationship between agonist and antagonist muscle groups. The hamstrings are directly antagonistic to the quadriceps during the first 160 to 165 degrees of leg extension but assume a paradoxical extensor action concurrent with foot strike.
  - The relationship of agonist muscle groups between limbs (inhibited gluteus maximus).
  - Eccentric to concentric muscle ratios.
  - Hamstring to trunk stabilizer ratios.
- *Decreased flexibility.* This has long been cited as the primary cause of hamstring injuries, although there is little to no evidence to support this theory. A differentiation must be made between active flexibility (the absolute range of movement in a joint or series of joints that is attainable in a momentary effort with the help of a partner or a piece of equipment) and passive flexibility (the ability to assume and maintain extended positions using only the tension of the agonists and synergists, while the antagonists are being stretched). Research has shown that active flexibility, which requires a combination of passive flexibility and muscle strength, is more closely related to the level of sports achievement than is passive flexibility.
- *Hamstring strength.* The overall relationship between strength and the risk of hamstring injuries is not made clear by reviewing the studies available. More recently, it has been suggested that poor eccentric strength in the hamstring muscle group might be a causative factor in hamstring strains.
- *Training errors.* An exhausted muscle from overtraining or overexertion is easily damaged. In a study of professional soccer players, nearly half (47 percent) of the hamstring injuries sustained during matches occurred during the last third of the first and second halves of the match.[31]

It is likely that a combination of the aforementioned factors plays a role in hamstring injuries. Some of these factors are modifiable; others are not. The modifiable factors include muscle imbalances between flexibility and strength, overall conditioning, and playing surface.

Clinical findings associated with hamstring injury include:

- Patient reports a distinctive mechanism of injury with immediate pain during full stride running or while decelerating quickly. In acute cases, the patient may report a “pop” or a tearing sensation.
- Tenderness is reported with passive stretching of the hamstrings.
- Posterior thigh pain, often approximately near the buttock, is reported, which is worsened with resisted knee flexion.
- Tenderness to palpation is present. It is generally located at the muscle origin at the ischial tuberosity but also may be present in the muscle belly and distal insertions.

With grade I strains, gait appears normal and there is only pain with extreme range of a straight-leg raise. A patient with a grade II strain normally ambulates with an antalgic gait or may ambulate with a flexed knee. Resisted knee flexion and hip extension are both painful and weak. A grade III strain usually requires the use of crutches for ambulation. In severe cases, ecchymosis, hemorrhage, and a muscle defect may be visible several days postinjury.

Intervention Hamstring injuries have a high rate of recidivism which would tend to indicate that current clinical determinants of recovery, as measured during the physical exam (e.g., no pain, full ROM, and full strength), are not adequately sensitive enough to represent complete muscle recovery and readiness to return to sport. The key to management is progressive loading, performed within a pain-monitoring framework, to reduce pain and restore function.[32] Unfortunately, at present, there is no clear guidance from the literature regarding hamstring rehabilitation as loading exercises for these injuries have not been investigated in randomized controlled trials. What follows is the author’s synthesis of available evidence.

Patients with a grade I strain may continue activities as much as possible. A grade II strain typically requires 5 to 21 days for rehabilitation, whereas a patient with a grade III strain might require

3 to 12 weeks of rehabilitation. Muscle imbalances of strength and flexibility must be addressed, and proper techniques to stretch and strengthen the hamstrings should be taught. Where possible, or appropriate, the PT may want to address any biomechanical factors, including excessive anterior tilt of the pelvis, lumbar spine, and sacroiliac joint dysfunction, or leg length discrepancies. In the early stages of rehabilitation, resisted isometric exercises in positions without compression are introduced (the hip positioned in a near neutral flexion/extension position or minimal flexion). The recommended exercise dosage is five sets of 45-second holds of moderate resistance isometric exercise performed at 70 percent of maximal voluntary isometric contraction.[33] However, dosage should be based on symptom severity and irritability, with short-term/less-intense contractions used when necessary. Appropriate exercises for this stage include bridge holds with hip in neutral, isometric leg curl, isometric straight-leg pull down, and trunk extensions. If gym equipment is not available, isometric long leg bridging on two legs, progressing to one leg holds is a useful alternative.[32] Once the patient reports minimal or no pain (visual analog scale [VAS], 0–3) during exercise loading through the early ranges of hip flexion, the focus of the rehabilitation switches to restoring hamstring strength, bulk, and capacity in a functional ROM. Rather than the therapeutic exercise component placing special emphasis on eccentric loading, as was traditionally popular, heavy slow resistance (HSR) training, which includes both concentric and eccentric components is now advocated.[32] The HSR protocol recommends commencing at a 15 repetition maximum (15 RM) and progressing to an eight repetition maximum, with three to four sets performed every other day using a contraction duration of 3 seconds for each phase (concentric and eccentric; 6 seconds total) for each exercise.[34] Suitable exercises for this stage include the single-leg bridge, prone hip extension, prone leg curl, Nordic hamstring exercise, bridging progressions, and supine leg curl.[32] In addition, seated hamstring curls can be performed on a weight machine (using two legs for the concentric and one leg for the eccentric portion of the exercise) or the patient can perform supine hamstring curls with his or her feet placed on an exercise ball (starting with double leg curls, with the goal of progressing to single-leg curls). As the patient improves, the eccentric exercises can be progressed to the use of a treadmill.[35] The treadmill is turned on to a slow speed, with the patient facing backward on the treadmill while holding onto the handrails. The uninvolved leg is placed off of the treadmill belt while the involved leg is extended at the hip while keeping the knee mostly extended and the patient is instructed to resist the forward motion of the belt with the leg while slowly allowing the foot to move forward. As the patient strength and tolerance increases the exercises are progressed into greater hip flexion using the same exercise dosage. Exercises during this stage can include forward step ups, walking lunges, Romanian dead lifts, and the single-leg dead lift.

The final stage is required only for those returning to sport involving lower limb energy storage or impact loading. As this is the most provocative stage, a conservative approach is recommended with exercises being performed every third day.[32] Exercises during this stage may include the sprinter leg curl (**FIGURE 23.36**), A-skips (**FIGURE 23.37**), alternate leg split squats (**FIGURE 23.38**), bounding (**FIGURE 23.39**), kettle bell swings, and gradual reintroduction of sport-specific squat and lunge activities.[32]

Because there is a great deal of variability in the rehabilitation time, anywhere from 2 to 3 weeks to 2 to 6 months, an athlete should not be permitted to return to full participation in sports until flexibility and strength ratios have been restored, and plyometric and functional exercises are able to be performed at a VAS of 0 to 3 with pain settling within 24 hours following load tests.[31]

Iliotibial Band Friction Syndrome

As its name suggests, iliotibial band friction syndrome (ITBFS) is a repetitive stress injury that results from friction of the ITB as it slides over the prominent lateral femoral condyle at approximately 30 degrees of knee flexion (**FIGURE 23.40**). The friction has been found to occur at the posterior edge of the band, which is felt to be tighter against the lateral femoral condyle than the anterior fibers. The friction causes a gradual development of a reddish-brown bursal thickening at the lateral femoral condyle. ITBFS is particularly common in long-distance runners (20–40 miles/week), and in cyclists. To control coronal plane movement during stance phase, the gluteus medius and TFL must exert a continuous hip abductor movement. Fatigued runners or those with weak gluteus medius muscles are prone to increased thigh adduction and internal rotation at midstance. This, in turn, leads to an increased valgus vector at the knee and increased tension on the ITB, making it more prone to impingement.

Subjectively, the patient reports pain with repetitive motions of the knee. There is rarely a history of trauma. Although walking on level surfaces does not generally reproduce symptoms, especially if

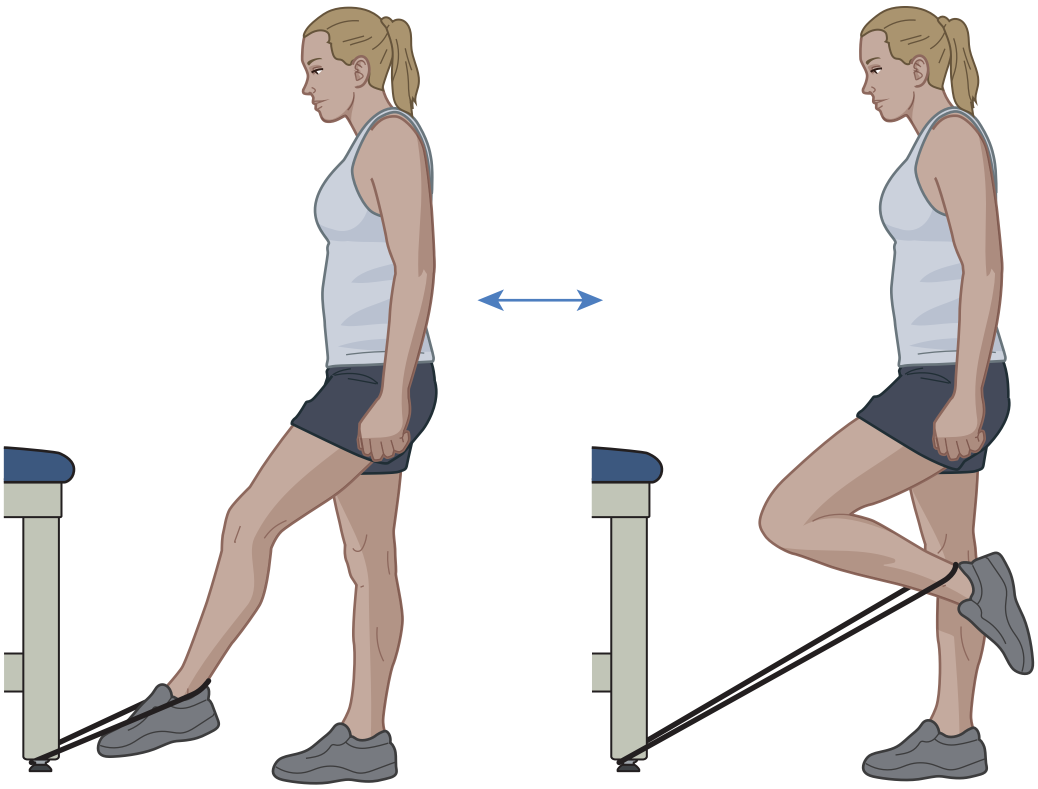


FIGURE 23.36 Sprinter leg curl.

FIGURE 23.37 A-skips.

a stiff-legged gait is used, climbing or descending stairs often aggravates the pain. Patients do not usually complain of pain during sprinting, squatting, or during such stop-and-go activities as tennis, racquetball, or squash. The progression of symptoms is often associated with changes in training surfaces, increased mileage, or training on crowned roads. The lateral knee pain is described as diffuse and hard to localize.

Objectively, there is localized tenderness to palpation at the lateral femoral condyle or Gerdy's tubercle on the anterolateral portion of the proximal tibia. The resisted tests are likely to be negative for pain.

Intervention

Conservative intervention for ITBFS consists of activity modification to reduce the irritating stress (decreasing mileage, changing the bike seat position, and changing the training surfaces), using new running shoes, heat or ice applications, strengthening of the hip abductors, and stretching of the ITB. Surgical intervention, consisting of a resection of the posterior half of the ITB at the level that passes over the lateral femoral condyle, is reserved for the more recalcitrant cases.[36]

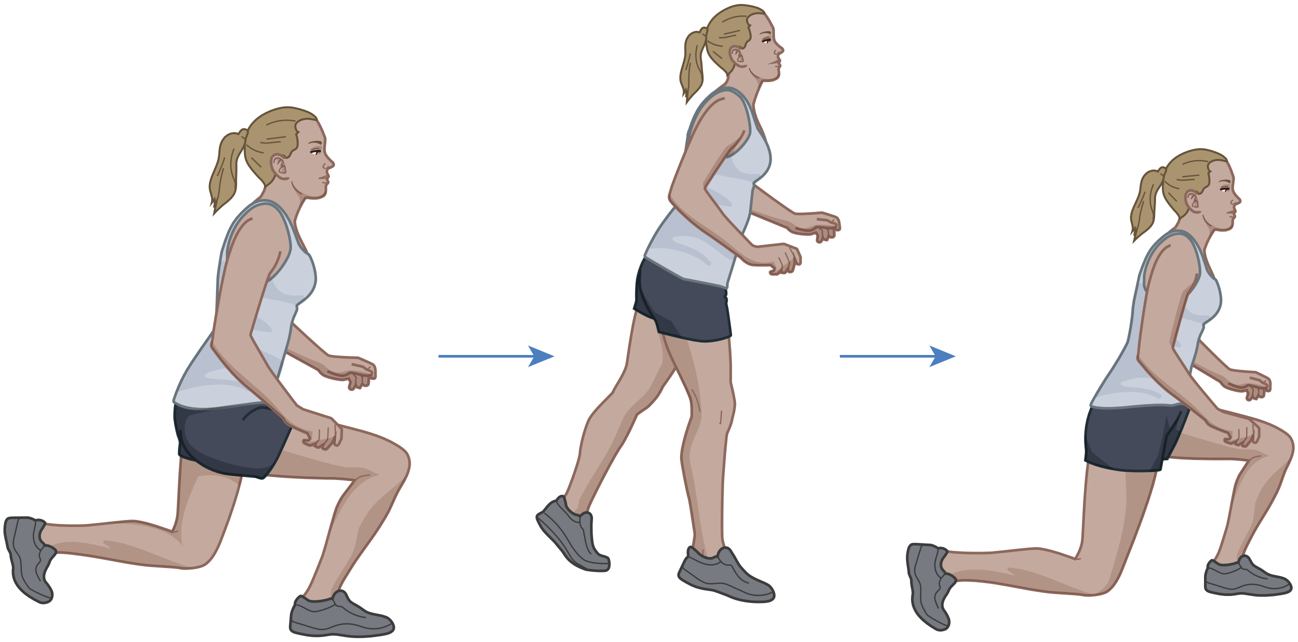


FIGURE 23.38 Alternate leg split squats.

Gluteal Tendinopathy

Gluteal tendinopathy, traditionally referred to as trochanteric bursitis, is a common cause of lateral hip pain that is characterized as pain over the greater trochanter that may extend down the lateral thigh. Patients with this condition report having difficulty with lying on their side at night, standing, walking, climbing up or down stairs, and sitting. For reasons that as yet remain inconclusive, this condition occurs more often in people over the age of 40 and in women more often than men. The symptoms are thought to result from thickening and thinning of and tears in the gluteus medius and/or gluteus minimus tendons, and changes in bursal structure.[37–39] During the physical examination, the PT may ask the patient to perform a sustained single-leg stance for 30 seconds or to the onset of pain over the greater trochanter. This test has been recommended as a special test for this condition.[38]

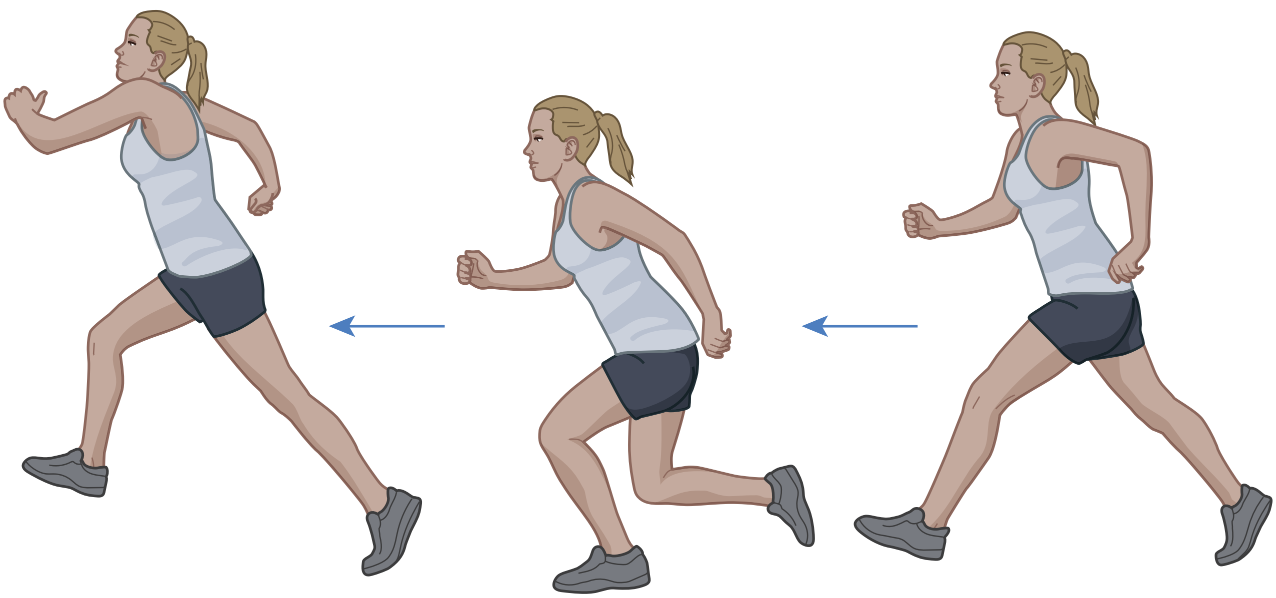


FIGURE 23.39 Bounding.

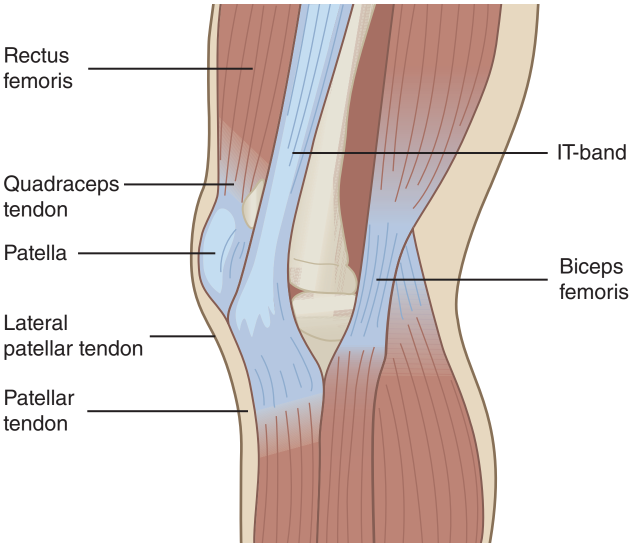


FIGURE 23.40 Iliotibial band friction syndrome.
Courtesy of Erik Dalton, Freedom From Pain Institute®.

Intervention

The education component is particularly important with this population, and it should focus on methods to reduce compression of the affected area. This involves minimizing positions in all activities that involve sustained or repetitive compression of the tendon and avoiding positions such as standing "hanging on one hip," standing with legs crossed, and sitting with knees crossed and knees together.[38] Nighttime postures also should be considered and the patient is advised to avoid side lying on the affected side, but instead, to lie supine (with a pillow under the knees if necessary). Specific interventions should comprise removal of the causative factors by stretching the soft tissues of the lateral thigh, especially the TFL and ITB, and focusing on the flexibility of the external rotators, quadriceps, and hip flexors. However, hip adduction stretches and hip flexion or extension should be avoided, because these combine compressive and strong passive tensile loads to the tendon.[38] Strengthening of the hip abductors and establishment of muscular balance between the adductors and abductors is also important. Depending on the level of severity, the exercise program may need to be initiated with sustained isometric muscle contractions: 70 percent of maximal voluntary isometric contraction held for 45 to 60 seconds, repeated four times, several times per day. Low-load, low-velocity isometric hip abduction may be performed in side lying, with the involved side uppermost and pillows used to maintain the hip in neutral or in slight abduction to avoid tendon compression.[38] Weight-bearing exercises are introduced as early as tolerated because they have been demonstrated to promote higher levels of gluteus medius activation than non–weight-bearing exercises.[40–43] Sidestepping, or single-leg, band-resisted abduction can be performed with one foot on a slide mat or slippery surface.[38] Hip abductor strengthening, together with movement retraining (training to control the pelvic and femoral alignment during single-leg squat variations) from basic to higher-level functions, is introduced as tolerated.[38] For gluteal tendinopathy, change in night pain is often a good indicator of response to the exercise program.[38] Increases in night pain may indicate that the load has been too high and needs to be adjusted. For the athlete, temporary suspension of long-distance running, tempo running, hill running, and plyometric drills may be necessary and should be replaced with water-based exercise and cycling.[38] Orthotics may be prescribed if there is a biomechanical fault in the kinetic chain due to an ankle/foot dysfunction.

Bursitis

There are different types of hip bursitis. Types include trochanteric (pain on the side of the hip), iliopectineal bursitis (pain in the groin), and ischial/gluteal bursitis (pain at the base of the hips/buttocks).

Trochanteric

Trochanteric bursitis is the collective name given to inflammation of any one of the trochanteric bursae. The bursae become inflamed through either friction (compression and friction of the bursa from an adaptively shortened TFL) or direct trauma, such as a fall on the side of the hip.

Iliopectineal

The iliopectineal bursa is located between the anterior side of the joint capsule of the hip and the musculotendinous junction of the iliopsoas. Major causes of iliopsoas tendinopathy are acute trauma and overuse resulting from repetitive hip flexion. The usual complaint is one of anterior hip or groin pain, which is aggravated by lumbar or hip hyperextension or power walking.

Intervention Conservative intervention consists of a stretching and strengthening program of the hip rotators and hip flexors. The following protocol is recommended:[44]

- Seated hip internal and external resisted exercises using elastic resistance
- Side lying abduction/external rotation resisted exercises using elastic resistance

- Mini-squats, weight bearing on the affected leg
- Stretching of the hip flexor, quadriceps, lateral hip/piriformis, and hamstring muscles

Ischial/Gluteal

An ischial bursitis (Weaver's bottom) involves two different bursae, one between the ischial tuberosity and the inferior part of the gluteus maximus belly, and the other between the tendons of the biceps femoris and semimembranosus. Inflammation of these bursae usually results from chronic compression or direct trauma. With ischial bursitis, the patient typically reports pain with sitting in a firm chair, almost as soon as the buttocks touch the chair. Ischial bursitis tends to affect thinner people more than obese individuals and women more than men. It is also common in cyclists.

Intervention Conservative intervention should be causal. This involves relative rest, the use of a padded seat cushion, soft tissue massage, correction of hamstring strength and flexibility deficits, anti-inflammatory measures such as ice massage, and ultrasound.

Gluteal

Inflammation of the gluteal bursa (located above and behind the greater trochanter, underneath the gluteus maximus and medius) is one of the most frequent causes of pseudoradicular pain in the lower limb. The patient is usually in their fourth or fifth decade and complains of pain in the gluteal or trochanteric area. The pain may spread to the outer or posterior thigh and down to the calf muscles and the malleolus.

Intervention Conservative intervention should be causal. This involves the use of a padded seat cushion, anti-inflammatory measures such as ice massage, and ultrasound.

Fractures of the Pelvis

A pelvic fracture is a disruption of the bony structures of the pelvis. This type of fracture is common in the geriatric population secondary to a fall, and has a high mortality rate. Pelvic fractures can occur to any combination of the pelvic bones resulting in either a stable or an unstable fracture. The stability of the fracture is judged by the integrity of the pelvic ring. Unstable fractures require surgical fixation. Pubic fractures are the most commonly seen pelvic fractures, with the superior ramus more commonly involved than the inferior ramus. Pubic rami and pubic bone fractures account for more than 70 percent of all pelvic fractures.

Intervention

The rehabilitation protocol for a patient with a fracture of the pelvis must include early mobilization in terms of getting the patient out of bed, because prolonged immobilization can lead to a number of complications including respiratory or circulatory compromise. The intensity of the rehabilitation depends on whether the fracture was stable or unstable. The goals of the physical therapy program should be to provide the patient with an optimal return of function by improving functional skills, self-care skills, and safety awareness.

Stable Stable pelvic fractures are managed conservatively, and the patient normally progresses well without severe complications and with pain as the only major limiting factor. The patient is encouraged to get out of bed as quickly as possible, and during the first week weight bearing as tolerated using a walker normally is permitted. Treatment during this period focuses on functional activities including bed mobility, transfers, and gait training. Bilateral upper extremity exercises and bilateral ankle pumps can begin early in the rehabilitation process. Strength training begins in the second week using isometric exercises. Open-chain exercises such as the straight-leg raise are avoided due to the forces that can be placed on the pelvis. The most important muscle group to strengthen is the hip abductors because they provide dynamic stabilization of the pelvis during gait. By the fourth to sixth week, the patient is typically full weight bearing and is able to return to most activities as tolerated. Use of an assistive device for gait continues until no gait deviations are present.

Unstable Typically, patients who have undergone surgical fixation for an unstable fracture have limited weight bearing for as long as 3 months after surgery. (Patients who sustained a vertically and rotationally unstable fracture may not begin weight bearing until 6 to 8 weeks after surgery, making the focus of the rehabilitation program on independent wheelchair mobility and bed-to-chair transfers.) This delay in weight bearing is likely responsible for the high mortality rate associated with this type of fracture.

☑ KEY POINT

The postsurgical rehabilitation program is specific to the type and severity of fracture and the methods used to stabilize the fracture.

Based on the physician's orders, the patient is typically introduced to the vertical position using a tilt table, during which pulse, blood pressure, and respiration are carefully monitored for signs of postural hypotension (see Chapter 5) or other complications. Bilateral upper extremity exercises and bilateral ankle pumps can begin early in the rehabilitation process. Based on physician orders, gentle hip and knee motion can be progressed within the limits imposed. Once the physician has determined that the fracture site is stable, the rehabilitation progression mirrors that of the stable fracture.

Fractures of the Acetabulum

Fractures of the acetabulum occur primarily in young adults as a result of high-velocity trauma. The position of the femur at the time of impact and the direction of the force determine the type and displacement of the fracture.

Intervention

TABLE 23.7 outlines the postsurgical rehabilitation program following the open reduction and internal fixation (ORIF).

Hip Fractures

Hip fractures are associated with substantial morbidity and mortality in the elderly. A number of types of hip fractures exist. Intertrochanteric fractures occur on the proximal, upper part of the femur or thigh bone between the greater trochanter, where the gluteus medius and minimus muscles attach, and the lesser trochanter, where the iliopsoas muscle attaches. Fractures of the femoral neck are proximal to intertrochanteric fractures, and subtrochanteric fractures are distal to or below the trochanters.

Intertrochanteric

The intertrochanteric area of the femur is distal to the femoral neck and proximal to the femoral shaft. It is the area of the femoral trochanters, the lesser and greater trochanters. The intertrochanteric area can also be seen as the area where the femur changes from a fundamentally vertical bone to a bone angling at a 45-degree angle from the near-vertical to the acetabulum or pelvis. The etiology of intertrochanteric fractures is the combination of increased bone fragility of the intertrochanteric area of the femur associated with decreased agility and decreased muscle tone of the muscles in the area secondary to the aging process.

Intervention The current treatment of intertrochanteric fractures is surgical intervention. Currently, with a few exceptions, ORIF is used to treat virtually all intertrochanteric fractures. The procedure is designed to maintain the nondisplaced, minimally displaced, or postreduction fracture fragments in their anatomic,

TABLE 23.7 Postsurgical Rehabilitation Following Acetabular ORIF

Time Frame	Intervention
Day 1	Static quadriceps exercises are started.
Day 2 or 3	Continuous passive motion (CPM) is started, limiting the range to about 60 degrees for the first 3 days to avoid tension on the wound.
Days 3–7	Dynamic quadriceps exercises are performed. Once pain has subsided, the patient may begin gait training on a walker or axillary crutches. Toe-touch weight bearing is permitted. The patient is encouraged to ambulate with a step-through gait and a heel-to-toe motion. Active flexion, extension, and abduction exercises while standing are encouraged.
Weeks 8–12	Weight bearing is limited for 8–12 weeks postoperatively.
Week 12	Full weight-bearing ambulation is permitted only after the fracture unites, usually by about 12 weeks, with gradual discarding of walking aids as tolerated.
1 year	Return to sporting activity may be advised after about a year, in the absence of complications.

near-anatomic, or acceptable postreduction position. Following the procedure, a preventive protocol is followed with an appropriate combination or selection of antiembolism stockings and anticoagulants. Physical therapy involves functional and gait training according to the weight-bearing status, and a progressive exercise program of ROM and strengthening exercises.

☑ KEY POINT

Hip fractures are associated with a high risk of deep vein thrombosis (DVT) due to the accompanying vessel trauma, venous stasis, coagulation activation, and older age of most patients. (See Chapter 5.) Although changes in surgical and anesthesia techniques and early mobilization may reduce the risk of venous thromboembolism, routine thromboprophylaxis remains extremely important and is the standard of care.

Subtrochanteric

The subtrochanteric region of the femur consists primarily of cortical bone, so healing in this region is predominantly through a primary cortical healing, making fracture consolidation quite slow to occur. Also, this region is exposed to high stresses during activities of daily living. During normal activities of daily living, up to 6 times the body weight is transmitted across the subtrochanteric region of the femur. Subtrochanteric fractures account for approximately 10 to 30 percent of all hip fractures, and they affect persons of all ages. Most frequently, these fractures are seen in two patient populations, namely older osteopenic patients after a low-energy fall and younger patients involved in high-energy trauma. Surgical treatment can be divided into three main techniques: external fixation, open reduction with plates and screws, and intramedullary fixation. External fixation is rarely used but is indicated in severe open fractures. For most patients, external fixation is temporary, and conversion to internal fixation can be made if and when the soft tissues have healed sufficiently.

Intervention Following intramedullary nailing, if the bone quality and cortical contact is adequate, 50 percent partial weight bearing can be allowed immediately. With less stability, patients can perform touchdown weight bearing. Following ORIF and plate fixation, minimal protected weight bearing can begin immediately but is advanced slowly beginning approximately 4 weeks after surgery, with full weight bearing anticipated at 8 to 12 weeks. Elderly patients may have difficulty with compliance with weight-bearing restrictions. These patients are slow to progress and generally avoid aggressive weight bearing on the injured extremity. As a result, most elderly patients can be safely permitted to progress to full postoperative weight-bearing status.

Femoral Neck Fracture

High-energy trauma usually causes femoral neck fractures in young patients. These fractures are often associated with multiple injuries and high rates of AVN and nonunion. A number of factors predispose the elderly population to fractures, including osteoporosis, malnutrition, decreased physical activity, impaired vision, neurological disease, poor balance, and muscle atrophy. Hip fractures are common and are often devastating in the geriatric population. Femoral neck fractures can be divided into the following four grades based on the degree of displacement of the fracture fragment:

- Grade I is an incomplete or valgus impacted fracture.
- Grade II is a complete fracture without bone displacement.
- Grade III is a complete fracture with partial displacement of the fracture fragments.
- Grade IV is a complete fracture with total displacement of the fracture fragments.

The prognosis for this injury depend on (1) the extent of injury (i.e., amount of displacement, amount of comminution, whether circulation has been disturbed), (2) the adequacy of the reduction, and (3) the adequacy of fixation. Recognition of the disabling complications of femoral neck fractures requires meticulous attention to detail in their management.

Intervention The decision for operative or nonoperative treatment of femoral neck fractures and the decision regarding the type of surgical intervention are based on many factors. Tension fractures are possibly unstable and may require operative stabilization. Nondisplaced femoral neck fractures may require stabilization with multiple parallel screws or pins. The treatment of a displaced fracture is based on the person's activity level and age. In the elderly population, premorbid cognitive function, walking ability, and independence in activities of daily living should be considered when determining the optimal method of surgical repair.

Compression fractures are more stable than tension-type fractures, and they can be treated nonoperatively. Treatment for nondisplaced fractures is bed rest and/or the use of crutches until passive hip movement is pain-free and X-ray films show evidence of callus formation. Patients are monitored closely with serial X-ray films because the risk of displacement of the fracture is high and immediate ORIF is indicated if the fracture widens. Postoperatively, the patient rests until the pain resolves and is then progressed to full activity as healing occurs. Once the plate is removed, further rehabilitation is needed. Removal of the plate depends on the age and activity level of the patient.

☑ KEY POINT

Femoral neck fractures are frequently treated using a prosthesis or replacement device to substitute for the proximal femoral fragment, including the residual neck fragment with the devitalized femoral head (i.e., total hip arthroplasty or hemiarthroplasty).

Therapeutic Progression Following Surgery The weight-bearing status depends on the stability of reduction, bone, and method of fixation (as mentioned previously). The exercises performed initially include quadriceps sets, gluteal sets, heel slides, active-assisted hip abduction and adduction, and supine internal and external hip rotation. Once full weight bearing is achieved, exercises begin to address functional strengthening using the principles of closed kinetic chain progressions. Strengthening of the gluteus medius is important for postoperative stability. Other important muscles include the iliopsoas, gluteus maximus, adductors (magnus, longus, and brevis), quadriceps, and hamstrings.

Functional goals include normalizing the patient's gait pattern. Once partial weight-bearing ambulation is allowed, aquatic training may be used, such as swimming or deep-water running.

Maintaining aerobic conditioning throughout the rehabilitation process is essential. If protected or non–weight-bearing ambulation is required, then upper body exercise, such as an upper body ergometer, can be used.

Legg-Calvé-Perthes Disease

Legg-Calvé-Perthes disease (LCPD) is the name given to idiopathic osteonecrosis of the capital femoral epiphysis of the femoral head. (See Chapter 26.)

Slipped Capital Femoral Epiphysis

Slipped capital femoral epiphysis (SCFE) is classified as a disorder of epiphyseal growth. (See Chapter 26.)

Hip Preservation Surgery

Abnormal joint morphology, pathologies within the hip joint (labral-chondral injuries, synovitis, and ligamentum teres tears) and/or compensatory changes to the periarticular myotendinous envelope and lower extremity kinematics can lead to joint deterioration. There are some biomechanical causes for the joint deterioration, which include anatomic conflict between the femoral head-neck junction and the acetabular rim, soft tissue impingement, and compromised joint stability, the latter of which can result in increased femoral translation, capsular attenuation, and increased stresses on the articular cartilage.[45,46] Over time, these punitive biomechanical changes may result in progressive damage to intra-articular labral and chondral structures and result in any one of the following pathologic conditions:[45]

- *Acetabular dysplasia*. In this condition, there is insufficient containment of the femoral head by the acetabulum, which creates a redistribution of joint reactive forces to a narrower than normal segment of articular cartilage, which, in turn, results in focal regions of insufficient volume within the acetabular fossa or global undercoverage.
- *Alteration of the proximal femoral alignment*. Excessive retroversion, anteversion, or inclination of the proximal femur may lead to instability and progressive functional decline due to increased shear and translational forces.
- *Femoroacetabular impingement (FAI)*. Any morphological alteration of the proximal femur and/or acetabulum may lead to pathologic anatomic conflict during dynamic activities resulting in progressive chondral and labral injuries. FAI has been proposed as a significant contributor to the development of premature hip arthritis.[47]

The term *hip preservation* refers to any procedure or combination of procedures involving periacetabular osteotomy, cartilage restoration, proximal femoral osteotomy, adjuvant arthroscopy, and surgical dislocation that aim to restore an optimal relationship between structure and joint kinematics and delay the need for a total hip arthroplasty. A description of the various techniques follows:[45]

- *Periacetabular osteotomy*. These techniques are designed to improve femoral head coverage and to balance force concentration through the weight-bearing portion of the femoral head while also preserving the integrity of the posterior column of the pelvis.

- *Proximal femoral osteotomy*. The rotational osteotomy techniques are performed for excessive anteversion or retroversion while valgus corrections are performed to redirect the femoral head, thereby modifying contact surfaces, diminishing shear vectors, and optimizing the biomechanical advantage of the periarticular myotendinous envelope.
- *Cartilage restoration*. Some recognized techniques can be used to help restore cartilage of the hip. These include microfracture, osteochondral autograft transfer system (OATS), autologous chondrocyte techniques (ACT), and matrix-associated autologous chondrocyte implantation (MACI).
- *Surgical dislocation*. Surgical dislocation of the hip is performed so that the acetabulum and femoral head can be inspected and, if necessary, repaired. These techniques are commonly used to address superolateral and posterosuperior abnormalities.
- *Arthroscopy*. Some arthroscopic techniques have evolved to correct FAI and to perform arthroscopic labral preservation with capsulorrhaphy.

At present, there is no consensus on postsurgical rehabilitation protocols for these procedures. Instead, clinicians must rely on individually tailored programs that take into account the severity of intra-articular hip disease and the technical nuances of the surgical reconstruction strategy while accommodating for periarticular compensation patterns within proximal and distal segments of the kinetic chain.[48] As with any surgical procedure involved in the joints of the lower extremity there is a period of controlled and gradual weight bearing to protect the vulnerable bony articulations while limiting segmental physiological disruption.[48] Sometimes continuous passive motion is prescribed to prevent stiffness and adhesions and to provide pain control. This can be combined with cryotherapy to help control swelling. At approximately 4 to 6 weeks postsurgery the goals of rehabilitation begin to focus on the restoration of ROM within patient tolerance and reeducation of normal muscular firing patterns. With surgeon approval, weight-bearing progression may be advanced to allow 50 percent of the patient's body weight. Quadruped rocking can be used to address posterior capsule tightness and increase hip flexion and hip internal rotation as it is considered to be superior to addressing those deficits in supine because the quadruped position limits anterior joint compression. Also during this stage, stretches to the hip flexors, quadriceps, hamstrings, and internal and external rotators of the hip are incorporated as tolerated. At approximately 8 weeks postsurgery the patient is progressed to full weight bearing although assistive devices may be used to help normalize gait mechanics. This is extremely important as a return to walking with poor biomechanics can invite altered muscular recruitment patterns, which may lead to undesired neuromuscular adaptations.[48] The patient advances to the next stage when they feel they have minimal to no limitations with activities of daily living, achieve equal or greater ROM than preoperative measures, are relatively pain-free, and demonstrate normal gait mechanics. At this stage, the goal is to improve muscular endurance, cardiovascular fitness, and dynamic stability with a gradual progression of nonimpact activities to tolerance.[48] The final stage is reserved for those returning to sport. Progression to this stage is by no means guaranteed and will depend on the intraoperative findings and the degree of pathologic changes that may ultimately support or discourage ongoing involvement with ballistic or high-impact athletic endeavors.[48]

Total Hip Arthroplasty

The total hip arthroplasty (THA), a common procedure performed in many acute care hospitals, is used in cases of severe joint damage resulting from rheumatoid arthritis, OA, hip fracture, and AVN. Arthroplasty of the hip may be categorized as a total hip arthroplasty or a hemiarthroplasty (see the next section). The articular surfaces of both the acetabulum and femur are replaced in a total hip arthroplasty. This involves either replacement of the femoral head and neck (conventional total hip arthroplasty) or replacement of the surface of the femoral head (resurfacing total hip arthroplasty); both procedures also replace the acetabulum (**FIGURE 23.41**).

The most common indications for a THA are as follows:

- *Pain.* Pain is the principal indication for hip replacement. This includes pain with movement and pain at rest. A significant amount of pain may be reliably relieved as early as 1 week after surgery.
- *Functional limitations.* Capsular contractions and joint deformity cause a decreased ROM in the hip with subsequent functional restrictions.
- *Loss of mobility.* There are certain patient subgroups in which joint stiffness without hip pain is an indication for surgery. These groups include patients with ankylosing spondylitis.
- *Post-hip fracture (when the risk of avascular necrosis is high).* Arthroplasty of the hip is also considered in the presence of aseptic necrosis, congenital abnormalities, rheumatoid arthritis, and Paget's disease, among other conditions.

FIGURE 23.41 Total hip replacement components.
Courtesy of DePuy Orthopaedics, Inc. Used with permission.

- *Radiographic indications of intra-articular disease.* Although radiographic changes are considered in the decision to operate, the more significant determinant is the severity of symptoms.

☑ KEY POINT

Although most THAs are performed in patients between 60 and 80 years of age, hip replacement is occasionally performed in younger patients, including those in their teens and early 20s, due to severe trauma.

The first successful THA used a transtrochanteric lateral approach. Three other approaches have evolved since: the anterolateral approach, the direct lateral approach, and the posterolateral approach.[49] Controversy remains as to which approach results in the lowest complication rate.

- *Anterolateral approach.* There are numerous variations of the anterolateral approach. All variations approach the hip through the interval between the TFL and the gluteus medius muscle. Some portion of the hip abductor is released from the greater trochanter, and the hip is dislocated anteriorly.
- *Direct lateral approach.* The direct lateral approach leaves the posterior portion of the gluteus medius attached to the greater trochanter. Because the posterior soft tissues and capsule are left intact, this approach is preferred in the more noncompliant patients to prevent postsurgical dislocation.
- *Posterolateral approach.* The posterolateral approach, the most commonly used approach, gains access to the hip joint by splitting the gluteus maximus muscle. The short external rotators are then released, and the hip abductors are retracted anteriorly. The femur is then dislocated posteriorly.

☑ KEY POINT

During the surgical approach to the hip joint, a trochanteric osteotomy may be necessary, especially in revision surgery. This procedure involves detaching the hip abductor mechanism. After this mechanism is repaired, the patient should avoid abduction activities.

More recently, the *minimally invasive anterior approach* has become more popular. Despite being classed as an open approach, this procedure occurs through one or two small incisions. The rationale for minimally invasive procedures is that compared with traditional procedures, the use of small incisions potentially lessens soft tissue trauma during surgery and therefore should improve and accelerate a patient's postoperative recovery.[50] Other benefits are reduced blood loss, reduced postoperative pain, shorter length of hospital stay and lower cost of hospitalization, more rapid recovery of functional mobility, and a better cosmetic appearance of the surgical scar.[50]

The hip joint may be replaced with a variety of materials, including metal, polyethylene, and ceramic. There also are various methods of arthroplasty fixation, such as polymethylmethacrylate (PMMA) cement and screw fixation, although cement less press fit and porous ingrowth arthroplasties may also be used. The most common materials used for a total hip replacement articulation are a metal femoral head (cobalt-chromium), which articulates with an acetabular cup (polyethylene with metal backing).

The PTA must be aware of several complications associated with THA. These include, but are not limited to, the following:

- *Deep vein thrombosis (DVT).* DVT (see Chapter 5) remains the most common and potentially lethal complication following either elective or emergency surgery of the hip in adults. Peak incidence, which is probably between 40 and 60 percent for distal (calf) vein thrombosis, and 20 percent for proximal (popliteal, femoral, and iliac) thrombosis, occurs most commonly during the second or third week postsurgery. However, the period of increased risk can be up to 3 months after surgery. Even with prophylaxis, the incidence of angiographically proven asymptomatic pulmonary embolism has been reported to be approximately 20 percent.[51–55]

- *Heterotopic ossification (HO).* HO is a well-known complication of surgical approaches to the hip that involve dissection of the gluteal muscles and is the most common complication following THA. The exact mechanism for heterotopic bone formation has not been thoroughly elucidated, although trauma to the muscles during surgery appears to be a major contributing factor in provoking pluripotent mesenchymal cell differentiation into osteoprogenitor cells. This process begins as soon as 16 hours after injury and is maximal at 36 to 48 hours. HO and DVT have been positively associated, perhaps because the mass effect and local inflammation of HO encourage adjacent thrombus formation by venous compression and phlebitis.[56] HO often begins as a painful palpable mass that gradually becomes nontender and smaller but firmer to palpation. Bone scan is the method of choice for earliest detection.[56]
- *Femoral fractures.* Fracture of the femur in association with THA is a challenging complication that has been well described. Risk factors include female gender, rheumatoid arthritis, cortical perforation, osteopenia, osteoporosis, preoperative femoral deformity, a revision operation, osteolysis, and loosening of the stem.
- *Dislocation.* Dislocation of the total hip replacement remains a common and potentially extremely problematic complication. Dislocation is more common in elderly women, particularly those with excessive alcohol use or with impaired cognition and balance and vibration sensitivity.[57] There is also a correlation with history of trauma or developmental dysplasia of the hip. Dislocation rate is a factor of many other requirements including component position, technical errors, imbalance of tissues, surgical approach, and patient compliance.[58]
- *Neurovascular injury.* The fibular division of the sciatic nerve is involved in most cases, with the femoral nerve and the obturator nerve involved less frequently. There are many proposed causes for neuropathy associated with THA, including direct trauma; excessive tension because of an increase in limb length, or offset, or both; bleeding, or compression, or both, by a hematoma; and unknown.

☑ KEY POINT

Standard precautions given to patients who underwent a lateral or posterolateral approach to prevent posterior hip dislocation include the following:

- Do not cross your legs (avoid hip adduction). Typically, an abduction wedge or pillow is prescribed.
- Put a pillow between your legs if you lie on your side.
- Do not turn your leg inward (avoid hip internal rotation).
- Do not bend forward at the hip.
- Sit only on elevated chairs or toilet seats and do not bend over from the hips to reach objects or tie your shoes (avoid hip flexion greater than 90 degrees).
- An assistive device or reacher is necessary to safely perform activities of daily living.
- Combinations of hip flexion, internal rotation, and adduction must be avoided for up to 4 months after surgery or until physician clearance.

Precautions for a patient who underwent an anterior/anterior lateral or direct lateral approach, with or without trochanteric osteotomy, include:

- Avoid hip flexion greater than 90 degrees.
- Avoid hip extension, adduction, and external rotation past neutral.
- Avoid the combined motions of flexion, abduction, and external rotation.
- If a trochanteric osteotomy was performed, or if the gluteus medius was incised and repaired, do not perform active, antigravity hip abduction for at least 6 to 8 weeks or until approved by the surgeon.

Following the surgery, thromboembolic disease (TED) hoses are placed on the patient. For patients who have undergone either a posterolateral approach or a transtrochanteric approach, a triangular foam cushion (abduction pillow) is strapped between the legs to keep the hip in an abducted position. Patients at a high risk of dislocation, such as those who have undergone a postrevision arthroplasty or those with cognitive impairments, may need to wear a hip abduction orthosis that maintains the hip in abduction for

☑ KEY POINT

Patients with cemented joint replacements can weight bear as tolerated (WBAT) unless the operative procedure involved a soft tissue repair or internal fixation of bone. Patients with cementless, or ingrowth, joint replacements are put on partial weight bearing (PWB) or toe-touch weight bearing (TTWB) to allow maximum bony ingrowth to take place but also may be non–weight bearing (NWB).

6 to 12 weeks. These orthoses may make ambulation difficult if the abduction is more than 5 to 10 degrees.

Intervention

Following the postsurgical examination performed by the PT on postoperative day 1, exercises are initiated. The postsurgical rehabilitation protocol for an arthroplasty of the hip is outlined in **TABLE 23.8**.

On the first day after the surgery, the clinician begins transfer training and instructs the patient with regard to bed mobility. Training includes transfers from supine to sitting on the bed, and then from sitting to standing, while observing all of the necessary hip precautions. If permitted by the surgeon, the patient can be shown how to transfer to an appropriate bedside chair. The patient is encouraged to sit on the chair for about 30 to 60 minutes, depending on tolerance, which can be measured using the vital signs of pulse and blood pressure, as well as subjective complaints such as lightheadedness or dizziness.

Gait training with crutches (younger, more active patients) or a walker (more elderly patients) is usually begun on the second day following surgery. The patient's assistive device is adjusted to the correct height. Close attention must be paid to these patients during gait training because of the potential balance deficiencies and the possibility of temporary postural (orthostatic) hypotension. (See Chapter 5.)

The surgeon decides the weight-bearing status of the patient with a noncemented THA. It can vary from non–weight bearing, to toe-touch weight bearing, to partial weight bearing (20–25 pounds of pressure). Toe-touch weight bearing is used for balance only. It

TABLE 23.8 Total Hip Replacement Protocol

Time Frame	Intervention	Description
Preoperative or immediately postoperative	Patient education	*Posterior approach:* ■ No hip flexion beyond 90 degrees ■ No crossing of the legs (hip adduction beyond neutral) ■ No hip internal rotation past neutral *Anterior approach:* ■ Avoid extremes of hip extension and external rotation ■ Weight-bearing status
Postoperative (day 1)	Bedside exercises	Ankle pumps, quadriceps sets, and gluteal sets
	Bed mobility and transfer training	Bed to/from chair
Postoperative (day 2)	Gait training	Crutches or walker instruction
Postoperative (days 3–5 or on discharge to the rehabilitation unit)	Therapeutic exercises	Progression of ROM and strengthening exercises to the patient's tolerance
	Gait training	Progression of ambulation on level surfaces and stairs (if applicable) with the least restrictive device
Postoperative (day 5 to 4 weeks)	Therapeutic exercises	Seated leg extensions, side lying/standing hip abduction, standing hip extension and hip abduction, knee bends, bridging (depending on weight-bearing status) Stretching exercises to increase the flexibility of hip muscles
	Gait training	Progression of ambulation distance

has been described as analogous to walking on eggshells. Partial weight bearing is a difficult concept for most patients to grasp. Using a bathroom scale, or a description such as "one-tenth of body weight" (depending on the patient's weight) usually helps. Force platforms are also available to measure these forces directly and can provide beneficial feedback for the patient.

The weight-bearing status for the patient with a cemented THA is usually weight bearing as tolerated with a walker for 6 weeks prior to full weight bearing.

Normalization of the gait pattern should be taught early. Stand-step transfers should also be taught to prevent the patient from rotating at the involved hip.

Stair negotiation, based on the patient's home situation, is typically taught on day 3.

The outpatient phase of treatment, if appropriate, involves a continued progression of the therapeutic exercise program developed in the inpatient phase with an emphasis on a return to normal activities of daily living and recreational pursuits allowed by the surgeon.

Hemiarthroplasty

In contrast to a total hip arthroplasty, a hemiarthroplasty involves replacement of the articular surface of the femoral head without surgical alteration to the acetabular articular surface. This may involve replacement of the femoral head and neck (unipolar hemiarthroplasty), replacement of the femoral head and neck with an additional acetabular cup that is not attached to the pelvis (bipolar hemiarthroplasty), or replacement of the surface of the femoral head (resurfacing hemiarthroplasty). With a bipolar hemiarthroplasty, there is normal motion between the femoral head and acetabular cup, and between the acetabular cup and native acetabulum.

☑ KEY POINT

Proximal femoral osteotomy is a joint-sparing procedure that relies on maintaining the biological integrity of the femoral head. Preserving the blood supply to the femoral head is of the utmost importance. Proximal femoral osteotomy currently is used commonly for adults in the treatment of hip fracture nonunions and malunions and in cases of congenital and acquired hip deformities. Partial weight bearing is typically allowed immediately and continued for 8 to 12 weeks. The postsurgical rehabilitation protocol is similar to that of the total joint replacement.

Therapeutic Techniques

A number of therapeutic techniques can be used to assist the patient. These include self-stretches and selective manual techniques.

Self-Stretching

Anterior–Inferior Capsule

The patient places one on a chair or table in the front (refer to Figure 23.25). While maintaining the spine in a functional neutral position, the patient slowly leans toward the chair, thereby stretching the anterior–inferior aspect of the hip joint of the standing leg. The position is held for about 30 seconds.

Posterior Capsule and Piriformis Stretch

The patient is positioned in the quadruped position. The stretch is performed by the patient by having them perform oscillatory sit back motions in the direction of the hip joint to be mobilized (refer to Figure 23.22).

Alternatively, the hip internal rotators can be stretched by placing the lateral aspect of the foot and lower leg on a chair or hi-lo table. To stretch the internal rotators and to increase external rotation, the patient leans forward at the waist (refer to Figure 23.15).

Iliopsoas and Rectus Femoris

A number of exercises to stretch these muscle groups have already been described, including the lunge (refer to Figure 23.23), supine (refer to Figure 23.12), and kneeling (refer to Figure 23.13). The stretch also can be performed in standing (**FIGURE 23.42**).

Hamstrings

A number of techniques have evolved over the years to stretch the hamstrings. The problem with most of these techniques is that they do not afford the lumbar spine much protection while performing the stretch.

The hamstring stretch should be taught with the patient in a supine position. The lumbar spine can be protected by placing a small towel roll under the lumbar spine to maintain a slight lordosis, or by having the patient sustain a pelvic tilt opposite to the lordosis during the stretch. The uninvolved leg is kept straight while the patient flexes the hip of the side to be stretched to about 90 degrees and holds onto the back of the thigh for support. From this position, the patient extends the knee on the tested leg until a stretch is felt on the posterior aspect of the thigh (refer to Figure 23.16). This position is maintained for about 30 seconds before allowing the knee to flex slightly.

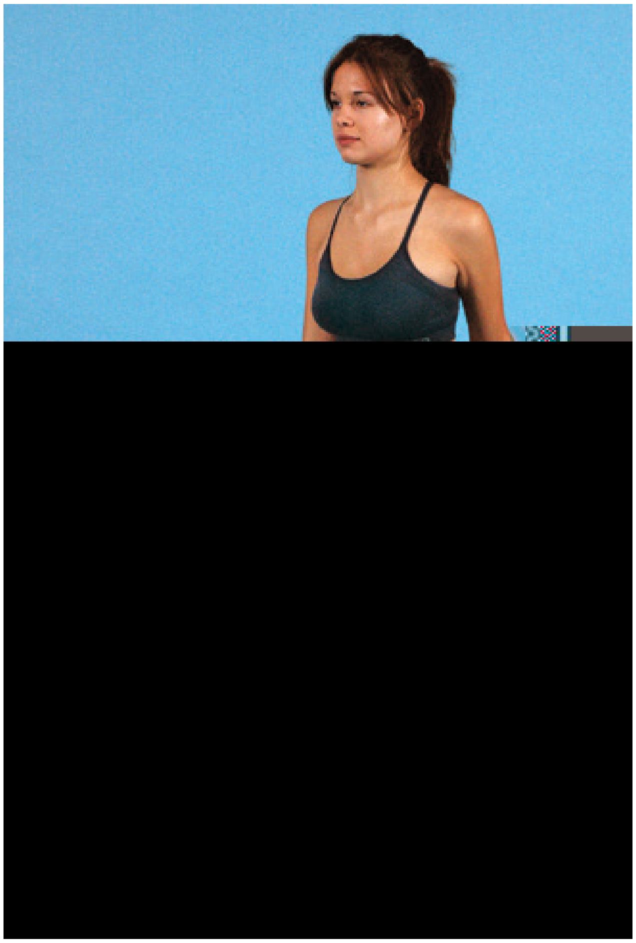


FIGURE 23.42 Standing left hip flexor stretch.

FIGURE 23.43 Hip adductor stretch.

Hip Adductors

The patient sits in the cross-legged position, with the soles of the feet touching (**FIGURE 23.43**). The pelvis is tilted to adopt a functional neutral position of the spine. The patient can then allow gravity to move the thighs toward the floor or can apply manual pressure using the elbows.

Gluteus Maximus and Short Hip Extensors

This stretch is performed in supine by pulling one or both knees to the chest (**FIGURE 23.44**), or in the lunge position, depending on the patient's ability and tolerance.

FIGURE 23.44 Stretch for gluteus maximus and short hip extensors.

Tensor Fascia Latae/Iliotibial Band

The patient stands close to a bed, with the uninvolved side being closer to the bed and the balance supported. The legs are crossed, and the hip is translated away from the bed while the trunk is leaned toward the bed, until a stretch is felt on the outside of the hip and thigh (refer to Figure 23.18).

Selective Joint Mobilizations

Mobilizations of this joint are typically performed using a sustained stretch to decrease a hip joint capsular restriction, with the stretch being governed by the direction of the restriction, rather than by the concave–convex rule. For example, if hip joint extension is restricted, the distal femur is moved into the direction of hip extension. The joint is initially positioned in its neutral position and is progressively moved closer to the end of range. Rotations can be combined with any sustained stretch performed in a cardinal plane. Distraction or compression techniques can be used alone or combined with rotations.

Distraction

Joint distractions are indicated for pain and any hypomobility at the hip joint. The patient is positioned in supine, and the hip is placed in its resting position. The patient's thigh is grasped by the clinician as proximal as possible, and a distraction force is applied along the line of the femoral neck (**FIGURE 23.45**). A belt can also be used for this technique.

Leg Traction (Inferior Glide)

The patient is positioned in supine. The clinician grasps the patient's ankle and applies a series of oscillations along the length of the leg (**FIGURE 23.46**). An assistant or a belt may be necessary to provide stabilization at the hip.

Quadrant (Scouring) Mobilizations

Quadrant mobilizations involve flexion and adduction of the hip, combined with simultaneous joint compression through the femur (**FIGURE 23.47**). The flexed and adducted thigh is swept through a 90 to 140 degrees arc of flexion, while maintaining joint compression. This arc of motion should feel smooth and should be pain free. In an abnormal joint, pain or an obstruction to the arc occurs during the movement. In selected nonacute cases, the procedure may be used as an effective mobilizing procedure, where grade II to III mobilizations are applied perpendicular to the arc throughout.

Posterior Glide

The posterior glide is used to increase flexion and to increase internal rotation of the hip. The patient is positioned in supine with the hip at 90 degrees of flexion. The clinician stands on the medial side of the patient's thigh. The clinician places a hand under the pelvis of the patient and the proximal hand on the anterior surface of the patient's knee. The clinician applies a force through the patient's knee in a posterior direction (**FIGURE 23.48**).

FIGURE 23.45 Hip distraction.

FIGURE 23.46 Leg traction.

FIGURE 23.47 Quadrant mobilization.

FIGURE 23.48 Posterior glide.

FIGURE 23.49 Anterior glide.

FIGURE 23.50 Inferior glide.

Anterior Glide

The anterior glide is used to increase extension and to increase external rotation of the hip. The patient is positioned prone, with the trunk resting on the table and his or her pelvis over firm support (**FIGURE 23.49**). The clinician stands next to the patient's thigh and places both hands posteriorly on the proximal thigh of the patient, just below the buttock. Keeping the elbows extended and flexing the knees, the clinician applies a force through the hands in a downward direction toward the table.

Inferior Glide

The inferior glide is used to increase flexion of the hip. The patient is positioned in supine with the hip and knee each flexed to 90 degrees and the lower leg placed over the clinician's shoulder (**FIGURE 23.50**). The patient's upper body can be stabilized using a belt. The clinician grasps the anterior aspect of the proximal femur as far proximally as possible and interlocks the fingers. An inferior glide is imparted using the hands, while simultaneously rocking the patient's thigh into flexion.

Summary

The hip is anatomically designed with a deep socket and an extensive ligamentous network to withstand the large and potentially dislocating forces that can routinely occur during walking and more vigorous activities. The failure of any of these protective mechanisms, due to disease, injury, or advanced age, may lead to deterioration and weakening of the joint structure.

Learning Portfolio

Case Study

You are discussing end feels at the hip joint with your supervising physical therapist.

1. In which two directions of hip motion would you expect to find a capsular end feel?

You are observing the physical therapist perform a hip examination on a patient during which the therapist assesses the lumbopelvic rhythm.

2. Describe the components of a normal lumbopelvic rhythm and any potential abnormal findings.

You are treating a patient who has anteversion of the hip.

3. What clinical signs would you expect to see in terms of the degree of toe-in/toe-out and the amount of hip external rotation with this patient?

You are treating a patient who just underwent a total hip arthroplasty using a posterolateral approach.

4. Describe how you would educate the patient on positions and activities to avoid.

You are observing a physical therapist performing a series of special tests for the hip on a supine patient. The clinician flexes, abducts, and externally rotates the involved hip so the lateral ankle is placed just proximal to the contralateral knee. While stabilizing the anterior superior iliac spine, the involved leg is lowered toward the table to end range.

5. What is the name of this test and, if positive, what will it tell the physical therapist?

Review Questions

1. When manually testing the sartorius muscle, in which three planes of motion at the hip should your resistance be?
2. In which position is the hip in its most stable position?
3. What is the close-packed position of the hip?
4. How many degrees of freedom are available at the hip joint?
5. In which direction does the pelvis tilt in order to increase the lumbar lordosis?
6. Which two muscles originate from the anterior superior iliac spine?
7. In a patient with excessive lumbar lordosis, which muscle(s) will not need stretching?
   a. Hip flexors
   b. Hamstrings
   c. Back extensors
   d. Pectoralis major
8. Which of the following describes acoxa valga deformity?
   a. An increase in the angle of inclination between the neck of the femur and the shaft
   b. A lengthening of the extremity on the involved side
   c. A deformity of the knee
   d. None of the above
9. You are planning an intervention for a 73-year-old inpatient who received a cemented total hip replacement 2 days ago. Your plan of care should focus on which of the following?
   a. Patient education regarding positions and movements to avoid
   b. Active range of motion exercises and early ambulation using a walker
   c. Passive range of motion exercises
   d. Tilt table
10. A patient who is substituting with the sartorius muscle during testing of the iliopsoas muscle for a fair grade (grade 3) muscle test would demonstrate which of the following?
    a. Internal rotation and abduction of the hip
    b. Flexion of the hip and extension of the knee
    c. External rotation and abduction of the hip
    d. Extension of the hip and knee
11. A 72-year-old patient is unable to bring her right foot up on the stair during stair climbing training. The most functional method to develop this skill is to do which of the following?
    a. Have the patient practice marching in place.
    b. Passively place the foot on the next step.
    c. Strengthen the patient's hip flexors using an isokinetic training device before attempting stair climbing.

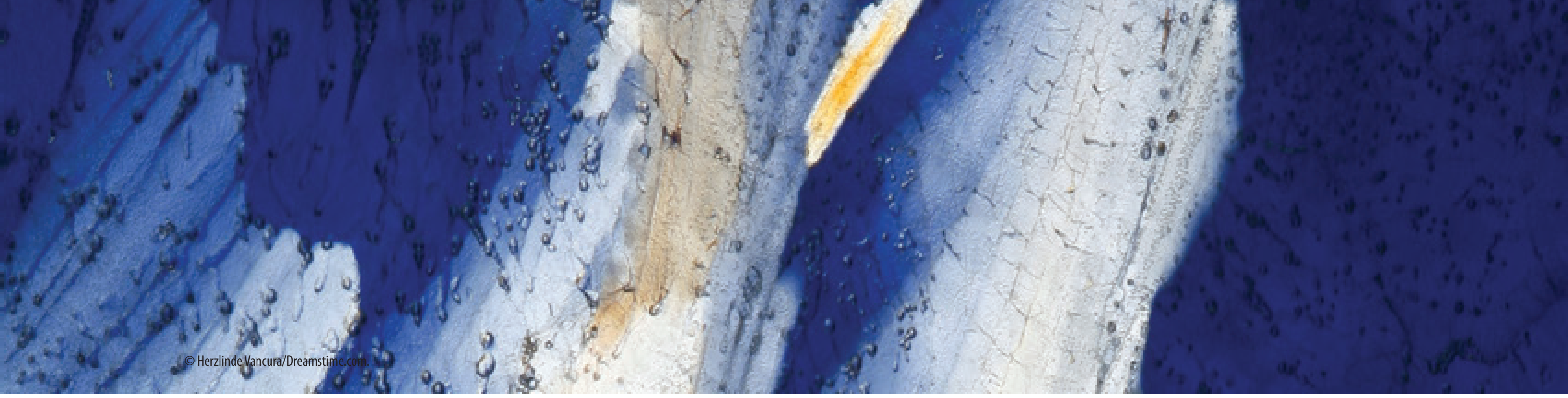
d. Practice stair climbing inside the parallel bars using a 3-inch step.

12. You are treating a patient who has been admitted to a skilled nursing facility following an ORIF to the right hip for a femoral neck fracture. The PT's plan of care includes gait training, strengthening of the lower extremities, transfer training, and patient education. Which of the following complications would you least likely have to be concerned with?
    a. Dislocation of the hip joint
    b. Avascular necrosis
    c. Deep vein thrombosis
    d. Respiratory compromise

References

1. Giarmatzis G, Jonkers I, Wesseling M, Van Rossom S, Verschueren S. Loading of hip measured by hip contact forces at different speeds of walking and running. *Journal of Bone and Mineral Research*. 2015; 30:1431–40.
2. Takahashi M, Sugiuchi Y, Shinoda Y. Commissural mirror-symmetric excitation and reciprocal inhibition between the two superior colliculi and their roles in vertical and horizontal eye movements. *Journal of Neurophysiology*. 2007; 98:2664–82.
3. Jackson-Manfield P, Neumann DA. Structure and function of the hip. In: Jackson-Manfield P, Neumann DA, editors. *Essentials of Kinesiology for the Physical Therapist Assistant*. St. Louis, MO: Mosby Elsevier; 2009. p. 227–71.
4. Standring S, Gray H. *Gray's Anatomy: The Anatomical Basis of Clinical Practice*, 40th ed. St. Louis, MO: Churchill Livingstone Elsevier; 2008.
5. Mueller BT, Moulton SG, O'Brien L, LaPrade RF. Rehabilitation following meniscal root repair: a clinical commentary. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2016; 46:104–13.
6. Schache AG, Dorn TW, Blanch PD, Brown NA, Pandy MG. Mechanics of the human hamstring muscles during sprinting. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise*. 2012; 44:647–58.
7. Harvey G, Bell S. Obturator neuropathy. An anatomic perspective. *Clinical Orthopaedics and Related Research*. 1999; 363:203–11.
8. Cyriax J. *Textbook of Orthopaedic Medicine, Diagnosis of Soft Tissue Lesions*, 8th ed. London: Bailliere Tindall; 1982.
9. Cyriax JH, Cyriax PJ. *Illustrated Manual of Orthopaedic Medicine*. London: Butterworth; 1983.
10. Kaltenborn FM. *Manual Mobilization of the Extremity Joints: Basic Examination and Treatment Techniques*, 4th ed. Oslo, Norway: Olaf Norlis Bokhandel, Universitetsgaten; 1989.
11. Bijl D, Dekker J, van Baar ME, Oostendorp RA, Lemmens AM, Bijlsma JW, et al. Validity of Cyriax's concept capsular pattern for the diagnosis of osteoarthritis of hip and/or knee. *Scandinavian Journal of Rheumatology*. 1998; 27:347–51.
12. Woerner ML, Weber M, Craiovan BS, Springorum HR, Grifka J, Renkawitz TF. Radiographic assessment of femoral stem torsion in total hip arthroplasty-a comparison of a caput-collum-diaphyseal angle-based technique with the Budin view. *The Journal of Arthroplasty*. 2016; 31:1117–22.
13. Boone DC, Azen SP, Lin C-M, Spence C, Baron C, Lee L. Reliability of goniometric measurements. *Physical Therapy*. 1978; 58:1355–60.
14. Mayerson NH, Milano RA. Goniometric measurement reliability in physical medicine. *Archives of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation*. 1984; 65:92–4.
15. Riddle DL, Rothstein JM, Lamb RL. Goniometric reliability in a clinical setting: shoulder measurements. *Physical Therapy*. 1987; 67:668–73.
16. Gelberman RH, Cohen MS, Hekhar S, et al. Femoral anteversion. *The Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery*. 1987; 69B:75.
17. Pizzutillo PT, MacEwen GD, Shands AR. Anteversion of the femur. In: Tonzo RG, editor. *Surgery of the Hip Joint*. New York: Springer-Verlag; 1984.
18. Reikeras O, Bjerkreim I, Kolbenstvedt A. Anteversion of the acetabulum and femoral neck in normals and in patients with osteoarthritis of the hip. *Acta Orthopaedica Scandinavica*. 1983; 54:18–23.
19. Ruwe PA, Gage JR, Ozonoff MB, Deluca PA. Clinical determination of femoral anteversion: a comparison with established techniques. *The Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery*. 1992; 74:820.
20. Harvey D. Assessment of the flexibility of elite athletes using the modified Thomas test. *British Journal of Sports Medicine*. 1998; 32:68–70.
21. Chaudhari AM, Lindenfeld TN, Andriacchi TP, Hewett TE, Riccobene J, Myer GD, et al. Knee and hip loading patterns at different phases in the menstrual cycle: implications for the gender difference in anterior cruciate ligament injury rates. *The American Journal of Sports Medicine*. 2007; 35:793–800.
22. Malone T, Nitz AJ, Kuperstein J, Garrett W, Jr. Neuromuscular concepts. In: Ellenbecker TS, editor. *Knee Ligament Rehabilitation*. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 2000. p. 399–411.
23. Risberg MA, Mork M, Krogstad-Jenssen H, Holm I. Design and implementation of a neuromuscular training program following anterior cruciate ligament reconstruction. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2001; 31:620–31.
24. Cho HJ, Morey V, Kang JY, Kim KW, Kim TK. Prevalence and risk factors of spine, shoulder, hand, hip, and knee osteoarthritis in community-dwelling Koreans older than age 65 years. *Clinical Orthopaedics And Related Research*. 2015; 473:3307–14.
25. Weigl M, Angst F, Stucki G, Lehmann S, Aeschlimann A. Inpatient rehabilitation for hip or knee osteoarthritis: 2 year follow up study. *Annals of the Rheumatic Diseases*. 2004; 63:360–8.
26. Cibulka MT, Threlkeld J. The early clinical diagnosis of osteoarthritis of the hip. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2004; 34:461–7.
27. van Baar ME, Dekker J, Oostendorp RA, Bijl D, Voorn TB, Lemmens JA, et al. The effectiveness of exercise therapy in patients with osteoarthritis of the hip or knee: a randomized clinical trial. *The Journal of Rheumatology*. 1998; 25:2432–9.
28. van Baar ME, Dekker J, Oostendorp RA, Bijl D, Voorn TB, Bijlsma JW. Effectiveness of exercise in patients with osteoarthritis of hip or knee: nine months' follow up. *Annals of the Rheumatic Diseases*. 2001; 60:1123–30.

29. MacDonald CW, Whitman JM, Cleland JA, Smith M, Hoeksma HL. Clinical outcomes following manual physical therapy and exercise for hip osteoarthritis: a case series. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2006; 36:588–99.
30. Orchard JW, Farhart P, Leopold C. Lumbar spine region pathology and hamstring and calf injuries in athletes: is there a connection? *British Journal of Sports Medicine*. 2004; 38:502–4; discussion.
31. Arnason A, Andersen TE, Holme I, Engebretsen L, Bahr R. Prevention of hamstring strains in elite soccer: an intervention study. *Scandinavian Journal of Medicine and Science in Sports*. 2008; 18:40–8.
32. Goom TS, Malliaras P, Reiman MP, Purdam CR. Proximal hamstring tendinopathy: clinical aspects of assessment and management. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2016; 46:483–93.
33. Rio E, Moseley L, Purdam C, Samiric T, Kidgell D, Pearce AJ, et al. The pain of tendinopathy: physiological or pathophysiological? *Sports Medicine*. 2014; 44:9–23.
34. Kongsgaard M, Kovanen V, Aagaard P, Doessing S, Hansen P, Laursen AH, et al. Corticosteroid injections, eccentric decline squat training and heavy slow resistance training in patellar tendinopathy. *Scandinavian Journal of Medicine and Science in Sports*. 2009; 19:790–802.
35. Cushman D, Rho ME. Conservative treatment of subacute proximal hamstring tendinopathy using eccentric exercises performed with a treadmill: a case report. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2015; 45:557–62.
36. Biundo JJ, Jr., Irwin RW, Umpierre E. Sports and other soft tissue injuries, tendinitis, bursitis, and occupation-related syndromes. *Current Opinions in Rheumatology*. 2001; 13:146–9.
37. Lequesne M, Mathieu P, Vuillemin-Bodaghi V, Bard H, Djian P. Gluteal tendinopathy in refractory greater trochanter pain syndrome: diagnostic value of two clinical tests. *Arthritis and Rheumatism*. 2008; 59:241–6.
38. Grimaldi A, Fearon A. Gluteal tendinopathy: integrating pathomechanics and clinical features in its management. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2015; 45:910–22.
39. Grimaldi A, Mellor R, Hodges P, Bennell K, Wajswelner H, Vicenzino B. Gluteal tendinopathy: a review of mechanisms, assessment and management. *Sports Medicine*. 2015; 45:1107–19.
40. Krause DA, Jacobs RS, Pilger KE, Sather BR, Sibunka SP, Hollman JH. Electromyographic analysis of the gluteus medius in five weight-bearing exercises. *Journal of Strength and Conditioning Research*. 2009; 23:2689–94.
41. Bolgla LA, Uhl TL. Electromyographic analysis of hip rehabilitation exercises in a group of healthy subjects. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2005; 35:487–94.
42. Ekstrom RA, Donatelli RA, Carp KC. Electromyographic analysis of core trunk, hip, and thigh muscles during 9 rehabilitation exercises. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2007; 37:754–62.
43. Youdas JW, Boor MM, Darfler AL, Koenig MK, Mills KM, Hollman JH. Surface electromyographic analysis of core trunk and hip muscles during selected rehabilitation exercises in the side-bridge to neutral spine position. *Sports Health*. 2014; 6:416–21.
44. Johnston CAM, Kindsay DM, Wiley JP. Treatment of iliopsoas syndrome with a hip rotation strengthening program: a retrospective case series. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 1999; 29:218–24.
45. Adler KL, Cook PC, Yen YM, Giordano BD. Current concepts in hip preservation surgery: part I. *Sports Health*. 2015; 7:518–26.
46. Domb BG, Philippon MJ, Giordano BD. Arthroscopic capsulotomy, capsular repair, and capsular plication of the hip: relation to atraumatic instability. *Arthroscopy*. 2013; 29:162–73.
47. Ganz R, Parvizi J, Beck M, Leunig M, Notzli H, Siebenrock KA. Femoroacetabular impingement: a cause for osteoarthritis of the hip. *Clinical Orthopaedics and Related Research*. 2003:112–20.
48. Adler KL, Cook PC, Geisler PR, Yen YM, Giordano BD. Current concepts in hip preservation surgery: part II—rehabilitation. *Sports Health*. 2016; 8:57–64.
49. Ritter MA, Harty LD, Keating ME, Faris PM, Meding JB. A clinical comparison of the anterolateral and posterolateral approaches to the hip. *Clinical Orthopaedics and Related Research*. 2001; 385:95–9.
50. Baerga-Varela L, Malanga GA. Rehabilitation and minimally invasive surgery. In: Hozack WJ, Krismer M, Nogler M, et al., editors. *Minimally Invasive Total Joint Arthroplasty*. Heidelberg: Springer Verlag; 2004. p. 2–5.
51. Takagi H, Umemoto T. An algorithm for managing suspected pulmonary embolism. *JAMA*. 2006; 295:2603–4; author reply 4.
52. Skaf E, Stein PD, Beemath A, Sanchez J, Olson RE. Fatal pulmonary embolism and stroke. *The American Journal of Cardiology*. 2006; 97:1776–7.
53. Subramaniam RM, Blair D, Gilbert K, Sleigh J, Karalus N. Computed tomography pulmonary angiogram diagnosis of pulmonary embolism. *Australasian Radiology*. 2006; 50: 193–200.
54. Weiss CR, Scatarige JC, Diette GB, Haponik EF, Merriman B, Fishman EK. CT pulmonary angiography is the first-line imaging test for acute pulmonary embolism: a survey of US clinicians. *Academic Radiology*. 2006; 13:434–46.
55. Hogg K, Brown G, Dunning J, Wright J, Carley S, Foex B, et al. Diagnosis of pulmonary embolism with CT pulmonary angiography: a systematic review. *Emergency Medicine Journal*. 2006; 23:172–8.
56. Moore DS, Cho G. Heterotopic ossification. (eMedicine Journal [serial online]). Available at: https://emedicine.medscape.com/article/327648-overview; 2018 [January 22, 2018].
57. Hedlundh U, Karlsson M, Ringsberg K, et al. Muscular and neurologic function in patients with recurrent dislocation after total hip arthroplasty: a matched controlled study of 65 patients using dual-energy X-ray absorptiometry and postural stability tests. *The Journal of Arthroplasty*. 1999; 14:319–25.
58. Demos HA, Rorabeck CH, Bourne RB, et al. Instability in primary total hip arthroplasty with the direct lateral approach. *Clinical Orthopaedics and Related Research*. 2001; 393:168–80.


© Herzlinde Vancura/Dreamstime.com

CHAPTER 24

Knee Joint Complex

CHAPTER OBJECTIVES

At the completion of this chapter, the reader will be able to:

1. Describe the anatomy of the joints, ligaments, muscles, blood, and nerve supply that comprise the region.
2. Describe the biomechanics of the knee complex, including the open- and close-packed positions, muscle force couples, and static and dynamic stabilizers.
3. Describe the relationship between muscle imbalance and functional performance of the knee.
4. Summarize the various causes of knee dysfunction.
5. Describe and demonstrate intervention strategies and techniques based on clinical findings and established goals by the physical therapist.
6. Evaluate the intervention effectiveness to determine progress and suggest modifications to the intervention as needed.

Overview

The knee, consisting of the tibiofemoral joint and the patellofemoral joint, is the largest and most complex joint in the body. The tibiofemoral joint is formed between the large condyles of the distal femur and the relatively planar proximal tibia. The patellofemoral joint is formed between the patella and the distal femur.

Despite its juxtaposition to the tibiofemoral joint, the patellofemoral joint can be considered as its own entity. The motions about the knee joint complex occur in two planes: flexion and extension in the sagittal plane and internal and external rotation in the horizontal (transverse) plane. In addition, these motions rarely occur in isolation; they typically also involve movement at the hip and ankle.

Anatomy

The tibiofemoral joint, or knee joint, is a hinge (ginglymoid) joint (**FIGURE 24.1**). The bony configuration of the knee joint complex is geometrically incongruous and lacks a deep concave socket, which lends little inherent stability to the joint. Joint stability is therefore dependent upon the static restraints of the joint capsule, ligaments (**FIGURE 24.2** and **TABLE 24.1**), and menisci (**TABLE 24.2**), and the dynamic restraints of the surrounding musculature (**TABLE 24.3**).[1] In the standing position, the articulation between the angled femur and the relatively upright tibia does not typically form a straight line. In fact, the femur usually meets the tibia to form a lateral angle of 170 to 175 degrees (a medial angulation of 5 to 10 degrees) (**FIGURE 24.3**). This alignment is referred to as normal

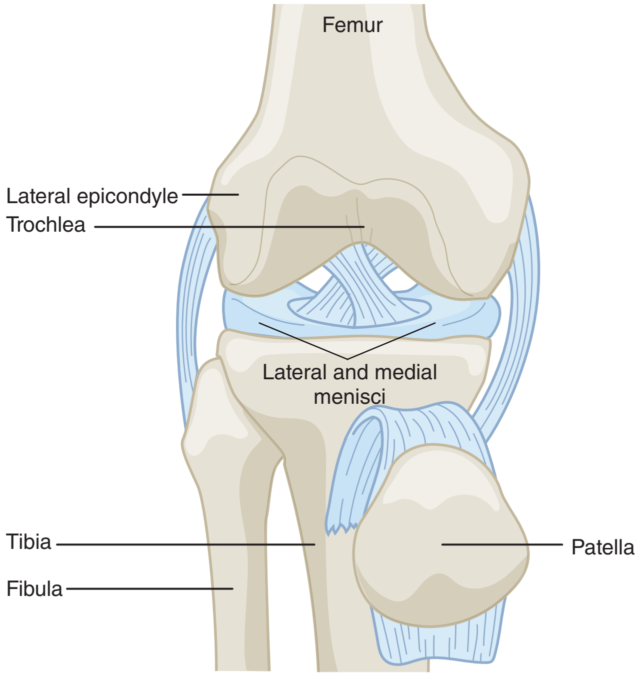


FIGURE 24.1 Bony anatomy of the knee complex.

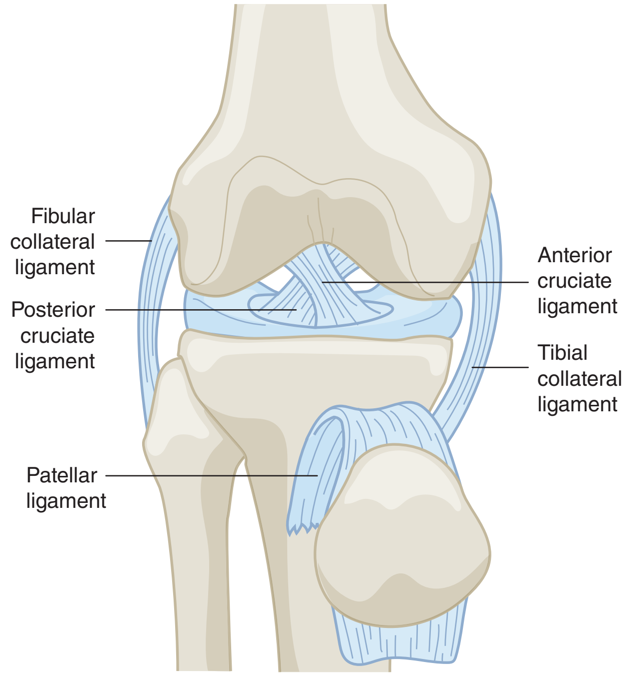


FIGURE 24.2 Major ligaments of the knee.

genu valgum. A lateral angle of fewer than 170 degrees is diagnosed as excessive genu valgum (knock-kneed). A lateral angle greater than 180 degrees is called genu varum (bow-legged). The patella, the largest sesamoid bone in the body, possesses the thickest articular cartilage in the body.

Knee Menisci

The lateral and medial menisci, attached on top of the tibial plateaus, lie between the articular cartilage of the femur and the tibia. The peripheral, convex borders of the menisci are thick and attach to the joint capsule; the opposite border tapers inward to a thin, free edge centrally. Therefore, menisci have a triangular shape in cross-section. Each covers approximately two-thirds of the corresponding articular surface of the tibia. Studies have demonstrated that 10 to 30 percent of the periphery of the medial meniscus and 10 to 25 percent of the lateral meniscus receive a vascular supply; the remainder receives its nutrition from the synovial fluid from passive diffusion and mechanical pumping. The medial and lateral menisci have anterior and posterior roots that serve as the primary anchors of the menisci to the tibial plateau. The menisci assist in some functions, including load transmission, shock absorption, joint lubrication and nutrition,

TABLE 24.1 Ligaments of the Knee Joint Complex

Ligament	Function
Anterior cruciate ligament (ACL)	Resists anterior translation of the tibia relative to a fixed femur Resists the extremes of knee extension Resists valgus and varus deformations and excessive horizontal plane rotations
Posterior cruciate ligament (PCL)	Resists posterior translation of the tibia relative to a fixed femur Resists the extremes of knee flexion Resists valgus and varus deformations and excessive horizontal plane rotations
Lateral collateral ligament (LCL)	The primary restraint to a varus force of the knee and a secondary restraint to excessive knee extension
Medial collateral ligament (MCL)	Primary restraint to valgus force of the knee Secondary restraint to excessive knee extension

TABLE 24.2 The Medial and Lateral Menisci

Medial meniscus	Semilunar or *U*-shaped Larger and thicker than its lateral counterpart Wider posteriorly than anteriorly
Lateral meniscus	Forms a *C*-shaped incomplete circle Smaller, thinner, and more mobile than its medial counterpart
Medial and lateral menisci	Act as shock absorbers for the knee, reducing friction and dissipating compressive force Improve joint congruency Increase surface area of joint contact, thereby reducing joint pressure Enable normal joint arthrokinematics The blood supply of the meniscus, which is key to successful meniscal repair, comes from the perimeniscal capsular arteries, which are branches of the lateral, medial, and middle genicular arteries

TABLE 24.3 Muscles of the Knee

Action	Muscles Acting	Nerve Supply	Nerve Root Derivation
Flexion of knee	Biceps femoris Semimembranosus Semitendinosus Gracilis Sartorius Popliteus Gastrocnemius Tensor fascia latae	Sciatic Sciatic Sciatic Obturator Femoral Tibial Tibial Superior gluteal	L5, S1–S2 L5, S2–S2 L5, S1–S2 L2–L3 L2–L3 L4–L5, S1 S1–S2 L4–L5
Extension of knee	Rectus femoris Vastus medialis Vastus intermedius Vastus lateralis Tensor fascia latae	Femoral Femoral Femoral Femoral Superior gluteal	L2–L4 L2–L4 L2–L4 L2–L4 L4–L5
Internal rotation of flexed leg (non–weight bearing)	Popliteus Semimembranosus Semitendinosus Sartorius Gracilis	Tibial Sciatic Sciatic Femoral Obturator	L4–L5 L5, S1–S2 L5, S1–S2 L2–L3 L2–L3
External rotation of flexed leg (non–weight bearing)	Biceps femoris	Sciatic	L5, S1–S2

secondary mechanical stability (particularly the posterior horn of the medial meniscus, which blocks anterior translation of the tibia on the femur), and the guiding of movements. The actual loading of the tibiofemoral joint compresses and imparts a radial force on the meniscus. This radial force is resisted by circumferential fibers of the meniscus, resulting in a circular "hoop stress" that is transferred through the roots.[2] If a meniscal root is disrupted, hoop stress is lost, radial force from axial loading causes

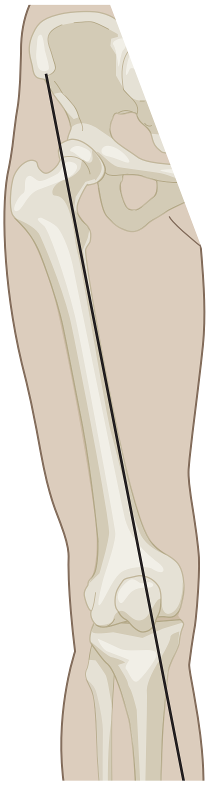


FIGURE 24.3 Normal genu valgum.

extrusion, and the inherent meniscal properties of joint contact force absorption and dispersion are compromised, resulting in dramatic changes in joint peak pressures.

Osteokinematics of the Tibiofemoral Joint

The tibiofemoral joint allows 2 degrees of freedom, flexion and extension, as well as internal and external rotation. Normal range of motion (ROM) is from about 5 degrees of hyperextension to about 130 to 140 degrees of flexion. When flexed, the knee joint permits 40 to 50 degrees of total rotation (internal and external); however, with the knee fully extended, virtually no rotation occurs.

Arthrokinematics of the Tibiofemoral Joint

All of the motions about the tibiofemoral joint consist of a rolling, gliding, and rotation between the femoral condyles and the tibial plateaus. The rolling, gliding, and rotation occur almost simultaneously and serve to maintain joint congruency. The direction of the roll and glide between the convex condyles of the femur and the concave tibial condyles depends on whether the knee is involved in an open or closed kinetic chain activity. (See Chapter 11.) During an open-chain activity, the rolling and sliding occur in the same direction, as the concave tibia moves on the convex femur. During closed-chain extension, however, the rolling and sliding occur in opposite directions, as the convex femur moves on the concave tibia. The shape of the articular surfaces of the tibiofemoral joint necessitates a flexion and extension arc accompanied by slight automatic rotational movements. In the last 30 to 5 degrees of closed-chain knee extension, the lateral condyle of the femur, together with the lateral meniscus, becomes congruent and moves the axis of movement more laterally. Because the medial condyle is larger, and because the sliding stops on the lateral condyle sooner than on the medial condyle, the tibia glides more on the medial side, producing internal rotation of the femur. Also, the ligaments, both extrinsic and intrinsic, start to become taut near terminal extension. At this point, the cruciate ligaments become crossed and are tightened. In the last 5 degrees of extension, rotation is the only movement accompanying the extension. This rotation is referred to as the *screw-home* mechanism and is a characteristic motion in the normal knee, in which the tibia externally rotates, and the femur internally rotates as the knee approaches extension. During knee hyperextension, the femur does not continue to roll anteriorly but instead tilts forward. This creates anterior compression between the femur and tibia. In the normal knee, bony contact does not limit hyperextension as it does at the elbow; rather, hyperextension is checked by the soft tissue structures. When the knee is fully extended, the tibia is slightly externally rotated on the femur (femur slightly medially rotated on the tibia). This, in essence, "locks" the knee. For flexion to be initiated from a position of full extension in a closed-chain activity, the knee joint must first be "unlocked." The service of a locksmith is provided by the popliteus muscle, which contracts to internally rotate the tibia (if in an open chain—or externally rotate the femur if in a closed chain) with respect to the femur, enabling the flexion to occur.

☑ KEY POINT

When the knee hyperextends, the axis of the thigh runs obliquely inferiorly and posteriorly, which tends to place the ground reaction force anterior to the knee. In this position, the posterior structures are placed in tension, which helps to stabilize the knee joint, negating the need for quadriceps muscle activity.

The normal capsular pattern of the tibiofemoral joint is a gross limitation of flexion and slight limitation of extension. The ratio of flexion to extension is roughly 1:10; thus 5 degrees of limited extension corresponds to a 45 to 60 degrees limitation of flexion.

The Patellofemoral Joint

The patellofemoral joint is the articulation between the smooth, posterior surface of the patella and the intercondylar groove of the femur. The patella enhances the torque-producing capability of the quadriceps by about 25 percent. The patella is divided into seven facets. On the medial and lateral sides, there are superior, middle, and inferior facets. The "odd" facet, medial to the medial facet, is frequently the first part of the patella to be affected in premature degeneration of articular cartilage.

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> The patella's position in relation to the femur is expressed as a ratio of patellar tendon length divided by the greatest diagonal length of the patella:
>
> - *Normal.* The patella is roughly equal in length to the patellar tendon.
> - *Alta.* The ratio is greater than 1.5. If the ratio of the tendon length to the patella body length is increased, the patella is placed in an elevated position, which delays patella engagement of the trochlea until an increased angle of flexion. This greatly increases the risk for dislocation.
> - *Baja.* The ratio is less than 0.74. This most often results from soft tissue contracture and hypotonia of the quadriceps muscle following surgery or trauma to the knee.

Muscles of the Knee Joint Complex

The major muscles that act on the knee joint complex are the quadriceps, the hamstrings (semimembranosus, semitendinosus, and biceps femoris), the gastrocnemius, the popliteus, the gracilis, and the hip adductors (refer to Table 24.3).

Quadriceps

The quadriceps muscles act to extend the knee when the foot is off the ground, although more commonly they work as decelerators, preventing the knee from buckling when the foot strikes the ground. The four muscles that make up the quadriceps are the rectus femoris, the vastus intermedius, the vastus lateralis, and the vastus medialis (**FIGURE 24.4**). The quadriceps tendon represents the merge point of all four muscles' tendon units, and it inserts at the anterior aspect of the superior pole of the patella. The femoral nerve innervates the quadriceps muscle group.

Rectus Femoris The rectus femoris is the only quadriceps muscle that crosses the hip joint. It originates at the anterior inferior iliac spine. The other quadriceps muscles originate on the femoral shaft. This gives the hip joint considerable significance with respect to the knee extensor mechanism in the examination and intervention of the knee joint complex, particularly the patellofemoral joint. The line of pull of the rectus femoris, with respect to the patella, is at an angle of about 5 degrees with the femoral shaft (**FIGURE 24.5**).

Vastus Intermedius The vastus intermedius has its origin on the proximal part of the femur, and its line of action is directly in line with the femur.

Vastus Lateralis The vastus lateralis (VL) is composed of two functional parts: the VL and the vastus lateralis oblique (VLO).[1] The VL has a line of pull of about 12 to 15 degrees to the long axis of the femur in the frontal plane, whereas the VLO has a pull of 38 to 48 degrees.[1]

Vastus Medialis The vastus medialis is composed of two functional parts that are anatomically distinct: the vastus medialis obliquus (VMO) and the vastus medialis proper, or longus (VML).[1]

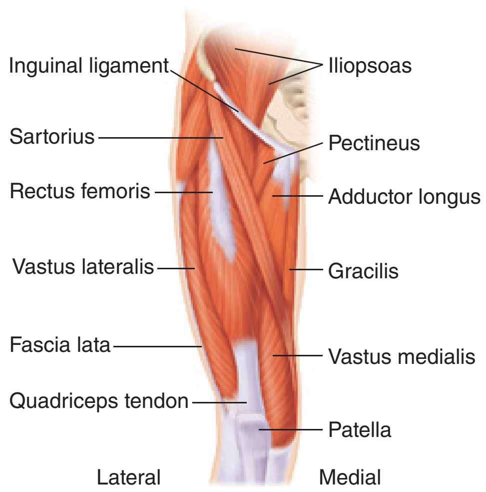


FIGURE 24.4 Quadriceps muscles.

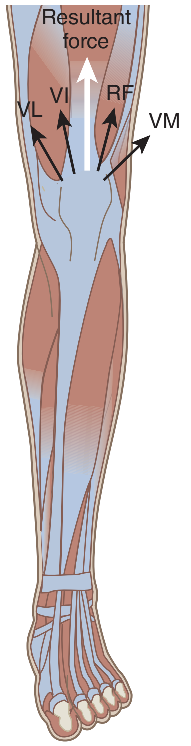


FIGURE 24.5 Quadriceps muscle forces.

The VMO arises from the adductor magnus tendon.[1] The insertion site of the typical VMO is the medial border of the patella, approximately one-third to one-half of the way down from the proximal pole. If the VMO remains proximal to the proximal pole of the patella and does not reach the patella, there is an increased potential for malalignment.

The vector of the VMO is medially directed, and it forms an angle of 50 to 55 degrees with the mechanical axis of the leg.[3,4] The VMO is least active in the fully extended position and plays little role in extending the knee, acting instead to realign the patella medially during the extension maneuver.[3,4] It is active in this function throughout the whole range of extension.

The vastus medialis is considered to be the weakest of the quadriceps group and appears to be the first muscle of the quadriceps group to atrophy and the last to rehabilitate.[3,4] The normal VMO/VL ratio of electromyographic (EMG) activity in standing knee extension from 30 to 0 degrees is 1:1, but in patients who have patellofemoral pain (PFP), the activity in the VMO decreases significantly; instead of being tonically active, it becomes phasic in action.[5] The presence of swelling also inhibits the VMO, and it requires almost half of the volume of effusion to inhibit the VMO as it does to inhibit the rectus femoris and VL muscles. The VMO is commonly innervated independently from the rest of the quadriceps by a separate branch of the femoral nerve.[5]

Vastus Medialis Longus. The VML originates from the medial aspect of the upper femur and inserts anteriorly into the quadriceps tendon, giving it a line of action of approximately 15 to 17 degrees off the long axis of the femur in the frontal plane.[5]

Because the quadriceps group is aligned anatomically with the shaft of the femur and not with the mechanical axis of the lower extremity, a dynamic lateral force is applied to the patella during extension of the knee.

Hamstrings

The hamstrings primarily function as a group to extend the hip and to flex the knee. The hamstrings are innervated by branches of the sciatic nerve.

Semimembranosus The semimembranosus muscle (FIGURE 24.6) originates from the lateral facet of the ischial tuberosity and receives slips from the ischial ramus. This muscle inserts on the posterior medial aspect of the medial condyle of the tibia and has a substantial expansion that reinforces the posteromedial aspect of the knee capsule. The semimembranosus pulls the meniscus posteriorly, and internally rotates the tibia on the femur during knee flexion, although its primary function is to extend the hip and flex the knee.

Semitendinosus The semitendinosus originates from the upper portion of the ischial tuberosity via a shared tendon with the long head of the biceps femoris. It

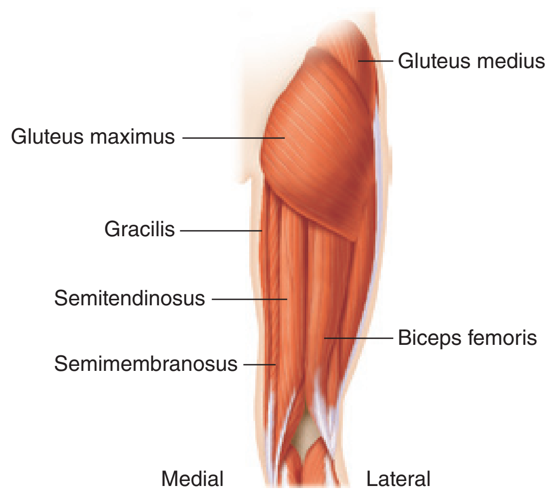


FIGURE 24.6 Hamstrings.

travels distally, becoming cordlike about two-thirds of the way down the posteromedial thigh. Passing over the MCL, it inserts into the medial surface of the tibia and deep fascia of the lower leg, distal to the attachment of the gracilis and posterior to the attachment of the sartorius. These three structures are jointly called the *pes anserinus* (goose's foot) at this point. Like the semimembranosus, the semitendinosus functions to extend the hip, flex the knee, and internally rotate the tibia.

Biceps Femoris The biceps femoris muscle is a two-headed muscle. The longer of the two heads originates from the inferomedial facet of the ischial tuberosity, whereas the shorter head arises from the lateral lip of the linea aspera of the femur. The muscle inserts on the lateral condyle of the tibia and the head of the fibula. The biceps femoris functions to extend the hip, flex the knee, and externally rotate the tibia. The superficial layer of the common tendon has been identified as the major force creating external tibial rotation and controlling internal rotation of the femur.[1] The pull of the biceps femoris on the tibia retracts the joint capsule and pulls the iliotibial tract posteriorly, keeping it taut throughout flexion.

Gastrocnemius

The gastrocnemius has two heads that originate above the knee; each head is connected to a femoral condyle and to the joint capsule (**FIGURE 24.7**). About halfway down the leg, the gastrocnemius muscles blend to form an aponeurosis. As the aponeurosis progressively contracts, it receives the tendon of the soleus, a flat broad muscle deep to the gastrocnemius. The aponeurosis and the soleus tendon end in a flat tendon, called the *Achilles tendon*, which attaches to the posterior aspect of the calcaneus. The two heads of the gastrocnemius and the soleus are jointly known as the *triceps surae*. (See Chapter 25.)

Although the primary function of the gastrocnemius–soleus complex is to plantar flex the ankle and supinate the subtalar joint, the gastrocnemius also functions to flex or extend the knee, depending on whether the lower extremity is weight bearing or not. Kendall and colleagues[6] proposed that a weakness of the gastrocnemius may cause knee hyperextension.

Also, it has been proposed that the gastrocnemius acts as an antagonist of the ACL, exerting a posteriorly directed pull throughout the range of knee flexion–extension motion, particularly when the knee is near extension.[7]

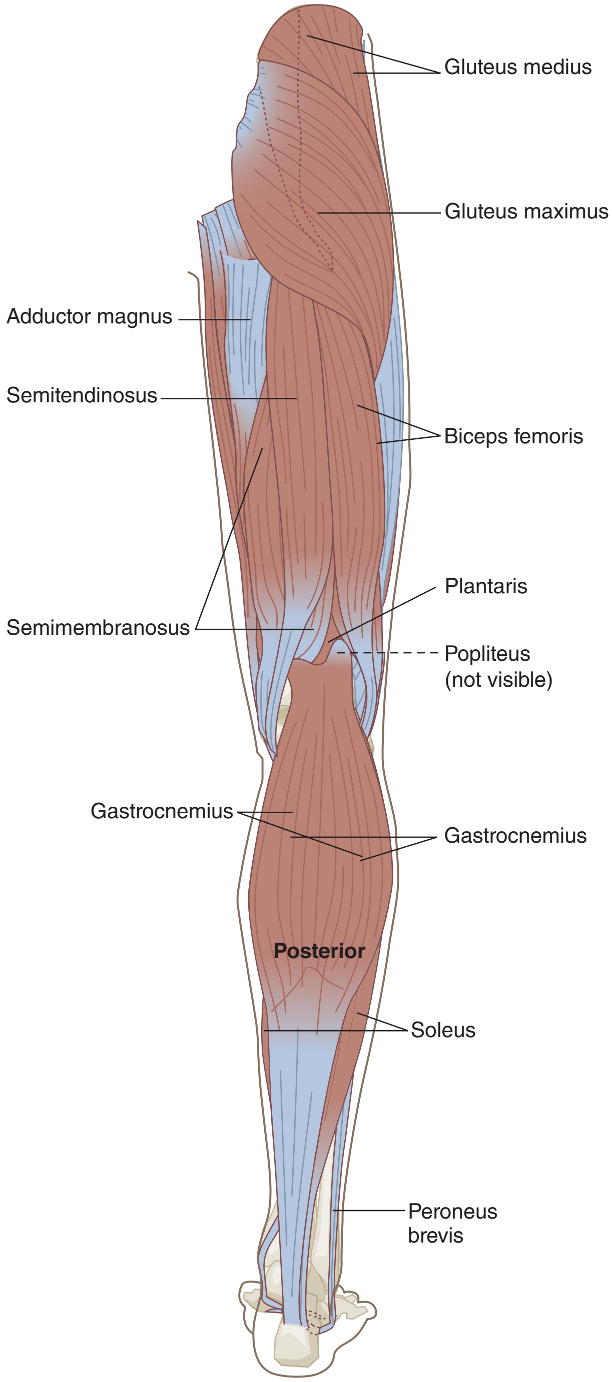


FIGURE 24.7 Gastrocnemius and its relation to posterior muscles.

Hip Adductors

Although some of the hip adductors play an indirect role in the medial stability of the knee, they are primarily movers of the hip. They are described in Chapter 23. The exception to this is the two-joint gracilis muscle, which in addition to adducting and flexing the hip, assists in flexion of the knee and internal rotation of the lower leg.

Iliotibial Band (Tract)

Laterally, the iliotibial band (ITB) supports the extensor mechanism and is an important lateral stabilizer of the patellofemoral joint. It originates above the hip joint as a wide fascial band, originating from the gluteal muscles, tensor fascia lata (see Chapter 23), and vastus lateralis. Distally, the ITB consists of two tracts. The ITB inserts on Gerdy's tubercle (a lateral tubercle of the tibial plateau). The ITB is adjacent to the center of rotation of the knee, which allows it to function as an anterolateral stabilizer of the knee in the frontal plane and to both flex and extend the knee.[8] During static standing, the primary function of the ITB is to maintain knee and hip extension, providing the thigh muscles an opportunity to rest. While walking or running, the ITB helps to maintain hip flexion and is a significant supporter of the knee in squatting from full extension until 30 degrees of flexion. In knee flexion greater than 30 degrees, the ITB becomes a weak knee flexor, as well as an external rotator of the tibia.

Popliteus

As described previously in this chapter, the knee is locked in extension by the screw-home mechanism (i.e., external rotation of the tibia/internal rotation of the femur). The popliteus muscle, due to its origin on the posterior lateral femoral condyle and insertion on the posterior medial tibia, can function as an internal rotator of the tibia in an open chain and provide the torque that unlocks the knee. In the closed chain, the popliteus can externally rotate the femur to unlock the knee. For example, as one transitions from a standing position to a partial squat, the popliteus externally rotates the femur slightly and, in a relative sense, internally rotates the tibia, thereby allowing the knee to flex.

☑ KEY POINT

The internal rotator muscles of the tibia far outweigh the number and the strength of the external rotator muscles. This is based on the functional need at the knee during activities such as "cutting" motions to either accelerate the knee into internal rotation (by concentric contraction), or decelerate external rotation of the knee (by eccentric contraction).[9]

Sartorius

The sartorius is described in Chapter 23 concerning its functions at the hip. The sartorius also flexes and internally rotates the tibia and plays an important role in providing stability to the medial side of the knee. Together with the tendon of the semitendinosus and the gracilis, the sartorius tendon conjoins to form one common tendon, commonly referred to as the pes anserinus.

Patellar Tracking

The patella is a passive constituent of the knee extensor mechanism, in which the dynamic and static relationships of the underlying tibia and femur determine the patellar-tracking pattern. The primary dynamic mechanisms of the knee are the quadriceps group. The quadriceps tendon represents the confluence of the four muscle tendon units and inserts on the superior pole of the patella. The primary static restraints for this joint are the medial and lateral retinacula and the contact of the patella with the lateral edge of the patellar groove. The thicker lateral retinaculum comprises a distinct, thick deep layer and a thin superficial layer. Deep to the medial patellar retinaculum are three focal capsular thickenings. These are sometimes referred to as the medial patellofemoral, patellomeniscal, and patellotibial ligaments.

The patella produces a concave, lateral, *C*-shaped curve as it moves from approximately 120 degrees of knee flexion toward approximately 30 degrees of knee extension. The lateral curve produces a gradual medial glide of the patella in the frontal plane and a medial tilt in the sagittal plane.[10] Further extension of the knee (between 30 and 0 degrees) produces a lateral glide of the patella in the frontal plane and a lateral tilt in the sagittal plane.[10] There is a natural tendency for the patella to be pulled laterally during these patellar movements due to the pull of the static restraints. For example, inappropriate tension within the ITB and lateral retinaculum may result in excessive pressure on the lateral patellofemoral joint surfaces (lateral patellofemoral pressure syndrome) or lateral subluxation of the patella from the trochlear groove. Also, weakness of the hip abductors and external rotators may result in adduction of the femur and valgus at the knee under loaded weight bearing. The quadriceps muscles, particularly the VMO, are considered critical in counteracting this lateral pull by stabilizing the patella medially.

☑ KEY POINT

The VMO muscle has been noted to provide a medially directed dynamic stabilizing force on the patella during knee extension.

The Quadriceps Angle

The quadriceps (Q) angle, the overall line of force of the quadriceps that determines the pressure distributions on the patella, can be described as the angle formed by the bisection of two lines, one line drawn from the anterior superior iliac spine (ASIS) to the center of the patella, and the other line drawn from the center of the patella to the tibial tubercle (**FIGURE 24.8**). Various normal values for the Q-angle have been reported in the literature. The most common ranges cited are 8 to 14 degrees for males and 15 to 17 degrees for females. The discrepancy between males and females is supposedly due to the wider pelvis of the female, although this has yet to be proven. Whatever the reason, females have a greater incidence of lateral dislocation of the patella and a higher frequency of PFP. An increased Q-angle can result in increased pressure of the lateral facet against the lateral femoral condyle when the knee flexes during weight bearing.

☑ KEY POINT

The Q-angle can vary significantly with the degree of foot pronation and supination, and when compared with measurements made in the supine position. For example, the Q-angle will be increased if the foot is pronated, but decreased if the foot is supinated. Similarly, if the patient is non–weight bearing, the compressive forces through the legs will be removed, often resulting in a decreased/increased Q-angle when compared to standing.

Lower extremity motions that can increase the Q-angle include external tibial rotation, internal femoral rotation, and functional knee valgus during dynamic activities.

☑ KEY POINT

The vector force placed on the patella may be affected by the Q-angle, resulting in increased peak patellofemoral contact pressures.

The Patellofemoral Joint Reaction Forces

The patellofemoral joint reaction forces (PJRF) cause compression of the patellofemoral joint. The PJRF are due to some variables including the acuity of the Q-angle, the angle of knee flexion (which can increase tension in the patellar and quadriceps tendons), the location of patella contact, and the surface area of contact. (As the knee flexes from 0 to 60 degrees, the surface area of the patella contacting the femur progressively enlarges, providing a larger contact surface area over which to distribute the load as the load is increasing).[4]

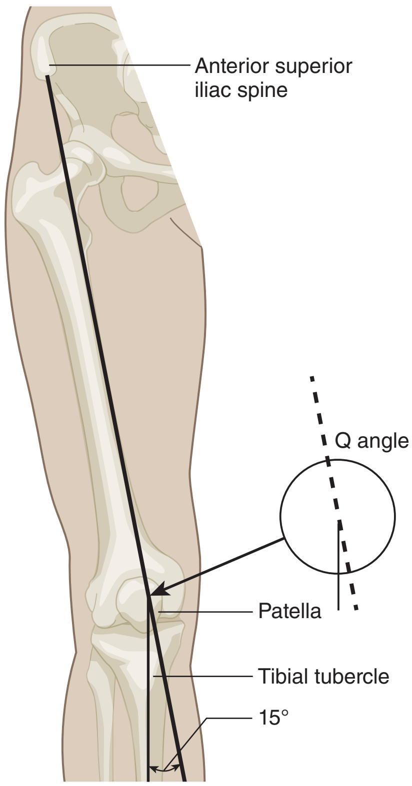


FIGURE 24.8 The Q-angle.

☑ KEY POINT

Using the knowledge of the compressive forces at the patellofemoral joint:

- Open-chain exercises (e.g., short arc quadriceps, multiple angle isometrics) should be performed from 0 to 5 degrees of flexion and from 90 degrees to full flexion.
- Closed-chain exercises (e.g., squats, lunges) should be performed in the range of 0 to 45 degrees of flexion.

Examination

The physical therapist's (PT's) examination of the knee joint complex typically follows the outline in **TABLE 24.4**.

Range of Motion

Both the passive and active physiological ranges of motion can be measured using a goniometer (**TABLE 24.5**), which has been shown to have a satisfactory level of intraobserver reliability.[11–13]

The evidence-based special tests of the knee are outlined in **TABLE 24.6**.

TABLE 24.4 Examination of the Knee Joint Complex

I. History.
II. Observation and inspection.
III. Upper quarter scan as appropriate.
IV. Examination of movements. Active range of motion (AROM) with passive overpressure of the following movements:
- Hip flexion, extension, abduction, adduction, internal rotation, and external rotation
- Knee flexion and extension
- Ankle dorsiflexion and plantar flexion
- Internal and external rotation of the tibia on the femur

V. Resisted isometric movements:
- Hip flexion, extension, abduction, adduction, internal rotation, and external rotation
- Knee flexion and extension
- Ankle dorsiflexion and plantar flexion

VI. Ligament stability tests:
- One plane medial instability
- One plane lateral instability
- One plane anterior and posterior instability
- Anteromedial and anterolateral rotary instability
- Posteromedial and posterolateral rotary instability

VII. Palpation.
VIII. Neurological tests as appropriate (reflexes, sensory scan, peripheral nerve assessment).
IX. Joint mobility tests:
- Anterior and posterior glides of the tibia on the femur
- Medial and lateral translation of the tibia on the femur
- Patellar glides
- Anteroposterior glides of the proximal tibiofibular joint

X. Special tests (refer to Table 24.6) and diagnostic imaging as appropriate.

TABLE 24.5 Goniometric Techniques for the Knee

Joint	Motion	Axis	Stationary Arm	Movable Arm	Normal Ranges (Degrees)	End Feel
Knee	Flexion	Lateral epicondyle of the femur	Lateral midline of the femur using the greater trochanter for reference	Lateral midline of the fibula using the lateral malleolus and fibular head for reference	0–150	Soft tissue approximation
	Extension	Lateral epicondyle of the femur	Lateral midline of the femur using the greater trochanter for reference	Lateral midline of the fibula using the lateral malleolus and fibular head for reference	0–5	Firm, hard

TABLE 24.6 Evidence-Based Special Tests of the Knee Joint Complex

Name of Test	Brief Description	Positive Findings	Evidence-Based
Lachman	Patient is supine. Knee joint is flexed between 10 and 20 degrees, and femur is stabilized with one hand.	Lack of end feel for tibial translation or subluxation is positive for ACL deficiency.	Sensitivity: 0.82[a] 0.65[b] 0.78[c] Specificity: 0.97[a] 0.42[b] 1.0[c]
Anterior drawer	The patient is supine. The knee is flexed between 60 and 90 degrees with the foot on the examination table. The clinician draws the tibia anteriorly.	Increased anterior tibial displacement compared with the opposite side is positive for ACL deficiency.	Sensitivity: 0.41[a] 0.78[c] Specificity: 0.95[a] 1.0[c]
Pivot shift test[a]	The patient is supine. The knee is placed in 10 to 20 degrees of flexion, and the tibia is rotated internally while the clinician applies a valgus force.	Positive for ACL deficiency if lateral tibial plateau subluxes anteriorly.	Sensitivity: 0.82 Specificity: 0.98
Posterior sag sign[d]	The patient is supine. Knee and hip are flexed to 90 degrees.	Increased posterior tibial displacement is positive for PCL injury.	Sensitivity: 0.79 Specificity: 1.0
Varus test[e]	The patient is supine. The clinician places patient's knee in 20 degrees of flexion and applies a varus stress to the knee.	Positive for LCL injury if pain or laxity is present.	Sensitivity: 0.25 Specificity: not provided
Valgus stress test[e]	The patient is supine. The clinician places patient's knee in 20 degrees of flexion and applies a valgus stress to the knee.	Positive for MCL injury if pain or laxity is present.	Sensitivity: 0.86 Specificity: not provided
McMurray test[f]	The patient is supine. Clinician brings the leg from extension into 90 degrees of flexion while the foot is held first in internal rotation, and then in external rotation.	Positive for meniscal tear if there is a palpable clunk.	Sensitivity: 0.16 Specificity: 0.98
Apley grind test[g]	The patient is prone with knee flexed to 90 degrees. The clinician places downward pressure on the foot, compressing the knee while internally and externally rotating the tibia.	Positive for meniscal tear if tibial rotation reproduces the patient's pain.	Sensitivity: 0.97 Specificity: 0.87

(continues)

TABLE 24.6 Evidence-Based Special Tests of the Knee Joint Complex *(continued)*

Name of Test	Brief Description	Positive Findings	Evidence-Based
Ballottement test[h]	The patient is supine. Clinician quickly pushes the patient's patella posteriorly with two or three fingers.	Positive for knee swelling if the patella bounces off the trochlea with a distinct impact.	Sensitivity: 0.83 Specificity: 0.49
Thessaly test	The patient stands on the symptomatic leg while holding the clinician's hands. The patient then rotates the body and leg internally and externally with the knee flexed to 20 degrees.	Positive for meniscal tear when the patient feels pain and/or a click in the joint line.	Sensitivity: 0.90[i] 0.79[j] Specificity: 0.98[i] 0.40[j]

Data from (a) Katz JW, Fingeroth RJ: The diagnostic accuracy of ruptures of the anterior cruciate ligament comparing the Lachman test, the anterior drawer sign, and the pivot shift test in acute and chronic knee injuries. *Am J Sports Med* 14:88–91, 1986; (b) Cooperman JM, Riddle DL, Rothstein JM: Reliability and validity of judgments of the integrity of the anterior cruciate ligament of the knee using the Lachman's test. *Phys Ther* 70:225–33, 1990; (c) Lee JK, Yao L, Phelps CT, et al: Anterior cruciate ligament tears: MR imaging compared with arthroscopy and clinical tests. Radiology 166:861–4, 1988; (d) Rubinstein RA, Jr., Shelbourne KD, McCarroll JR, et al: The accuracy of the clinical examination in the setting of posterior cruciate ligament injuries. *Am J Sports Med* 22:550–7, 1994; (e) Harilainen A: Evaluation of knee instability in acute ligamentous injuries. *Ann Chir Gynaecol* 76:269–73, 1987; (f) Evans PJ, Bell GD, Frank C: Prospective evaluation of the McMurray test. *Am J Sports Med* 21:604–8, 1993; (g) Fowler PJ, Lubliner JA: The predictive value of five clinical signs in the evaluation of meniscal pathology. *Arthroscopy* 5:184–6, 1989; (h) Kastelein M, Luijsterburg PA, Wagemakers HP, et al: Diagnostic value of history taking and physical examination to assess effusion of the knee in traumatic knee patients in general practice. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil* 90:82–6, 2009; (i) Harrison BK, Abell BE, Gibson TW: The Thessaly test for detection of meniscal tears: Validation of a new physical examination technique for primary care medicine. *Clin J Sport Med* 19:9–12, 2009; and (j) Mirzatolooei F, Yekta Z, Bayazidchi M, et al: Validation of the Thessaly test for detecting meniscal tears in anterior cruciate deficient knees. *Knee* 17:221–3, 2010.

General Intervention Strategies

Most knee pain of nontraumatic origin diminishes with conservative intervention. Different approaches have been emphasized over the years, including patient education, modification of activity, progressive muscle stretching and strengthening (particularly the vastus medialis for the patellofemoral joint), functional lower extremity training, external patellar supports and braces foot orthotics, and taping to improve patella tracking.[5] Whatever the cause of the knee injury, the goal of the rehabilitation program is to return the patient to the optimum level of function. The emphasis during knee rehabilitation must focus on achieving a balance between permitting the healing of damaged structures, improving the strength of the controlling musculature, and increasing the efficiency of the static restraints. Also, consideration must be given to the various forces placed on the knee during closed- and open-chain exercises so that the healing process is allowed to proceed.

Acute Phase

During the acute phase, every attempt is made to protect the joint to promote and progress the healing. The goals during the acute phase are as follows:

- *Reduce pain and swelling and control inflammation.* The reduction of pain and the control of swelling are significant. Pain and swelling can both inhibit normal muscle function and control. Pain, swelling, and inflammation are minimized by using the principles of PRICEMEM (*p*rotection, *r*est, *i*ce, *c*ompression, *e*levation, *m*anual therapy, *e*arly motion, and *m*edication). Icing for 20 to 30 minutes, three to four times per day, concurrent with nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) or aspirin prescribed by the physician, can aid in reducing pain and swelling.
- *Regain ROM.* Once the pain, swelling, and inflammation are under control, early controlled ROM exercises are initiated. In the acute phase of healing, the interventions focus on decreased loading of the joint complex, which might include postural correction, activity modification, or the use of an assistive device. Bracing may be needed to provide adequate protection and support.
- *Maintain or improve the patient's general fitness.* It is important with any injury to ensure that the patient's general level of fitness does not deteriorate due to a decrease in activity or function. An upper body ergometer can be used in these cases.
- *Minimize muscle atrophy and weakness and attain early neuromuscular control.* Exercises prescribed for the knee joint complex must include those that promote neuromuscular control, timing, balance, and proprioception. Exercises recommended for this phase include isometric

muscle setting (quadriceps sets, hamstring sets, gluteal sets), active knee flexion (heel slides) (**FIGURE 24.9**), and straight-leg raises (if appropriate). Proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation (PNF) activities may be initiated with slow-speed, low-force, controlled exercises. Electrical stimulation can be used to facilitate muscle activity and to promote muscle reeducation. The training of the VMO to decrease patellofemoral dysfunction should be regarded as a motor skill acquisition rather than a strengthening procedure, with the goal of the training to produce a modification of the length–tension relationship between the VMO and its antagonist, the VL. This may result in a change of the equilibrium point, which will enable the appropriate alignment of the patella. If the muscle control of the VMO is poor, biofeedback can be used to augment the hip adductor training. Once the muscle control is achieved, gentle closed-chain exercises are initiated. Contractions of the quadriceps should be encouraged in the functional knee positions that provoke pain, such as sitting, and stair negotiation. The benefit of closed-chain exercises is that they decrease shear forces and emphasize co-contractions. All the exercises performed in the clinic should be performed by the patient at home whenever possible.

Functional Phase

The functional or chronic phase of the knee rehabilitation program addresses any tissue overload problems and functional biomechanical deficits. Once the

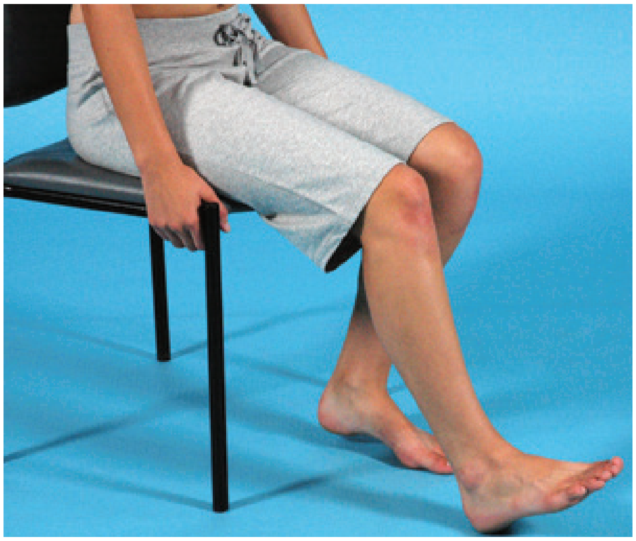


FIGURE 24.9 Heel slide.

painful symptoms have improved, the patient may gradually and incrementally increase joint-loading activities. As an approximation, patients typically progress to this phase when terminal knee extension exercises can be done with 25- to 30-pound weights. Among the goals for this phase are the following:

- *Attain full range of pain-free motion.* ROM exercises during this phase include flexion and extension exercises; stationary cycling, progressing to moderate resistance; and standing wall slides. The stationary bike exercises are initially performed with a high seat (providing about 15 degrees of knee flexion in the extended leg), progressing to a lower seat to increase knee flexion ROM as tolerated.
- *Restore normal joint arthrokinematics.* Normal joint arthrokinematics are restored by performing joint mobilization techniques.
- *Improve muscle strength and neuromuscular control, and restore normal muscle force–couple relationships.* There is controversy about whether knee exercises should be performed in an open-chain or closed-chain manner. Closed kinetic chain exercises (CKCEs), such as the squat, leg press, dead lift, and power-clean, have long been used as core exercises by athletes to enhance performance in sport. These multi-joint exercises develop the largest and most powerful muscles of the body and have biomechanical and neuromuscular similarities to many athletic movements, such as running and jumping. Open kinetic chain exercises (OKCEs) appear to be less functional regarding many athletic movements and primarily serve a supportive role in strength and conditioning programs. However, it is advised that a combination of the open- and closed-chain exercises be used.

Closed Kinetic Chain Exercises

CKCEs during this phase include a progression of those exercises introduced during the acute phase. In addition, other exercises are introduced including one-quarter step-ups (**FIGURE 24.10**) and step-downs (**FIGURE 24.11**), single-leg toe raises (**FIGURE 24.12**), partial to full squats with added resistance (see Chapter 23), seated leg press, front lunges (see Chapter 23) and side lunges (**FIGURE 24.13**), plyometric exercises (**FIGURE 24.14** and **FIGURE 24.15**), slide-board exercises, weight-bearing resisted walking with leg pulls in all four planes (flexion, extension, abduction, and adduction) using elastic tubing (**FIGURE 24.16** and **FIGURE 24.17**), balance activities, and agility/balance drills (**FIGURE 24.18** and **FIGURE 24.19**).

FIGURE 24.10 Step-ups.

FIGURE 24.12 Single-leg toe raises.

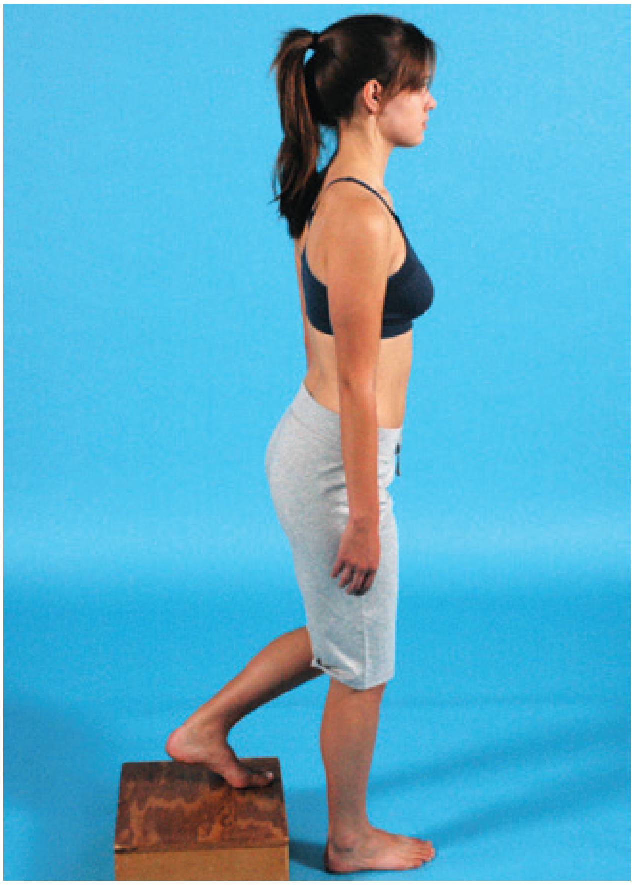


FIGURE 24.11 Step-downs.

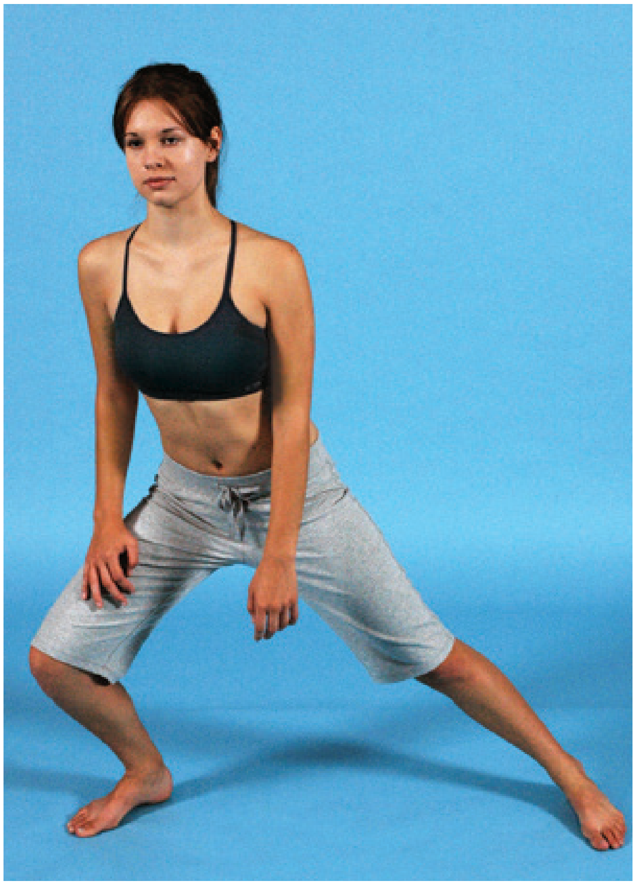


FIGURE 24.13 Side lunges.

FIGURE 24.14 Plyometric exercise.

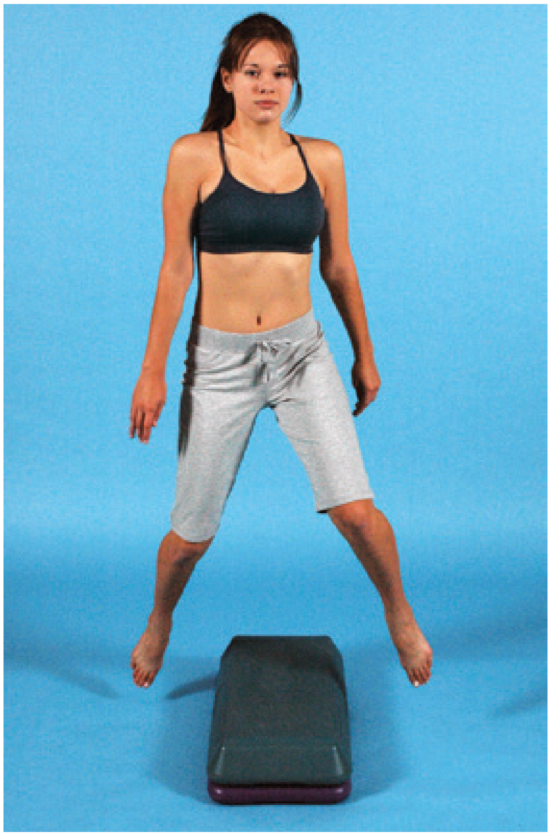


FIGURE 24.15 Plyometric exercise.

FIGURE 24.16 Resisted walking.

FIGURE 24.17 Resisted walking.

FIGURE 24.18 Agility and balance drills.

FIGURE 24.19 Agility and balance drills.

CKCEs to strengthen the hamstrings, gastrocnemii, and quadriceps functionally include a variety of exercises on a stair climber. The patient stands on the machine backward for the quadriceps and forward for the hamstrings. An inclined treadmill can also be used to selectively exercise the hamstrings, gastrocnemii, and quadriceps as follows:

- Walking or running downhill works the quadriceps eccentrically.
- Walking or running uphill works the gastrocnemii and hamstrings concentrically.
- Walking or running downhill backward works the gastrocnemii and hamstrings eccentrically.
- Walking uphill backward uses the quadriceps concentrically.

☑ KEY POINT

Uphill and retrotreadmill walking have been found to produce less patellofemoral joint restrictive forces than forward walking.

Open Kinetic Chain Exercises

OKCEs during this phase include seated knee extension and knee flexion exercises and are viewed as single-joint, single-muscle-group exercises. Other exercises include the following:

- Resisted straight-leg raises in the planes of flexion (FIGURE 24.20), extension (FIGURE 24.21), abduction (FIGURE 24.22), and adduction (FIGURE 24.23)

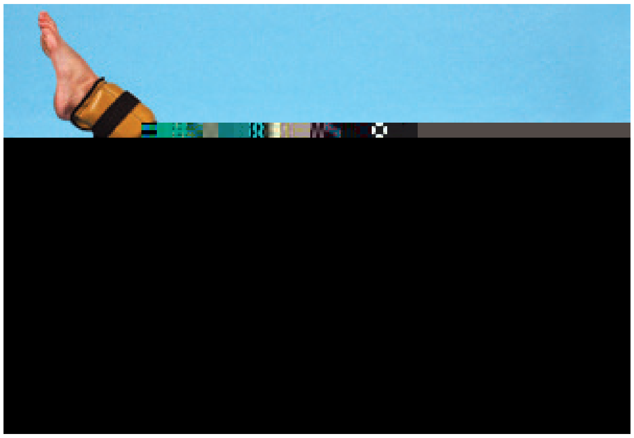


FIGURE 24.20 Straight-leg raise into flexion.

FIGURE 24.21 Straight-leg raise into extension.

FIGURE 24.22 Straight-leg raise into abduction.

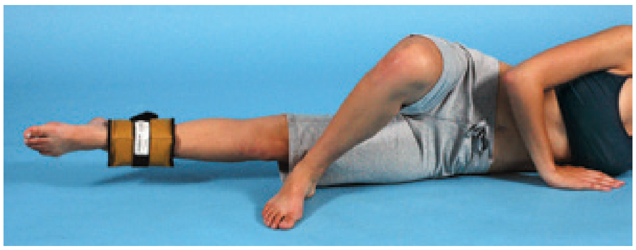


FIGURE 24.23 Straight-leg raise into adduction.

- Short arc quadriceps progression (**FIGURE 24.24**) to about 10 percent of body weight in resistance
- Standing (**FIGURE 24.25**) and prone (**FIGURE 24.26**) hamstring curls
- Stool sweeps (**FIGURE 24.27** and **FIGURE 24.28**)

FIGURE 24.24 Short arc quadriceps exercise using gravity.

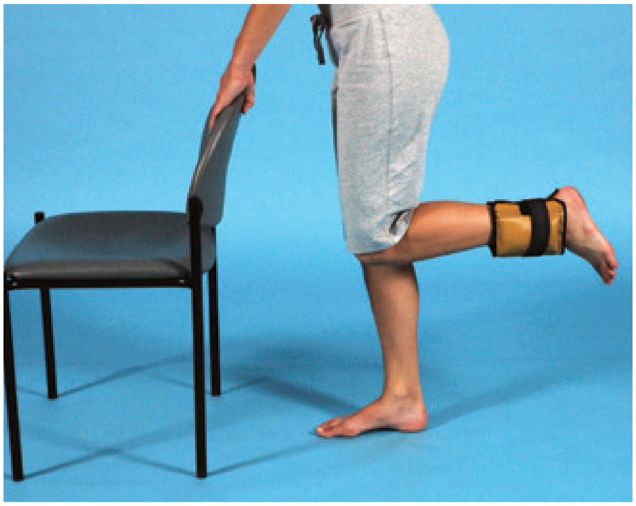


FIGURE 24.25 Standing hamstring curls.

FIGURE 24.26 Prone hamstring curls.

FIGURE 24.27 Stool sweep.

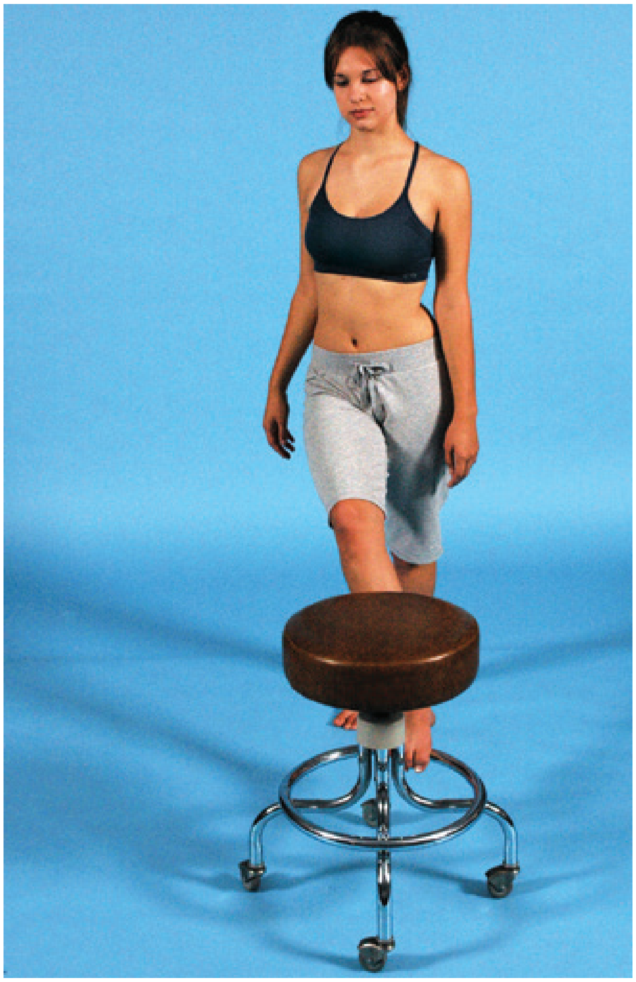


FIGURE 24.28 Stool sweep.

Common Conditions

The common conditions that can affect the knee joint complex are typically traumatically induced, but also can include those that relate to poor biomechanics due to weakness or adaptive shortening, repetitive activities, or overuse.

Anterior Cruciate Ligament Tear

ACL injury factors have been divided into intrinsic and extrinsic factors:

- *Intrinsic factors*. These include a narrow intercondylar notch, weak ACL, generalized overall joint laxity, and lower-extremity malalignment.
- *Extrinsic factors*. These include abnormal quadriceps and hamstring interactions, altered neuromuscular control, shoe-to-surface interface, playing surface, and athlete's playing style.

Gender has also been implicated. ACL injury rates are two to eight times higher in women than in men participating in the same sports. Speculation about the possible etiology of ACL injuries in women has centered on the following:[14]

- *Q-angle*. Differences in pelvic width and tibiofemoral angle between males and females can alter the Q-angle. Theoretically, larger Q-angles increase the lateral pull of the quadriceps femoris muscle on the patella and put medial stress on the knee. This increased Q-angle also decreases the functional effectiveness of the quadriceps as a knee extensor and of the hamstrings—the antagonist muscle group responsible for exerting a posterior force on the proximal tibia to protect the ACL.
- *Femoral notch*. A narrow intercondylar notch may be a predictive factor for ACL ruptures.
- *Joint laxity*. Joint laxity tends to be greater in women than in men, although the relationship between ligamentous laxity and injury is not clear.
- *Hormonal influence*. Hormones, especially estrogen, estradiol, and relaxin, may be involved indirectly in increased ACL injury in females.

- *ACL size.* Females typically have a smaller ACL than males, which would tend to increase the risk of tissue failure.[15]
- *Muscular strength and muscular activation patterns.* Women have significantly less muscle strength in the quadriceps and hamstrings compared with men, even when muscle strength is normalized for body weight.[16]

All ACL sprains are categorized by degree of injury as grades I, II, or III (see Chapter 4), that is mild, moderate, or complete tears of the ligament, respectively.

☑ KEY POINT

The term *midsubstance tear* refers to the site of the ACL injury and indicates a central ligament tear as opposed to a tear at one of the ligament's bony attachment sites. Almost all ACL tears are complete midsubstance tears. Young athletes may sustain growth plate injuries (e.g., avulsion fractures) rather than midsubstance tears because the epiphyseal cartilage in their growth plates is structurally weaker than their ligaments, collagen, or bones.

Mechanism of Injury

Sudden deceleration, an abrupt change of direction, and a fixed foot have all been cited as key elements of an ACL injury. The knee undergoes a combination of external rotation, valgus stress, and internal tibial rotation. A less common mechanism of injury to the ACL occurs with extreme hyperflexion or hyperextension of the knee joint.

Unlike the LCL and MCL, which are extracapsular structures, the ACL is an intracapsular structure. A classic sign of ACL injuries is acute hemarthrosis (i.e., extravasation of blood into a joint or synovial cavity). Atrophy of the quadriceps is an almost constant finding with patients who have a torn ACL. Common manual tests used by the PT to assess the ACL include the anterior drawer and the Lachman (refer to Table 24.6).

Arthrometer

An arthrometer, such as the KT1000 and KT2000, is a mechanical testing device for measuring anteroposterior knee ligament instability. The patient is positioned in supine with both knees flexed approximately 20 to 25 degrees over a bolster. The arthrometer is attached to the tibia with Velcro straps while stabilizing the patella using the patellar reference pad. The patient is asked to relax. Using the handle of the arthrometer, the PT directs an anterior and posterior force to the proximal tibia. A needle on the surface of the device deflects in a positive or negative direction based on the degree of tibial translation relative to the stable femur at a given force in millimeters.

Associated Knee Injuries

Isolated ACL injuries are rare because the ACL functions in conjunction with other structures of the knee (**TABLE 24.7**). When the outer aspect of the knee receives a direct blow that causes valgus stress, the MCL is often torn first, followed by the ACL, which becomes the second component of a sports-related ACL injury.[17] Meniscal injuries also can occur in conjunction with ACL tears. Approximately 49 percent of patients with sports-related ACL injuries have meniscal tears.[17]

Treatment options or surgical indications are based on the following:

- *The amount of knee instability.* Surgical treatment is usually recommended for young adult athletes

TABLE 24.7 Common Ligamentous and Meniscal Injuries

Structure	Mechanism of Injury	Subjective Complaints
MCL	Most commonly involves external valgus or rotational force while the leg is firmly planted. Often associated with ACL injury.	Localized swelling and tenderness over injured area
Meniscus	Usually caused by noncontact injury; a rotational/torsional force is applied to a flexed knee with the foot firmly planted.	Reports of swelling developing within 12 hours of injury; localized swelling and tenderness over injured area; history of popping, clicking, or locking with knee motions

because they have more years to develop degenerative joint conditions from chronic rotary knee instabilities caused by ACL deficiencies.

- *The presence of meniscal tears.* It is becoming clear that a torn ACL that is associated with a meniscal injury needs particular attention because the menisci contribute to the stability of the knee. The loss of the stabilizing effect of the meniscus appears to predispose patients who have a torn ACL to osteoarthrosis.[17]
- *The skeletal maturity of patients.* The decision to perform surgery on children with open growth plates who are diagnosed with complete ACL disruption remains questionable. This is because of the potential damage to the growth plates that may result in growth arrest. The risk of growth disturbance appears to be low if young athletes are within 1 year of skeletal maturity at the time of surgery.
- *The expected levels of patients' participation in future sports activities.* The expected future activity levels and participation in sports activities for the younger patient are often more vigorous than those for middle-aged adult athletes. Nonoperative treatment of the ACL-deficient knee may be indicated in older, sedentary people.

Surgical treatment of patients undergoing ACL reconstruction procedures involves the use of grafts to replace their damaged cruciate ligament. The graft is placed through drilled femoral and tibial tunnels, and anchored in place at the proximal and distal attachment sites with a fixation device. Graft options include the use of the following:

- *Autologous grafts*. These are harvested from tissue from the body of the patient. They consist of tendons, or tendons with attached bone blocks. Bone-patella-bone autografts are currently popular because they yield a significantly higher percentage of stable knees with a higher rate of return to preinjury sports. These grafts are usually taken from the involved extremity. The two most common autologous grafts harvested for ACL reconstruction procedures are the hamstring and patellar tendons. These grafts are frequently used because they are easy to collect. Autologous grafts also allow return of the patient's proprioceptive response, a proven stabilizing mechanism for ACL-deficient knee joints.[18] When the semitendonosus and gracilis tendons are used together, the strength of the hamstring graft far exceeds that of the ACL. Patellar tendons are also reliable autologous grafts for ACL-deficient knee joints and are frequently used because they maintain their inherent strength. They consist of bone-tendon-bone contacts.
- *Allogeneic grafts*. These involve the use of biological tissue taken from another human body. These types of grafts are less favorable due to the risk of disease transmission and problems with effective sterilization procedures. Allografts tend to be used in revisions.
- *Synthetic grafts and ligament augmentation devices*. These have been used in the past. However, synthetic grafts are no longer acceptable, because of their high rate of complications, including failure and aseptic effusions.

☑ KEY POINT

Double-tunnel ACL reconstructions attempt to reproduce stability in internal rotation and valgus torque applied to the knee. Investigations into the benefits of such surgical treatment versus the increased level of difficulty and operative time are ongoing.

Tibiofemoral Bracing

Functional knee braces are commonly prescribed following an ACL injury or reconstruction to promote healing by reducing anterior translation of the tibia with respect to the femur and thereby restoring normal joint kinematics.

☑ KEY POINT

The efficacy of tibiofemoral bracing with regard to providing adequate protection is controversial because the compliance of the soft tissues around the thigh decreases the ability of the brace to function correctly, particularly at high loads.

☑ KEY POINT

Interestingly, bandaging of the knee, or the use of a neoprene brace, has been shown to improve proprioception in both normal individuals and those with different types of knee disorders, including knee OA and an ACL tear.

Intervention

The goal of the preoperative period is to maintain full ROM. Following the surgery, care must be taken to progressively work the knee through the safe ranges of motion. During the hospital stay, the patient is fitted with a hinged knee brace locked in full extension. The brace remains locked in full extension during ambulation for the first 2 to 6 weeks after surgery, depending on surgeon preference. In general, weight bearing with crutches is allowed as tolerated as soon as possible after surgery. The typical initial postsurgical protocol (maximum-protection phase) may be divided into the following phases:

- *Phase I (0–2 weeks).* The goal is to minimize pain and swelling, achieve full extension, recover quadriceps control, and achieve knee flexion to 90 degrees. Modalities to control pain and swelling, such as cryotherapy, elevation, compression, and anti-inflammatory medication, are helpful. The efficacy of continuous passive movement (CPM) after ACL reconstruction is controversial. Quadriceps setting (at 60 and 90 degrees) and straight-leg raises (flexion, extension, abduction, and adduction performed in the brace) are useful to reactivate the lower extremity musculature and to help regain full extension. Also, activities such as prone hangs, supine wall slides, and extension boards can be used to gain the last few degrees of extension. Hamstring setting exercises (at 15, 30, 60, and 90 degrees) and glute sets are also used to initiate a strengthening of these muscles. Co-contraction of the quadriceps and hamstring muscles are performed at 30, 60, and 90 degrees of knee flexion. Patellar mobilizations may be delegated by the supervising PT to prevent patellar tendon shortening or retinacular contracture. The patient is instructed on how to perform the stretches two to three times daily.
- *Phase II (3–5 weeks).* Maintain full extension and increase knee flexion up to full ROM. Stair-climbers and bicycles may be used. Active flexion-extension motions of the knee from 35 degrees to full flexion are emphasized, as are passive flexion-extension motions of the knee without muscle contraction.
- *Phase III (6 weeks).* Increase ROM and strength in preparation for the moderate-protection phase. In order to progress to this phase, the patient must be able to demonstrate quadriceps and hamstring control, full weight bearing, and a knee ROM of 0 degrees extension to 120 degrees of flexion.

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> In the first 6 to 12 weeks of rehabilitation, the fixation of the graft rather than the graft itself is the limiting factor for strength in the graft complex. The graft gradually loses strength and is quite fragile during the first 2 months after surgery; at 3 months the tensile strength is less than 50 percent of its original strength. Although graft strength never reaches preoperative levels, full maturation may take as long as a year.

Proprioceptive and closed-chain activities characterize the moderate-protection phase (6–12 weeks). Closed-chain activities begin with standing and weight-shifting activities, and leg press exercises performed in a short arc. All exercises are performed while wearing the brace, until permission is given by the physician or supervising PT to remove it. Other exercises introduced at this time are standing wall slides, step-ups, stair-steppers, and stationary cycling with the seat height adjusted to accommodate any limitation in knee flexion ROM. To progress to the next phase the patient must demonstrate full ROM, normalized gait without the brace, and continued improvement of hamstring and quadriceps strength.

The final phase, often referred to as the minimum-protection or functional phase, indicates the patient's return to more challenging functional activities and a gradual resumption of sport as appropriate. During this phase the physician may request isokinetic testing or instrumented stability examinations (arthrometer) of the involved knee.

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> Return to all sports or heavy-duty occupations may take 6 to 9 months and should be closely monitored by the surgeon and PT.

Posterior Cruciate Ligament Tear

Because of its inherent strength, damage to the PCL usually occurs only with significant trauma such as a motor vehicle accident, when landing in a hyperflexed knee position from a jump, or with hyperextension of the knee with the foot planted.

Clinical findings for a PCL tear include pain in the posterior aspect of the knee joint that may be aggravated with kneeling, and minimal swelling.

Instability may or may not be present, depending on the severity of the tear.

Many isolated PCL grade I to II injuries heal with conservative intervention because many PCL-deficient patients do not experience functional instability. However, due to the forces needed to rupture the PCL, isolated PCL tears are rare, and most occur with simultaneous injuries to other structures around the knee. The management of patients who have PCL injuries combined with other ligament or capsular injuries is less definitive. In general, rehabilitation after a grade III PCL injury tends to be more conservative than that after ACL injury.

Conservative Intervention

Following a short period of immobilization, the focus of conservative intervention for an isolated PCL injury is to restore ROM and to strengthen the quadriceps, while avoiding positions that encourage posterior displacement of the tibia. Quadriceps strengthening, the foundation of PCL rehabilitation, is performed to help reduce posterior tibial translation. Hamstring strengthening is delayed for approximately 6 to 8 weeks following the injury to decrease the potential for PCL stress. OKCEs have the potential to exert significant forces on the PCL during flexion exercises in the 60 to 90 degrees range. Also, heavy resistance open kinetic chain knee extension exercises through a range of 45 to 20 degrees place significant stress on the patellofemoral joint. Even though throughout the 0 to 60 degrees range, minimal or no force appears to be generated in the PCL, the performance of OKCEs should be avoided.

☑ KEY POINT

During PCL rehabilitation, CKCEs should be performed in the 0 to 45 degrees range to help protect both the PCL and the patellofemoral joint, whereas open kinetic chain flexion exercises should be avoided.

Essential CKCEs used in rehabilitation of the PCL include squats, lunges, and closed kinetic chain knee extensions. It is important to remember that active CKCEs of any kind, in any ROM, should be used cautiously and should only be carried out in a ROM that limits flexion of the knee to about 45 degrees or less. In addition, balance and proprioceptive exercises are performed. Plyometrics are introduced for appropriate patients, such as athletes. Return to sport may occur in as little as 6 to 8 weeks, but on average takes 12 to 16 weeks, provided there are no complicating factors such as significant varus or valgus alignment or damage to additional tissues.

Surgical Intervention

A postoperative knee immobilizer or hinged range-limiting brace is worn until the patient demonstrates quadriceps control, full extension, and full weight bearing. The weight-bearing status is usually weight bearing as tolerated with crutches and the brace locked in extension. Therapeutic exercises during the early postsurgical period include patellar mobilizations, prone passive flexion and extension, quad sets, ankle pumps, calf exercises, standing hip extension from neutral, and straight-leg raising (in the locked brace). The next phase begins at around 4 weeks and lasts for a further 8 weeks (12 weeks postsurgery). Criteria for progression to this phase include good quadriceps control, approximately 60 degrees of knee flexion, full knee extension, and no signs of active inflammation. The rehabilitation progression for phases 2 and 3 are outlined in **TABLE 24.8**. Criteria for progression to phase 2 include full, pain-free ROM; normal gait; good to normal quadriceps strength; no patellofemoral complaints; and clearance by physician to begin a more concentrated closed kinetic chain progression.

Medial Collateral Ligament Injuries

Injury to the medial collateral ligament (MCL) is the most common ligamentous knee injury. The superficial MCL fibers attach proximally to the medial femoral epicondyle and distally to the medial aspect of the tibia, approximately 4 centimeters distal to the joint line. The deep MCL fibers originate from the medial joint capsule and are attached to the medial meniscus. Consequently, the medial meniscus may become injured with a severe MCL sprain. MCL injuries are caused primarily by valgus stress to the knee joint. Injuries also can occur to the MCL with excessive external rotation of the tibia. Noncontact, or indirect, injuries are observed with deceleration, cutting, and pivoting motions. Overuse injuries of the MCL have been described in swimmers: the whip-kick technique of the breaststroke involves repetitive valgus loads across the knee. Other structures within the knee may be injured in association with the MCL. These include the ACL, medial meniscus, and extensor mechanism, including the vastus medialis obliquus and retinacular fibers. The most common symptom following an MCL injury is pain right over the ligament. Swelling over the torn ligament may appear, and bruising and generalized joint swelling are common 1 to 2 days after the

TABLE 24.8 Postsurgical PCL Repair Rehabilitation Progression for Phases 2 and 3

Phase 2	Intervention
Bracing and weight bearing	Braces unlocked: ■ At 4 to 6 weeks for controlled gait training only ■ At 6 to 8 weeks for all activities ■ At 8 weeks brace use is discontinued Weight bearing: ■ At 4 to 8 weeks: As tolerated with crutches ■ At 8 weeks: Crutches discontinued if patient exhibits full knee extension, knee flexion at 90 to 100 degrees, no quadriceps lag with straight-leg raise (SLR)
Therapeutic exercises	Weeks 4–8: ■ Wall slides (0–45 degrees) ■ Mini-squats (0–45 degrees) ■ Leg press (0– 60 degrees) ■ SLR in all four planes Weeks 8–12: ■ Stationary bike (without use of toe clips and seat height slightly higher than normal to minimize hamstring activity) ■ Balance and proprioception exercises ■ Seated calf raises ■ Leg press (0–90 degrees) ■ Stairmaster/elliptical stepper
Phase 3 (months 3–6)	**Intervention**
Therapeutic exercises	Continuation of closed kinetic chain exercises progression Treadmill walking Swimming (no breaststroke)

Data from D'Amato, M, Bach BR: Knee injuries, in Brotzman SB, Wilk KE (eds): *Clinical Orthopaedic Rehabilitation*. Philadelphia, Mosby, 2003, pp. 251–370.

injury. In more severe injuries, patients may complain that the knee is unstable. In addition to the history and physical examination results, the PT may use the valgus stress test of the knee (refer to Table 24.6) to help confirm the diagnosis. MCL injuries are graded according to severity. (See Chapter 4.)

Intervention

The type of physical therapy treatment indicated for an MCL injury depends on the severity of the injury:

- *Grade I.* Compression, elevation, and cryotherapy are recommended. Short-term use of crutches may be indicated, with weight bearing as tolerated (WBAT) ambulation. Early ambulation is recommended.
- *Grade II.* A knee immobilizer or a short-hinged brace that blocks 20 degrees of terminal extension but allows full flexion is typically used. The patient may ambulate, WBAT with crutches. The crutches are discontinued as the pain lessens and quadriceps strength increases.
- *Grade III.* The patient initially should be non–weight bearing (NWB) on the involved lower extremity. A hinged brace should be used, with gradual progression to full weight bearing (FWB) over 4 weeks. Grade III injuries may require 8 to 12 weeks to heal.

All MCL injuries should be treated with early ROM and strengthening of musculature that stabilizes the knee joint (semimembranosus, vastus medialis, and pes anserine muscles—sartorius, gracilis, and semitendinosus) as tolerated. Ankle pumps are initiated immediately, together with quadriceps strengthening (quad sets, straight-leg raises), and progressed to closed-chain exercises as tolerated. The knee immobilizer or brace is removed several times per day for active and passive knee flexion and extension exercises (seated assisted knee flexion and supine wall slides). For the athlete, running is allowed when weight bearing is comfortable and is progressed to more narrow *S*-shaped patterns until pivoting is tolerable. At this point, sport-specific exercises and drills are added and advanced until the athlete is ready to return to the sport. Return to play is allowed when sport-specific agility testing is performed easily. People with grade I and II injuries usually return to play within 2 to 3 weeks. People with grade III injuries frequently require 6 or more weeks before a return to play.

Meniscus Injuries

Meniscal injuries or tears may cause pain, locking, catching, swelling, and functional impairment. Meniscus tears can present in the setting of an acute or chronic injury. Acute injuries are sometimes related to trauma (twisting or change of position of the weight-bearing knee in varying degrees of flexion or extension), but significant trauma is not necessary—a sudden twist or repeated squatting can tear the meniscus. The classification of meniscal tears describes pathoanatomy. Five types of meniscus tears are recognized: (1) longitudinal tears, (2) radial tears, (3) parrot-beak or oblique flap tears, (4) horizontal tears, and (5) complex tears that combine variants of these (**FIGURE 24.29**).

The PT may use some special tests (refer to Table 24.6) to help confirm the diagnosis. However, imaging serves an essential role in diagnosing meniscal tears.

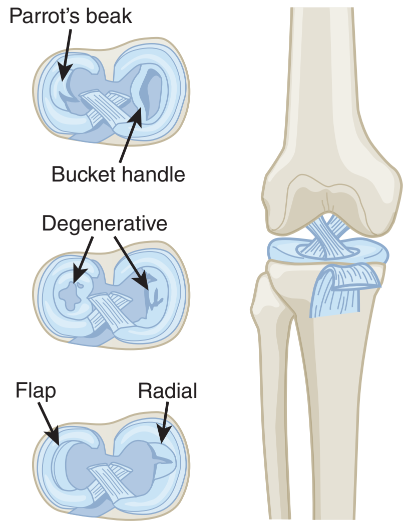


FIGURE 24.29 Types of meniscus tears.

The injured meniscus may or may not heal or repair itself, depending on the location of the tear. The natural history of a short (less than 1 centimeter), vascular, longitudinal tear is often one of healing or resolution of symptoms. The infrequent healing associated with cartilage defects typically leads to the production of type I collagen and fibrocartilaginous tissue as opposed to normal hyaline cartilage.[19] This fibrous repair tissue has diminished resilience, less stiffness, poor wear characteristics, and a predilection for advancing arthritis.[19]

Meniscus repair is recommended for tears that occur in the vascular region (red zone or red–white zone), are longer than 1 centimeter, involve greater than 50 percent of the meniscal thickness, or are unstable to arthroscopic probing. Numerous surgical techniques have been developed to address cartilage defects and include palliation (e.g., chondroplasty and debridement), repair (e.g., drilling and microfracture), restoration (e.g., autologous chondrocyte implantation or osteochondral autograft transfer, and osteochondral allograft). An injured meniscal root does not have the capacity to self-repair. The transtibial meniscal root repair is emerging as the gold standard treatment due to its ability to restore a large footprint at the meniscal root's native attachment site and restore normal joint contact pressures.[2]

☑ KEY POINT

The location of a meniscal tear is of paramount importance because tears in the vascular portion of the meniscus, termed the "red zone" (zone I: vascular on both sides of the meniscus), are far more likely to heal than tears in the middle portion of the meniscus, or "red–white zone" (zone II: vascular supply on only one side of the meniscus). The nonvascular, central body of the meniscus, termed the "white zone," does not have the potential to heal.

Conservative Approach

The physical therapy program goals in the acute phase are to minimize the effusion, normalize gait, normalize pain-free ROM, prevent muscular atrophy, maintain proprioception, and maintain cardiovascular fitness. The rehabilitation program must include consideration of the patient's age, activity level, duration of symptoms, type of meniscus tear, and associated injuries such as ligamentous pathology.

Surgical Intervention

Surgical options include partial meniscectomy, meniscus repair, or meniscal root repair. Arthroscopy, a minimally invasive outpatient procedure with lower morbidity, improved visualization, faster rehabilitation, and better outcomes than open meniscal surgery, is now the standard of care.

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> In cases of previous total or subtotal meniscectomy, meniscus transplantation may be used. Human allograft meniscal transplantation is a relatively new procedure but is being performed increasingly frequently.

A stable knee is important for successful meniscus repair and healing. Thus, associated ligamentous injuries must be addressed. The most commonly associated ligamentous disruption is complete tear of the ACL, which must be reconstructed to prevent recurrent meniscal tears.

For partial meniscectomy, patients may return to low-impact or nonimpact workouts such as stationary cycling or straight-leg raising on the first postoperative day, and may advance quickly to preoperative activities. Many different rehabilitation protocols for meniscal repair are described in the literature. The major difference between a meniscectomy and a meniscus repair or meniscal root repair is that the surgically repaired meniscus must be allowed to heal by avoiding loads and stresses that compromise the surgical site. A common protocol is avoidance of weight bearing for 6 weeks (to avoid axial compressive loads), with knee flexion limited to approximately 90 to 100 degrees followed by 2 to 3 weeks of gradual progressive weight bearing. More aggressive approaches follow a linear periodization protocol based on progressive loading of the repair and allow full weight bearing with the knee braced and locked in full extension for 6 weeks, while encouraging full motion when the knee is not bearing weight. The following exercises are initiated immediately after surgery: ankle pumps, quad sets, hamstring sets, short arc knee extensions, and straight-leg raising in all four planes (flexion, extension, abduction, and adduction). The ROM exercises, which can include prone knee flexion and supine wall slides, are progressed as tolerated. At 3 to 4 weeks, concentric exercises for the quadriceps and hamstrings are initiated in addition to stationary cycling. Closed kinetic chain exercises are not typically introduced until at least 8 weeks after repair.

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> Note that meniscal rehabilitation must not interfere with concomitant ACL recovery and vice versa. Weighted and full squats must be strictly avoided for up to 3 to 6 months after repair.

Articular Cartilage Defects

Articular cartilage defects of the knee are a common cause of pain and functional disability. Because nonoperative rehabilitation and palliative care for this condition are frequently unsuccessful, many patients opt for surgical procedures designed to facilitate the repair or transplantation of autogenous cartilage tissue.[20] Reparative techniques include the following:

- *Arthroscopic lavage and debridement.* This procedure is performed to reduce the inflammation and mechanical irritation within a given joint. Debridement can include smoothing of the fibrillated articular or meniscal surfaces, shaving of motion-limiting osteophytes, and removal of inflamed synovium.[21]
- *Microfracture.* A microfracture creates small holes in the subchondral bone, which lacks good blood flow. By penetrating this layer, a microfracture allows the deeper, more vascular bone to access the surface layer. This deeper bone has more blood supply, and the cells can then get to the surface layer and stimulate cartilage growth.[21]
- *Autologous chondrocyte implantation (ACI).* This is a cartilage restorative procedure in which a concentrated solution of autologous chondrocytes is implanted into a defect with the goal of restoring hyaline cartilage to the injured area.[21]
- *Osteochondral autograft transfer (OAT).* Osteochondral autograft is most clearly indicated for a symptomatic, unipolar lesion of the distal femoral condyle in a nondegenerative joint that has proper limb alignment, as well as ligamentous stability and meniscal competence.[21]
- *Osteochondral allograft transplantation.* In contrast to OAT, osteochondral allograft transplantation relies upon tissue taken from cadaveric donors rather than from the patient's own knee. The benefits of allografting include the elimination of donor site morbidity and the ability to provide fully formed articular cartilage without specific limitation with respect to defect size. The drawbacks to the procedure are graft availability, cell viability, immunogenicity, and risk of disease transmission.[21]

Intervention

The postsurgical rehabilitation progression is designed based on the four biological phases of cartilage maturation: proliferation, transition, remodeling, and maturation. The duration of each phase that follows varies depending on the lesion, patient, and the specifics of the surgery:[20]

- *Proliferation phase.* This phase generally lasts 4 to 6 weeks following surgery. The goals during this phase are to protect the repair, decrease swelling, gradually restore progressive range of motion (PROM) and weight bearing, and enhance volitional control of the quadriceps.
- *Transition phase.* This phase typically consists of weeks 4 through 12 postsurgery. During this phase, the patient progresses from partial to full weight bearing while full ROM and soft tissue flexibility is achieved.[20] It is during this phase in which patients typically resume most normal activities of daily living.
- *Remodeling phase.* This phase normally takes place from 3 to 6 months postoperatively. At this point, the patient typically notes improvement of symptoms and has normal ROM. Low to moderate impact activities, such as bicycle riding, golfing, and recreational walking, are gradually incorporated.
- *Maturation phase.* This phase begins in a range of 4 to 6 months and can last up to 15 to 18 months postsurgery. The duration of this phase varies based on lesion size and location, and the specific surgical procedure performed.

Tibiofemoral Osteoarthritis

Osteoarthritis (OA) has been identified as the most common cause of disability in the United States, and often limits a person's ability to rise from a chair, stand comfortably, walk, and use stairs.

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> OA may affect one or more of the three compartments of the knee: medial tibiofemoral, lateral tibiofemoral, and patellofemoral.

For many years, OA has been regarded as a "wear-and-tear" or "degenerative" condition, a view supported by epidemiological surveys that demonstrated associations with certain occupations and life choices and its increased prevalence with advancing age. Established risk factors include physically demanding occupations, particularly in jobs that involve kneeling or squatting; certain sports; older age; female sex; evidence of OA in other joints; obesity; and previous injury or surgery to the knee.

Usually, the patient complains of pain with weight-bearing activities and, occasionally, pain at rest. The loss of motion, if present, is typically in a capsular pattern. Muscle weakness is probably the longest recognized and best-established correlate of functional limitation in individuals with OA, particularly of the knee OA.[22]

Conservative Approach

Regular participation in physical activity has been recognized for several years as being beneficial in the management of knee OA. Exercises to strengthen the quadriceps are becoming accepted as useful conservative treatment for OA of the knee. Although there is agreement that exercise therapy can be helpful, the effect of exercise therapy on pain, quadriceps strength, and physical function appears to be small to moderate in most clinical trials.

In addition to exercises that improve lower extremity strength, ROM, and cardiovascular endurance, it is now being recommended that exercise therapy programs also include techniques to improve balance and coordination and provide patients with an opportunity to practice various skills that they will likely encounter during normal daily activities.[23]

The conservative intervention for OA of the knee also includes NSAIDs prescribed by the physician, cortisone injections performed by the physician, patient education, weight loss, thermal modalities, and shoe inserts. The use of shoes with a well-cushioned sole is recommended, as are frequent rest periods during the day. Wedged insoles with an outward angle of 5 to 10 degrees on a frontal section have been shown to be helpful for OA of the medial compartment of the knee. The patient is instructed in principles of joint protection and advised to seek alternatives to prolonged standing, kneeling, and squatting.

Surgical Intervention

There are two common surgical approaches: high tibial osteotomy and total knee arthroplasty.

High Tibial Osteotomy Because total knee arthroplasty (TKA) is contraindicated in younger and more active patients, those with unicompartmental OA of the knee may be considered candidates for a high tibial osteotomy or a distal femoral osteotomy. The osteotomy is a mechanical load shifting procedure, whereby the axis of the knee is transferred from the worn compartment to the healthier compartment by surgically creating a wedge into the tibia or femur. The high tibial osteotomy is used with isolated medial compartment arthritis (more common). The distal femoral osteotomy is used in lateral compartment arthritis. The short-term results for these procedures have been successful, even to the point where the need for TKA is eradicated. However, permanent pain relief with high tibial osteotomy is as yet unlikely. Following the procedure, the knee is usually placed in an immobilizer in full extension. The weight-bearing status is guided by the mechanism, type of fixation, and time constraints of bone healing. A typical rehabilitation protocol is outlined in **TABLE 24.9**.

TABLE 24.9 High Tibial Osteotomy Rehabilitation Protocol

Phase 1 (0–4 weeks)	**Intervention**
Weight bearing	0–2 weeks: Partial weight bearing (25 percent) with crutches and brace locked in extension 2–4 weeks: Advanced to full weight bearing with crutches and brace locked in extension
Brace	Locked in full extension for all activities (except when exercising), including sleeping
ROM	Possible use of CPM: performed twice daily (out of brace) for 2 hours from 0 to 90 degrees of flexion
Therapeutic exercises	Heel slides, quad sets, ankle pumps, non–weight-bearing calf/hamstring stretches, straight-leg raise (SLR) with brace locked in full extension, resisted plantar flexion
Phase 2 (4–6 weeks)	**Intervention**
Weight bearing	As tolerated with crutches; initiate progression to a normalized gait pattern without crutches
Brace	Unlocked for ambulation and removed for sleeping
ROM	CPM discontinued if knee flexion is at least 90 degrees
Therapeutic exercises	Progression of phase 1 exercises SLR without brace if able to maintain full knee extension Stationary bike with no resistance and appropriate seat height
Phase 3 (6 weeks to 3 months)	**Intervention**
Weight bearing	Full weight bearing without use of crutches and with normalized gait pattern
Brace	Discontinue use per physician
ROM	Full and pain-free
Therapeutic exercises	Mini-squats (0 to 45 degrees), progressing to step-ups, leg press (0 to 60 degrees), closed-chain terminal knee extensions, toe raises, balance activities, and hamstring curls Increase to moderate resistance on stationary bike

Total Knee Arthroplasty TKA has been shown to be an effective long-term intervention for the elderly to relieve knee pain, improve function, increase social mobility and interaction, and contribute to psychological well-being. Although pain and loss of function are the primary reasons for a TKA, the procedure also can be used to correct knee instability and lower extremity alignment and for the treatment of isolated but severe patellofemoral disease.[24] The term *tricompartmental* is used to describe the replacement of the degenerated articular surfaces of the tibia, the femur, and the patella. Tricompartmental knee implants (**FIGURE 24.30**) can be classified as follows:

- *Unconstrained.* This type of implant, which is rarely used, relies heavily on soft tissue integrity to provide joint stability.
- *Semiconstrained.* Used with the vast majority of patients.
- *Fully constrained.* Provides inhibited motion in one or more planes, which can increase the amount of stress imparted through the implant, resulting in a higher incidence of loosening.

FIGURE 24.30 Tricompartmental knee implants.

© SIU BioMed/Custom Medical Stock Photo.

The fate of the PCL in primary TKA is controversial. Retaining the PCL has the potential to restore more normal knee kinematics and better stair climbing ability. If the PCL is sacrificed, a posterior stabilizer is used; however, the long-term results of PCL-retaining and posterior-stabilized TKAs are similar.

☑ KEY POINT

Three common fixation methods are used for total knee implants:

- *Cemented.* Used for older, more sedentary patients. Has the advantage of allowing weight bearing as tolerated from 1 day postoperative.
- *Porous ingrowth.* Used for younger or more active patients.
- *Hybrid.* Noncemented ingrowth femoral and patellar component with a cemented tibial component. Weight-bearing restrictions include touchdown weight bearing (TDWB) with an assistive device for the first 6 weeks and then weight bearing as tolerated with an assistive device for the next 6 weeks.

Many early designs of TKA replaced the tibiofemoral joint only and did not address the patellofemoral articulation. The posterior stabilizer was developed to increase the arc of motion of these earlier models and thereby improve the functional results of TKA. Although the ROM improved substantially with these components, patellofemoral complications emerged as a major problem after knee replacement. Errors in sizing, alignment, and rotation of the tibial and femoral component were eventually appreciated as contributing factors to many of these patellofemoral problems. Also, many of these complications appear to be secondary to patellar resurfacing, which may be a part of the procedure. Whether to resurface the patella remains among the most controversial topics in TKA. Surprisingly high loads are transmitted across the patellofemoral articulation. Following a knee replacement, there is a decrease in the contact area and consequent increase in the contact stress. Resurfacing the patella decreases the contact area to a greater degree compared with not resurfacing the patella. Also, kinematic studies of motion of the patellofemoral joint after knee replacement have consistently shown some degree of altered kinematics. The success of the rehabilitation program for this patient population is dependent on component design; fixation methods; bone quality; knowledge of the surgical procedure; communication with the surgeon, PT, and patient; and above all, the ability of the rehabilitation team to educate the patient to participate actively in the treatment program.

Complications associated with TKA include the following:

- Thromboembolic disease
- Fat embolism
- Poor wound healing
- Infection
- Periprosthetic fractures
- Neurological problems (fibular nerve palsy is the most common neurological complication of TKA)
- Vascular problems (injuries to the superficial femoral, popliteal, and genicular vessels have all been reported following TKA)
- Arthrofibrosis
- Disruption of the extensor mechanism

Postoperative rehabilitation for primary TKA continues to be studied in an effort to decrease the cost while still providing the quality of clinical results expected by the surgeon and the patient.

Intervention A review of the literature reveals varying practice patterns in the physical therapy management of TKA patients. A typical program consists of the following (an accelerated postoperative rehabilitation protocol is outlined in **TABLE 24.10**):

- Resistive exercises to the uninvolved extremities.
- Deep breathing exercises.
- Proper elevation and positioning of the involved lower extremity.
- Active assisted knee flexion and extension to the involved knee. If CPM is ordered, it is normally applied immediately postsurgery in the recovery room to patient's tolerance, so as not to irritate the soft tissue response to the surgery. The patient is encouraged to remain in the unit for 10 to 12 hours each day, with gradual increases in both extension and flexion ranges, as tolerated.
- Ankle pumps, quadriceps sets, gluteal sets, hamstring sets, and heel slides.
- Straight-leg raising. During the early postoperative days, leg raises are limited to the supine and prone positions to prevent the varus and valgus forces associated with hip abduction and adduction. Cemented fixation allows for these movements at 2 weeks postsurgery. However, in uncemented knee replacements, hip abduction and adduction are not permitted until 4 to 6 weeks, once there is sufficient bony ingrowth on radiographic examination.
- Seated knee extension.
- Standing knee flexion of the involved leg.

Functional training includes the following:

- Transfer training in and out of bed, from bed to and from a chair, and to and from a commode or elevated toilet seat.
- Gait training, including instruction on weight-bearing status, use of an assistive device, and stair negotiation. Ambulation on different levels can occur by the second or third day, if appropriate. The correct progression of weight bearing is crucial to the overall success of a joint replacement and depends on the type of fixation and alignment. In patients with porous-coated prostheses, limited weight bearing is essential to allow for sufficient bony ingrowth into the prosthesis and to prevent loosening of the appliance and premature failure of the surgical alignment. Full weight bearing is generally allowed at 6 weeks, based on a radiographic examination and the patient's body weight.

Manual therapy techniques can include patellar mobilization and soft tissue techniques. Because unrestricted patellofemoral mobility is essential for normal knee function, mediolateral and superior patellofemoral mobilizations are started as early as the second postoperative day.

The patient is discharged from the hospital to home or an extended care facility (ECF) when medically stable. To be discharged to home, the patient should be able to demonstrate 80 to 90 degrees of active or active-assisted knee motion, transfer from supine to sit and sit to stand, ambulate 100 feet, and ascend and descend three steps or more, as the home environment dictates.

If functional independence is required before a patient returns home, the patient is typically transferred to an acute or subacute care setting. If adequate home care and safe transport are available, the patient is allowed to return home.

The outpatient phase of treatment, if appropriate, involves a continued progression of the therapeutic exercise program developed in the inpatient phase with an emphasis on a return to normal activities of daily living and recreational pursuits.

Patellofemoral Pain Syndrome

Patellofemoral pain syndrome (PFPS) is a commonly recognized symptom complex characterized by pain in the vicinity of the patella that is worsened by positions of the knee that result in increased or misdirected

TABLE 24.10 Accelerated Rehabilitation Protocol Following a TKA

Phase 1 (day 1 to 2 weeks)	**Intervention**
Control of inflammation	Ice, compression, and electrical stimulation
Therapeutic exercise	Initiate isometric and concentric exercises (quad sets, active-assisted straight-leg raises [SLRs], gluteus sets, short arc terminal knee extensions)
Ambulation	Knee immobilizer may be used during ambulation until the patient can perform three to five SLRs in succession out of the immobilizer Cemented prosthesis: weight bearing as tolerated with walker Noncemented prosthesis: TDWB with walker
Range of motion	Continuous passive motion (if used): Progress 5–10 degrees per day as tolerated Initiate active-assisted range of motion (AAROM) and AROM; 90 degrees of knee flexion is considered the minimal requirement for activities of daily living Gentle passive range of motion (PROM) exercises (knee flexion/extension, heel slides, and wall slides) Patella mobilizations (3 to 5 days postoperative)
Phase 2 (10 days to 3 weeks)	**Intervention**
Therapeutic exercise	Continue progression of previous exercises General conditioning program as tolerated and as appropriate
Ambulation	Continue use of a walker (unless instructed otherwise by physician), emphasizing enhanced gait mechanics Driving is not permitted for 4 to 6 weeks postoperative
Phase 3 (6 weeks)	**Intervention**
Therapeutic exercise	Introduce wall slides and progress to lunges Initiate step-ups and begin closed-chain knee exercise progression Stool walking exercises (if permitted) Cone-walking progression from 4- to 6- to 8-inch cones
Ambulation	Begin weight bearing as tolerated with assistive device and progress as appropriate
Range of motion	Stationary bicycle progression

Data from Cameron H, Brotzman, SB: The arthritic lower extremity, in Brotzman SB, Wilk KE (eds): *Clinical Orthopaedic Rehabilitation*. Philadelphia, Mosby, 2003, pp. 441–74.

mechanical forces between the patella and femur. Some activities have been identified that increase patellofemoral compression, including inclined walking, jumping, stair climbing, squatting, prolonged sitting with the knee flexed beyond 40 degrees, prolonged kneeling, arising from chairs, prone lying, or standing in genu recurvatum. The chronicity of PFPS has been highlighted in multiple studies, with symptoms persisting up to 20 years.[25]

☑ KEY POINT

The *miserable malalignment syndrome* involves a combination of malalignments of the lower kinetic chain that include excess femoral anteversion with internal rotation of the hip, genu valgus, squinting patellae (inward facing), external tibial torsion, and foot pronation.

The patella is a passive component of the knee extensor mechanism, in which the static and dynamic relationships of the underlying tibia and femur determine the patellar tracking pattern. As the knee flexes, the compression forces between the patella and the femur increase as the contact surface area increases, in an attempt to normalize the contact stress unit load. Lateral tracking of the patella can be caused by intrinsic and extrinsic factors:

- *Intrinsic.* These include an imbalance of forces between the VMO and the VL, an adaptively shortened ITB, a tight lateral patella retinaculum, or a decreased slope of the lateral facet on the intercondylar groove of the femur. For example, adaptively shortened hamstrings can antagonize the quadriceps function and increase patellofemoral joint loading. Also, several anatomic and biomechanical studies have demonstrated that the medial patellofemoral ligament is the most important restraint to lateral patellar displacement in the early ranges of knee flexion.[26] Most lateral patellar instability occurs during the early part (0 to 30 degrees) of knee flexion.
- *Extrinsic.* These include a large Q-angle, weakness of the external rotators or abductors of the hip, and excessive pronation of the foot.

☑ KEY POINT

A medial glide of the patella of less than 5 millimeters (1 quadrant) can indicate a tight retinaculum.

Conservative Intervention

Rehabilitation that includes a combination of painless muscle strengthening, stretching, and patellofemoral taping often is beneficial in creating an internal biomechanical environment that encourages maximal tissue healing.[27] Some classification systems have been used to categorize individuals with patellofemoral disorders. During the early stages of healing, the patient must try to avoid those activities that are associated with high joint compressive forces, or at least minimize exposure. In the presence of biomechanical dysfunctions of the foot, including pronation, correct footwear must be worn. If the malalignment of the lower extremity is severe, a foot orthosis can be recommended. The type of orthosis used is dependent on the diagnosis. Most commonly, an orthosis is used to correct a flat foot so that the patella no longer squints. Foot pronation imparts internal torsion to the tibia and a valgus moment (force) at the knee. In the presence of genu recurvatum, a heel raise can be issued for use during exercise.

☑ KEY POINT

Klingman and colleagues[28] have shown that medial rear foot-posted orthoses result in a more medial (aligned) position of the patella during static weight-bearing radiographs.

It remains unclear to what extent there are specific exercises to strengthen the VMO. In actuality, what may be occurring is that, by changing the mechanics of an exercise, the VMO is placed in a position of enhanced biomechnical advantage rather than becoming stronger. Wilk and colleagues[29] believe that a focus on strengthening of the VMO should occur only if the fibers of the VMO attach onto the patella in a position that can prevent lateralization of the patella dynamically (50 to 55 degrees). The VMO does not extend the knee and is not, therefore, activated by traditional straight-leg raises, even with the addition of adduction. However, because of the relationship of the VMO to the adductor magnus, and its separate nerve supply in most cases, the clinician should still promote adduction of the thigh, while minimizing internal rotation of the hip, to facilitate a VMO contraction.

☑ KEY POINT

According to Hodges and Richardson,[30] activation of the adductor magnus significantly improves the VMO contraction in weight bearing, but maximum contraction of the adductor magnus in non–weight bearing is required before facilitating VMO activity.

The hip external rotators and abductors affect lower limb control, and a strengthening program that addresses these muscle groups should be gradually integrated into the overall progression. For example, weakness of the hip external rotators may allow uncontrolled and excessive pronation of the foot to occur along with excessive femoral internal rotation, both contributing to an increase in the valgus alignment of the knee, thereby increasing the Q-angle. Strengthening of the hip rotators may need to be initiated in the open kinetic chain, but should be advanced to strengthening in the closed kinetic chain as soon as functional muscular control is present.

Exercises during this early phase include the following:

- Isometric quadriceps sets at 20 degrees of flexion, progressing to multiple angle isometrics.
- Heel slides with the tibia positioned in internal and then external rotation.
- Straight-leg raises performed with the thigh externally rotated and the knee flexed to 20 degrees. Performing the exercise in this fashion is reported to allow the least amount of patellofemoral contact force while maximally stressing the vastus medialis component of the quadriceps muscle. The resistance is progressed from 0 to 5 pounds.
- Straight-leg raises performed into abduction with the thigh externally rotated to help isolate the gluteus medius.
- Low-resistance terminal knee extension (short arc quadriceps) exercises performed with the leg externally rotated from 50 to 20 degrees (**FIGURE 24.31**). The resistance is progressed from 0 to 5 pounds.

FIGURE 24.31 Terminal knee extensions.

- Hip adduction exercises performed in the side-lying position on the involved side, with the hip internally rotated and the knee flexed to 20 degrees. This position of knee flexion places the patella midway between the two femoral condyles.

Functional exercises that incorporate the entire lower kinetic chain are implemented as soon as tolerated. Kibler[31] advocates the following protocol:

- Active hip extension and quadriceps activation with the foot flat on the floor or stepping on or off a flat step. This reactivates the normal sequencing pattern for the entire leg.
- Isolation and maximal activation of the quadriceps in a closed-chain position by working with the foot on a slant board, effectively removing the hip and ankle from full activation, but placing maximal load on the slightly flexed knee. Care must be taken not to exercise through pain because this may indicate that muscle control is insufficient.
- Unilateral stance with hip extension, slight knee flexion, and hip and trunk rotation.

The correction of muscle inflexibilities is important in the rehabilitative process. This activity can be made more challenging using softer surfaces (refer to Figure 24.18).

Stretching of the quadriceps, hip flexors, ITB, lateral retinaculum, hamstrings, and gastrocnemius (**TABLE 24.11**) are usually initiated during this phase. The rationale for stretching the ITB and lateral retinaculum is well recognized due to their effect on patella position. Adaptive shortening in the hamstrings and gastrocnemii has been associated with a compensatory pronation. Also, adaptively shortened hamstrings may cause increased flexion of the knee and increased patellofemoral compression forces, especially during the stance phase of gait.

Taping The use of tape in the management of patellofemoral disorders was originally proposed by McConnell, whose initial success rate in an uncontrolled study was 96 percent.[32] The McConnell taping technique uses a rigid and highly adhesive tape that is structurally supported and, when applied, has been suggested to alter lateral tilt, lateral displacement, and patella alta.[33] It is important to note that existing literature has revealed conflicting evidence concerning the effects of McConnell taping techniques on patella alignment, but this may be due to different imaging conditions and/or knee angles being used.[34]

The primary goal of taping is to pull the patella away from a painful area, thereby unloading it and reducing pain, rather than correcting patellofemoral

TABLE 24.11 Muscle Stretching: Positions of Maximal Elongation and Stretch

Muscle	Maximal Elongation	Stretch
Gastrocnemius	Subtalar joint neutral, knee extension	Ankle dorsiflexion
Soleus	Subtalar joint neutral, knee flexion	Ankle dorsiflexion
Medial hamstrings	Hip external rotation, abduction, and flexion	Knee extension
Lateral hamstrings	Hip internal rotation and flexion	Knee extension
Rectus femoris	Hip extension	Knee flexion
Tensor fascia lata	Knee flexion, hip extension and external rotation	Hip adduction
Iliotibial band	Hip extension, neutral hip rotation, slight knee flexion	Hip adduction

malalignment. The extent to which this is possible and the amount of displacement required to provide pain relief varies from patient to patient and from study to study. For example, a recent controlled laboratory study did not support the use of patellofemoral joint (PFJ) taping as a medial correction technique to alter the PFJ contact area or alignment of the patella.[34]

A secondary goal of taping is to increase the beneficial proprioceptive characteristics of the PFJ. Grabiner and colleagues[35] have postulated that the VMO needs time to develop force, relative to the VL, to optimally track the patella. This lag time can cause the patella to track laterally. By applying tape across an overly powerful VL, the clinician may be able to change the relative excitation of the VMO and VL, diminishing the pull of the VL, although the mechanisms by which this works are unknown.

The final goal of taping for malalignment of the patella is to position the patella optimally so that the area of contact between the patella and femur is maximized. This position places the patella parallel to the femur in the frontal and sagittal planes, and the patella is midway between the two condyles when the knee is flexed to 20 degrees.

Once the tape is applied, the clinician assesses the following:

- The overall limb alignment, including an assessment of the dynamic alignments when walking normally, on the heels, and with the feet in the inverted and everted positions; stair climbing; and squatting
- The effect on functional painful and pain-free ranges

From this information, the patellar position is adjusted by taping. The more obvious deviation is always corrected first. Often, repositioning of the patella involves positioning the patella so that it is approximately midway between the two femoral condyles and parallel with the long axis of the femur. The glide component can be corrected by firmly gliding the patella medially and taping the lateral patellar border (**FIGURE 24.32**). The tilt component can be corrected by firm taping from the middle of the patella medially, which lifts the lateral border and provides a passive stretch to the lateral structures. To correct external rotation of the patella, firm taping from the middle inferior pole upward and medially is required. For correction of internal rotation, firm taping from the superior, middle pole downward and medially is needed.

In addition to the taping, biofeedback, stretching of the lateral structures, and a home exercise program are recommended. For a more detailed description of the application of the tape, the reader is referred to an excellent book, *The Patella: A Team Approach*.[36]

Kinesio taping is a relatively new technique introduced to the United States in 1990s and has been reported to be an effective tool for managing PFPS.[33] Kinesio Tape (Kinesio Holding Corporation, Albuquerque, New Mexico), which is an elastic tape that can stretch to 130 to 140 percent of its resting length,[33] has been designed to increase proprioception by either inhibiting or facilitating muscle activity.[37]

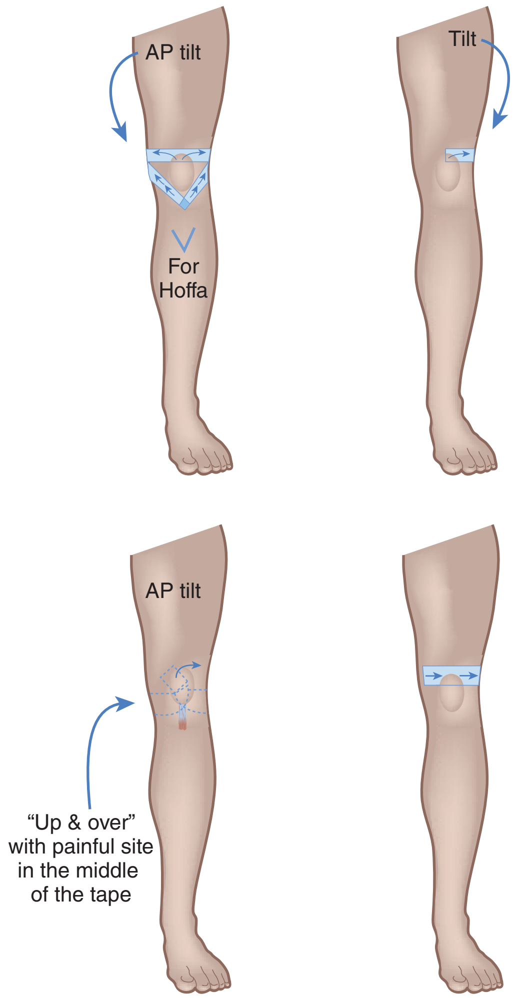


FIGURE 24.32 Patellar taping.

Kinesio tape is commonly applied during non–weight bearing in the lower extremities or with the arm relaxed in the upper extremities prior to an activity. The use of Kinesio taping is effective in improving VMO activation patterns,[38] reducing pain and swelling, and in relieving symptoms of PFPS.[39]

☑ KEY POINT

Taping can also be used with patients who have patellar OA. A controlled clinical trial[40] found that patients achieved significant reduction in pain after medial knee taping to realign the patella.

Patellofemoral Bracing External patellar supports, which range in complexity from simple straps across the patellar tendon to complex supports, are commonly employed in the management of patellofemoral pain as an adjunct to other intervention methods. Theoretically, the purpose of the brace is to centralize the patella within the patellar groove, thereby reducing symptoms and improving function. Although they relieve symptoms in many patients, their mode of action remains speculative, and their effectiveness is unpredictable.

Despite the wide use of patellofemoral bracing, only a few studies have attempted to document its effectiveness in correcting patellar alignment. Although it is unclear whether bracing can influence patellar tracking, it appears that external supports must, in some way, interact mechanically with the patellofemoral joint because many patients report significant clinical improvements.

Surgical Intervention

Surgical intervention may be appropriate in three different patient populations: (1) those with normal anatomy who experience recurrent dislocation or pain, (2) those with an anatomic abnormality, and (3) active young adult patients who have not been helped by 12 months of nonoperative treatment and who have patellar tilt and/or subluxation. Operative choices may be classified into distal (tibial tubercle transfers), proximal (medial repair, lateral release), and combined procedures.

☑ KEY POINT

Rigid, distal procedures are associated with increased rates of progressive retropatellar arthrosis but lower rates of redislocation, whereas dynamic proximal procedures are associated with a lower incidence of arthrosis but a higher risk of redislocation.

The rehabilitation protocol following proximal procedures is essentially the same as for the conservative approach following a period of immobilization. However, the rehabilitation protocol for distal procedures is modified based on bone and soft tissue healing, and a period of immobilization in plaster or a hinged range-limiting brace for 4 to 6 weeks. The weight-bearing status is typically non–weight bearing, then touchdown weight bearing, then partial weight bearing, and then weight bearing as tolerated over the weeks of immobilization, so that by 6 weeks the patient is at full weight bearing. Also during this period of immobilization, ROM exercises, quadriceps, straight-leg raises, and short arc quadriceps exercises are introduced as tolerated or by physician preference.

Tendinopathy

There are two major types of tendinopathy involving the patella: patellar tendinopathy and quadriceps tendinopathy. Specific factors are associated with the development of these conditions, and there is a high prevalence among athletes involved with sports that require eccentric control during deceleration activities (e.g., quick starts and stops, repeated jumping and landing, downhill running). These factors are body weight, body mass index (BMI), waist to hip ratio, leg length difference, arch height of the foot, quadriceps flexibility and strength, hamstring flexibility, and vertical jump performance.[41,42] There are several theories regarding the pathogenesis of the patella and quadriceps tendinopathy, including vascular, mechanical, impingement related, nervous system, and chronic repetitive tendon overload, the latter of which is the most commonly proposed theory.[43] Overuse is simply a mismatch between stress on a given structure and the ability of that structure to disperse the forces, resulting in inflammatory changes. Microscopic failure occurs within the tendon at high loads and eventually leads to alterations at the cellular level, which weaken the mechanical properties of the tendon. (See Chapter 4.)

☑ KEY POINT

The patellar "tendon," which connects two bones, is, in fact, a ligament, although in clinical practice it is referred to as a tendon—hence *patellar tendinopathy*.

Pain on palpation near the patellar insertion is present in both patellar and quadriceps tendinopathy. Patellar tendinopathy is characterized by pain localized to the inferior pole of the patella, whereas quadriceps tendinopathy is characterized by pain localized to the distal thigh and superior pole of the patella. Pain is the first symptom with both types of tendinopathy and the pain is referred to as load-related pain as it increases with demand on the knee extensors, notably in activities that store and release energy in the patellar tendon. Repetition of this energy storage and release with insufficient rest to enable remodeling between sessions can induce pathology and a change in the tendon's mechanical properties, which is a risk factor for developing symptoms.[44] Both types of tendinopathy can be debilitating and can result in prolonged absence and potentially retirement from sports participation. Usually the patient history can be helpful in determining the location of the pain and aggravating factors, such as pain with prolong sitting, squatting, and descending stairs. Tendon pain occurs instantly with loading and usually ceases almost immediately when the load is removed. The patient may report that during physical activity, the pain may feel sharp—especially when running or jumping. After a workout or practice, pain is rarely experienced in a resting state but the pain may persist as a dull ache in more severe cases. Also, there is often increased pain the day after energy storage activities.

Determining the level of pain irritability is a fundamental part of managing patellar tendinopathy and consists of determining the duration of symptom aggravation (during loading) following energy storage activities like a training session.[44] Although it is generally accepted that up to 24 hours of pain provocation after energy storage activities is acceptable, pain provocation of greater than 24 hours can be viewed as irritable. The physical examination performed by the PT includes a thorough examination of the entire lower extremity to identify relevant deficits at the hip, knee, and ankle/foot region. Such deficits include abnormal foot posture/alignment, decreased quadriceps and hamstring flexibility, and decreased weight bearing ankle dorsiflexion ROM.[44,45] Atrophy or reduced strength in antigravity muscles, including the gluteus maximus, quadriceps, and calf are also common findings with patellar and quadriceps tendinopathy.[44,45] These strength deficits can be assessed using traditional manual muscle testing or by using functional exercises such as repeated bridging or single-leg squats, resisted knee extension, and repeated calf raises. The PT may also decide to observe the patient during dynamic activities such as hopping and jumping as research has demonstrated that a stiff-knee vertical jump landing strategy (reduced knee flexion at peak vertical ground reaction force) may be used by individuals with a history of patellar or quadriceps tendinopathy.[46] Because patellar and quadriceps tendinopathy are both characterized by anterior knee pain, the differential diagnosis is quite extensive, and the PT may want to carry out a number of tests to rule out such conditions as PFPS, infrapatellar bursitis, infrapatellar fat pad syndrome (see next section), plical injuries, Osgood-Schlatter syndrome (in the younger population), or osteochondral lesions, to name but a few.

Conservative Approach

Frequently, tendinopathy at the knee can be difficult to manage. The conservative approach is based on the severity of the lesion. Grade I lesions, which are characterized by no undue functional impairment and pain only after the activity, are addressed with adequate warm-up before training and ice massage after training. With grade II to III strains, activity modification, localized heating of the area, a detailed flexibility assessment, and an evaluation of athletic techniques are recommended. The initial exercise program may need to consist of isometric exercises depending on the severity. Rather than performing quad sets, the patient performs isometric midrange quadriceps (approximately 30 to 60 degrees of flexion) exercises at 70 percent of maximal voluntary contraction using a knee extension machine with sufficient resistance to make the exercise isometric.[44] An alternative exercise is the Spanish squat, which is a double-leg squat performed at an angle of approximately 70 to 90 degrees of knee flexion with the assistance of a rigid strap behind the knees fixating the lower legs. The exercise dosage for both of these exercises depends on individual factors, but five repetitions of a 45-second hold, 2 to 3 times per day, with 2 minutes of rest between holds to allow recovery is recommended.[44] Loaded isotonic exercise is initiated when it can be performed with minimal pain. Initially, the patient performs exercises on the leg press and seated knee extension before progressing to split squats. A patellar tendon that is really irritable may require the use of bilateral loading exercises early in the rehabilitation process. The recommended exercise dosage is three to four sets with the resistance corresponding to 15RM progressing to 6RM as tolerated.[44] The most investigated intervention for patellar tendinopathy is eccentric exercise, and the decline squat program is commonly prescribed. This program consists of the patient performing single-leg eccentric squats with an upright torso, while standing on a decline board. The squats are performed twice daily using three sets of 15 repetitions. The concentric phase of the squat is performed either using both lower extremities or the unaffected side only. In addition, a concentric–eccentric program for the anterior tibialis muscle group is prescribed, which progresses into a purely eccentric program as the pain decreases. The patient starts with the foot in full plantar flexion. The clinician applies overpressure on the posterior aspect of the foot, placing the foot into further plantar flexion and stretching the anterior tibialis. The patient is asked to perform a concentric contraction into full dorsiflexion, which is resisted by the clinician. An eccentric contraction is then performed by the patient as the clinician resists the motion from full dorsiflexion to full plantar flexion. This maneuver is repeated to the point of fatigue of the anterior tibialis.

It is not clear why a program initially directed at the anterior tibialis muscle group should be therapeutic, but it is theorized that the program may change the quadriceps-to-foreleg strength ratio, or alter the biomechanics of takeoff and landing.

The energy storage loading phase is introduced when the patient has the following strength and pain criteria:[44]

- Good strength (e.g., ability to perform four sets of eight repetitions of single-leg press with around 150 percent of body weight for most jumping athletes)
- Good load tolerance with initial energy storage exercises, defined as minimal pain (3/10 or less on the numeric pain rating scale) while performing the exercises, and return to baseline pain (if there was an initial increase) during load tests, such as the single-leg decline squat, within 24 hours.

Examples of the exercises to be performed during this stage include cutting/change of direction activities, jumping and landing, acceleration, and deceleration depending on the demands of the sport. Progression back to sport specific training can commence when the individual has completed energy storage progressions that replicate the demands of his or her sport regarding the volume and intensity of relevant energy storage functions.[44]

Surgical Intervention

Surgical intervention usually is required only if significant tendonosis develops; it is successful in the majority of patients.

Infrapatellar Fat Pad Syndrome

The infrapatellar (Hoffa's) fat pad (IFP), located in the anterior knee compartment, can be a major pain generator. To date, the role of the IFP remains unknown, but it has been found to retract into the joint posteriorly during flexion and move anteriorly away from the tibia during extension, which might suggest that it enhances gliding between the femoral condyles and the joint capsule.[47] What *is* known is that the IFP is mobile and changes shape, position, pressure, and volume as the knee moves through its full ROM.[48] It has been theorized that an IFP adhesion changes the patella position and thus alters the effectiveness of the extensor mechanism, requiring a greater quadriceps force to produce the same knee extension force.[49]

While activities that involve eccentric loading of the knee tend to provoke patellar tendinopathy, pain following vigorous kicking, flip turns in swimming, pain with the straight-leg raise exercise tend to implicate the fat pad.[50] Inspection and palpation may reveal inferior patellar edema and associated tenderness of the fat pad when palpated through the tendon. Direct palpation of the fat pad on either side of the patellar tendon as the knee is moved from flexion into a full extension is painful if the fat pad is inflamed. A diagnostic test termed the *bounce test* (eliciting pain with passive knee hyperextension), may be performed by the PT.[51] Conservative intervention includes rest, ice, anti-inflammatory medications, and iontophoresis or phonophoresis. Also, it is important to address the causes of hyperextension through orthotic interventions, such as heel lifts or taping the superior pole posteriorly and holding the patella in a superior glide with tape.

In recalcitrant cases, surgical resection of portions of the fat pad is indicated.

Patellar Fractures

Fractures of the patella occur as a result of a compressive force such as a direct blow, a sudden tensile force (as occurs with hyperflexion of the knee), or from a combination of these. A variety of fracture patterns results, depending on the mechanism of injury. The primary types include transverse (most common), vertical, marginal, and osteochondral fractures. Fractures can be displaced or nondisplaced. A fracture of the patella should be considered when the patient presents with persistent patellar tenderness and pain or a joint effusion and a history of a direct injury to the kneecap.

Patellar fractures can become problematic if the extensor mechanism of the knee is nonfunctional, articular congruity is lost, or stiffness of the knee joint ensues. To avoid these problems, anatomic restoration of the joint that allows early motion must be achieved.

Nondisplaced If the fracture is not displaced and the extensor mechanism is intact, the fracture may be treated with immobilization. This typically involves placing the involved extremity in a cylinder cast for 4 to 6 weeks. The patient is allowed to bear weight in the cast. Once radiographic evidence indicates union, and once clinical signs of healing (nontender to palpation) are present, the patient is prescribed a removable brace. A hinged knee brace is used while ambulating. A program emphasizing ROM and strengthening is then instigated. Once the patient is able to perform a straight-leg raise without extensor lag and has greater than 90 degrees of knee flexion, brace use may be discontinued.

Displaced Displaced patellar fractures warrant surgical treatment to maximize the potential for successful outcomes. In rare cases, a partial patellectomy or total patellectomy must be performed. Postoperative rehabilitation is dependent on the fracture pattern, stability of fixation, and status of the soft tissue. Early ROM may be initiated if the fracture pattern allowed for stable fixation and no wound problems exist. However, comminuted fractures with less than optimal fixation should be monitored closely for stability and progressive signs of radiographic healing. Direct communication between the surgeon and the PT by the physical therapist assistant (PTA) is essential to ensure proper rehabilitation. It is essential that the patient understands the importance of attaining and maintaining full knee extension. The patient should avoid using pillows under the knee; rather, a heel roll or towel should be placed to allow gravity to act on the knee when in supine.

Supracondylar Femur Fractures

The distal femur is funnel shaped, and the area where the stronger diaphyseal bone meets the thinner and weaker metaphyseal bone is more prone to fracture. Supracondylar femur fractures usually occur as a result of low-energy trauma in osteoporotic bone in elderly persons or high-energy trauma in young patients. Supracondylar femur fractures may also occur after total knee replacement. Surgical therapy requires reduction followed by fixation to maintain alignment. Options include external fixation or internal fixation. Internal fixation is with intramedullary devices (e.g., flexible rods, more rigid retrograde or antegrade rods) or extramedullary plates and screws.

Intervention

If the fixation is solid and bone quality is good, some patients can be allowed early weight bearing and motion, especially when intramedullary fixation is used. If bone quality is good but not enough to allow early weight bearing, the patient may be placed in a hinged knee brace to allow early motion but kept off full weight bearing until radiographs show bone healing (at about 12 weeks). If bone quality is poor, more rigid splinting may be required for about 6 weeks and then the patient may be switched to a hinged brace.

Tibial Plateau Fractures

The tibial plateau is one of the most critical load-bearing areas in the human body. The most common mechanism resulting in a tibial plateau fracture is a valgus force with axial loading, or a twisting injury. Soft tissue injuries (e.g., to cruciate and collateral ligaments) occur in about 10 percent of patients. In addition, medial plateau injuries may result in fracture of the fibular head, which may injure the fibular nerve or may be associated with popliteal artery occlusion. Not all tibial plateau fractures require surgery. Treatment of these fractures is governed by the vascularity (local tissue and distal), the condition of soft tissues, and the presence or absence of compartment syndrome.

Intervention

Recovering ROM is a challenge for patients who are unable to actively participate in rehabilitation, have soft tissue injuries that preclude immediate ROM, and have had external fixation pins inserted near the quadriceps. Every effort should be made to avoid a chronic knee flexion contracture after surgery. Typically, these patients are placed in a hinged knee brace that is locked in extension. Motion is restricted until surgical and traumatic wounds are dry. CPM is typically prescribed when wounds are dry, with the goal of full extension and 90 degrees of flexion within 5 to 7 days. If other injuries allow, the patient is fitted with a hinged brace locked in extension for 6 weeks. Non–weight-bearing precautions generally continue for 12 weeks. Active flexion and passive extension are encouraged for 6 weeks, after which active knee extension is started. Active knee extension is delayed if open reduction and internal fixation of a tibial tubercle avulsion was required.

Osgood-Schlatter Disease

Osgood-Schlatter disease is described in Chapter 26.

Therapeutic Techniques

A number of therapeutic techniques can be used to assist the patient. These include self-stretches, soft tissue techniques, and selective manual techniques.

Self-Stretching

To increase extension:

- *Towel hyperextensions.* A towel of sufficient height to elevate the calf and thigh off the table is placed under the heel (**FIGURE 24.33**). A weight can be added to the anterior tibia or femur to assist in regaining hyperextension at the knee.
- *Prone hangs.* See **FIGURE 24.34**.
- *Quadriceps setting.* These exercises are done repeatedly during the day and also can be performed during the towel extension exercise.

FIGURE 24.33 Towel hyperextensions.

FIGURE 24.34 Prone hangs.

To increase flexion:

- Wall slides in supine are performed until 90 degrees of flexion is obtained, and then seated heel slides with passive overpressure are initiated.
- Heel slides (refer to Figure 24.9) with a belt or sheet around the ankle are performed.

Techniques to Increase Soft Tissue Extensibility

Stretching

Increasing soft tissue extensibility is the hallmark of the functional knee rehabilitation protocol and includes stretching of the ITB, hamstring muscles, quadriceps, hip flexors (see Chapter 23 for all four), and Achilles-soleus complex (**FIGURE 24.35**).

Deep Massage of the Iliotibial Band

The patient is placed in the side lying position, with the uppermost leg flexed at the hip to approximately 80 degrees, facing away from the clinician

FIGURE 24.35 Soleus stretch.

(**FIGURE 24.36**). Using the thumbs of both hands, the clinician places them at the distal end of the ITB and then applies deep pressure in a superior direction, following the path of the ITB. The deep stroke is repeated several times, and the flexibility of the ITB is reassessed. The clinician can also use the knuckle of the middle finger or the point of the elbow to apply the deep pressure, although care should be taken to avoid applying too much force.

Deep Massage of the Hamstring Area

The patient is positioned prone, with the leg supported. Using one elbow, the clinician applies a series of vertical strokes along the hamstrings (**FIGURE 24.37**). The clinician can also use the knuckle of the middle finger to apply the deep pressure.

Selective Joint Mobilizations

The various theories behind joint mobilization techniques are described in Chapter 9.

Patellar

Patellar mobilizations are advocated to be performed in a variety of directions to increase the mobility of the patella, presumably to allow it to track better. These

FIGURE 24.36 Deep massage of the iliotibial band (ITB).

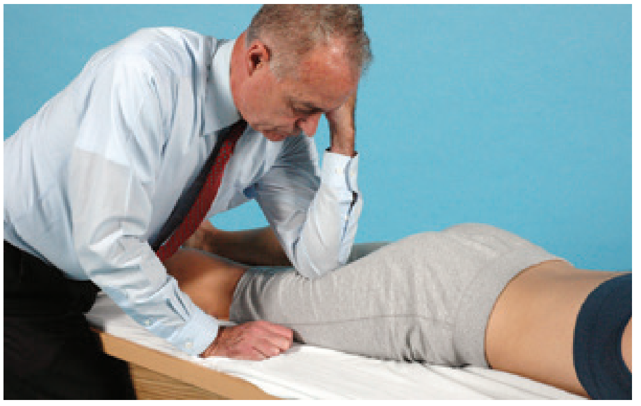


FIGURE 24.37 Deep massage of the hamstrings.

include superior, inferior, and medial and lateral glides (**FIGURE 24.38**). The knee is placed in the open-packed position for the patellofemoral joint (extension) and the patella is moved in the desired direction. However, from an evidence-based perspective, at present there is not one randomized study supporting the efficacy of patellofemoral mobilizations in the treatment of patellofemoral disorders.

FIGURE 24.38 Patellar glides.

Posterior Glide of the Tibia on the Femur

The patient is positioned in supine with the knee flexed and the foot resting on the table. Grasping the proximal tibia, the clinician applies a posterior force (**FIGURE 24.39**). This technique is used to increase the joint glide associated with flexion of the tibiofemoral joint. In the midranges of flexion, the posterior glide of the tibia is applied along the plane of the joint, whereas in the last few degrees of flexion, the posterior glide is applied with the congruent internal rotation of the tibia. Active mobilization can also be employed by positioning the patient's foot and leg into internal rotation, and asking the patient to pull isometrically with the hamstrings.

Anterior Glide of the Tibia on the Femur

The patient is positioned in supine with the knee flexed and the foot resting on the table. Grasping the proximal tibia, the clinician pulls the tibia in an anterior direction. This technique is used to increase the joint glide associated with extension of the tibiofemoral joint. If the clinician is attempting to regain the last 10 to 30 degrees of extension, the emphasis is placed on positioning the tibia in external rotation and applying a posterior glide of the femur, thereby addressing the conjunct rotation.

Distraction of the Tibiofemoral Joint

Joint distraction is used for pain control and general mobility. Distraction at this joint tends to occur when moving into flexion. Using the resting position of the joint as a starting point, and the tibia rotated into either neutral, external rotation, or internal rotation, different ranges of flexion can be used. A long-axis traction force is then applied to the tibiofemoral joint (**FIGURE 24.40**).

FIGURE 24.39 Anterior/posterior glide of the tibia on the femur.

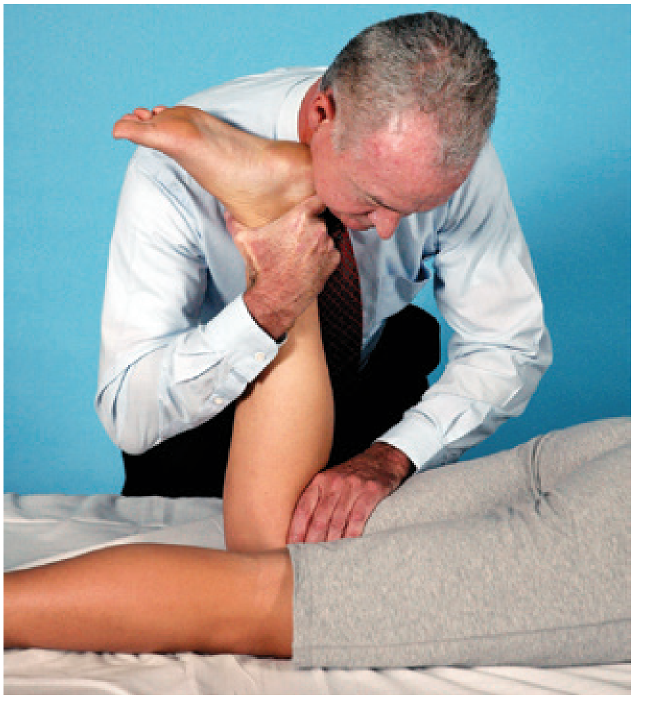


FIGURE 24.40 Distraction of the tibiofemoral joint.

Summary

The knee joint complex is extremely elaborate and includes three articulating surfaces, which form two distinct joints contained within a single joint capsule: the patellofemoral and tibiofemoral joint. The knee is one of the most commonly injured joints. The types of knee injuries seen clinically can be placed into the following categories:

- Unspecified sprains or strains and other minor injuries, including overuse injuries
- Contusions
- Meniscal or ligamentous injuries

It is important that the PTA be familiar with the anatomy and kinesiology of this joint complex, to be able to apply the therapeutic procedures appropriate for all of the categories of injury. It is also important that the PTA has an awareness that thigh, knee, and calf pain can result from a broad spectrum of conditions.

Learning Portfolio

Case Study

Your supervising physical therapist places a new patient on your schedule. Upon reviewing the physical therapist's documentation before the patient's arrival, you note that the patient has a physical therapy diagnosis of acute patellofemoral syndrome which is impacting the patient's ability to work as a carpet layer. The patient's chief complaint is pain with kneeling and descending stairs, and pain with prolonged sitting. The plan of care outlines a therapeutic exercise regime of isometrics, straight-leg raises in three planes, gentle stationary cycling, and ROM exercises followed by the application of electrical stimulation and cryotherapy.

1. List the isometric exercises you would begin with this patient and provide the rationale for your choices.
2. In which three planes would you have the patient perform the straight-leg raises? Why?
3. What parameters of the stationary bicycle (e.g., speed, resistance, and seat height) would you begin with? Why?

At the end of the treatment session, prior to the application of electrical stimulation and cryotherapy the patient reports an increase in anterior knee pain.

4. Would you continue with the application of electrical stimulation and cryotherapy or would you inform the physical therapist about the change in patient status?

Following the application of electrical stimulation and cryotherapy, you prescribe a home exercise program for the patient.

5. What exercises would you prescribe for this patient?
6. In addition to an exercise program, what else would you have the patient do?

Review Questions

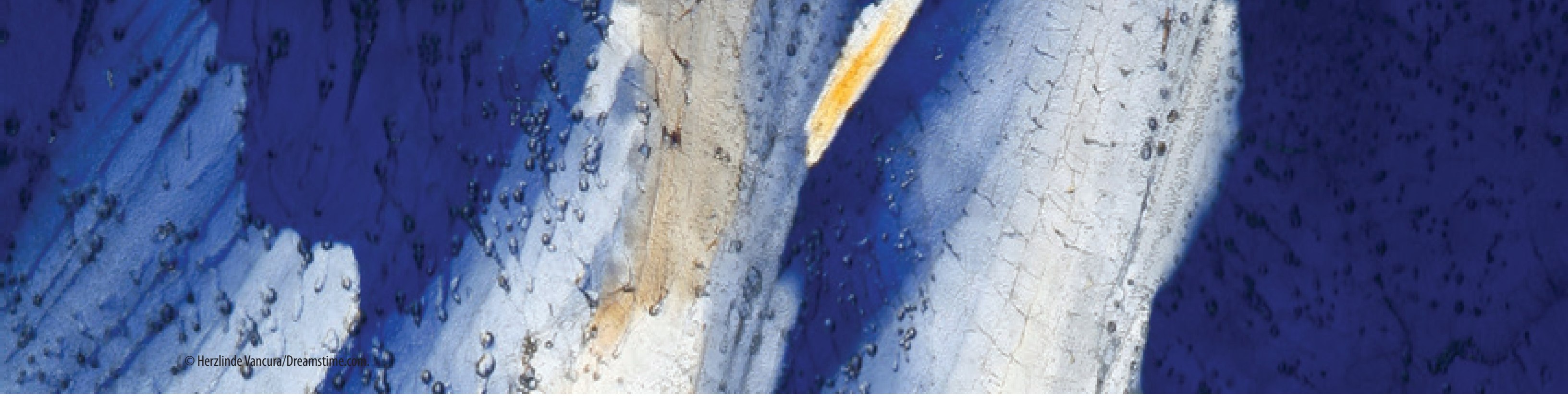
1. Which three tendons form the pes anserine?
2. Which muscle unlocks the fully extended knee?
3. In the knee, which of the two menisci is more prone to injury?
4. What is the primary function of the posterior cruciate ligament?
5. Which muscles act as the secondary restraint for the anterior cruciate ligament?
6. Which gender and age range tend to suffer more from patellofemoral dysfunction?
7. Strengthening of which muscle is used to help with patellofemoral dysfunction?
8. Which of the following structures of the knee joint is primarily responsible for preventing anterior movement of the tibia on the femur?
   a. Medial collateral ligaments
   b. Posterior cruciate ligament
   c. Anterior cruciate ligament
   d. Quadriceps tendon
9. Which of the following describes an osteotomy?
   a. Operative sectioning of a bone
   b. Fusion of a joint
   c. A bag that collects fluid from the surgical site
   d. A form of debridement
10. You are treating a patient with a history of knee trauma. There is marked swelling of the knee joint, the tibia can be displaced forward on the femur, and there is pain and marked instability of the knee joint. Which of the following structures are likely to be involved?
    a. Medial collateral ligament
    b. Lateral collateral ligament
    c. Anterior cruciate ligament
    d. Posterior cruciate ligament
11. During your assessment you notice that the patient cannot fully extend his knee while positioned in supine with the foot dorsiflexed and the hip flexed first to 60 degrees and then 90 degrees. The tightness is most likely caused by which of the following?
    a. Hamstrings
    b. Gastrocnemius
    c. Hip flexors
    d. None of the above

12. The patient has complained of pain and discomfort with knee flexion greater than 80 degrees. The most appropriate treatment program for this patient would include moist heat for 20 minutes followed by:
    a. Immediate static, progressive stretching just beyond tissue resistance with a 30- to 60-second stretch
    b. Immediate static stretching at end range with a 10- to 20-second stretch
    c. Immediate ballistic stretching with 10 passive stretches to end range, repeat two sets
    d. Three repetitions of hold/relax with a 30-second hold and 10-second relax with stretch at end range
13. An 18-year-old basketball player is undergoing rehabilitation status post left knee anterior cruciate reconstruction. The orthopaedic surgeon utilized a bone-patellar tendon-bone graft and has ordered that an accelerated rehabilitation protocol be utilized to restore function to the athlete's lower extremities. The best description regarding the positive impact of utilizing closed kinetic chain exercises as part of an accelerated rehabilitation protocol is that it:
    a. Promotes the functional recruitment of motor units
    b. Facilitates long axis distraction of the joint
    c. Enhances functional movement in the transverse plane
    d. Creates shear forces at the articular level
14. A physical therapist assistant is preparing to treat a patient with an injury to the posterior knee that crushed the tibial nerve. The physical therapist evaluation identifies both motor and sensory involvement. The physical therapist assistant would expect the patient to present with which of the following?
    a. Decreased muscle tone of the knee flexors, as well as paresthesia of the posterior thigh and knee
    b. Increased muscle tone and spasticity of the knee flexors, as well as absent sensation over the posterior thigh area
    c. Increased muscle tone and spasticity of the plantar flexors and invertors of the ankle, as well as absent sensation over the posterior calf and plantar surface of the foot
    d. Decreased muscle tone of the plantar flexors and invertors of the ankle, as well as paresthesia of the posterior calf and plantar surface of the foot
15. A 56-year-old male has just undergone a total knee replacement secondary to severe degenerative joint disease. In the recovery room, a continuous passive movement (CPM) machine has been applied. All of the following are benefits of CPM, *except*:
    a. Increases strength
    b. Increases range of motion
    c. Decreases risk of a deep vein thrombosis
    d. Decreases postoperative pain

References

1. Standring S, Gray H. *Gray's Anatomy: The Anatomical Basis of Clinical Practice*, 40th ed. St. Louis, MO: Churchill Livingstone Elsevier; 2008.
2. Mueller BT, Moulton SG, O'Brien L, LaPrade RF. Rehabilitation following meniscal root repair: a clinical commentary. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2016; 46:104–13.
3. Lankhorst NE, Bierma-Zeinstra SM, van Middelkoop M. Factors associated with patellofemoral pain syndrome: a systematic review. *British Journal of Sports Medicine*. 2013; 47:193–206.
4. Powers CM, Ho KY, Chen YJ, Souza RB, Farrokhi S. Patellofemoral joint stress during weight-bearing and non-weight-bearing quadriceps exercises. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2014; 44:320–7.
5. Lantz JM, Emerson-Kavchak AJ, Mischke JJ, Courtney CA. Tibiofemoral joint mobilization in the successful management of patellofemoral pain syndrome: a case report. *International Journal of Sports Physical Therapy*. 2016; 11:450–61.
6. Kendall FP, McCreary EK, Provance PG. *Muscles: Testing and Function*. Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins; 1993.
7. Fleming BC, Renstrom PA, Goran O, et al. The gastrocnemius muscle is an antagonist of the anterior cruciate ligament. *Journal of Orthopaedic Research*. 2001; 19:1178–84.
8. van der Worp MP, van der Horst N, de Wijer A, Backx FJ, Nijhuis-van der Sanden MW. Iliotibial band syndrome in runners: a systematic review. *Sports Medicine*. 2012; 42:969–92.
9. Jackson-Manfield P, Neumann DA. Structure and function of the knee. In: Jackson-Manfield P, Neumann DA, editors. *Essentials of Kinesiology for the Physical Therapist Assistant*. St. Louis, MO: Mosby Elsevier; 2009. p. 273–304.
10. Teng HL, Powers CM. Sagittal plane trunk posture influences patellofemoral joint stress during running. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2014; 44:785–92.
11. Boone DC, Azen SP, Lin C-M, Spence C, Baron C, Lee L. Reliability of goniometric measurements. *Physical Therapy*. 1978; 58:1355–60.
12. Mayerson NH, Milano RA. Goniometric measurement reliability in physical medicine. *Archives of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation*. 1984; 65:92–4.
13. Riddle DL, Rothstein JM, Lamb RL. Goniometric reliability in a clinical setting: shoulder measurements. *Physical Therapy*. 1987; 67:668–73.
14. Huston LJ, Greenfield ML, Wojtys EM. Anterior cruciate ligament injuries in the female athlete. Potential risk factors. *Clinical Orthopaedics and Related Research*. 2000; 372:50–63.

15. Ireland ML. The female ACL: why is it more prone to injury? *Orthopedic Clinics of North America*. 2002; 33:637–51.
16. Tas S, Yilmaz S, Onur MR, Soylu AR, Altuntas O, Korkusuz F. Patellar tendon mechanical properties change with gender, body mass index and quadriceps femoris muscle strength. *Acta Orthopaedica et Traumatologica Turcica*. 2016; 51:54–9.
17. Wyatt RW, Inacio MC, Liddle KD, Maletis GB. Prevalence and incidence of cartilage injuries and meniscus tears in patients who underwent both primary and revision anterior cruciate ligament reconstructions. *The American Journal of Sports Medicine*. 2014; 42:1841–6.
18. Ardern CL. Anterior cruciate ligament reconstruction – not exactly a one-way ticket back to the preinjury level: a review of contextual factors affecting return to sport after surgery. *Sports Health*. 2015; 7:224–30.
19. Richter DL, Schenck RC, Jr., Wascher DC, Treme G. Knee articular cartilage repair and restoration techniques: a review of the literature. *Sports Health*. 2016; 8:153–60.
20. Reinold MM, Wilk KE, Macrina LC, Dugas JR, Cain EL. Current concepts in the rehabilitation following articular cartilage repair procedures in the knee. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2006; 36:774–94.
21. Lewis PB, McCarty LP, 3rd, Kang RW, Cole BJ. Basic science and treatment options for articular cartilage injuries. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2006; 36:717–27.
22. Baker K, McAlindon T. Exercise for knee osteoarthritis. *Current Opinions in Rheumatology*. 2000; 12:456–63.
23. Fitzgerald GK, Childs JD, Ridge TM, Irrgang JJ. Agility and perturbation training for a physically active individual with knee osteoarthritis. *Physical Therapy*. 2002; 82:372–82.
24. Greenfield B, Tovin BJ, Bennett JG. Knee. In: Wadsworth C, editor. *Current Concepts of Orthopedic Physical Therapy*. Home Study Course. La Crosse, WI: Orthopaedic Section, APTA; 2001.
25. Nimon G, Murray D, Sandow M, Goodfellow J. Natural history of anterior knee pain: a 14- to 20-year follow-up of nonoperative management. *Journal of Pediatric Orthopedics*. 1998; 18:118–22.
26. Sanchis-Alfonso V. How to deal with chronic patellar instability: what does the literature tell us? *Sports Health*. 2016; 8:86–90.
27. Dye S. Patellofemoral pain without malalignment: a tissue homeostasis perspective. In: Fulkerson JP, editor. *Common Patellofemoral Problems*. Rosemont, IL: American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons; 2005. p. 1–9.
28. Klingman RE, Liaos SM, Hardin KM. The effect of subtalar joint posting on patellar glide position in subjects with excessive rearfoot pronation. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 1997; 25:185–91.
29. Wilk KE, Davies GJ, Mangine RE, Malone TR. Patellofemoral disorders: a classification system and clinical guidelines for nonoperative rehabilitation. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 1998; 28:307–22.
30. Hodges P, Richardson C. An investigation into the effectiveness of hip adduction in the optimization of the vastus medialis oblique contraction. *Scandinavian Journal of Rehabilitation Medicine*. 1993; 25:57–62.
31. Kibler BW. Closed kinetic chain rehabilitation for sports injuries. *Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation of North America*. 2000; 11:369–84.
32. McConnell J. The management of chondromalacia patellae: a long-term solution. *The Australian Journal of Physiotherapy*. 1986; 32:215–23.
33. Campolo M, Babu J, Dmochowska K, Scariah S, Varughese J. A comparison of two taping techniques (kinesio and mcconnell) and their effect on anterior knee pain during functional activities. *International Journal of Sports Physical Therapy*. 2013; 8:105–10.
34. Ho K-Y, Epstein R, Garcia R, Riley N, Lee S-P, Turner C. Effects of patellofemoral taping on patellofemoral joint alignment and contact area during weight-bearing. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2017; 47:115–23.
35. Grabiner M, Koh T, Draganich L. Neuromechanics of the patellofemoral joint. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise*. 1994; 26:10–21.
36. Grelsamer RP, McConnell J. *The Patella: A Team Approach*. Gaithersburg, Maryland: Aspen; 1998.
37. Callaghan MJ, Selfe J, McHenry A, Oldham JA. Effects of patellar taping on knee joint proprioception in patients with patellofemoral pain syndrome. *Manual Therapy*. 2008; 13:192–9.
38. Slupik A, Dwornik M, Bialoszewski D, Zych E. Effect of Kinesio taping on bioelectrical activity of vastus medialis muscle: preliminary report. *Ortopedia, Traumatologia, Rehabilitacja*. 2007; 9:644–51.
39. Kuru T, Yaliman A, Dereli EE. Comparison of efficiency of Kinesio® taping and electrical stimulation in patients with patellofemoral pain syndrome. *Acta Orthopaedica et Traumatologica Turcica*. 2012; 46:385–92.
40. Cushnaghan J, McCarthy C, Dieppe P. Taping the patella medially: a new treatment for osteoarthritis of the knee joint? *BMJ*. 1994; 308:753–5.
41. van der Worp H, van Ark M, Roerink S, Pepping GJ, van den Akker-Scheek I, Zwerver J. Risk factors for patellar tendinopathy: a systematic review of the literature. *British Journal of Sports Medicine*. 2011; 45:446–52.
42. van der Worp H, van Ark M, Zwerver J, van den Akker-Scheek I. Risk factors for patellar tendinopathy in basketball and volleyball players: a cross-sectional study. *Scandinavian Journal of Medicine and Science in Sports*. 2012; 22:783–90.
43. Schwartz A, Watson JN, Hutchinson MR. Patellar tendinopathy. *Sports Health*. 2015; 7:415–20.
44. Malliaras P, Cook J, Purdam C, Rio E. Patellar tendinopathy: clinical diagnosis, load management, and advice for challenging case presentations. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2015; 45:887–98.
45. Morton S, Williams S, Valle X, Diaz-Cueli D, Malliaras P, Morrissey D. Patellar tendinopathy and potential risk factors: an international database of cases and controls. *Clinical Journal of Sport Medicine*. 2017; 27:468–74.
46. Bisseling RW, Hof AL, Bredeweg SW, Zwerver J, Mulder T. Relationship between landing strategy and patellar tendinopathy in volleyball. *British Journal of Sports Medicine*. 2007; 41:e8.
47. Dragoo JL, Phillips C, Schmidt JD, Scanlan SF, Blazek K, Steadman JR, et al. Mechanics of the anterior interval of the knee using open dynamic MRI. *Clinical Biomechanics*. 2010; 25:433–7.
48. Hannon J, Bardenett S, Singleton S, Garrison JC. Evaluation, treatment, and rehabilitation implications of the infrapatellar fat pad. *Sports Health*. 2016; 8:167–71.
49. Ahmad CS, Kwak SD, Ateshian GA, Warden WH, Steadman JR, Mow VC. Effects of patellar tendon adhesion to the anterior tibia on knee mechanics. *The American Journal of Sports Medicine*. 1998; 26:715–24.
50. McConnell J. Fat pad irritation: a mistaken patellar tendinitis. *Sports Health*. 1991; 9:7–9.
51. Safran MR, Fu FH. Uncommon causes of knee pain in the athlete. *The Orthopedic Clinics of North America*. 1995; 26:547–59.



© Herzlinde Vancura/Dreamstime.com

CHAPTER 25

Ankle and Foot

CHAPTER OBJECTIVES

At the completion of this chapter, the reader will be able to:

1. Describe the anatomy of the joints, ligaments, muscles, blood, and nerve supply that comprise the region.
2. Describe the biomechanics of the ankle and foot complex, including the open- and close-packed positions, muscle force couples, and the static and dynamic stabilizers.
3. Describe the relationship between muscle imbalance and functional performance of the ankle and foot.
4. Summarize the various causes of ankle and foot dysfunction.
5. Describe and demonstrate intervention strategies and techniques based on clinical findings and established goals by the physical therapist.
6. Evaluate an intervention's effectiveness to determine progress and modify an intervention as needed.
7. Teach an effective home program, and instruct the patient in its use.

Overview

The tibia and fibula bones, bound together by an interosseous membrane along the shaft of the bones and by strong anterior and posterior inferior tibiofibular ligament, make up the leg. Unlike the radius and ulna in the upper extremity, the tibia and fibula do not rotate around each other during functional movement. The ankle and foot are intricate structures composed of 28 bones and 55 articulations, interconnected by ligaments and muscles. Even with a remarkable level of protection through joint congruency and a network of ligaments, the foot and ankle complex is at the mercy of truly impressive forces that act upon it. Peak vertical forces reach 120 percent of body weight during walking and approach 275 percent during running.[1] Five times the body weight is placed across the talocrural joint during initial contact while running.[1] As a consequence, it is estimated that an average 150-pound man absorbs 63.5 tons on each foot while walking 1 mile, and that the same man absorbs 110 tons per foot while running 1 mile.[2] About 60 percent of this weight-bearing load is carried out by the rearfoot, 8 percent by the midfoot, and 28 percent by the metatarsal heads, with the second and third metatarsal heads bearing the greatest forefoot pressures.[3,4]

Anatomy and Kinesiology

The anatomy and kinematics of the ankle and foot may be the most complex in the human body. Anatomically and biomechanically, the foot is often divided up into the rearfoot or hindfoot (the talus and calcaneus), the midfoot (the navicular, cuboid, and the three cuneiforms), and the forefoot (the 14 bones of the toes, the 5 metatarsals, and the medial and lateral sesamoids). The most significant bone of the forefoot is the great toe or hallux, which is so-named due to its size and importance in weight bearing. The majority of the support provided to the ankle and foot joints (**TABLE 25.1** and **FIGURE 25.1**) comes by way of the arrangement of the ankle mortise and by the numerous ligaments found here (**TABLE 25.2**). Further stabilization is afforded by an abundant number of tendons that cross this joint complex (**FIGURE 25.2** and **FIGURE 25.3**) (**TABLE 25.3**) and by the intrinsic muscles (**TABLE 25.4**). The tendons and muscles work together to control balance, propel gait, and stiffen the foot in response to external forces.[5] The names of most of the intrinsic muscles are based on how the given muscle pulls on a single toe in reference to the midsagittal line of the foot, whereas the names of the extrinsic muscles are based on where the muscle is located in the leg, or according to how the muscle moves the hallux or lesser toes.[5]

Terminology

The plantar aspect of the foot refers to the sole or its bottom, whereas the dorsal aspect refers to the top, or superior aspect, of the foot. Motions of the leg, foot, and ankle entail single plane and multiplane movements.

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> - Plantar flexion refers to the motion of pushing the foot downward.
> - Dorsiflexion refers to the motion of bringing the foot upward so the toes approximate the shin.
> - Inversion refers to the motion of the foot resulting in the sole facing medially.
> - Eversion refers to the motion of the foot resulting in the sole facing laterally.

The single plane motions include the following:

- *The frontal plane motions of inversion and eversion.* Inversion and eversion are single plane motions that occur in the frontal plane at the subtalar joint around a sagittal axis.
- *The sagittal plane motions of dorsiflexion and plantar flexion.* These terms describe movement at the ankle and the mid-tarsal joint.

TABLE 25.1 The Joints of the Foot and Ankle

	Open-Packed Position	Close-Packed Position	Capsular Pattern
Joints of the Hindfoot			
Tibiofibular joint	Plantar flexion	Maximum dorsiflexion	Pain on stress
Talocrural joint	10 degrees plantar flexion and midway between inversion and eversion	Maximum dorsiflexion	Plantar flexion, dorsiflexion
Subtalar joint	Midway between extremes of range of motion (ROM)	Supination	Varus, valgus
Joints of the Midfoot			
Midtarsal joints	Midway between extremes of ROM	Supination	Dorsiflexion, plantar flexion, adduction, medial rotation
Joints of the Forefoot			
Tarsometatarsal joints	Midway between extremes of ROM	Supination	None
Metatarsophalangeal joints	10 degrees extension	Full extension	Great toe: extension, flexion. Can also rotate in the sagittal and transverse planes
Interphalangeal joints	Slight flexion	Full extension	Second to fifth toes: variable Flexion, extension

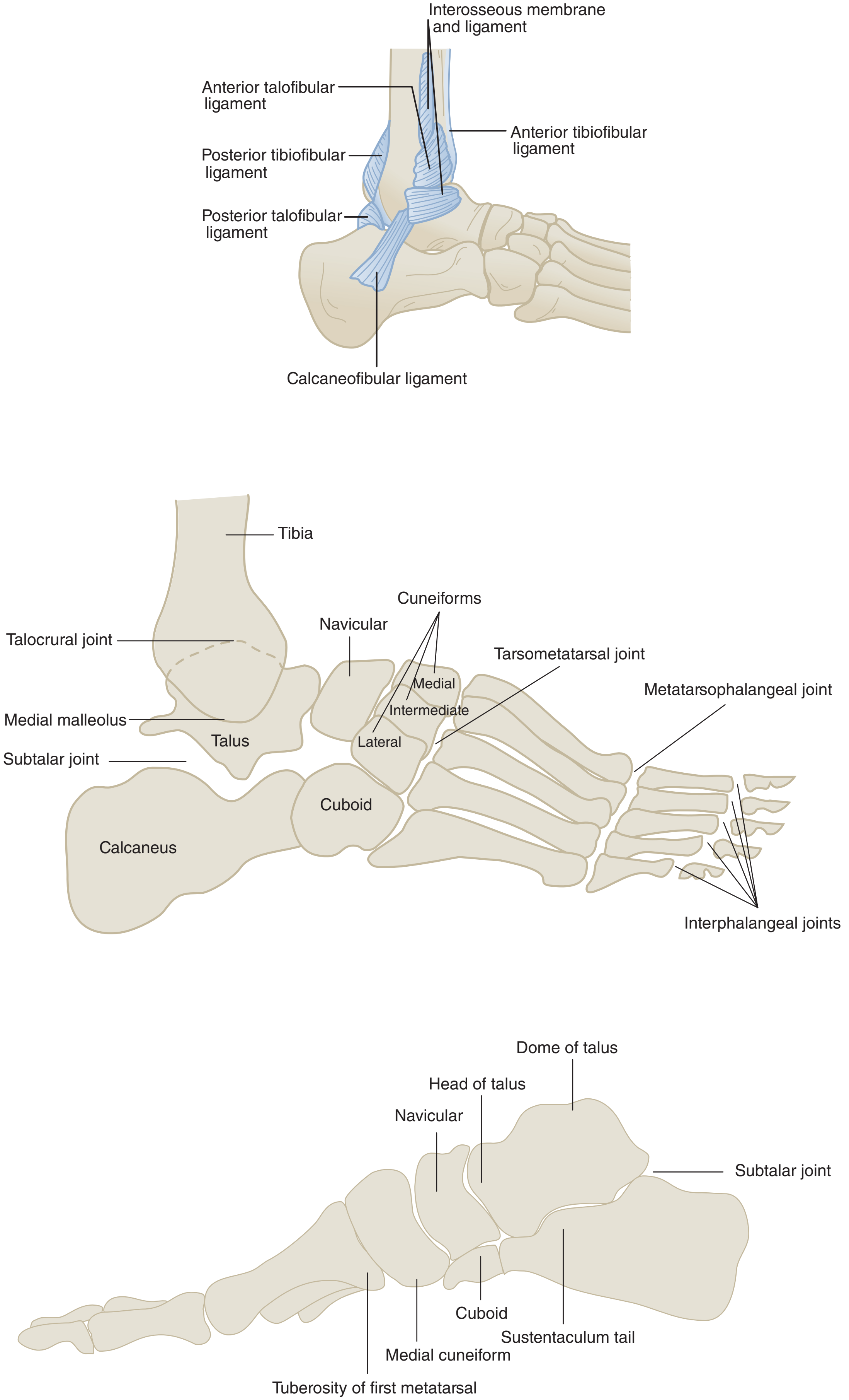


FIGURE 25.1 Major bones, joints, and lateral ligaments of the foot and ankle.

TABLE 25.2 Ankle and Foot Joints and Associated Ligaments

Joint	Associated Ligament	Motions Limited
Distal tibiofibular	Anterior tibiofibular	Distal glide of fibula Plantar flexion
	Posterior tibiofibular	Distal glide of fibula Plantar flexion
	Interosseous	Separation of tibia and fibula
Ankle	Deltoid (medial collateral)	
	Superficial	
	Tibionavicular	Plantar flexion, abduction
	Tibiocalcaneal	Eversion, abduction
	Posterior tibiotalar	Dorsiflexion, abduction
	Deep	
	Anterior tibiotalar	Eversion, abduction, plantar flexion
	Lateral or fibular collateral	
	Anterior talofibular	Plantar flexion Inversion
	Calcaneofibular	Anterior displacement of foot Inversion
	Posterior talofibular	Dorsiflexion
	Lateral talocalcaneal	Posterior displacement of foot Inversion
	Anterior capsule	Dorsiflexion Plantar flexion
	Posterior capsule	Dorsiflexion
Subtalar	Interosseous talocalcaneal	
	Anterior band	Inversion Joint separation
	Posterior band	Inversion
	Lateral talocalcaneal	Joint separation
	Posterior talocalcaneal	Dorsiflexion
	Medial Talocalcaneal	Eversion
	Anterior talocalcaneal	Inversion
Main ligamentous support of longitudinal arches	Long plantar	Eversion
	Short plantar	Eversion
	Plantar calcaneonavicular	Eversion
	Plantar Aponeurosis	Eversion
Midtarsal or transverse	Bifurcated	Joint separation
	Medial band	Plantar flexion
	Lateral band	Inversion
	Dorsal talonavicular	Plantar flexion of talus on navicular
	Dorsal calcaneocuboid	Inversion, plantar flexion

- *The horizontal plane motions of adduction and abduction*. These terms describe motions of the forefoot in the horizontal plane about a superior-inferior axis. Abduction moves the forefoot laterally, whereas adduction moves the forefoot medially on the midfoot.

A triplane motion describes a movement about an obliquely oriented axis through all three body

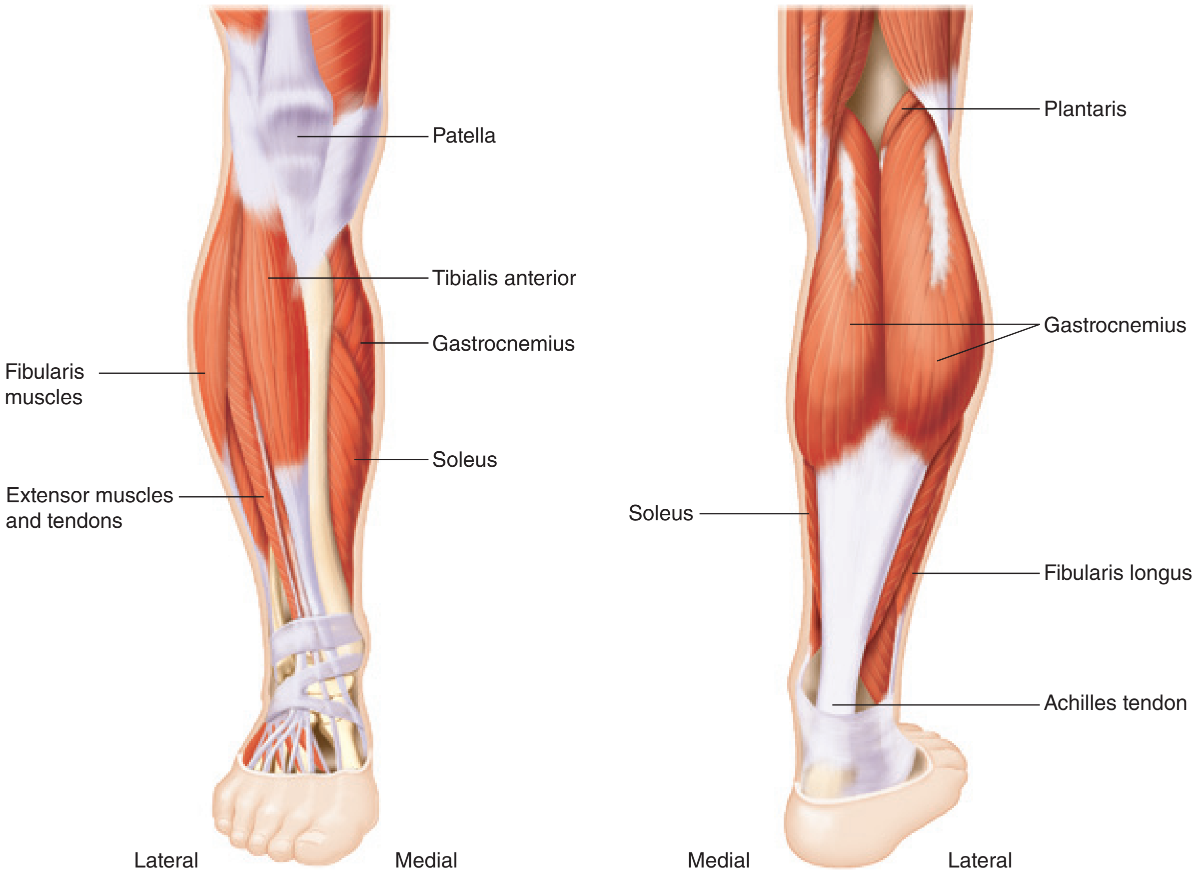


FIGURE 25.2 Extrinsic muscles of the ankle and foot.

planes. Triplanar motions occur at the talocrural, subtalar, and midtarsal joints, and at the first and fifth rays.

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> In pronation, the forefoot rotates the big toe downward and little toe upward, whereas in supination, the reverse occurs.

Joints of the Ankle and Foot

The ankle of the foot is comprised of numerous joints, all of which work together to provide both mobility and stability to this area.

Distal Tibiofibular Joint

The two tibiofibular joints (proximal and distal) are described as individual articulations, but in fact, they function as a pair. The movements that occur at these joints are primarily a result of the ankle's influence.

The Talocrural Joint

The talocrural joint is formed between the talus and the distal tibia. The saddle-shaped talus is considered to be the mechanical keystone of the ankle, because it distributes the body weight backward toward the heel and forward to the midfoot. This ability to distribute forces is due to the massive articulating surface of the talus that both spreads and focuses forces. The talus is divided into a head (anteriorly) and a neck and body (posteriorly). The orientation of the talocrural joint axis is, on average, 20 to 30 degrees posterior to the frontal plane as it passes posteriorly from the medial malleolus to the lateral malleolus (**FIGURE 25.4**). The primary motions at this joint are dorsiflexion and plantar flexion, with a total range of 70 degrees (0 to 20 degrees of dorsiflexion and 0 to 50 degrees of plantar flexion). Although talocrural motion occurs primarily in the sagittal plane, an appreciable amount of horizontal motion appears to occur in the horizontal plane, especially during internal rotation of the tibia or pronation of the foot. The tibia follows the talus during weight bearing so that the talocrural joint externally rotates with supination and internally rotates with pronation.[3,4] Therefore, the tibia internally rotates

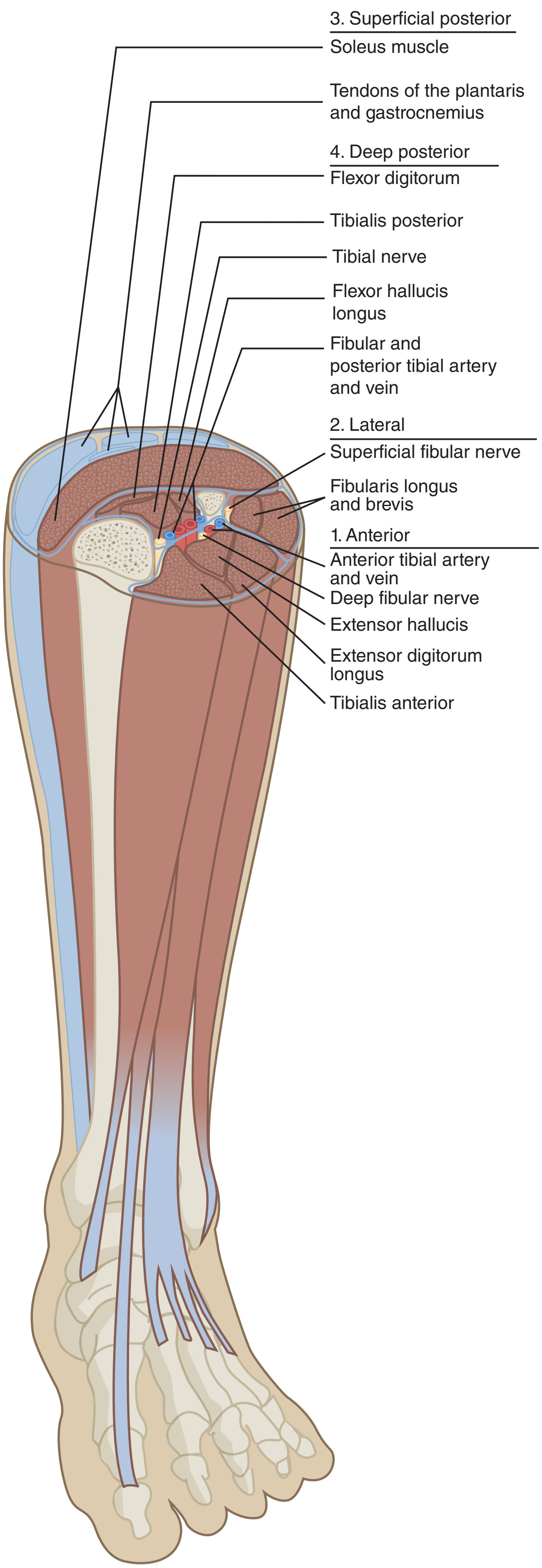


FIGURE 25.3 Muscle compartments of the lower leg.

during pronation and externally rotates during supination.[3,4] Stability for this joint in weight bearing is provided by the articular surfaces, while in non–weight bearing, the ligaments appear to provide the majority of stability.

☑ KEY POINT

During the gait cycle, maximal dorsiflexion occurs late in the stance phase (see Chapter 7), which corresponds with the close-packed position of the ankle. The least stable position of the talocrural joint is full plantar flexion.

The major ligaments of the talocrural joint can be divided into two main groups: lateral collaterals and medial (deltoid) collaterals.

- *Lateral collaterals.* The lateral collateral ligament complex consists of the anterior talofibular ligament (ATFL), which resists ankle inversion in plantar flexion; the calcaneofibular ligament (CFL), which resists inversion with the posterior talofibular ligament (PTFL), the strongest of the lateral ligament complex.
- *Medial collaterals.* As a group, the medial collateral ligaments form a triangular-shaped ligamentous structure known as the medial (deltoid) ligament of the ankle. Wide variations have been noted in the anatomic description of the medial (deltoid) ligament of the ankle, but it is generally agreed that it consists of both superficial and deep fibers.
  - *Superficial fibers.* These consist of the tibionavicular, which resists lateral translation and external rotation of the talus; the posterior talotibial, which resists ankle dorsiflexion and lateral translation and external rotation of the talus; and the calcaneotibial, which resists abduction of the talus, calcaneus, and navicular when the foot and ankle are positioned in plantar flexion and eversion.
  - *Deep fibers.* These consist of the anterior talotibial and the calcaneotibial ligament. Rasmussen and colleagues[6,7] found that the superficial fibers of the medial (deltoid) ligament of the ankle specifically limited talar abduction or negative talar tilt but that the deep layers of the medial (deltoid) ligament of the ankle ruptured with external rotation of the leg, without the superficial portion being involved.

☑ KEY POINT

The strength of the ankle ligaments, from weakest to strongest, is the ATFL, CFL, PTFL, and deltoid complex.

TABLE 25.3 Extrinsic Muscle Attachments and Innervation

Muscle	Proximal	Distal	Innervation	Function
Gastrocnemius	Medial and lateral condyle of femur	Posterior surface of calcaneus through Achilles tendon	Tibial S2 (S1)	Plantar flexion Flexion of the knee
Plantaris	Lateral supracondylar line of femur	Posterior surface of calcaneus through Achilles tendon	Tibial S2 (S1)	Plantar flexion Flexion of the knee
Soleus	Head of the fibula, proximal third of shaft, soleal line and midshaft of posterior tibia	Posterior surface of the calcaneus through the Achilles tendon	Tibial S2 (S1)	Plantar flexion
Tibialis anterior	Distal to lateral tibial condyle, proximal half of lateral tibial shaft, and interosseous membrane	First cuneiform bone, medial and plantar surfaces and base of the first metatarsal	Deep fibular (peroneal) L4 (L5)	Dorsiflexion Inversion
Tibialis posterior	Posterior surface of tibia, proximal two-thirds of the posterior of the fibula, and interosseous membrane	Tuberosity of navicular bone, tendinous expansion to other tarsals and metatarsals	Tibial L4 and L5	Plantar flexion Inversion
Fibularis (peroneus) longus	Lateral condyle of tibia, head and proximal two-thirds of fibula	Base of first metatarsal and first cuneiform, lateral side	Superficial fibular (peroneal) L5 and S1 (S2)	Eversion Plantar flexion
Fibularis (peroneus) brevis	Distal two-thirds of lateral fibular shaft	Tuberosity of fifth metatarsal	Superficial fibular (peroneal) L5 and S1 (S2)	Plantar flexion Eversion
Fibularis (peroneus) tertius	Lateral slip from extensor digitorum longus	Tuberosity of fifth metatarsal	Deep fibular (peroneal) L5 and S1	Dorsiflexion Eversion
Flexor hallucis longus	Posterior distal two-thirds of fibula	Base of distal phalanx of great toe	Tibial S2 (S3)	Flexion of the great toe Plantar flexion Inversion
Flexor digitorum longus	Middle three-fifths of posterior tibia	Base of distal phalanx of lateral four toes	Tibial S2 (S3)	Flexion of toes 2 to 5 Plantar flexion Inversion
Extensor hallucis longus	Middle half of anterior shaft of fibula	Base of distal phalanx of great toe	Deep fibular (peroneal) L5 and S1	Extension of the great toe Dorsiflexion

(continues)

TABLE 25.3 Extrinsic Muscle Attachments and Innervation *(continued)*

Muscle	Proximal	Distal	Innervation	Function
Extensor digitorum longus	Lateral condyle of tibia, and proximal anterior surface of shaft of the fibula	One tendon to each lateral four toes, to the middle phalanx and extending to the distal phalanges	Deep fibular (peroneal) L5 and S1	Extension of toes 2–5 (MTP, PIP, and DIP joints) Dorsiflexion Eversion

MTP, metatarsophalangeal; PIP, proximal interphalangeal; DIP, distal interphalangeal.

TABLE 25.4 Intrinsic Muscles of the Foot

Muscle	Proximal	Distal	Innervation	Function
Extensor digitorum brevis	Distal superior surface of calcaneus	Dorsal surface of second through fourth toes, base of proximal phalanx	Deep fibular (peroneal) S1 and S2	Extension of the first four toes
Flexor digitorum brevis	Tuberosity of calcaneus	One tendon slips into base of middle phalanx of each of the lateral four toes	Medial and lateral plantar S3 (S2)	Flexion of the MTP and PIP joints of the lesser four toes
Extensor hallucis brevis	Distal superior and lateral surfaces of calcaneus	Dorsal surface of proximal phalanx	Deep fibular (peroneal) S1 and S2	
Flexor hallucis brevis	Plantar surface of cuboid and third cuneiform bones	Base of proximal phalanx of great toe	Medial plantar S3 (S2)	MTP flexion of the great toe
Quadratus plantae	By two heads to the plantar aspect of the calcaneus	Lateral border of the flexor digitorum longus tendon	Lateral plantar S1 and S2	Helps to stabilize the tendon of the flexor digitorum longus, preventing it from migrating medially when under force
Abductor hallucis	Tuberosity of calcaneus and plantar aponeurosis	Base of proximal phalanx, medial side	Medial plantar L5 and S1 (L4)	Abduction of the great toe
Adductor hallucis	Base of second, third, and fourth metatarsals and deep plantar ligaments	Proximal phalanx of first digit lateral side	Medial and lateral plantar S1 and S2	Flexion and abduction of the MTP joint of the great toe

TABLE 25.4 Intrinsic Muscles of the Foot *(continued)*

Muscle	Proximal	Distal	Innervation	Function
Lumbricals	Medial and adjacent sides of flexor digitorum longus tendon to each lateral digit	Medial side of proximal phalanx and extensor hood	Medial and lateral plantar L5, S1, and S2 (L4)	Flexion of the MTP joints, simultaneously extending the IP joints
Plantar interossei			Medial and lateral plantar S1 and S2	Adduction of toes
First	Base and medial side of third metatarsal	Base of proximal phalanx and extensor hood of third digit		
Second	Base and medial side of fourth metatarsal	Base of proximal phalanx and extensor hood of fourth digit		
Third	Base and medial side of fifth metatarsal	Base of proximal phalanx and extensor hood of fifth digit		
Dorsal interossei			Medial and lateral plantar S1 and S2	Abduction of toes 2–4
First	First and second metatarsal bones	Proximal phalanx and extensor hood of second digit medially		
Second	Second and third metatarsal bones	Proximal phalanx and extensor hood of the second digit laterally		
Third	Third and fourth metatarsal bones	Proximal phalanx and extensor hood of the third digit laterally		
Fourth	Fourth and fifth metatarsal bones	Proximal phalanx and extensor hood of the fourth digit laterally		
Abductor digiti minimi	Lateral side of fifth metatarsal bone	Proximal phalanx of fifth digit	Lateral plantar S1 and S2	Abduction of the fifth toe
Flexor digiti minimi	Plantar aspect of the base of the fifth metatarsal	Lateral base of the proximal phalanx of the fifth toe	Lateral plantar S1 and S2	MTP flexion of the fifth toe

IP, interphalangeal; MTP, metatarsophalangeal; PIP, proximal interphalangeal; DIP, distal interphalangeal.

Subtalar Joint

The subtalar joint is a synovial, bicondylar compound joint consisting of two separate, modified ovoid surfaces with their own joint cavities (one male and one female). The two surfaces, consisting of anterior and posterior articulations, are connected by an interosseous membrane. The anterior element is situated more medial than the posterior, giving the plane of the joint an average 42 degrees (± 9 degrees) superior from the transverse foot plane and 23 degrees (± 11 degrees) medial from the sagittal foot plane (refer to Figure 25.4).

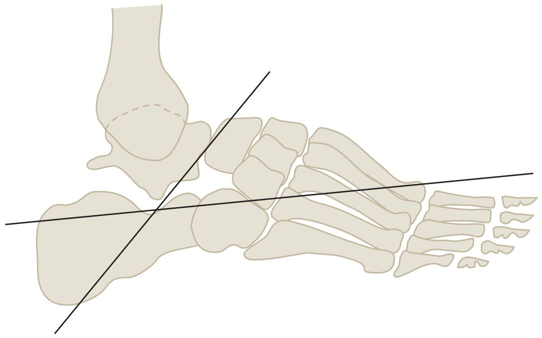


FIGURE 25.4 The orientation of the talocrural joint axis.

The subtalar joint is responsible for inversion and eversion of the hindfoot. Approximately 50 percent of apparent ankle inversion observed actually comes from the subtalar joint. The axis of motion for the subtalar joint is approximately 45 degrees from horizontal and 20 degrees medial to the mid-sagittal plane. This axis, which moves during subtalar joint motion, allows the subtalar joint to also produce triplanar (pronation/supination) motions in close conjunction with the transverse tarsal joints of the midfoot. Pronation and supination motions at the subtalar joint vary according to whether the joint is weight bearing (closed-chain), or non–weight bearing (open-chain).[3,4]

- During weight-bearing activities, pronation involves a combination of calcaneal eversion, adduction and plantar flexion of the talus, and internal rotation of the tibia (**FIGURE 25.5**), whereas supination involves a combination of calcaneal inversion, abduction and dorsiflexion of the talus, and external rotation of the tibia (**FIGURE 25.6**).

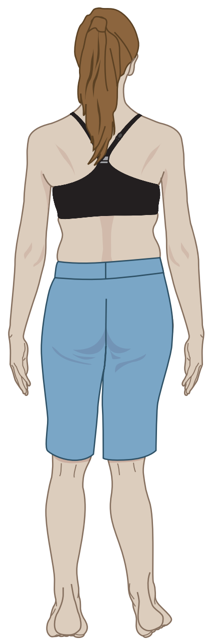


FIGURE 25.5 Non–weight-bearing pronation.

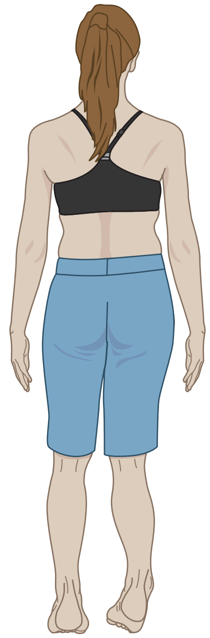


FIGURE 25.6 Non–weight-bearing supination.

- During non–weight-bearing activities, pronation involves a combination of calcaneal eversion, and abduction and dorsiflexion of the talus (**FIGURE 25.7**), whereas supination involves a combination of calcaneal inversion, and adduction and plantar flexion of the talus (**FIGURE 25.8**).

☑ KEY POINT

In healthy individuals, there is an inversion to eversion ratio of 2:1, which amounts to approximately 20 degrees of inversion and 10 degrees of eversion.

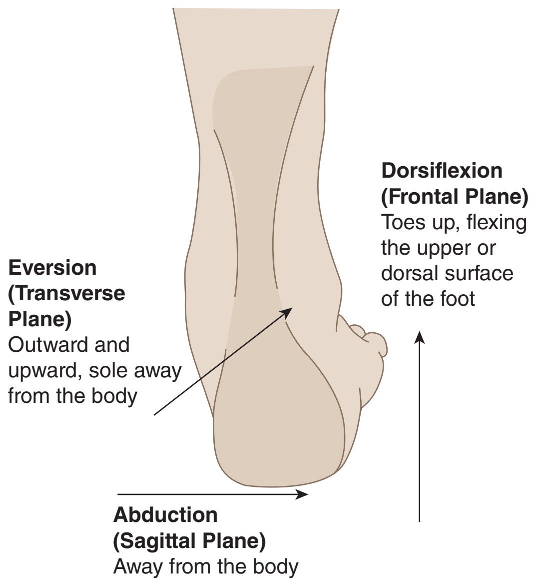


FIGURE 25.7 Weight-bearing pronation.

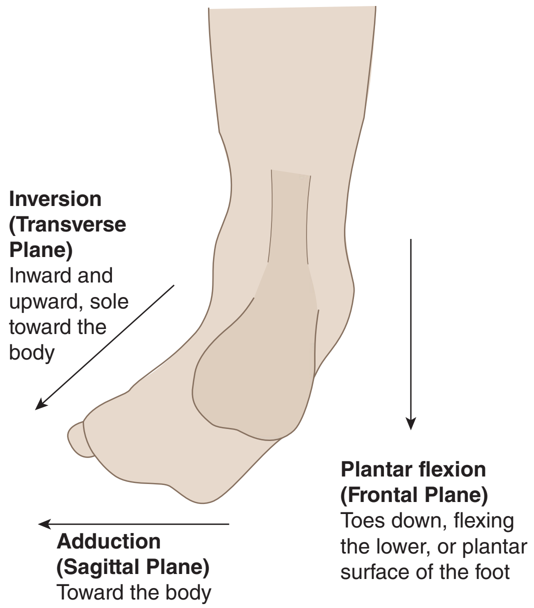


FIGURE 25.8 Weight-bearing supination.

The "righting" mechanism of the foot provided by eversion and inversion allows the leg to remain vertical, even while standing or walking on uneven surfaces.[8]

> ☑ **KEY POINT**
>
> For normal gait on a level surface, a minimum of 4 to 6 degrees of eversion and 8 to 12 degrees of inversion are required.[9]

The subtalar joint is stabilized by four ligaments, collectively known as the syndesmotic ligaments. These include the inferior interosseous ligament, the anterior inferior tibiofibular ligament, the posterior inferior tibiofibular ligament, and the inferior transverse ligament. Of these ligaments, the inferior interosseous ligament is the primary stabilizer.

> ☑ **KEY POINT**
>
> The ligaments of the distal tibiofibular joint (refer to Table 25.2) are more commonly injured than the anterior talofibular ligament. Injuries to the ankle syndesmosis most often occur as a result of forced external rotation of the foot or during internal rotation of the tibia on a planted foot. Hyperdorsiflexion may also be a contributing mechanism.

Midtarsal (Transverse Tarsal) Joint Complex

The midtarsal joint complex comprises the talonavicular and calcaneocuboid articulations. The function of the midtarsal joint complex, which separates the rearfoot from the midfoot, is to provide the foot with an additional mechanism for raising and lowering the arch, and to absorb some of the horizontal plane tibial motion that is transmitted to the foot during stance.[3,4] This joint complex works in conjunction with the subtalar joint during activities involving pronation and supination.

Cuneonavicular Joint

The cuneonavicular joint has one to two degrees of freedom: plantar/dorsiflexion and inversion/eversion.

Metatarsophalangeal Joints

The metatarsophalangeal (MTP) joints have two degrees of freedom: flexion/extension and abduction/adduction. Range of motion of these joints varies, ranging from 40 to 100 degrees of extension, 3 to 43 degrees of flexion, and 5 to 20 degrees of abduction and adduction.

First Metatarsophalangeal Joint

The function of the great toe is to provide stability to the medial aspect of the foot and to provide for normal propulsion during gait. Normal alignment of the first MTP joint varies between 5 degrees varus and 15 degrees valgus.

> ☑ **KEY POINT**
>
> The great toe is characterized by having a remarkable discrepancy between active and passive motion. Approximately 30 degrees of active flexion is present and at least 50 degrees of active extension, the latter of which frequently can be increased passively to between 70 and 90 degrees.

Interphalangeal (IP) Joints

Each of the IP joints has one degree of freedom: flexion/extension.

Medial Longitudinal Arch of the Foot

The medial longitudinal arch plays an important role in foot function during weight-bearing activities. The arch is composed of the calcaneus, talus, navicular, medial cuneiform, and first metatarsals (two sesamoids)

(FIGURE 25.9). Although some of the integrity of the arch depends on the bony architecture, support is also provided by the ligaments and muscles, including the plantar calcaneonavicular (spring) ligament, plantar fascia, tibialis posterior, flexor digitorum longus, flexor hallucis longus, and fibularis (peroneus) longus.[3,4] The soleus and gastrocnemius muscle group has also been noted to have an effect on the arch and can flatten it with adaptive shortening. The arch is not only a major source of frontal plane motion of the foot, but also is a major load-bearing structure.[3,4] Analysis of the medial longitudinal arch has long been used by clinicians to make determinations about foot abnormalities, with a high arch indicating a supinated foot and a low or collapsed arch being associated with a pronated or flatfoot, respectively.[10] Studies have found a higher incidence of stress fractures, plantar heel pain, metatarsalgia, and lower extremity injuries, including knee strains and iliotibial band syndrome, in individuals with high arches, compared with those who have low arches.[3,4]

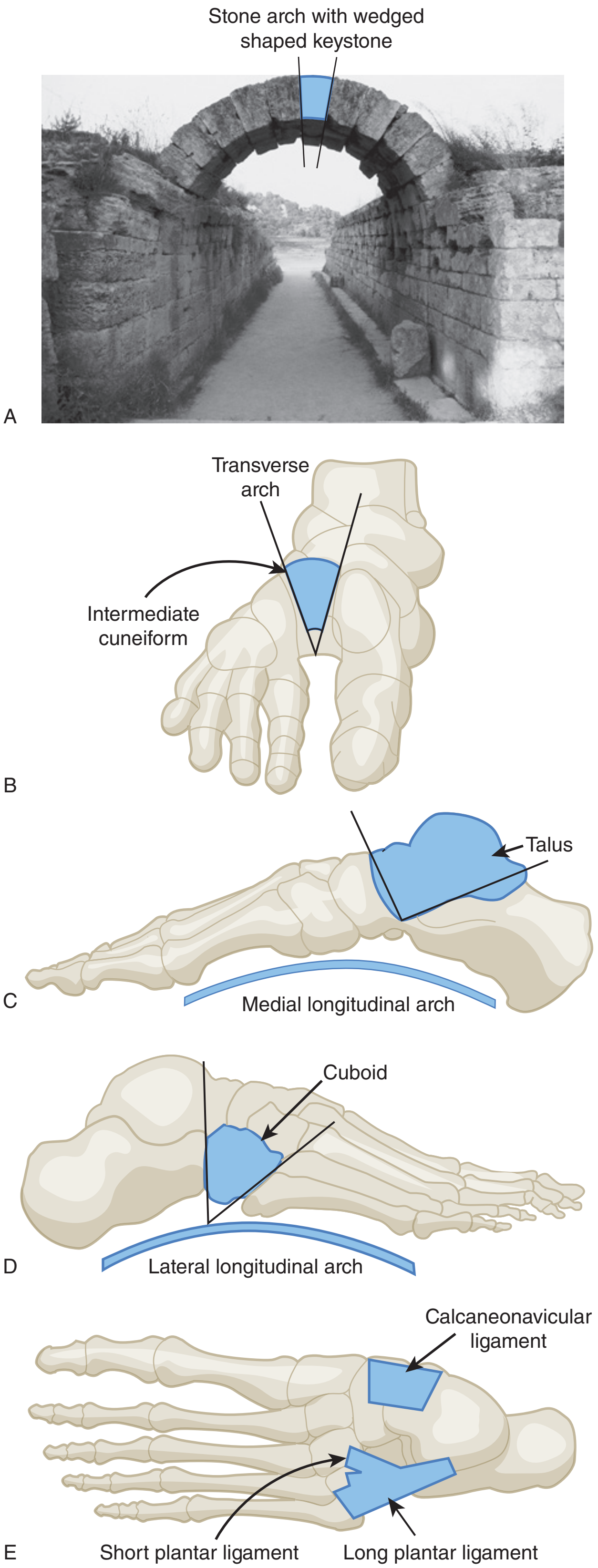


FIGURE 25.9 Arches of the foot.

(a) © Photos.com; (e) © Oleksii Natykach/ShutterStock, Inc.

Examination

The examination of the foot and ankle by the physical therapist (PT) typically follows the outline in TABLE 25.5.

Goniometry

Both the passive and active physiological ranges of motion can be measured using a goniometer (TABLE 25.6), which has been shown to have a satisfactory level of intraobserver reliability.[11–13]

The evidence-based special tests of the foot and ankle are outlined in TABLE 25.7. Selection for their use is at the discretion of the clinician and is based on a complete patient history and clinical findings.

Other special tests commonly used by PTs are as follows:

Talar Tilt. This test is used to determine whether the CFL is torn. The patient is positioned in supine or side lying with the foot relaxed and the knee flexed. The clinician places the foot in a position between dorsiflexion and plantar flexion to bring the CFL perpendicular to the long axis of the talar. The talus is then tilted from side to side into abduction and adduction (FIGURE 25.10). Abduction stresses the deltoid ligament, whereas adduction tests the CFL and, to some degree, the ATFL. No diagnostic accuracy studies have been performed to determine the sensitivity and specificity of this test.

Squeeze Test. The patient is positioned in supine or side lying position and the clinician squeezes the upper to middle third of the leg at a point approximately 6 to 8 inches below the knee. Pain felt in the distal third of the leg may indicate a compromised syndesmosis (high ankle sprain).

TABLE 25.5 Examination of the Lower Leg, Ankle, and Foot

I. History.
II. Observation and inspection.
III. Upper quarter scan as appropriate.
IV. Examination of movements. Active range of motion (AROM) with passive overpressure of the following movements:
- Plantar flexion and dorsiflexion in weight bearing and non–weight bearing
- Supination and pronation in weight bearing and non–weight bearing
- Toe extension and flexion in weight bearing and non–weight bearing

V. Resisted isometric movements:
- Knee flexion and extension
- Plantar flexion and dorsiflexion
- Supination and pronation
- Toe extension and flexion

VI. Palpation.
VII. Neurological tests as appropriate (reflexes, sensory scan, peripheral nerve assessment).
VIII. Joint mobility tests:
- Inversion and eversion at the subtalar joint
- Adduction and abduction at the midtarsal joints
- Anteroposterior glide at the talocrural joint
- Tarsal bone mobility

IX. Special tests (refer to Table 25.7).
X. Diagnostic imaging.

TABLE 25.6 Goniometric Techniques for the Ankle

Joint	Motion	Axis	Stationary Arm	Movable Arm	Normal Ranges (Degrees)	End Feel
Ankle	Dorsiflexion	Lateral aspect of the lateral malleolus	Lateral midline of the fibula using the head of the fibula for reference	Parallel to the lateral aspect of the fifth metatarsal	0–20	Firm
	Plantar flexion	Lateral aspect of the lateral malleolus	Lateral midline of the fibula using the head of the fibula for reference	Parallel to the lateral aspect of the fifth metatarsal	0–40	Firm
	Inversion	Anterior aspect of the ankle midway between the malleoli	Anterior midline of the lower leg using the tibial tuberosity for reference	Anterior midline of the second metatarsal	0–30	Firm
	Eversion	Anterior aspect of the ankle midway between the malleoli	Anterior midline of the lower leg using the tibial tuberosity for reference	Anterior midline of the second metatarsal	0–20	Firm

TABLE 25.7 Evidence-Based Special Tests for the Foot and Ankle

Name of Test	Brief Description	Positive Findings	Evidence-Based
Anterior drawer[a]	The patient is supine. Clinician maintains the ankle in 10 to 15 degrees of plantar flexion while drawing the heel gently forward.	The test is positive for anterior talofibular ligament tear if talus rotates out of the ankle mortise anteriorly.	Sensitivity: 0.71 (<48 hours after injury), 0.96 (5 days after injury) Specificity: 0.33 (<48 hours after injury), 0.84 (5 days after injury)
Impingement sign[b]	The patient is seated. The clinician grasps the calcaneus with one hand and uses the other hand to grasp the forefoot and bring it into plantar flexion. The clinician uses the thumb to place pressure over the anterolateral ankle. The foot is then moved from plantar flexion to dorsiflexion while the thumb pressure is maintained.	Positive for anterolateral ankle impingement if pain is provoked with pressure from clinician's thumb is greater in dorsiflexion than in plantar flexion.	Sensitivity: 0.95 Specificity: 0.88
Gap test[c]	The patient is prone. The clinician palpates the course of the Achilles tendon.	Positive for Achilles tendon tear if gap in Achilles tendon is noted.	Sensitivity: 0.73 Specificity: not provided
Windlass test[d]	The patient is standing on a stepstool with the toes over the stool's edge. The clinician extends the MTP joint of the great toe while allowing the IP joint to flex.	Positive for plantar fasciitis if the pain is reproduced at the end range of MTP extension.	Sensitivity: 0.32 Specificity: 1.0
Paper grip test[e]	The patient is positioned in sitting with the hips, knees, and ankles at 90 degrees and toes placed on a piece of cardboard. The clinician stabilizes the feet while attempting to slide cardboard away from the toes.	Positive for toe plantar flexion weakness if the participant cannot maintain cardboard under the toes.	Sensitivity: 0.80 Specificity: 0.79

Data from (a) van Dijk CN, Mol BW, Lim LS, et al: Diagnosis of ligament rupture of the ankle joint. Physical examination, arthrography, stress radiography and sonography compared in 160 patients after inversion trauma. *Acta Orthop Scand* 67:566–70, 1996; (b) Molloy S, Solan MC, Bendall SP: Synovial impingement in the ankle. A new physical sign. *J Bone Joint Surg Br* 85:330–3, 2003; (c) Maffulli N: The clinical diagnosis of subcutaneous tear of the Achilles tendon. A prospective study in 174 patients. *Am J Sports Med* 26:266–70, 1998; (d) De Garceau D, Dean D, Requejo SM, et al: The association between diagnosis of plantar fasciitis and Windlass test results. *Foot Ankle Int* 24:251–5, 2003; and (e) Menz HB, Zammit GV, Munteanu SE, et al: Plantarflexion strength of the toes: Age and gender differences and evaluation of a clinical screening test. *Foot Ankle Int* 27:1103–8, 2006.

FIGURE 25.10 Talar tilt test.

One-Legged Hop Test. The one-legged hop test is performed by having the patient stand on the injured leg and hop continuously. Nussbaum and colleagues[14] reported that patients with syndesmosis injuries could not complete 10 repetitions of unilateral hopping without significant pain.

General Intervention Strategies

Due to the integrated nature of the foot and ankle in functional activities, the rehabilitation is organized around a common framework for most foot and ankle pathologies.

Acute Phase

The general goals during the acute phase include the following:

- *Decrease pain, inflammation, and swelling.* The control of pain, inflammation, and swelling is accomplished by applying the principles of PRICEMEM (*p*rotection, *r*est, *i*ce, *c*ompression, *e*levation, *m*anual therapy, *e*arly motion, and *m*edication). Icing for 20 to 30 minutes three to four times per day, concurrent with nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) or aspirin prescribed by the physician can aid in reducing pain and swelling.
- *Protect the healing area from reinjury.* The means by which to support or protect the ankle and foot during this phase will vary depending on the type and severity of the injury, the individual patient's requirements, and the anticipated compliance of the patient to any restrictions placed on them by the physician.
- *Begin to reestablish pain-free ROM.* To increase ROM, the therapist may perform gentle capsular stretches and grades I to II joint mobilizations. Exercises in this phase include towel stretches (**FIGURE 25.11**); ankle circles and pumps; low-level (seated) biomechanical ankle platform system (BAPS) or wobble board exercises (**FIGURE 25.12**); and active and active-assisted exercises into plantar flexion (**FIGURE 25.13**), dorsiflexion, inversion, and eversion, and combined planes (e.g., plantar flexion and inversion). Active motion and exercise also may be used to effectively increase local circulation and further promote the resorption of any edema.
- *Increase weight-bearing tolerance.* Pain-free weight bearing as tolerated is encouraged with the use of any appropriate assistive devices such as a cane or crutches (**FIGURE 25.14**). During ambulation, joint protection and positioning are continued

FIGURE 25.11 Towel/sheet stretch into dorsiflexion.

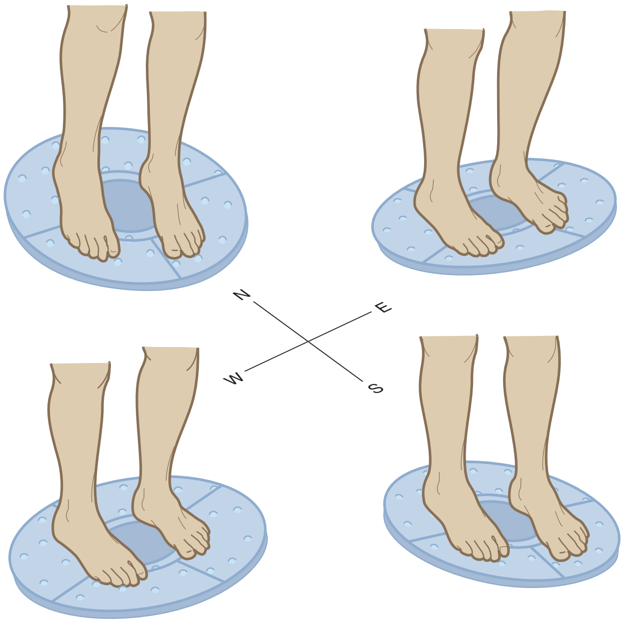


FIGURE 25.12 Seated wobble board.

FIGURE 25.13 Active plantar flexion.

FIGURE 25.14 Crutch walking.

as needed using taping techniques, thermoplastic stirrups, or a functional walking orthosis. The use of crutches or other assistive devices is usually continued until the patient has a pain-free uncompensated gait. While the patient uses crutches, pain-free ankle motion during the normal gait cycle continues to be encouraged. Patients should be encouraged to walk with as normal a gait as possible, given the limitations on ankle and knee motion. The application of ice is continued after therapeutic activities or after prolonged weight bearing to prevent or minimize any recurrence of swelling.

- *Maintain fitness levels as appropriate.* Stationary cycling can also be performed (at a comfortable intensity for up to 30 minutes) to provide cardiovascular endurance training and controlled ankle ROM.
- *Prevent muscle atrophy and increase neuromuscular control.* Isometric exercises within the patient's pain tolerance (**FIGURE 25.15** through **FIGURE 25.18**) and pain-free ROM are initiated for all motions. These exercises are initially

FIGURE 25.15 Resisted plantar flexion.

FIGURE 25.16 Resisted dorsiflexion

FIGURE 25.17 Resisted eversion.

FIGURE 25.18 Resisted inversion.

performed submaximally, progressing to maximal isometric contractions as tolerated. Mild manual resistive isometrics in all planes may also be started throughout the pain-free range. Exercises are progressed to include concentric and eccentric exercises (**FIGURE 25.19** through **FIGURE 25.22**), once the isometric exercises are pain-free. If necessary, a washcloth can be placed between the resistance band and the foot for comfort. Exercises for the foot intrinsics may include toe curl exercises with a towel (**FIGURE 25.23** and **FIGURE 25.24**) or having the patient pick up marbles from the floor with their toes and place the marbles in a small container or bowl. Each muscle or muscle group should be strengthened with a specific exercise that isolates the muscle or group. Resistance (rubber tubing/bands, weights, isokinetic devices, body weight exercises, etc.) is increased as tolerated. Emphasis should initially be on low resistance and endurance in all pain-free positions. As the program progresses, the joint range is increased from a stress-free position to a more stressful position. As with all exercises, the patient should become an active participant at the earliest opportunity. The exercises learned in the clinic need to be integrated appropriately into a home-exercise regimen.

FIGURE 25.19 Theraband PREs: inversion.

FIGURE 25.20 Theraband PREs: eversion.

FIGURE 25.21 Theraband PREs: dorsiflexion.

FIGURE 25.22 Theraband PREs: plantar flexion. To make the exercise more difficult, the resistance band can be stabilized under the MTP joints.

FIGURE 25.23 Lateral to medial towel curls.

FIGURE 25.24 Anterior to posterior towel curls.

Progression to the functional phase occurs when there is minimal pain and tenderness, full passive range of motion (PROM), strength rated at 4/5 to 5/5 with manual muscle testing as compared to the uninvolved side, and pain-free weight bearing and an uncompensated gait pattern present. At this time crutches or other assistive devices are discontinued. However, pain may still be felt with activities more vigorous than walking.

Functional/Chronic Phase

A recurrence of symptoms should not be provoked. The goals of this phase are as follows:

- *Restore normal joint arthrokinematics.* Specific joint mobilization techniques maybe performed.
- *Attain full range of pain-free motion.* Muscle stretching is initiated to begin to increase ROM. Emphasis should also be placed on regaining any dorsiflexion that was lost. Dorsiflexion can be regained through gastrocnemius and soleus stretches, and can also be assisted by the use of a tilt board (see Chapter 24) or heel cord stretching box (**FIGURE 25.25**).
- *Improve neuromuscular control of the lower extremity in a full-weight-bearing posture on both level and uneven surfaces.* Closed-chain exercises are introduced with a graduated increase in weight bearing. Specific exercises include, but are not limited to, chair/Swiss ball seated marching (hip flexion) on the floor (**FIGURE 25.26**) or a pillow (**FIGURE 25.27**), standing bilateral (**FIGURE 25.28**) to unilateral (**FIGURE 25.29**) heel raises, and wall slides (**FIGURE 25.30**). The neuromuscular progression begins with a unilateral stance on the floor (**FIGURE 25.31**), and progresses to increasingly softer surfaces (**FIGURE 25.32** and **FIGURE 25.33**), and then perturbations (**FIGURE 25.34**). Proprioceptive exercises are especially important for full functional return and injury prevention. Using a balance board, the patient balances on the involved limb, while playing "catch" with the clinician. (See Chapter 24.) The intensity of this exercise can be varied by using balls of different sizes and weights. The clinician may also make the exercises more challenging by throwing the ball to a variety of locations. This requires a shift in the center of gravity and an instantaneous adjustment of balance from the patient. One of the all-too-common consequences of an ankle injury is an alteration of the motor conduction velocity of the fibular (peroneal) nerve and the protective function of the fibularis muscles on the ankle joint.[15] A decrease in fibularis reaction

time has been demonstrated to continue for up to 12 weeks after injury despite a nearly full return of strength (96 percent) in comparison with the contralateral side.[16,17] It has also been demonstrated in normal subjects that there is an increase in the latency response of the fibularis muscles with an increase in plantar flexion, indicating a loss of protective reflexes when in this position.[17] The patient must train and be rehabilitated in all potential positions of injury. Examples of exercises to perform to enhance proprioception include side (lateral) step-ups

FIGURE 25.25 Heel cord stretching box.

FIGURE 25.26 Seated marching on a Swiss ball.

FIGURE 25.27 Seated marching on a Swiss ball, on a pillow.

FIGURE 25.28 Bilateral heel raises.

FIGURE 25.29 Unilateral heel raises.

FIGURE 25.31 Unilateral stance on floor.

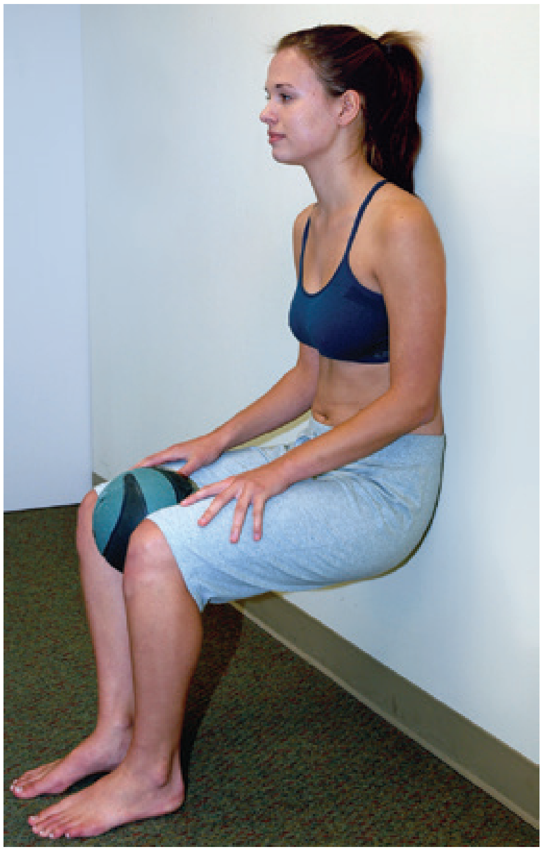


FIGURE 25.30 Wall slide.

FIGURE 25.32 Unilateral stance on soft surface.

FIGURE 25.33 Unilateral stance on BOSU.

FIGURE 25.34 Unilateral stance with perturbations.

(**FIGURE 25.35**), front step-ups (**FIGURE 25.36**), lunges onto or over a soft surface (see Chapter 23), backward step-ups (see Chapter 24), and cross-over walking (**FIGURE 25.37**).

FIGURE 25.35 Side step-up.

FIGURE 25.36 Front step-up.

FIGURE 25.37 Cross-over walking.

- *Improve or regain lower extremity strength and endurance through integration of local and kinetic chain exercises.* Exercises during this phase include weight-bearing activities of increasing difficulty.
- *Return to previous level of function or recreation.* Multidirectional balance activities should progress from the non–weight-bearing, open-chain exercises until the ROM is full and painless, at which time closed-chain exercises are introduced with a progression to full weight bearing. The greater the severity of the injury, the more critical the need for multidirectional balance board activities and weight-bearing rehabilitation activities. The progression begins with a phase of walking or jogging on flat surfaces and ascending and descending stairs forward and backward, with a progression to turning, changing directions, and lateral movements while running, and eccentric loading with stair running.[15] Activities to help achieve these goals include heel-to-toe anterior–posterior walking (10 meters for 20 reps), and mini-trampoline balancing exercises (unilateral stance with eyes open and then closed, and catching and passing activities with a medicine ball. (See Chapter 14.) For some patients, the goal may be to return to sport. Progression to this level occurs when the following has been achieved:[18]
    - Full pain-free active and passive ROM
    - No complaints of pain or tenderness
    - A return of 75 to 80 percent strength of the plantar flexors, dorsiflexors, invertors, and evertors compared to the uninvolved side
    - Adequate unilateral stance balance (30 seconds with eyes closed)

Before being allowed to return to a strenuous occupation or sport, the patient should be put through a functional test that simulates all requirements of his or her occupation or sport. The PT should analyze the patient's quality of movement and whether they are favoring the injured extremity in any way.[15] Activities during this phase involve cutting drills, shuttle runs, carioca cross-over drills, and sports-specific activities such as lay-ups and dribbling. Plyometric activities are introduced during this activity phase. These can include two-foot ankle hopping, single ankle hops, and then multidirection single ankle hops. If appropriate, barrier jumps or hops may be introduced.

☑ KEY POINT

A study by Rozzi and colleagues[19] demonstrated that a 4-week course of single-leg balance training showed an improvement in balance ability in both the trained and the untrained limbs.

Common Conditions

Due to the significant forces placed on this region and its importance in the lower kinematic chain there are some biomechanical conditions that warrant mention. Also, other conditions due to trauma or disease are included.

Deformities of the Arch

The Pronated Foot

Pronation of the foot and ankle during the stance phase of gait is essentially a temporary collapse of the ankle, rearfoot, and midfoot. Some pronation of the foot is necessary during functional activities; however, excessive pronation has been linked to lower limb overuse injuries, as maintenance of the equilibrium becomes the function of the muscles, specifically the fibularis (peroneus) brevis and the posterior tibialis. Excessive pronation can occur as the result of some different factors including congenital, developmental, equinus at the ankle, subtalar varus, and rearfoot varus. These deformities produce a rotation of the lower limb, which can have the following consequences:

- *Excessive external rotation of the lower limb.* This may shift the center of gravity in weight bearing to the medial aspect of the foot. Ideally, the center of gravity while weight bearing should pass through the center of the foot. This increase in medial stress causes the talus to plantar flex and adduct, while the calcaneus tilts laterally (into valgus).
- *Excessive internal rotation of the lower limb.* This produces excessive weight bearing on the lateral aspect of the foot. In an attempt to shift the center of gravity more medially, the forefoot abducts on the rearfoot or the foot abducts on the leg. These compensations produce excessive pronation of the subtalar joint.

Intervention The intervention for an abnormally and symptomatic pronated foot depends on the type, but typically involves the following:

- Alleviation of the abnormal tissue stress
- Stretching of the gastrocnemius–soleus complex
- Activity and shoe modification: Shoes that have rearfoot control, a high lacing pattern, and a straighter last may be enough to control excessive motion, particularly if it is not severe; a straighter last is more desirable for a person with excessive pronation
- Taping or arch strapping to limit excessive pronation
- Orthotics

The Flatfoot

A patient with little or no longitudinal arch with full weight bearing is said to have a flatfoot or pes planus. Flatfeet and a minimal longitudinal arch are standard in infants and common in children up to the age of 6 years.[20] A flatfoot is said to be flexible if the arch can be re-created with the patient standing up on their toes. Flexible pes planus has been reported to occur in 15 percent of the general population, with the majority being asymptomatic.[20]

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> A rigid flatfoot, a relatively rare condition, positions the calcaneus in a valgus position and the midtarsal region in pronation, resulting in a displaced navicular (posteriorly [dorsally]) and a talus that faces medially and inferiorly.

Adult-acquired flatfoot deformity (AAFD) involves some physiological or structural change that causes deformity in a foot that was structurally normal at one time. A mismatch between active (posterior tibialis tendon) and passive arch stabilizers (the spring-ligament complex and the talocalcaneal interosseous ligament) is the most likely cause.

Intervention Management of the painful posterior tibialis tendon (PTT)–deficient foot continues to be controversial. Treatment options range from conservative management with the use of medication and orthotics to various surgical procedures. If the patient is evaluated in an acute state, a short period of immobilization is recommended with or without a trial of NSAIDs prescribed by the physician. Often, the casting trial must be for as long as 1 month before a significant clinical effect is noted. Once the acute symptoms have diminished, the patient can begin a course of stretching and strengthening of the PTT. Also, a custom-fabricated orthotic may be indicated.

The Stiff Foot

Normal supination is designed to allow the foot to function as a rigid lever during push-off, torque conversion, and a lengthening mechanism of the leg.[10] An abnormally supinated foot is described as pes cavus. Pes cavus is characterized by a high arch, increased external rotation of the tibia, increased forefoot varus, and an inability to pronate during the stance phase. Without the normal amount of pronation needed to allow the dissipation of stresses, the foot loses its ability to absorb shock. This produces increased pressure on the heel and on the metatarsal heads.

Intervention The intervention for a symptomatic cavus foot is supportive and involves having the patient wear a soft shoe with adequate padding to provide more midsole cushion for the plantar aspect of the foot. Total-contact foot orthoses increase the weight-bearing surface of the foot and are recommended with this foot type.

Sprains

A sprain of a ligament is defined as an injury that stretches the fibers of the ligament. Greater than 40 percent of ankle sprains can potentially progress to chronic problems.[21]

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> Dynamic stability is provided to the lateral ankle by the strength of the fibularis (peroneus) longus and brevis tendons.

The most common mechanism of an ankle sprain is one of inversion and plantar flexion with subsequent damage to the lateral ligaments. With eversion and external rotation, the deltoid and/or ligaments of the distal tibiofibular joint can be injured, producing the so-called medial and central sprains, respectively.

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> Eversion injuries to the medial (deltoid) ligament of the ankles account for only 5 percent of ankle sprains.[21]

The prognosis for ankle sprains is inversely proportional to the severity and grade of the injury (**TABLE 25.8**), the age of the patient, and the recurrence rate.[21]

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> The prognosis for ankle injuries is worse when the ankle has been sprained previously.[21] The prognosis is also diminished when sprains occur in younger patients,[21] presumably relating to a greater mechanistic energy of injury.

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> Three factors are thought to cause functional instability of the ankle joint:[21]
>
> - Anatomic or mechanical instability
> - Muscle weakness
> - Deficits in joint proprioception

Lateral Ankle (Inversion) Sprain

The ATFL, which is the least elastic of the lateral ligaments, is involved in 60 to 70 percent of all ankle sprains, while 20 percent involve both the ATFL and the CFL.[21] The sequence of ligament tears in an inversion injury is first the ATFL, then the anterolateral capsule (which is near the ATFL and results in hemarthrosis when torn), and then the distal tibiofibular ligament. Progressive inversion strain results in a CFL tear. As the inversion force continues, the PTFL, the strongest of the lateral ligaments, ruptures.[21] The high ankle sprain, or syndesmotic sprain, which involves disruption of the ligamentous structures between the distal fibula and tibia, just proximal to the ankle joint,

TABLE 25.8 The West Point Ankle Sprain Grading System

Criterion	Grade I	Grade II	Grade III
Location of tenderness	ATFL	ATFL and CFL	ATFL, CFL, and PTFL
Edema and ecchymosis	Slight and local	Moderate and local	Significant and diffuse
Weight-bearing ability	Full or partial	Difficult without crutches	Impossible without significant pain
Ligament damage	Stretched	Partial tear	Complete tear
Instability	None	None or slight	Definite

ATFL, anterior talofibular ligament; CFL, calcaneofibular ligament; PTFL, posterior talofibular ligament.
Data from Gerber JP, Williams GN, Scoville CR, et al: Persistent disability associated with ankle sprains: A prospective examination of an athletic population. *Foot Ankle Int* 19:653–60, 1998.

occurs less frequently than the lateral ankle sprain. Lateral ligament sprains are more common than medial ligament sprains for two major reasons:

- The lateral malleolus projects more distally than the medial malleolus, producing less bony obstruction to inversion than eversion.
- The medial (deltoid) ligament of the ankle is much stronger than the lateral ligaments.

A number of risk factors have been associated with lateral ankle sprains. These include the following:[22]

- *Body mass index (BMI)*. One study found that there was a significant correlation between a high BMI and lateral ankle sprain.[23]
- *Range of motion*. One study found a significant correlation between deficient ankle dorsiflexion ROM and lateral ankle sprain.[24]
- *Muscle strength*. Decreased slow eccentric ankle inversion strength and increased fast concentric plantar flexion strength has been found to be significantly correlated with lateral ankle sprains.
- *Postural stability*. Only one study to date has shown a significant correlation between poor static postural control and lateral ankle sprains.[24]
- *Proprioception*. There appears to be a statistically significant difference in the passive inversion joint position sense between the injury and non-injury groups.

No single symptom or test can provide an entirely accurate diagnosis of a lateral ankle ligament rupture. One study[25] demonstrated that a combination of tenderness at the level of the ATFL, a lateral hematoma, discoloration, and a positive drawer test (refer to Table 25.7) indicated a ligament rupture in 95 percent of cases, whereas the absence of these findings always indicated an intact ligament.

Lateral ankle sprains can be categorized as follows using the West Point Ankle Sprain Grading (WPASG) system:

- *Grade I sprains*. Characterized by minimal to no swelling and localized tenderness over the ATFL. These sprains require about 2 weeks before the full resumption of athletic activities.
- *Grade II sprains*. Characterized by localized swelling and more diffuse lateral tenderness. These sprains require approximately 2 to 6 weeks for return to full athletic function.
- *Grade III sprains*. Characterized by significant swelling, pain, and ecchymosis and should be referred to a specialist. Grade III injuries may require greater than 6 weeks to return to full function. For acute grade III ankle sprains, the average duration of disability has been reported to be anywhere from 4.5 to 26 weeks, and only 25 to 60 percent of patients are symptom-free 1 to 4 years after injury.[21] Some controversy exists regarding the appropriate treatment of grade III injuries, predominantly in high-level athletes. In a summary of all prospective and controlled studies on grade III sprains, it was concluded that the long-term prognosis is good to excellent in 80 to 90 percent of patients with this injury, regardless of the type of intervention chosen.[21]

Intervention Conservative intervention has been found to be uniformly effective in treating grades I and II ankle sprains and high ankle sprains (**TABLE 25.9**), and generally patients are completely asymptomatic and functionally stable at follow-up. Although conservative treatment may be appropriate, the time required to return to full function in any conservative program will increase as the severity of injury increases. Although early motion and mobility rather than immobilization have demonstrated the stimulation of collagen bundle orientation and the promotion of healing, it must be remembered that full ligamentous strength is not gained for a period of months. The injured ankle should be positioned and supported in the maximum amount of dorsiflexion allowed by pain and effusion, as appropriate. Maximal dorsiflexion places the joint in its close-packed position or position of greatest congruency. This allows for the least capsular distention and resultant joint effusion. With ankle sprains, this position produces an approximation of the torn ligament ends in grade III injuries to reduce the amount of gap scarring, and it reduces the tension in the grades I and II injured ligaments.

Braces can play a major role in both the initial intervention and prevention of ankle sprains. Acutely, their role is to compress, protect, and support the ankle. They also function to limit ROM of the injured ankle, most importantly plantar flexion, which is a precarious position for the sprained ankle. Mild to moderate ankle sprains (grades I and II sprains) can be readily supported by the use of an elastic bandage, open Gibney strapping (with or without felt-pad incorporation), taping, or the use of some type of thermoplastic stirrup such as an Air Cast. One of the main advantages of these types of immobilization is that pain-free protected plantar and dorsiflexion are allowed whereas inversion and eversion are minimized. Protected weight bearing with an orthosis is permitted, with weight bearing

TABLE 25.9 Summary of Conservative Treatment for Ankle Sprains

Phase	Intervention
Acute	Control pain and swelling: POLICE (protection, optimal loading, ice, compression, elevation), appropriate cryo modalities, electrical stimulation, AROM Cast, splint, or brace as appropriate
Subacute	Progress to this phase when the patient can ambulate using partial weight bearing with crutches without pain Balance training in sitting (caution with plantar flexion/inversion) Gradual painfree strengthening exercises for hip and lower leg
Chronic	Progress to this phase when the patient can ambulate with full weight bearing without pain Unilateral balance training in standing Strengthening with double-heel raises then single-heel raises Treadmill walking or over level ground walking (slow progressing to faster)
Return to Sport	Jog-run progression Shuttle runs and cutting maneuvers Sport-specific training

The timeline for progression of an individual patient depends on the severity of the injury, the ability of the patient, and the criteria listed in the table for progression to each phase.
Data from Lin CF, Gross ML, Weinhold P: Ankle syndesmosis injuries: Anatomy, biomechanics, mechanism of injury, and clinical guidelines for diagnosis and intervention. *J Orthop Sports Phys Ther* 36:372–84, 2006.

to tolerance as soon as possible following injury. Patients who suffer a grade III ligament injury may require more protection and support than can be afforded by a thermoplastic device. In cases such as this, consideration should be given to recommending a functional walking orthosis, either with a fixed ankle or a hinged ankle (which can be motion restricted) that allows only plantar flexion and dorsiflexion. The advantage of the orthosis is that it is removable, so it allows the patient to continue to apply ice to minimize inflammation.

☑ KEY POINT

In the presence of instability, the ankle joint is best supported by a commercial brace, with or without taping, depending on the stress of the sport.

Historically, ankle taping was the athletic trainer's method of choice to attempt to prevent ankle sprains. Ankle taping is effective in restricting the motion of the ankle and has also been proven to decrease the incidence of ankle sprains. However, although taping initially restricts motion, the tape loses 50 percent of its net support after as little as 10 minutes of exercise.[26–30] Because of this decline in support and the cost of tape, removable and reusable ankle braces were designed as an alternative to taping. The use of tape for increased proprioception remains controversial. It is hypothesized that the tape can either provide additional cutaneous cues or provide a general facilitation at spinal or higher levels, thereby enhancing the perception of movement signals from other proprioceptive sources, although this has yet to be proved.[27] The more common instabilities treated with taping include splaying of the mortise, inversion instability of the ankle, plantar instability of the talonavicular joint, and inversion or eversion instability of the talocalcaneal joint.

- For a splayed mortise, the tape is wrapped circumferentially around the lateral and medial malleolus.
- Talocalcaneal instabilities are taped around the neck of the talus and the heel.

The decision as to whether to utilize some type of protective taping or bracing upon the return to activity to prevent reinjury is based upon the individual and his or her case. No type of taping or bracing will prevent all injuries.

> ☑ **KEY POINT**
>
> - Often a player may argue that their performance will be adversely affected by the use of taping or bracing, but a review of the literature demonstrates that for normal athletic movement and function there does not appear to be an adverse impact on function or performance.[26,27,29] Indeed, one study involving soccer players demonstrated a fivefold decrease in the incidence of recurrent ankle sprains when using semirigid orthoses, without significantly affecting sports performance.[31] However, it was not clear what impact there was on the incidence of other injuries at nearby joints.
> - The type of sneaker worn during basketball, high top versus low top, has been studied and shown to have no relationship to the incidence of injury.[32] However, it does appear that increased shoe height can enhance the passive resistance to inversion when the foot is in plantar flexion, and it can also increase the passive resistance afforded by tape and orthoses.[33]

As the healing progresses and the patient is able to bear more weight on his or her ankle, there is a corresponding increase in the use of weight-bearing (closed-chain) exercises. A useful activity during this phase is the "cross drill." The patient stands independently or with minimal external assistance on the involved limb only. The patient then moves the uninvolved limb into hip flexion, hip extension, hip abduction, and hip adduction. The exercise is performed initially on a firm surface with the eyes open. As the patient improves, the exercise is performed on a foam surface or balance board, first with the eyes open and then with the eyes closed.

External support may still be required during the subacute stages of the rehabilitation process (4 to 14 days).

Medial Ankle (Eversion) Sprain

The ligaments of the medial ankle, collectively known as the deltoid ligament complex, form a broad, strong, thick ligamentous structure to prevent eversion and provide medial ankle stability. A medial ligament sprain is rare but can occur, and it is often associated with a fracture.

Intervention Medial ligament sprains without an associated fracture are treated in the same way as lateral ligament sprains, although recovery can take twice as long.

Recurrent Ankle Sprains

The patient who suffers from recurrent sprains and functional instability poses a problem to the clinician and other members of the sports medicine team. Functional instability and loss of healthy ankle kinematics as a complication of ankle sprains may lead to early degenerative changes by creating asymmetric load bearing of the articular surface. Thus, degenerative change may be due to small amounts of articular displacement or the abnormal shearing forces of instability.

Intervention The intervention for all recurrent ankle sprains should begin with a trial of conservative management for 2 to 3 months. Any or all of the following have been shown to help in some patients: a lateral heel wedge, fibularis (peroneal) muscle strengthening, proprioceptive/coordination exercises, taping, elastic or thermoplastic ankle supports, and/or a short-leg brace. Many patients with ankle instability can be treated satisfactorily with late repair or reconstruction of the lateral ligaments. However, in spite of surgery, some patients will be left with persistent disability including subjective or objective instability, persistent talar tilt, stretching of the ligaments, pain, stiffness, or ROM limitations.

> ☑ **KEY POINT**
>
> Chronic lateral ankle instability is manifested by recurrent injuries with pain, tenderness, and sometimes bruising over the lateral ligaments.

Hallux Valgus

Consisting of a distal and proximal phalanx, the hallux articulates with the first metatarsal to form the first MTP joint. The joint is reinforced with collateral ligaments, the plantar plate, the plantar fascia, and two sesamoid bones.[34] The sesamoids distribute weight and provide leverage essential for increasing the torque production of the attached intrinsics.[35] *Hallux valgus* is the term used to describe a lateral or valgus deformity of the great toe (medial deviation of the first metatarsal and lateral deviation and/or rotation of the hallux). The condition is typically accompanied by an overgrowth of bone (exostosis) and tissue that develops on the dorsomedial eminence of the first metatarsal head (bunion formation). The swollen area may be painful, aggravating the condition, and, because it is often combined with a progressive malalignment of first MTP joint, the terms bunion and hallux valgus are frequently used interchangeably. The term hallux valgus has been expanded to include varying degrees of metatarsus primus varus/valgus deviation of the proximal phalanx and medial deviation of the first metatarsal head.

Although the exact etiology of hallux valgus is not understood, it has been observed to occur almost exclusively in populations that wear shoes, although some predisposing anatomic factors make some feet more vulnerable than others to the effects of extrinsic factors. Women have been observed to have hallux valgus at a rate of 9:1 compared with men.[36]

Intervention

The intervention for hallux valgus should be conservative if possible. The intervention with any associated bunion includes wider shoes and orthotics. The supervising PT may prescribe Achilles stretching in cases of Achilles contracture, a simple toe spacer between the first and second toes, or a silicone bunion pad placed over the bunion to alleviate direct pressure on the prominence. In cases of pes planus associated with hallux valgus, the PT may ask for a medial longitudinal arch support with Morton's extension to be placed under the first MTP joint to alleviate symptoms. Functional orthotic therapy may be implemented to control foot biomechanics. This approach can relieve symptomatic bunions, though the foot and first MTP joint must maintain some degree of flexibility. An exercise regime, consisting of three exercises has recently been proposed.[5,37,38] The exercises are learned in sitting, then while standing on both feet before transitioning onto one foot. All repetitions are held with maximal effort for 5 seconds. The exercises are as follows:[5,37,38]

- *Exercise 1*: The short-foot exercise is performed by shortening the foot while keeping the heel and forefoot on the ground and without curling the toes into the floor (**FIGURE 25.38**). This is accomplished by forcibly pushing the base of the toes, especially the great toe, into the ground, while simultaneously pulling the forefoot back toward the heel. When performed correctly, the toes are held suspended above the ground while the activation of muscles elevates the arch.[37,38]
- *Exercise 2*: The toe-spread-out exercise is performed by lifting and spreading the toes while keeping the forefoot and heel on the floor (**FIGURE 25.39**). Once the toes are spread apart, the patient pushes the little toe downward and outward into the floor and then pushes the great toe down toward the inside of the foot.
- *Exercise 3*: The heel-raise exercise is performed by holding that the knees steady in slight flexion before stiffening and elevating the arch while also holding the hindfoot turned inward (inversion) (**FIGURE 25.40**). Then the patient raises the heel off the floor while concentrating pressure inside the ball of the foot.

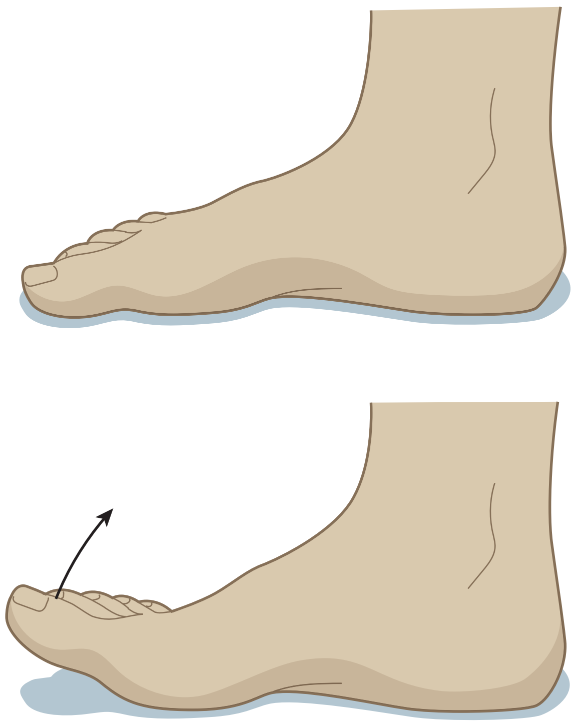


FIGURE 25.38 Exercise 1: The short-foot exercise.

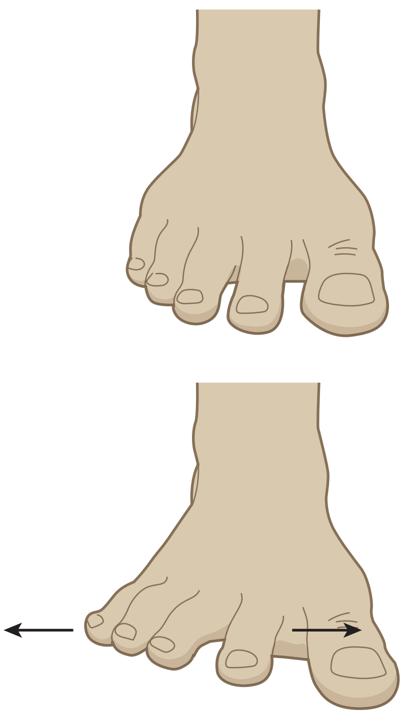


FIGURE 25.39 Exercise 2: The toe-spread-out exercise.

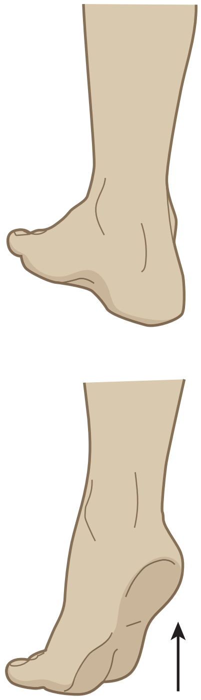


FIGURE 25.40 Exercise 3: The heel-raise exercise.

If conservative methods are unsuccessful and pain persists, structural realignment of the first metatarsal varus through surgery is usually necessary as the bunion deformity becomes more severe and decompensated. The goals of surgical treatment are to relieve symptoms, restore function, and correct the deformity. The specific procedures vary depending on the surgeon's preference, the nature of the deformity, and the particular needs of the patient. The type of procedure performed and its inherent stability determines postoperative management. The dressings applied at the time of the surgery are designed to apply corrective forces (e.g., derotation, plantar flexion, adduction) while the soft tissue remodels, with mild compression to control postoperative edema. The patient's weight-bearing status is based on the procedure performed, but generally is limited during the first 2 weeks to prevent deviation or displacement and to minimize edema. The patient may begin ROM exercises on a daily basis after the sutures are removed, and weight bearing is advocated to prevent limitation of joint motion from excessive scarring.

Turf Toe

The term *turf toe* refers to a sprain of the first MTP joint. Turf toe primarily affects football, baseball, and soccer players. Soccer players tend to develop the problem in the nonkicking foot due to the forced dorsiflexion during kicking. The MTP sprain can result in hypermobility of the first ray, which in turn can lead to biomechanical problems including lesser metatarsalgia, acquired flatfoot, posterior tibialis tendinopathy, plantar fasciitis, and shin splints.

Clinically, patients with turf toe present with a red, swollen, stiff first MTP joint. Clanton and Ford[39] have classified the severity of turf toe injuries from grades I to III:

- *Grade I sprain*. A minor stretch injury to the soft tissue restraints with little pain, swelling, or disability.
- *Grade II sprain*. A partial tear of the capsuloligamentous structures with moderate pain, swelling, ecchymosis, and disability.
- *Grade III sprain*. A complete tear of the plantar plate with severe swelling, pain, ecchymosis, and inability to bear weight normally. Radiographs of the foot should be obtained to rule out fracture of the sesamoids or metatarsal head articular surface and to check joint congruity.

Intervention

The initial intervention for turf toe is rest, ice, a compressive dressing, and elevation. An NSAID may be prescribed by the physician. The toe should be taped to limit dorsiflexion, with multiple loops of tape placed over the posterior (dorsal) aspect of the hallucal proximal phalanx and criss-crossed under the ball of the foot plantarly, or a forefoot steel plate can be used. PROM and progressive resistance exercises are begun as soon as symptoms allow. Patients with grade I sprains are usually allowed to return to regular activities as soon as symptoms allow, sometimes immediately. Patients with grade II sprains usually require 3 to 14 days' rest. Grade III sprains usually require crutches for a few days and up to 6 weeks' rest.

Lesser Toe Deformities

Three common lesser toe deformities (**TABLE 25.10**) worth noting are claw toe, hammer toe, and mallet toe.

Claw Toe

The term *claw toe* (**FIGURE 25.41**) is most likely derived from the affected toe's similarity in appearance to the claw of an animal: dorsiflexion of the proximal phalanx on the lesser MTP joint and concurrent flexion of the proximal interphalangeal (PIP) and distal interphalangeal (DIP) joints. Claw toe deformity results from altered anatomy and/or neurological deficit, resulting in an imbalance between the intrinsic and extrinsic musculature to the toes.

Intervention Conservative intervention for flexible deformities includes avoiding wearing high-heeled and/or narrow-toed shoes, which increase dorsal

TABLE 25.10 Lesser Toe Deformities

Deformity	MTP Joint	PIP Joint	DIP Joint
Claw toe	Dorsiflexed	Plantar flexed	Plantar flexed
Hammer toe	Dorsiflexed or neutral	Plantar flexed	Neutral, hyperextended, or plantar flexed
Mallet toe	Neutral	Neutral	Plantar flexed

ground reactive forces on the toe and crowd the toes against each other, producing impingement. Shoes with a wide toe box, soft upper shoe, and stiff sole to absorb dorsally directed forces against the plantar plate are appropriate. A metatarsal bar can be added to the shoe to avoid metatarsal pressure, but patients prefer metatarsal pads. Cushioning sleeves or stocking caps with silicon linings can relieve pressure points at the PIP joint and tip of the toe. A longitudinal pad beneath the toes can prevent point pressure at the tip of the toes. Because the MTP joint is always dorsiflexed by definition, surgical correction of its position is necessary to restore a more neutral angle at the MTP joint. Forefoot surgery is typically performed at an outpatient setting. A fresh dressing is applied the next day, and the sutures are removed after 2 weeks. Arthrodesis pins are removed after 4 weeks, and the other types of pins are removed after 2 weeks. Patients may shower with pins protruding from the toes.

Hammer Toe

This is the most common deformity of the lesser toes (refer to Figure 25.41). It primarily comprises flexion deformity of the PIP joint of the toe, with hyperextension of the MTP and DIP joints. The hyperextension of the MTP joint and flexion of the PIP joint make the PIP joint prominent dorsally. This prominence rubs against the patient's shoe, causing pain. The deformity is flexible and passively correctable early in its natural history, but typically becomes fixed with time.

☑ KEY POINT

All lesser-toe procedures result in stiffness of the MTP and IP joints. Because some stiffness is intentional to maintain lasting correction of the deformity, exercises to improve ROM should be used judiciously. Some stretching may be necessary to improve mobility, but general mobilization through everyday use, as tolerated, is usually sufficient.

Intervention Although no reliably effective physical therapy program for hammer toe deformity has been described, it may be of use for the patient with a flexible deformity to perform passive stretching exercises.

A

B

FIGURE 25.41 **A.** Hammer toe. **B.** Claw toe.

(a) © Medical-on-Line/Alamy; (b) © Princess Margaret Rose Orthopaedic Hospital/Photo Researchers, Inc.

The indication for surgical treatment of hammer toe deformity is disabling pain that does not improve with conservative treatment, including taping (for flexible deformity) and the use of accommodative footwear featuring a toe box of adequate depth (for fixed deformity). Pin fixation is necessary for 4 to 6 weeks after surgery. A compression dressing is applied. Plaster immobilization is rarely, if ever, necessary. A hard-soled postoperative shoe is provided. Elevation of the foot with the toes above the heart is essential to minimize swelling, which can cause pain and delay wound healing. Weight bearing as tolerated in a hard-soled shoe occurs once the pin does not cross the MTP joint. Once the pin is removed (typically 4 to 6 weeks postsurgery), footwear may be advanced as tolerated. The patient should be advised that mild to moderate swelling may persist for many months after surgery, and this limits footwear options until it has resolved. Patients should also be advised to continue wearing shoes of adequate length and depth, with a rounded or squared toe area to minimize the risk of recurrence.

Mallet Toe

Mallet toe is a fixed or flexible flexion deformity of the DIP joint of the toe.

Intervention Conservative treatment focuses on relieving the pressure under the tip of the toe. This can be accomplished with extra-depth toe box footwear. Surgical therapy includes flexor tenotomy; condylectomy and fusion of the middle to distal phalanx; and, occasionally, partial or complete amputation of the distal phalanx. Sutures are removed after 10 to 14 days. Pins are usually removed at 4 weeks.

Tendon Injuries

Overuse tendinopathy in the tendons spanning the ankle can be seen with training errors, sudden changes in training patterns, muscle–tendon imbalance, anatomic malalignment, improper footwear, or a sudden growth spurt. Tendinopathy can also be seen in the adolescent who resumes play after a period of decreased training.

Fibularis (Peroneal) Tendon Tendinopathy

Fibularis (peroneal) tendinopathy is particularly common in young dancers and ice skaters but can be seen in any running athlete. After repeated inversion strain, the sheaths of the fibularis (peroneus) longus and brevis tendons may be stretched and become inflamed (runner's foot). Instability between the fourth and fifth metatarsals is also associated with this disorder.

Intervention The intervention for fibularis tendinopathy includes a program of stretching, strengthening, icing, and sometimes ankle bracing during contact sports.

Fibular (Peroneal) Tendon Subluxation

Subluxation of the fibularis tendons is an uncommon but potentially disabling condition that can affect young athletes and it is often difficult to distinguish from lateral ankle sprain acutely. Acute symptoms include pain at the posterior distal fibula, swelling, ecchymosis, and apprehension, or inability to evert the foot against resistance. Chronic symptoms are lateral ankle pain, popping or snapping, and instability. A chronic fibularis tendon subluxation can both mimic and coexist with chronic ankle instability.

In some young patients, there may be an anatomic predisposition to fibularis tendon subluxation. These include an absent or shallow fibularis groove, possibly combined with pes planus, hindfoot valgus, or lax/absent fibular retinaculum. The retinaculum can also traumatically rupture from a violent forced dorsiflexion of the ankle with reflex contraction of the fibularis muscles and dislocation.

Intervention Many different surgical procedures have been described for chronic fibularis tendon subluxation, including acute repair of the superior fibular retinaculum, tissue transfer (using the Achilles tendon, as well as the plantaris and fibularis brevis tendons) to reinforce the superior fibular retinaculum, tendon rerouting (beneath the calcaneofibular ligament), and groove-deepening procedures.

Tibialis Posterior Tendinopathy

The tibialis posterior tendon lies just posterior to the medial malleolus and supports the medial arch of the foot. The tendon is lined with a tenosynovial sheath that can become inflamed, producing a tenosynovitis. If left untreated, the condition can progress to an eventual rupture.

The pain is usually felt in one of three locations:

- Distal to the medial malleoli in the area of the navicular
- Proximal to the medial malleoli
- At the musculotendinous origin (medial shin splints), which often refers symptoms to the anterior shin or at the insertion

Posterior tibialis tendinopathy is seen relatively frequently in dancers, joggers, and ice skaters, especially in those participants with a pronated foot and flattened longitudinal arch. Running sports that require rapid changes in direction (e.g., basketball, tennis, soccer, and ice hockey) place increased stress across the tendon as well. Contributing factors include adaptive shortening of the gastrocnemius–soleus complex and weakness of the posterior tibialis.

Intervention The intervention for posterior tibialis dysfunction depends on the cause, but the overall approach includes tibialis posterior stretching and strengthening, orthotics, occasional casting, and icing.

Tibialis Anterior Tendinopathy

Patients with tibialis anterior tendinopathy usually experience pain at the front of the shin (anterior shin splints) during activities placing large amounts of stress on the tibialis anterior tendon (or after these activities with rest, especially upon waking in the morning). These activities may include walking or running excessively (especially up or down hills or on hard or uneven surfaces), kicking an object with toes pointed (e.g., a football), wearing excessively tight shoes, or kneeling. The pain associated with this condition tends to be of gradual onset that progressively worsens over weeks or months with continuation of aggravating activities. Patients with this condition may also experience pain on firmly touching the tibialis anterior tendon.

Intervention

Conservative intervention includes tibialis anterior stretching, strengthening, orthotics, and occasional casting and icing.

Flexor Hallucis Longus Tendinopathy

The flexor hallucis longus (FHL) is lined by a tenosynovial sheath, which can become inflamed. FHL tendinopathy is characterized by pain posterior to the medial malleolus, which is most often confused with posterior tibialis tendinopathy. Dancers who assume the repeated plantar flexion posture of demipointe or pointe are particularly susceptible to FHL tendinopathy, with the tendon actually locking in demipointe in the latter group. It can also be seen in runners and gymnasts. Clinical findings with FHL tendinopathy usually include tenderness on the medial aspect of the ankle along a course that travels from just posterior to the medial malleolus to just under the medial malleolus. Passive motion of the great toe and ankle may induce symptoms when palpating along the FHL.

Intervention Conservative intervention includes icing, stretching, strengthening, decreased activity, correcting improper techniques, orthotics, a hard-soled shoe, and NSAIDs. Operative intervention typically involves releasing the tendon sheath.

Achilles Tendinopathy

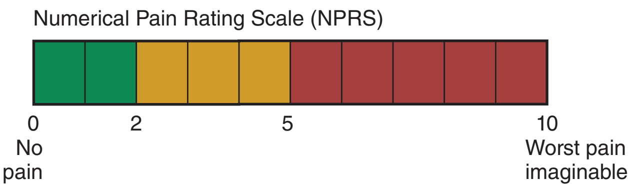
Despite being the largest tendon in the body, the Achilles tendon is one of the most commonly injured tendons, especially in athletes involved in running and jumping sports/activities.[40] In fact, Achilles tendinopathy is the most common overuse syndrome of the lower leg. The underlying mechanism of Achilles tendinopathy in runners is not well understood, but a number of mechanisms have been proposed:[41–43]

- *Stretching.* In a study by McCrory and colleagues,[44] whether a runner incorporated stretching of the gastrocnemius into his or her training routine appeared to be a significant discriminator between the injured and uninjured participants. Specifically, injured runners were less likely to incorporate stretching into their regular training routines. Whether stretching habits can be related to the incidence of overuse injuries remains undetermined.
- *Training variables.* The incidence of overuse injuries has been strongly associated with a faster training pace, with injured runners running at a significantly faster training pace than uninjured runners. Hill training has also been suggested as an etiological factor in the onset of Achilles tendinopathy.
- *Fatigue.* Overtraining has been found to correlate to calf muscle fatigue and microtears of the tendon.
- *Repetitive overloading.* This has been found to be a contributing factor.
- *Isokinetic variables.* Muscular insufficiency has been cited as a significant factor in the inability to eccentrically restrain dorsiflexion during the beginning of the support phase of running.
- *Anthropometric variables.* In one study, 20 percent of the injured runners with Achilles tendinopathy had cavus feet.[45] Clement and coworkers,[46] after having found cavus feet to be rigid, suggested that the compensatory over pronation resulting from the inflexibility of the cavus foot is a precursor to Achilles tendinopathy. Other studies also have related a high-arched foot to the incidence of various overuse syndromes.
- *Age.* The role that age plays in Achilles tendinopathy is inconclusive, with some studies finding a

correlation,[44,47] and others[48–52] finding no associations between age and the pathogenesis of running injuries.

- *Shoe type.* Spike shoes lock the feet on the surface during the single support phase in running and increase the athlete's foot grip but also transfer lateral and torque shear forces directly to the foot and ankle and through to the Achilles tendon. The soles of spike shoes have minimal shock absorption, transferring the vertical force directly to the Achilles tendon. This may increase the overloading of the tendon, causing microtrauma and inflammation of the Achilles tendon.
- *Biomechanical factors.* Risk factors for developing Achilles tendinopathy include calf muscle weakness and/or muscle imbalance and altered joint mobility of the foot and ankle complex.
- *Sacroiliac joint dysfunction.* Changes in sacroiliac joint mechanics as compared with the contralateral side have also been associated with Achilles tendinopathy.[53]

The diagnosis of Achilles tendinopathy is based on the patient's history and the findings of the physical examination. Clinical symptoms consist of a gradual onset of pain and swelling in the Achilles tendon, which is exacerbated by activity. During the early stages of the injury, the patient might be able to continue with regular activities and sports, but as the injury progresses the patient's ability to be physically active is progressively impaired.[54] There are two main types of Achilles tendinopathy: midportion or insertional, depending on the location of the pain. The pain of midportion Achilles tendinopathy is located 2 to 6 centimeters proximal to the insertion of the tendon on the calcaneus. The pain of insertional Achilles tendinopathy is located at the tendon insertion onto the calcaneus. The majority (55 to 65 percent) of Achilles tendinopathies are located in the midportion of the tendon.[43]



1. The pain is allowed to reach 5 on the NPRS during the activity.
2. The pain after completion of the activity is allowed to reach 5 on the NPRS.
3. The pain the morning after the activity should not exceed a 5 on the NPRS.
4. Pain and stiffness is not allowed to increase from week to week.

FIGURE 25.42 Pain monitoring model.

Adapted from: Silbernagel, K.G., et al., Continued sports activity, using a pain-monitoring model, during rehabilitation in patients with Achilles tendinopathy: a randomized controlled study. *Am J Sports Med*, 2007. 35(6): p. 897–906.

☑ KEY POINT

An inability to dorsiflex 20 degrees with knee extension signifies gastrocnemius tightness; an inability to dorsiflex 30 degrees with knee flexion implicates the soleus as well.

Intervention A literature review by Goodnite[55] that investigated the current evidence-based practice, in order to determine the best intervention for a patient with recurrent Achilles tendinopathy, based on the intervention's validity and strength, recommended the 12-week eccentric program as outlined by Alfredson et al.[56] In brief, the program consists of two types of eccentric exercises—eccentrically loading the calf muscles with the knee bent and eccentrically loading the calf with the knee straight. He recommends three sets of 15 repetitions using body weight to start, with the patient being instructed to continue unless the pain becomes disabling. The exercises are performed two times per day, every day, for 12 weeks. If only minor pain or discomfort is experienced, the patient is instructed to increase the load by using a backpack loaded with weight. Silbernagel and colleagues[57] recommend using a pain monitoring model during rehabilitation of patients with Achilles tendinopathy (**FIGURE 25.42**). In addition to exercise, many other interventions, such as foot orthoses, ultrasound, electrical stimulation, injection therapies (using platelet-rich plasma, autologous blood, corticosteroids, high-volume saline, sclerosing agents, protease inhibitors, and hyperosmolar dextrose), low-level laser therapy, anti-inflammatory medications, and surgery, are also often considered for the management of patients with Achilles tendinopathy.[40] Of these, one randomized controlled trial reported that shockwave therapy is effective in managing persistent midportion Achilles tendinopathy.[58]

Rupture of the Achilles Tendon

The etiology of a spontaneous rupture of the Achilles tendon remains incompletely understood. Three activities have been implicated in rupturing an Achilles tendon:

- Pushing off (plantar flexion) with weight bearing on the forefoot while extending the knee
- Sudden dorsiflexion with full weight bearing, as might occur with a slip or fall
- Violent dorsiflexion, such as takes place when jumping or falling from a height and landing on a plantar flexed foot

The classic history is a report of sudden pain in the calf area, often associated with an audible snap, followed by difficulty in stepping off on the foot. Physical examination reveals swelling of the calf as well as a palpable defect in the tendon (sometimes called a hatchet strike) and ecchymosis around the malleoli.

Intervention The intervention for Achilles tendon ruptures can be conservative or surgical.

- *Conservative.* The conservative intervention for Achilles tendon rupture is best for small partial ruptures, because this approach appears to result in a high incidence of rerupture and a decrease in maximal muscle function if used with complete ruptures. This approach consists of placing the patient in short- or long-leg cast immobilization in the gravity equinus position (10 to 20 degrees of plantar flexion) for approximately 8 weeks of non–weight bearing. At 6 to 8 weeks, plantar flexion of the cast is slowly decreased and, when progressive weight bearing is initiated, a heel lift of 2 to 2.5 centimeters is worn for approximately 1 month. The height of the heel lift is decreased at 10 to 12 weeks to 1 centimeter, and over the next month is progressively decreased so that the patient is walking without a heel lift by 3 months. Maximal plantar flexion power may not return for 12 months or more. The exercise progression is outlined in **TABLE 25.11**. Once the cast is removed, gentle active dorsiflexion and plantar flexion exercises are initiated immediately and proprioception exercises can begin with the patient in a seated position. As the motion increases, closed-chain resistive exercises can be initiated based on the surgeon's preference. Bilateral heel raises are introduced as strength improves, progressing to unilateral heel raises based on patient tolerance.
- *Surgical.* Surgical repair often is advocated for high-level and competitive athletes. Other indications for surgical intervention appear to be for better restoration of the continuity of the tendon, to facilitate healing, and to restore maximum muscle function. During the surgical procedure, the severed ends of the tendon are brought together and then sutured with the ankle positioned in a neutral position. A cast is applied. The length of time the cast remains on the patient varies according to the surgical technique. A study[59] that involved early active motion of the ankle and weight bearing, without casting, demonstrated remarkable functional recovery without serious complications. If casting is used, it incorporates varying degrees of plantar flexion (typically 10 to 20 degrees) to protect the repair site from stress. Long-term immobilization impairs the recovery of the injured tendon and delays remodeling of newly formed collagen fibrils, so long-term casting has become less popular. After the cast is removed, the patient can be fitted with a short walking cast for about 4 weeks with partial weight bearing. If early weight bearing is the aim, the patient is issued either a specially designed shoe that has a 3-centimeter heel lift or a removable ankle–foot orthosis with a rocking sole. The postoperative rehabilitation follows a similar rehabilitation program as that described for the conservative approach.

Plantar Heel Pain

Plantar heel pain, which is defined as pain arising from the insertion of the plantar fascia with or without heel spur, has been experienced at one time or another by 10 percent of the population.[60–62] Although often referred to as plantar fasciitis, Waugh[63] has recently proposed that accepted inflammatory conditions, such as epicondylitis, may be more accurately referred to as chronic pain syndromes. Therefore, individuals suffering from what has traditionally been referred to as plantar fasciitis may be more accurately described as suffering from plantar heel pain.[64]

The etiology of plantar heel pain is poorly understood, although a number of factors have been proposed. These include obesity, occupations involving prolonged standing or walking, acute injury to the heel,[65] loss of elasticity of the heel pad, biomechanics (pes cavus or pes planus), adaptive shortening of the calf muscles and Achilles tendon, and the type of shoewear. A 2009 study that investigated the relationship of shoewear choice with foot pain found that,

TABLE 25.11 Exercise Progression for Conservative or Surgical Treatment of an Achilles Tendon Rupture

6 Weeks	8–10 Weeks	4–6 Months
Stationary bicycling (no resistance) and swimming	Progressive resistance exercises for the calf muscles	Resumption of running (if strength is 70 percent of the uninvolved leg)

after controlling for weight and age, there was no association between shoewear and foot pain in men, but that women who wore shoes other than well fitting athletic shoes or sneakers the majority of the time were 67 percent more likely to develop rear foot pain.[66] Age also appears to play a role in the diagnosis of plantar heel pain increasing in the third to fifth decade of life, followed by a decline in the sixth and seventh decades, which is likely associated with a decreased physical activity level and sedentary lifestyle.[67]

The role of the heel spur in plantar heel pain is controversial. Half of the patients with plantar heel pain have heel spurs,[68] whereas 16 to 27 percent of the population have heel spurs without symptoms.[69,70]

Common findings include a history of pain and tenderness on the plantar medial aspect of the heel, especially during initial weight bearing in the morning. The heel pain often decreases during the day but worsens with increased activity (such as jogging, climbing stairs, or going up on the toes) or upon arising after a period of sitting. The main area of tenderness is typically just over and distal to the medial calcaneal tubercle, and usually, there is one small exquisitely painful area.

It is worth noting that almost 90 percent of patients with plantar heel pain who undergo a conservative intervention improve significantly within 12 months, although approximately 10 percent can develop persistent and often disabling symptoms.[71]

Intervention Based on studies, the intervention for plantar heel pain should include the following:

- Rest, or at least elimination of any activity that continually provides axial loading of the heel and tensile stresses on the fascia.
- Shoes that provide good shock absorption at the heel and support to the medial longitudinal arch and plantar fascia band. The clinician must identify any tissue overloading that is occurring, as well as any functional biomechanical deficits (plantar flexor inflexibility and weakness) and functional adaptations (running on toes, shortened stride length, and foot inversion).
- Strengthening exercises. Some strengthening exercises have been devised for plantar heel pain:
  - *Towel curls.* A towel is placed on a smooth surface with a small weight placed at one end. The foot is placed on the other end of the towel. The patient is instructed to pull the towel toward the body by curling up the toes (refer to Figure 25.24). The same exercise can be performed from the side direction (refer to Figure 25.23).
  - *Marble pick-ups.* A few marbles are placed on the floor near a cup. While keeping the heel on the floor, the patient uses the toes to pick up the marbles and drop them in the cup (**FIGURE 25.43**).
- A regimen of stretching of the gastrocnemius and the plantar fascia is especially important before arising in the morning and after sedentary periods during the day, as well as before and after exercise.
  - *Gastrocnemius and soleus.* Patients are taught how to stretch the gastrocnemius and soleus components of the triceps surae independently. The stretching must be performed in such a way as to minimize stress on the plantar fascia.
  - *Plantar fascia stretch.* The plantar fascia stretch is performed with the patient sitting with their legs crossed, with the involved leg over the contralateral leg. Then, while using the hand on the affected side, the patient places his or her fingers across the base of the toes on the bottom of the foot (distal to the MTP joints) and pulls the toes back toward the shin until a stretch is felt in the arch of the foot (**FIGURE 25.44**). The correct stretch is confirmed by palpating the tension in the plantar fascia with the contralateral hand while performing the stretching.

The stretches are performed twice per day, beginning with a sustained stretch for 1 minute and progressing to 3 minutes as tolerated. The rest period should entail gentle dorsiflexion and plantar flexion while resting the Achilles tendon and calf on a hot pack to enhance the subsequent stretch and utilize an active rest period.[65] Massage to the foot in the area of the arch and heel over a tennis ball or a 15-ounce can, or rolling a tennis ball or a bottle of frozen water back

FIGURE 25.43 Marble pick-ups.

FIGURE 25.44 Fascia stretch.

and forth across the floor from the calcaneus to the metatarsal heads also may be helpful.

Night splinting of the ankle in dorsiflexion has been postulated to prevent nocturnal contracture of the gastrocnemius–soleus complex, which is thought to be detrimental to plantar fascia healing. The splint holds the ankle fixed in 5 degrees of dorsiflexion and the toes slightly stretched into extension (i.e., at a functional length). For most patients, this orthosis reduces morning pain considerably. Powell et al.[72] performed a cross-over study using splinting with the ankle in dorsiflexion as the sole method of treatment in 47 patients. This study also showed improvement in 80 percent of involved feet.

Orthotics may have a role in the intervention for plantar heel pain as they have been shown to provide benefit.[73] A wide variety of rigid, semirigid, and soft shoe inserts are available commercially, although rigid plastic orthoses rarely alleviate the symptoms and often aggravate the heel pain.[68]

The use of physical agents and mechanical modalities in the treatment of plantar fasciitis have been analyzed. The available evidence suggest that patients may benefit from ultrasound but not from shockwave therapy.[73]

Metatarsalgia

Metatarsalgia is a common overuse symptom described as pain in the forefoot that is associated with increased stress over the metatarsal head region. The foot is frequently injured during activities that typically involve repetitive high-pressure loading on the forefoot. As in many other overuse syndromes, the condition may also be the result of an alteration in normal biomechanics that has caused an abnormal weight distribution among the metatarsal heads.

Intervention

The initial treatment includes PRICE (*p*rotection, *r*est, *i*cing, *c*ompression, and *e*levation). Non–weight-bearing ambulation is recommended for the first 24 hours, after which PROM and ultrasound treatments can be initiated if delegated by the supervising PT. The use of metatarsal pads and other orthotic devices may provide relief, even in the early phases of treatment. The metatarsal pad is placed proximal to the painful metatarsal heads. Adhesive-backed metatarsal pads of different shapes and sizes are available to unload one or several metatarsal heads. Custom orthotics may also be molded specifically for the cavus foot to decrease load on the plantar flexed first and second rays, in order to distribute weight evenly across the forefoot. A trial of Achilles stretching is helpful in the initial treatment of metatarsalgia. The wearing of high heels should be discouraged in patients with metatarsalgia.

If unresponsive to conservative intervention, surgical plantar condylectomy may be required for resolution of a discrete plantar keratosis. More generalized diffuse painful calluses, such as those seen under the first and second metatarsal heads in the cavus foot, may require posterior (dorsal) closing wedge osteotomies of the metatarsal bases to achieve pain relief.

Tarsal Tunnel Syndrome

Tarsal tunnel syndrome (TTS) is an entrapment neuropathy of the tibial nerve as it passes through the anatomic tunnel between the flexor retinaculum and the medial malleolus (**FIGURE 25.45**). Also, the terminal branches of the tibial, medial, and lateral plantar nerves may be involved. These latter nerves

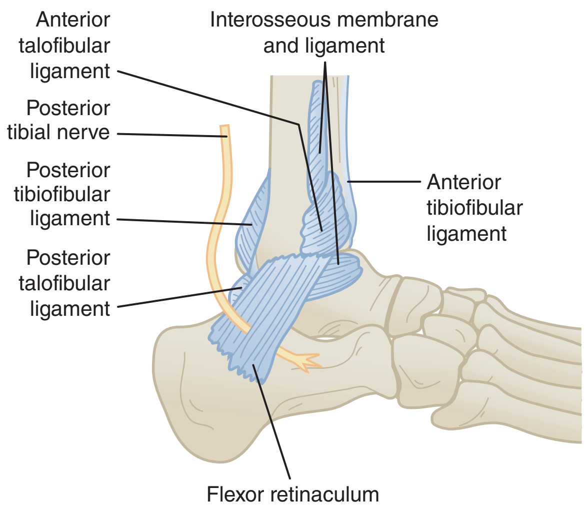


FIGURE 25.45 Tarsal tunnel syndrome involving the posterior tibial nerve.

are often called the *posterior tibial nerve*. The onset of TTS may be acute or insidious. Etiological factors for TTS can be classified as internal or external. Internal factors include anatomic variations such as an accessory flexor digitorum longus muscle. External factors include excessive pronation, which can tighten the flexor retinaculum and the calcaneonavicular ligament.

Intervention

Conservative intervention for TTS includes the use of orthotics to correct biomechanical gait abnormalities. Specifically, a foot orthosis with a rearfoot varus post can limit excessive pronation. In cases of early excessive rearfoot pronation and subtalar joint pronation at heel strike, an orthosis with a deepened heel cup can help to control rearfoot motion. In cases of severe hyperpronation, a rearfoot wedge may be helpful. The stretches employed for plantar fasciitis can also be used with this condition.

Interdigital Neuroma

Interdigital neuroma, or Morton's neuroma, is a common condition that involves enlargement of the interdigital nerve of the foot. The name of the condition is a misnomer, because this is not a true neuroma; rather, there is a thickening of the tissues around the nerve due to perineural fibrosis, fibrinoid degeneration, demyelination, and endoneural fibrosis.

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> In a study of 91 patients with "interdigital neuromas," the male:female ratio was 1:9.[74]

Although a common cause of this condition is chronic compression of the interdigital nerve, it can also arise due to an acute dorsiflexion injury to the toes, with an associated injury to the collateral ligaments of the MTP joint.

Symptoms are usually exacerbated with weight bearing and somewhat relieved by removing the shoe and massaging the forefoot. Poor shoe selection, such as wearing a firm cross-training or racket shoe for long-distance running, may increase the impact forces on the forefoot and contribute to the symptoms. Narrow shoes and high-heeled shoes have also been implicated.

Squeezing the forefoot with one hand, while carefully palpating the involved interspace with the thumb and index fingers of the other hand, is usually successful in eliciting marked discomfort.[75] This compression may produce a painful audible click, known as Mulder's sign.[76]

Intervention

The intervention initially entails avoiding the offending activity, cross-training in lower-impact sports, and modification of footwear.[75] A switch to wider, more accommodating shoes with soft soles and better shock absorption will often improve symptoms.[75] A metatarsal pad, such as an adhesive-backed felt pad, placed proximal to the symptomatic interspace is helpful.[75] When the patient steps down, the pad is designed to separate the metatarsal heads to prevent rubbing or irritating the affected area.[75] The physician may prescribe a trial of NSAIDs to decrease inflammation around the interdigital nerve.[75] Recalcitrant cases that fail to respond to 2 to 3 months of these conservative measures may benefit from an injection of corticosteroids into the involved interspace.[75] Surgery, the intervention of last resort, is usually performed from a posterior approach to prevent scar formation on the plantar aspect of the foot and to allow for early weight bearing.

Acute Compartment Syndrome

Acute compartment syndrome is a condition of pain associated with sudden compression of nerves, blood vessels, and muscle inside a closed space (compartment) within the body. Because the connective tissue that defines the compartment is not pliable, a small amount of bleeding into the compartment, or swelling of the muscles within the compartment, can cause the intracompartmental pressure to rise greatly. Common causes of compartment syndrome include tibial fractures, hemorrhage, intravenous drug injection, casts, prolonged limb compression, crush injuries, and burns. When compartment syndrome is caused by repetitive use of the muscles, it is known as chronic compartment syndrome. This is usually not an emergency, but the loss of circulation can cause temporary or permanent damage to nearby nerves and muscles. The clinical signs of compartment syndrome can be remembered using the mnemonic of the five Ps: pain, paralysis, paresthesia, pallor, and pulses. Pain, especially disproportionate pain, is often the earliest sign, but the loss of normal neurological sensation is the most reliable sign.

There are four compartments within the lower leg:

- *Anterior.* Contains the dorsiflexors (extensors) of the foot. These include the tibialis anterior, extensor digitorum longus, extensor hallucis longus, and fibularis tertius.

- *Lateral.* Contains the fibularis longus and brevis. The fibularis tendons lie behind the lateral malleolus in a fibro-osseous tunnel formed by a groove in the fibula and the superficial fibular retinaculum. The fibular retinaculum and the CFL form the posterior wall of this tunnel.
- *Superficial posterior.* Contains the calf muscles that plantar flex the foot. These include the gastrocnemius, soleus, and plantaris muscles.
- *Deep posterior.* Contains the flexors of the foot. These muscles course behind the medial malleolus. They include the posterior tibialis, flexor digitorum longus, and FHL.

Palpation of the compartment in question may demonstrate swelling or a tense compartment.[77] Decrease or loss of two-point discrimination can be an early finding of compartment syndrome. Clinical findings may include shiny, erythematous skin overlying the involved compartment (described as a "woody" feeling) and excessive swelling.

Intervention

Acute compartment syndrome is a medical emergency requiring immediate medical attention to prevent potential loss of limb.

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> An acute compartment syndrome is considered a medical emergency, requiring an open fasciotomy to prevent severe and irreversible damage. The physical therapist assistant (PTA) should immediately contact the emergency services and then notify the PT.

Medial Tibial Stress Syndrome

Over the past 30 years, a number of generic terms such as *medial tibial syndrome, tibial stress syndrome, shin splints, posterior tibial syndrome, soleus syndrome,* and *periostitis* have evolved to describe exercise-related leg pain. Despite all these terms, *medial tibial stress syndrome (MTSS)* is the most appropriate term to describe this condition.

Neither the precise pathophysiological mechanism nor the specific pathologic lesion in MTSS is known, although it appears to involve periosteal irritation indicated by a diffuse linear uptake on a bone scan along the length of the tibia.[78] The anatomic site of the abnormality has been fairly well localized. Initially, it was thought that the tibialis posterior muscle was the source. However, recent information has identified the fascial insertion of the medial soleus as the more probable source.

The most common complaint in these patients is a dull aching pain along the middle or distal posteromedial tibia. However, symptoms also can refer to the anterior tibia, just lateral to the tibial crest. Early in this process, the pain may occur at the beginning of a run, resolve with continued exertion, only to recur toward the end or after a workout. Alternatively, the pain may be noted only toward the end of a run. At this early stage, the pain typically subsides promptly with rest. With continued training the pain may become more severe, sharp, and persistent. Patients may attempt trials of complete rest only to have the pain recur with resumption of training. With increasing chronicity, the pain may be present with ambulation or at rest.

In contrast, with anterior shin splints, overuse or weakness of the tibialis anterior, extensor digitorum longus, or extensor digitorum brevis may be the causative factors in anterior shin splints, as is excessive or abnormal pronation, restricted ankle joint dorsiflexion, training errors, and inadequate footwear.[79] The physician and/or PT will make that determination.

Intervention

As with most overuse injuries, the intervention for shin splints involves physician-prescribed NSAIDs or analgesics and activity modification, followed by a gradual return to sports, having corrected any training errors or abnormal foot biomechanics. The patient should be instructed to apply ice to the involved area for 20 minutes twice daily, and to reduce running activities, run on softer surfaces, and wear appropriate antipronation shoes. Custom foot orthoses are recommended for the vast majority of these individuals unless their symptoms are mild or resolve quickly.

Stress Fractures

A stress or fatigue fracture is a break that develops in bone after cyclical, submaximal loading. Extrinsic factors that may result in stress fractures of the leg and foot are running on hard surfaces, improper running shoes, or sudden increases in jogging or running distance. Intrinsic factors include malalignment of the lower extremity, particularly excessive pronation.

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> In the foot, the two most common locations for stress fractures are the metatarsal shaft and the calcaneus.

Metatarsal Stress Fracture

Patients who abruptly increase their training, whether it be training mileage, time spent in high-impact activities (marching, jumping, and landing), or training intensity, are susceptible to stress fractures.[75] The second and third metatarsals are the most frequently injured.[80] Military studies have found stress fractures to be more common in women, older individuals, and Caucasians.[81,82] Amenorrhea is present in up to 20 percent of vigorously exercising women and may be as high as 50 percent in elite runners and dancers.[83] Women long-distance runners, ballet dancers, and gymnasts are notorious for dieting to achieve low body fat despite rigorous training schedules. Patients with amenorrhea for more than 6 months experience the same bone loss as postmenopausal women.[84] Whole-body bone-mineral density is significantly lower in amenorrheic athletes, which predisposes them to stress fracture.[84] A recent study found that the simulation of fatigue of the toe plantar flexors resulted in an increase in second metatarsal strain. Therefore, muscular fatigue of the foot may play a role in the etiology of metatarsal stress fractures.

☑ KEY POINT

Although numerous studies have attempted to correlate foot shape, footwear, and orthotics to the incidence of stress fractures, none have conclusively shown a direct relationship, although one study showed a decrease in the incidence of metatarsal fractures in low-arched feet by using a semirigid orthotic.[85]

The patient with a metatarsal stress fracture usually reports mild forefoot discomfort, which may be relieved by rest, but as the stress fracture worsens, pain is experienced while walking and even at rest.[75] Occasionally, there is local point tenderness of the involved metatarsal, induration, swelling, and palpable mass. Symptoms usually present 4 to 5 weeks after a change in training regimen.

Proximal Second Metatarsal Stress Fracture

The proximal second metatarsal stress fracture differs from other metatarsal stress fractures because it can be difficult to heal and may result in chronic nonunion. The anatomy in this area is such that the base of the shaft is countersunk into the bony arch of the foot and is therefore rigid (Lisfranc's joint). This tends to place an abnormal amount of stress across this area. The patient typically reports pain in the first web space, usually accompanied by proximal second metatarsal pain.

Navicular Stress Fracture

Although navicular stress fractures are uncommon, they are the most common midfoot fracture and typically present with an insidious onset or with a history of repeated cyclic loading, which results in fatigue failure through the relatively avascular central portion of the tarsal navicular. The cyclic loading across the navicular may be exacerbated due to a short first metatarsal, metatarsus adductus, or limited dorsiflexion or subtalar motion.[86] Complaints include chronic pain that is vague in nature but tender to palpation on the posterior aspect of the foot and/or medial aspect of the midfoot.

To create an environment conducive for healing, interrupting the cycle of repetitive overload is essential. For most stress fractures, the period of relative rest may be expected to last from 4 to 12 weeks. Factors influencing the duration of the activity restriction include the anatomic site and extent of the fracture, and the anticipated demands on the individual upon return to work or play. The rehabilitation program should include a gradual resumption of AROM and a program of muscle strengthening and generalized conditioning. Closed-chain activities must be deferred until there is radiographic evidence of complete bone healing.

Metatarsal Stress Fracture The intervention for metatarsal stress fractures includes rest from the offending activity and cross-training in a low-impact sport.[75] Weight bearing to tolerance may be allowed in comfortable shoes of choice or a wooden shoe. If weight bearing is painful, or if the fracture is diagnosed after a long delay, a short-leg cast or hard-soled shoe is worn for 4 to 6 weeks until a healing callus is seen radiographically.

Proximal Second Metatarsal Stress Fracture The intervention for second metatarsal stress fracture usually consists of 6 to 8 weeks of rest in a hard shoe or cast, with gradual return to activities when the tenderness resolves.

Navicular Stress Fracture The intervention varies according to the type of fracture. Nondisplaced fractures are treated with a short-leg non–weight-bearing cast for 6 to 8 weeks. If the fracture fails to heal or is displaced, operative intervention of fixation with compression screw and additional bone grafting where necessary is used. Return to sport may take as long as 16 to 20 weeks.

Sesamoid Stress Fracture The intervention for a sesamoid fracture is initially rest from the offending high-impact activity and a wooden-soled shoe or a short-leg cast for 6 to 8 weeks. If cast, a CT scan is performed at 8 weeks to detect signs of aseptic necrosis. If aseptic necrosis is present and the young patient has persistent symptoms, resection may be necessary. Surgical choices include excision of the involved sesamoid or bone grafting, in an attempt to achieve union and preserve the sesamoid.

An alternative treatment is the use of a "C" or "J" pad, which unloads the injured sesamoid. Pads with adhesive backing may be fixed to the insole of the shoe or may be integrated into a custom-molded orthotic to unload the sesamoid.

Pilon Fractures

Pilon fractures in the distal tibia result from axial forces, where the tibia is driven down into the talus, producing a spectrum of articular and metaphyseal injuries and resulting in long-term morbidity in the majority of cases.

Intervention Surgery is undertaken when the condition of soft tissues is optimized. Many surgery options are available and include the following:

- Open reduction and internal fixation
- External fixation (either spanning the ankle or not)
- Limited internal fixation with external fixation
- Percutaneous plating

Ankle Fractures

Ankle fractures can be classified as single malleolar, bimalleolar, and trimalleolar if the posterior part of the tibial plafond (posterior margin) is involved.

Intervention Fractures without medial-sided injury, involving only the fibula are typically symptomatically treated with a walking cast or stirrup brace and weight bearing as tolerated. The patient is instructed to apply ice to the injured area over a compressive dressing for 20 minutes every 2 to 3 hours for the first 24 hours and every 4 to 6 hours thereafter. After the acute phase, cast immobilization is accomplished with either a short-leg walking cast or a walking cast fracture boot (for a reliable patient with a stable ankle fracture). Bimalleolar or trimalleolar injuries are always unstable and are treated with open reduction and internal fixation. All displaced medial malleolar fractures are openly reduced and fixed to restore normal ankle congruency and deltoid integrity. Generally, 4 to 6 weeks of immobilization is required for healing. Cast boots are generally preferred after swelling dissipates so that intermittent motion can commence. If the fracture site is not tender, gradual ankle rehabilitation can begin because clinical healing is present. After the immobilization period, ROM and then strengthening exercises are initiated. Particular attention should be made to acquiring dorsiflexion.

Talar Fractures

Fractures of the talus can be divided into types based on the three main anatomic divisions of the talus: body, neck, and head. Fractures of the body of the talus are further subdivided based on whether they traverse the main portion of the body or involve the talar dome, lateral process, or posterior process.

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> Major fractures of the talar head, neck, and body are associated with high-energy mechanisms, with 50 percent of major talar injuries involving fractures of the talar neck, 15 to 20 percent involving talar body fractures, and the remainder involving talar head fractures.[87]

The mechanism of injury usually involves an axial load with the foot in plantar flexion or excessive dorsiflexion, resulting in compression of the talar head against the anterior aspect of the tibia.[88]

Intervention The intervention varies according to location and severity, with nondisplaced fractures treated with a short-leg non–weight-bearing cast for 6 to 8 weeks and displaced fractures involving emergency reduction.[87]

Calcaneus Fractures

The calcaneus is the largest and most frequently fractured tarsal, accounting for over 60 percent of foot fractures. Calcaneus fractures may occur as a result of falls from heights, from torsional injuries, or through a pathologic process such as osteoporosis. Calcaneus fractures can be classified as extra-articular (25 to 30 percent) or intra-articular (70 to 75 percent) fractures.

Intervention Conservative intervention for calcaneal fractures has shown poor long-term clinical results with significant loss of ankle function. Most extra-articular calcaneus fractures are managed nonoperatively, provided that the injury does not alter the weight-bearing surface of the foot and does not alter hindfoot biomechanics. Open reduction and internal fixation (ORIF) with a lateral plate and without joint transfixation is the standard surgical intervention for displaced intra-articular fractures. Following an ORIF, the foot is elevated with the ankle positioned in the standard neutral position of a 90-degree angle between the foot and the tibia. This position is maintained for up to 72 hours to reduce postoperative swelling. Early ROM exercises are encouraged after the surgical incision has begun healing, usually 10 to 12 days after surgery. A well-fitting orthosis is provided for comfort and to prevent gastrocnemius–soleus contracture. Sutures are removed at 2 to 3 weeks, but weight bearing is delayed for up to 12 weeks, depending on the original degree of comminution and the subsequent rigidity of the fixation.

Metatarsal Fractures

All fractures of the proximal fifth metatarsal have been indiscriminately labeled a "Jones fracture." A true Jones fracture is an acute fracture of the proximal fifth metatarsal caused by forefoot adduction, which occurs at the diametaphyseal junction involving the fourth to fifth metatarsal articulation. The most common fifth metatarsal base fracture is an avulsion fracture of the tuberosity caused by traction of the fibularis brevis and lateral band of the plantar fascia during hindfoot inversion.

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> The proximal fifth metatarsal has a poor blood supply and is at significant risk for delayed union or nonunion.

Intervention These fractures should be treated with non–weight-bearing short-leg cast immobilization for 6 to 8 weeks or until healing is seen radiographically. If an established nonunion develops, screw fixation and/or bone grafting may be required.

Therapeutic Techniques

A number of therapeutic techniques can be used to assist the patient. These include self-stretches, strengthening exercises, and manual techniques.

Techniques to Increase Soft Tissue Extensibility

The following are self-stretching exercises for the specified muscles:

- Gastrocnemius stretch (**FIGURE 25.46**)
- Soleus stretch (**FIGURE 25.47**)
- Stretch into plantar flexion to stretch the dorsiflexors (**FIGURE 25.48** and **FIGURE 25.49**)

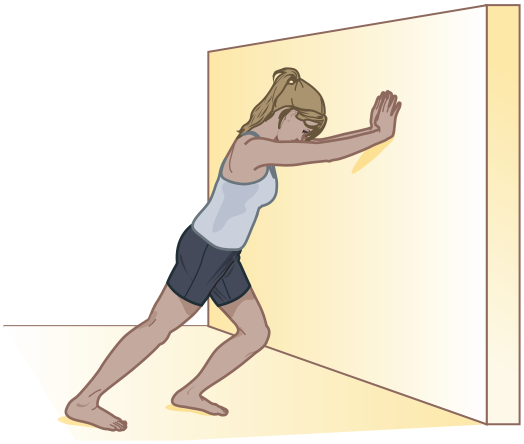


FIGURE 25.46 Right gastrocnemius stretch.

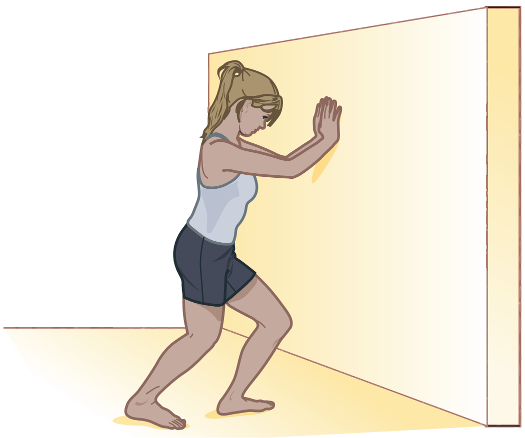


FIGURE 25.47 Right soleus stretch.

FIGURE 25.48 Stretch into plantar flexion to stretch the dorsiflexors: start position.

FIGURE 25.49 Stretch into plantar flexion to stretch the dorsiflexors: end position.

Techniques to Increase Strength

The following are home exercises that use elastic resistance:

- Resisted dorsiflexion (**FIGURE 25.50**)
- Resisted eversion (**FIGURE 25.51**)

FIGURE 25.50 Resisted dorsiflexion.

FIGURE 25.51 Resisted eversion.

Selective Joint Mobilizations

The following techniques can be used with the appropriate grade of mobilization based on the intent of the treatment. (See Chapter 9.)

- *Anterior and posterior glide of the distal tibiofibular joint*. The patient is placed in supine, and the clinician grips the tibia and fibula using one hand for each (**FIGURE 25.52**). While one hand prevents downward motion of the medial malleolus, the other hand glides the fibula anteriorly and posteriorly in relation to the tibia.
- *Talocrural joint traction*. The patient is positioned in supine. Using one hand, the clinician stabilizes the patient's lower leg. Using the other hand, the clinician grasps around the patient's foot at the talocrural junction (**FIGURE 25.53**). The clinician then applies a traction force. This technique can be used to reduce pain and to increase dorsiflexion and plantar flexion.

FIGURE 25.52 Anterior and posterior glide of the distal tibiofibular joint.

FIGURE 25.53 Talocrural joint distraction.

- *Anterior talar glide*. The patient is positioned in prone with the tibia stabilized on the table. Pressure is applied to the posterior aspect of the talus to glide anteriorly (**FIGURE 25.54**). This technique can be used to increase plantar flexion.
- *Subtalar joint distraction*. The lower leg is stabilized on the table, and traction is applied by grasping the posterior aspect of the calcaneus (**FIGURE 25.55**). This technique can be used to reduce pain and to increase inversion and eversion.
- *Posterior talar glide*. The patient is positioned in supine, and the lower leg is stabilized. Pressure is applied to the anterior aspect of the talus to glide it posteriorly (**FIGURE 25.56**). This technique can be used to increase dorsiflexion.
- *Calcaneal inversion–eversion (subtalar)*. The patient lies in the prone position with the knee slightly flexed and supported by a pillow, while the clinician stands at the foot of the table, facing the patient. The clinician grasps the calcaneus in one hand while the other hand locks the talus. The calcaneus is passively inverted (varus) and everted (valgus) on the talus (**FIGURE 25.57**).

FIGURE 25.54 Anterior talar glide.

FIGURE 25.55 Subtalar joint distraction.

FIGURE 25.56 Posterior talar glide.

FIGURE 25.57 Calcaneal inversion–eversion (subtalar).

- *Transverse tarsal joint complex motion*. The clinician stabilizes the calcaneus with one hand while inverting and everting the foot at the transverse tarsal joint complex with the other hand (**FIGURE 25.58**).
- *First MTP joint (first ray) motion*. The patient lies supine, with the clinician at the foot of the table facing away from the patient. The clinician grasps and locks the first MTP joint, before grasping the great toe and moving it into extension and flexion posteriorly (dorsally) and anteriorly (ventrally), respectively (**FIGURE 25.59**). Long-axis distraction and compression can also be applied (**FIGURE 25.60**).

FIGURE 25.58 Transverse tarsal joint complex motion.

FIGURE 25.59 First MTP joint (first ray) motion into extension and flexion.

FIGURE 25.60 First MTP joint (first ray) motion—long-axis distraction and compression.

Summary

The key to developing a successful intervention for the ankle and foot is to understand the interactions among the lower extremity joints. The ankle joint sustains the greatest load per surface area of any joint of the body. The joints and ligaments of the ankle and foot complex act as stabilizers and constantly adapt during weight-bearing activities. This is particularly true on uneven surfaces. Although the ankle and foot complex usually adapts well to the stresses of everyday life, sudden or unanticipated stresses to this area have the potential to produce dysfunction. The early phase of treatment uses ice, compression, elevation, rest, and protection, all of which are critical components in controlling inflammation and preventing swelling. At the earliest opportunity, controlled weight bearing is introduced.

Learning Portfolio

Case Study

You are reviewing the biomechanics of the foot and ankle with a student physical therapist assistant.

1. How would you explain the difference between inversion and eversion and pronation and supination?

While observing a physical therapist perform an examination of the foot and ankle with the patient seated, you note that the therapist grasps calcaneus with one hand and uses the other hand to grasp the forefoot and bring it into plantar flexion. The therapist then places thumb pressure over the anterolateral ankle, and the patient's foot is then brought from plantar flexion to dorsiflexion while thumb pressure is maintained.

2. Which special test is the physical therapist performing, and if positive, what diagnosis would it help to confirm?

On the plan of care for a patient on your schedule, your supervising physical therapist has included stretching for the gastrocnemius and soleus muscles.

3. Describe the different positions for stretching the gastrocnemius and soleus muscles in the standing position.

You are treating a patient whose status is post–tibial fracture. While the patient is exercising, he begins to complain of a decrease in foot and ankle function and pain and paresthesia throughout the lower leg and foot. To confirm your hypothesis, you assess the patient's pulse at the ankle of the involved lower extremity and find the pulse to be absent.

4. What do you suspect to be the cause of the patient's signs and symptoms and what would be your next course of action?

You note that your supervising physical therapist has added joint mobilizations to the talocrural joint to a patient's plan of care with the goal of increasing ankle plantar flexion.

5. If you stabilize the tibia, in which direction would you apply the glide of the talus to increase ankle plantar flexion?

Review Questions

1. Which three muscles attach to the first cuneiform bone?
   a. The anterior tibialis, the posterior tibialis, and the fibularis (peroneus) longus
   b. The extensor digitorum, the flexor hallucis, and the fibularis (peroneus) longus
   c. The anterior tibialis, the peroneus brevis, and the fibularis (peroneus) longus
   d. The anterior tibialis, the posterior tibialis, and the fibularis (peroneus) brevis
2. What is the close-packed position of the ankle?
3. Which is the most commonly injured ankle ligament with a mechanism of plantar flexion and inversion?
4. The subtalar joint of the foot is an articulation between which two bones?
5. The "spring" ligament, which provides some elasticity to the arch of the foot, is also known by which name?
6. Which structure serves as the apex of the medial longitudinal arch of the foot?
   a. The base of the first metatarsal
   b. The head of the first metatarsal
   c. The midshaft of the first metatarsal
   d. The navicular tuberosity
7. A 17-year-old high school basketball player sprained his left ankle 2 days ago. He complains of moderate pain (6/10), and there is moderate swelling that seems to be worsening, causing him to ambulate with an antalgic gait. In this case, the *best* intervention would be:
   a. Cold/intermittent compression followed by elevation
   b. Cold whirlpool, followed by elastic compression and elevation
   c. Contrast baths and elastic compression
   d. None of the above
8. Which of the following muscles is *not* considered part of the triceps surae?
   a. Gastrocnemius
   b. Flexor digitorum longus
   c. Soleus
   d. Both A and C

9. Which of the following nerves innervates most of the muscles that dorsiflex the foot?
   a. Tibial nerve
   b. Superficial fibularis (peroneal) nerve
   c. Deep fibularis (peroneal) nerve
   d. Lateral plantar nerve

10. Which of the following muscles has the potential to plantar flex the ankle and flex the knee?
    a. Fibularis (peroneus) brevis
    b. Gastrocnemius
    c. Soleus
    d. Popliteus

11. You are treating a 15-year-old male soccer player who sustained a grade II inversion ankle sprain 2 weeks ago. You determine that the patient is now in the early subacute phase of rehabilitation. Which of the following interventions should the patient be performing?
    a. Closed-chain lower extremity strengthening, proprioceptive exercises, and wearing an orthosis
    b. Weaning off crutches to a cane
    c. *P*rotection, *r*est, *i*ce, *c*ompression, and *e*levation (PRICE)
    d. Open-chain lower extremity exercises only

12. A patient presents with a grade II lateral ankle sprain incurred during a volleyball game the previous night. Today, the patient ambulates into the clinic non–weight bearing using bilateral axillary crutches and has a compression wrap on her involved ankle. During the early maximum-protection phase of rehabilitation, an appropriate treatment intervention would be to:
    a. Incorporate muscle setting exercises.
    b. Encourage full range of motion exercises.
    c. Perform isotonic exercise at 60 percent maximum strength.
    d. Use plyometric activities.

13. You have discovered an individual who apparently fell on ice in the parking lot outside the clinic. She is calling for help. Visual inspection reveals her ankle is swollen and resting at an extreme range of inversion. The appropriate first aid intervention is to call for help and/or call 911, then:
    a. Cover the patient for warmth and implement the steps for assessment until help arrives.
    b. Encourage the patient, with verbal cueing only, to come into a sitting position and assess her heart rate.
    c. Straighten the ankle and fabricate and apply a splint from available material.
    d. Attempt to transfer her from the ground into an available vehicle and apply ice to their ankle until help arrives.

14. Following a complex fracture of the tibia at mid-shaft, a patient's tibia is immobilized with an external fixation device. While the external fixator is in place a rehabilitation program for the affected limb would include which of the following?
    a. Increasing cardiovascular fitness through aerobic exercises
    b. Maintaining or increasing muscle strength of the affected limb using cuff weights at the ankle
    c. Isometric exercises of the distal limb and resisted exercises of the hip and knee musculature
    d. Increasing muscle strength using closed-chain activities

15. Your patient has progressed through a range of motion program for rehabilitating a grade II lateral ankle sprain. The available range of motion is now equal to that of the opposite extremity and the patient is free from pain with active range of motion. The next phase of rehabilitation will focus on:
    a. Joint mobilization
    b. Strengthening and proprioception
    c. Strengthening for power
    d. Proprioception for return to sport or activity

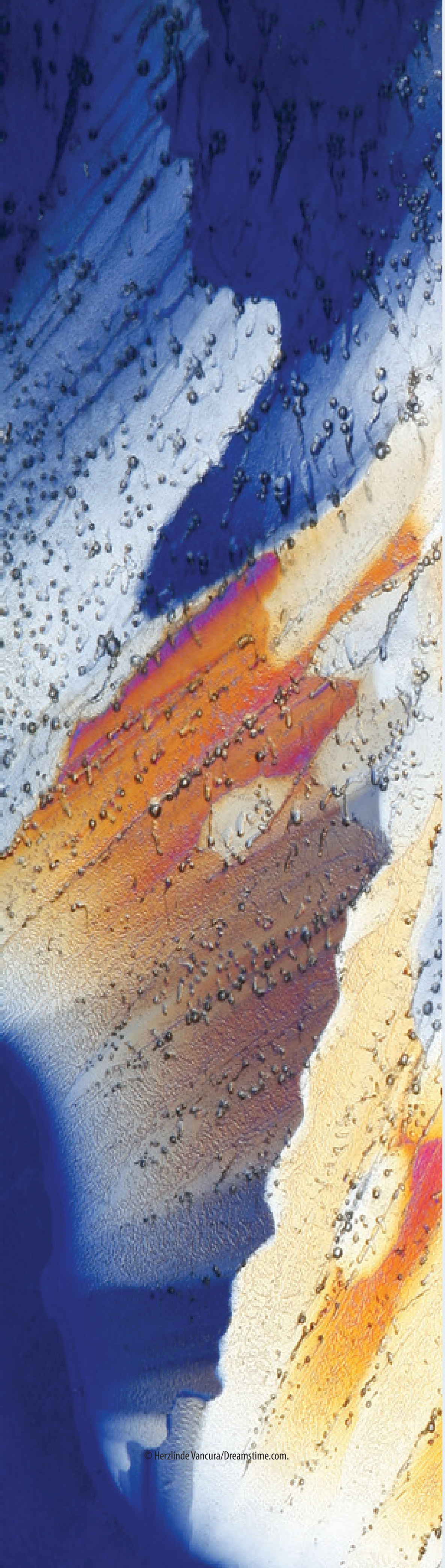
References

1. Sammarco GJ, Hockenbury RT. Biomechanics of the foot and ankle. In: Frankel VH, Nordin M, editors. *Basic Biomechanics of the Musculoskeletal System*. Baltimore: Williams and Wilkins; 2000.
2. Mann RA. Biomechanics of running. *AAOS Symposium on the Foot and Leg in Running Sports*. St. Louis: CV Mosby Co; 1982. p. 30–44.

3. Hillstrom HJ, Song J, Kraszewski AP, Hafer JF, Mootanah R, Dufour AB, et al. Foot type biomechanics part 1: structure and function of the asymptomatic foot. *Gait and Posture*. 2013; 37:445–51.
4. Mootanah R, Song J, Lenhoff MW, Hafer JF, Backus SI, Gagnon D, et al. Foot type biomechanics part 2: are structure and anthropometrics related to function? *Gait and Posture*. 2013; 37:452–6.
5. Glasoe WM. Treatment of progressive first metatarsophalangeal hallux valgus deformity: a biomechanically based muscle-strengthening approach. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2016; 46:596–605.
6. Rasmussen O, Kroman-Andersen C, Boe S. Deltoid ligament: functional analysis of the medial collateral ligamentous apparatus of the ankle joint. *Acta Orthopaedica Scandinavica*. 1983; 54:36–44.
7. Rasmussen O, Tovberg-Jensen I. Mobility of the ankle joint: recording of rotatory movements in the talocrural joint in vitro with and without the lateral collateral ligaments of the ankle. *Acta Orthopaedica Scandinavica*. 1982; 53:155–60.
8. Jackson-Manfield P, Neumann DA. Structure and function of the ankle and foot. In: Jackson-Manfield P, Neumann DA, editors. *Essentials of Kinesiology for the Physical Therapist Assistant*. St. Louis, MO: Mosby Elsevier; 2009. p. 305–38.
9. Subotnick SI. Biomechanics of the subtalar and midtarsal joints. *Journal of the American Podiatry Association*. 1975; 65:756–64.
10. Donatelli R. Normal anatomy and pathophysiology of the foot and ankle. In: Wadsworth C, editor. *Contemporary Topics on the Foot and Ankle*. Home Study Course. La Crosse, WI: Orthopedic Section, APTA; 2000.
11. Boone DC, Azen SP, Lin C-M, Spence C, Baron C, Lee L. Reliability of goniometric measurements. *Physical Therapy*. 1978; 58:1355–60.
12. Mayerson NH, Milano RA. Goniometric measurement reliability in physical medicine. *Archives of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation*. 1984; 65:92–4.
13. Riddle DL, Rothstein JM, Lamb RL. Goniometric reliability in a clinical setting: shoulder measurements. *Physical Therapy*. 1987; 67:668–73.
14. Nussbaum ED, Hosea TM, Sieler SD, Incremona BR, Kessler DE. Prospective evaluation of syndesmotic ankle sprains without diastasis. *The American Journal of Sports Medicine*. 2001; 29:31–5.
15. Hanci E, Sekir U, Gur H, Akova B. Eccentric training improves ankle evertor and dorsiflexor strength and proprioception in functionally unstable ankles. *American Journal of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation*. 2016; 95:448–58.
16. Ko SU, Simonsick EM, Deshpande N, Studenski S, Ferrucci L. Ankle proprioception-associated gait patterns in older adults: results from the Baltimore Longitudinal Study of Aging. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise*. 2016; 48:2190–4.
17. Mildren RL, Hare CM, Bent LR. Cutaneous afferent feedback from the posterior ankle contributes to proprioception. *Neuroscience Letters*. 2016.
18. Kibler BW. Rehabilitation of the ankle and foot. In: Kibler BW, Herring JA, Press JM, editors. *Functional Rehabilitation of Sports and Musculoskeletal Injuries*. Gaithersburg, MD: Aspen; 1998. p. 273–83.
19. Rozzi SL, Lephart SM, Sterner R, Kuligowski L. Balance training for persons with functionally unstable ankles. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 1999; 29:478–86.
20. Carr JB, 2nd, Yang S, Lather LA. Pediatric pes planus: a state-of-the-art review. *Pediatrics*. 2016; 137:e20151230.
21. Hiller CE, Nightingale EJ, Lin CW, Coughlan GF, Caulfield B, Delahunt E. Characteristics of people with recurrent ankle sprains: a systematic review with meta-analysis. *British Journal of Sports Medicine*. 2011; 45:660–72.
22. Kobayashi T, Tanaka M, Shida M. Intrinsic risk factors of lateral ankle sprain: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Sports Health*. 2016; 8:190–3.
23. Hadzic V, Sattler T, Topole E, Jarnovic Z, Burger H, Dervisevic E. Risk factors for ankle sprain in volleyball players: a preliminary analysis. *Isokinetics and Exercise Science*. 2009; 17:155–60.
24. Willems TM, Witvrouw E, Delbaere K, Mahieu N, De Bourdeaudhuij I, De Clercq D. Intrinsic risk factors for inversion ankle sprains in male subjects: a prospective study. *The American Journal of Sports Medicine*. 2005; 33:415–23.
25. van Dijk CN, Lim LSL, Bossuyt PMM, Marti RK. Physical examination is sufficient for the diagnosis of sprained ankles. *The Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery*[Br]. 1996; 78-B:958–62.
26. Lee SM, Lee JH. The immediate effects of ankle balance taping with kinesiology tape on ankle active range of motion and performance in the Balance Error Scoring System. *Physical Therapy in Sport*. 2017; 25:99–105.
27. Long Z, Wang R, Han J, Waddington G, Adams R, Anson J. Optimizing ankle performance when taped: Effects of kinesiology and athletic taping on proprioception in full weight-bearing stance. *Journal of Science and Medicine in Sport*. 2017; 20:236–40.
28. Pizac DA, Swanik CB, Glutting JJ, Kaminski TW. Evaluating postural control and ankle laxity between taping and high-top cleats in high school football players. *Journal of Sport Rehabilitation*. 2016:1–26.
29. Seo HD, Kim MY, Choi JE, Lim GH, Jung SI, Park SH, et al. Effects of Kinesio taping on joint position sense of the ankle. *Journal of Physical Therapy Science*. 2016; 28:1158–60.
30. Halim-Kertanegara S, Raymond J, Hiller CE, Kilbreath SL, Refshauge KM. The effect of ankle taping on functional performance in participants with functional ankle instability. *Physical Therapy in Sport*. 2017; 23:162–7.
31. Surve I, Schwellnus MP, Noakes T, et al. A fivefold reduction in the incidence of recurrent ankle sprains in soccer players using the sport-stirrup orthosis. *American Journal of Sports Medicine*. 1994; 22:601–6.
32. Barnett JR, Tanji JL, Drake C, et al. High versus low top shoes for the prevention of ankle sprains in basketball players: a prospective randomized study. *American Journal of Sports Medicine*. 1993; 21:582–96.
33. Shapiro MS, Kabo JM, Mitchell PW, Loren G, Tsenter M. Ankle sprain prophylaxis: an analysis of the stabilizing effects of bracesand tapes. *American Journal of Sports Medicine*. 1994; 22:78–82.
34. Saltzman CL, Aper RL, Brown TD. Anatomic determinants of first metatarsophalangeal flexion moments in hallux valgus. *Clinical Orthopaedics and Related Research*. 1997:261–9.
35. Jacob HA. Forces acting in the forefoot during normal gait: an estimate. *Clinical Biomechanics*. 2001; 16:783–92.
36. Frey C. Foot health and shoewear for women. *Clinical Orthopaedics and Related Research*. 2000; 372:32–44.

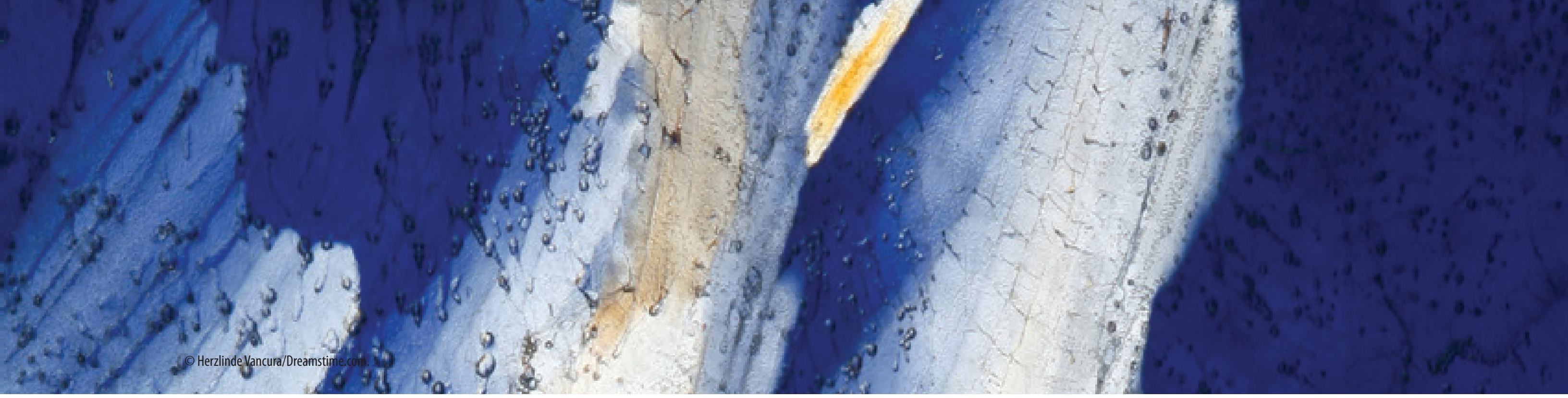
37. McKeon PO, Fourchet F. Freeing the foot: integrating the foot core system into rehabilitation for lower extremity injuries. *Clinics in Sports Medicine*. 2015; 34:347–61.
38. McKeon PO, Hertel J, Bramble D, Davis I. The foot core system: a new paradigm for understanding intrinsic foot muscle function. *British Journal of Sports Medicine*. 2015; 49:290.
39. Clanton TO, Ford JJ. Turf toe injury. *Clinics in Sports Medicine*. 1984; 13:731–41.
40. Silbernagel KG, Crossley KM. A Proposed return-to-sport program for patients with midportion Achilles tendinopathy: rationale and implementation. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2015; 45:876–86.
41. Asplund CA, Best TM. Achilles tendon disorders. *BMJ*. 2013; 346:f1262.
42. Weinfeld SB. Achilles tendon disorders. *The Medical Clinics of North America*. 2014; 98:331–8.
43. Saini SS, Reb CW, Chapter M, Daniel JN. Achilles tendon disorders. *The Journal of the American Osteopathic Association*. 2015; 115:670–6.
44. McCrory JL, Martin DF, Lowery RB, Cannon DW, Curl WW, Read HM, Jr., et al. Etiologic factors associated with Achilles tendinitis in runners. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise*. 1999; 31:1374–81.
45. James SL, Bates BT, Osternig LR. Injuries to runners. *American Journal of Sports Medicine*. 1978; 6:40–9.
46. Clement DB, Taunton JE, Smart GW, McNicol KL. A survey of overuse running injuries. *The Physician and Sportsmedicine*. 1981; 9:47–58.
47. Barry NN, McGuire JL. Overuse syndromes in adult athletes. *Rheumatic Diseases Clinics of North America*. 1996; 22:515- 30.
48. Brunet ME, Cook SD, Brinker MR, Dickinson JA. A survey of running injuries in 1505 competitive and recreational runners. *The Journal of Sports Medicine and Physical Fitness*. 1990; 30:307–15.
49. Gudas CJ. Patterns of lower extremity injury in 224 runners. *Exercise and Sports Medicine*. 1980; 12:50–9.
50. Hogan DG, Cape RD. Marathoners over sixty years of age: results of a survey. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society*. 1984; 32:121–3.
51. Janis LR. Results of the Ohio runners sports medicine survey. *Journal of the American Podiatric Medical Association*. 1986; 10:586–9.
52. Sheehan GA. An overview of overuse syndromes in distance runners. *Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences*. 1977; 301:877–80.
53. Voorn R. Case report: can sacroiliac joint dysfunction cause chronic Achilles tendinitis? *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 1998; 27:436–43.
54. Li HY, Hua YH. Achilles tendinopathy: current concepts about the basic science and clinical treatments. *BioMed Research International*. 2016; 2016:6492597.
55. Goodnite EA. The practical use of evidence-based practice in determining the best treatment for a patient with recurrent Achilles tendinitis. *Orthopaedic Practice*. 2005; 17:12–4.
56. Alfredson H, Pietila T, Jonsson P, Lorentzon R. Heavy-load eccentric calf muscle training for the treatment of chronic Achilles tendinosis. *American Journal of Sports Medicine*. 1998; 26:360–6.
57. Silbernagel KG, Thomee R, Eriksson BI, Karlsson J. Continued sports activity, using a pain-monitoring model, during rehabilitation in patients with Achilles tendinopathy: a randomized controlled study. *American Journal of Sports Medicine*. 2007; 35:897–906.
58. Rompe JD, Furia J, Maffulli N. Eccentric loading versus eccentric loading plus shock-wave treatment for midportion achilles tendinopathy: a randomized controlled trial. *American Journal of Sports Medicine*. 2009; 37:463–70.
59. Aoki M, Ogiwara N, Ohta T, Nabeta Y. Early active motion and weightbearing after cross-stitch Achilles tendon repair. *American Journal of Sports Medicine*. 1998; 26:794–800.
60. Crawford F. Plantar heel pain and fasciitis. *Clinical Evidence*. 2004:1589–602.
61. Crawford F, Thomson C. Interventions for treating plantar heel pain. *The Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*. 2003; 3.
62. Crawford F, Atkins D, Edwards J. Interventions for treating plantar heel pain. *The Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*. 2000; 3.
63. Waugh EJ. Lateral epicondylalgia or epicondylitis: what's in a name? *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2005; 35:200–2.
64. Hyland MR, Webber-Gaffney A, Cohen L, Lichtman SW. Randomized controlled trial of calcaneal taping, sham taping, and plantar fascia stretching for the short-term management of plantar heel pain. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2006; 36:364–71.
65. Charles LM. Why does my foot hurt? Plantar fasciitis. *Lippincott's Primary Care Practice*. 1999; 3:408–9.
66. Dufour AB, Broe KE, Nguyen US, Gagnon DR, Hillstrom HJ, Walker AH, et al. Foot pain: is current or past shoewear a factor? *Arthritis and Rheumatism*. 2009; 61:1352–8.
67. Fraser JJ, Glaviano NR, Hertel J. Utilization of physical therapy intervention among patients with plantar fasciitis in the United States. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2017; 47:49–55.
68. DeMaio M, Paine R, Mangine RE, Drez D. Plantar fasciitis. *Orthopedics*. 1993; 16:1153–63.
69. Baxter DE. The heel in sport. *Clinics in Sports Medicine*. 1994; 13:683–93.
70. Barrett SL, Day SV, Pugnetti TT, Egly BR. Endoscopic heel anatomy: analysis of 200 fresh frozen specimens. *The Journal of Foot and Ankle Surgery*. 1995; 34:51–6.
71. Davis PF, Severud E, Baxter DE. Painful heel syndrome: results of nonoperative treatment. *Foot and Ankle International*. 1994; 15:531–5.
72. Powell MW, Post WR, Keener JK. Effective treatment of chronic plantar fasciitis with dorsiflexion night splints: A cross-over prospective randomized study. *Foot and Ankle International*. 1998; 19:10–8.
73. Yu H, Randhawa K, Cote P, Optima C. The effectiveness of physical agents for lower-limb soft tissue injuries: a systematic review. *Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*. 2016; 46:523–54.
74. Wu KK. Morton's interdigital neuroma: a clinical review of its etiology, treatment, and results. *The Journal of Foot and Ankle Surgery*. 1996; 35:112–9.
75. Hockenbury RT. Forefoot problems in athletes. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise*. 1999; 31:S448-S58.
76. Mulder JD. The causative mechanism in Morton's metatarsalgia. *The Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery*. 1951; 33B:94–5.
77. Perron AD, Brady WJ, Keats TE. Orthopedic pitfalls in the ED: acute compartment syndrome. *American Journal of Emergency Medicine*. 2001; 19:413–6.

78. Blue JM, Mathews LS. Leg injuries. *Clinics in Sports Medicine*. 1997; 16:467–78.
79. Appling SA, Kasser RJ. Foot and ankle. In: Wadsworth C, editor. *Current Concepts of Orthopedic Physical Therapy.* Home Study Course. La Crosse, WI: Orthopaedic Section, APTA; 2001.
80. Monteleone GP. Stress fractures in the athlete. *The Orthopedic Clinics of North America*. 1995; 26:423.
81. Brudvig TJ, Gudger TD, Obermeyer L. Stress fractures in 295 trainees: a one-year study of incidence as related to age, sex, and race. *Military Medicine*. 1983; 148:666–7.
82. Protzman PR. Physiologic performance of women compared to men at the U.S. Military Academy. *American Journal of Sports Medicine*. 1979; 7:191–6.
83. Marshall LA. Clinical evaluation of amenorrhea. In: Agostini R, Titus S, editors. *Medical and Orthopedic Issues of Active and Athletic Women*. Philadelphia: Hanley and Belfus; 1994. p. 152–63.
84. Myburgh KH, Bachrach LK, Lewis B, et al. Low bone mineral density at axial and appendicular sites in amenorrheic athletes. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise*. 1993; 25:1197–202.
85. Simkin A, Leichter I, Giladi M, Stein M, Milgrom C. Combined effect of foot structure and an orthotic device on stress fractures. *Foot and Ankle*. 1989; 10:25–9.
86. Omey ML, Micheli LJ. Foot and ankle problems in the young athlete. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise*. 1999; 31:S470–86.
87. Wedmore IS, Charette J. Emergency department evaluation and treatment of ankle and foot injuries. *Emergency Medicine Clinics of North America*. 2000; 18:86–114.
88. Tomaro JE. Injuries of the leg, foot, and ankle. In: Wadsworth C, editor. *Contemporary Topics on the Foot and Ankle*. Home Study Course. La Crosse, WI: Orthopaedic Section, APTA; 2000.



SECTION IV

Special Considerations


© Herzlinde Vancura/Dreamstime.com

CHAPTER 26

The Pediatric Orthopaedic Population

CHAPTER OBJECTIVES

At the completion of this chapter, the reader will be able to:

1. Discuss the physical therapy role in interventions for the pediatric population.
2. Describe the various pediatric pathologies regarding their presentation and the role that physical therapy plays in treating them.
3. Outline the differences between a congenital condition and an acquired condition.

Overview

Pediatric physical therapy relates to the period during which an individual ages, changes, evolves and matures (0 to 21 years). Motor development is a complex process that starts in utero and has psychomotor, physiological, biochemical, biomechanical, psychosocial, and even gender considerations.[1] Factors to be considered when treating a pediatric patient include, but are not limited to:[2]

- *Current life circumstances.* The pediatric patient's health, the attitudes and values of the child's immediate family, and acculturation of the patient.
- *Health history.* Health and nutrition history, repeated hospitalizations, and so on.
- *Developmental history.* The pediatric patient's past rate of achievement of developmental milestones (**TABLE 26.1** and **TABLE 26.2**), and events that could have had significant effects on the patient either psychologically or physically.
- *Extrapersonal interactions.* The reaction of the patient to the treating clinician and the conditions under which the patient is observed.
- *Age-related changes in muscle and muscle performance.* The patient is continually developing and the musculoskeletal system undergoes numerous changes with growth (**TABLE 26.3**). The pediatric age group incurs a variety of injuries in numerous physical activities with gender, age, mechanism, location, injury type, and activity-specific differences.[3]
- *Cardiovascular differences.* The pediatric heart is smaller than that of the mature adult, so its capacity as a reservoir for blood is also smaller, which results in a lower stroke volume at all levels of exercise. This is compensated for with an increased heart rate. Although systolic blood pressure rises during exercise in the pediatric patient, the elevation is less than that seen

TABLE 26.1 Development Milestones According to Position

Age	Prone	Supine	Sitting	Standing	Comments
Newborn (0–1 month)	■ Physiological flexor activity—arms and hands tucked in close to the body, rounded shoulders, elbows flexed, and hands closed loosely and positioned close to the mouth. ■ Lifts head briefly. ■ Head to side.	■ No control of neck flexion in supine is present, so the baby cannot maintain the head in midline but keeps it rotated to one side.	■ Lack of muscular trunk control—the back is round, and the head flops forward. ■ Sacral sitting if supported.	■ Demonstrates the remarkable capabilities of primary standing—automatic walking when supported.	■ Grasp is a reflex in which the hand automatically closes on objects the baby touches due to tactile stimulation of the palm. ■ No organized response to postural perturbations. ■ Poor head control. ■ Very active when awake. ■ Random wide ranging movements primarily in supine. ■ The baby touches and feels, and is soon sucking and learning about the hands. ■ Regards objects in direct line of sight—vision limited to 8–9 feet. Follows moving objects midline. ■ Skeletal characteristics include coxa valgus, genu varum, tibial varum and torsion, calcaneal varus, and occasionally metatarsus adductus.
1 month	■ Head lifting in prone may appear to be improved. ■ Increased cervical rotation mobility. ■ Elbows move forward with arms away from body.	■ Head to one side resulting in lateral vision becoming dominant. ■ Eye hand regard and uncontrolled swiping at toys at the baby's side is frequently observed. ■ Wider ranges of movement. ■ Heels hit surface.	N/A	■ Positive support and primary walking reflexes in supported standing.	■ Decreasing physiological flexion (less "recoil"). ■ Increasing level of arousal. ■ Neonatal reaching. ■ Able to visually track a moving object horizontally.

2 months	■ Able to hold the head steady in all positions and to raise it about 45 degrees due to increased activity of active shoulder abduction. ■ Arms and hands begin to work to support the actions of the head and trunk. ■ Hand movements more goal directed.	■ Increased asymmetry with more visual interaction.	■ Head lag occurs with pull to sit. ■ Begins to develop head and trunk control and more attempts at sustained extension. ■ Head bobs in supported sitting.	■ May not accept weight on lower extremities (astasia-abasia). ■ No more neonatal stepping.	■ Increasing asymmetry/ decreased tone. ■ Increased head and trunk control lets the baby use the arms for reaching and playing rather than for support. ■ Holds objects placed in the hand.
3 months	■ Change occurs in the general position of the arms, from a position where the arms are tucked in close to the body with the elbows near the ribs, to one in which the elbows are almost in line with the shoulders, which allows for forearm weight bearing. ■ Legs abducted and externally rotated. ■ Head/face can be raised 45–90 degrees when prone.	■ Beginning of symmetry is evident—the head is in midline with chin tucking and the hands are in midline on the chest/to mouth.	■ Attempts pull to sit but falls forward.	■ Minimal weight through extended legs.	■ Period of controlled symmetry. ■ The grasp becomes more controlled and voluntary and the hands can adjust to the shape of objects. ■ Symmetry is very obvious in the lower extremities as they assume their "frog legged" position of hip abduction, external rotation and flexion, and knee flexion. The feet come together and the baby is able to take some weight with toes curled in supported standing.

(continues)

TABLE 26.1 Development Milestones According to Position *(continued)*

Age	Prone	Supine	Sitting	Standing	Comments
4 months	■ Able to prop up on the forearms and look around. The head and chest are lifted and maintained in midline. ■ Prone pivots.	■ Can roll from prone to side and from supine to side, although these are usually accidental occurrences. ■ Able to bring the hands together in the space above the body due to increased shoulder girdle control. ■ Hands to knees. ■ Active anterior and posterior pelvic tilt.	■ Assists in pull to sit by flexing elbows. ■ Very minimal head bobbing—stabilized through shoulder elevation. ■ Tends to sit in a slumped position. ■ Protective reactions develop, first laterally, then forward, and then backward.	■ Because of the increased head-neck-trunk control, the baby can take more of his or her weight when placed in standing, and can now be held by the hands instead of at the chest. ■ Legs are extended and the toes are clawed.	■ Ulnar palmar grasp develops. ■ Able to perform bilateral reaching with the forearm pronated when the trunk is supported. ■ Side lying. ■ Starts hand to mouth activities. ■ Emerging righting and equilibrium reactions. ■ Findings of concern include poor midline orientation (persistent asymmetrical tonic neck reflex [ATNR]), imbalance between flexors and extensors, poor visual attention/tracking, persistent wide base of support in standing, and poor anti-gravity strength.
5 months	■ Equilibrium reactions begin in prone position. ■ Can roll from prone to supine. ■ Able to assume and maintain a position of extended arm weight bearing in prone and can weight shift from one forearm to the other to reach out with one arm.	■ Chin tuck, downward gaze. ■ Feet to mouth. ■ Anterior and posterior pelvic tilt more active. ■ Active roll to side lying. ■ Manipulation and transfer of toys.	■ No head lag when pulled from supine to sit. ■ Assists during pull to sit with chin tuck and head lift. ■ Able to control head in supported sitting, although still leans forward from the hips.	■ Tends to be able to bear almost all weight.	Findings of concern include: ■ Poor antigravity flexion. ■ Poor tolerance for prone/ inability to bear weight to extended arms/poor weight shifting.

6 months	■ Completes turning and can roll from prone to supine. ■ Can lay prone on hands with the elbows extended and can weight shift on extended arms from hand to hand and reach forward due to sufficient shoulder girdle control.	■ Active hip extension. ■ Transfers toys. ■ Flexes head independently.	■ Can sit indepen-dently, although initially uses the arms and hands for support.	■ In standing, can bear weight on both legs and bounce and can independently hold onto the support of a person due to sufficient trunk and hip control.	■ Uses rolling for locomotion. ■ Findings of concern include: ■ Poor tolerance for prone position. ■ Paucity of movement patterns. ■ Inability to sit independently. ■ Inability to roll, or rolling with neck hyperextension.
7 months	■ Trunk and arms free. ■ Able to achieve and maintain the quadruped position, although prone is usually the preferred position. ■ Can pivot on the belly, often moving the body in a circle.	■ Tends to avoid except for playing.	■ Protective reactions more consistent. ■ Able to perform trunk rotation in sitting. ■ Can assume the sitting position from the quad-ruped position.	■ Can often pull to stand from the quadruped position. ■ Able to actively flex and extend both legs simultaneously while standing and supporting independently.	■ Very active with large variety of movements and positions available. ■ May show fear of strangers. ■ Findings of concern include: ■ Lack of weight shifting in prone. ■ Reliance on more primitive movement patterns as compensations to explore. ■ Inability to assume or maintain quadruped. ■ Poor weight bearing in supported stance.
8 months	■ Minimal time spent in prone—able to creep/crawl in the quadruped position at 9 months as the primary means of locomotion.	N/A	■ Full equilibrium reactions in sitting, and the beginning of equilibrium reactions in quadruped. ■ Able to side-sit and also able to go from sitting to quadruped. ■ May also kneel.	■ Can stand by leaning on supporting surfaces. ■ Able to pull to stand. ■ Early walking, cruising.	■ Can reach out for objects and reach across the midline of the body without losing balance. ■ The thumb can wrap around objects—now the baby can hold two small objects, such as cubes, in one hand. ■ Findings of concern include: ■ Poor sitting ability. ■ Unable to use hand for play. ■ Overall reliance on upper extremities.

(continues)

TABLE 26.1 Development Milestones According to Position *(continued)*

Age	Prone	Supine	Sitting	Standing	Comments
9 months	N/A	N/A	■ A large variety of sitting positions and movement. ■ Pivoting/long sitting. ■ Sitting often used as a transitional position.	■ Uses arms, hands, and body together while pulling up to standing through half-kneel position (9 months). ■ Immature stepping. ■ The sequence in rising to standing is kneeling, half kneeling, weight shift forward, squat, then upright.	■ The index finger starts to move separately from the rest of the hand when poking at objects. This leads to the pincer grasp, with the tips of the thumb and index finger meeting in a precise pattern. ■ The baby's ability to let go of an object smoothly has also improved. ■ Findings of concern include: ■ Poor standing control. ■ Poor/inadequate sitting. ■ Inability to assume quadruped.
10 months	N/A	N/A	■ Arms reach above shoulders. ■ Active side sitting. ■ Rarely stationary.	■ Creeping/ climbing. ■ Legs very active. ■ "High guard." ■ Cruising with wide base of support.	N/A
11 months	N/A	N/A	■ Able to play across midline.	■ Mostly using legs. ■ Very symmetrical standing with a wide base of support.	N/A
12 to 15 months	N/A	N/A		■ Many babies are walking unassisted.	■ Able to self-feed. ■ Can build a tower of two cubes.
2 years	N/A	N/A	N/A	Runs well. Goes up stairs using reciprocal pattern (reciprocal stair climbing).	N/A

Data from van Blankenstein M, Welbergen UR, de Haas JH: *Le Developpement du Nourrisson: Sa Premiere Annee en 130 Photographies*. Paris, Presses Universitaires de France, 1962; and Prechtl HF: New perspectives in early human development. *Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol* 21:347–55, 1986.

(continued)

TABLE 26.2 Locomotion Checklist: Ages 2 to 5

Year	Milestone
2 years	Walks up/down stairs one at a time holding rail Walks with heel-toe gait Runs forward well
3 years	Pedals and steers tricycle well Jumps forward on both feet Alternates feet going up stairs Walks backward easily
4 years	Walks down stairs with alternating feet, holding rail Gallops
5 years	Able to walk long distances on toes Skips Hops forward on one foot Smooth reciprocal movements in walking and running

Data from Ratliffe KT: *Clinical Pediatric Physical Therapy: A Guide for the Physical Therapy Team*. Philadelphia, Mosby, 1998; and Kahn-D'Angel L: Pediatric physical therapy, in O'Sullivan SB, Siegelman RP (eds): *National Physical Therapy Examination: Review and Study Guide* (ed 9). Evanston, IL, International Educational Resources, 2006.

in the adult. Finally, because the thoracic cavity is smaller than that of the mature adult, the pediatric patient demonstrates a smaller vital capacity than an adult, which results in an elevated respiration rate as compared to the mature adult.

- *Physiological differences.* A child has a greater surface area–to mass ratio than the typical adult, resulting in a greater transfer of heat into their young bodies. The child also has a higher metabolic rate as compared to adult counterparts, which serves to further challenge the young thermoregulatory system.

☑ KEY POINT

The main goals of a physical therapy intervention in pediatric rehabilitation are to reduce barriers limiting the performance of daily routines and to facilitate the successful integration of children into the home, play, and school environments.

TABLE 26.3 Age-Related Changes in Muscle and Muscle Performance in the Pediatric Population

Infancy, early childhood, and preadolescence (prepubescent)	Muscle fiber size, muscle mass, and strength increase linearly with age in boys (approximately 10 percent higher than girls) and girls throughout childhood until puberty. The general range of prepubescence is 11 years for girls and 13 years for boys. Strength gains occur equally in both sexes during childhood with no evidence of hypertrophy until puberty. This is because preadolescent children do not possess circulating androgenic-anabolic hormones (testosterone) that act to stimulate hypertrophy, muscular strength, and secondary sex characteristics.
Puberty/pubescent/ adolescent	The general range of puberty is 12 to 18 years for girls and 14 to 18 years of age for boys Rapid acceleration in muscle fiber size, muscle mass, and strength especially in boys.

Data from Kisner C, Colby LA: Resistance exercise for impaired muscle performance, in Kisner C, Colby LA (eds): *Therapeutic Exercise. Foundations and Techniques* (ed 5). Philadelphia, FA Davis, 2002, pp 147–229.

Guidelines for Exercise Training in the Young

There are many similarities between exercise descriptions for the adult and the child. For example, a typical exercise prescription for the child can include any or all of the following:

- Stretching
- Strengthening
- Water aerobics
- Exercises to improve endurance
- Exercises to improve gait
- Balance and coordination exercises
- Exercises to facilitate gross motor development
- Family and client education

However, treating the younger population comes with its own set of challenges. For example, whereas an adult can understand the rationale and importance of adhering to a therapeutic program of exercise and activity avoidance, the younger population may not. For this reason, depending on the level of maturity of the patient, the physical therapy session may resemble an adult session, or it may emphasize an approach that involves games, tasks, and imagination. Physical therapy has become so specialized that children under the age of 10 or 11 are typically seen by physical therapists (PTs) specializing in pediatric physical therapy. This text is focused on those from age 12 to 20 years.

In terms of exercise training, evidence seems to suggest that neuromuscular activation, intrinsic muscular adaptations, and motor coordination all contribute to preadolescent strength and fitness gains independent of the changes in the anabolic and androgenic activity in the preadolescent.[4,5] The exercise recommendations for the preadolescent and adolescent child are that the patient be well-supervised (to prevent disruption of the primary growth centers of ossification due to traumatic or chronic traction forces at these sites), and for the exercises to involve nonballistic, controlled, and slow motions that are stimulating, interesting, and fun.[6]

Pediatric Orthopaedic Conditions

A child differs from an adult in many ways, particularly because the tissues and joints of the child are in the process of development. The childhood years from birth to skeletal maturity bring physiological and anatomic changes to bones and joints. Pediatric orthopaedic conditions usually fall into one of two categories: acquired or congenital (TABLE 26.4).

Acquired Conditions

Acquired conditions are those that occur during life. Examples include aging changes, infection, and trauma. Fortunately, the majority of injuries sustained by the pediatric population are mild strains, sprains, and contusions. However, some factors, including growth spurt, pressure to perform, imbalances between strength and flexibility, structural laxity, and a lack of the required motor and cognitive skills for certain sports, can increase the vulnerability of this population for both chronic and acute injuries.[3]

Skeletal Fracture

The mechanical properties and healing qualities of skeletal bone are described in Chapter 2 and Chapter 4, respectively. Adolescence and young adulthood are the most beneficial times for long-term bone density gains, with nearly 90 percent of peak bone mass gained by age 18 years.[7] However, it is also the most vulnerable time for negative consequences to occur as a result of trauma, eating disorders, poor nutrition, inadequate calcium intake, and hypoestrogenism.[3] Mechanical loading through impact or gravitational forces (i.e., running, walking, stair climbing) and nonimpact or muscle forces (i.e., weightlifting, swimming) is critical for bone mineral accrual in children and adolescents.[3]

TABLE 26.4 Acquired and Congenital Conditions

Condition	Examples
Acquired	Skeletal fracture Juvenile rheumatoid arthritis (JRA) Idiopathic scoliosis Slipped capital femoral epiphysis (SCFE) Legg-Calvé-Perthes disease Scheuermann's disease Osteochondritis dissecans Osgood-Schlatter disease Pulled elbow
Congenital	Amputation Developmental dysplasia of the hip (DDH) Equinovarus

Fractures of bone in pediatric patients may be due to direct trauma, such as a blow, or indirect trauma, such as a fall on an outstretched hand (FOOSH injury) or a twisting injury. The point on a bone at which the metaphysis connects to the physis is an anatomic point of weakness. The various types of fractures are described in Chapter 4. Three types of fractures are worth noting in the pediatric population:

- *Avulsion*. Occurs when a piece of bone attached to a tendon or ligament is torn away. In the younger population, ligaments and tendons are stronger than bone.
- *Growth plate (physeal)*. A disruption in the cartilaginous physis of long bones, which is the weakest part of the bone, which may or may not involve epiphyseal or metaphyseal bone (**FIGURE 26.1**). Physeal injuries are overuse injuries exclusive to the pediatric population, in part due to the greater structural strength and integrity of the ligaments and joint capsules than of the growth plates, and the fact that the physes of an adult have ossified. Growth plate fractures can have dire consequences because of the potential for growth plate closure, which inhibits future growth and results in limb length discrepancies. Conversely, an injury near, but not at, the physis can stimulate increased bone growth.
- *Greenstick*. A type of simple fracture in which only one side of the bone is fractured while the opposite side is bent (**FIGURE 26.2**). Because the bones of a pediatric patient have not fully developed, they are less rigid and brittle than adult bones. This type of fracture tends to heal faster than other types.

The most common clinical presentation with a pediatric fracture is pain, weakness, and functional loss of the involved area. The most common areas for pediatric fracture include the distal radius, the elbow, the clavicle, and the tibia. The Salter-Harris classification is the preferred and accepted standard in North America for diagnosing physeal fracture patterns (**TABLE 26.5**). The most common of the Salter-Harris fractures is II, followed by I, III, IV, and V.

Intervention In the majority of cases, the medical management of a pediatric fracture involves immobilization through casting, splints, or surgical fixation. However, pediatric fractures tend to heal sooner than

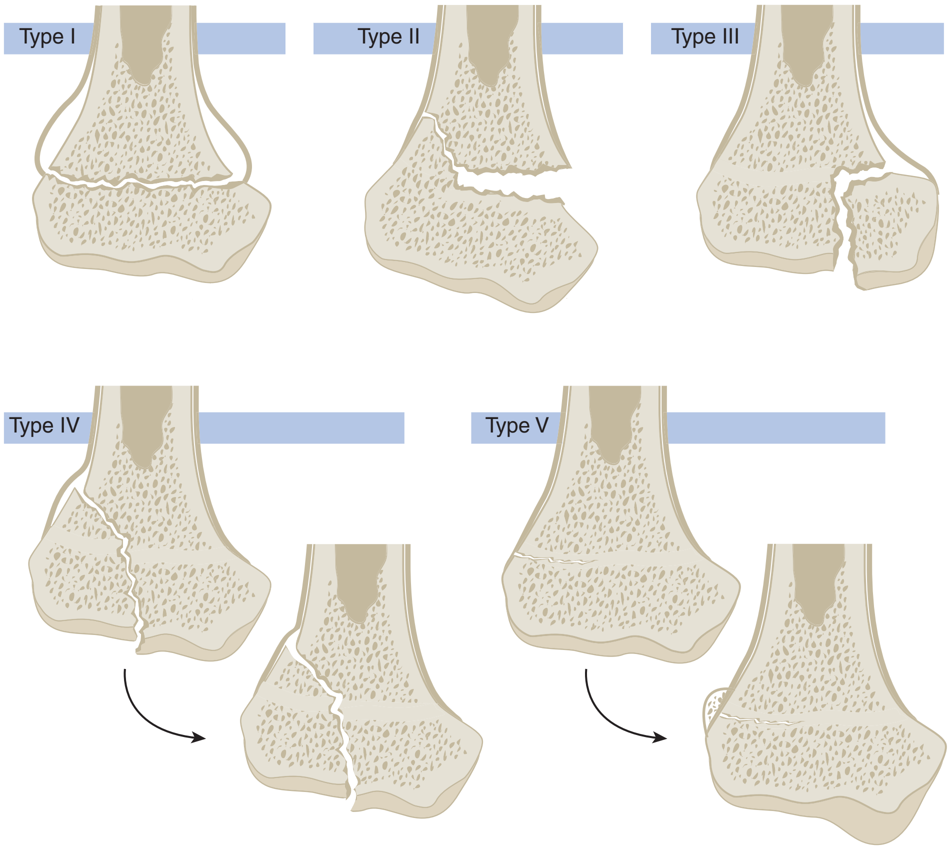


FIGURE 26.1 Salter-Harris classification of growth plate fractures.

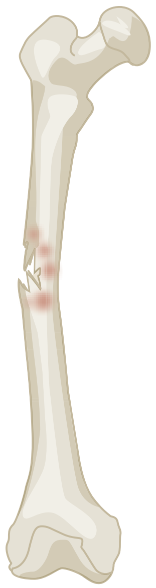


FIGURE 26.2 Greenstick fracture.

an equivalent fracture in an adult. While this can seem advantageous, one of the main disadvantages is that any malpositioned fragments become immovable or fixed much earlier than in adults.

Children tolerate prolonged immobilization much better than adults, and disabling stiffness or loss of range of motion is distinctly unusual after pediatric fractures. Physical therapy, if needed, typically begins after this immobilization period, and depending on the type of fracture, can involve any or all of the following, depending on the location of the fracture:

- Pain management techniques, including the use of noncontraindicated electrotherapeutic modalities (see Chapter 10) and manual techniques, including joint mobilizations by the PT
- Range of motion exercises, following the hierarchy of progression outlined in Chapter 12

TABLE 26.5 Salter-Harris Classification of Physeal Fractures

Type	Description
I	This type typically traverses through the hypertrophic zone of the cartilaginous physis, splitting it longitudinally, and separating the epiphysis away from the metaphysis. When undisplaced, these fractures may not be readily evident on radiographs due to the lack of bony involvement. In many instances, only mild to moderate soft tissue swelling is noted radiographically. In general, the prognosis for this type of fracture is excellent. Usually, only closed reduction is necessary for displaced fractures; however, open reduction and internal fixation may be necessary if a stable satisfactory reduction cannot be maintained.
II	This fracture splits partially through the physis and includes a variably sized triangular bone fragment of metaphysis. This particular fracture pattern occurs in an estimated 75 percent of all physeal fractures, and it is the most common physeal fracture.
III	This fracture type combines a physeal injury with an articular discontinuity. This fracture partially involves the physis and then extends through the epiphysis into the joint. It has the potential to disrupt the joint surface. This injury is less common and often requires open reduction and internal fixation to ensure proper anatomic realignment of both the physis and the joint surface.
IV	This fracture runs obliquely through the metaphysis, traverses the physis and epiphysis, and enters the joint. Good treatment results for this fracture are considered to be related to the amount of energy associated with the injury and the adequacy of reduction.
V	This lesion involves a compression or crush injury to the physis and is almost impossible to diagnose definitively at the time of injury. Knowledge of the injury mechanism makes one more or less suspicious of this injury. No fracture lines are evident on initial radiographs, but they may be associated with diaphyseal fractures. This fracture is generally very rare; however, family members should be warned of the potential disturbance in growth, and that if growth disturbance occurs, treatment is still available (depending upon the child's age and remaining growth potential).
VI	This is an additional classification of physeal fractures not considered in the original classification but now occasionally included. It describes an injury to the peripheral portion of the physis and a resultant bony bridge formation that may produce considerable angular deformity.

- Strengthening exercises, beginning with isometrics and progressing using the hierarchy of progression outlined in Chapter 13
- Gait and/or crutch training with an appropriate assistive device and prescribed prescription for weight bearing (see Chapter 7)
- Proprioception exercises for balance and coordination (see Chapter 14)
- Functional training, including adaptive, supportive, or protective devices and activities of daily living and self-care
- Patient and family education to decrease the risk of reinjury and to promote healing

Juvenile Rheumatoid Arthritis

Juvenile rheumatoid arthritis (JRA) is a group of diseases that are manifested by chronic joint inflammation. The exact etiology of JRA is unclear, but the current theory is that it is an autoimmune inflammatory disorder, activated by an external trigger, in a genetically predisposed host. JRA is defined as persistent arthritis, lasting at least 6 weeks, in one or more joints in a child younger than 16 years of age, when all other causes of arthritis have been excluded.

JRA can be classified as systemic, oligoarthritis (pauciarticular disease), or polyarticular disease according to onset within the first 6 months.

- Systemic-onset JRA is characterized by spiking fevers, typically occurring several times each day, with temperature returning to the reference range or below the reference range. The fever also may be accompanied by an evanescent rash, which is typically linear, affecting the trunk and extremities. Arthralgia is often present. Frank joint swelling is atypical; arthritis may not occur for months following onset, making diagnosis difficult.
- Pauciarticular disease is characterized by arthritis affecting four or fewer joints (typically larger ones such as knees, ankles, or wrists).
- Polyarticular disease affects at least five joints. Both the large and small joints can be involved, often in a symmetric bilateral distribution. Severe limitations in motion are usually accompanied by weakness and decreased physical function.

In addition to those already mentioned, the general history and observation of JRA includes the following:

- Morning stiffness
- A school history of absences and an inability to participate in physical education classes may reflect the severity of the disease
- Gait deviations

A detailed physical examination by a physician is a critical tool in diagnosing JRA to help rule out other causes. Medical care of children with JRA must be provided in the context of a team-based approach, considering all aspects of their illness (e.g., physical functioning in school, psychological adjustment to disease).

Intervention PTs and physical therapist assistants (PTAs) are essential members of the pediatric rheumatology team that includes the rheumatologist, nurse, occupational therapist, ophthalmologist, orthopaedist, and pediatrician.[8] Other specialists, including cardiologists, dermatologists, orthotists, psychologists, and social workers, provide occasional consultation as needed.

Following the comprehensive examination by the PT to identify impairments caused by the disease, a determination is made as to the relationship between the impairments and observed or reported activity restrictions. The PT develops a prioritized problem list and an intervention plan to reduce current impairments, maintain or improve function, prevent or minimize secondary problems, and provide education and support to the child and family. Specific interventions can include any or all of the following:

- *Range of motion and stretching exercises*
  - *Acute stage*. Passive and active assisted exercises to avoid joint compression
  - *Subacute/chronic stages*. Active exercises
- *Strengthening*. Avoid substitutions; minimize deformity, pain, instability, and atrophy
  - *Acute and subacute stages*. Isometric exercises progressing cautiously to resistive exercises
  - *Chronic stage*. Judicious use of concentric/eccentric exercises
- *Endurance exercises*. Encouragement to exercise—fun and recreational activities, such as swimming
- *Joint protection strategies and body mechanics education*
  - Mobility assistive devices.
  - Rest, as needed—balance rest with activity by using splinting (articular resting).
  - Posture and positioning to maintain joint range of motion.
  - Patients should spend 20 minutes per day in prone to stretch the hip and knee flexors.
  - Avoid high impact activities.

- *Assessment of leg length discrepancy in standing and avoiding scoliosis*
- *Therapeutic modalities for pain control*
  - Instructions on the wearing of warm pajamas, using a sleeping bag, or using an electric blanket

Idiopathic Rotoscoliosis

The overall contour of the typical spinal column in the coronal plane is straight. In contrast, the contour of the sagittal plane fluctuates with development. At birth, a series of primary curves give a kyphotic posture to the spine. With the development of an erect posture, secondary curves develop in the cervical and lumbar spines, producing a lordosis in these areas. Rotoscoliosis characterizes a progressive disturbance of the vertebral segments that produce a three-dimensional deformity of the spine. To date, the precise etiology of idiopathic rotoscoliosis is not understood. It is known, however, that there is a familial prevalence. Using the James classification system, rotoscoliosis has three age distinctions. These distinctions, though seemingly arbitrary, have prognostic significance.

- *Infantile idiopathic.* Children diagnosed when they are younger than 3 years of age, usually manifesting shortly after birth. Although 80 to 90 percent of these curves spontaneously resolve, many of the remainder progress throughout childhood, resulting in severe deformity. The most common curve pattern (right thoracic) demonstrates a right shoulder that is rotated forward, with the medial border of the right scapula protruding posteriorly.
- *Juvenile idiopathic.* Children diagnosed when they are 3 to 9 years of age.
- *Adolescent idiopathic.* Manifesting at or around the onset of puberty and accounting for approximately 80 percent of all cases of idiopathic rotoscoliosis.

The primary factors that influence the highest probability of progression are:

- Early diagnosis
- Double-curve pattern
- Curves with greater magnitude
- Gender
  - Risk of progression in females is approximately 10 times that of males with curves of comparable magnitude.
  - In females, greater risk of progression is present when curves develop before menarche.

Rotoscoliosis is generally described by the location of the curve or curves. Whether the convexity of the curve points to the right or left should also be described. If there is a double curve, each curve is described and measured. As the disease progresses, the spinous processes of the vertebrae in the area of the primary curve rotate toward the concavity of the curve. On the concave side of the curve, the ribs are close together (**FIGURE 26.3**). On the convex side, the ribs are widely separated. As the vertebral bodies rotate, the spinous processes deviate more and more to the concave side and the ribs follow the rotation of the vertebrae. The ribs on the convex side are rotated more posteriorly, causing the characteristic rib hump seen in thoracic rotoscoliosis. The ribs on the concave side are rotated more anteriorly. Because the onset and progression of rotoscoliosis (until skeletal maturity) are generally asymptomatic, it can develop undetected without close examination.

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> Radiographs, which are usually considered only when a patient has a curve that might require treatment or could progress to a stage requiring treatment, can be used to determine location, type, and magnitude of the curve (using the Cobb method; **FIGURE 26.4**) as well as skeletal age. Alternatively, a noninvasive technique (which reduces radiation exposure) called Moiré topography can be used, in which light is projected through grids onto the back of the patient to assess topographical asymmetry.

The significant incidence of rotoscoliosis in the adolescent population has prompted the creation of school screening programs in all 50 states. Visual observation is used during the Adam's forward bending test. The Adam's forward bending test involves asking the patient to bend forward at the waist as though touching his or her toes while the clinician, who is standing behind the patient, looks along the line at the back and determines whether one side is higher than the other (see Figure 26.3). If rotoscoliosis is suspected, the magnitude of a rib hump is quantified using a scoliometer (an inclinometer) during the Adam's forward bending test. The scoliometer is placed over the spinous process at the apex of the curve to measure the angle of trunk rotation as the patient bends forward. During the physical examination by the patient's physician, a determination is made as to whether the deformity is structural (cannot be corrected with active or passive movement and there is rotation toward the convexity of the curve) or nonstructural (fully corrects clinically and radiographically on lateral bending toward the apex of the curve, and lacks vertebral rotation). Nonstructural

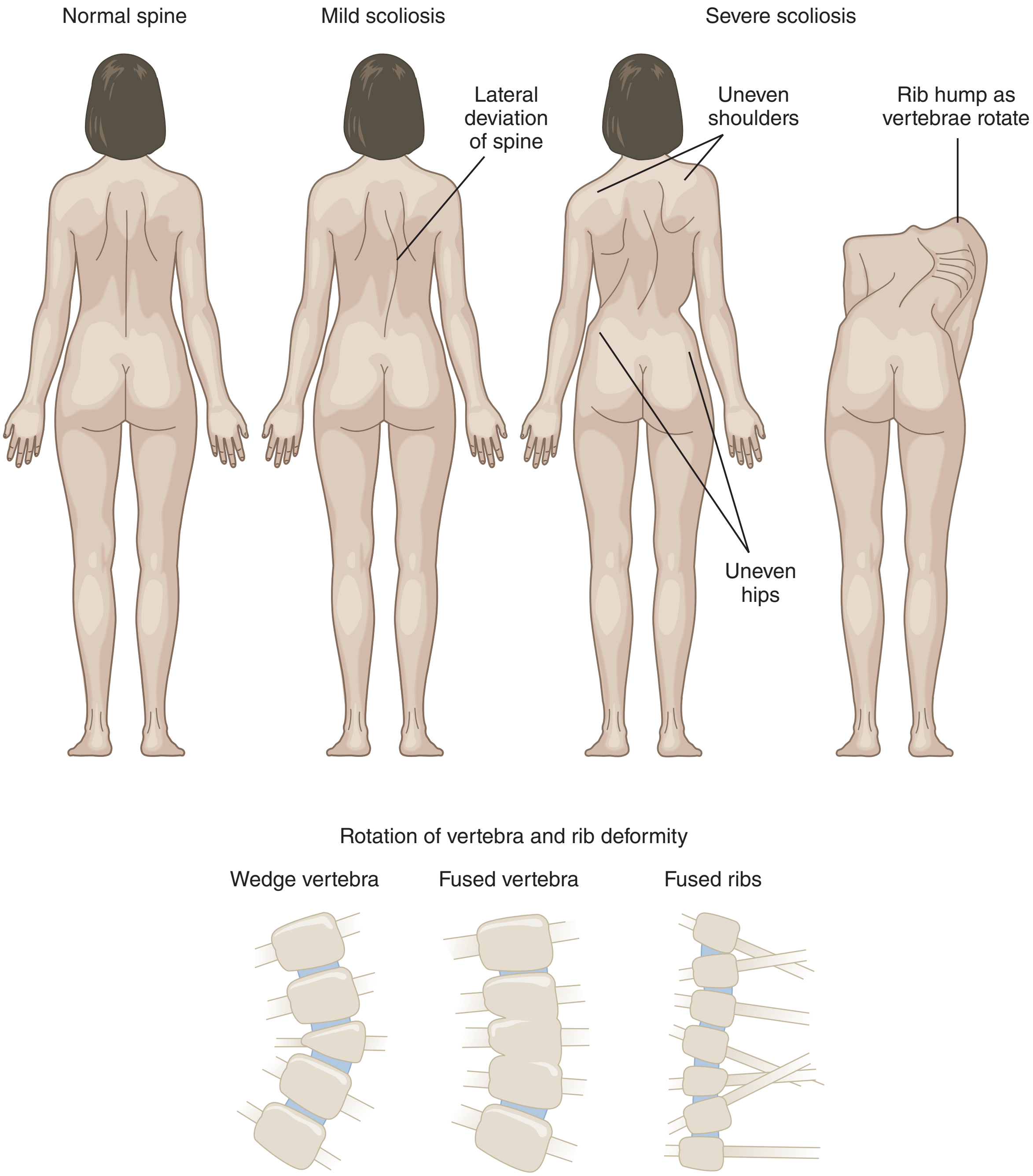


FIGURE 26.3 Rotoscoliosis and the forward bending test.

Story, L. (2012). *Pathophysiology: A practical appraoch*. Jones & Bartlett Learning: Burlington, MA.

scoliotic curves can result from leg-length discrepancies, muscle disuse/overuse, habitual postures, and muscle guarding.

Height measurements are taken in sitting and standing. Changes in sitting height can be less than changes in standing height and give a better estimate of truncal growth rate. Trunk compensation is typically assessed using a plumb line, and a radiographic leg length measurement is also obtained.

Skeletal maturity is determined using the Risser sign, which is defined by the amount of calcification present in the iliac apophysis. The Risser sign measures the progressive ossification anterolaterally to posteromedially (**TABLE 26.6**). When children reach a grade 5 on the Risser scale, their scoliotic curves will stabilize. Children with idiopathic rotoscoliosis usually progress from a Risser grade 1 to a grade 5 over a 2-year period.

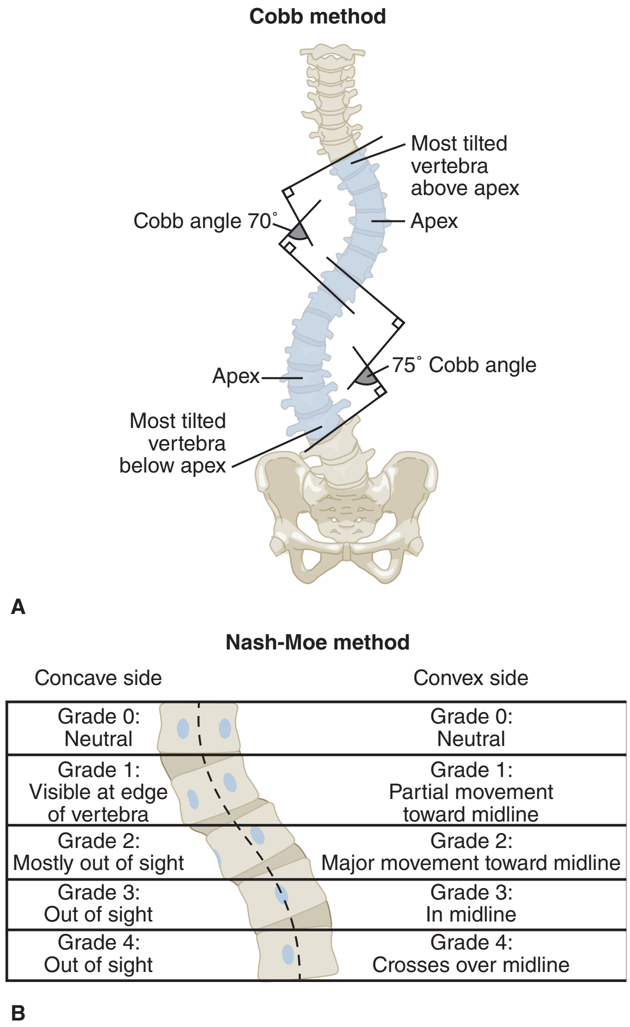


FIGURE 26.4 The Cobb method for measuring the extent of a rotoscoliosis curve.

TABLE 26.6 Risser Grades

Grade	Interpretation
0	Absence of ossification
1	25 percent ossification of the iliac apophysis
2	50 percent ossification of the iliac apophysis
3	75 percent ossification of the iliac apophysis
4	100 percent ossification of the iliac apophysis
5	The iliac apophysis has fused to the iliac crest after 100 percent ossification

Data from Biondi J, Weiner DS, Bethem D, et al: Correlation of Risser sign and bone age determination in adolescent idiopathic scoliosis. *J Pediatr Orthop* 5:697–701, 1985; and Little DG, Sussman MD: The Risser sign: A critical analysis. *J Pediatr Orthop* 14:569–75, 1994.

☑ KEY POINT

If a rotoscoliosis is neglected, the curves can progress dramatically, creating significant physical deformity and even cardiopulmonary problems, especially with severe curves. Pulmonary function tests are warranted in the presence of severe curves due to the resultant rib cage restrictions and decreased chest wall expansion.

Most curves can be treated nonoperatively through observation with appropriate intermittent radiographs to check for the presence or absence of curve progression. However, 0.3 to 0.5% have progressive curves requiring treatment (Boston, or custom thoracolumbosacral orthosis [TLSO]) or surgery.

☑ KEY POINT

Orthoses are typically prescribed for children with idiopathic rotoscoliosis who are skeletally immature (Risser sign of 0, 1, or 2) and have a curve from 25 to 45 degrees. The active theory of orthotics is that curve progression is prevented by muscle contractions responding to the brace wear. Exercises to be performed while wearing a brace, such as pelvic tilts, thoracic flexion, and lateral shifts, are often taught to patients to improve the active forces, although there is little evidence to support this practice.

Intervention Physical therapy intervention for rotoscoliosis is based on skeletal maturity of the child, growth potential of the child, and curve magnitude. At the time of writing, the primary benefits of exercise in a nonsurgical patient with mild rotoscoliosis are as follows:[9]

- Help with correct postural alignment following the bracing program. It is important to correct any asymmetrical postural habits to help prevent further development.
- Maintain proper respiration and chest mobility.
- Help reduce back pain.
- Improve overall posture and spinal mobility.
- Help the patient resume prebracing functional skills.
- Maintain muscle strength, particularly in the abdominals.
- Maintain or improve range of motion and spinal flexibility through promotion of proper length and strength relationships of the spinal and extremity musculature. The general rule is to stretch the muscles on the concave side and to strengthen the

muscles on the convex side. Asymmetric exercise is used to promote symmetry. For example, in a patient with a right thoracic, left lumbar curve, typical findings may include weakness of the right iliopsoas and right external oblique. Exercises that could be prescribed for this patient would include resisted right hip flexion at the end range with the patient in sitting to address the weakness of the right iliopsoas. The weakness of the right external oblique can be addressed using a left upper extremity diagonal reaching movement pattern emphasizing right thoracic sidebending (**FIGURE 26.5**). Other functional exercises for rotoscoliosis include the following:

- The patient is positioned in prone and is asked to place both hands behind his or her head while deviating the thorax away from the concave side of the curve (**FIGURE 26.6**).
- The patient is positioned in prone and is asked to reach overhead and extend the arm on the concave side (**FIGURE 26.7**).
- The patient is positioned in heel sitting and is asked to place both hands forward and flat while emphasizing trunk axial elongation. The patient is then asked to stretch both arms laterally away from the concave side of the curve (**FIGURE 26.8**).

FIGURE 26.6 Prone sidebending.

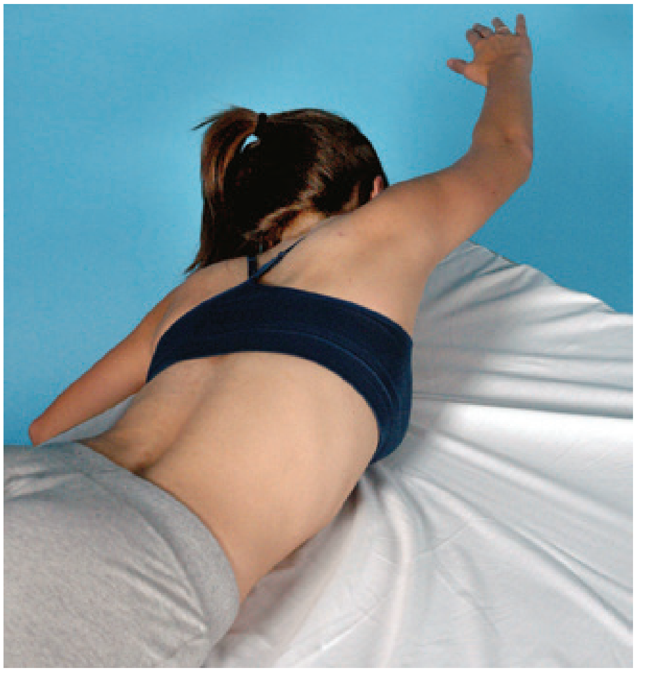


FIGURE 26.7 Prone reach.

FIGURE 26.5 Upper extremity diagonal reaching.

FIGURE 26.8 Heel-sitting stretch.

- The patient is positioned in side lying (convex side down) over the end of the table while the clinician stabilizes the patient. A pillow is placed directly under the apex of the thoracic convex curve. Using the arm that is closest to the ceiling, the patient reaches overhead and then down toward the floor to enhance the stretch (**FIGURE 26.9**).
- Swiss ball exercises can also be used, focusing on gaining increased thoracic extension while stretching the concave side (**FIGURE 26.10**).

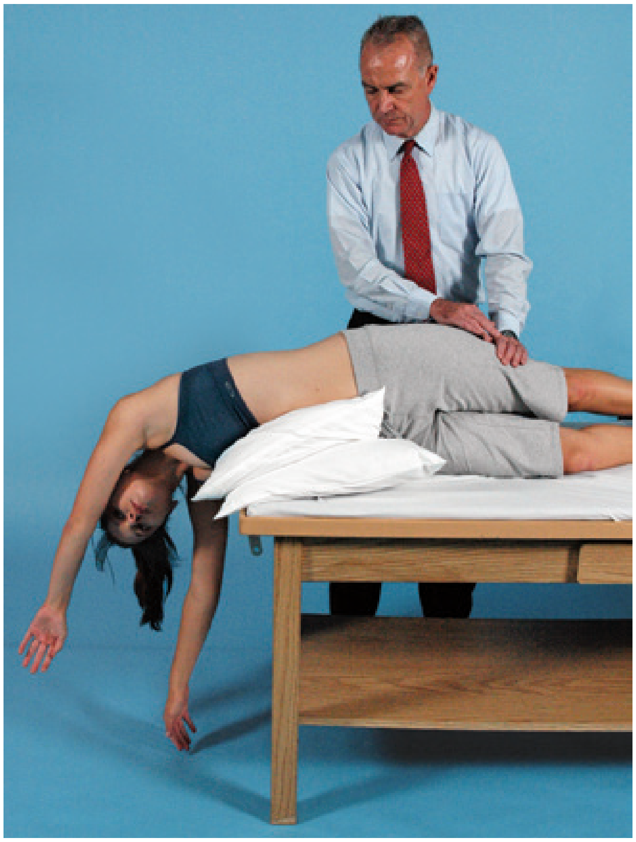


FIGURE 26.9 Side-lying stretch.

- Any of the strengthening exercises described in the "Intervention Strategy" section of Chapter 18 can be used to increase strength in the extensor muscle groups. Side-lying techniques (lying on the concave side) can be incorporated to strengthen the lateral muscle groups. The side-lying sit-up exercise is particularly effective (**FIGURE 26.11**).

If surgery is considered for rotoscoliosis, the primary goal is to achieve a solid bony fusion. Even in the setting of adequate correction and solid fusion, up to 38 percent of patients still have occasional back pain. If surgery is warranted, the postsurgical management can include the previously mentioned strategies and the following:

- Breathing exercises to promote rib cage expansion, pulmonary hygiene, and effective coughing
- Patient and family education

Slipped Capital Femoral Epiphysis

The hip is the largest joint in the body and is essential for postural stability as well as mobility. (See Chapter 23.) Disorders of the developing hip can cause delays or deficiencies in gross motor development with resultant developmental lag in other areas. SCFE is classified as a disorder of epiphyseal growth and represents a unique type of instability of the proximal femoral growth plate due to a Salter-Harris type I fracture through the proximal femoral physis.[10–14] The cause of SCFE is unclear. Stress around the hip causes a shear force to be applied at the growth plate and causes the epiphysis to move posteriorly and medially. In addition, the position of the proximal physis normally changes from horizontal to oblique during preadolescence and adolescence, redirecting hip forces from compression forces to shear forces.

FIGURE 26.10 Swiss ball stretch.

FIGURE 26.11 Side-lying sit-up.

The severity of SCFE is measured in grades of slippage (**FIGURE 26.12**).

The patient usually presents with an antalgic limp and pain in the groin. The leg is usually held in external rotation, both when supine and when standing. With attempts to flex the hip, the leg moves into external rotation to avoid impingement of the metaphysis on the anterior lip of the acetabulum. Consequently, there is reduced hip flexion, internal rotation, and abduction.

☑ KEY POINT

Knowledge of SCFE and its manifestations will facilitate prompt referral by the PTA to the supervising PT, and ultimately, to an orthopaedic surgeon.

Intervention The PTA may be involved in the treatment of these patients as inpatients or outpatients, in home care, or in a school-based setting. Functions of the PTA with this population include ordering equipment, providing mobility training, teaching and monitoring range of motion and strengthening exercises, and consulting about environmental adaptations. The goals of treatment are as follows:[14]

- Avoid further damage or remodeling of the affected hip joint to keep the displacement to a minimum.
- Maintain motion.
- Delay or prevent premature degenerative arthritis.

Following surgical fixation, using one or two pins or screws, usually in situ, the PT completes a careful and thorough examination of the motion of the hip joint, and subsequent measurements should be taken after every operation and removal of the cast. The weight-bearing status can vary but is usually non–weight bearing or touch down weight bearing. Full weight bearing is permitted when the growth plate has fused (within approximately 3 to 4 months).

☑ KEY POINT

Complications from surgery include chondrolysis and/or necrosis of the femoral head, both of which increase the likelihood of significant joint degeneration in later years.

Hip range of motion exercises should be performed in all planes, with particular emphasis on hip flexion, internal rotation, and abduction. Strengthening of the involved extremity is introduced when sufficient healing has occurred. Gait training postsurgery is initiated once lower extremity strength and range of motion are adequate for ambulation skills.

Legg-Calvé-Perthes Disease

Legg-Calvé-Perthes disease (LCPD) is an idiopathic osteonecrosis of the capital femoral epiphysis of the femoral head (**FIGURE 26.13**). LCPD has an unconfirmed etiology, but may involve an interruption of the blood supply to the capital femoral epiphysis—osteochondrosis (avascular necrosis of the epiphysis).[15–18] As with patients with an SCFE, knowledge of this disease and its manifestations will facilitate early recognition and referral by the PTA to the supervising PT. Patients tend to have a limp and frequently have a positive Trendelenburg sign resulting from pain or hip abduction weakness.[14] Limited hip range of motion is noted, especially in hip abduction and internal rotation. The child complains of pain in the groin, hip, or knee (referred pain).[14] The disease process takes from 2 to 4 years to complete.[18] Controversy exists regarding the appropriate treatment,

Content removed due to copyright restrictions

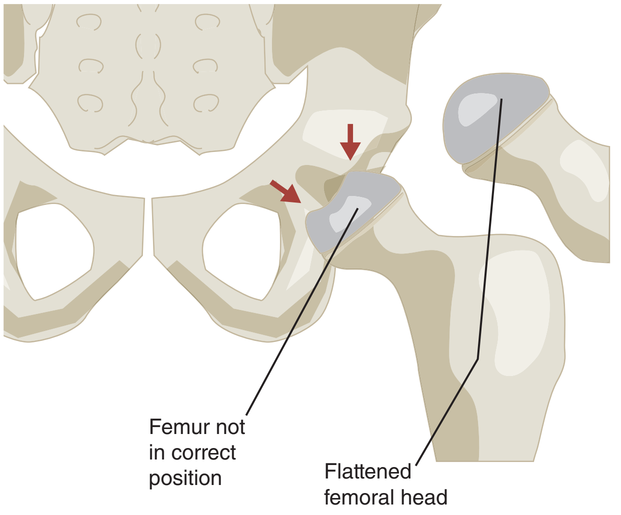


FIGURE 26.13 Legg-Calvé-Perthes disease.

or whether treatment is even necessary.[14] The goals of treatment are to relieve pain, to maintain the spherical shape of the femoral head, and to prevent extrusion of the enlarged femoral head from the joint. Physical therapy may be provided at home, at school, or in the clinic.

Intervention The various approaches to SCFE include:

- Observation only
- Range of motion exercises in all planes of hip motion (especially internal rotation and abduction)
- Bracing
- Casting
- Surgery

Specific procedural interventions (e.g., crutch training, aquatic therapy) can be used to relieve the forces incurred during weight bearing. Gait training may be initiated with an orthosis or with bracing. The specific gait pattern and assistive devices depend on the type of orthosis. Patient and family education is necessary to teach hip protection strategies, thereby minimizing degenerative changes as the child ages.

Scheuermann's Disease

Scheuermann's disease is found in males and females equally, and it is seen in most typically in pubescent athletes. The disease involves a defect to the ring apophysis of the vertebral body and anterior wedging of the affected vertebrae, as a result of a flexion overload of the anterior vertebral body (**FIGURE 26.14**). The end plate can crack, thus making it possible for disk material to bulge into the vertebral body (Schmorl's node). The initial onset is typically asymptomatic, but as the condition progresses, the patient may complain of an aching sensation in the upper spine. In addition there may be observational evidence of an increased thoracic kyphosis and pain with thoracic extension and rotation, usually detected during a school physical or noted by the parents.

Intervention The intervention depends on the severity but typically involves postural education, a modification of the aggravating activity, exercise, or bracing. The exercise program involves stretching of the pectoralis major and minor muscles, and muscle strengthening exercises for the thoracic spine extensors (seated rotation, and extension in lying exercises) and the scapular adductors.

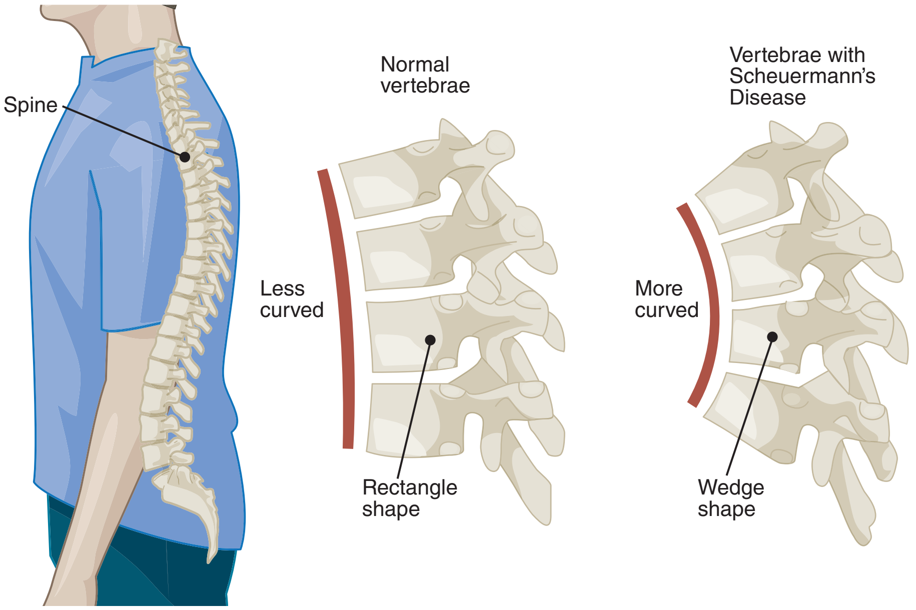


FIGURE 26.14 Scheuermann's disease.

Osteochondritis Dissecans

Osteochondritis dissecans (OCD) is a rare cause of anterior knee or elbow pain in the young athlete. OCD is a joint disorder in which cracks form in the articular cartilage and the underlying subchondral bone due to vascular deprivation (avascular necrosis). The result is fragmentation (dissection) of both cartilage and bone, and the free movement of these osteochondral fragments within the joint space, causing pain and further damage. If it occurs in the knee, it involves the weight-bearing portions of the medial and lateral femoral condyles.

Occasionally, pain may not be the most prominent symptom, but a catching sensation with joint motion may be the primary complaint if there is a loose body within the joint space. If the lesion is small, a painful arc is present during active and passive movement. Nonsurgical treatment is rarely an option because the capacity for articular cartilage to heal is limited. As a result, even moderate cases require some form of surgery. When possible, nonoperative forms of management such as protected weight bearing (partial or non–weight bearing) and immobilization are used. Surgical treatment varies and includes arthroscopic drilling of intact lesions, securing of cartilage flap lesions with pins or screws, drilling and replacement of cartilage plugs, stem cell transplantation, and joint replacement.

Intervention Postoperative rehabilitation usually involves immobilization and then physical therapy. During the immobilization period, isometric exercises are commonly used to restore muscle lost to atrophy without disturbing the cartilage of the involved joint. Once the immobilization period has ended, physical therapy involves protection of the joint's cartilage surface and underlying subchondral bone with maintenance of muscle strength and range of motion and low-impact activities, such as walking or swimming.

Osgood-Schlatter Disease

Osgood-Schlatter (OS) disease (traction apophysitis) is a benign, self-limiting knee condition that is one of the most common causes of knee pain in the adolescent. The condition occurs in active boys and girls aged 11 to 18 coinciding with periods of growth spurts. Historically, OS was thought to occur more frequently in boys than in girls, with reports of a male-to-female ratio ranging from 3:1 to as high as 7:1. However, current evidence supports the notion of equal prevalence in boys and girls. This shift in prevalence is likely due to the increased participation of females in sport. During periods of rapid growth, stress from the repeated contraction of the quadriceps is transmitted through the patellar tendon onto a small portion of the partially developed tibial tuberosity. This may result in a partial avulsion fracture through the ossification center. Eventually, secondary heterotopic bone formation occurs in the tendon near its insertion, producing a visible lump. Pain over the tibial tuberosity is mild and intermittent initially. In the acute phase the pain is severe and continuous in nature. The pain occurs during activities such as running, jumping, squatting, and especially ascending or descending stairs and during kneeling. The pain is worse with acute knee impact. The pain can be reproduced by extending the knee against resistance or stressing the quadriceps. Bilateral symptoms are observed in 20 to 30 percent of patients.

Intervention The intervention for this condition is usually symptomatic, including anti-inflammatory measures. Specific procedural interventions include bracing (neoprene knee brace); progressive quadriceps stretching exercises, including hip extension for a complete stretch of the extensor mechanism; and stretching exercises for the hamstrings. The traditional approach of activity limitations is no longer considered necessary, although the more persistent cases may require cast immobilization for 6 to 8 weeks. Rarely, individuals will require surgical excision of symptomatic ossicles or degenerated tendons for persistent symptoms at skeletal maturity.

Little Leaguer's Elbow

Little leaguer's elbow is a common term for an avulsion lesion to the medial apophysis as a result of repetitive valgus stress. The repetitive motions involved in the various phases of throwing place enormous strains on the elbow, particularly during the late cocking and acceleration phases, which can result in inflammation, scar formation, loose bodies, ligament sprains or ruptures, and the more serious conditions of osteochondritis or an avulsion fracture. Little leaguer's elbow may start insidiously or suddenly. Usually, a sudden onset of pain is secondary to fracture at the site of the lesion.

Intervention Management is conservative, involving rest and elimination of the offending activity. Lesions involving less than 0.5 to 1 centimeter of apophyseal separation are initially treated with rest. This is followed by a rehabilitation program similar to that described for medial epicondylitis; however, resistance exercises are avoided until active range of motion can be performed to full motion without pain (generally 2 to 3 weeks). Throwing is avoided for 6 to

12 weeks. If osteochondritis dissecans is present, the joint needs protection for several months. Separations greater than 0.5 to 1 centimeter, failure to respond to conservative measures, or sudden traumatic avulsions are indications for surgery. The patient cannot return to pitching until full and normal motion and strength has returned.

Pulled Elbow

The term *pulled elbow*, also referred to as "nursemaid's elbow," refers to a common minor soft tissue injury of the radiohumeral joint in children of preschool age, caused by a sudden longitudinal traction force on the pronated forearm and extended elbow. A pulled elbow results from the radial head slipping through the annular ligament, causing the fibers of the annular ligament to become interposed between the radius and the capitellum of the humerus.

Common causes of pulled elbow include the following:[19]

- The child's forearm or hand is being held firmly by a parent as the child attempts to walk away.
- The child is lifted by an adult from the ground by the child's hands.
- A parent snatches the hand of a child to prevent a fall as the child wanders toward the edge of the pavement.
- The young child may be lifted by the hand from a lying or sitting position or may even be swung around by the hands several times during the course of play.
- The child actually does the pulling, either as he or she stumbles and falls or while trying to escape the grasping hand of an adult.

The child presents with a painful and dangling arm, which hangs limply with the elbow extended and the forearm pronated.[19] There is usually no obvious swelling or deformity. The common sites of pain are (in order of occurrence) the forearm and wrist, the wrist alone, and the elbow alone. In all cases the child resists attempted supination of the forearm.

Intervention The intervention of choice is manipulation by either the PT or physician. Soon after the manipulation, the child usually begins to use the arm again, but sometimes there is a delay of a day or two. In such cases, a sling can be used to both give comfort and protect the arm from being pulled again.

An important aspect in the management is to advise the parents to avoid longitudinal traction strain on the child's arm—the parents should not pull on the hands or wrists of the child.[19]

Sever's Disease (Calcaneal Apophysitis)

Sever's disease is a traction apophysitis at the insertion of the Achilles tendon and is a common cause of heel pain in the athletically active child.

The calcaneal apophysis serves as the attachment for the Achilles tendon superiorly and for the plantar fascia and the short muscles of the sole of the foot inferiorly. Young gymnasts and dancers are particularly susceptible to this condition because of their repetitive jumping or landing from a height.

Intervention The intervention for Sever's disease begins with shortening the heel cord using heel cups or heel wedges, and avoiding barefoot walking until becoming asymptomatic. Stretching of the heel cord is initiated only after symptoms have subsided.

Congenital

Congenital conditions are conditions an individual is born with; however, they are not necessarily inherited. Congenital conditions can be caused by any number of "problems" during pregnancy (e.g., infection, poor positioning in the uterus, toxins, unknown causes), whereas inherited conditions refer to a trait (dominant, recessive, or polygenic) that is linked to a gene and passed on from one generation to another.

Developmental Dysplasia of the Hip

DDH, formerly referred to as congenital hip dysplasia (CHD), involves an abnormal growth/development of the hip including the osseous structures, such as the acetabulum and the proximal femur, and the labrum, capsule, and other soft tissues, which results in a failure of the femoral head to rest in the acetabulum of the pelvis. The condition may occur at any time during fetal growth, from conception to skeletal maturity, but usually develops in the last trimester of pregnancy. The various types of developmental dysplasia of the hip in infancy are outlined in **TABLE 26.7**.

> **☑ KEY POINT**
>
> Early detection is key with this condition. Evidence suggests that early detection within the first 3 months of life is critical in preventing the development of any secondary complications.[20] Diagnosis by X-ray examination is difficult or impossible in infants younger than 6 to 8 months because of the lack of ossification of the joint. Ultrasound is the diagnostic modality of choice.[20]

TABLE 26.7 Types of Developmental Dysplasia of the Hip in Infancy

Type	Definition
Dysplasia	Acetabulum may be shallow or small with diminished lateral borders. May occur alone or with any level of femoral deformity or displacement.
Subluxation	The femoral head is displaced to the rim of the acetabulum, sliding laterally.
Dislocated	The femoral head is displaced completely outside the acetabulum but can be reduced with manual pressure.
Tetraologic (one of the symptoms associated with Tetralogy of Fallot)	The femoral head lies completely outside the hip socket and cannot be reduced with manual pressure.

FIGURE 26.15 Pavlik harness.

© Dr. P. Marazzi/Photo Researchers, Inc.

Intervention The treatment of this condition depends on the child's age and the severity of the condition. Although surgical intervention is an option in severe cases, the conservative approach is discussed here. Conservative treatment is most effective for infants whose subluxation or dislocation has been discovered and treated early, within the first 6 months of life. The conservative approach involves maintaining the hip in flexion and abduction through bracing, splinting, or diapering until it is adequately remodeled.

- *Diapering*. The child is placed in two or three diapers holding the legs in abduction, and parents are instructed to position the infant in hip flexion as well.
- *Pavlik harness* (**FIGURE 26.15**). This is used if symptoms persist after several weeks. The harness, which is initially worn 24 hours per day for 6 to 12 weeks, restricts hip extension and adduction and allows the hip to be maintained in flexion and abduction, the "protective position."[14] The position of flexion and abduction enhances normal acetabular development, and the kicking motion allowed in this position stretches the contracted hip adductors and promotes spontaneous reduction of the dislocated hip.[14] After the initial period, the harness is worn 12 hours per day for 3 to 6 additional months, or until both clinical and radiographic signs are normal. In infants older than 9 months of age who are beginning to walk independently, an abduction orthosis can be used as an alternative to the Pavlik harness.[14] If the Pavlik harness is used, it is important to teach the parents to place the hips in the correct position—too much flexion or abduction can cause excessive pressure through the femoral heads, resulting in possible avascular necrosis.

The PTA may provide strengthening and range of motion activities; progressive gait training; caregiver training for transfers, mobility, and exercise; or consult for adaptive equipment and functional access for the child.

Equinovarus

Clubfoot, or talipes equinovarus, is a congenital deformity consisting of hindfoot equinus (i.e., plantarflexion), hindfoot varus, and forefoot varus (the forefoot is curved inward in relation to the heel, the heel is bent inward in relation to the leg, and the ankle is fixed in plantarflexion with toes pointed down), which can be classified as follows:

- *Postural or positional*. Not true clubfoot.
- *Fixed or rigid*. This type of equinovarus can be either flexible (i.e., correctable without surgery) or resistant (i.e., require surgical release).

Intervention Treatment consists of manipulation (reducing the talonavicular joint by moving the navicular laterally and the head of the talus medially) by the PT, taping, stretching, bracing, and serial casting, which is most effective if started immediately after birth. The role of the PTA involves monitoring of the casts, providing developmental intervention to promote typical functional skills, and assisting in stretching and splinting.

Congenital Limb Deficiencies

Children with congenital limb deficiencies (CLDs) or amputations need to make substantial adaptations to achieve effective function as growth and maturation occur. A variety of genetic syndromes have been implicated in patterns of skeletal abnormalities in children, but the cause is unknown in approximately 60 to 70 percent of cases. Congenital limb deficiencies can be classified into two major groups:

- *Transverse deficiencies.* A limb that has developed normally to a certain point, with structures beyond that point absent. For example, a child's lower extremity has a fully developed femur, but no tibia, fibula, tarsal, metatarsals, or phalanges.
- *Longitudinal deficiencies.* A limb that has elements in the long axis of the limb that are absent. For example, a child who is missing the radius and thumb in one upper extremity, with the ulna, carpals, and other digits present.

The clinical presentation varies according to the type of CLD, the level of the deficiency, and the number of deficiencies or limbs involved.

Intervention The intervention for this population is directed toward helping the child develop appropriate functional and developmental skills while reducing any secondary impairments, such as soft tissue contractures. The PTA may be involved in problem solving, checking prosthetic fit, and communicating with team members.

Summary

The pediatric patient has many physical and physiological characteristics that constitute unique challenges for assessing and treating injuries. Growing musculoskeletal tissue is innately predisposed to specific injuries that vary greatly from injuries sustained by skeletally mature adults. Most of this growth occurs in two phases. There is a rapid gain in growth in infancy and early childhood that slows down during middle childhood. The second rapid increase in growth occurs during adolescence. A significant injury during one of these phases that interrupts the growth process can present serious challenges. When therapeutic exercise is prescribed for the pediatric patient, the PTA must be creative and try to make exercise fun in order to increase compliance.

Learning Portfolio

Review Questions

1. At approximately what age (in months) would you expect a typically developing child to be able to perform rolling?
2. At approximately what age (in months) would you expect a typically developing child to be able to perform independent sitting?
3. At approximately what age (in months) would you expect a typically developing child to be able to perform creeping (quadruped)?
4. At approximately what age (in months) would you expect a typically developing child to be able to walk?
5. All of the following are pathologies of the skeletal system that are present at birth in the neonate, *except*:
   a. Talipes equinovarus
   b. Scoliosis
   c. Sickle cell
   d. Osteogenesis imperfecta
6. While observing a patient's foot you notice the following deformity: foot inversion, forefoot adduction, and plantarflexion. What is the name of this deformity?

a. Talipes equinovarus
b. Talipes calcaneovalgus
c. Talipes valgus
d. Talipes calcaneus

7. The most common and serious deformities, as far as congenital dislocations are concerned, affect which of the following?
   a. Spine
   b. Hip
   c. Shoulder
   d. Knee

8. The clinical picture of idiopathic scoliosis includes which of the following?
   a. Inequality of leg length
   b. Lateral curvature of the spine
   c. Rotation of the spine
   d. All of the above

9. You are treating an overweight teenage male who has symptoms of moderate groin and knee pain. His leg abducts and externally rotates during hip flexion. What is the most likely diagnosis?
   a. Congenital dislocated hip
   b. Legg-Calvé-Perthes disease
   c. Slipped capital femoral epiphysis
   d. None of the above

10. You are beginning an intervention of a 6-year-old boy with his mother. The mother reports that she pulled the child from a seated position by grasping the boy's right wrist. The child then experienced immediate pain at the right elbow. Which of the following is the most likely diagnosis?
   a. Pulled elbow
   b. Little leaguer's elbow
   c. Radial head fracture
   d. Muscle strain

11. While treating an infant, you observe that there is limitation of abduction of the flexed right hip and an asymmetry of the gluteal folds. What deformity would you suspect?
   a. Osgood-Schlatter disease
   b. Osteogenesis imperfecta
   c. Acetabular dysplasia
   d. Osteochondritis dissecans

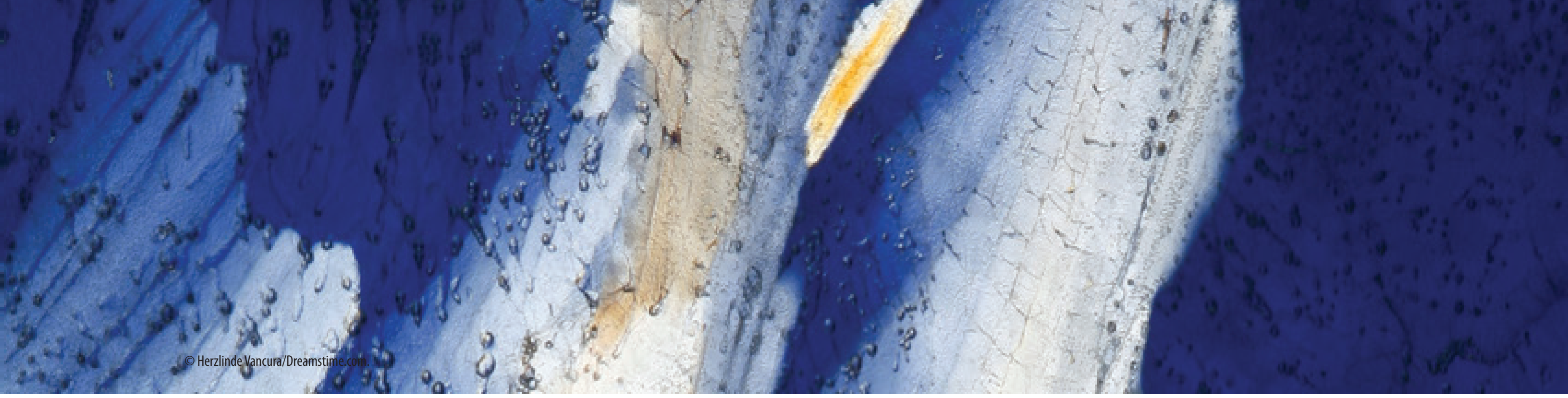
12. You are treating a child with a diagnosis of Sever's disease. What joint will be the focus of your treatment?
   a. Shoulder
   b. Knee
   c. Ankle
   d. Hip

13. Which of the following is characterized by tendinitis of the patellar tendon and osteochondroses of its tibial attachment?
   a. Legg-Calvé-Perthes disease
   b. Rickets
   c. Paget's disease
   d. Osgood-Schlatter disease

References

1. Lewis C, editor. Physiological response to exercise in the child: considerations for the typically and atypically developing youngster. *Proceedings from the American Physical Therapy Association Combined Sections Meeting*. San Antonio, Texas: APTA; 2001.
2. Connolly BH, Lupinnaci NS, Bush AJ. Changes in attitudes and perceptions about research in physical therapy among professional physical therapist students and new graduates. *Physical Therapy*. 2001; 81:1127–34.
3. Goolsby MA, Boniquit N. Bone health in athletes. *Sports Health*. 2017; 9:108–17.
4. Tsolakis CK, Vagenas GK, Dessypris AG. Strength adaptations and hormonal responses to resistance training and detraining in preadolescent males. *Journal of Strength and Conditioning Research*. 2004; 18:625–9.
5. Greenberg EM, Greenberg ET, Ganley TJ, Lawrence JT. Strength and functional performance recovery after anterior cruciate ligament reconstruction in preadolescent athletes. *Sports Health*. 2014; 6:309–12.
6. Garcia-Hermoso A, Sanchez-Lopez M, Escalante Y, Saavedra JM, Martinez-Vizcaino V. Exercise-based interventions and C-reactive protein in overweight and obese youths: a meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *Pediatric Research*. 2016; 79:522–7.
7. Whiting SJ, Vatanparast H, Baxter-Jones A, Faulkner RA, Mirwald R, Bailey DA. Factors that affect bone mineral accrual in the adolescent growth spurt. *The Journal of Nutrition*. 2004; 134:696S–700S.
8. Klepper SE. Juvenile rheumatoid arthritis. In: Campbell SK, Vander Linden DW, Palisano RJ, editors. *Physical Therapy for Children*. St. Louis: Saunders; 2006. p. 291–323.
9. Hundozi-Hysenaj H, Dallku IB, Murtezani A, Rrecaj S. Treatment of the idiopathic scoliosis with brace and physiotherapy. *Nigerian Journal of Medicine*. 2009; 18:256–9.
10. Kalogrianitis S, Tan CK, Kemp GJ, Bass A, Bruce C. Does unstable slipped capital femoral epiphysis require urgent stabilization? *Journal of Pediatric Orthopedics. Part B*. 2007; 16:6–9.

11. Kamarulzaman MA, Abdul Halim AR, Ibrahim S. Slipped capital femoral epiphysis (SCFE): a 12-year review. *Medical Journal of Malaysia*. 2006; 61(Suppl. A):71–8.
12. Flores M, Satish SG, Key T. Slipped capital femoral epiphysis in identical twins: is there an HLA predisposition? Report of a case and review of the literature. *Bulletin of the Hospital for Joint Diseases Orthopaedic Institute*. 2006; 63:158–60.
13. Aronsson DD, Loder RT, Breur GJ, Weinstein SL. Slipped capital femoral epiphysis: current concepts. *The Journal of the American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons*. 2006; 14:666–79.
14. Leach J. Orthopedic conditions. In: Campbell SK, Vander Linden DW, Palisano RJ, editors. *Physical Therapy for Children*, 3rd ed. St. Louis: Saunders; 2006. p. 481–515.
15. Herring JA, Kim HT, Browne R. Legg-Calve-Perthes disease. Part II: prospective multicenter study of the effect of treatment on outcome. *The Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery American Volume*. 2004; 86-A:2121–34.
16. Herring JA, Kim HT, Browne R. Legg-Calve-Perthes disease. Part I: classification of radiographs with use of the modified lateral pillar and Stulberg classifications. *The Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery American Volume*. 2004; 86-A:2103–20.
17. Moens P, Fabry G. Legg-Calve-Perthes disease: one century later. *Acta Orthopaedica Belgica*. 2003; 69:97–103.
18. Thompson GH, Price CT, Roy D, Meehan PL, Richards BS. *Legg-Calve-Perthes disease: current concepts*. Instructional course lectures. 2002; 51:367–84.
19. Sai N. Pulled elbow. *Journal of the Royal Society of Medicine*. 1999; 92:462–4.
20. Graf R. *Hip Sonography: Diagnosis and Management of Infant Hip Dysplasia*, 2nd ed. New York: Springer; 2006.


© Herzlinde Vancura/Dreamstime.com

CHAPTER 27

The Geriatric Orthopaedic Population

CHAPTER OBJECTIVES

At the completion of this chapter, the reader will be able to:

1. Describe the normal aging process as it relates to orthopaedics.
2. Describe the various theories of aging.
3. Discuss and describe the physiological factors that contribute to disease, impairment, functional limitation, and disability.
4. Discuss the various pathologic conditions associated with the elderly.
5. Describe the common functional limitations associated with the geriatric population.
6. Differentiate the principles of rehabilitation as they relate to the aging patient.

Overview

The purpose of this chapter is to provide an overview of the aging process in multiple systems and the impact of aging on the rehabilitation of acute and chronic musculoskeletal conditions that are common in the elderly. Aging is the accumulation of diverse adverse changes that increase the risk of death.[1] The rate of aging, that is, the rate at which aging changes occur, normally varies from individual to individual, resulting in differences in the age of death, the onset of various diseases, and the impact of aging on function.[1]

The Aging Process

Aging changes can be attributed to a combination of development, genetic defects, environment, disease, and an inborn factor—the aging process. These aging changes are responsible for both the commonly recognized sequential alterations that accompany advancing age beyond the early period of life, and the progressive increases in the probability of experiencing a chronic debilitating disease.[1] The incidence of chronic conditions has been shown to increase with advancing age and, because aging is often accompanied by a deterioration of general health, the geriatric population is especially vulnerable to loss of function and independence. In addition, because elderly individuals often suffer from several diseases at the same time (comorbidities), such as cardiovascular disorders, osteoporosis, arthritis, and diabetes, the interaction of these diseases produces a cumulative effect.

☑ KEY POINT

- *Geriatrics* is the branch of medicine that focuses on health promotion and the prevention and treatment of disease and disability in later life.
- *Gerontology* is the study of the aging process and the science related to the care of the elderly.
- *Ageism* can be defined as any attitude or action that subordinates a person, group, or perception purely on the basis of age. When that bias is the primary motivation behind acts of discrimination against that person or group, then those acts constitute age discrimination.
- *Senescence* can be defined as the combination of processes of deterioration that follow the period of development of an organism.

Aging is a heterogeneous process and therefore differs greatly among individuals, producing a great variability in health and functional status in the older population. Many changes are associated with aging throughout adulthood and into old age. **TABLE 27.1** summarizes these system changes. Musculoskeletal impairments are among the most prevalent and symptomatic health problems of middle and old age.[2] The subsequent loss of strength, motion, and increasing pain prevent elderly individuals from making full use of their abilities and from participating in the regular physical activity necessary to maintain optimum mobility, general health, and, in some cases, independence.[3] Although some elderly adults succumb to the functional limitations and disability associated with aging, disease, or injury, many elderly adults retain high levels of activity and functional abilities well into advanced age.

☑ KEY POINT

Normal aging can be defined as age-related changes that are the result of the passage of time rather than the result of pathologic conditions. Chronological age should not be used to determine potential for recovery or the appropriateness of referral for rehabilitation.

TABLE 27.1 Summary of Multisystem Changes in the Elderly

System	Changes
Musculoskeletal	Muscle mass and strength decrease at a rate of about 30 percent between the ages of 60 and 90. Change in muscle fiber type (white and red). Type II fibers (fast twitch) decrease by about 50 percent. The recruitment of motor units decreases. Bone tensile strength decreases. (More than 30 percent of women over the age of 65 have osteoporosis.) Joint flexibility is reduced by 25 to 30 percent over the age of 70.
Neuromuscular	Atrophy of neurons; nerve fibers decrease and change in structure. The myoneural junction decreases in transmission speed. Nerve conduction velocity decreases by about 0.4 percent per year after age 70. Motor neuron conduction slows, which contributes to alterations in the autonomic system. Decreasing reflexes result from a decrease in nerve conduction. Ankle jerk is absent in about 70 percent, and knee and biceps jerk are absent in about 15 percent of the geriatric population. Overall slow and decreased responsiveness in reaction time (simple reflexes less than complex). Increased postural sway (less in women than in men, with linear increase with age).
Neurosensory	Decrease in sweating (implications for modalities and exercise). 10 to 20 percent decrease in brain weight by age 90. Decrease in mechanoreceptors. Decrease in visual acuity and ability to accommodate to lighting changes resulting from increased density of lens. Decrease in hearing capabilities.

TABLE 27.1 Summary of Multisystem Changes in the Elderly *(continued)*

System	Changes
Cardiovascular and pulmonary	Decrease in cardiac output by about 0.7 percent per year after 20 years of age. Increased vascular resistance. Decreased arterial elasticity. Decreased cardiac reserve, and decreased physical and psychological response to stress. Increased irritation of myocardium contributes to increased risk of atrial fibrillation and arrhythmias. Decrease in lung function. (From age 25 to age 85 there is as much as a 50 percent decrease in maximal voluntary ventilation due to an increase in air resistance; this results in about a 40 percent decrease in vital capacity.) Respiratory gas exchange surface decreases at a rate of about 0.27 m^2 per year. (Maximum oxygen consumption for sedentary individuals of any age is 0.62 to 0.7 mL per minute.) Decrease in elastin in the lungs (increased rigidity) and chest wall soft tissues results in decrease in chest wall compliance. Decrease in vital capacity and decrease in pulmonary blood flow contribute to lower oxygen saturation levels. Decreased cough reflex.
Urogenital/renal	Gradual overall structure changes in all renal components. Decreased glomerular filtration rate and creatinine clearance. Change in response to sodium intake. Muscle hypertrophy in the urethra and bladder.
Gastrointestinal	Decreased peristalsis. Diminished secretions of pepsin and acid in the stomach. Decreasing hepatic and pancreatic enzymes.
Immunologic	Decrease in overall function with respect to infection. Decreased temperature regulation. Decrease in T cells.

Data from Bottomley JM: The geriatric population, in Boissonnault WG (ed): *Primary Care for the Physical Therapist: Examination and Triage*. St Louis, Elsevier Saunders, 2005, pp. 288–306; and Bottomley JM: Summary of system changes. Comparing and contrasting age-related changes, in Bottomley JM, Lewis CB (eds): *Geriatric Rehabilitation: A Clinical Approach* (ed 2). Upper Saddle River, NJ, Prentice-Hall, 2003, pp. 50–75.

Coexisting pathologic processes can exacerbate the effects of other conditions and result in greater functional limitations and disability. Throughout youth and early adulthood, the body has reserve physiological capacities and system redundancies that enable it to adapt to physical challenges and injury without a loss of functional abilities. The gradual decline of health and increased incidence of injury and disease experienced by older individuals can be partially attributed to the gradual loss of this physiological reserve.[3] Without this physiological reserve, an older individual is more susceptible to functional limitations and disability, resulting in frailty. Frailty is viewed as usual aging and the opposite end of the spectrum from successful aging.[3] It is important to remember that frailty is not a natural consequence of aging and that the performance of physical activity throughout the aging years can produce some physiological benefits:

- Substantial improvements can be made in almost all aspects of cardiovascular functioning.
- Individuals of all ages can benefit from muscle strengthening exercises. In particular, resistance training can have a significant impact on the maintenance of independence in old age.
- Regular activity helps prevent and/or postpone age-associated declines in flexibility, balance, and coordination.

Conversely, disuse exacerbates the aging process and negatively impacts the physiological reserve in the face of disease and injury.

Theories of Aging

A wide array of theories exist regarding why aging occurs, why species have the life spans they do, and what kinds of factors are likely to influence the aging process.

- Genetic theories focus on the mechanisms for aging located in the nucleus of the cell, implicating mutations and chromosomal anomalies that accumulate with age.
- Neuroendocrine-immuno theories focus on the decline in the system's ability to produce necessary antibodies that fight disease with aging, and a decrease in its ability to distinguish between antibodies and proteins. In essence, the immune system becomes self-destructive and reacts against itself. Examples of such autoimmune diseases are lupus, scleroderma, and adult-onset diabetes.
- Environmental theories focus on the cumulative damage caused by free-radical reactions. A free radical is any molecule that has a free electron. Theoretically, the free radical reacts with healthy molecules in a destructive way. It is known that diet, lifestyle, some drugs (e.g., tobacco, alcohol), and radiation are all accelerators of free-radical production within the body. However, there is natural production against free radicals within the body as a byproduct of energy production, particularly from the mitochondria.
- Planned obsolescence theories focus on the genetic programming of senescence genes in the DNA.[1] According to these theories, individuals are born with a unique code and a preprogrammed lifespan of physical and mental functioning, and certain genes regulate the rate at which we age.
- Telomeres are DNA–protein complexes that cap the ends of chromosomes and promote genetic stability. Telomere shortening theories focus on scientific findings that telomeres play a critical role in determining the number of times a cell divides, its health, and its life span.

Pathologic Conditions Associated with the Elderly

Many changes are associated with aging throughout adulthood and into old age, of which some are part of the normal aging process while others are pathologic. Complicating matters is the fact that comorbidities are more common in the elderly, which results in secondary complications associated with the primary pathology.

Cachexia is a pathologic process that involves increases in muscle protein synthesis and degradation, basal metabolic rate and energy expenditure, inflammation, and insulin resistance which results in a loss of muscle and fat mass.

Musculoskeletal Disorders and Diseases

The musculoskeletal changes associated with aging (refer to Table 27.1) affect all of the soft tissues, including skeletal muscle, articular cartilage, and intervertebral disks. Many of these changes are associated with a decrease in physical activity and the subsequent loss of strength. Sarcopenia, often defined as the age-related decrease in lean body mass, has become a topic of significant investigation.[4] There is a spectrum of changes in aging muscle, some of which are normal (age-related sarcopenia) and some of which are not (e.g., cancer-related anorexia and cachexia syndrome).[4] Age-related sarcopenia tends to begin at about age 60 in some muscles, and quite inexorably in others.[5] If left unchecked, muscle size can decrease an average of 30 to 40 percent over one's lifetime, and it affects the lower extremities more than the upper extremities.[6] Fiber loss appears to be more accelerated in type II muscle fibers, which decrease from an average of 60 percent of total muscle fiber type in sedentary young men to below 30 percent after the age of 80.[7] Type II fibers are used primarily in activities requiring more power, such as sprinting or strength training, and are not stimulated by normal activities of daily living (ADLs).[3] Therefore, resistive exercise for this age group should be directed toward increasing power, not just strength (see "General Guidelines for Strength Training in the Elderly").

☑ KEY POINT

The decrease in muscle performance with advancing age affects men and women differently—women experience a less steep absolute decline in strength than men.

A number of musculoskeletal disorders are associated more with the elderly population than with any other age group, for example, osteoarthritis. A description of osteoarthritis, its related signs and symptoms, and its associated impairments is included in Chapter 5. Osteoarthritis of the hip is described in Chapter 23, and tibiofemoral osteoarthritis is described in Chapter 24. The general goals of a physical therapy intervention for patients with osteoarthritis include:

- Reduce pain and muscle spasm through the use of modalities and relaxation training.
- Maintain or improve range of motion.
- Correct muscle imbalances.
- Strengthen weak muscles.

- Improve flexibility.
- Improve balance and ambulation.
- Improve aerobic conditioning using low- to no-impact exercises (e.g., walking program, pool exercises).
- Train patient in the use of appropriate assistive devices, as needed (e.g., canes, walkers, orthotics, and reachers).
- Provide patient education and empowerment in joint protection strategies, energy conservation techniques, activities to avoid, and how to maintain a healthy lifestyle (e.g., weight reduction).

Osteoporosis

Osteoporosis is a systemic skeletal disorder characterized by decreased bone mass and deterioration of bony microarchitecture. (See Chapter 5.)

Fractures

Fractures commonly occur among seniors and can have a significant impact on the morbidity, mortality, and functional dependence of this population. Most commonly, such fractures include pathologic fractures, stress fractures, distal radius fractures, proximal humerus fractures, proximal femur fractures, and compression fractures of the spine. These fractures are described in the relevant chapters throughout this book. Fractures in the elderly have their own set of problems because the fractures heal more slowly than for younger adults. Also, older adults are prone to secondary complications, including the following:

- Pneumonia, if the fracture causes a period of immobility or bed rest
- Changes in mental status secondary to anesthesia from surgery or pain medications
- Decubiti from immobility
- Comorbidities that may make healing and/or rehabilitation more difficult
- Decreased vision, placing patients at increased risk of falls and reinjury
- Poor balance worsened by limited weight-bearing status after a lower extremity fracture

Neurological Disorders and Diseases

A wide variety of neurological disorders and diseases can affect the aging population. Age-related changes in the brain start at around age 60. Normal, nonprogressive, and negligible declines among the aged do not dramatically impact daily functioning until the early 80s, but the more serious disorders/diseases can significantly affect cognitive function in old age. Not all cognitive disorders are irreversible, but many require timely identification and intercession to offset permanent dysfunction.

Delirium and Dementia

Delirium, dementia, and certain other alterations in cognition are often referred to as mental status change (MSC), acute confusional state (ACS), or organic brain syndrome (OBS).

Delirium presents with acute onset of impaired awareness, easy distraction, confusion, and disturbances of perception (e.g., illusions, misinterpretations, visual hallucinations). Recent memory is usually deficient, and the patient often is disoriented to time and place. The patient may be agitated or obtunded (have a depressed level of consciousness), and the level of awareness may fluctuate over brief periods. Speech may be incoherent, nonsensical, perseverating, or rambling, which may make the taking of an accurate history from the patient impossible. Delirium is often caused by medications, anesthetics, or infection and is reversible if treated early. If not, delirium can lead to dementia.

Primarily a disease of the elderly, *dementia* is a generic term most often used to describe geropsychological problems applying broadly to a progressive, persistent loss of cognitive and intellectual functions. Dementia presents with a history of chronic, steady decline in short- and long-term memory and is associated with difficulties in social relationships, work, and ADLs. In contrast to delirium, the patient's perception is clear. However, delirium can be superimposed on an underlying dementing process. Earlier stages of dementia may present subtly, and patients may minimize or attempt to hide their impairments. Patients at this stage often have associated depression.

> ☑ **KEY POINT**
>
> Any serious infection can lead to mental status changes.

Regardless of the definition, the end result of these dysfunctions is impairment of cognition that affects some or all of the following: alertness, orientation, emotion, behavior, memory, perception, language, praxis (applying knowledge), problem solving, judgment, and psychomotor activity.

☑ KEY POINT

In the elderly, the combined effects of visual and auditory impairments; dementia or other chronic brain dysfunction; medication side effects, particularly polypharmacy; and/or an unfamiliar environment or nighttime darkness can lead to acute confusion or psychosis, which is known as *sundowning*. As the name implies, this condition usually occurs in the evening hours.

Intervention The physical therapy intervention for delerium or dementia will depend on the extent of the disease; the treatment approach must be modified based on the level of cognitive impairment of the patient. For example, it may be necessary to speak slowly and clearly and have the patient repeat back or demonstrate back. Visual reminders that provide reorienting information (handouts, calendars, signs, memory aids, or notes on items to be utilized by patient) may be required. It is often important to have the patient repeat activities multiple times, and to elicit help from family members/caregivers. The major areas to cover include the following:

- Improve self-care abilities to carry out ADLs (e.g., grooming, hygiene, continence).
- Provide a safe environment to prevent falls, injury, or further dysfunction.
- Provide a soothing environment by reducing environmental distractions, which will help to decrease agitation and to increase attention.

Depression

The multiple possible causes for depression in the elderly have many different sources. Examples include the following:

- Unresolved, repressed traumatic experiences from childhood or later life that may surface when a senior slows down
- Previous history of depression
- Damage to body image (from amputation, cancer surgery, or heart attack)
- Fear of death or dying
- Frustration with memory loss
- Difficulty adjusting to stressful or changing conditions (e.g., housing and living conditions, loss of loved ones or friends, loss of capabilities)
- Substance abuse (alcohol)
- Loneliness, isolation
- Impact of retirement (whether the individual has chosen to stop working, been laid off, or been forced to stop because of chronic health problems or a disability)
- Being unmarried (especially if widowed) or recent bereavement
- Lack of a supportive social network
- Decreased mobility due to illness or loss of driving privileges
- Extreme dependency

Intervention Depression often requires professional help, but the physical therapist assistant (PTA) can play an important role by demonstrating empathy and support, helping the patient to find support groups, and, in some cases, referring the patient to an appropriate resource (e.g., psychotherapy, social service).

Cardiovascular Disorders and Diseases

Age-related anatomic and physiological changes of the heart and blood vessels result in reduced capacity for oxygen transport at rest and in response to situations imposing an increase in metabolic demand for oxygen.[3] Also, maximal oxygen consumption (PO_2 max), an index of maximal cardiovascular function, decreases 5 to 15 percent per decade after the age of 25 years.[8] As a result, at submaximal exercise, heart rate responses, such as cardiac output and stroke volume, are lower in older adults at the same absolute work rates, while blood pressures tends to be higher.[8]

Hypertension

Regulation of normal blood pressure is a complex process. Although multiple factors influence the function of cardiac output and peripheral vascular resistance, both heart rate and stroke volume are important influences.

Hypertension may be either essential or secondary:

- *Essential.*[9–18] A possible pathogenesis of essential hypertension has been proposed in which multiple factors, including genetic predisposition, excess dietary salt intake, and adrenergic tone, may interact to produce hypertension. The progression begins with prehypertension in persons ages 10 to 30 years (by increased cardiac output), moving on to early hypertension in persons ages 20 to 40 years (in which increased peripheral resistance is prominent), then established hypertension in persons ages 30 to 50 years, and, finally, complicated hypertension in persons ages 40 to 60 years.
- *Secondary.* The historical and physical findings that suggest the possibility of secondary hypertension are a history of known renal disease,

parathyroid dysfunction, adrenal dysfunction, various prescription medications, and obesity.

Hypertension can have a number of negative consequences that can impact rehabilitation, including the following:

- Left ventricular hypertrophy (LVH), left atrial enlargement, aortic root dilatation, atrial and ventricular arrhythmias, systolic and diastolic heart failure, and ischemic heart disease
- Hemorrhagic and atheroembolic stroke or encephalopathy
- A reduction in renal blood flow combined with elevated afferent glomerular arteriolar resistance, causing increased glomerular hydrostatic pressure secondary to efferent glomerular arteriolar constriction

☑ KEY POINT

Some medications prescribed for cardiovascular conditions can have significant implications for the exercising patient. (See Chapter 15.)

Intervention No consensus exists regarding optimal drug therapy for the treatment of hypertension. Most intervention approaches address lifestyle modifications:

- Lose weight if overweight.
- Limit alcohol intake.
- Increase aerobic activity (30 to 45 minutes most days of the week).
- Reduce sodium intake.
- Maintain adequate intake of dietary potassium, calcium, and magnesium for general health.
- Stop smoking and reduce intake of dietary saturated fat and cholesterol for overall cardiovascular health.

Cardiac Disease

The patient admitted to a rehabilitation program may not have been physically active for some time, and his or her level of fitness may have declined considerably. Two diseases of the cardiovascular system are worth noting:

- Coronary artery disease (CAD) is a complex disease involving a narrowing of the lumen of one or more of the arteries that encircle and supply the heart, resulting in ischemia to the myocardium. Injury to the endothelial lining of arteries (an inflammatory reaction), thrombosis, calcification, and hemorrhage all contribute to arteriosclerosis or scarring of an artery wall. The clinical symptoms of CAD include any symptoms that may represent cardiac ischemia, including angina (which may be reported as an ache, pressure, pain, or other discomfort in the chest, arms, back, or neck), or simply a decreased activity tolerance due to fatigue, shortness of breath, or palpitations.
- Myocardial infarction (MI) is the rapid development of myocardial necrosis caused by a critical imbalance between the oxygen supply and demand of the myocardium. This usually results from plaque rupture with thrombus formation in a coronary vessel, resulting in an acute reduction of blood supply to a portion of the myocardium.

☑ KEY POINT

It is very important that elderly patients have a physician's evaluation of their cardiovascular status before engaging in a rehabilitation program. In addition, the patient should be carefully monitored for their cardiovascular response and tolerance to exercise during their rehabilitation sessions. Heart rate (HR), blood pressure (BP), and rate of perceived exertion (RPE) should be assessed before, during, and after exercise, and the physical therapist (PT) should be notified of any abnormal or unusual findings.

Intervention The specific interventions for cardiovascular disease vary. Although the contraindications to exercise training for older adults are the same as for young adults, older adults have an increased prevalence of comorbidities that can affect cardiovascular function, such as diabetes, hypertension, obesity, and left ventricular dysfunction. The absolute contraindications for exercising in all adults—but in particular the elderly—include but are not limited to the following:

- Severe coronary artery disease with unstable angina pectoris
- Acute myocardial infarction (less than 2 days after infarction)
- Severe valvular heart disease
- Rapid or prolonged atrial or ventricular arrhythmias/tachycardias
- Uncontrolled hypertension
- Profound orthostatic hypotension
- Acute thrombophlebitis
- Acute pulmonary embolism (less than 2 days after event)
- Known or suspected dissecting aneurysm

Multisystem Dysfunction

Immobility/Disability

Immobility is a common pathway by which a host of diseases and problems in the elderly can produce further disability. Individuals who are chronically ill, aged, or disabled are particularly susceptible to the adverse effects of prolonged bed rest, immobilization, and inactivity. The effects of immobility are rarely confined to only one body system (**TABLE 27.2**).

TABLE 27.2 Pathophysiological Alterations Due to Immobility

Body System	Effects
Musculoskeletal	Decreased range of motion Decreased joint flexibility Development of contractures Loss of muscular strength (muscular atrophy) Loss of muscular endurance (deconditioning) Loss of bone mass Loss of bone strength
Integumentary	Development of pressure sores Skin atrophy and breakdown
Psychological/ neurological	Depression Decreased perceptual ability Social isolation Learned helplessness Altered sleep patterns Anxiety, irritability, hostility
Cardiopulmonary	Decreased ventilation Atelectasis Aspiration pneumonia Deterioration of respiratory system Increased cardiac output Increased resting heart rate Orthostatic hypotension
Genitourinary	Urinary infection Urinary retention Bladder calculi
Metabolic	Negative balance Loss of calcium

Data from Gillette PD: Exercise in aging and disease, in Placzek JD, Boyce DA (eds): *Orthopaedic Physical Therapy Secrets*. Philadelphia, Hanley & Belfus, 2001, pp. 235–42; and Thompson LV: Iatrogenic effects, in Kaufmann TL (ed): *Geriatric Rehabilitation Manual*. New York, Churchill Livingstone, 1999, pp. 318–24.

Common causes for immobility in the elderly include the following:

- *Musculoskeletal system.* Arthritis, osteoporosis, fractures (especially hip and femur), and podiatric problems
- *Cardiopulmonary system.* Chronic coronary heart disease, chronic obstructive lung disease, severe heart failure, and peripheral vascular disease
- *Neurological system.* Cerebrovascular accident; Parkinson's disease; cerebellar dysfunction; neuropathies; cognitive, psychological, and sensory problems (dementia, depression, fear, and anxiety); pain; and impaired vision
- *Environmental factors.* Forced immobilization (restraint use), inadequate aids for mobility
- *Malnutrition*. Malnutrition and poor nutritional status in the elderly contribute to progressive decline in health, reduced physical and cognitive functional status, increased utilization of healthcare services, premature institutionalization, and increased mortality
- *Deconditioning*. Deconditioning is a complex physiological process following a period of inactivity, bedrest, or sedentary lifestyle that can result in functional losses in such areas as mental status, degree of continence, and ability to accomplish ADLs. The most common effects of deconditioning include diminished muscle mass, decreases of muscle strength by 2 to 5 percent per day, muscle shortening, changes in periarticular and cartilaginous joint structure and marked loss of leg strength that seriously limit mobility. The aforementioned decline in muscle mass and strength has been linked to falls, functional decline, increased frailty, and immobility.

Intervention Intervention strategies to prevent disability from immobility should include the following, while monitoring vital signs:

- Minimize duration of bed rest. Avoid strict bed rest unless absolutely necessary.
- Be aware of possible adverse effects of medications.
- Encourage the continuation of daily activities that the patient is able to perform as tolerated while avoiding overexertion.
- Provide bathroom privileges or a bedside commode.
- Let patient stand for 30 to 60 seconds during transfers (bed to chair).
- Encourage sitting up at a table for meals.
- Encourage getting dressed in street clothes each day.

- Encourage daily exercises as a basis of good care. Exercises should emphasize:
  - Balance and proprioception
  - Strength and endurance
  - Coordination and equilibrium
  - Aerobic capacity
  - Posture
  - Gait and gait deviations
  - Cadence
  - Base of support
- Design possible ways to enhance mobility through the use of assistive devices (e.g., walking aids, wheelchairs) and making the home accessible.
- Ensure that a sufficient fluid intake is being maintained (1.5–2 liters of fluid intake per day as possible) as well as adequate nutritional levels.
- Encourage socialization with family, friends, or caregivers.
- If the patient is bed-bound, maintain proper body alignment and change positions every few hours. Pressure padding and heel protectors may be used to provide comfort and prevent pressure sores. It is very important that an assessment is made with regard to:
  - Skin integrity
  - Protective sensations
  - Discriminatory sensations

Impaired Balance

Age-related balance dysfunctions can occur through a loss of sensory essentials such as degenerative changes in the vestibular apparatus of the inner ear, inability to integrate sensory information, and muscle weakness. Diseases common in aging populations (e.g, Ménière's disease, benign paroxysmal positional vertigo [BPPV], cerebrovascular disease, vertebrobasilar artery insufficiency, cerebellar dysfunction, cardiac disease) lead to further deterioration in balance function in some patients. BPPV, a mechanical disorder of the inner ear, is the most common peripheral vestibular disorder and the most common cause of dizziness in the elderly. The condition is characterized by brief periods of vertigo that occur with a change in the position of the person's head relative to gravity. BPPV is generally caused by small crystals of calcium carbonate (otoconia) being dislodged from the utricle and settling within one or more of the three semicircular canals creating abnormal stimulation of the fluid-filled canal dynamics. Once diagnosed, one of two procedures can be used by a PT to treat BPPV: Epley's canalith-repositioning procedure (**FIGURE 27.1**) and the liberatory (Semont) canalith-repositioning maneuver (**FIGURE 27.2**).

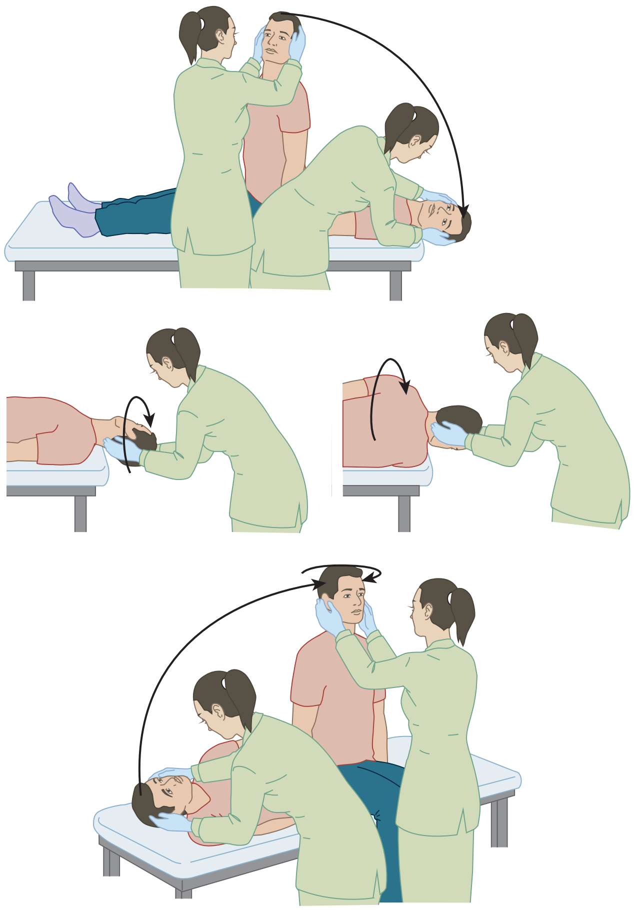


FIGURE 27.1 Epley's canalith-repositioning procedure.

Balance disorders can be associated with some other causes, including the following:

- Cardiac abnormalities
- Medications; classes of medications that may predispose a person to balance disorders include the following:
  - Tricyclic antidepressants—may cause hypotension
  - Antihypertensives
  - Anticonvulsants
  - Antianxiety drugs—may cause confusion
  - Antipsychotics—may cause hypotension
  - Sedatives
- Postural hypotension
- Sensory loss
- Joint stiffness
- Cognitive issues
- Visual/auditory deficits
- Postural impairments

The clinical implications of impaired balance include the following:

- Diminished perception
- Delayed reaction times, particularly in the ankle, hip, and stepping strategies (see Chapter 14)

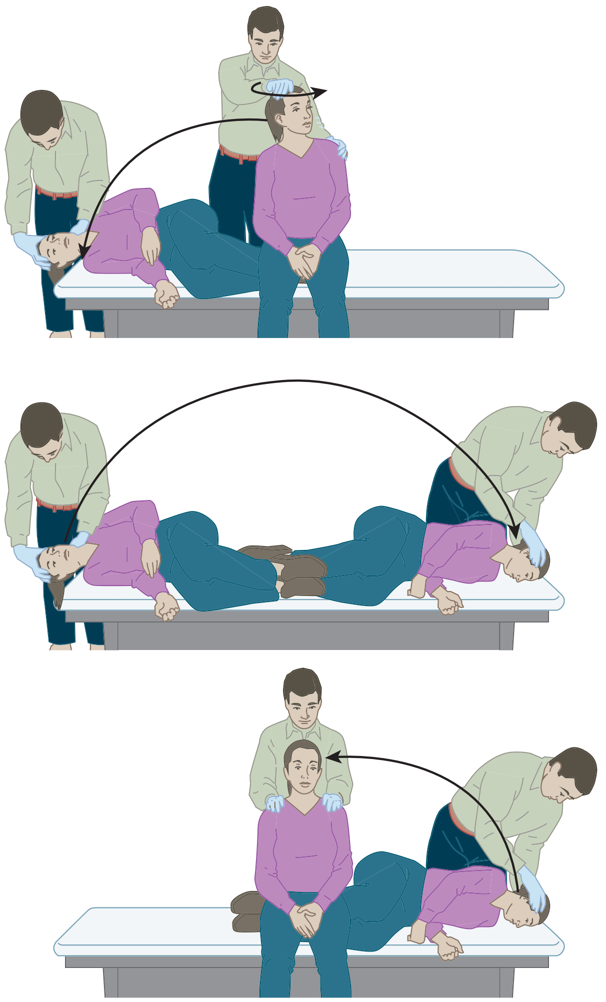


FIGURE 27.2 The liberatory (Semont) canalith-repositioning maneuver.

- Altered sensory organization—higher dependence on somatosensory inputs
- Disorganized postural response patterns—diminished ankle torque, increased hip torque, and increased postural sway

Falls can be markers of poor health and declining function, and they are often associated with significant morbidity:[19]

- According to 2010 National Health Interview Survey statistics, falls contributed to 13 million medically treated injuries, with 20 percent of those falls resulting in serious injury.[20]
- More than 90 percent of hip fractures occur as a result of falls, with most of these fractures occurring in persons over 70 years of age.
- One-third of community-dwelling elderly persons and 60 percent of nursing home residents fall each year.
- Elderly persons who survive a fall experience significant morbidity.
- Hospital stays are almost twice as long for elderly patients who are hospitalized after a fall than for elderly patients who are admitted for another reason.

There is evidence that falls can be prevented by screening to detect risk factors, by the prescription of tailored interventions, and by providing prevention strategies.[21] Elderly patients with known risk factors for falling should be questioned about falls on a periodic basis. A single fall is not always a sign of a significant problem and a greater risk for subsequent falls, as the fall may simply be an isolated event. However, recurrent falls (defined as more than two falls in a 6-month period) should be assessed by qualified personnel for treatable causes.

A mnemonic (I HATE FALLING) can be used to remind the clinician of key physical findings in patients who fall or nearly fall (**TABLE 27.3**).[22]

A home visit may be appropriate for assessing modifiable risk factors and determining appropriate

TABLE 27.3 A Mnemonic for Key Physical Findings in the Elderly Patient Who Falls or Nearly Falls

I	Inflammation of joints (or joint deformity)
H	Hypotension (orthostatic blood pressure changes)
A	Auditory and visual abnormalities
T	Tremor (Parkinson's disease or other causes of tremor)
E	Equilibrium (balance) problems
F	Foot problems
A	Arrhythmia, heart block, or valvular disease
L	Leg-length discrepancy
L	Lack of conditioning (generalized weakness)
I	Illness
N	Nutritional status (poor, weight loss)
G	Gait disturbance

Data from Sloan JP: Mobility failure, in Sloan JP (ed): *Protocols in Primary Care Geriatrics*. New York, Springer, 1997, pp. 33–8.

TABLE 27.4 Home Safety Checklist

Checklist		
____ Remove rugs	____ Ensure adequate ventilation and ambient room temperature	____ Use non-skid mats in the bathtub or shower
____ Remove objects on the floor and reduce clutter	____ Install color contrast at top and bottom or stairs or at change in height of flooring	____ Install a raised toilet seat, as appropriate
____ Always clear walk paths and repair as needed to prevent falls/trips	____ Eliminate chairs that are too low to sit in and get out of easily	____ Repair cracked sidewalks
____ Remove cords and wires on the floor – rethink extension cords and use outlets whenever possible	____ Ensure adequate accessibility for telephone (can be reached from the floor)	____ Install handrails on stairs and steps
____ Check for frayed wires	____ Ensure adequate accessibility for TV remote	____ Install adequate lighting by doors and along walkways leading to doors
____ Check for adequate illumination	____ Install grab bars in the bathtub or shower and beside the toilet	____ Install rechargeable flashlight by bed
____ Check for sufficient and working smoke, fire, and carbon monoxide detectors		
____ Secure carpet or treads on stairs and install handrails		

Data from Rubenstein LZ: Falls, in Yoshikawa TT, Cobbs EL, Brummel-Smith K (eds): *Ambulatory Geriatric Care*. St Louis: Mosby, 1993, pp. 296–304.

interventions. A home safety checklist can guide the visit and ensure a thorough evaluation (**TABLE 27.4**). It is particularly important to assess housing and caregiver arrangements, environmental hazards, alcohol use, and compliance with medications.

Several simple tests have exhibited a strong correlation with a history of falling. These functional balance measures are quantifiable and correlate well with the ability of older adults to ambulate safely. The tests also can be used to measure outcomes after interventions have been applied.

- *One-leg balance.* Tested by having the patient stand unassisted on one leg for 30 seconds. The patient chooses which leg to stand on (based on personal comfort), flexes the opposite knee to allow the foot to clear the floor, and then balances on one leg. The clinician uses a watch to time the patient's one-leg balance.
- *The timed "up and go" test.* This test (**TABLE 27.5**) evaluates gait and balance. The patient gets up out of a standard armchair (seat height of approximately 46 centimeters [18.4 inches]), walks a distance of 3 meters (10 feet), turns, walks back to the chair, and sits down again. A simpler alternative is the "get up and go" test. In this test, the patient is seated in an armless chair placed 3 meters (10 feet) from a wall. The patient stands, walks toward the wall (using a walking aid if one is habitually used), turns without touching the wall, returns to the chair, turns, and sits down. This activity does not need to be timed. Instead, the clinician observes the patient for any balance or gait problems.
- *The Berg Balance Scale (BBS).* This 14-item scale was developed to measure balance among older people with impairment in balance function by assessing the performance of functional tasks.
- *Performance-oriented mobility assessment (POMA).* This is an easily administered task-oriented test that measures an adult's gait and balance abilities. The assessment rates the ability of an individual to maintain balance while performing tasks related to ADLs. Components include balance, and lower and upper extremity strength.
- *Dynamic gait index (DGI).* This is an outcome measure used to characterize mobility performance, specifically, the ability to adapt gait to complex walking tasks associated with walking in community environments.

Overall physical function should also be assessed. This is accomplished by evaluating the patient's ADLs and instrumental activities of daily living (IADLs).

TABLE 27.5 Timed "Up and Go" Test

Task	Get up out of a standard armchair (seat height of approximately 46 cm [18.4 in.]), walk a distance of 3 m (10 ft), turn, walk back to the chair, and sit down again.	
Requirement	Ambulate with or without assistive device and follow a three-step command.	
Trials	One practice trial and then three actual trials. The times from the three actual trials are averaged.	
Time	1 to 2 minutes	
Equipment	Armchair, stopwatch (or wristwatch with a second hand), and a measured path	
Predictive Results	**Seconds**	**Rating**
	≤10	Freely mobile
	10 to 20	Mostly independent
	21 to 29	Variable mobility
	≥30	Impaired mobility

Data from Podsiadlo D, Richardson S: The timed "Up & Go:" A test of basic functional mobility for frail elderly persons. *J Am Geriatr Soc* 39:142–8, 1991.

Finally, a number of clinical practice guidelines (CPGs) have been recommended for use in the prevention of falls. These are described as follows:[21]

- *National Collaborating Center for Nursing and Supportive Care (NCC-NSC)*. This CPG, designed for the assessment and prevention of falls in older people, was developed by a multidisciplinary team that incorporated a variety of health professionals. It includes self-reported difficulties with balance and walking and recommends assessing the ability to stand, turn, and sit as being adequate for a first-level screening.
- *American Geriatric Society/British Geriatric Society (AGS/BGS)*. This CPG was also developed by a multidisciplinary team, including a geriatric-certified specialist physical therapist. Examples from this CPG include the timed up and go test, the BBS, and the POMA.
- *Moreland CPG*. This CPG does not address primary prevention of falls (screening), but rather was developed as a tool for clinicians and researchers to address evidence-based assessment and interventions for people who have fallen and are at high risk for future falls.

Intervention With patients who have a history of falling, the intervention is directed at the underlying cause of the fall and preventing recurrence. The supervising PT determines the presence of any disease states that can contribute to balance disorders. Fall-risk questionnaires can be used to help identify fall risk. The PT assesses the patient's static and dynamic balance and the need for an appropriate and safe assistive device/adaptive equipment. Functional training should include the following:

- Sit to stand transitions
- Turning, walking, and stair negotiation
- Patient and family/caregiver education, including identification of risks, safety issues and education, adequate lighting at home, using contrasting colors, reduction of clutter, and advice about modifying the living environment, as appropriate (refer to Table 27.4).

Therapeutic exercises should focus on the following:

- Strengthening and flexibility exercises
- Weight-bearing exercises to help prevent osteoporosis
- Balance and gait exercises

Impaired Coordination

The most salient age-related changes impacting coordinated movement include the following:

- Decreased strength
- Slowed reaction time

- Decreased range of motion
- Postural changes
- Impaired balance

These changes may be accentuated further by alterations in sensation, perceptual impairments, and diminished vision and hearing acuity.

Nutritional Deficiency

Nutritional status is a "vital sign" of health. Nutrition takes on greater importance in the context of chronic illness. With increase in age, there is an increased risk of developing nutritional deficiencies that can lead to such debilitating consequences as functional dependency, morbidity, and mortality. Some older persons are at increased risk for nutritional deficiency because of multiple drug therapies, dental problems, economic hardship, and reduced social contacts. These problems arise from many varied environmental, social, and economic factors that are compounded by physiological changes of aging.

Intervention Although not directly involved with the patient's nutritional status, the PTA should attempt to do the following:

- Maintain or improve the patient's physical function.
- Assist in monitoring the patient's nutritional intake by observing any physical or mental changes that could be nutritionally related.
- Speak with the PT about requesting a nutritional consultation as necessary.
- Communicate with social services about the potential need for elderly food programs (Meals on Wheels, federal food stamp programs).
- Discuss with the PT recommendations for home health aides, including the following:
  - Assistance in grocery shopping
  - Meal preparation

General Guidelines for Strength Training in the Elderly

A number of considerations must be made when designing strength training programs for the elderly due to the overall decrease in force generating capabilities and muscle performance as well as an overall loss of muscle mass. Muscle is at the end of the chain of events in movement, so virtually every step involved—from oxygenating the blood, to the delivery of oxygen to working muscles, may contribute in some manner to sarcopenia.[4] Fortunately, skeletal muscle demonstrates a high degree of plasticity and is thus able to adapt to its demands throughout life. Strengthening programs have shown significant improvements in muscle strength and muscle volume with the older population. The goals with this population emphasize increasing force generating capabilities, delaying muscle atrophy, and thus improving overall function, while giving consideration to the multiple comorbidities that can impact older adults. Given these facts, modifications have to be made to exercise protocols prescribed for younger and more athletic populations. Exercise protocols such as the DAPRE method (see Chapter 13) can be adjusted to suit the elderly population. For example, performing three sets of eight repetitions of an exercise at 80 percent of a muscle's 1 repetition maximum (RM) has been shown to increase hypertrophy and the force generating capacity of a muscle in the elderly.[23] In addition, maximal strength training (while taking into account factors such as history of cardiovascular or pulmonary disease, age, impact of present orthopaedic pathologic conditions, and comorbidities), with its emphasis on velocity in the concentric phase, improves maximal strength, the rate of force development, and work efficiency and has been shown to produce a significant increase in the size (66 percent) and shift toward a larger percentage (56 percent) of Type II skeletal muscle fibers, mirroring the muscle composition of the young.[24]

Ethical and Legal Issues

The healthcare industry is subject to numerous ethical and legal regulations, which throughout the years have brought changes to the actions of medical care providers and insurers to protect patients.

The Living Will (Advanced Care and Medical Directive)

Sometimes a patient may desire a treatment because it is a temporary measure that will potentially lead to the restoration of health. At other times, a treatment may be undesirable because it may only prolong the process of dying rather than restore the patient to an acceptable quality of life. The advanced care medical directive (ACMD), established by the federal Patient Self-Determination Act of 1990, was designed to address such issues. Advance directives are documents signed by a competent person giving direction to healthcare providers about treatment choices in certain circumstances. There are two types of advance directives:

- A *durable power of attorney for health care* ("durable power") allows a patient to name a

patient advocate to act on behalf of the patient and carry out his or her wishes (see the "Healthcare Proxy" section later in this chapter).
- A *living will* allows a patient to state his or her wishes in writing, but does not name a patient advocate.

The regulations for ACMDs vary by state; however, in order to be deemed a legal document the ACMD must be signed by the principal and witnessed by two adults. There are generally two broad types of situations in which the directive may apply:

- Terminal illness, where death is expected in a relatively short time.
- Permanent disability in an intolerable situation. This is a highly individualized decision.
- Many standard healthcare declarations instruct physicians to withhold "extraordinary care" or "life-sustaining or life-prolonging" treatments.

Refusal of Treatment

If deemed mentally competent (the patient understands his or her condition and the consequences any decision may have), the patient has the right to decide to accept or refuse any medical treatment. There are basically three broad reasons to refuse a certain treatment:

- *The benefit of the treatment is not great enough to justify its risk or discomfort*. This is the basis for most treatment decisions, and involves the individual attitudes each patient will bring to the decision. Some people will endure unpleasant and risky treatments for a chance to live longer; others prefer a more comfortable, shorter life, using the least possible medical intervention.
- *The treatment will prolong life under intolerable conditions*. Even an easily tolerated treatment with minimal discomfort might be unacceptable if it prolongs life in the face of unwanted circumstances. A feeding tube may be simple, safe, comfortable, and highly effective in preventing death from starvation and dehydration. Nevertheless, some may not want it used if another irreversible condition exists (for example, a persistent vegetative state).
- *Religious or cultural concerns*. A patient's religious and cultural beliefs can play an important role in the type of healthcare delivery.

Do Not Resuscitate (DNR) Orders

These orders apply only to cardiopulmonary resuscitation. There are specific rules concerning how they are to be written and who may authorize them.

Healthcare Proxy

A healthcare proxy is an agent who makes healthcare decisions for the patient when he or she has been determined to be incapable of making such decisions.

Informed Consent

Informed consent is the process by which a competent and fully informed patient can participate in choices about his or her health care. It is generally accepted that complete informed consent includes a discussion of the following elements:

- The nature and purpose of the decision/procedure.
- Reasonable alternatives to the proposed intervention.
- The relevant risks, benefits, consequences, and uncertainties related to each alternative.
- The likelihood of success or failure of the intervention.
- An assessment of patient understanding. In order for the patient's consent to be valid, he or she must be considered competent to make the decision at hand and his or her consent must be voluntary. If the patient is not deemed competent, consent must be obtained from a legal guardian or healthcare proxy.
- The acceptance of the intervention by the patient.

Summary

The field of geriatrics continues to gain attention due to the rapid growth of this segment of the population and its predicted future socioeconomic impact. It is therefore inevitable that future rehabilitation professionals will see an increase in the number of elderly individuals seeking services for the management of both acute and chronic conditions that can negatively impact active life expectancy or the number of years that an individual may expect to be independent in activities of daily living.[25,26] Therefore, rehabilitation, with its potential to restore function, prolong independence, and improve quality of life, can be extremely important in this population.

Learning Portfolio

Review Questions

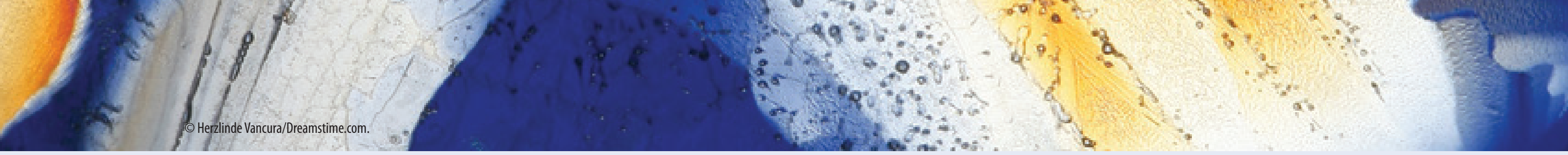
1. What is the name given to the study of the aging process and the science related to the care of the elderly?
2. The degenerative changes associated with osteoarthritis are most pronounced on the articular cartilage of which type of joints?
3. When evaluating risk of falling in an elderly patient, all of the following factors are known to increase risk, *except*:
   a. Using a walker
   b. Taking three prescription medications
   c. Fear of falling
   d. History of falls
4. Which of these interventions would *not* help reduce risk of falling in a 70-year-old man who lives in a nursing home?
   a. Gait training
   b. An exercise program
   c. Educating the staff about ways to prevent falls
   d. Evaluating whether assistive devices are being used appropriately
5. An 80-year-old woman who lives at home says she has never fallen but would like to reduce her risk of falling. All of the following interventions would be appropriate, *except*:
   a. A multifactorial program that includes exercise with balance training
   b. A multifactorial program that includes a review of medications
   c. A single intervention that consists of education on risk factor modification
   d. A single intervention that consists of gait training
6. You are advising a 72-year-old individual who wants to take part in a graduated conditioning program. Which of the following would be appropriate when prescribing exercise for the healthy elderly?
   a. Intensity prescribed using maximal age-related HR
   b. An initial conservative approach to reduce characteristic muscle fatigability
   c. An emphasis on low intensity and increased duration of exercise to avoid injury
   d. All of the above
7. While walking around a nursing home, you come across a patient who is lying on the ground and who complains of pain in the right groin and gluteal area. The right hip is flexed, abducted, and internally rotated. What is the most likely diagnosis?
   a. Dislocated tibia
   b. Fractured femoral head
   c. Dislocated hip
   d. Fractured acetabulum
8. Which of the following is *not* a neurological change associated with aging?
   a. Reduction in blood flow
   b. Reduction in muscle mass
   c. Increase in ventricular size
   d. Reduction of nerve conduction velocity
9. What is the earliest clinical symptom associated with dementia?
10. What are the two types of advance directives?
11. The process by which a competent and fully informed patient can participate in choices about his or her health care is called what?
12. You are working with a 72-year-old patient who has middle stage Alzheimer's disease and a recent total hip replacement. The patient is having difficulty following directions for ambulation activities using a walker. To best facilitate ambulation using the walker you should:
    a. First demonstrate the activity, and then provide physical guidance.
    b. Use single-step verbal directions.
    c. Physically assist the patient to perform the activities.
    d. Perform ambulation activities on the treadmill.
13. A 75-year-old is coming to physical therapy following a Colles' fracture and the subsequent diagnosis of osteoporosis. The fracture is now well healed and the plan of care includes the development of a home exercise program. At a minimum the exercise program should include which of the following?
    a. Wall push-ups and upper extremity Thera-band exercises
    b. Aerobic activity and exercises using eccentric muscle contractions

c. Active upper extremity diagonals and core stability exercises
d. Submaximal upper extremity active exercise and bike riding

14. An 89-year-old resident in a nursing home constantly delays treatment because he insists on relating stories about his involvement in World War II. Your best response in this situation would be to:
a. Indicate the stories are delaying treatment but that you would come back in your spare time to listen to them.
b. Suggest it would be more beneficial if the resident talked with people his own age about World War II.
c. Try to change the subject when the patient begins telling the stories.
d. Indicate, in a tactful manner, that the stories are distracting to you.

References

1. Harman D. Aging: phenomena and theories. *Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences*. 1998; 854:1–7.
2. Jette AM, Branch LG, Berlin J. Musculoskeletal impairments and physical disablement among the aged. *Journal of Gerontology*. 1990; 45:M203–8.
3. Voight C. Rehabilitation considerations with the geriatric patient. In: Prentice WE, Jr., Voight ML, editors. *Techniques in Musculoskeletal Rehabilitation*. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2001. p. 679–96.
4. Siparsky PN, Kirkendall DT, Garrett WE, Jr. Muscle changes in aging: understanding sarcopenia. *Sports Health*. 2014; 6:36–40.
5. Hunter S, White M, Thompson M. Techniques to evaluate elderly human muscle function: a physiological basis. *The Journals of Gerontology Series A, Biological Sciences and Medical Sciences*. 1998; 53:B204–16.
6. Gallagher D, Visser M, De Meersman RE, Sepulveda D, Baumgartner RN, Pierson RN, et al. Appendicular skeletal muscle mass: effects of age, gender, and ethnicity. *Journal of Applied Physiology*. 1997; 83:229–39.
7. Larsson L, Sjodin B, Karlsson J. Histochemical and biochemical changes in human skeletal muscle with age in sedentary males, age 22–65 years. *Acta Physiologica Scandinavica*. 1978; 103:31–9.
8. Heath GW, Hagberg JM, Ehsani AA, Holloszy JO. A physiological comparison of young and older endurance athletes. *Journal of Applied Physiology*. 1981; 51:634–40.
9. Avdic S, Mujcinovic Z, Asceric M, Nukic S, Kusljugic Z, Smajic E, et al. Left ventricular diastolic dysfunction in essential hypertension. *Bosnian Journal of Basic Medical Sciences*. 2007; 7:15–20.
10. Binder A. A review of the genetics of essential hypertension. *Current Opinion in Cardiology*. 2007; 22:176–84.
11. Cuspidi C, Meani S, Valerio C, Sala C, Fusi V, Zanchetti A, et al. Age and target organ damage in essential hypertension: role of the metabolic syndrome. *American Journal of Hypertension*. 2007; 20:296–303.
12. El-Shafei SA, Bassili A, Hassanien NM, Mokhtar MM. Genetic determinants of essential hypertension. *The Journal of the Egyptian Public Health Association*. 2002; 77:231–46.
13. Hollenberg NK, Williams GH. Nonmodulation and essential hypertension. *Current Hypertension Reports*. 2006; 8:127–31.
14. Kennedy S. Essential hypertension 2: treatment and monitoring update. *Community Practitioner*. 2006; 79:64–6.
15. Kennedy S. Essential hypertension: recent changes in management. *Community Practitioner*. 2006; 79:23–4.
16. Krzych LJ. Blood pressure variability in children with essential hypertension. *Journal of Human Hypertension*. 2007; 21:494–500.
17. Parrilli G, Manguso F, Orsini L, Coccoli P, Vecchione R, Terracciano L, et al. Essential hypertension and chronic viral hepatitis. *Digestive and Liver Disease*. 2007; 39:466–72.
18. Pierdomenico SD. Blood pressure variability and cardiovascular outcome in essential hypertension. *American Journal of Hypertension*. 2007; 20:162–3.
19. Fuller GF. Falls in the elderly. *American Family Physician*. 2000; 61:2159-68, 73–4.
20. Adams PE, Martinez ME, Vickerie JL, Kirzinger WK. Summary health statistics for the U.S. population: National Health Interview Survey, 2010. *Vital and health statistics Series 10, Data from the National Health Survey*. 2011:1–117.
21. Avin KG, Hanke TA, Kirk-Sanchez N, McDonough CM, Shubert TE, Hardage J, et al. Management of falls in community-dwelling older adults: clinical guidance statement from the Academy of Geriatric Physical Therapy of the American Physical Therapy Association. *Physical Therapy*. 2015; 95:815–34.
22. Sloan JP. Mobility failure. In: Sloan JP, editor. *Protocols in Primary Care Geriatrics*. New York: Springer; 1997. p. 33–8.
23. Ardali G. A daily adjustable progressive resistance exercise protocol and functional training to increase quadriceps muscle strength and functional performance in an elderly homebound patient following a total knee arthroplasty. *Physiotherapy Theory and Practice*. 2014; 30:287–97.
24. Wang E, Nyberg SK, Hoff J, Zhao J, Leivseth G, Torhaug T, et al. Impact of maximal strength training on work efficiency and muscle fiber type in the elderly: implications for physical function and fall prevention. *Experimental Gerontology*. 2017; 91:64–71.
25. Katz S, Branch LG, Branson MH, Papsidero JA, Beck JC, Greer DS. Active life expectancy. *The New England Journal of Medicine*. 1983; 309:1218–24.
26. Branch LG, Guralnik JM, Foley DJ, Kohout FJ, Wetle TT, Ostfeld A, et al. Active life expectancy for 10,000 Caucasian men and women in three communities. *Journal of Gerontology*. 1991; 46:M145–50.


© Herzlinde Vancura/Dreamstime.com.

Appendix A

American Physical Therapy Association Guide for Conduct of the Physical Therapist Assistant

A. Purpose

This Guide for Conduct of the Physical Therapist Assistant (Guide) is intended to serve physical therapist assistants in interpreting the Standards of Ethical Conduct for the Physical Therapist Assistant (Standards) of the American Physical Therapy Association (APTA). The APTA House of Delegates in June of 2009 adopted the revised Standards, which became effective on July 1, 2010.

The Guide provides a framework by which physical therapist assistants may determine the propriety of their conduct. It is also intended to guide the development of physical therapist assistant students. The Standards and the Guide apply to all physical therapist assistants. These guidelines are subject to change as the dynamics of the profession change and as new patterns of healthcare delivery are developed and accepted by the professional community and the public.

B. Interpreting Ethical Standards

The interpretations expressed in this Guide reflect the opinions, decisions, and advice of the Ethics and Judicial Committee (EJC). The interpretations are set forth according to topic. These interpretations are intended to assist a physical therapist assistant in applying general ethical standards to specific situations. They address some but not all topics addressed in the Standards and should not be considered inclusive of all situations that could evolve.

This Guide is subject to change, and the EJC will monitor and timely revise the Guide to address additional topics and Standards when necessary and as needed.

C. Preamble to the Standards

The Preamble states as follows:

The Standards of Ethical Conduct for the Physical Therapist Assistant (Standards) delineate the ethical obligations of all physical therapist assistants as determined by the House of Delegates of the American Physical Therapy Association (APTA). The Standards provide a foundation for conduct to which all physical therapist assistants shall adhere. Fundamental to the Standards is the special obligation of physical therapist assistants to enable patients/clients to achieve greater independence, health and wellness, and enhanced quality of life. No document that delineates ethical standards can address every situation. Physical therapist assistants are encouraged to seek additional advice or consultation in instances where the guidance of the Standards may not be definitive.

Interpretation: Upon the Standards of Ethical Conduct for the Physical Therapist Assistant being amended effective July 1, 2010, all the lettered standards contain the word "shall" and are mandatory ethical obligations. The language contained in the Standards is intended to better explain and further clarify existing ethical obligations. These ethical obligations predate the revised Standards. Although various words have changed, many of the obligations are the same. Consequently, the addition of the word "shall" serves to reinforce and clarify existing ethical obligations. A significant reason that the Standards were revised was to provide physical therapist assistants with a document that was clear enough such that they can read it standing alone without the need to seek extensive additional interpretation.

The Preamble states that "[n]o document that delineates ethical standards can address every situation." The Preamble also states that physical therapist assistants "are encouraged to seek additional advice or consultation in instances where the guidance of the

Standards of Ethical Conduct may not be definitive." Potential sources for advice or counsel include third parties and the myriad resources available on the APTA website. Inherent in a physical therapist assistant's ethical decision-making process is the examination of his or her unique set of facts relative to the Standards.

Standards

Respect

Standard 1A states as follows:

1A. Physical therapist assistants shall act in a respectful manner toward each person regardless of age, gender, race, nationality, religion, ethnicity, social or economic status, sexual orientation, health condition, or disability.

Interpretation: Standard 1A addresses the display of respect toward others.

Unfortunately, there is no universal consensus about what respect looks like in every situation. For example, direct eye contact is viewed as respectful and courteous in some cultures and inappropriate in others. It is up to the individual to assess the appropriateness of behavior in various situations.

Altruism

Standard 2A states as follows:

2A. Physical therapist assistants shall act in the best interests of patients/clients over the interests of the physical therapist assistant.

Interpretation: Standard 2A addresses acting in the best interest of patients/clients over the interests of the physical therapist assistant. Often this is done without thought, but sometimes, especially at the end of the day when the clinician is fatigued and ready to go home, it is a conscious decision. For example, the physical therapist assistant may need to make a decision between leaving on time and staying at work longer to see a patient who was 15 minutes late for an appointment.

Sound Decisions

Standard 3C states as follows:

3C. Physical therapist assistants shall make decisions based upon their level of competence and consistent with patient/client values.

Interpretation: To fulfill 3C, the physical therapist assistant must be knowledgeable about his or her legal scope of work as well as level of competence. As a physical therapist assistant gains experience and additional knowledge, there may be areas of physical therapy interventions in which he or she displays advanced skills. At the same time, other previously gained knowledge and skill may be lost due to lack of use. To make sound decisions, the physical therapist assistant must be able to self-reflect on his or her current level of competence.

Supervision

Standard 3E states as follows:

3E. Physical therapist assistants shall provide physical therapy services under the direction and supervision of a physical therapist and shall communicate with the physical therapist when patient/client status requires modifications to the established plan of care.

Interpretation: Standard 3E goes beyond simply stating that the physical therapist assistant operates under the supervision of the physical therapist. Although a physical therapist retains responsibility for the patient/client throughout the episode of care, this standard requires the physical therapist assistant to take action by communicating with the supervising physical therapist when changes in the patient/client status indicate that modifications to the plan of care may be needed. Further information on supervision via APTA policies and resources is available on the APTA website.

Integrity in Relationships

Standard 4 states as follows:

4: Physical therapist assistants shall demonstrate integrity in their relationships with patients/clients, families, colleagues, students, other health care providers, employers, payers, and the public.

Interpretation: Standard 4 addresses the need for integrity in relationships. This is not limited to relationships with patients/clients, but includes everyone physical therapist assistants come into contact with in the normal provision of physical therapy services. For example, demonstrating integrity could encompass working collaboratively with the healthcare team and taking responsibility for one's role as a member of that team.

Reporting

Standard 4C states as follows:

4C. Physical therapist assistants shall discourage misconduct by health care professionals and report illegal or unethical acts to the relevant authority, when appropriate.

Interpretation: When considering the application of "when appropriate" under Standard 4C, keep in mind that not all allegedly illegal or unethical acts should be reported immediately to an agency/authority. The determination of when to do so depends upon each situation's unique set of facts, applicable laws, regulations, and policies. Depending upon those facts, it might be appropriate to communicate with the individuals involved. Consider whether the action has been corrected, and in that case, not reporting may be the most appropriate action. Note, however, that when an agency/authority does examine a potential ethical issue, fact finding will be its first step. The determination of ethicality requires an understanding of all of the relevant facts, but may still be subject to interpretation. The EJC Opinion titled: Topic: Preserving Confidences; Physical Therapist's Reporting Obligation with Respect to Unethical, Incompetent, or Illegal Acts provides further information on the complexities of reporting.

Exploitation

Standard 4E states as follows:

4E. Physical therapist assistants shall not engage in any sexual relationship with any of their patients/clients, supervisees, or students.

Interpretation: The statement is fairly clear—sexual relationships with their patients/clients, supervisees, or students are prohibited. This component of Standard 4 is consistent with Standard 4B, which states:

4B. Physical therapist assistants shall not exploit persons over whom they have supervisory, evaluative, or other authority (e.g., patients/clients, students, supervisees, research participants, or employees).

Next, consider this excerpt from the EJC Opinion titled Topic: Sexual Relationships with Patients/Former Patients (modified for physical therapist assistants): A physical therapist [assistant] stands in a relationship of trust to each patient and has an ethical obligation to act in the patient's best interest and to avoid any exploitation or abuse of the patient. Thus, if a physical therapist [assistant] has natural feelings of attraction toward a patient, he/she must sublimate those feelings in order to avoid sexual exploitation of the patient. One's ethical decision-making process should focus on whether the patient/client, supervisee, or student is being exploited. In this context, questions have been asked about whether one can have a sexual relationship once the patient/client relationship ends. To this question, the EJC has opined as follows:

> The Committee does not believe it feasible to establish any bright-line rule for when, if ever, initiation of a romantic/sexual relationship with a former patient would be ethically permissible.
>
> . . . . .
>
> The Committee imagines that in some cases a romantic/sexual relationship would not offend . . . if initiated with a former patient soon after the termination of treatment, while in others such a relationship might never be appropriate.

Colleague Impairment

Standard 5D and 5E state as follows:

5D. Physical therapist assistants shall encourage colleagues with physical, psychological, or substance-related impairments that may adversely impact their professional responsibilities to seek assistance or counsel.

5E. Physical therapist assistants who have knowledge that a colleague is unable to perform their professional responsibilities with reasonable skill and safety shall report this information to the appropriate authority.

Interpretation: The central tenet of Standard 5D and 5E is that inaction is not an option for a physical therapist assistant when faced with the circumstances described. Standard 5D states that a physical therapist assistant shall encourage colleagues to seek assistance or counsel while Standard 5E addresses reporting information to the appropriate authority. 5D and 5E both require a factual determination on the physical therapist assistant's part. This may be challenging in the sense that you might not know or it might be difficult for you to determine whether someone in fact has a physical, psychological, or substance-related impairment. In addition, it might be difficult to determine whether such impairment may be adversely affecting someone's work responsibilities.

Moreover, once you do make these determinations, the obligation under 5D centers not on reporting, but on encouraging the colleague to seek assistance. The obligation under 5E does focus on reporting; however, note that 5E discusses reporting when a colleague is unable to perform, whereas 5D discusses encouraging colleagues to seek assistance when the impairment may adversely affect his or her professional responsibilities. So, 5D discusses something that may be affecting performance, whereas 5E addresses a situation in which someone is clearly unable to perform. The two situations are distinct. In addition, it is important to note that 5E does not mandate to whom you report; it gives you discretion to determine the appropriate authority.

The EJC Opinion titled Topic: Preserving Confidences; Physical Therapist's Reporting Obligation with Respect to Unethical, Incompetent, or Illegal Acts provides further information on the complexities of reporting.

Clinical Competence

Standard 6A states as follows:

6A. Physical therapist assistants shall achieve and maintain clinical competence.

Interpretation: 6A should cause physical therapist assistants to reflect on their current level of clinical competence, to identify and address gaps in clinical competence, and to commit to the maintenance of clinical competence throughout their career. The supervising physical therapist can be a valuable partner in identifying areas of knowledge and skill that the physical therapist assistant needs for clinical competence and to meet the needs of the individual physical therapist, which may vary according to areas of interest and expertise. Furthermore, the physical therapist assistant may request that the physical therapist serve as a mentor to assist him or her in acquiring the needed knowledge and skills. Additional resources on Continuing Competence are available on the APTA website.

Life-Long Learning

Standard 6C states as follows:

6C. Physical therapist assistants shall support practice environments that support career development and lifelong learning.

Interpretation: 6C points out the physical therapist assistant's obligation to support an environment conducive to career development and learning. The essential idea here is that the physical therapist assistant encourage and contribute to the career development and life-long learning of himself or herself and others, whether or not the employer provides support.

Organizational and Business Practices

Standard 7 states as follows:

7. Physical therapist assistants shall support organizational behaviors and business practices that benefit patients/clients and society.

Interpretation: Standard 7 reflects a shift in the Standards. One criticism of the former version was that it addressed primarily face-to-face clinical practice settings. Accordingly, Standard 7 addresses ethical obligations in organizational and business practices on a patient/client and societal level.

Documenting Interventions

Standard 7D states as follows:

7D. Physical therapist assistants shall ensure that documentation for their interventions accurately reflects the nature and extent of the services provided.

Interpretation: 7D addresses the need for physical therapist assistants to make sure that they thoroughly and accurately document the interventions they provide to patients/clients and document related data collected from the patient/client. The focus of this Standard is on ensuring documentation of the services rendered, including the nature and extent of such services.

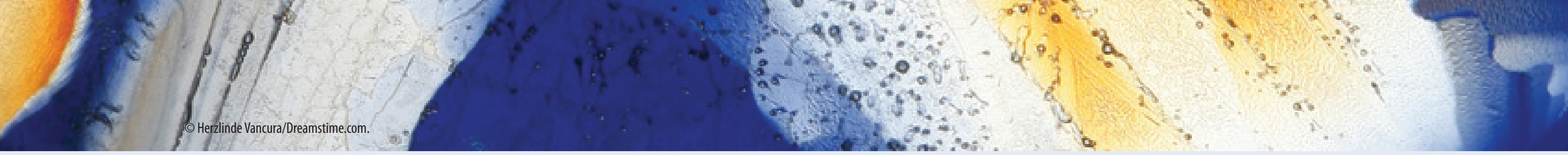
Support—Health Needs

Standard 8A states as follows:

8A. Physical therapist assistants shall support organizations that meet the health needs of people who are economically disadvantaged, uninsured, and underinsured.

Interpretation: 8A addresses the issue of support for those least likely to be able to afford physical therapy services. The Standard does not specify the type of support that is required. Physical therapist assistants may express support through volunteerism, financial contributions, advocacy, education, or simply promoting their work in conversations with colleagues. When providing such services, including pro bono services, physical therapist assistants must comply with applicable laws, and as such, work under the direction and supervision of a physical therapist. Additional resources on pro bono physical therapy services are available on the APTA website.

Issued by the Ethics and Judicial Committee
American Physical Therapy Association
October 1981
Last Amended November 2010

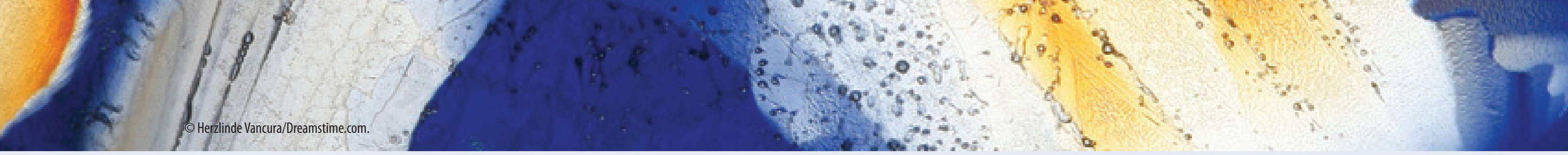

© Herzlinde Vancura/Dreamstime.com.

Appendix B

American Physical Therapy Association's Documentation Guidelines

- Documentation is required for every visit/encounter.
- All documentation must comply with the applicable jurisdictional/regulatory requirements.
- All handwritten entries shall be made in ink and will include original signatures. Electronic entries are made with appropriate security and confidentiality provisions.
- Charting errors should be corrected by drawing a single line through the error and initialing and dating the chart or through the appropriate mechanism for electronic documentation that clearly indicates that a change was made without deletion of the original record.
- All documentation must include adequate identification of the patient/client and the physical therapist or physical therapist assistant:
  - The patient's/client's full name and identification number, if applicable, must be included on all official documents.
  - All entries must be dated and authenticated with the provider's full name and appropriate designation:
    - Documentation of examination, evaluation, diagnosis, prognosis, plan of care, and discharge summary must be authenticated by the physical therapist who provided the service.
    - Documentation of intervention in visit/encounter notes must be authenticated by the physical therapist or physical therapist assistant who provided the service.
    - Documentation by physical therapist or physical therapist assistant graduates or other physical therapists and physical therapist assistants pending receipt of an unrestricted license shall be authenticated by a licensed physical therapist, or, when permissible by law, documentation by physical therapist assistant graduates may be authenticated by a physical therapist assistant.
    - Documentation by students (SPT/SPTA) in physical therapist or physical therapist assistant programs must be additionally authenticated by the physical therapist or, when permissible by law, documentation by physical therapist assistant students may be authenticated by a physical therapist assistant.
- Documentation should include the referral mechanism by which physical therapy services are initiated. Examples include:
  - Self-referral/direct access
  - Request for consultation from another practitioner
- Documentation should include indication of no shows and cancellations.

Data from American Physical Therapy Association: APTA's documentation guidelines. http://www.apta.org; and Dreeben O: *Introduction to physical therapy for physical therapist assistants*. Sudbury, MA, Jones & Bartlett Publishers, 2007

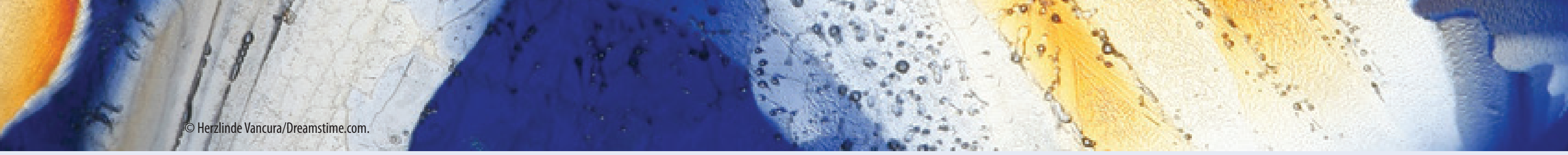

© Herzlinde Vancura/Dreamstime.com.

Appendix C

Commonly Used Abbreviations in Orthopaedics

AAROM	Active-assisted range of motion
abd	Abduction
add	Adduction
ACL	Anterior cruciate ligament
ADL	Activities of daily living
ad lib	As desired
AE	Above elbow
AFO	Ankle foot orthosis
AK	Above knee
amb	Ambulation
ANS	Autonomic nervous system
A-P	Anterior-posterior
AROM	Active range of motion
ASIS	Anterior superior iliac spine
BE	Below elbow
bid	Twice a day
BK	Below knee
BP	Blood pressure
bpm	Beats per minute
CC	Chief complaint
CGA	Contact guard assist
c/o	Complains of
CPM	Continuous passive motion
CR	Contract-relax
CTLSO	Cervical-thoracic-lumbar-sacral orthosis
CTR	Carpal tunnel release
d/c	Discontinued or discharged
DDD	Degenerative disk disease
DF	Dorsiflexion
DIP	Distal interphalangeal
DJD	Degenerative joint disease
DOB	Date of birth
DOE	Dyspnea on exertion
DTR	Deep tendon reflexes
DVT	Deep vein thrombosis
Dx	Diagnosis
EMG	Electromyography
ER	External rotation or emergency room
E-stim	Electrical stimulation
ex	Exercise
ext	Extension
FES	Functional electrical stimulation
Flex	Flexion
FWB	Full weight bearing
Fx	Fracture
HEP	Home exercise program
HNP	Herniated nucleus pulposus
HP	Hot pack
HR	Heart rate or hold-relax
Hx	History
ICU	Intensive care unit
Ind	Independent
IR	Internal rotation
JRA	Juvenile rheumatoid arthritis
Jt	Joint
KAFO	Knee-ankle-foot orthosis
LBP	Low back pain
LCL	Lateral collateral ligament
LE	Lower extremity
LOB	Loss of balance
LTG	Long-term goal
MCL	Medial collateral ligament
MCP	Metacarpophalangeal
MMT	Manual muscle test
MVA	Motor vehicle accident
N/A	Not applicable
NWB	Non–weight-bearing
OOB	Out of bed
OP	Outpatient
OR	Operating room
ORIF	Open reduction and internal fixation
OT	Occupational therapy
PCL	Posterior cruciate ligament
PF	Plantarflexion
PIP	Proximal interphalangeal
PMH	Past medical history
PNF	Proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation
Post op	Postoperative
PRE	Progressive resistive exercises
Prn	As needed

PROM Passive range of motion
PWB Partial weight bearing
qid Four times a day
RA Rheumatoid arthritis
r/o Rule out
ROM Range of motion
RTC Rotator cuff
Rx Treatment
SCI Spinal cord injury
SLR Straight leg raise
SOB Short of breath
STG Short-term goal
TBI Traumatic brain injury
TDWB Touch down weight bearing
TENS Transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation
THA Total hip arthroplasty
tid Three times a day
TKA Total knee arthroplasty
TKE Terminal knee extension
TMJ Temporomandibular joint
TTWB Toe-touch weight bearing
Tx Traction
UE Upper extremity
US Ultrasound
WB Weight bearing
WBAT Weight bearing as tolerated
WFL Within functional limits
WNL Within normal limits
y/o Year(s) old


© Herzlinde Vancura/Dreamstime.com.

Appendix D

Common Laboratory Values

Test	Related Physiology	Reference Range Example	Implications
Arterial Po_2	Reflects the dissolved oxygen level based on the pressure it exerts on the bloodstream	80–100 mm Hg	A value of 60–80 indicates mild hypoxia A value of 40–60 indicates moderate hypoxia A value less than 40 indicates severe hypoxia
Arterial Pco_2	Reflects the dissolved carbon dioxide level based on the pressure it exerts on the bloodstream	35–45 mm Hg	Help determine whether there is an imbalance in the amount of oxygen gas (O_2) or carbon dioxide gas (CO_2) in the blood (an acid–base imbalance), which may indicate a respiratory, metabolic, or kidney disorder
Arterial pH	Reflects the free hydrogen ion concentration; collectively this test and the arterial Po_2 and arterial Pco_2 tests help reveal the acid–base status and how well oxygen is being delivered to the body	7.35–7.45	A pH less than 7.35 indicates acidosis and a pH greater than 7.45 indicates alkalosis
Oxygen saturation	Usually a bedside technique (pulse oximetry) to indicate the level of oxygen transport	95–100%	Saturation levels below 90% (86% in the patient with chronic lung disease) are considered significant and warrant cessation of physical therapy and additional testing
Creatine phosphokinase (CPK)	An enzyme found predominantly in the heart, brain, and skeletal muscle that aids in protein catabolism; can be separated into subunits or isoenzymes, each derived from a specific tissue: ■ CPK-BB = brain ■ CPK-MB = cardiac ■ CPK-MM = skeletal muscle	Total CPK: Less than 30	High amounts of CPK are released into the blood when there is muscle damage.

(continues)

Test	Related Physiology	Reference Range Example	Implications
Lactate dehydrogenase (LDH)	Present in all body tissues and abundant in red blood cells and acts as a marker for hemolysis; isoenzymes are LDH 1–5	105–333 IU/L (international units per liter)	A general indicator of the existence and severity of acute or chronic tissue damage and, sometimes, as a monitor of progressive conditions
Alkaline phosphatase	An enzyme associated with bone metabolism/calcification and lipid transport	Adults: 30–120 IU/L Infants through adolescents: Up to 104 IU/L	Determines liver and bone disease
Sodium (Na)	Major extracellular cation: serves to regulate serum osmolality, fluid, and acid–base balance; maintains transmembrane electric potential for neuromuscular functioning	135–145 mmol/L	Hyponatremia can result in GI symptoms (anorexia, nausea, vomiting, abdominal cramping) and CNS symptoms (seizures, lethargy, confusion, and muscle twitching). Hypernatremia can result in changes in behavior such as restlessness, lethargy, and disorientation as well as excessive thirst and elevated body temperature.
Potassium (K)	Major intracellular cation: maintains normal hydration and osmotic pressure	3.8–5.0 mmol/L	Hypokalemia can result in cardiac arrhythmias, muscle cramps and weakness, paresthesias, fatigue, anorexia, decreased bowel motility, and an irregular heartbeat. Hyperkalemia can result in arrhythmias, irritability, paresthesias, and anxiety, and GI symptoms such as nausea and intestinal colic.
Magnesium (Mg^{2+})	One of many electrolytes. Normal levels of magnesium are important for the maintenance of heart and nervous system function	1.3–2.3 mmol/L	Hypomagnesemia can predispose a patient to digitalis toxicity or cardiac arrhythmias. Hypermagnesemia can cause hypotension, shallow respirations, lethargy, drowsiness, and coma.
Chloride (Cl)	Extracellular anion: maintains electrical neutrality of extracellular fluid	97–107 mmol/L	A patient with hypochloremia should be monitored for muscle spasms, alkalosis, and depressed respirations. A patient with hyperchloremia should be monitored for signs of acidosis.
Carbon dioxide	Reflects body's ability to control pH; important in bicarbonate–carbonic acid blood buffer system	24–30 mmol/L	Checks the overall pH levels to determine whether there is an acid–base imbalance

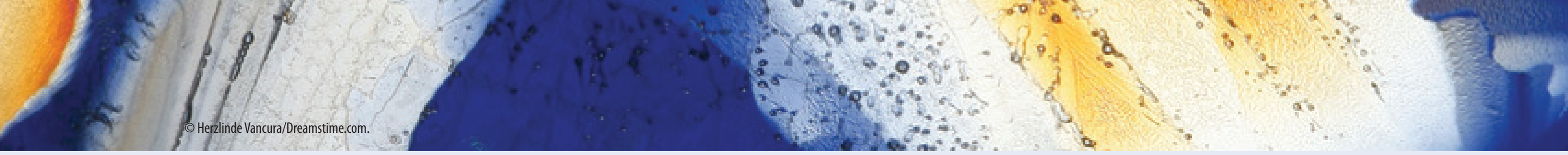
Test	Related Physiology	Reference Range Example	Implications
Anion gap (sodium minus the sum of chloride and carbon dioxide)	Calculated value helpful in evaluating metabolic acidosis	3–11 mmol/L	Part of a renal panel used to evaluate kidney function, and help diagnose kidney-related disorders
Calcium (Ca)	Important for the transmission of nerve impulses and muscle contractility; cofactor in enzyme reactions and blood coagulation	8.6–10.2 mg/dL; inversely related to phosphorus level	A low value indicates hypocalcemia, which can result in seizures and muscle spasms. A high value indicates hypercalcemia, which can result in alterations in cardiac rate and rhythm
Phosphate (PO_4)	Integral to the structure of nucleic acids, in adenosine triphosphate energy transfer, and in phospholipid function; phosphate helps to regulate calcium levels, metabolism, base balance, and bone metabolism	2.5–4.5 mg/dL; inversely related to calcium level	Hypophosphatemia can result in a greater risk for infection. Hyperphosphatemia can result in signs of tetany, and if chronic, soft tissue calcification.
Blood urea nitrogen (BUN)	Measures renal function and protein intake, and amino acid metabolism in the liver produces urea as waste; urea is filtered by the kidney with the portion passively reabsorbed being measured in the plasma	Adult range: 10–20 mg/dL	Increased BUN is found with impaired renal function with shock, heart failure, and salt and water depletion), diabetic ketoacidosis, and burns.
Creatinine	A measure of renal function; muscle creatine degradation produces creatinine, which in turn is excreted by the kidneys	Adult range: 0.7–1.4 mg/dL	Increased creatinine levels can be found with impaired renal function, heart failure, shock, and dehydration
Albumin	Index of liver synthetic capacity	3.5–5.0 g/dL	Very low levels of albumin can lead to edema, ascites, and pulmonary edema
Bilirubin, total	Bilirubin is the predominant pigment in bile, and the major metabolite of hemoglobin	0.2–1.0 mg/dL; direct: 0–0.2 mg/dL; indirect: 0.2–1.0 mg/dL	A high level may indicate that too many red blood cells are being destroyed or liver damage is present.
Ammonium	Liver converts ammonium from blood to urea	12–55 µmol/L	Part of a kidney stone risk panel used to help evaluate the likelihood that an individual who has had two or more kidney stones will develop additional ones

(continues)

Test	Related Physiology	Reference Range Example	Implications
White blood cell (WBC) count	Measures mature and immature WBCs in 1 μL of whole blood and is used in conjunction with WBC differential; produced in bone marrow, WBCs provide defense against foreign agents/organisms	4000–10,000 WBCs/μL	An elevation suggests the presence of an infection, an allergy, or bone marrow disorder.
WBC differential	Visual or computer observation and count of different types of WBCs with differentiation of white blood cell types by relative percentages; cell types usually seen (in descending order): ▪ Neutrophils (PMN) ▪ Lymphocytes ▪ Monocytes ▪ Eosinophils ▪ Basophils	All components totaled equal 100%	▪ Neutrophils can increase in response to bacterial infection, inflammatory disease, steroid medication, or (more rarely) leukemia. Decreased levels may be the result of severe infection, liver disease, or an enlarged spleen. ▪ Lymphocytes can increase in cases of bacterial or viral infection, leukemia, lymphoma, and in underactive or absent spleens. Decreased levels are common in later life but can also occur with steroid medication, stress, lupus, and HIV infection. ▪ Monocyte levels can increase in certain leukemias, infection, and inflammatory disorders. Decreased levels can indicate bone marrow dysfunction and some forms of leukemia. ▪ Eosinophils can increase in response to allergic disorders, skin inflammation, and parasitic infections. ▪ Basophils can increase with leukemia, chronic inflammation, the presence of a hypersensitivity reaction to food, or radiation therapy.

Test	Related Physiology	Reference Range Example	Implications
Red blood cell (RBC)/ erythrocyte count	Measures the number of RBCs in 1 µL of blood; produced in bone marrow, RBCs carry oxygen to tissues	4.2–6.2 × 10^6 µL	A decrease indicates anemia, whereas an increase indicates polycythaemia
Hemoglobin	Reflects the concentration of hemoglobin in blood	Males: 13–18 g/dL Females: 12–16 g/dL	Values of 8–10 g/dL typically result in decreased exercise tolerance, increased fatigue, and tachycardia, a condition that may contraindicate aggressive therapeutic measures, including strength and endurance training). Increased hemoglobin levels can be found in hemoconcentration of the blood.
Hematocrit	Measure of the ratio of packed red blood cells to whole blood; by dividing the hematocrit level by three, one can approximate the hemoglobin level	Males: 42–50% Females: 40-48% (approximately three times hemoglobin)	Increased hematocrit values are seen in severe fluid volume deficit and shock (when hemoconcentration rises considerably). Decreased hematocrit values are seen with acute, massive blood loss; hemolytic reaction after transfusion of incompatible blood; or with fluid overload.
Erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR)	Nonspecific indicator of inflammation or tissue damage	0–20 mm/L hr	An elevated level is used to detect and monitor the activity of acute and chronic inflammation including infections, cancers, and autoimmune diseases.
Platelet count	Reflects potential to address injury to vessel walls, thus regulating homeostasis	100,000–400,000 µL	An infusion of platelets may be indicated to prevent or treat bleeding associated with deficiencies in the number or function of a patient's platelets.

Data from Wall LJ: Laboratory tests and values, in Boissonnault WG (ed): *Primary Care for the Physical Therapist: Examination and Triage*. St. Louis, *Elsevier Saunders*, 2005, pp. 348–67; and Lotspeich-Steinger CA, Stiene-Martin AE, Koepke JA: *Clinical Hematology; Principles, Procedures, Correlations*. Philadelphia, JB Lippincott, 1992.



Appendix E

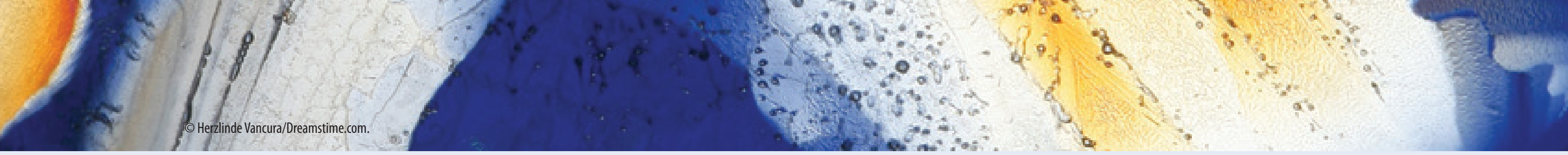
Proprioceptive Neuromuscular Facilitation (PNF) Terms and Techniques

Technique	Description
Irradiation (overflow)	The spread of energy from the prime agonist to complementary agonists and antagonists within a pattern. Can occur from proximal to distal muscle groups, distal to proximal, upper trunk to lower trunk (and vice versa), and from one extremity to another. Weaker muscle groups benefit from the irradiation they gain while working in synergy with stronger, more normal partners. Irradiation is stimulated by the clinician through the use of resistance.
Manual and maximal resistance	In PNF, the direction, quality, and quantity of resistance are adjusted to prompt a smooth and coordinated response, whether for stability (i.e., holds), or for ease, smoothness, and pace of movement. The resistance should be at an appropriate level to prompt proper irradiation and facilitate function, and should be no greater than the resistance that allows full range of motion (ROM) to occur.
Verbal cueing	Effective verbal cues coordinate the clinician's efforts with those of the patient.
Approximation and traction	Joint compression stimulates afferent nerve endings, and encourages extensor muscles and stabilizing patterns (co-contraction), thereby inhibiting abnormal tone and enhancing stabilization of the proximal segment. Compression techniques can be used to prepare a joint for weight bearing. Joint traction provides a stretch stimulus and enhances movement by elongating the adjacent muscles. Traction techniques are commonly used in the presence of pain to inhibit excessive compression and facilitation of flexor muscles and mobilizing patterns. May also be used to help decrease spasticity.
Stretch	Stretch is frequently performed at the starting position of the pattern or movement to promote reflexive activity that is facilitating to the desired action. The resulting reflex activation is then synchronized with volitional effort through verbal cues.
Timing	Describes the sequencing of movement. Timing for emphasis suggests that, to facilitate and enhance muscular response, the clinician can intentionally interrupt the normal timing sequence at specific points in the ROM to the more powerful muscle groups to obtain "overflow" to weaker muscle groups. Can be performed within a limb (ipsilateral from one muscle group to another) or using overflow from one limb to contralateral limb, or trunk to limb. Typically combined with repeated contractions to the weak components, or superimposed upon normal timing in a distal to proximal sequence. Indications include weakness and incoordination.

(continues)

Technique	Description
Combination of isotonics (formerly referred to as agonist reversals)	A slow isotonic, shortening contraction through the range followed by an eccentric, lengthening contraction using the same muscle groups. Indications include weak postural muscles and inability to eccentrically control body weight during movement transitions (e.g., sitting down).
Stabilizing reversals (formerly referred to as alternating isometrics)	Isometric holding is facilitated first on one side of the joint, followed by alternate holding of the antagonist muscle groups. Can be applied in any direction (anterior-posterior, medial-lateral, diagonal). Indications include instability in weight bearing and holding, poor antigravity control, weakness, and ataxia.
Contract–relax (CR)	A relaxation technique usually performed at a point of limited ROM in the agonist pattern: isotonic movement in rotation is performed followed by an isometric hold of the range-limiting muscles in the antagonist pattern against slowly increasing resistance, then voluntary relaxation, and active contraction in the newly gained range of the agonist pattern. The patient is then asked to contract the muscle(s) to be stretched (agonists). The clinician resists this contraction except for the rotary component. The patient is then asked to relax and the clinician moves the joint further into the desired range. Indications include spasticity and limitations in ROM caused by muscle adaptive shortening. Although primarily used as a stretching technique, due to the isometric contractions involved, some strengthening does occur.
Hold–relax (HR)	A similar technique in principle to CR, except that when the patient contracts, the clinician allows no motion (including rotation) to occur. Following the isometric contraction, the patient's own contraction causes the desired movement to occur. Typically used as a relaxation technique in the acutely injured patient because it tends to be less aggressive than the CR technique.
Replication (formerly referred to as hold–relax–active motion)	An isometric contraction performed in the mid- to shortened range followed by a voluntary relaxation and passive movement into the lengthened range, and resistance to an isotonic contraction through the range. May be used with patients who have an inability to initiate movement, hypotonia, weakness, or marked imbalances between antagonists.
Manual contact	A deep but painless pressure is applied through the clinician's contact to stimulate muscle, tendon, and/or joint afferents.
Maximal resistance	Resistance is applied to stronger muscles to obtain overflow to weaker muscles. Indications include weakness and muscle imbalances.
Quick stretch	A motion applied suddenly stimulates the tendon receptors, resulting in a facilitation of motor recruitment and thus more force.
Reinforcement	The coordinated use of the major muscle groups, or other body parts, to produce a desired movement pattern. Often used to increase the stability of the proximal segments.

Technique	Description
Repeated contractions (RC)	A unidirectional technique that involves repeated isotonic contractions induced by quick stretch and that is enhanced by resistance performed to the range or part of range at the point of weakness. Indications include weakness, incoordination, muscle imbalances, and lack of endurance. Facilitation of the agonist and relaxation of the antagonist.
Reversals of antagonists	Many functional tasks involve reversing movement patterns that task body balance and postural stability. For example, the reciprocal activity of the limbs in the swing phase of walking compared with the stance phase. To facilitate static and dynamic postural balance, reciprocal movement of the antagonistic groups are facilitated with static (isometric) or dynamic (isotonic) contractions.
Dynamic reversals of antagonists (formerly referred to as slow reversal)	The technique of dynamic reversals enhances reciprocal or reversing motions. Dynamic (isotonic) contractions of antagonistic movements are facilitated reciprocally in a range appropriate to the goal of the exercise. Indications include inability to reverse directions, muscle imbalances, weakness, incoordination, and instability.
Rhythmic initiation (RI)	Unidirectional or bidirectional voluntary relaxation followed by passive movement through increasing ROM, followed by active-assisted contractions progressing to light tracking resistance to isotonic contractions. Indications include spasticity, rigidity, inability to initiate movement, motor learning deficits, and communication deficits.
Rhythmic stabilization (RS)	The application of alternating isometric contractions of the agonist and antagonist muscles to stimulate movement of the agonist, develop stability, and relax the antagonist. Indications include instability in weight bearing and holding, poor antigravity control, weakness, and ataxia. May also be used to decrease limitations in ROM caused by adaptive muscle shortening and painful muscle splinting.
Stabilizing reversals	Alternating resistance is applied to an agonist-antagonist pair while seeking a maximal dynamic (isotonic) contraction. The technique is similar in many ways to rhythmic stabilization, but it can also be used when the patient is unable to perform a true static (isometric) contraction.
Rhythmic rotation	Voluntary relaxation combined with slow, passive, rhythmic rotation of the body or body part around a longitudinal axis and passive movement into newly gained range. Then, active holding in the new range is stressed. Indications include hypertonia with limitations in functional ROM.
Resisted progression (RP)	A stretch and tracking resistance is applied in order to facilitate progression in walking, creeping, kneel-walking, or movement transitions. Indications include impaired strength, timing, motor control, and endurance.


© Herzlinde Vancura/Dreamstime.com.

Appendix F

Close-Packed and Open-Packed Positions of the Joints

TABLE F.1 Close-Packed Position of the Joints

Joint	Position
Zygapophysial (spine)	Extension
Temporomandibular	Teeth clenched
Glenohumeral	Abduction and external rotation
Acromioclavicular	Arm abducted to 90 degrees
Sternoclavicular	Maximum shoulder elevation
Ulnohumeral	Extension
Radiohumeral	Elbow flexed 90 degrees; forearm supinated 5 degrees
Proximal radioulnar	5 degrees of supination
Distal radioulnar	5 degrees of supination
Radiocarpal (wrist)	Extension with radial deviation
Metacarpophalangeal	Full flexion
Carpometacarpal	Full opposition
Interphalangeal	Full extension
Hip	Full extension, internal rotation, and abduction
Tibiofemoral	Full extension and external rotation of tibia
Talocrural (ankle)	Maximum dorsiflexion
Subtalar	Supination
Midtarsal	Supination

(continues)

TABLE F.1 Close-Packed Position of the Joints *(continued)*

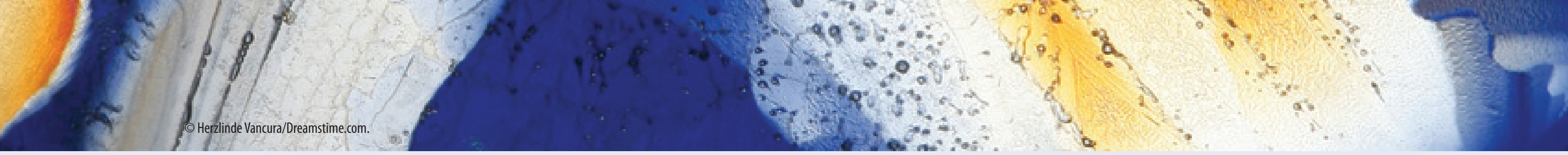
Joint	Position
Tarsometatarsal	Supination
Metatarsophalangeal	Full extension
Interphalangeal	Full extension

TABLE F.2 Open-Packed Position of the Joints

Joint	Position
Zygapophysial (spine)	Midway between flexion and extension
Temporomandibular	Mouth slightly open (freeway space)
Glenohumeral	55 degrees of abduction; 30 degrees of horizontal adduction
Acromioclavicular	Arm resting by side
Sternoclavicular	Arm resting by side
Ulnohumeral	70 degrees of flexion; 10 degrees of supination
Radiohumeral	Full extension; full supination
Proximal radioulnar	70 degrees of flexion; 35 degrees of supination
Distal radioulnar	10 degrees of supination
Radiocarpal (wrist)	Neutral with slight ulnar deviation
Carpometacarpal	Midway between abduction-adduction and flexion-extension
Metacarpophalangeal	Slight flexion
Interphalangeal	Slight flexion
Hip	30 degrees of flexion; 30 degrees of abduction; slight lateral rotation
Tibiofemoral	25 degrees of flexion
Talocrural (ankle)	10 degrees of plantarflexion; midway between maximum inversion and eversion

TABLE F.2 Open-Packed Position of the Joints *(continued)*

Joint	Position
Subtalar	Midway between extremes of range of movement
Midtarsal	Midway between extremes of range of movement
Tarsometatarsal	Midway between extremes of range of movement
Metatarsophalangeal	Neutral
Interphalangeal	Slight flexion


© Herzlinde Vancura/Dreamstime.com.

Answer Key

Chapter 1

1. b
2. b
3. b
4. a
5. d
6. True
7. c
8. b

Chapter 2

1. True
2. Hyaline cartilage, elastic cartilage, and fibrocartilage
3. False
4. True
5. d
6. Hyaline
7. 206
8. True
9. Diaphysis
10. The epiphyseal plate
11. Smooth, skeletal, and cardiac
12. Endomysium
13. Slow twitch, type 1 fibers
14. To attach muscle to bone
15. True
16. Any four of the following: provide support, enhance leverage, protect vital structures, provide attachments for both tendons and ligaments, and to store minerals, particularly calcium
17. d
18. d
19. c
20. d
21. c

Chapter 3

1. d
2. c
3. a
4. b
5. a
6. C1–C4
7. C5–T1
8. The spinal accessory nerve (XI) and the vagus nerve (X)
9. Spinal accessory
10. Posterior
11. Coracobrachialis, brachialis, biceps brachii
12. The deep fibular (peroneal) nerve
13. The radial nerve
14. The median nerve
15. The median nerve
16. The ulnar nerve
17. Supraspinatus and infraspinatus
18. Long thoracic nerve
19. Thoracodorsal nerve
20. Gluteus medius and minimus, tensor fascia lata
21. C7
22. Wrist extensors
23. c
24. The median nerve
25. a
26. d
27. e
28. b
29. Flexor pollicis longus and pronator quadratus
30. d
31. d
32. d
33. a
34. d

Chapter 4

1. Inflammatory phase, proliferative phase, and remodeling phase
2. Tendinitis is a microscopic tear at the muscle-tendon junction. Tendinosis usually results from a degenerative process.
3. Inflammatory phase, reparative (callus) phase, and remodeling phase
4. The law describes the ability of bone to adapt by changing size, shape, and structure depending on the mechanical stresses applied to bone.
5. Any three from the following: the rotator cuff of the shoulder (i.e., supraspinatus, bicipital tendons), insertion of the wrist extensors (i.e., lateral epicondylitis, tennis elbow) and flexors (i.e., medial epicondylitis) at the elbow, patellar and popliteal tendons and iliotibial band at the knee, insertion of the posterior tibial tendon in the leg (i.e., shin splints), and the Achilles tendon at the heel
6. A sprain is an acute injury to the ligament, whereas a strain is an injury to the muscle.
7. d
8. d
9. d

Chapter 5

1. False
2. b
3. b
4. a
5. True
6. d
7. d
8. b
9. True
10. b
11. d
12. c
13. c
14. True
15. d

Chapter 6

1. a
2. a
3. a
4. a
5. a
6. c
7. b
8. d
9. c
10. c
11. d
12. Subjective, objective, assessment, and plan
13. False
14. a
15. True

Chapter 7

1. Support of body mass by the lower extremities, production of locomotor rhythm, and dynamic balance control of the moving body.
2. The interval of time between any of the repetitive events of walking
3. Weight acceptance, single limb support, and swing limb advancement
4. Stance and swing
5. Initial contact, loading response, mid stance, and terminal stance
6. Pre-swing, initial swing, mid-swing, and terminal swing
7. Gait velocity, stride length, and cadence
8. The repetition rate (cadence), physical conditioning, and the length of the person's stride
9. 113 steps/min
10. Approximately midline in the frontal plane and slightly anterior to the second sacral vertebra in the sagittal plane
11. False
12. False
13. A positive Trendelenburg sign is indicated when the pelvis lists toward the non–weight bearing side during single limb support.
14. Foot slap immediately after initial contact; foot drop during swing; excessive hip and knee flexion during swing
15. During the end of the swing phase
16. b
17. d
18. Gluteus medius
19. c
20. Gluteus maximus
21. Deep fibular (peroneal)
22. Tibial, femoral, and pelvic internal rotation
23. The lordotic posture

24. The slouched posture
25. Stretched and weak lumbar extensor and possibly hip flexor muscles

Chapter 8

1. b
2. True
3. b
4. True
5. d
6. True
7. True
8. c
9. True
10. c

Chapter 9

1. d
2. True
3. d
4. b
5. Three
6. II
7. I
8. Soft tissue approximation
9. Traumatic hyperemia, pain relief, and decreasing scar tissue
10. Effleurage
11. Tapotement/percussion
12. Myofasical release (MFR)

Chapter 10

1. c
2. 165°F to 175°F (73.92°C to 79.4°C)
3. b
4. Ultrasound
5. Amps
6. b
7. c
8. d
9. c
10. d
11. a
12. b
13. b
14. a
15. a
16. c
17. b
18. d

Chapter 11

1. Phosphagen and glycolysis systems
2. Adenosine triphosphate (ATP)
3. The energy expenditure required for sitting quietly, talking on the phone, or reading a book
4. Essential and storage fat
5. 18.5–24.9
6. Open
7. Static and dynamic

Chapter 12

1. Range of motion and elongation of muscle
2. Plastic and elastic deformation
3. To reduce contractures, to improve motion, and to minimize risk of soft tissue injury
4. False
5. False
6. True
7. Passive ROM→Active-assisted ROM→Active ROM
8. False
9. True
10. Static, cyclic, ballistic, and proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation stretching

Chapter 13

1. Isometric contraction
2. Eccentric
3. Eccentric
4. Extensibility, elasticity, irritability, and the ability to develop tension
5. False
6. The strength gains are developed at a specific point in the range of motion and not throughout the range; not all of a muscle's fibers are activated
7. b
8. Type/mode of exercise, intensity, duration, and frequency
9. b
10. c
11. b
12. b
13. c

Chapter 14

1. Proprioception and the mechanoreceptor system
2. Poor coordination, decreased range of motion, weakness, and compromised perception
3. True
4. Automatic postural reactions
5. Somatosensory, visual and vestibular systems
6. Kinesthesia
7. Ankle, hip, and stepping strategies
8. Balance testing procedures
9. Sitting
10. True

Chapter 15

1. c
2. True
3. True
4. False
5. False

Chapter 16

1. Cervical, thoracic, lumbar, sacral and coccygeal
2. Cervical and lumbar
3. The intervertebral disks (IVDs) and vertebral bodies
4. 24
5. Neutral zone
6. True

Chapter 17

1. The uncinate processes are considered to be a guiding mechanism for flexion and extension in the cervical spine and to resist posterior translation as well as some degree of the side bending.
2. a
3. Ipsilateral sidebending and contralateral rotation of the head and neck
4. Axis
5. Horizontal
6. Extension
7. Frontal
8. True
9. True
10. True
11. The lateral pterygoid and digastric muscles
12. The temporalis, masseter, and medial pterygoid muscles
13. The masseter and temporalis muscles of the right, and the medial and lateral pterygoid muscles on the left
14. The mouth is closed so that the lips touch, but the teeth do not, and the tongue is resting gently on the hard palate.
15. Decreased ipsilateral opening and lateral deviation to the involved side

Chapter 18

1. Rotation
2. Diaphragm
3. Upper
4. Erector spinae, and hip flexors
5. True
6. True
7. True
8. True
9. Round back
10. A forward and downward projecting sternum

Chapter 19

1. Nucleus pulposus
2. Sagittal
3. Flexion
4. False
5. Anterior spondylolisthesis
6. True
7. False
8. Bending forward in a flexed posture and lifting
9. True
10. True
11. a

Chapter 20

1. Sternoclavicular, acromioclavicular, glenohumeral, scapulothoracic
2. The acromioclavicular ligament and the coracoclavicular ligament
3. Supination of the forearm

4. Infraspinatus, teres minor, posterior deltoid
5. d
6. d
7. c
8. A shoulder dissertation is a true separation between the head of the humerus and the glenoid. A shoulder separation involves a disruption of the acromioclavicular joint.
9. d
10. c
11. The sternoclavicular joint
12. Supraspinatus, infraspinatus, teres minor, pectoralis major
13. The acromioclavicular joint
14. Radial nerve damage
15. c
16. a
17. d
18. a
19. a
20. a

Chapter 21

1. Elbow extension and forearm supination
2. 70 degrees of elbow flexion and 10 degrees of forearm supination
3. 70 degrees of elbow flexion and 10 degrees of forearm supination
4. Elbow extension
5. One
6. Approximately 15 degrees
7. Brachioradialis and biceps brachii
8. Humerus
9. Lateral
10. True
11. a
12. a
13. a

Chapter 22

1. The complex consists of the central fibrocartilage articular disk, palmar and dorsal radioulnar ligament, ulnar collateral ligament, and a sheath from the extensor carpi ulnaris. It attaches to the ulna board of the radius and the distal ulna
2. A fracture of the radius and the ulna
3. The scaphoid
4. Avascular necrosis
5. MCP flexion and IP extension
6. The distal interphalangeal joints
7. a
8. b
9. c
10. Lateral cord
11. d
12. d
13. a
14. a
15. a

Chapter 23

1. In the direction of hip extension, adduction and internal rotation
2. Extension
3. Extension, internal rotation, abduction
4. Three
5. Anteriorly
6. Sartorius, rectus femoris
7. b
8. a
9. a
10. a
11. a
12. a

Chapter 24

1. Sartorius, gracilis, and semi tendinosis
2. Popliteus
3. The medial meniscus
4. To prevent posterior displacement of the tibia on the femur
5. Hamstrings
6. 12- to 18-year-old females
7. Vastus medialis obliquus
8. c
9. c
10. c
11. c
12. a
13. a
14. a
15. a

Chapter 25

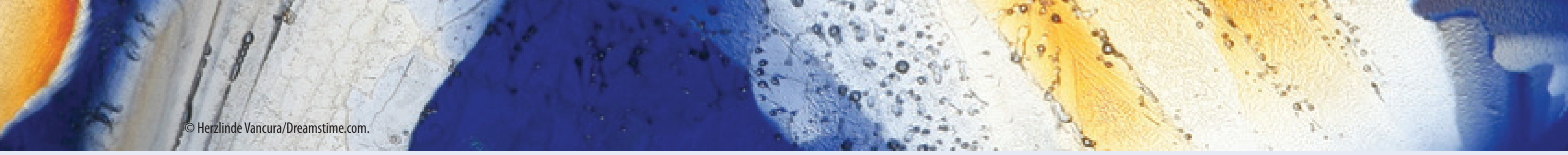
1. a
2. Maximum dorsiflexion
3. The anterior talofibular ligament
4. The calcaneus bone and the talus
5. The plantar calcaneonavicular ligament
6. d
7. a
8. b
9. c
10. b
11. a
12. a
13. a
14. a
15. a

Chapter 26

1. 3–4 months
2. 5–6 months
3. 8–9 months
4. 12 months
5. Scoliosis
6. a
7. b
8. d
9. c
10. a
11. c
12. c
13. d

Chapter 27

1. Gerontology
2. Weight-bearing joints
3. b
4. b
5. c
6. d
7. c
8. d
9. The onset of chronic, insidious memory loss that is slowly progressive
10. A durable power of attorney for health care and a living will
11. Informed consent
12. a
13. a
14. a


© Herzlinde Vancura/Dreamstime.com.

Index

Intro text for index here with *italic*.

A

B

C

D

E

F

G

H

I

J

K

L

M

P

Q

R

S

T

U

V

W

X

Y

Z